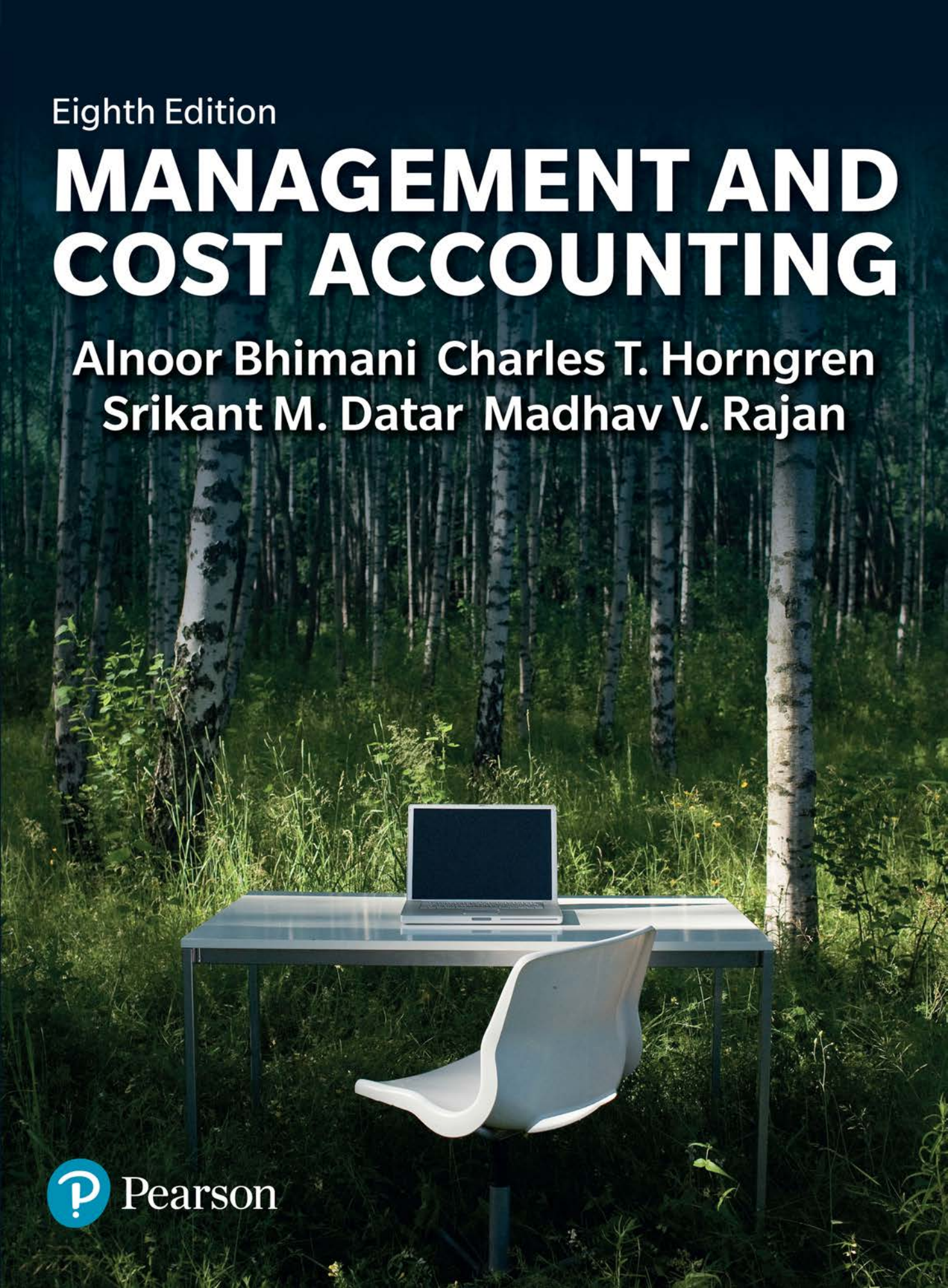
Eighth Edition

MANAGEMENT AND COST ACCOUNTING

Alnoor Bhimani Charles T. Horngren
Srikant M. Datar Madhav V. Rajan



Pearson

MANAGEMENT AND COST ACCOUNTING

Pearson

At Pearson, we have a simple mission: to help people make more of their lives through learning.

We combine innovative learning technology with trusted content and educational expertise to provide engaging and effective learning experiences that serve people wherever and whenever they are learning.

From classroom to boardroom, our curriculum materials, digital learning tools and testing programmes help to educate millions of people worldwide – more than any other private enterprise.

Every day our work helps learning flourish, and wherever learning flourishes, so do people.

To learn more, please visit us at **www.pearson.com**

MANAGEMENT AND COST ACCOUNTING

Eighth Edition

Alnoor Bhimani
London School of Economics and Political Science

Charles T. Horngren
Stanford University

Srikant M. Datar
Harvard University

Madhav V. Rajan
University of Chicago

Harlow, England • London • New York • Boston • San Francisco • Toronto • Sydney • Dubai • Singapore • Hong Kong
Tokyo • Seoul • Taipei • New Delhi • Cape Town • São Paulo • Mexico City • Madrid • Amsterdam • Munich • Paris • Milan

PEARSON EDUCATION LIMITED
KAO Two
KAO Park
Harlow CM17 9NA
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0)1279 623623
Web: www.pearson.com

Original edition, entitled Cost Accounting, published by Prentice-Hall Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey, USA © 1999 by Prentice-Hall, Inc.

First edition published in Great Britain under the Prentice-Hall Europe imprint in 1999 (print)
Second edition published in 2002 (print)
Third edition published 2005 (print)
Fourth edition published 2008 (print)
Fifth edition published in 2012 (print and electronic)
Sixth edition published in 2015 (print and electronic)
Seventh edition published in 2019 (print and electronic)
Eighth edition published 2023 (print and electronic)

© Prentice Hall Europe 1999 (print)
© Pearson Education Limited 2002, 2005, 2008 (print)
© Pearson Education Limited 2012, 2015, 2019, 2023 (print and electronic)

The rights of Alnoor Bhimani, Charles T. Horngren, Srikant M. Datar and Madhav V. Rajan to be identified as authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

The print publication is protected by copyright. Prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, distribution or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording or otherwise, permission should be obtained from the publisher or, where applicable, a licence permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom should be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Barnard's Inn, 86 Fetter Lane, London EC4A 1EN.

The ePublication is protected by copyright and must not be copied, reproduced, transferred, distributed, leased, licensed or publicly performed or used in any way except as specifically permitted in writing by the publishers, as allowed under the terms and conditions under which it was purchased, or as strictly permitted by applicable copyright law. Any unauthorised distribution or use of this text may be a direct infringement of the author's and the publisher's rights and those responsible may be liable in law accordingly.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

Contains public sector information licensed under the Open Government Licence (OGL) v3.0. http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/.

The screenshots in this book are reprinted by permission of Microsoft Corporation.

Pearson Education is not responsible for the content of third-party internet sites.

ISBN: 978-1-292-43602-9 (print)
978-1-292-43603-6 (PDF)
978-1-292-43604-3 (ePub)

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for the print edition is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Bhimani, Alnoor, author. | Horngren, Charles T., 1926-2011. | Datar, Srikant M., author.
Title: Management and cost accounting / Alnoor Bhimani, London School of Economics and Political Science, Charles T. Horngren, Stanford University, Srikant M. Datar, Harvard University, Madhav V. Rajan, University of Chicago.
Description: Eighth Edition. | Hoboken, NJ : Pearson, 2023. | Revised edition of the authors' Management and cost accounting, [2018] |
Identifiers: LCCN 2022054700 (print) | LCCN 2022054701 (ebook) | ISBN 9781292436029 (paperback) | ISBN 9781292436036 (ebook) | ISBN 9781292436043 (epub)
Subjects: LCSH: Cost accounting. | Managerial accounting.
Classification: LCC HF5686.C8 B464 2023 (print) | LCC HF5686.C8 (ebook) | DDC 657/.42--dc23/eng/20221110
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2022054700
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2022054701

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
27 26 25 24 23

Cover design: Michelle Morgan, At The Pop, Ltd.
Cover image: Johner Images / Alamy Stock Photo

Print edition typeset in 10/12 pt Sabon MT Pro by Straive
Print edition printed and bound in Slovakia by Neografia

NOTE THAT ANY PAGE CROSS REFERENCES REFER TO THE PRINT EDITION

In memory of Charles T. Horngren 1926–2011

Chuck Horngren revolutionised cost and management accounting. He loved new ideas and introduced many new concepts. He had the unique gift of explaining these concepts in simple and creative ways. He epitomised excellence and never tired of details, whether it was finding exactly the right word or working and reworking assignment materials.

He combined his great intellect with genuine humility and warmth and a human touch that inspired others to do their best. He taught us many lessons about life through his amazing discipline, his ability to make everyone feel welcome, and his love of family.

It was a great privilege, pleasure, and honour to have known Chuck Horngren. Few individuals will have the enormous influence that Chuck had on the accounting profession. Fewer still will be able to do it with the class and style that was his hallmark. He was unique, special and amazing in many, many ways and, at once, a role model, teacher, mentor and friend.

He is deeply missed.

Alnoor Bhimani
London School of Economics and Political Science

Srikant M. Datar
Harvard University

Madhav V. Rajan
University of Chicago

AB: For all women who bring balance to the world

SD: Swati, Radhika, Gayatri, Sidharth

MVR: Gayathri, Sanjana, Anupama

BRIEF CONTENTS

Contents ix
Guide to the case studies xvi
Preface xix
Authors' acknowledgements xxii

PART I Management and cost accounting fundamentals

1 The manager and management accounting 2
2 An introduction to cost terms and purposes 33
3 Job costing 59
4 Process costing 90
5 Cost allocation 128
6 Cost allocation: joint-cost situations 157
7 Income effects of alternative stock-costing methods 183

Part I Case study problems 212

PART II Accounting information for decision making

8 Cost–volume–profit analysis 220
9 Determining how costs behave 247
10 Relevant information for decision making 287
11 Activity-based costing 318
12 Pricing issues and customer profitability analysis 351
13 Capital investment decisions 387

Part II Case study problems 417

PART III Planning and budgetary control systems

14 Motivation, budgets and responsibility accounting 422
15 Flexible budgets, variances and management control: I 459
16 Flexible budgets, variances and management control: II 490
17 Measuring yield, mix and quantity effects 524

Part III Case study problems 549

PART IV Management control systems and performance issues

18 Control systems and transfer pricing 556
19 Control systems and performance measurement 585

Part IV Case study problems 615

PART V Strategy, quality, time and emerging issues

20 Strategy, the balanced scorecard and quality 622
21 Accounting, time and efficiency 660
22 Emerging issues: digitalisation and sustainability 702

Part V Case study problems 725

Appendix A: Solutions to selected exercises 741
Glossary 807
Index 820
Publisher's acknowledgements 831

Lecturer Resources

For password-protected online resources tailored to support the use of this textbook in teaching, please log in as an educator on our website www.pearson.com and search for this textbook, where you will find a tab providing instructor resources.

CONTENTS

Guide to the case studies xvi
Preface xix
Authors' acknowledgements xxii

PART I
Management and cost accounting fundamentals

CHAPTER 1
The manager and management accounting 2

Management accounting, financial accounting and cost accounting 3
Accounting systems and management controls 8
Costs, benefits and context 12
Value creation 13
- ***Concepts in action:*** *How the Internet of Things, artificial intelligence and big data make the unknown visible at Rolls-Royce* 17

Digitalisation and management accounting 18
Summary 21
Appendix: Professional ethics 22
References and further reading 23
Assessment material 25

CHAPTER 2
An introduction to cost terms and purposes 33

Costs in general 34
Direct costs and indirect costs 35
Cost drivers and cost management 36
Cost behaviour patterns: variable costs and fixed costs 37
Total costs and unit costs 40
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Reducing fixed costs and managing profit growth at Porsche* 41

Financial statements, business sectors and the recognition of costs 43
The many meanings of product costs 48
Classification of costs 48
Summary 49
References 50
Assessment material 51

CHAPTER 3
Job costing 59

The building block concept of costing systems 60
Job-costing and process-costing systems 60
Job costing in service organisations using actual costing 62
Normal costing 64
Job costing in manufacturing 66
An illustration of a job-costing system in manufacturing 68
Budgeted indirect costs and end-of-period adjustments 76
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Better job costing through big data and data analytics* 77

Summary 80
References 81
Assessment material 82

CHAPTER 4
Process costing 90

Illustrating process costing 91
Case 1: Process costing with no opening or closing work-in-progress stock 92
Case 2: Process costing with no opening but a closing work-in-progress stock 93
Case 3: Process costing with both some opening and some closing work-in-progress stock 97
Weighted-average method 98
First-in, first-out method 101
Comparison of weighted-average and FIFO methods 104
Standard-costing method of process costing 105
Transferred-in costs in process costing 109
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Hybrid costing for Adidas customised 3D printed shoes* 110

Hybrid-costing systems 115
Summary 116

Appendix: Operation costing 117
Reference 120
Assessment material 121

CHAPTER 5
Cost allocation 128

Purposes of cost allocation 129
Cost allocation and costing systems 130
Indirect-cost pools and cost allocation 131
Allocating costs from one department to another 133
Allocating costs of support departments 137
Support department cost-allocation methods 137
Allocating common costs 143
Cost-allocation bases and cost hierarchies 144
Is the product-costing system broken? 146
Summary 146
References and further reading 147
Assessment material 148

CHAPTER 6
Cost allocation: joint-cost situations 157

Meaning of joint products and by-products terms 158
Why allocate joint costs? 159
Approaches to allocating joint costs 160
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Big Data joint products and by-products create new business opportunities* 162
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Chicken processing: costing on the disassembly line* 168

No allocation of joint costs 168
Irrelevance of joint costs for decision making 169
Accounting for by-products 171
Summary 174
References and further reading 174
Assessment material 175

CHAPTER 7
Income effects of alternative stock-costing methods 183

PART A: Stock-costing methods 184
Variable costing and absorption costing 184
Comparison of variable costing and absorption costing 188
Performance measures and absorption costing 194
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Can ESPN avoid the cord-cutting 'death spiral'?* 196

PART B: Denominator-level concepts and absorption costing 196
Alternative denominator-level concepts 196
Effect on financial statements 198
Summary 200
Appendix: Breakeven points in variable and absorption costing 200
Assessment material 203

PART I Case study problems 212
101 The European Savings Bank 212
102 The ethical dilemma at Northlake 214
103 Electronic Boards plc 216

PART II
Accounting information for decision making

CHAPTER 8
Cost–volume–profit analysis 220

Revenue drivers and cost drivers 221
CVP assumptions 222
The breakeven point 222
The PV graph 226
Impact of income taxes 227
Sensitivity analysis and uncertainty 228
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Can cost–volume–profit analysis help Whole Foods escape the 'whole paycheck' trap?* 229

Cost planning and CVP 230
Effects of revenue mix on profit 232
Not-for-profit organisations and CVP 233
Contribution margin and gross margin 233
Summary 235
Appendix: Decision models and uncertainty 235
Reference and further reading 238
Assessment material 239

CHAPTER 9
Determining how costs behave 247

General issues in estimating cost functions 248
The cause-and-effect criterion in choosing cost drivers 251
Cost estimation approaches 251
Steps in estimating a cost function 253
Evaluating and choosing cost drivers 258
Cost drivers and activity-based costing 260

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Activity-based costing and cost estimation* 260

Big data, machine learning and cost analysis 261
Non-linearity and cost functions 262
Learning curves and non-linear cost functions 263

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Learning curves and the falling price of renewable energy* 267

Summary 268
Appendix: Regression analysis 269
References and further reading 278
Assessment material 279

CHAPTER 10
Relevant information for decision making 287

Information and the decision process 288
The concept of relevance 289
An illustration of relevance: choosing output levels 291
Outsourcing and make-or-buy decisions 293

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Costs, outsourcing and politics* 294

Opportunity costs, outsourcing and capacity constraints 297

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Outsourcing versus automation at Nike* 300

Product-mix decisions under capacity constraints 301

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Slashing cost at LEGO* 302

Customer profitability and relevant costs 302
Irrelevance of past costs and equipment-replacement decisions 305
Summary 307
Appendix: Linear programming 307
References and further reading 311
Assessment material 312

CHAPTER 11
Activity-based costing 318

Undercosting and overcosting 319
Costing system at Plastim Limited 320
Refining a costing system 323
Activity-based costing systems 324
Implementing activity-based costing 328
Comparing alternative costing systems 333

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Mayo Clinic uses time-driven activity-based costing to reduce costs and improve care* 334

From activity-based costing to activity-based management 334
ABC and department-costing systems 336
Implementing ABC systems 337

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Do banks provide 'free' services?* 338

ABC and the organisational context 339
Summary 341
References and further reading 341
Assessment material 342

CHAPTER 12
Pricing issues and customer profitability analysis 351

Major influences on pricing 352
Costing and pricing for the short run 353
Costing and pricing for the long run 355

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Pricing and digitalisation at H&M* 358

Target costing for target pricing 358
Achieving the target cost per unit for Provalue 362
Cost-plus pricing 364

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Target pricing for the Indian car market* 364

Life-cycle product budgeting and costing 367
Customer profitability analysis 371
Customer revenues 371
Customer costs 372
Customer profitability profiles 374

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Zara uses target pricing to become the world's largest fashion retailer* 377

Summary 377
References and further reading 378
Assessment material 379

CHAPTER 13
Capital investment decisions 387

Stages of capital budgeting 388

- ***Concepts in action:*** *Capital budgeting for sustainability at Johnson & Johnson* 391

Discounted cash flow methods 392
Sensitivity analysis 397
Relevant cash flows in discounted cash flow analysis 398
Payback method 400
Accounting rate of return method 402
Managing the project 403
Income tax factors 404
Capital budgeting and inflation 405
Summary 406
References and further reading 407
Assessment material 408

PART II Case study problems 417
201 Permaclean Products plc 417

PART III

Planning and budgetary control systems

CHAPTER 14
Motivation, budgets and responsibility accounting 422

Major features of budgets 423
Roles of budgets 424
Types of budget 428
Financial planning models 437
- ***Concepts in action:*** *P.F. Chang's and internet-based budgeting* 438

Kaizen budgeting 438
Activity-based budgeting 438
Budgeting and responsibility accounting 440
Responsibility and controllability 441
Summary 443
Appendix: The cash budget 443
References and further reading 449
Assessment material 450

CHAPTER 15
Flexible budgets, variances and management control: I 459

Static budgets and flexible budgets 460
Static-budget variances 461
Steps in developing a flexible budget 462
Flexible-budget variances and sales-volume variances 463
Price variances and efficiency variances for inputs 465
Impact of stocks 471
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Starbucks maintains a focus on direct-cost variances* 471

Management uses of variances 472
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Chipotle's required focus on material cost variances* 474

Flexible budgeting and activity-based costing 475
An illustration of journal entries using standard costs 477
Benchmarking and variance analysis 478
Summary 480
References and further reading 481
Assessment material 482

CHAPTER 16
Flexible budgets, variances and management control: II 490

Planning of variable- and fixed-overhead costs 491
Developing budgeted variable-overhead rates 492
Variable-overhead cost variances 493
Developing budgeted fixed-overhead rates 497
Fixed-overhead cost variances 498
Production-volume variance 498
Integrated analysis of overhead cost variances 500
Different purposes of manufacturing overhead cost analysis 501
Journal entries for overhead costs and variances 503
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Variance analysis and standard costing: helping Sandoz manage overhead costs* 505

Engineered, discretionary and infrastructure costs 505
Financial and non-financial performance measures 506
Actual, normal and standard costing 507
Activity-based costing and variance analysis 510
Summary 514
Reference and further reading 515
Assessment material 516

CHAPTER 17
Measuring yield, mix and quantity effects 524

Input variances 525
Direct materials yield and mix variances 525
Direct manufacturing labour yield and mix variances 530
Revenue and sales variances 532
Variance analysis for multiple products 533
Summary 540
Assessment material 541

PART III Case study problems 549
301 Zeros plc 549
302 Instrumental Ltd 551

PART IV

Management control systems and performance issues

CHAPTER 18
Control systems and transfer pricing 556

Management control systems 557
Evaluating management control systems 557
Organisational structure and decentralisation 558
Choices about responsibility centres 561
Transfer pricing 561
An illustration of transfer pricing 562
Market-based transfer prices 565
Cost-based transfer prices 566
Negotiated transfer prices 569
A general guideline for transfer-pricing situations 569
Transfer pricing and tax considerations 570
- ***Concepts in action:*** *The European Commission thinks Apple's transfer price arrangements are unfair* 572

Summary 572
References and further reading 573
Assessment material 574

CHAPTER 19
Control systems and performance measurement 585

Financial and non-financial performance measures 586
Different performance measures 587
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Running pharmas can prove challenging and CEO compensation can fall!* 593

Alternative definitions of investment 593
Alternative performance measures 594
Choosing targeted levels of performance and timing of feedback 597
Distinction between managers and organisational units 598
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Performance measurement at Unilever* 600

Performance measures at the individual activity level 601
Environmental and ethical responsibilities 602
Strategy and levers of control 603
Summary 605
References and further reading 605
Assessment material 607

PART IV Case study problems 615
401 BBR plc 615

PART V

Strategy, quality, time and emerging issues

CHAPTER 20
Strategy, the balanced scorecard and quality 622

Strategy and strategic management accounting 623
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Strategic renewal at Puma* 625

The balanced scorecard 626
Quality improvement and reengineering at Chipset 626
The four perspectives of the balanced scorecard 627
Aligning the balanced scorecard to strategy 628
Features of a good balanced scorecard 630
Evaluating the success of a strategy 632
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Barclays turns to the balanced scorecard* 632

Costs of quality under the balanced scorecard 635
The internal-business-process perspective: analysing quality problems 640
The learning-and-growth perspective: quality improvements 642
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Does Mercedes really stand for quality? What about Toyota?* 645

Summary 646
References and further reading 647
Assessment material 649

CHAPTER 21
Accounting, time and efficiency 660

Just-in-time systems 661
Major features of JIT production systems 661
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Just-in-time live-concert recordings* 663

Enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems 665
- ***Concepts in action:*** *How big data and machine learning helps with stock management* 666

Backflush costing 666
Managing goods for sale in retail organisations 674
Challenges in estimating stock-related costs and their effects 679
Just-in-time purchasing 681
Stock costs and their management in manufacturing organisations 684
Theory of constraints 686
Balanced scorecards and time-based measures 688
Summary 689
References and further reading 690
Assessment material 691

CHAPTER 22
Emerging issues: digitalisation and sustainability 702

Digitalisation is changing data 703
Digital technologies are changing accounting 705
The digitalised enterprise control loop 708
Management accounting and sustainability 709
Context and communication remain key 715
- ***Concepts in action:*** *Corporates that prioritise sustainability* 715

Alternative definitions of investment 716
Summary 717
References and further reading 717
Assessment material 719

PART V Case study problems 725

501 High-Tech Limited 725
502 Tanner Pharmaceuticals and the price of a new drug 732
503 Osram 736

Appendix A: Solutions to selected exercises 741
Glossary 807
Index 820
Publisher's acknowledgements 831

Pearson's Commitment to Diversity, Equity and Inclusion

Pearson is dedicated to creating bias-free content that reflects the diversity, depth and breadth of all learners' lived experiences. We embrace the many dimensions of diversity including, but not limited to, race, ethnicity, gender, sex, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, ability, age and religious or political beliefs.

Education is a powerful force for equity and change in our world. It has the potential to deliver opportunities that improve lives and enable economic mobility. As we work with authors to create content for every product and service, we acknowledge our responsibility to demonstrate inclusivity and incorporate diverse scholarship so that everyone can achieve their potential through learning. As the world's leading learning company, we have a duty to help drive change and live up to our purpose to help more people create a better life for themselves and to create a better world.

Our ambition is to purposefully contribute to a world where:

- Everyone has an equitable and lifelong opportunity to succeed through learning.
- Our educational products and services are inclusive and represent the rich diversity of learners.
- Our educational content accurately reflects the histories and lived experiences of the learners we serve.
- Our educational content prompts deeper discussions with students and motivates them to expand their own learning and worldview.

We are also committed to providing products that are fully accessible to all learners. As per Pearson's guidelines for accessible educational Web media, we test and retest the capabilities of our products against the highest standards for every release, following the WCAG guidelines in developing new products for copyright year 2022 and beyond. You can learn more about Pearson's commitment to accessibility at:

https://www.pearson.com/us/accessibility.html

While we work hard to present unbiased, fully accessible content, we want to hear from you about any concerns or needs regarding this Pearson product so that we can investigate and address them.

- Please contact us with concerns about any potential bias at:
  https://www.pearson.com/report-bias.html
- For accessibility-related issues, such as using assistive technology with Pearson products, alternative text requests, or accessibility documentation, email the Pearson Disability Support team at:
  disability.support@pearson.com

GUIDE TO THE CASE STUDIES

Case number	Case details	Short/long	Manufacturing/service	Budgeting	Pricing	Ethical issues	Environmental issues	Activity-based costing	Behaviour/organisation factors	Cash flow	Costing system	Profit/loss measurement	ROI	Transfer pricing system	Management control system	Balanced scorecard	Performance measurement	Variance	Market assessment/ competitor analysis	Tableau de bord	Strategic issues	Profitability	Country/area of origin
	PART 1																						
101	**The European Savings Bank:** Legal and ethical issues involved in software piracy.	short	SS			●			●														Europe
102	**The ethical dilemma at Northlake:** How far does the notion of 'different costs for different purposes' extend?	mid	M			●	●														●		Canada
103	**Electronic Boards plc:** Design of costing systems for a firm operating in a high-tech environment. Simplistic vs complex costing.	short	M	●				●	●		●						●				●		N/A
	PART II																						
201	**Permaclean Products plc:** Analysis of costs and price-demand information using past sales data to make decisions on product pricing.	mid	M		●						●	●										●	UK
	PART III																						
301	**Zeros plc:** Use of ROI to measure divisional performance. Use of costing systems to produce meaningful profit statements.	mid	M	●	●				●		●	●	●				●					●	UK
302	**Instrumental Ltd:** Analysis of budgeted vs actual performance for different organisational functions. Considers strategic vs operational issues.	mid	M	●	●					●	●	●					●	●			●		UK

Case number	Case details	Short/long	Manufacturing/service	Budgeting	Pricing	Ethical issues	Environmental issues	Activity-based costing	Behaviour/organisation factors	Cash flow	Costing system	Profit/loss measurement	ROI	Transfer pricing system	Management control system	Balanced scorecard	Performance measurement	Variance	Market assessment/ competitor analysis	Tableau de bord	Strategic issues	Profitability	Country/area of origin
	PART IV																						
401	**BBR plc:** Transfer-pricing problem where divisional interests are pitted against total corporate profitability.	mid	M	●	●	●			●		●	●		●			●	●					UK
	PART V																						
501	**High-Tech Ltd:** Importance of strategy and cost allocation within the IT manufacturing industry. Considers just-in-time inventory systems.	long	M & SS		●			●	●		●	●			●	●			●	●	●		UK/France
502	**Tanner Pharmaceuticals and the price of a new drug:** Issues of pharmaceutical drug prices in the light of competitive strategy.	mid/long			●							●									●		USA
503	**Osram:** Analysis of potential savings made by newer, more efficient consumables as opposed to traditionally used ones.	mid/long	M	●	●						●	●							●			●	Germany

PREFACE

Accounting influences our lives. Whether or not one uses accounting information, accounting alters our social, economic and physical environment. And of course, it impacts organisations and altering what we do and the decisions we make. Corporate action regarding new product developments, pricing strategy, staff recruitment and salary levels are usually directly influenced by accounting information. At times, accounting motivates certain types of managerial behaviours and discourages others. This book is about understanding the preparation and use of management and cost accounting information, taking account of how it influences decisions. But accounting is not a pre-given in form or process and in this sense accounting is also continuously being reshaped by its context. The book therefore also extensively discusses how different factors alter accounting techniques and processes.

As we'll see in Chapter 1, management accounting is concerned with providing managers with financial and other types of information so they can pursue diverse goals. Cost accounting, which is sometimes used interchangeably with management accounting, is more concerned with information on the acquisition and consumption of resources. We want to address issues relating to the design, use and role of accounting information in the management of organisational activities. We will do this by balancing technical detail with enterprise insight so we can focus on how to best support management action.

Management and cost accounting is a dynamic discipline which differs across firms, nations, industrial settings and management functions. It entails the application of different techniques, which must constantly adapt given the fast pace of changes facing enterprises today. Consequently, the book covers a comprehensive suite of techniques and areas including job costing and process costing, cost–volume–profit relationships, capital investment decisions, budgetary control and responsibility accounting. It looks also at quality costing, throughput issues, non-financial performance measures and strategic analysis. But we are especially concerned with the forces that impact these management accounting practices right now. So all these techniques are discussed in the context of changes witnessed by organisations on an ongoing basis. We argue that the most significant force affecting firms today is technological change and innovation. Digital technologies are rapidly impacting business models and organisational processes and they are doing so in a deep and extensive way. This new edition of the book is thus packed with coverage on how organisations are being digitally transformed and what this implies for management accountants. We look at numerous illustrations of companies using 'big data' and analytics as they draw insights from digitised data. We consider how the 'Internet of Things', robotics, artificial intelligence and other digital innovations are impacting management accounting information deployment. Aside from the digitalisation of enterprises, we consider also the relevance of sustainability and environmental concerns which influence how firms deploy management accounting information.

New to the 8th edition

To ensure currency and coverage of modern applications of management accounting, we have added new material in this edition. Environmental issues have been of concern to organisations for decades but the past few years have demonstrated much more active engagement by business in this light. We have therefore introduced across several chapters, discussions and illustrations of companies which have extensively invested in sustainability initiatives and indicators of their performance in this domain. Chapter 1 discusses why this has become such a priority for many

enterprises and subsequent chapters provide numerous illustrations of how companies approach sustainability factors affecting their pursuits and activities. Chapter 22 in particular reflects the significance of sustainability issues tied to management accounting with a new title for the whole chapter and wide-ranging content revisions and new coverage areas. Technological changes and digitalisation have likewise evolved and altered organisational functions and processes in the very recent past. The rise of increasingly advanced digital applications such as blockchain systems, the Internet of Things, smart contracts and artificial intelligence are altering not only what management accountants must report on but the very mechanisms of reporting and the growing divisions between machine versus human decision making. This is reshaping the work and roles played by management accounting in organisations. The impact of digital technologies is fast transforming the field and most chapters discuss aspects of the nature and forms of such changes. From Chapter 1 through, especially to Chapter 22, we identify how the digital technologies are altering the substance of management accounting and the relevance of conventional as well as new accounting and control tools deployed by firms.

Also included in this edition are novel illustrations and survey results of management accounting mechanisms and corporate concerns. We have tried to ensure the inclusion of company-relevant examples and illustrations of changing management and cost accounting practices. While general aspects of different topics and issues are extensively covered, we also discuss situational and organisational adaptations of generic techniques to ensure that you understand the applicability of management accounting approaches. To achieve this, we have numerous case studies used by many business schools across the globe. We ensure that the reality of enterprise management is reflected in the book and so, rather than accord a separate chapter to consider strategic, organisational and behavioural aspects of management accounting, we integrate this throughout chapters in the book. We further cover global themes that are of relevance to managers in modern enterprises in terms of corporate responsibility and ethical issues.

We draw comfort in observing that other management accounting writers try to use our approach of practical examples, case studies and coverage of research findings, while also sharing our preference for the format and structure adopted here. We sharpen this by providing the very latest in corporate examples, survey findings and case studies. This ensures that you gain familiarity with concepts that are of relevance and concern to enterprises today.

Deciding on the sequence of chapters in a management and cost accounting textbook that spans introductory through to relatively detailed analysis of material is a challenge we have met successfully. Professors tend to have a preferred way of organising their course material. The five-part structure of this book and the sequencing of chapters have been designed to facilitate flexibility and diversity in the teaching of different topic areas and the use of the text for a range of courses and levels. An outline of the coverage and component chapters of each part is given in the part openers.

Assessment material

This book includes a high quantity and broad range of assessment material to further facilitate the use of the text on a diverse range of courses:

- **Review questions:** These short questions encourage students to review and/or critically discuss their understanding of the main topics and issues covered in each chapter, either individually or in a group.
- **Exercises:** These comprehensive questions are graded and grouped by their level of difficulty: basic, intermediate and advanced. Each question is preceded by a note of its topic coverage and an indication of the time it should take to complete. Where appropriate, the exercises include questions taken from examinations of several professional accountancy bodies. Fully worked solutions to a selection of exercises in each chapter (identified by an asterisk) are provided in Appendix A.

Case study problems

At the end of each of the five parts are problem-based illustrative cases. Each is more substantive and typically more demanding than the end-of-chapter exercises, integrating topics from several chapters in each of the core parts of the text, allowing you to apply your understanding of accounting concepts, issues and techniques within a broader organisational context, and to develop your critical thinking and analytical skills. The questions which follow the case material include some aspects suitable for group discussion/assignment.

Glossary

This comprises an alphabetical listing of all the key terms, including a concise definition, so allowing revision of all the key concepts and techniques in the text.

Academic supplements

Academics and lecturers who adopt this text are provided with a range of additional materials to assist in the preparation and delivery of courses. These include:

- complete, downloadable Instructor's Manual with teaching ideas and solutions to end-of-chapter exercises not given in the text;
- suggested teaching notes to all case study problems;
- editable PowerPoint slides, organised by chapter, allowing you to provide a lecture or seminar presentation (and/or to print handouts). These incorporate colourful graphics, outlines of chapter material, text exhibits, additional examples and graphical explanations of difficult topics;
- solutions to additional questions and spreadsheet problems.

This text is supported by its own MyLab Accounting which is an environment that gives unlimited opportunities for practice and assessment using a range of questions, and which provides timely feedback. Updates to MyLab Accounting include alignment of the questions to match new content in the book and the addition of over 100 exercises that are new to this edition to improve coverage across the most important topics. In addition to the useful self-study suggestions in the Study Plan, and the vast range of exercises (over 800) to select from, a better mix of questions has been incorporated into MyLab Accounting for this edition, allowing teaching staff to better test students' performance using a greater variety of question types. Finally, four new short videos explaining essential concepts can be used within teaching to consolidate your students' understanding or support self-study and revision.

For access to MyLab Accounting, students need both a course ID and an access card (see the advert on the inside front cover of the book).

Alnoor Bhimani
Srikant Datar
Madhav Rajan
November 2022

Lecturer Resources

For password-protected online resources tailored to support the use of this textbook in teaching, please log in as an educator on our website www.pearson.com and search for this textbook, where you will find a tab providing instructor resources.

AUTHORS' ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We are indebted to many individuals for their ideas and assistance. Our primary thanks go to the many academics and practitioners who have advanced our knowledge of management and cost accounting. Aside from the many individuals in North America who have contributed in one way or another, we would like to thank the many educators who have provided material for inclusion in the text, or who have painstakingly commented on chapters in draft form, or have otherwise helped the review process. We also thank the team at Pearson for their extensive support throughout.

Finally, we would like to thank the following professional accountancy bodies for their assistance and permission to reproduce copyright material:

The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants
The Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales
The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland
The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants
The Institute of Chartered Accountants in Ireland

PART I

Management and cost accounting fundamentals

The first part of the book is intended to provide an introduction to fundamental concepts and ideas in management and cost accounting. Chapter 1 considers the role of accounting and accountants in organisations. Chapters 2–7 discuss relevant technical and broader organisational issues in the design and functioning of cost systems. Specifically, Chapter 2 provides an introduction to costing terminology and its aims. Chapters 3 and 4 discuss what might be considered ends of a continuum in costing systems: job order costing and process costing. Chapter 5 addresses fundamental cost allocation issues while Chapter 6 deals with joint-costing situations. The final chapter in this part discusses absorption costing and variable costing as two distinct approaches to stock costing.

Chapter 1	The manager and management accounting	2
Chapter 2	An introduction to cost terms and purposes	33
Chapter 3	Job costing	59
Chapter 4	Process costing	90
Chapter 5	Cost allocation	128
Chapter 6	Cost allocation: joint-cost situations	157
Chapter 7	Income effects of alternative stock-costing methods	183
Part I	Case study problems	212

CHAPTER 1

The manager and management accounting

Former accountants have headed many large companies across the world, including PepsiCo, Coca-Cola, BT, Siemens, 3i, Shell, Rolls-Royce, Vodafone, Burger King, Royal Bank of Scotland, Asda and Nike. Finance leaders' roles in organisations change continuously. More than half of Chief Executive Officers (CEOs) of FTSE 100 (a share index of the 100 companies listed on the London Stock Exchange with the highest market value) have a background in accounting or financial management (Global Accounting Network, 2022) and 30% of Fortune 500 (the 500 largest US industrial corporations by revenue) CEOs spend the first four years of their careers developing a strong foundation in finance. In the financial sector, almost a quarter of CEOs previously held the role of CFO (Amato, 2022). The rapid rise of accounting and finance executives is unrivalled by other corporate roles. This is partially because they help guide companies at the most senior level, offering strong analytical skills, organisational acumen, a dedication to continuous improvement and widening stakeholder engagement.

Across virtually all organisations, accountants' duties involve management planning, control and decision making, although the enterprise context determines the specific accounting and financial management responsibilities they must deliver on. The demands on accounting and finance professionals always differ and there is no one-size-fits-all in management accounting. Recently, many accountants have broadened their activities to include risk management, business strategy, sustainability objectives and digital transformation roles. CPA Canada, a national organisation representing the Canadian accounting profession, with 210,000 qualified members, considers that its members must be 'broad-minded, forward-thinking professionals who undertake appropriate analysis, exercise good judgment, communicate effectively and act to protect the public interest' (CPA Canada 2022). Managers in all companies, whether small or large, must understand how revenues and costs behave or they risk losing control of the performance of their firms. But this is not sufficient and managers' use of management accounting information must go beyond this to include making decisions about research and development, production planning, budgeting, pricing, and the products or services to offer customers. Strategic action in enterprises is increasingly informed by management accounting input.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Differentiate management accounting from financial accounting
- Recognise the growing role of strategy in management accounting processes
- Identify five broad purposes of accounting systems
- Understand how accounting can influence planning, control and decision making
- Distinguish between the score-keeping, attention-directing and problem-solving functions of management accounting
- Recognise that economic benefits, costs as well as contextual and organisational process issues are relevant to accounting systems design and operation
- Assess how companies add value
- Understand why digitalisation is management accounting's key challenge today

How managerial activities and decisions link to accounting intelligence continuously evolves. This book addresses questions such as: What types of decisions do managers make? How can accounting help managers make these decisions? Are managerial needs proactively being met by management accounting solutions? In this first chapter, we look at some dimensions of the role of management accounting in modern enterprises, why management accounting is subject to continual change and what digital technologies imply for the field. A consideration of these issues will give us a framework for studying the succeeding chapters.

Management accounting, financial accounting and cost accounting

A distinction is often made in practice between management accounting and financial accounting. **Management accounting** measures, analyses and reports financial information and non-financial information that are intended primarily to assist managers in fulfilling the goals of the organisation. A management accounting system is an important facet of overall organisational control, as is discussed later in this book. CIMA Global sees management accounting as an integral part of management. It considers management accounting as combining accounting, finance and management with leading-edge techniques that drive successful businesses. Individual managers often require the information in an accounting system to be presented or reported differently. Consider, for example, sales order information. A sales manager at Porsche may be interested in the total amount of sales in Euros to determine the commissions payable to salespeople. A distribution manager at Porsche may be interested in the sales order quantities by geographic region and by customer-requested delivery dates to ensure vehicles get delivered to customers on time. A manufacturing manager at Porsche may be interested in the quantities of various products and their desired delivery dates so that they can develop an effective production schedule. To simultaneously serve the needs of all three managers, Porsche creates a database consisting of small, detailed bits of information that can be used for multiple purposes. For instance, the sales order database will contain detailed information about a product, its selling price, quantity ordered, and delivery details (place and date) for each sales order. The database stores information in a way that allows different managers to access the information they need.

Many managers now use data analytic techniques to gain insights into the data they collect. This is popularly referred to as ‘big data’ and is associated with machine learning and artificial intelligence. The most common application of machine learning and artificial intelligence is in making predictions. For example, using historical purchase data and other characteristics of a customer, a company like Netflix predicts which movie a particular customer might like and recommends that movie to the customer. Netflix then obtains feedback on whether the customer liked the movie or not and incorporates this feedback into the model, improving and refining it. In this sense the machine learns from its correct and incorrect predictions and is seen as acting intelligently. The vast quantity and variety of data have led to the development of many new prediction techniques.

Professional management accountants apply the principles of accounting and financial management to create, protect, preserve and increase value for the shareholder of for-profit and not-for-profit enterprises in the public and private sectors. They might engage in the identification, generation, presentation, interpretation and use of relevant information relevant to:

- develop, communicate and implement strategies
- plan long-, medium- and short-term operations
- determine capital structure and fund that structure
- design reward strategies for executives and shareholders
- coordinate design, operations and marketing decisions and evaluate performance

- control operations and ensure the efficient use of resources
- measure and report financial and non-financial information to stakeholders
- implement corporate governance procedures, risk management and internal controls
- explore the potential for managerial and organisational value creation.

Management accounting information and reports do not have to follow set principles or rules. The key questions are always: (1) how will this information help managers do their jobs better; (2) do the benefits of producing this information exceed the costs; and (3) does the information recognise what is specific about the organisational context?

Financial accounting and management accounting have different goals. **Financial accounting** focuses on external reporting that is directed by authoritative guidelines. Organisations are required to follow these guidelines in their financial reports to outside parties. Financial accounting is guided by prescribed accounting standards. Principles define the set of revenue and cost measurement rules and the types of items that are classified as assets, liabilities or owners' equity in balance sheets which form the standards applicable. Sources of authority for accounting regulation differ across countries. In Spain, for instance, the Instituto de Contabilidad y Auditoria de Cuentas (ICAC) has been appointed by the government for this purpose. In the UK, the Financial Reporting Council (FRC) has the authority to issue accounting standards. The FRC's regulator views its objective to 'regulate auditors, accountants and actuaries' and to 'set the UK's corporate governance and stewardship codes' (FRC, 2022). Its work is aimed at 'investors and others who rely on company reports, audit and high-quality risk management'.

In France, the Autorité des Normes Comptable (ANC), a public body, oversees accounting legislation, whereas in Denmark, the Føreningen af Statsautoriserede Revisører (FSR), a professional accounting body, oversees the setting of accounting standards. Other bodies which are concerned with accounting standards include: in Australia, the Australian Accounting Standards Board (AASB); in China, the China Accounting Standards Committee (CASC); and in South Africa, the South Africa Accounting Standards Board. While conceptions of how accounting information should be reported can have a high degree of national specificity, across the world over 140 national jurisdictions use International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) which are issued by the IFRS Foundation and the International Accounting Standards Board (IASB).

In contrast to adhering to financial reporting standards, management accounting is not restricted by accounting principles. For example, a car manufacturer may present a particular estimated 'value' of a brand name (say, the Volvo brand name) in its *internal* financial reports for marketing managers, although doing so does not have to accord with the legal framework within which externally oriented financial reports can be prepared in Sweden.

While the work of management accountants and financial accountants tends to be organisation-specific, some broad differences generally exist. They may be categorised as follows:

- *Regulations.* Management accounting reports are generally prepared for internal use and no external regulations govern their preparation. Conversely, financial accounting reports are generally required to be prepared according to accounting regulations and guidelines imposed by law and the accounting profession.
- *Range and detail of information.* Management accounting reports may encompass financial, non-financial and qualitative information which may be very detailed or highly aggregated. Financial accounting is usually broad-based, lacking detail and intended to provide an overview of the position and performance of an organisation over a time period. It tends to focus on financial information.
- *Reporting interval.* Management accounting reports may be produced frequently – on an hourly, daily or weekly basis, possibly to span several years. The interval covered by management accounting information will be dictated by the decision-making and control needs of the information users. Conversely, financial accounting reports are produced annually. Some large companies also produce semi-annual and quarterly reports.

- *Time period*. Management accounting reports may include historical and current information, but also often provide information on expected future performance and activities. Financial accounting reports provide information on the performance and position of an organisation for the past period. They tend to be backward-looking.

Exhibit 1.1 outlines the major differences between management accounting and financial accounting. Note, however, that reports such as balance sheets, income statements and statements of cash flows are common to both management accounting and financial accounting.

Cost accounting measures and reports financial and non-financial information related to the organisation's acquisition or use of resources. It provides information for both management accounting and financial accounting. For example, calculating the cost of a product is a cost accounting function that meets both the financial accountant's stock-valuation needs and the management accountant's decision-making needs (such as deciding how to price products and choosing which products to promote). However, today most accounting professionals take the perspective that cost information is part of the management accounting information collected to make management decisions. Thus, the distinction between management accounting and cost accounting is not so clear-cut, and we often use these terms interchangeably in the book.

A central task of managers is cost management. We use the term **cost management** to describe the actions managers undertake in the short-run and long-run planning and control of costs that increase value for customers and lower the costs of products and services. An important component of cost management is the recognition that prior management decisions often commit the organisation to the subsequent incurrence of costs. Consider the costs of handling materials in a production plant. Decisions about plant layout and the extent of physical movement of

Exhibit 1.1 Major differences between management and financial accounting

	Management Accounting	Financial Accounting
Purpose of information	Help managers make decisions to fulfil an organisation's goals	Communicate an organisation's financial position to investors, banks, regulators and other outside parties
Primary users	Managers of the organisation	External users such as investors, banks, regulators and suppliers
Focus and emphasis	Future-oriented (budget for 2024 prepared in 2023)	Past-oriented (reports on 2023 performance prepared in 2024)
Rules of measurement and reporting	Internal measures and reports do not have to follow relevant accounting standards but are based on cost-benefit analyses	Financial statements must be prepared in accordance with relevant accounting standards and be certified by external, independent auditors
Time span and type of reports	Varies from hourly information to 15 to 20 years, with financial and non-financial reports on products, departments, territories, and strategies	Annual and quarterly financial reports, primarily on the company as a whole
Behavioural implications	Designed to influence the behaviour of managers and other employees	Primarily reports economic events but also influences behaviour because manager's compensation is often based on reported financial results

materials required for production are usually made before production begins. These decisions greatly influence the level of day-to-day materials handling costs once production begins. For this reason, cost management has a broad focus. It typically includes the continuous reduction of costs and encompasses the whole life cycle of the product from product conception to deletion. Cost management is often carried out as a key part of general management strategies and their implementation. Examples include enhanced customer satisfaction programmes, quality initiatives and more efficient supplier relationships management via the internet. In other words, cost management is not only about reducing costs. Cost management also includes making decisions to incur additional costs with the goal of enhancing revenues and profits. Whether or not to enter new markets, implement new organisational processes, and change product designs are also cost management decisions. Information from accounting systems helps managers to manage costs, but the information and the accounting systems themselves are not cost management.

Ultimately, management accounting's primary purpose is to enhance value creation within both private and public sector organisations. The management accountant must make use of a sound body of knowledge, as well as abide by ethical guidelines (discussed in the appendix of this chapter). Of particular relevance is the growing contribution which management accountants make to strategic financial management information production and analysis and to strategic management action itself.

Strategic decisions and management accounting

Many organisations seek to be more expansionist, entrepreneurial, risk taking and innovative as a conscious move away from inwardly focused management techniques. Entirely new markets are emerging for products and services and avant-garde innovative firms are reaping significant benefits through innovative management approaches and a growing focus on action through focused strategic information.

A company's strategy specifies how the organisation matches its own capabilities with the opportunities in the marketplace. In other words, strategy describes how an organisation creates value for its customers while distinguishing itself from its competitors. A business might be thought to follow one of two broad strategies (we consider this further in Chapter 20). Some companies, such as EasyJet and Carrefour, follow a cost leadership strategy. They profit and grow by providing quality products or services at low prices and by judiciously managing their costs. Other companies, such as Apple and Bang & Olufsen, follow a product differentiation strategy. They generate profits and growth by offering differentiated or unique products or services that appeal to their customers and are often priced higher than the less popular products or services of their competitors.

Deciding between these strategies is a critical part of what managers do. Management accountants work closely with managers in various departments to formulate strategies by providing information about the sources of competitive advantage, such as (1) the company's cost, productivity or efficiency advantage relative to competitors; or (2) the premium prices a company can charge over its costs from distinctive product or service features.

Management accounting information helps managers focus on strategic issues by answering questions such as the following:

- *Who are our most important customers, and what critical capability do we have to be competitive and deliver value to our customers?* After Amazon's success selling books online, management accountants at Waterstones, a British book retailer, outlined the costs and benefits of several alternative approaches for enhancing the company's information technology infrastructure and developing the capability to sell books online. A similar cost–benefit analysis led Toyota to build flexible computer-integrated manufacturing plants that enable it to use the same equipment efficiently to produce a variety of cars in response to changing customer tastes.
- *What is the bargaining power of our customers?* Kellogg Company, for example, uses the reputation of its brand to reduce the bargaining power of its customers and charge higher prices for its cereals.

- *What is the bargaining power of our suppliers?* Management accountants at Dell Computers consider the significant bargaining power of Intel, its supplier of microprocessors, and Microsoft, its supplier of operating system software, when considering how much it must pay to acquire these products.
- *What substitute products exist in the marketplace, and how do they differ from our product in terms of features, price, cost and quality?* Hewlett-Packard, for example, designs, costs and prices new printers after comparing the functionality and quality of its printers to other printers available in the marketplace.
- *Will adequate cash be available to fund the strategy, or will additional funds need to be raised?* Tesla CEO Elon Musk's bid to buy Twitter with a $46.5 billion takeover offer in April 2022 included debt and equity commitment letters filed with the US Securities and Exchange Commission.

Research reveals that companies that emphasise creating long-term value for shareholders are likely to outperform those that focus on preserving shareholder value in the short term. Companies whose primary focus is on internal control and value preservation do not increase their stock market valuations as effectively as those that look outside for opportunities to create value. Outperformers in business are those with the strategic and external awareness to evolve and change when the need arises. Studies have also revealed that performance-based pay, focusing on highly tangible near-term measurable variables damages the creation of longer-term shareholder value. Management accounting information is called upon not only to help managers make balanced decisions in the face of organisational challenges and the opportunities their environments bring, but increasingly also to monitor and evaluate strategic progress.

The trend for professional institutes of management accounting has been to reorient the field towards strategic management information preparation and analysis and the actual participation of management accountants in such activities. Operational accounting techniques and issues continue to be relevant, but their roles are being recast in the context of their contributions and relationships with organisation-wide financial management and strategic concerns.

The shift towards managerial and strategic engagement rather than just acting as providers of largely financial information about enterprises allows management accountants to align their work to the changing business and organisational landscape. The beginning of the millennium has seen a radical shift in the economic context in which companies operate. Early in the twentieth century, the Ford Motor Company demonstrated the ability of mass production to lower the price of a product by 60% or more. This enabled consumption to move its focus away from elite consumers to the masses. Today, another transformation is taking place away from mass consumption to a focus on individuals. Consumers, in many sectors, are building platforms, tools and relationships which enable a high degree of personalisation. Companies such as Amazon, eBay, Apple, YouTube and Meta fall into this new category. Digital interactive technologies allow consumers greater self-determination. A smartphone allows the user to define the experience desired from the device at very low cost. Assets, information, relationships and management are now 'distributed' as the internet, mobile computing, wireless broadband and new software applications have been created. As products and technology offer different experiences to the consumer, management accountants need to adapt to understand, control and manage attendant cost structures.

Many established management accounting concepts that were developed to serve traditional industrial and service sectors continue to find usage across many enterprises, but the manner in which they are deployed is being reshaped. Many firms are pursuing digital transformation initiatives, which can involve the use of different technologies such as cloud computing, the **Internet of Things**, **big data** and **artificial intelligence (AI)**. Consider Virgin Holidays, which uses AI to test its email marketing approach. In one campaign, the company tested different subject lines and text within emails to work out what was most effective. This enabled insights into how best to promote holidays including questioning whether a big promotion (such as 50% off) requires the message to lead in any communications sent. The AI-generated insights revealed that the best results came from emails that had messages like 'Book before Monday' or offered a getaway from stress at

work or bad weather in London instead of a specific sales message. Saul Lopes who led the AI project at Virgin Holidays notes that 'The AI took away all of the bullsh*t and we are no longer led by human ego or human bias but by numbers and results' (Digitalfix, 2018). Consider also the Lloyds Banking Group's use of big data analytics to better understand its retail and commercial activities and to develop strategy and pricing approaches. One application has been the use of big data analytics to explore the integrated customer information, marketing and digital aspects of the bank. Rajput (2020) reports that, '24% of the bank's income came from leads generated by the analytics system. The bank has also been able to establish a new product strategy using customer data from the analytics system. It has also been able to manage costs, detect potentially fraudulent activities, and build credit risk models.'

Organisations like Rolls-Royce (see 'Concepts in action' box below), Virgin Holidays and Lloyds as well as smaller enterprises can use data analytics especially as more and more digital technologies are invested into by enterprises to inform planning decisions, manage costs, unravel insights and generally improve decision-making activities. These are all tasks at the forefront of management accountants' raison d'être given their concern to measure, analyse and report both financial and non-financial information intended to assist managers to identify and pursue enterprise strategies.

Accounting systems and management controls

What are the objectives of accounting systems? Is Renault's management control system more effective than Audi's? Is Nestlé's more helpful in planning than Cadbury's? Is Equinor's superior to BP's? This section provides an overview of the broad purposes of accounting and management control systems, illustrating the role of accounting information.

The major purposes of accounting systems

The accounting system is among the most significant quantitative information system in almost every organisation. This system aims to provide information for five broad purposes:

- *Purpose 1: Formulating overall strategies and plans.* This includes new product development and investment in both tangible (equipment) and intangible (brands, patents or people) assets, and frequently involves special-purpose reports. Increasingly, many organisations seek market-, supplier- and customer-based information for determining longer-term strategic action.
- *Purpose 2: Resource allocation decisions such as product and customer emphasis and pricing.* This frequently involves reports on the profitability of products or services, brand categories, customers, distribution channels, and so on.
- *Purpose 3: Cost planning and cost control of operations and activities.* This involves reports on revenues, costs, assets, and the liabilities of divisions, plants and other areas of responsibility.
- *Purpose 4: Performance measurement and evaluation of people.* This includes comparisons of actual results with planned results. It can be based on financial or non-financial measures.
- *Purpose 5: Meeting external regulatory and legal reporting requirements where they exist.* Regulations and statutes often prescribe the accounting methods to be followed. Financial reports are provided by some organisations to shareholders who are making decisions to buy, hold or sell company shares. These reports ordinarily attempt to adhere to authoritatively determined guidelines and procedures which exist in many countries.

Each of the purposes stated here may require a different presentation or reporting method. Accountants combine or adjust the method and data to answer the questions posed by different internal or external users.

The nature of management-oriented accounting information alters in line with changes in the business environment. Over the past decade, many enterprises have experienced a shift from a traditional monitoring and control perspective to a more business- and support-oriented focus. This

requires a broad-based understanding of the business, with management accountants working alongside managers, as partners within cross-functional teams rather than in a separate accounting function. Some present-day key influences on changes in accounting information include:

- an increased pace of change in the business world
- shorter product life cycles and competitive advantages
- organisational responses to infrequent events such as pandemics and wars
- a requirement for more strategic action by management
- digital transformation of companies and new business models
- the outsourcing of non-value-added but necessary services
- increased uncertainty and the explicit recognition of risk
- novel forms of reward structures
- increased regulatory activity and altered financial reporting requirements
- more complex business transactions
- increased focus on customer satisfaction
- new ethics of enterprise governance
- the rise of intellectual capital
- enhancing knowledge management processes.

In this book we consider the accounting information implications of many of these developments.

Planning and control

There are many definitions of planning and control. Study the left side of Exhibit 1.2, which uses planning and control at *The Sporting News* (SN) as an illustration. We define **planning** (the top box) as choosing goals, predicting results under various ways of achieving those goals, and then deciding how to attain the desired goals. For example, one goal of SN may be to increase operating profit. Three main alternatives are considered to achieve this goal:

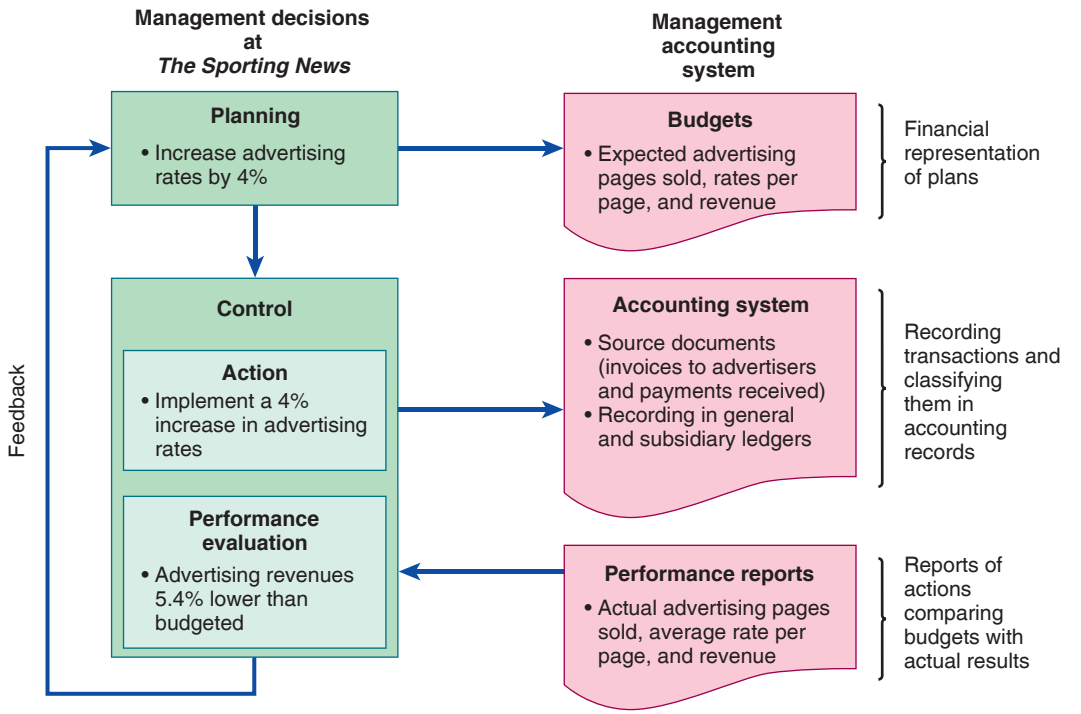
1 Change the price per newspaper.
2 Change the rate per page charged to advertisers.
3 Reduce labour costs by having fewer workers at SN's printing facility.

Assume that the editor, Bérangère Saunier, increases advertising rates by 4% to €5200 per page for March 2023. She budgets advertising revenue to be €4 160 000 (€5200 × 800) pages predicted to be sold in March 2023. A **budget** is the quantitative expression of a plan of action and an aid to the coordination and implementation of the plan.

Control (the bottom box in Exhibit 1.2) covers both the action that implements the planning decision and deciding on performance evaluation and the related feedback that will help future decision making. With our SN example, the action would include communicating the new advertising-rate schedule to SN's marketing sales representatives and advertisers. The performance evaluation provides feedback on the actual results.

During March 2023, SN sells advertising, sends out invoices and receives payments. These invoices and receipts are recorded in the accounting system. Exhibit 1.3 shows the March 2023 advertising revenue performance report for SN. This report indicates that 760 pages of advertising (40 pages less than the budgeted 800 pages) were sold in March 2023. The average rate per page was €5080 compared with the budgeted €5200 rate, yielding actual advertising revenue in March 2023 of €3 860 800. The actual advertising revenue in March 2023 is €299 200 less than the budgeted €4 160 000. Understanding the reasons for any difference between actual results and budgeted results is an important part of **management by exception**, which is the practice of concentrating on areas not operating as expected (such as a cost overrun on a project) and placing less attention

Exhibit 1.2 How accounting facilitates planning and control



on areas operating as expected. The term **variance** in Exhibit 1.3 refers to the difference between the actual results and the budgeted amounts.

The performance report in Exhibit 1.3 could spur investigation. For example, did other newspapers experience a comparable decline in advertising revenue? Did the marketing department make sufficient efforts to convince advertisers that, even with the new rate of €5200 per page, advertising in the SN was a good buy? Why was the actual average rate per page €5080 instead of the budgeted rate of €5200? Did some sales representatives offer discounted rates? Did a major advertiser threaten to transfer its advertising to another newspaper unless it was given a large rate-per-page reduction? Answers to these questions could prompt Saunier to take subsequent actions, including, for example, pushing marketing personnel to renew efforts to promote advertising by existing and potential advertisers.

Planning and control for sustainability is equally challenging. What should SN do about energy consumption in its printing presses, recycling of newsprint, and pollution prevention? Among the uncertainties managers' face is whether customers will reward SN for these actions by being more loyal and whether investors will react favourably to managers spending resources on sustainability. Information to gauge customer and investor sentiment is not easy to obtain. Predicting how sustainability efforts might pay off in the long run is far from certain. Even as managers make

Exhibit 1.3 Advertising revenue performance report at *The Sporting News* for March 2023

	Actual results	Budgeted amounts	Variance
Advertising pages sold	760	800	40 unfavourable
Average rate per page	€5 080	€5 200	€120 unfavourable
Advertising revenue	€3 860 800	€4 160 000	€299 200 unfavourable

decisions, the sustainability landscape will doubtlessly change with respect to environmental regulations and societal expectations, requiring managers to learn and adapt (we consider sustainability issues further in Chapter 22).

A well-conceived plan includes enough flexibility so that managers can seize opportunities unforeseen at the time the plan is formulated. In no case should control mean that managers cling to a pre-existing plan when unfolding events indicate that actions not encompassed by the original plan would offer the best results to the company. Planning and control are so strongly intertwined that managers do not spend time drawing artificially rigid distinctions between them. Unless otherwise stated, we use control in its broadest sense to denote the entire management process of both planning and control. For example, instead of referring to a management planning and control system, we will refer to a management control system. Similarly, we will often refer to the control purpose of accounting instead of the awkward planning and control purpose of accounting.

Do not underestimate the role of individuals and groups in management control systems. Both accountants and managers should always remember that management control systems are not confined to technical matters such as the type of computer system used and the frequency with which reports are prepared. Management control is primarily a human activity that tends to focus on how to help individuals do their jobs better. For example, it is often better for managers to discuss personally with underperforming workers how to improve performance, rather than just sending those workers a report highlighting their underperformance.

Moreover, do not view accounting's intended roles as being shared by all organisations. Accounting practice tends to be informed by technical considerations but is always indicative of many organisational, social and political processes that are specific to the enterprise context. Thus, two equally profitable companies of the same size within the same industry and having comparable accounting systems at their disposition may exhibit very different uses and purposes served by these accounting systems. This is because, although accounting systems may be designed with similar aims in mind, users of accounting information will perceive different possibilities and priorities as to the roles accounting can play within their organisations. Do not be surprised to see accounting systems in practice being used in ways that reflect the preferences and idiosyncrasies of their users rather than the predefined functions identified by accounting information system designers.

Feedback: a major key

Exhibit 1.2 shows a feedback loop from control back to planning. Feedback involves managers examining past performance and systematically exploring alternative ways to improve future performance. It can lead to a variety of responses, including the following:

Use of feedback	Example
• Tracking growth	• Unilever monitors the attainment of its 'Path to Growth' sales and operating margin targets.
• Searching for alternative means of operating	• Mbarara University Hospital compares internal processing versus third-party managing (outsourcing) of its accounts receivable operations.
• Changing methods for making decisions	• Lombard Odier & Cie, a Swiss private banking institution, whose success is built on customised confidential client service, provides tailor-made financial information to customers after assessing client preferences in terms of communication mode and format.
• Making predictions	• Siemens adopts a team-based new product development process with input from both manufacturing and marketing, following an analysis of information flows.
• Changing operations	• Land Rover reduces scrap, obsolescence and lost material and improves stock turns after establishing innovative supplier relationships.
• Changing the reward system	• Convent, Germany's leading producer of crisps and salted snacks, has established data-recording links with customers to minimise use of its shelf space while maximising return for both retailers and Convent alike.

Scorekeeping, attention-directing and problem-solving functions

Traditionally management accountants have tried to perform different functions which for simplicity can be categorised as: scorekeeping, attention directing and problem solving. **Scorekeeping** refers to the accumulation of data and the reporting of reliable results to all levels of management. Examples are the recording of sales, purchases of materials, and payroll payments. This task is increasingly undertaken by digital systems such a Robotic Process Automation (RPA). **Attention directing** is a second function which seeks to make visible both opportunities and problems on which managers need to focus. Examples are highlighting rapidly growing markets where the company may be underfunding its investment and highlighting products with higher-than-expected rework rates or customer-return rates. Big data analytics and the use of machine learning deployed in a growing number of organisations can trigger prompts for managers that relate to trends of possible relevance which may not be picked up by humans. Attention directing should focus on all opportunities to add value to an organisation including cost-reduction possibilities, product pricing and operational changes. **Problem solving** refers to the comparative analysis undertaken to identify the best alternatives in relation to the organisation's goals. An example is comparing the financial advantages of leasing a fleet of vehicles rather than owning those vehicles. Many problems can be solved by machines where the intelligence is actioned by-passing the need for human intervention.

Accountants serving the scorekeeping function accumulate data and report the results to all levels of management. Accountants serving this function are responsible for the reliability of the reported information. The scorekeeping function in many organisations requires processing numerous data items (millions of items in some cases). Computerised information systems are used by these organisations to automate scorekeeping tasks so that they are executed as flawlessly as possible.

Many organisations that automate scorekeeping have management accountants concentrating solely on the attention-directing or problem-solving function. However, as we have suggested, the adoption of technologies such as AI and the cloud is disrupting traditional roles and functions. In other words, these three functions (scorekeeping, attention-directing and problem-solving) that traditionally determined the management accountant's activities remain essential but are being carried out with differing levels of human input. This is altering the world of management accounting practice.

Costs, benefits and context

This book regards management accounting as encompassing the assessment of costs, benefits and context. That is, one criterion for choosing among alternative accounting systems is how well they are perceived to help achieve organisational goals in relation to the costs of those systems and the context within which they are to operate. Many studies indicate that the functioning of management accounting systems is affected as much by behavioural, cultural and social factors as by technical ones. This book makes clear that the utilisation of management accounting information can depend on the behaviour, attitudes and personal characteristics of people rather than just the technical merits of accounting systems. At times, resistance to management accounting change may be reflective of incompatibilities between the new system and the norms or habits of employees in the organisation.

Managers can be regarded as customers of information system output. They need information to serve their managerial needs. As a customer, a manager may buy a more elaborate management accounting system when its perceived expected benefits exceed its perceived expected costs and only after due consideration of contextual factors is undertaken. Although the benefits may take many forms, managers take decisions to attain both personal and organisational goals. Consider the installation of a company's first budgeting system. Previously, the company might have used

some historical record-keeping mechanism and may have undertaken little formal planning. A major benefit of installing the budgeting system is that managers will be compelled to plan more formally. They may make different, more profitable decisions than if they had continued operating with the historical mechanism. So we might say that the expected benefits exceed the expected costs of the new budgeting system. These costs could include investments in computer hardware and software, training people, and the ongoing operating costs of maintaining the system. But it must be ensured that, the technically superior system should mirror with the values and inclinations of the intended users. The characteristics of the system have to align with the management style of its users and the ethos of the organisation using it.

Attempting to measure the costs of a new accounting system and working out its likely benefits is seldom easy. When we then include the behavioural characteristics of people to see if they tally with the technical aspects of the system, the whole exercise becomes even more complex. This is because we cannot assume people are rational economic actors. One accounting application may work well in one enterprise but may falter in another. Some organisations will face key barriers in implementing new accounting systems whereas others will not. There may be differences in the enthusiasm senior managers have towards altered accounting systems input. Managers generally tend to differ in how they view the usefulness of accounting information. In other words, accounting systems do not produce the same results wherever they exist. There are differences across organisations in the patterns and processes of adoption and in how extensively managers want to rely on accounting information. Some managers work on the basis of tacit perceptions matter most and others prefer hard numbers and formal explicit information. Certain organisations such as Amazon, Capital One, Barclays Bank and Coca-Cola 'compete on analytics'. These firms rely to a great extent on both qualitative and quantitative information in making decisions. Their managers seek out formalised data input to guide their decisions. The analytical nature of the information systems they use echoes their analytical managerial style of action. Clearly, organisational context is important to consider in the adoption of an accounting system. But just as organisational characteristics are of significance, so too is country context in the design of management accounting systems and in understanding differences in the ways in which accounting gets used. Harrison and McKinnon (2007, p. 114) reflecting on much research evidence state that: 'Individuals crossing national and cultural borders to work require an understanding of the differences in management control practices they are likely to encounter, and sensitivity to the cultural underpinnings of those practices'. Thus a better understanding of context can help you determine how an accounting information system might be used in an organisation. Context is all-important to consider as there are technical factors, personal characteristics, industry dimensions and enduring cultural mores and national forces which influence the usage of financial information in organisations.

We have argued that assessing context and process issues can be helpful in choosing and designing accounting information systems and in considering how they will be used. Differences in the choice and use of accounting systems in organisations exist and are caused by many factors. In this book, you will be encouraged to think about both the economic aspects of management accounting as well as the organisational and social context in which accounting systems are deployed. The cost–benefit–context approach provides a solid point for analysing how, why and with what effects accounting is used in an enterprise.

Value creation

The design of a management accounting system should be guided by the challenges facing managers. Management accounting can play a principal role in helping managers focus on key themes of planning and control. We highlight the following here:

1 *Customer focus.* Customers are pivotal to the success of an organisation. The number of organisations aiming to be 'customer-driven' is large and increasing. For example, Amazon regards

itself as the most customer-centric company in the world. The challenge facing Amazon managers is to continue investing sufficient (but not excessive) resources in customer satisfaction such that profitable customers are attracted and retained. We discuss this theme in Chapter 12, where we address customer performance measures and customer-profitability analysis.

2 *Value-chain and supply-chain analysis.* The value chain is the sequence of business functions (see Exhibit 1.4) in which utility (usefulness) is added to the products or services of an organisation. These functions are as follows:

- **Research and development (R&D)** – the generation of, and experimentation with, ideas related to new products, services or processes.
- **Design of products, services or processes** – the detailed planning and engineering of products, services or processes.
- **Production** – the coordination and assembly of resources to produce a product or deliver a service.
- **Marketing** – the manner by which individuals or groups (a) learn about and value the attributes of products or services, and (b) purchase those products or services.
- **Distribution** – the mechanism by which products or services are delivered to the customer.
- **Customer service** – the support activities provided to customers.

Senior managers (including those from individual parts of the value chain) are responsible for deciding the organisation's overall strategy, how resources are to be obtained and used, and how rewards are to be given. This task covers the entire value chain. IKEA, the Swedish home furnishings retailer, focuses on analysing its value-added chain in order to reduce its costs while enhancing perceived value by the customer: unassembled furniture is profitably sold direct from the warehouse to customers who prize easy assembly instructions and familyoriented showrooms. Such efforts have helped IKEA attain the stature of a number 1 brand in Europe and Africa according to various rankings.

To implement their corporate strategies, companies such as Sony and Unilever use **customer relationship management (CRM)** to integrate people and technology in all business functions and deepen relationships with customers, partners, and distributors. CRM initiatives use technology to coordinate all customer-facing activities (such as marketing, sales calls, distribution and after-sales support) and the design and production activities necessary to get products to customers.

Accounting offers a major mechanism for helping managers to administer each of the business functions presented in Exhibit 1.4 and to coordinate their activities within the framework of the organisation as a whole. This book extensively discusses how accounting aims to assist managers in these tasks. Do not interpret Exhibit 1.4 as implying that managers should proceed sequentially through the value chain. There are important gains to be realised (in terms of, say,

Exhibit 1.4 The value chain of business functions

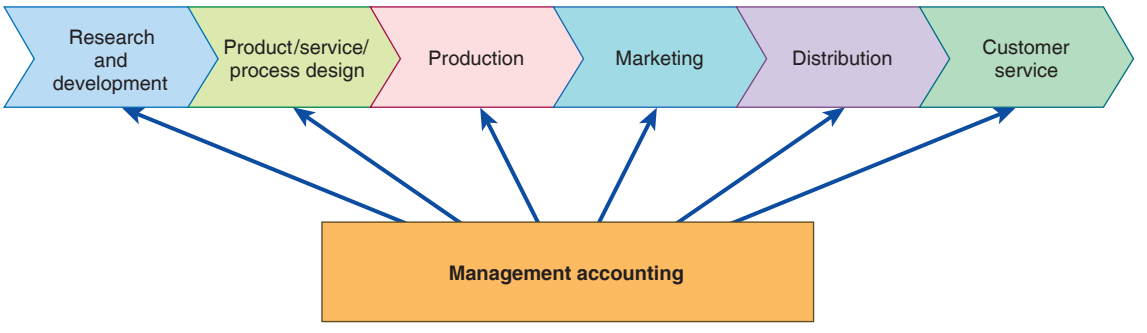
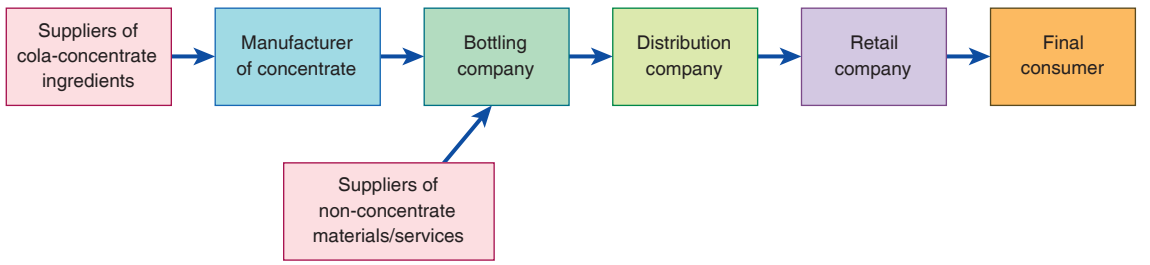


Exhibit 1.5 Supply chain for a cola bottling company



cost, quality, and the speed with which new products are developed) from having the individual parts of the value chain work concurrently.

The term supply chain describes the flow of goods, services, and information from cradle to grave, regardless of whether those activities occur in the same organisation or other organisations. Consider the beverage products of Coca-Cola or Pepsi. Many companies play a role in bringing these products to the final consumers. Exhibit 1.5 presents an overview of the supply chain. Cost management emphasises integrating and coordinating activities across all companies in the supply chain as well as across each business function in an individual company's value chain. To illustrate, both Coca-Cola and Pepsi bottling companies work with their suppliers (such as glass and can companies and sugar manufacturers) to reduce their materials-handling costs.

We discuss this theme in Chapter 15 on variance analysis, Chapter 12 on target costing and Chapter 21 on just-in-time (JIT) and supply-chain analysis.

3 *Key success factors.* These operational factors directly affect the economic viability of the organisation. Customers are demanding ever-improving levels of performance regarding several (or even all) of the following:

- *Cost.* Organisations are under continuous pressure to reduce the cost of their products or the services they sell to customers. To calculate and manage the cost of products, managers must understand activities, such as setting up machines or distributing products, that cause costs to arise as well as monitor the marketplace to determine the prices customers are willing to pay for the products. Management accounting information helps managers calculate a target cost for a product by subtracting from the 'target price' the operating income per unit of product that the company wants to earn. To achieve the target cost, managers have to find ways to eliminate some activities (such as rework) and reduce the costs of performing other activities in all value-chain functions – from initial R&D to customer service.
- *Quality.* Customers expect higher levels of quality and are less tolerant of low quality than in the past. **Total quality management (TQM)** is an integrative philosophy of management for continuously improving the quality of products and processes. Managers who implement TQM believe that every person in the value chain is responsible for delivering products and services that exceed customers' expectations. Using TQM, companies, for example, Toyota, design products to meet customer needs and wants, to make these products with zero (or very few) defects and waste, and to minimise inventories. Managers use management accounting information to evaluate the costs and revenue benefits of TQM initiatives.
- *Time.* Time has many components, including the time taken to develop and bring new products to market, the speed at which an organisation responds to customer requests, and the reliability with which promised delivery dates are met. Organisations are under pressure to complete activities faster and to meet promised delivery dates more reliably than in the past

in order to increase customer satisfaction. The increasing pace of technological innovation has led to shorter **product life cycles** and more rapid introduction of new products. To make new product development decisions, managers need to understand the costs and benefits of bringing products to market faster. Customer-response time – the speed at which an organisation responds to customer requests – is tied to customer satisfaction. Organisations can use management accounting to assess what is needed to meet promised delivery dates and reduce delivery times.

- *Innovation*. There is now a heightened perception that a continuing flow of innovative products or services is a prerequisite for the ongoing success of most organisations. Managers attempt to continually track their performance on the chosen key success factors vis-à-vis competitors. This tracking of companies outside their own organisation alerts managers to changes in the external environment that their own customers are also observing and evaluating. We discuss this theme in Chapter 11 on using activity-based costing to guide cost reductions; in Chapter 12 on target costing; in Chapter 20 on cost of quality reports, bottlenecks and manufacturing lead time and Chapter 20 on strategic management accounting.
- *Sustainability*. Companies are increasingly applying the key success factors of cost and efficiency, quality, time, and innovation to promote **sustainability** – the development and implementation of strategies to achieve long-term financial, social and environmental goals. An organisation may seek to make its operations sustainable by being more transparent and ethically sourcing its materials, being waste-conscious in its use of packaging and diverting landfill waste at their products' end-of-life and using environmentally conscious manufacturing practices and also opting for shipping means that negate the carbon footprint. Companies can also prioritise sustainable office design and move to renewable energy suppliers.

There is a growing drive by many firms to incorporate sustainability into their decision making. For instance, Osram is a German global high-tech company in semiconductor manufacturing. It has products serving a range of applications, including automobiles, smartphones, and lighting solutions. Osram publishes a detailed sustainability annual report with the help of management accountants to enable its commitment to corporate sustainability to be assessed. It has for instance highlighted management and supply chain issues which are hurdles to its target of climate neutrality by 2030. This focuses managerial attention on sustainability priorities aside from financial ones for external stakeholders to monitor. Another enterprise, Ørsted, is a Danish renewable energy company that relied mainly on fossil fuels for its operations with just 15% of the energy coming from renewable sources. The company recently committed to totally stop using coal by 2025. It also sold its oil and gas business to concentrate on renewable energy and already generates 85% of the energy the company distributes to clients from sustainable sources.

Why is sustainability of increasing importance to companies? There are several reasons: Investors care about sustainability and often make investment decisions based on not only a company's financial performance but also its social and environmental performance. Also, many firms are realising that sustainability goals attract and inspire both employees and customers who seek out products of companies with good sustainability records and avoid dealing with enterprises that have poor sustainability records. There is also a growth of civil and activist non-governmental organisations that monitor the sustainability performance of firms. They sometimes call out on social media and even take legal action against those that violate environmental regulations.

4 *Continuous improvement and benchmarking*. Continuous improvement by competitors creates a never-ending search for higher levels of performance within many organisations. Phrases such as the following capture this theme:

'A journey with no end',

'We are running harder just to stand still',

'If you're not going forward, you're going backwards'.

To compete, many companies concentrate on continually improving different aspects of their own operations. Naturally, different industries will focus on improving different operational factors. For example, airlines seek to improve the percentage of their flights that arrive on time. Internet companies want to improve the percentage of each 24-hour period that customers can access their online systems without delay. Sumitomo Electric Industries, the Japanese manufacturer of electric wire and cable, has daily meetings so that all employees maintain a continuous focus on cost reduction. Continuous improvement targets are often set by benchmarking or measuring the quality of products, services and activities of the company against the best-known levels of performance found in competing companies. Many companies within industry groups exchange information for the purpose of performance benchmarking. We discuss this theme in the sections in Chapter 14 on kaizen budgeting, Chapter 15 on continuous improvement and standard costs, and Chapter 9 on learning curves.

Over time, the emphasis placed on conventional strategies and organisational aims change and new priorities emerge. For instance, the global economic crisis, which began in 2008, altered the role of finance specialists in the eyes of governmental regulators and financial markets. There were calls for more accountability and transparency, and enterprises that have survived have responded positively to these demands. As noted above, demands expressed today stress enterprises moving towards models of functioning that are more sustainable and which show evidence of higher standards of corporate responsibility. Compliance requirements naturally need to be balanced with the need for high organisational performance and maintaining global competitiveness and so firms have to balance the various demands placed on them. Changes in markets, societal structures and norms and in the general business environment in which firms operate have always been of concern to practising management accountants. Ongoing global and business environment changes will continue to impact management accounting practices. An important global shift in evidence is the digitalisation of enterprises. We now explore the huge implication this has for management accounting.

Concepts in action

How the Internet of Things, artificial intelligence and big data make the unknown visible at Rolls-Royce

In 2018, Rolls-Royce received more than 70 trillion data points from its in-service fleet, which it used to develop engines that are 'connected, contextually aware and comprehending', according to Caroline Gorski, Director of the global ecosystem at Rolls-Royce's R^2 Data Labs. Samuels (2018) explains that the R^2 Data Labs team has 200 data architects, engineers, scientists and specialist managers to help the company produce over £250 million in value, through engine health-monitoring activities per year and growing. The team of internal and external talent Gorski has put together homes in on four technologies: first, on the industrial Internet of Things (IoT), which refers to the idea of billions of objects being connected to the internet to enable companies make things more visible and to cut costs. IoT technology, according to Deloitte, takes inputs from the physical world, uses digital technologies to derive insights from those inputs, and then makes outputs available for use back in the world. Additionally, autonomy and sensing, blockchain and quantum computing, and artificial intelligence (AI) and advanced analytics are part of the technological data generating focus of the R^2 Data Labs. During that data utilisation process, the team moves from an ideas phase through to the 'minimum viable product' creation, requiring rapid iteration where there is collaboration with customers (internal or external) and the application of design thinking so business opportunities can be detected.

One example of the application of data relates to the Engine Network. This is, as Samuels (2018) explains, a tool enabling Rolls-Royce to 'extract IoT sensor data from engines and health-monitoring systems, and to combine those records into a social network for the individuals who develop and use an engine'. Consequently, engineers at the company and private jet management companies can use the data obtained to analyse engine performance. There also exists an 'AI-based recommendation engine that presents issues proactively to engineers, so they are aware of issues before a problem exists'. Ultimately, for Gorski, 'this proactive approach creates enormous benefits for our service community and for the end customers that buy our jets'. Gorski likewise gives the example of the R^2 Data

Labs deploying IoT sensors for tracking ship performance. The company couples IoT-derived data with contextual data derived from the broader market environment, which has allowed the team to produce a fuel-efficiency guidance portal for crews who sail Rolls-Royce-powered ships. The result according to Samuels, is that 'The captains piloting ours ships can have real-time messaging from us that tells how to save fuel, how to sail efficiently and how to deal with challenging sea conditions.'

Emerging digital technologies can help large and small enterprises manage business costs and enhance process efficiency. Through connection devices, cost savings can accrue across resource inputs and lead to insights about improving products and activities in ways organisations have been unable to in the past. Although IoT and associated technologies are evolving, they are increasingly being used by firms and shaping our lives. One study by logistics company DHL and IT specialists Cisco predicts that IoT will save businesses close to £1 trillion in productivity costs alone (cited by infisim.com). The management accounting implications of digital technologies such as IoT for firms are very real.

Sources: Samuels, M. (2018) 'Successful IoT deployment: The Rolls-Royce approach' (www.zdnet.com/article/successful-iot-deployment-the-rolls-royce-approach/); 'The Internet of Things: Moving from cost savings to revenue generation' (www2.deloitte.com/us/en/pages/finance/articles/cfo-insights-internet-of-things-cost-savings-revenue-generation.html); 'How to reduce business costs with the Internet of Things (IoT)' (www.infisim.com/reduce-business-costs-internet-things-iot/); www.bernardmarr.com/default.asp.

Digitalisation and management accounting

The most significant challenge facing accountants today is to address the impact of **digitalisation**. For many enterprises, digitalisation is the process by which they become digital businesses, where the use of digital technologies changes the business model and provides new revenue and value-producing possibilities. What do digital technologies do? They enable businesses to convert physical analog text into digitised formats. Consequently, firms alter their business models and activities by digitalising their processes. Digital transformations ultimately move enterprises into new modes of operations with all areas of business integrating digital enablers. These digital technologies have the power to self-transform and branch out to other economic sectors triggering further productivity increases. So while accounting information has always been about enabling decision-making, digitalisation is forcing a massive alteration as to what management accounting needs to achieve. The focus used to be mainly on what present and past economic transactions and business outcomes meant for managerial action. But digitalisation is changing the essence of accounting expertise in several ways. It is first moving away from what has taken place to what likely will occur because information can be premised on activities that precede financial activities. In other words, management accountants must play a role in unravelling what is happening now, to a large degree by exploring big data, to determine the coming shape of financial transactions. Secondly, executive action can increasingly be autopiloted such that financial objectives are pursued based on machine-based decisions and action rather than through necessary human input. For the management accountant this is important as the assessment of accounting information undertaken by non-human agents does not require management accounting expertise input as traditionally sourced and human users of accounting information will also have changed requirements (see Exhibit 1.6). Thirdly, we have been used to seeing accounting capturing value creation as products or resources pass through the value chain. But we are now seeing more and more situations where accounting itself becomes part of the products being reported on. Information-emitting tags make products those things that

are reported on as well as the things that provide the accounting information! In effect then, the accounting function is becoming much more complex than it has been and digitalisation is what is driving this complexity.

Two points in relation to digital technologies specifically need highlighting at this stage:

- *Digital disruption and cognitive business*. Digital technologies are impacting many industries and enabling new business models. Robotics and automation, for example, are replacing repetitive human tasks and changing the way decisions are made. The rise of cognitive business, powered by the extreme growth of data and machine learning power and accessibility, provides new insights which, if harnessed, can directly shape decision making. It is therefore the case that accounting professionals need to upskill, so they can play a role in assessing and implementing emerging digital technology-driven approaches to management accounting supporting decision making.
- *Data availability*. The huge volumes of structured and unstructured data (not organised in a predefined manner) that has become available to firms has created both opportunities and challenges in aiding data-backed decisions and insights. Management accountants must understand the different sources of data that now exists and recognise their potential utility. That is, they need to be able to know how such data can provide insights that shape decisions. Moreover, given that the cost of information production is falling as the volume of data grows, it is becoming impossible to ignore the power of data analytics to support financial planning and management action.

No aspect of business today remains untouched by digital technologies, and new possibilities for organisations have emerged in relation to altering the speed of enterprise operations, the flexibility of their decision making, their strategic positioning and the reframing of achievable economic efficiencies (Bhimani and Wilcocks 2014; Bhimani 2021).

What emerging technologies are there today which management accountants should be aware of? Here are some that the business community has highlighted:

- *Artificial intelligence (AI) and robotics*. AI can be thought of as the simulation of human intelligence processes by machines. It can increase the effectiveness of human decision making and enhance the advice financial professionals give to other business executives. Robotics is a field that involves the conception, design, manufacture and operation of robots. Robots are programmable machines that can undertake a series of actions. Typically, robots interact with the physical world via sensors; they are programmable and can be autonomous or semi-autonomous. Robots are now increasingly engaging in accounting tasks, which reduces the risk of human error and can remain in operation on a 24/7 basis. Robotics today enables highly valuable input into decision making that is rooted in accounting analyses.
- *Blockchain* is an accounting technology that can be described as a 'distributed ledger', which records transactions continuously such that the transacting parties leave a permanent record that remains verifiable. It provides full visibility on past transactions, which cannot be altered by any one participant vastly reducing the possibility of fraud.
- *Big data and analytics* make possible the provision of insights drawn from large amounts of data. Data is valuable to all organisations and more and more is invested into leveraging data for greater decision-making capacity. The physical world is being rapidly digitised via connected devices and the physical world itself is becoming a sort of information system via the Internet of Things (IoT), where sensorised objects and people (customers, machines, vehicles, etc.) increase multiple-fold the volume of available data. Management accountants form partnerships with other units of their enterprises to make sure that the data analyses they engage in are cross-functional and continuously relevant to strategic and operational decisions. Finance professionals are called upon to be more predictive and to assist in making decisions based on qualitative and quantitative data that link in to budgeting, internal control, risk management and strategic action.

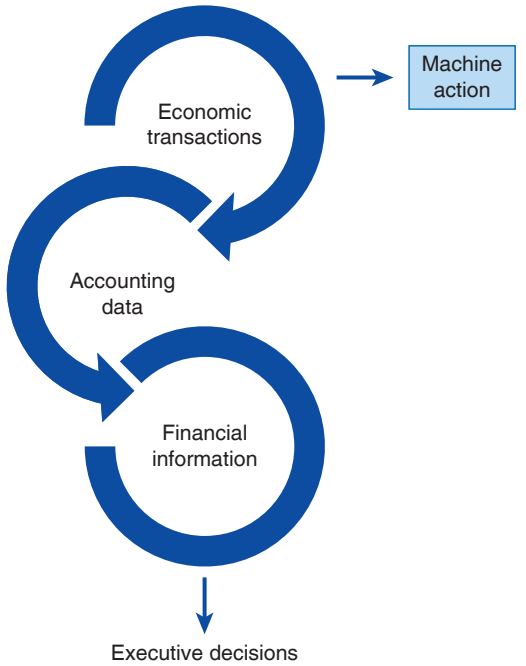
- *The cloud* refers to services where information and files are kept on servers connected to the Internet. The cloud enables enterprises to store, access and share resources at lower costs and with greater flexibility. Cloud computing permits enterprises to obtain practically real-time information with different organisational systems of information being fully integrated and on-line. This allows management accountants to focus on financial management information provision for decision-making and control purposes from different sources at lower costs and faster.

It can be expected that as organisational structures, priorities and modes of operations change, so pressures mount for management accounting systems to alter their information focus. Factors like digitalisation, accountability and corporate responsibility, operational complexity, customer responsiveness, product life-cycle concerns, strategic management, sustainability concerns, and novel business models will continue to change what is expected of management accounting.

Consider for instance the use of top brands using non-fungible tokens (NFTs) which are online assets that double as certificates of ownership. NFTs have been much used for tokenising digital items such as art or texts or videos, but increasingly they are used for physical items such as cars, rugs, books, clothing etc. The market for NFTs was $40 billion in 2021 with sales in 2022 achieving near this level on a monthly basis (Kalkine Media, 2022). Luxury fashion house Prada has schemes for customers who want something even more exclusive than its normal range of clothing and accessories. As Boukis (2022) reports, one scheme allows customers who buy one of only 100 black and white button-down shirts by Cassius Hirst, son of renowned British artist Damien, to receive an NFT such that this becomes bundled into the product purchase experience. Likewise, Gucci has some sales of digital products sold for more than the real-world equivalent (one digital bag sold for US$4115 as opposed to the physical equivalent of US$3,400). NFTs can be resold and therefore offer a trading avenue aside from the product purchase element. Nike bought NFT pioneer RTFKT Studios in 2021. RTFKT made its name with a collection of Manga-style 3D NFT characters called CloneX that now trade for tens of thousands of US dollars. As Boukis (2022) explains: 'CloneX owners were airdropped NFTs of mystery digital boxes known as Mnlths. The Mnlths had Nike swooshes on the side and quickly started selling for upwards of US$10,000 (£7944) on NFT marketplaces, even though nobody knew what they contained. In April 2022, Nike announced that owners could "burn" them to unlock a pair of digital sneakers known as CryptoKicks, plus a vial that allows users to customise them, and another mystery box called Mnlth 2. A pair of CryptoKicks has since reportedly sold for US$134,000.' By mid-November 2022, the market for NFTs shrunk and values had dropped markedly. Justin Bieber's purchase of a Bored Ape NFT for $1.3 million was valued at about 5% of that price.

The survival of the management accounting profession will depend on the perceived relevance of what the field can contribute to organisations. The changing managerial demands on management accounting are exciting to study and engage with. It is intended that this book will help you think about operational, technological and wider organisational and strategic issues of concern to management accountants. What is to be borne in mind throughout is that the workings of any management accounting system must take account the peculiarities and contextual characteristics of the enterprise. Management accounting systems across enterprises sometimes can appear to be similar but their organisational context lends high differentiation in their operations such that organisational specificity can never be ignored.

Exhibit 1.6 Executive decisions and action versus machine action



Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Management accounting is used to provide future-oriented information to help managers (internal users) make decisions and pursue an organisation's goals. Financial accounting is used to develop reports for external users on past financial performance using authoritative guidelines.

2 Strategy concerns affect management accounting processes.

3 Accounting systems are intended to provide information for five broad purposes: (a) formulating overall strategies and long-range plans, (b) resource allocation decisions such as product and customer emphasis, (c) cost planning and cost control, (d) performance measurement, and (e) meeting external regulatory and legal reporting obligations.

4 Accounting influences planning, control and decision making through budgets and other financial benchmarks, its systematic recording of actual results and its role in performance evaluation.

5 In most organisations, management accountants perform scorekeeping, attention-directing and problem-solving functions.

6 Economic benefits and costs in the design, implementation and use of accounting systems need to be assessed in the light of organisational context and process issues. Assessing costs, benefits and context is important to understanding management accounting processes.

7 Companies add value through research and development (R&D), design of products and processes, production, marketing, distribution and customer service. Customers want companies to deliver performance through cost and efficiency, quality, timeliness and innovation.

8 Technologies have always impacted management accounting practices. Today, digitalisation presents management accounting with its most important challenge.

Appendix

Professional ethics

Ethical guidelines

Professional accounting organisations representing management accountants exist in many countries. For example, CIMA in the UK provides a programme leading to membership of the institute. Membership signals that the holder has passed the admission criteria and demonstrated the competence of technical knowledge required by the CIMA to become a chartered management accountant. To become a CIMA member, students complete examinations on operational, management and strategic aspects of the field and must show professional competence in management accounting (see www.cimaglobal.com for more information).

Management accounting topics are also covered by several other professional bodies. The syllabus for the examinations of the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants (ACCA) includes a variety of examinations, practical work experience and knowledge of ethics requirements (see www.accaglobal.com). Other accounting bodies include the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales (ICAEW) (see www.icaew.co.uk) and the Institute for Chartered Accountants of Scotland (ICAS) (see www.icas.org.uk). These institutes have requirements that cover proficiency in general management topics as well as professional accounting and ethics topics.

Professional accounting organisations play an important role in promoting a high standard of ethics. CIMA has issued a code of ethics for its members. Exhibit 1.7 presents a summary of CIMA's 'fundamental principles'.

Typical ethical challenges

Ethical issues can confront management accountants in many ways. The following examples are illustrative.

Exhibit 1.7 Summary of CIMA's Code of Ethics

To achieve the objectives of the profession, accountants have to observe the following fundamental principles:

- **Integrity.** Being straightforward, honest and truthful in all professional and business relationships. You should not be associated with any information that you believe contains a materially false or misleading statement, or which is misleading by omission.
- **Objectivity.** Not allowing bias, conflict of interest or the influence of other people to override your professional judgement.
- **Professional competence and due care.** An ongoing commitment to your level of professional knowledge and skill. Base this on current developments in practice, legislation and techniques. Those working under your authority must also have the appropriate training and supervision.
- **Confidentiality.** You should not disclose professional information unless you have specific permission or a legal or professional duty to do so.
- **Professional behaviour.** To comply with relevant laws and regulations. You must also avoid any action that could negatively affect the reputation of the profession.

Source: www.cimaglobal.com/Professionalism/Ethics/CIMAs-code-at-a-glance/

- **Case A.** A management accountant, knowing that reporting a loss for a software division will result in yet another 'rightsizing initiative' (a euphemism for lay-offs), has concerns about the commercial viability of software for which R&D costs are currently being capitalised. The divisional manager argues vehemently that the new product will be a 'winner' but has no credible evidence to support the opinion. The last two products from this division have not been successful in the market. The management accountant has many friends in the division and wants to avoid a personal confrontation with the division manager. Should the management accountant require the R&D to be expensed immediately, owing to the lack of evidence regarding its commercial viability?
- **Case B.** A packaging supplier, bidding for a new contract, offers the management accountant of its customer an all-expenses-paid weekend to Disneyland Paris for her and her family. The supplier does not mention the new contract when making the invitation. The accountant is not a personal friend of the supplier. She knows operating cost issues are critical in approving the new contract and is concerned that the supplier will ask details about bids by competing packaging companies.

In each case the management accountant is faced with an ethical challenge. Case A involves competence, objectivity and integrity, whereas case B involves confidentiality and integrity. Ethical issues are not always black or white. For example, the supplier in case B may have no intention of raising issues associated with the bid. However, the appearance of a conflict of interest in case B is sufficient for many companies to prohibit employees from accepting free 'gifts' from suppliers.

References and further reading

Alexander, D., Britton, A. and Jorissen, A. (2011) *International Financial Reporting and Analysis* (Hampshire, UK: Cengage).

Amato, N. (2022) 'Diversity continues to rise among CFOs and CEOs, survey shows', *Journal of Accountancy,* 14 January (https://www.journalofaccountancy.com/news/2022/jan/diversity-rises-cfos-ceos-crist-kolder-report.html).

Bhimani, A. (2015) 'Exploring big data's strategic consequences', *Journal of Information Technology,* pp. 66–69.

Bhimani, A. (2022) *Financial Management for Technology Start-ups* (London: Kogan Page).

Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How digitalization is changing finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA).

Bhimani, A. and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (Oxford: CIMA/Elsevier).

Bhimani, A. and Willcocks, L. (2014) 'Digitisation, Big Data and the transformation of accounting information', *Accounting and Business Research*, 44(4) pp. 469–490.

Bourkis, A. (2022) 'NFTs: how top brands like Nike and Prada are using them – and what could go wrong', The Conversation, 1 June (https://theconversation.com/nfts-how-top-brands-like-nike-and-prada-are-using-them-and-what-could-go-wrong-182446).

Bradley, R. (2022) 'Blockchain explained... in under 100 words' (https://www2.deloitte.com/ch/en/pages/strategy-operations/articles/blockchain-explained.html).

CIMA (2022) 'Your career' (https://www.cimaglobal.com/Starting-CIMA/Why-CIMA/what-is-management-accounting/)

CPA Canada (2022) 'What CPAs do' (https://www.cpacanada.ca/en/the-cpa-profession/cpas-and-what-we-do/what-cpas-do).

Davenport, T., Harris, J. and Morison, R. (2010) *Analytics at Work: Smarter Decisions, Better Results* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business Press).

Digitalfix (2018) 'How AI is helping brands improve the customer experience', Daily Digitalfix, 7 June (https://dailydigitalfix.com/ai-helping-brands-improve-customer-experience/)

FRC (2022) 'About the FRC' (https://www.frc.org.uk/about-the-frc)

Gaus, T., Olse, K. and Deloso, M. (2018) 'Synchronizing the digital supply network using artificial intelligence for supply chain planning' (www2.deloitte.com/insights/us/en/focus/industry-4-0/artificial-intelligence-supply-chain-planning.html?id=us:2em:3pa:industry-4-0:eng:di:052318).

Global Accounting Network (https://www.globalaccountingnetwork.net/articles/accountant-to-cfo-or-ceo, accessed 2 May 2022)

Half, R. (2018) 'Combination of background in finance and industry knowledge key to success of FTSE 100 CEOs' (www.roberthalf.co.uk/press/combination-background-finance-and-industry-knowledge-key-success-ftse-100-ceos).

Harrison, G. and McKinnon, J. (2007) 'National culture and management control', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall).

ICAEW (2017) *Blockchain and the Future of Accountancy* (London: ICAEW).

Kalkine Media (2022) 'Global NFY market topped US$40 billion in 2021: Report', Kalkine Media, 7 January (https://kalkinemedia.com/news/cryptocurrency/global-nft-market-topped-us40-billion-in-2021-report#:~:text=The%20global%20market%20for%20non-fungible%20tokens%20%28NFTs%29%20surpassed,fancy%20digital%20collections%20turned%20into%20major%20investment%20assets)

Karaian, J. (2014) *The Chief Financial Officer: What CFOs Do, the Influence They Have, and Why It Matters* (London: Economist Books).

Marketing Week Reporters (2018) 'How AI is helping brands improve the customer experience' (www.marketingweek.com/2018/05/02/artificial-intelligence-supercharged/).

Mitchell, F., NØrreklit, H. and Jakobsen, M. (2012) *The Routledge Companion to Cost Management* (London: Routledge).

Ndegwa, M. (11/7/2017) 'Who is becoming a CEO these days?' (www.businessdailyafrica.com/Who-is-becoming-a-CEO-these-days-/539444-3965780-12bjk5z/index.html).

Rajput, S. (2020) 'Big Data and AI – **b**anking **i**ndustry **u**se **c**ases **i**n Karachi Pakistan' (https://www.omni-academy.com/big-data-and-ai-banking-industry-use-cases/).

CHAPTER 1

Assessment material

Review questions

1.1 The accounting system should provide information for five broad purposes. Describe them.

1.2 Distinguish between *management accounting* and *financial accounting*.

1.3 Describe the business functions in the value chain.

1.4 Explain the meaning of *cost management*.

1.5 'Knowledge of technical issues such as computer technology is necessary but not sufficient to becoming a successful accountant.' Do you agree? Why?

1.6 Peter Drucker, a noted business observer, made the following comment in an address to management accountants: 'I am not saying that you do not need a "cop on the beat", you do . . . But your great challenge is to get across to your associates your ability to identify the opportunities – to identify the wealth-producing characteristics.' Do you agree? Explain.

1.7 As a new accountant, reply to this comment by a plant manager: 'As I see it, our accountants may be needed to keep records for shareholders and for the tax authorities – but I don't want them sticking their noses in my day-to-day operations. I do the best I know how. No pen-pushing bean-counter knows enough about my responsibilities to be of any use to me.'

1.8 When explaining a motor vehicle market-share turnaround, a car manufacturer stated: 'We listened to what our customers wanted and acted on what they said. Good things happen when you pay attention to the boss.' How might management accountants apply the same perspective to their own tasks?

1.9 A leading management observer stated that the most successful companies are those which have an obsession for their customers. Is this statement pertinent to management accountants? Explain.

1.10 Changes in the way managers operate require rethinking the design and operation of management accounting systems. Describe five themes that are affecting both the way managers operate and developments in management accounting.

Exercises

Basic level

***1.11 Financial and management accounting** (15–20 minutes)

Anne-Jorun Sørensen, an able electrical engineer, was informed that she was going to be promoted to assistant plant manager. Anne-Jorun was elated but uneasy. In particular, her knowledge of accounting was sparse. She had taken one course in financial accounting but had not been exposed to the management accounting that her superiors found helpful. Sørensen planned to take a management accounting course as soon as possible. Meanwhile, she asked Siri Aspelund, an assistant controller, to state two or three of the principal distinctions between financial and management accounting using some concrete examples.

As the assistant controller, prepare a written response to Sørensen.

***1.12 Purposes of accounting systems** (10 minutes)

The European Sports Management Group (ESMG) manages and promotes sporting events and sporting personalities. Its managers are currently examining the following reports and accounting statements:

a Five-year projections for expanding into managing sports television networks for satellite television.

b Income statement to be included in a six-month interim report to be sent to investors.

c Profitability comparison of cricket tournaments directed by different managers, each of whom receives a percentage of that tournament's profits.

d Monthly reports of office costs for each of the 14 ESMG offices throughout Europe.

e Statement showing the revenues ESMG earns from different types of sporting event (for example, squash, triathlon and cricket).

Required

Classify the reports in parts a–e into one of the five major purposes of accounting systems.

1.13 Value chain and classification of costs at Compaq (15 minutes)

Compaq Computer incurs the following costs:

a Electricity costs for the plant assembling the Presario computer line of products.

b Transportation costs for shipping Presario software to a retail chain.

c Payment to David Kelley Designs for design of the Armada Notebook.

d Salary of a computer scientist working on the next generation of minicomputers.

e Cost of Compaq employees' visit to a major customer to illustrate Compaq's ability to interconnect with other computers.

f Purchase of competitors' products for testing against potential future Compaq products.

g Payment to a television station for running Compaq advertisements.

h Cost of cables purchased from an outside supplier to be used with the Compaq printer.

*Fully worked solutions to exercises thus marked are provided in Appendix A.

Required
Classify each of the cost items in parts a–h into a component of the value chain shown in Exhibit 1.4.

1.14 Value chain and classification of costs at Boots (15 minutes)

Boots, which operates a chain of pharmacies in the UK, incurs the following costs:

- **a** Cost of redesigning blister packs to make drug containers more tamperproof.
- **b** Cost of videos sent to doctors to promote sales of a new drug.
- **c** Cost of website's 'frequently asked questions' for customer enquiries about usage, side-effects of drugs, and so on.
- **d** Equipment purchased by a scientist to conduct experiments on drugs yet to be approved by the government.
- **e** Payment to actors on a feature to be shown on television promoting new hair-growing product for balding men.
- **f** Labour costs of workers in the packaging area of a production facility.
- **g** Bonus paid to a salesperson for exceeding the monthly sales quota.
- **h** Cost of the courier service to deliver drugs to hospitals.

Required
Classify each of the cost items in parts a–h into a component of the value chain shown in Exhibit 1.4.

1.15 Uses of feedback (10 minutes)

Six uses of feedback are described in the chapter:

- **a** Changing goals.
- **b** Searching for alternative means of operating.
- **c** Changing methods for making decisions.
- **d** Making predictions.
- **e** Changing the operating process.
- **f** Changing the reward system.

Required
Match the appropriate letters from the preceding list to each of the following items.

1. The Potters Bar University system explores subcontracting its gardening operations to a private company instead of hiring its own gardeners.
2. Sales commissions are to be based on total operating profit instead of total revenue.
3. Fiat adjusts its elaborate way of forecasting demand for its cars by including the effects of expected changes in the price of crude oil.
4. The hiring of new sales personnel will include an additional step: an interview and evaluation by the company psychologist.
5. Quality inspectors at Volvo are now being used in the middle of the production process as well as at the end of the process.
6. Virgin enters the telecommunications industry.
7. Worker assignments on an assembly line are made by teams instead of directed by a foreman.

1.16 Scorekeeping, attention directing and problem solving (15 minutes)

For each of the following activities, identify the major function (scorekeeping, attention directing or problem solving) the accountant is performing.

a Preparing a monthly statement of Spanish sales for the BMW marketing vice-president.

b Interpreting differences between actual results and budgeted amounts on a performance report for the customer warranty department of Tefal.

c Preparing a schedule of depreciation for forklift trucks in the receiving department of a Hewlett-Packard plant in Scotland.

d Analysing, for a Toshiba international manufacturing manager, the desirability of buying some semiconductors made in Ireland.

e Interpreting why a Birmingham distribution centre did not adhere to its delivery costs budget.

f Explaining a Niceday shipping department's performance report.

g Preparing, for the manager of production control of a German steel plant, a cost comparison of two computerised manufacturing control systems.

h Preparing a scrap report for the finishing department of a Volvo parts plant.

i Preparing the budget for the maintenance department of Mont-Blanc Hospital.

j Analysing, for a Volkswagen product designer, the impact on product costs of some new headlight lamps.

1.17 Scorekeeping, attention directing and problem solving (15 minutes)

For each of the following activities, identify the major function the accountant is performing – scorekeeping, attention directing or problem solving.

a Interpreting differences between actual results and budgeted amounts on a shipping manager's performance report at a Lada distribution centre.

b Preparing a report showing the benefits of leasing motor vehicles versus owning them.

c Preparing adjusting journal entries for depreciation on the personnel manager's office equipment at Crédit Suisse.

d Preparing a customer's monthly statement for an Argos store.

e Processing the weekly payroll for the University College Dublin maintenance department.

f Explaining the product-design manager's performance report at an Audi division.

g Analysing the costs of several different ways to blend materials in the foundry of a Krupp plant.

h Tallying sales, by branches, for the sales vice-president of Unilever.

i Analysing, for a senior manager of British Telecom, the impact of a contemplated new product on net income.

j Interpreting why a Moulinex sales district did not meet its sales quota.

1.18 Changes in management and changes in management accounting (15 minutes)

A survey on ways organisations are changing their management accounting systems reported the following:

a Company A now reports a value-chain income statement for each of the brands it sells.

b Company B now presents in a single report all costs related to achieving high quality levels of its products.

c Company C now presents estimates of the manufacturing costs of its two most important competitors in its performance reports, in addition to its own internal manufacturing costs.

d Company D reduces by 1% each month the budgeted labour-assembly cost of a product when evaluating the performance of a plant manager.

e Company E now reports profitability and satisfaction measures (as assessed by a third party) on a customer-by-customer basis.

Required

Link each of the above changes to the role management accounting can play in helping managers focus on key themes of planning and control.

1.19 **Planning and control, feedback** (15–20 minutes)

In April 2023, Bérangère Saunier, editor of *The Sporting News* (SN), decides to reduce the price per newspaper from €0.70 in April 2023 to €0.50 starting 1 May 2023. Actual paid circulation in April is 7.5 million (250 000 per day × 30 days). Saunier estimates that the €0.20 price reduction would increase paid circulation in May to 12.4 million (400 000 × 31 days). The actual May circulation turns out to be 13 640 000 (440 000 × 31 days). Assume that one goal of SN is to increase operating profit. The budgeted increase in circulation would enable SN to charge higher advertising rates in later months of 2023 if those budgeted gains actually occur. The actual price paid in May 2023 was the budgeted €0.50 per newspaper.

Required

1. Distinguish between planning and control at SN, giving an example of each.
2. Prepare a newspaper revenue performance report for SN for May 2023 showing the actual results, budgeted amounts and the variance.
3. Give two types of action Saunier might take based on feedback on the May 2023 circulation revenue.

1.20 **Professional ethics and reporting divisional performance** (10–15 minutes)

Marguerite Devallois is division controller and Jacques Clément is division manager of the Royaume de la Chaussure SARL, a shoe company. Devallois has line responsibility to Clément, but she also has staff responsibility to the company controller.

Clément is under severe pressure to achieve budgeted division income for the year. He has asked Devallois to book €200 000 of sales on 31 December. The customers' orders are firm, but the shoes are still in the production process. They will be shipped on or about 4 January. Clément said to Devallois, 'The key event is getting the sales order, not shipping of the shoes. You should support me, not obstruct my reaching division goals.'

Required

1. Describe Devallois's ethical responsibilities.
2. What should Devallois do if Clément gives her a direct order to book the sales?

Intermediate level

1.21 **Responsibility for analysis of performance** (20–30 minutes)

Kari-Anna Nedregotten is the new corporate controller of a multinational company that has just overhauled its organisational structure. The company is now decentralised. Each division is under an operating vice-president who, within wide limits, has responsibilities and authority to run the division like a separate company.

Nedregotten has a number of bright staff members. One of them, Signy Henriksen, is in charge of a newly created performance-analysis system. Henriksen and staff members prepare monthly

division performance reports for the company president. These reports are division income statements, showing budgeted performance and actual results, and they are accompanied by detailed written explanations and appraisals of variances. In the past, each of Henriksen's staff members was responsible for analysing one division; each consulted with division line and staff executives and became generally acquainted with the division's operations.

After a few months, Øyvind Hedby, vice-president in charge of Division C, stormed into the controller's office. The gist of his complaint follows:

'Your staff are trying to take over part of my responsibility. They come in, snoop around, ask hundreds of questions, and take up plenty of our time. It's up to me, not you and your detectives, to analyse and explain my division's performance to central headquarters. If you don't stop trying to grab my responsibility, I'll raise the whole issue with the president.'

Required

1 What events or relationships may have led to Hedby's outburst?
2 As Nedregotten, how would you answer Hedby's contentions?
3 What alternative actions can Nedregotten take to improve future relationships?

*1.22 Software procurement decision, ethics (30 minutes)

Walter von Stolzing is the Innsbrück-based controller of Beckmesser GmbH, a rapidly growing manufacturer and marketer of Austrian food products. Stolzing is currently considering the purchase of a new cost management package for use by each of its six manufacturing plants and its many marketing personnel. There are four major competing products being considered by Stolzing.

Pogner 1-2-3 is an aggressive software developer. It views Beckmesser as a target of opportunity. Every six months Pogner has a three-day users' conference on the Costa del Sol. Each conference has substantial time left aside for 'rest and recreation'. Pogner offers Stolzing an all-expenses-paid visit to the coming conference. Stolzing accepts the offer believing that it will be very useful to talk to other users of Pogner software. He is especially looking forward to the visit as he has close relatives living near Marbella.

Prior to leaving, Stolzing received a visit from the president of Beckmesser. She shows him an anonymous letter sent to her. It argues that Pogner is receiving unfair favourable treatment in the Beckmesser software decision-making process. The letter specifically mentions Stolzing's coming 'all-expenses-paid trip to Marbella during the depths of Innsbrück's winter'. Stolzing is deeply offended. He says he has made no decision and believes he is very capable of making a software choice on the merits of each product. Beckmesser currently does not have a formal written code of ethics.

Required

1 Do you think Stolzing faces an ethical problem as regards his forthcoming visit to the Pogner's users' group meeting? Refer to the chapter's appendix. Explain.
2 Should Beckmesser allow executives to attend users' meetings while negotiating with other vendors about a purchase decision? Explain. If yes, what conditions on attending should apply?
3 Would you recommend Beckmesser develop its own code of ethics to handle situations such as this one? What are the pros and cons of having such a written code?

1.23 **Planning and control decisions: Internet company** (30 minutes)

WebNews.co.uk is an Internet company. It offers subscribers multiple online services ranging from an annotated TV guide to local-area information on restaurants and cinemas. It has two main revenue sources:

- Monthly fees from subscribers. Recent data are:

Month/Year	Actual number of subscribers	Actual monthly fee per subscriber
June 2022	28 642	£14.95
December 2022	54 813	£19.95
June 2023	58 178	£19.95
December 2023	86 437	£19.95
June 2023	146 581	£19.95

- Banner advertising fees from companies advertising on WebNews.co.uk page sites. Recent data are:

Month/Year	Advertising revenues
June 2022	£400 988
December 2022	£833 158
June 2023	£861 034
December 2023	£1 478 072
June 2023	£2 916 962

The following decisions were made in the June to October 2023 period:

a June 2023. Decision to raise the monthly subscription fee from £19.95 per month in June 2023 to £24.95 per month in July 2023. The £19.95 fee first applied in December 2022.

b June 2023. Decision to inform existing subscribers that the July 2023 subscription fee would be £24.95.

c July 2023. Decision to upgrade the content of its online services and to offer better Internet mail services.

d October 2023. Demotion of manager of marketing after significant slowing of subscriber growth in accounts and revenues. Results include:

Month/Year	Actual number of subscribers	Actual monthly fee per subscriber
July 2023	128 933	£24.95
August 2023	139 419	£24.95
September 2023	143 131	£24.95

Budgeted amounts (set in June 2023) for the number of subscribers were 140 000 for July 2023, 150 000 for August 2023, and 160 000 for September 2023.

e October 2023. Decision to reduce the monthly subscription fee from £24.95 per month in September 2023 to £21.95 in October 2023.

Required

1 Distinguish between planning decisions and control decisions at WebNews.co.uk.

2 Classify each of the decisions a–e as a planning or a control decision.

1.24 **Problem solving, scorekeeping and attention directing: Internet company** (continuation of Exercise 1.23) (30 minutes)

Management accountants at WebNews.co.uk can play three key roles in each of the five decisions described in Exercise 1.23: problem solving, scorekeeping and attention directing.

Required

1 Distinguish between the problem-solving, scorekeeping and attention-directing roles of a management accountant at WebNews.co.uk.

2 For each of the five decisions outlined in Exercise 1.23, describe a problem-solving, scorekeeping or attention-directing role. Where possible, provide your own example of an information item that a management accountant could provide for each decision.

CHAPTER 2

An introduction to cost terms and purposes

Cost concepts and terms are useful in many enterprise contexts. They help managers decide such issues as: How much should we spend on research and development? What is the effect of product design changes on production costs? Should we replace some assembly workers with a robot? Should we spend more of the marketing budget on sales promotion coupons and less on advertising? Should we outsource some engineering and production activities? Should we provide a free phone number for customer enquiries regarding our products? Such questions require an understanding of costs. This chapter explains several widely used cost concepts and terms. They will help us demonstrate the multiple purposes of cost accounting systems.

In many companies, especially smaller ones, when times are good, managers focus on selling as much as they can. Costs gain less attention. When times are difficult, they shift their emphasis toward cost containment. But as firms get larger, the focus on costs often becomes relentless. A large scale survey of 1089 global executives carried out by Deloitte (2021) reported that 78% regarded the inability to adjust cost structures to meet demand as the top internal challenge globally and in all regions. The survey also revealed that 'automation is the top transformation action arising from the COVID-19 crisis. Globally and across all regions, roughly two out of three companies expect to pursue automation in all three stages of Respond-Recover-Thrive'. Organisations will typically, in the aftermath of a crisis, respond with some action which leads to recovery and then re-join a path of increased growth.

Another 2021 survey conducted by CFO Research of Industry Dive polled 166 senior finance executives in US companies with up to $500 million in annual revenue. The survey revealed that more than 80% of the CFOs, CEOs and other finance executives said that maintaining a high degree of cost discipline over the next 24 months will be critical for growth. The executives put cost analysis at the top of their list of priorities for their finance teams over the next 12 months (CFO Dive, 2022). Typically, when uncertainty exists in times of war, pandemics or major political upheaval, the economic outlook is impacted and cost reduction becomes high on the agenda of executives.

An understanding of where costs exist and how they behave is of great relevance to most business decisions. At times, managerial strategies can also change organisational and reporting structures in companies as well as impact costs. Consider Unilever, the FTSE 100 company with 149 000 employees, well known for brands such as Ben & Jerry's ice cream, Marmite and Hellmann's mayonnaise. The company revealed plans to cut 1500 management jobs globally in 2022 with the intention of removing layers to simplify the business (CNBC, 2022; Kollewe and Jolly, 2022).

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Define and illustrate a cost object
- Distinguish between direct costs and indirect costs
- Explain variable costs and fixed costs
- Understand why unit costs must be interpreted with caution
- Distinguish between service-sector, merchandising-sector and manufacturing-sector companies
- Differentiate between capitalised costs and period costs
- Explain how different ways of computing product costs are appropriate for different purposes

Another large global company, Exxon Mobil Corp, made public in March 2022 that it would exit its last Russia operations in response to the invasion of Ukraine that sent oil prices to their highest level in eight years. Cost cutting was also accelerated with Exxon expecting to cut annual costs by $9 billion in 2022, $3 billion more than a previous target, in a drive to quickly pay down debt taken on during the pandemic and double earnings by 2027 (Valle and Khan, 2022). Many large companies undertake extreme cost-cutting measures, especially during times of economic uncertainty. Understanding the behaviour of costs proves useful to any cost management effort.

Costs in general

Cost objects

Accountants usually define **cost** as a resource sacrificed or forgone to achieve a specific objective. Most people consider costs as monetary amounts (such as shillings, euros, pounds or yen) that must be paid to acquire goods and services. For now, we can think of costs in this conventional way. An **actual cost** is the cost incurred (a historical or past cost), as distinguished from a budgeted cost, which is a predicted, or forecasted, cost (a future cost).

To guide their decisions, managers often want to know how much a certain thing (such as a new product, a machine, a service or a process) costs. We call this 'thing' a **cost object**, which is anything for which a separate measurement of costs is desired. Exhibit 2.1 provides examples of several different types of cost object.

A costing system typically accounts for costs in two basic stages:

1 It *accumulates* costs by some 'natural' classification such as materials, labour, fuel, advertising or shipping.

2 It *assigns* these costs to cost objects.

Cost accumulation is the collection of cost data in some organised way through an accounting system. **Cost assignment** is a general term that encompasses both (1) tracing accumulated costs to a cost object, and (2) allocating accumulated costs to a cost object. Costs that are *traced* to a cost object are direct costs, and costs that are *allocated* to a cost object are indirect costs. Many accounting systems accumulate actual costs, which as noted above are the costs incurred (historical costs), as distinguished from budgeted or forecasted costs.

Exhibit 2.1 Examples of cost objects

Cost object	Illustration
Product	An eight-speed bicycle
Service	An airline flight from Paris to Dubai
Project	An aeroplane assembled by Airbus for Qantas
Customer	All products purchased by Rolls-Royce (the customer) from Lucas
Brand category	All soft drinks sold by a PepsiCo bottling company with 'Pepsi' in their name
Activity	A test to determine the quality level of a laptop screen
Department	A department within a government environmental agency that studies air emissions standards
Programme	An entrepreneurship showcase programme of a university

In some organisations, stage 1 (cost accumulation) and stage 2 (cost assignment) occur simultaneously. Consider the purchase by Airbus of 76 business-class seats to be installed in an A350-1000 aeroplane to be sold to Qantas. This transaction could be coded to a general ledger account such as materials (the cost accumulation stage) and simultaneously coded to three separate cost objects (the cost assignment stage):

- a department (assembly)
- a product (A350-1000 product line)
- a customer (Qantas).

Alternatively, stage 1 (cost accumulation) could occur first, followed by stage 2 (cost assignment). For example, the 76-seat purchase by Airbus could first be coded to the materials account, then subsequently assigned to a department, then reassigned to a product, and finally reassigned to a customer. Advances in information-gathering technology (such as barcoding) are facilitating the simultaneous assignment of costs to more than one cost object at the time costs are incurred.

Remember, managers assign costs to designated cost objects to help decision making. For example, costs may be assigned to a department to facilitate decisions about departmental efficiency. Costs may also be assigned to a product or a customer to facilitate product or customer profitability analysis.

Direct costs and indirect costs

Cost tracing and cost allocation

A major question concerning costs is whether they have a direct or an indirect relationship to a particular cost object.

- **Direct costs of a cost object** are costs that are related to the particular cost object and that can be traced to it in an economically feasible (cost-effective) way.
- **Indirect costs of a cost object** are costs that are related to the particular cost object but cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible (cost-effective) way. Indirect costs are allocated to the cost object using a cost-allocation method.

Take a tennis racket as a cost object. The cost of the carbon fibre used to make that racket is a direct cost. Why? Because the amount of material used in making the racket can easily be traced to the racket. The cost of lighting in the factory where the racket was made is an indirect cost of the racket. Why? Because although lighting helped in the making of the racket (the workers needed to see), it is not cost-effective to try to determine exactly how much lighting cost was used for a specific racket.

Managers prefer to make decisions on the basis of direct costs rather than indirect costs. Why? Because they know that direct costs are more accurate than indirect costs. The relationship between these terms is summarised in Exhibit 2.2.

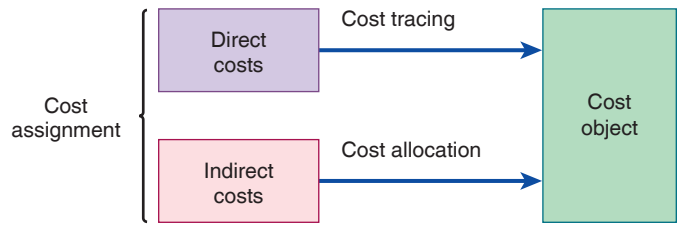
Cost tracing is the assigning of direct costs to the chosen cost object. **Cost allocation** is the assigning of indirect costs to the chosen cost object. *Cost assignment* encompasses both cost tracing and cost allocation.

Factors affecting direct/indirect cost classifications

Several factors will affect the classification of a cost as direct or indirect:

1 *The materiality of the cost in question*. The higher the cost in question, the more likely the economic feasibility of tracing that cost to a particular cost object. Consider a mail-order

Exhibit 2.2 Relationship of direct and indirect costs to a cost object



catalogue company. It would probably be economically feasible to trace the courier charges for delivering a package directly to each customer. In contrast, the cost of the invoice paper included in the package sent to the customer is likely to be classified as an indirect cost because it is not economically feasible to trace the cost of this paper to each customer. The benefits of knowing the exact number of (say) 0.5p worth of paper included in each package typically do not justify the costs of money and time in tracing the costs to each package.

2 *Available information-gathering technology.* Improvements in this area are enabling an increasing percentage of costs to be classified as direct. Barcodes, for example, allow many manufacturing plants to treat certain materials previously classified as indirect costs as direct costs of products. Barcodes can be read into a manufacturing-cost file by waving a 'wand' in the same quick and efficient way that supermarkets now enter the cost of many items purchased by their customers.

3 *Design of operations.* Facility design can impact on cost classification. For example, classifying a cost as direct is helped if an organisation's facility (or part thereof) is used exclusively for a specific product or specific cost object, such as a particular customer.

This book examines different ways to assign costs to cost objects. For now, be aware that one particular cost may be both direct and indirect. How? *The direct/indirect classification depends on the choice of the cost object*. For example, the salary of an assembly-department supervisor may be a direct cost of the assembly department at Fiat but an indirect cost of a product such as the Fiat 500 Punto.

Cost drivers and cost management

The continuous cost-reduction efforts of competitors create a never-ending need for organisations to reduce their own costs. Cost-reduction efforts frequently identify two key areas:

1 Focusing on **value-added activities**, that is, those activities that customers perceive as adding value to the products or services they purchase.

2 Efficiently managing the use of the cost drivers in those value-added activities.

A **cost driver** (also called a *cost generator* or *cost determinant*) is any factor that affects total costs. That is, a change in the level of the cost driver will cause a change in the level of the total cost of a related cost object. Costs that do not vary in the short run and have no identifiable cost driver in the short run may in fact have a cost driver in the long run.

Exhibit 2.3 presents examples of cost drivers in each of the business functions of the value chain. Some cost drivers are financial measures found in accounting systems (such as direct

Exhibit 2.3 Examples of cost drivers of business functions in the value chain

Business function	Cost driver
• Research and development	• Number of research projects • Labour hours on a project • Technical complexity of projects
• Design of products, services and processes	• Number of products in design • Number of parts per product • Number of engineering hours
• Production	• Number of units produced • Direct manufacturing labour costs • Number of set-ups • Number of engineering change orders
• Marketing	• Number of advertisements run • Number of sales personnel • Sales
• Distribution	• Number of items distributed • Number of customers • Weight of items distributed
• Customer service	• Number of service calls • Number of products serviced • Hours spent servicing products

manufacturing labour costs and sales), while others are non-financial variables (such as the number of parts per product and the number of service calls). We now discuss the role of cost drivers in describing cost behaviour.

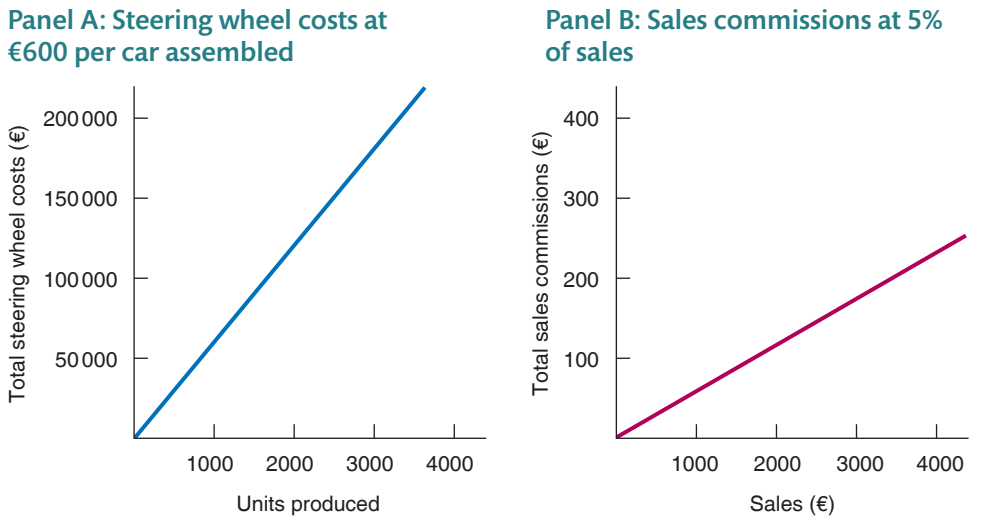
Cost management is the set of actions that managers take to satisfy customers while continuously reducing and controlling costs. A caveat on the role of cost drivers in cost management is appropriate. Changes in a particular cost driver do not automatically lead to changes in overall costs. Consider the number of items distributed as a driver of distribution labour costs. Suppose that management reduces the number of items distributed by 25%. This reduction does not automatically translate to a reduction in distribution labour costs. Managers must take steps to reduce distribution labour costs, perhaps by shifting workers out of distribution into other business functions needing additional labour or by laying off some distribution employees.

Cost behaviour patterns: variable costs and fixed costs

Management accounting systems record the cost of resources acquired and track their subsequent use. Tracing these costs allows managers to understand how these costs behave. Let us now consider two basic types of cost behaviour pattern found in many of these systems: variable costs and fixed costs. A **variable cost** is a cost that changes in total in proportion to changes in the related level of total activity or volume. A **fixed cost** is a cost that does not change in total despite changes in the related level of total activity or volume. Costs are defined as variable or fixed with respect to a specific cost object and for a given time period. Consider costs at Opel's Zaragoza plant in Spain (Global Happenings, 2022). The company passed a milestone of 11 million units in 2022 since it started production 40 years prior. The Corsa is Opel's best-selling model.

- *Variable costs.* If Opel buys a steering wheel at €600 for each of its Corsa cars, then the total cost of steering wheels should be €600 times the number of cars assembled. This is an example

Exhibit 2.4 Examples of variable costs



of a variable cost, a cost that changes in total in proportion to changes in the cost driver (number of cars). The variable cost per car does change with the number of cars assembled. Exhibit 2.4 (Panel A) illustrates this variable cost. A second example of a variable cost is a sales commission of 5% of each sales euro. Exhibit 2.4 (Panel B) shows this variable-cost example.

- *Fixed costs.* Opel may incur €20 million in a given year for the leasing and insurance of its Corsa plant. Both are examples of fixed costs: costs that are unchanged in total over a designated range of the cost driver during a given time span. Fixed costs become progressively smaller on a per-unit basis as the cost driver increases. For example, if Opel assembles 10 000 Corsa vehicles at this plant in a year, the fixed cost for leasing and insurance per vehicle is €2000 (€20 million ÷ 10 000). In contrast, if 50 000 vehicles are assembled, the fixed cost per vehicle becomes €400.

Do not assume that individual cost items are inherently variable or fixed. Consider labour costs. An example of purely variable labour costs is the case where workers are paid on a piecework basis. Some textile workers are paid on a per-shirt-sewn basis. Often, labour costs are appropriately classified as fixed where employment conditions restrict an organisation's flexibility to assign workers to any area that has extra labour requirements.

Major assumptions

The definitions of variable costs and fixed costs have important underlying assumptions:

1. Costs are defined as variable or fixed with respect to a specific cost object.
2. The time span must be specified. Consider the €20 million rent and insurance that Opel pays for its Corsa assembly operations. This amount may be fixed for one year. Beyond that time, the rent and insurance may be renegotiated to be, say, €22 million for a subsequent year.
3. Total costs are linear. That is, when plotted on ordinary graph paper, a total-variable-cost or a total-fixed-cost relationship to the cost driver will appear as an unbroken straight line.
4. There is only one cost driver. The influences of other possible cost drivers on total costs are held constant or deemed to be insignificant.
5. Variations in the level of the cost driver are within a relevant range (which we discuss in the next section).

Variable costs and fixed costs are the two most frequently recognised cost behaviour patterns in existing management accounting systems. Additional cost behaviour patterns are discussed in subsequent chapters (see Chapters 9 and 11).

Relevant range

A **relevant range** is the range of the cost driver in which a specific relationship between cost and the level of activity or volume is valid. A fixed cost is fixed only in relation to a given relevant range (usually wide) of the cost driver and a given time span (usually a particular budget period). Consider the Swedish-based Trans-Europe Transport Company (TETC), which operates two refrigerated vehicles that carry agricultural produce to market. Each vehicle has an annual fixed cost of €400 000 (including an annual insurance cost of €150 000 and an annual registration fee of €80 000) and a variable cost of €12 per kilometre of hauling. TETC has chosen kilometres of hauling to be the cost driver. The maximum annual usage of each vehicle is 120 000 kilometres. Suppose that in the current year (2018) the predicted combined total hauling of the two vehicles is 170 000 kilometres.

Exhibit 2.5 shows how annual fixed costs behave at different levels of kilometres of hauling. Up to 120 000 kilometres, TETC can operate with one vehicle; from 120 001 to 240 000 kilometres, it can operate with two vehicles; and from 240 001 to 360 000, it can operate with three vehicles. This pattern would continue as TETC added vehicles to its fleet. The bracketed section from 120 001 to 240 000 is the range at which TETC expects the €80 000 fixed costs to be valid given the predicted 170 000-kilometre usage for the year.

Fixed costs may change from one year to the next. For example, if the annual registration fee for refrigerated vehicles is increased in 2022, the total level of fixed costs will increase (unless offset by a reduction in other fixed items).

Relationships of types of costs

We have introduced two major classifications of costs: direct/indirect and variable/fixed. Costs may simultaneously be:

- direct and variable
- direct and fixed
- indirect and variable
- indirect and fixed.

Exhibit 2.6 presents examples of simultaneous cost classifications with each of the four cost types.

Exhibit 2.5 Fixed-cost behaviour at Trans-Europe Transport Company

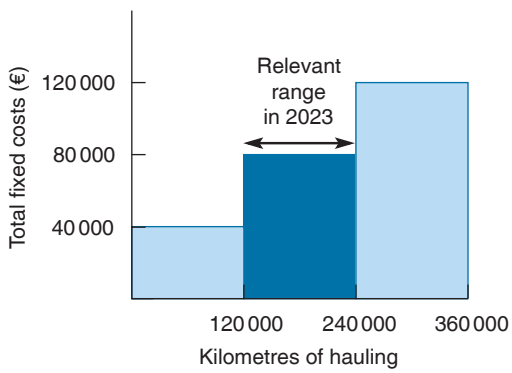


Exhibit 2.6 Examples of simultaneous direct/indirect and variable/fixed-cost classifications

		Assignment of costs to cost object	
		Direct cost	**Indirect cost**
Cost behaviour pattern	**Variable cost**	*Cost object*: Assembled car *Example*: Tyres used in assembly of car	*Cost object*: Assembled car *Example*: Power costs where power usage is metered only to the plant
	Fixed cost	*Cost object*: Assembled car *Example*: Salary of supervisor on Opel's Corsa assembly	*Cost object*: Assembled car *Example*: Annual lease cost at Corsa plant line

Total costs and unit costs

Meaning of unit costs

Accounting systems typically report both total-cost and unit-cost numbers. A **unit cost** (also called an **average cost**) is calculated by dividing some amount of total cost by the related number of units.

The units might be expressed in various ways. Examples are hours worked, packages delivered or cars assembled. Suppose that €980 000 of manufacturing costs were incurred to produce 10 000 units of a finished good. Then the unit cost would be €98:

$$\frac{\text{Total manufacturing costs}}{\text{Number of units manufactured}} = \frac{€980\,000}{10\,000} = €98 \text{ per unit}$$

If 8000 units are sold and 2000 units remain in ending stock, the unit-cost concept helps in the assignment of total costs for the income statement and balance sheet:

Cost of goods sold in the income statement, 8000 units × €98	€784 000
Closing stock of finished goods in the balance sheet, 2000 units × €98	196 000
Total manufacturing costs of 10 000 units	€980 000

Unit costs are found in all areas of the value chain – for example, there are unit costs for product design, sales calls and customer-service calls.

Use unit costs cautiously

Unit costs are averages. As we shall see, they must be interpreted with caution. For decision making, it is best to think in terms of total costs rather than unit costs. Nevertheless, unit-cost numbers are frequently used in many situations. For example, assume that the President of the

Jazz Society at the Católica Lisbon School of Business & Economics is deciding whether to hire a music group for a forthcoming party. The group charges a fixed fee of €1000. The president may intuitively calculate a unit cost for the group when thinking about an admission price. Given the fixed fee of €1000, the unit cost is €10 if 100 people attend, €2 if 500 attend, and €1 if 1000 attend. Note, however, that with a fixed fee of €1000 the *total cost* is unaffected by the attendance level, while the *unit cost* is a function of the attendance level. In this example, each attendee is considered to be one unit.

Costs are often neither inherently fixed nor variable. Much depends on the specific context. Consider the €1000 fixed fee that we assumed was to be paid to the music group. This is just one way the music group could be paid. Possible payment schedules that might be considered include:

- Schedule 1: €1000 fixed fee
- Schedule 2: €1 per person attending + €500 fixed fee
- Schedule 3: €2 per person attending.

Under schedules 2 and 3, the euro amount of the payment to the music group is not known until after the event.

Concepts in action

Reducing fixed costs and managing profit growth at Porsche

All companies seeking to show profits have to be concerned about fixed costs. Investments to achieve future profitability often imply that as fixed costs rise, volume of sales should rise also, so they can be allocated to a larger sales-volume base. But there may be a time lag between investing heavily and seeing volumes grow. Consider Porsche's plans to invest €3 billion over the 2018–2022 period for electrified vehicles (EVs), which its CFO Lutz Meschke says is '… an enormous burden for a company our size'. But, Porsche does not wish to reduce its 15 per cent operating margin profitability target despite the heavy investments that EVs will need to make – at least not in the long run. Approximately €8000 to €10 000 is the added cost of content added to an electrified vehicle. Customers do not just fathom these costs being passed on to them as price increases. Yet, Porsche's strategy, like other global motor car players, is to move in the direction of EV. So the answer for Porsche is to make investments such that its strategy pays off in the long-term, whereby it retains its high profitability. Managing costs is crucial. As Meschke explains: 'To protect your margin, you have to look at substantial fixed-cost cuts, but there's only so much potential since the biggest chunks are personnel and development. As sales shift toward EVs, a temporary drop in profitability in the midterm may be expected.'

So Porsche does not slow down its cost containment efforts. The company recognises that 'identifying and extracting efficiencies is our everyday business'. Consequently, it has operationalised its Porsche Improvement Process, whereby Meschke aims for 'Annual savings of at least 3 per cent in indirect areas and 6 per cent in direct ones'. On top of that, Porsche reviews its 'core cross-departmental processes every year for another 10 per cent savings'. By March 2021, Meschke was able to report that its profits were 4.4 billion euros higher than the previous year and an operational return on sales of 14.6%. He indicated that 'Our top priority in the crisis was liquidity. We needed to reduce all costs that were not absolutely necessary. We didn't scrimp at all when it comes to the future topics. We continue to proceed at full speed on transformation, digitalisation and electrification.'

Source: Hetzner, C. (2017) 'Porsche CFO outlines how company will thrive in EV era' (http://europe.autonews.com/article/20171101/ANE/171029772/porsche-cfo-outlines-how-company-will-thrive-in-ev-era) (27/1/2018); Porsche (2021) 'Porsche achieves sustainable growth in 2020 financial year' (https://newsroom.porsche.com/en/2021/company/porsche-annual-press-conference-financial-year-2020-annual-and-sustainability-report-23936.html).

Exhibit 2.7 The effects of the three payment levels on unit costs and total costs for five attendance levels

Number of persons attending	Schedule 1: €1000 fixed		Schedule 2: €1 per person attending + €500 fixed		Schedule 3: €2 per person	
	Total cost	Unit cost	Total cost	Unit cost	Total cost	Unit cost
50	€1000	€20	€550	€11	€100	€2
100	1000	10	600	6	200	2
250	1000	4	750	3	500	2
500	1000	2	1000	2	1000	2
1000	1000	1	1500	1.5	2000	2

The effects of these three payment schedules on unit costs and total costs for five attendance levels are shown in Exhibit 2.7.

The unit cost under schedule 1 is calculated by dividing the fixed cost of €1000 by the attendance level. For schedule 2, the unit cost is calculated by first determining the total cost for each attendance level and then dividing that amount by that attendance level. Thus, for 250 people, schedule 2 has a total cost of €750 (€500 + 250 × €1), which gives a unit cost of €3 per person. Schedule 3 has a unit cost of €2 per person for any attendance level because the music group is to be paid €2 per person with no fixed payment.

All three payment schedules would yield the same unit cost of €2 per person only if 500 people attend. The unit cost is not €2 per person under schedule 1 or schedule 2 for any attendance level except 500 people. Thus, it would be incorrect to use the €2 per person amount in schedule 1 or 2 to predict what the total costs would be for 1000 people. Consider what occurs if 250 people attend and the group is paid a fixed fee of €1000. The unit cost is then €4 per person. *While unit costs are often useful, they must be interpreted with extreme caution if they include fixed costs per unit*. When estimating total cost, think of variable costs as an amount per unit and fixed costs as a lump-sum total amount.

The key relationships between total costs and unit costs are summarised in Panel A of Exhibit 2.8. Panel B illustrates these relationships for schedule 3 where the university social club pays the music group on a variable basis (cost of €2 per person). Panel C illustrates schedule 1 where the music group is paid a fixed amount (cost of €1000).

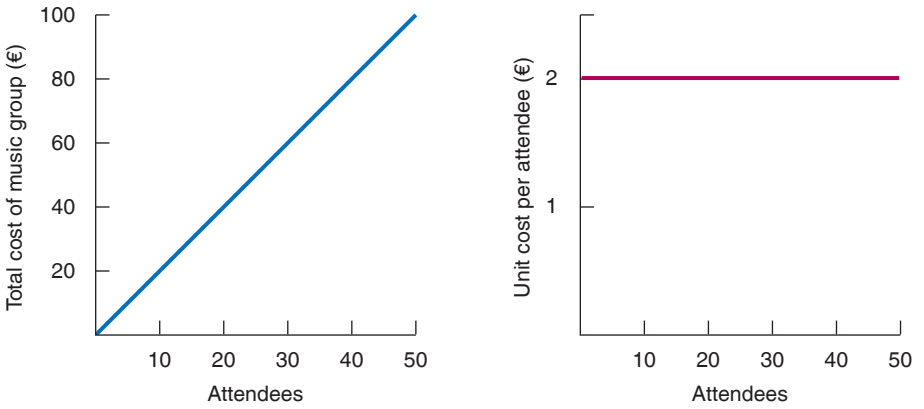
Exhibit 2.8 Behaviour of total costs and unit costs when the level of the cost driver changes with illustration of alternative payment schedules for music group

Panel A: Summary of key relationships

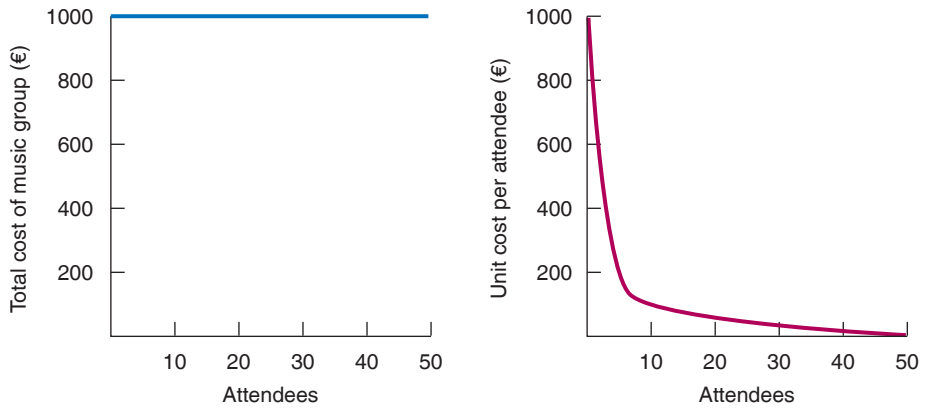
Cost behaviour pattern	Total costs	Unit costs
When item is a variable cost	Total costs change with changes in level of cost driver	Unit costs remain the same with changes in level of cost driver
When item is a fixed cost	Total costs remain the same with changes in level of cost driver	Unit costs change with changes in level of cost driver

Exhibit 2.8 continued

Panel B: Payment is €2 per attendance



Panel C: Payment is a fixed €1000



Financial statements, business sectors and the recognition of costs

We now consider the different sectors of the economy, the different types of stock that companies hold, and how these factors affect commonly used classifications of capitalised and revenue-based costs, which tie into the income statements or balance sheets of service, merchandising and manufacturing-sector companies. Let's first look at service companies.

Service-sector companies provide services or intangible products to their customers – for example, legal advice or an audit. These companies do not have any stock of tangible product at the end of an accounting period. Examples include law firms, accounting firms, advertising agencies and television stations. Labour costs are typically the most significant cost category, often being as high as 70% of total costs.

Exhibit 2.9 presents an income statement for Ahamed & Partners, a law firm specialising in libel lawsuits. The customers (clients) of this law firm receive legal advice and representation on their behalf in court and in negotiations. Salaries and wages constitute 67.3% of total operating costs (€970 000 ÷ €1 442 000).

Exhibit 2.9 Service-sector income statement

Ahamed & Partners income statement for the year ended 31 December 2022

Revenues		€1 600 000
Costs		
Salaries and wages	€970 000	
Rent	180 000	
Depreciation	105 000	
Other costs	187 000	1 442 000
Operating profit		€158 000

The operating-cost line items for service companies will include costs from all areas of the value chain (production of services, marketing, and so on). There is not a line item for cost of goods sold in the income statement of Ahamed & Partners. Why? Because the business sells only services or intangible products to its customers.

As opposed to service companies, **merchandising-sector companies** provide tangible products they have previously purchased in the same basic form from suppliers. Merchandise purchased from suppliers but not sold at the end of an accounting period is held as stock. The merchandising sector includes companies engaged in retailing (such as book stores or department stores), distributing or wholesaling. **Manufacturing-sector companies** provide tangible products that have been converted to a different form from that of the products purchased from suppliers. At the end of an accounting period, a manufacturer has stock that can include direct materials, work in progress or finished goods (see below). Examples are computer, food processing and textile companies.

Manufacturing-sector companies purchase materials and components and convert them into finished goods. These companies typically have one or more of the following three types of stock:

1 **Direct materials stock**. Direct materials is stock that will be used in the manufacturing process (for example, computer chips and components needed to manufacture mobile phones).
2 **Work-in-process stock**. Goods partially worked on but not yet completed (for example, mobile phones at various stages of completion in the manufacturing process). This is also called **work-in-progress**.
3 **Finished-goods stock**. Goods (for example, mobile phones) completed, but not yet sold.

Merchandising-sector companies purchase tangible products and then sell them without changing their basic form. These companies hold only one type of stock, which is products in their original purchased form, called *merchandise stock*. As noted, service-sector companies provide only services or intangible products and do not hold stock of tangible products.

How to classify manufacturing costs

Three terms commonly used when describing manufacturing costs are *direct materials costs*, *direct manufacturing labour costs* and *indirect manufacturing costs*. These terms build on the direct versus indirect cost distinction we described earlier in the context of manufacturing costs.

1 **Direct materials costs** are the acquisition costs of all materials that eventually become part of the cost object (work in process and then finished goods) and can be traced to the cost object in an economically feasible way. The aluminium and tyres used to make the Porsche Panamera and the computer chips used to make mobile phones are examples of direct material costs. Note that the costs of direct materials include not only the cost of the materials themselves,

but the freight-in (inward delivery) charges, sales taxes and customs duties that must be paid to acquire them.

2 **Direct manufacturing labour costs** include the compensation of all manufacturing labour that can be traced to the cost object (work in process and then finished goods) in an economically feasible way. Examples include wages and fringe benefits paid to machine operators and assembly-line workers who convert direct materials to finished goods.

3 **Indirect manufacturing costs** are all manufacturing costs that are related to the cost object (work in process and then finished goods), but cannot be traced to that cost object in an economically feasible way. Examples include supplies, indirect materials such as lubricants, indirect manufacturing labour such as plant maintenance and cleaning labour, plant rent, plant insurance, property taxes on the plant, plant depreciation, and the compensation of plant managers. This cost category is also referred to as **manufacturing overhead costs** or **factory overhead costs**. We use *indirect manufacturing costs* and *manufacturing overhead costs* interchangeably in this book.

We now describe the distinction between stock-related and revenue cost. One key distinction of costs is their classification as **capitalised costs** that are first recorded as an asset (capital) when they are incurred. These costs are presumed to provide future benefits to the company. Examples are costs to acquire computer equipment and motor vehicles. These costs are written off to those periods assumed to benefit from their incurrence. For example, the cost of acquiring motor vehicles is written off as a depreciation expense that occurs each year of the expected useful life of the vehicle. And then, there are **revenue costs**, which are recorded as expenses of the accounting period when they are incurred. Examples are salaries paid to marketing personnel and monthly rent paid for administrative offices. In this book, we also refer to **operating costs** as all costs associated with generating revenues, other than cost of goods sold. For now, in relation to the company's financial statements, we want to focus on the following, which tie into how we regard accounting for stock.

Stock-related costs (also called **inventoriable costs**) are all costs of a product that are considered assets in a company's balance sheet when the costs are incurred and that are expensed as cost of goods sold only when the product is sold. For manufacturing-sector companies, all manufacturing costs are inventoriable costs. The costs first accumulate as work-in-process inventory assets (in other words, they are 'inventoried') and then as finished goods assets. Note that the cost of goods sold includes all manufacturing costs (direct materials, direct manufacturing labour, and manufacturing overhead costs) incurred to produce them. Thus, inventorying manufacturing costs in the balance sheet during the accounting period when the products are manufactured (i.e. capitalising these costs) and expensing the manufacturing costs in a later income statement when the products are sold matches revenues and expenses.

For merchandising-sector companies such as Primark, inventoriable costs are the costs of purchasing goods that are resold in their same form. These costs are made up of the costs of the goods themselves plus any incoming freight, insurance, and handling costs for those goods. Service-sector companies provide only services or intangible products. The absence of inventories of tangible products for sale means service-sector companies have no inventoriable costs.

Period costs are all costs in the income statement other than cost of goods sold. Period costs, such as design costs, marketing, distribution and customer-service costs, are treated as expenses of the accounting period in which they are incurred, because managers expect these costs to increase revenues in only that period and not in future periods. For manufacturing-sector companies, all non-manufacturing costs in the income statement are period costs. For merchandising-sector companies, all costs in the income statement not related to the cost of goods purchased for resale are period costs. Examples of these period costs are labour costs of sales floor personnel and advertising costs. Because there are no inventoriable costs for servicesector companies, all costs in the income statement are period costs. These are in effect, revenue costs, which are recorded as expenses of the accounting period when they are incurred. Examples are salaries paid to marketing personnel and monthly rent paid for administrative offices.

In this chapter, we assume that all manufacturing costs are inventoriable. The term *absorption costing* is used to describe the method in which all manufacturing costs are inventoriable. Chapter 6 further discusses this method and *variable costing*, in which only variable manufacturing costs are inventoriable. Fixed manufacturing costs under variable costing are treated as *period costs*, that is, they are treated as expenses in the period in which they are incurred rather than being inventoried.

Two further terms used in manufacturing-cost systems are prime costs and conversion costs. **Prime costs** are all direct manufacturing costs. As information-gathering technology improves, companies may add other direct-cost categories. For example, power costs might be metered in specific areas of a plant that are dedicated to the assembly of separate products. In this case, prime costs would include direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and direct metered power. Computer software companies often have a 'purchased technology' direct manufacturing-cost item. This item, which covers payments to third parties who develop software programs included in a product, would also be included in prime costs. **Conversion costs** are all manufacturing costs other than direct materials costs. These costs are for transforming direct materials into finished goods.

Consider the income statement of a manufacturer, Cellular Products, which is shown in Exhibit 2.10 (Panel A). Cost of goods sold in a manufacturing company is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c}\text{Opening finished}\\ \text{goods stock}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Cost of goods}\\ \text{manufactured}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Closing finished}\\ \text{goods stock}\end{array} = \text{Cost of goods sold}$$

For Cellular Products in 2018, the corresponding amounts (in thousands, Panel A) are

$$€22\ 000 + €104\ 000 - €18\ 000 = €108\ 000$$

Cost of goods manufactured refers to the cost of goods brought to completion, whether they were started before or during the current accounting period. In 2022, these costs amount to €104 000 for Cellular Products (see the schedule of cost of goods manufactured in Panel B of Exhibit 2.10). The manufacturing costs incurred during 2022 (€105 000) is a line item in Panel B. This item refers to the 'new' direct manufacturing costs and the 'new' manufacturing overhead costs that were incurred during 2022 for all goods worked on during 2022, regardless of whether all those goods were fully completed during this year.

The manufacturing costs of the finished goods include direct materials, other direct manufacturing costs, and indirect manufacturing costs. All these are inventoriable costs; they are assigned to work-in-progress stock or finished goods stock until the goods are sold. Inventoriable costs include the costs of assets that facilitate the manufacturing process and (typically) become part of indirect manufacturing costs. For example, the costs of the blast furnace of a steel company are first capitalised at the time of construction. These costs subsequently become part of steel stock costs, as depreciation on the blast furnace is included in indirect manufacturing costs over the useful life of the blast furnace.

Newcomers to management accounting frequently assume that indirect costs such as rent, telephone and depreciation are always costs of the period in which they are incurred and are unconnected with stocks. However, if these costs are related to manufacturing per se, they are indirect manufacturing costs and are inventoriable. Operating-cost items in the income statement in Panel A of Exhibit 2.10 include: (1) the expensing of capitalised costs (such as depreciation on a fleet of delivery vehicles or depreciation on computers purchased for marketing personnel), and (2) the cost of items recorded as an expense as incurred (such as the salaries of customer-service representatives).

Differences exist across companies in the way accounting terms are defined. Consider a direct labourer, such as a lathe operator or an assembly-line worker, who earns gross wages calculated on the basis of a regular wage rate of €20 per hour. This person receives fringe benefits (employer

Exhibit 2.10 Income statement and schedule of cost of goods manufactured or manufacturing-sector company

Panel A: Cellular Products income statement for the year ended 31 December 2022 (€000)

Revenues		€210 000
Cost of goods sold		
Opening finished goods, 1 January 2023	€22 000	
Cost of goods manufactured (see Panel B)	104 000	
Cost of goods available for sale	126 000	
Closing finished goods, 31 December 2023	18 000	108 000
Gross margin (or gross profit)		102 000
Operating costs		70 000
Operating profit		€32 000

Panel B: Cellular Products schedule of cost of goods manufactured* for the year ended 31 December 2023 (€000)

Direct materials		
Opening stock, 1 January 2023	€11 000	
Purchases of direct materials	73 000	
Cost of direct materials available for use	84 000	
Closing stock, 31 December 2023	8 000	
Direct materials used		€76 000
Direct manufacturing labour		17 750
Indirect manufacturing costs		
Indirect manufacturing labour	4 000	
Supplies	1 000	
Heat, light and power	1 750	
Depreciation – plant building	1 500	
Depreciation – plant equipment	2 500	
Miscellaneous	500	11 250
Manufacturing costs incurred during 2023		105 000
Add opening work-in-progress stock, 1 January 2023		6 000
Total manufacturing costs to account for		111 000
Deduct closing work-in-progress stock, 31 December 2023		7 000
Cost of goods manufactured (to income statement)		€104 000

*Note that the term cost of goods manufactured refers to the cost of goods brought to completion (finished) during the year, whether they were started before or during the current year. Some of the manufacturing costs incurred during the year are held back as costs of the closing work-in-progress stock; similarly, the costs of the opening work-in-progress stock become part of the cost of goods manufactured for the year. Note too that this schedule can become a schedule of cost of goods manufactured and sold simply by including the opening and closing finished goods stock figures in the supporting schedule rather than directly in the body of the income statement as in Panel A.

contributions to the employee's National Insurance, life insurance, and so on) totalling, say, €8 per hour. Some companies classify the €20 as direct manufacturing labour cost and the €8 as manufacturing overhead cost. Other companies classify the entire €28 as direct manufacturing labour cost. The latter approach is conceptually preferable because these payroll fringe benefit costs are a fundamental part of acquiring manufacturing labour services. The magnitude of fringe benefits makes this issue important. Countries where fringe benefit costs are over 30% of wage rates include Italy (105%), France (90%), Germany (86%), the UK (43%) and the USA (38%) (PWC, 2019).

The many meanings of product costs

An important theme of this book is 'different costs for different purposes'. This theme can be illustrated with respect to product costing. A **product cost** is the sum of the costs assigned to a product for a specific purpose. Exhibit 2.11 illustrates three different purposes:

1 *Product pricing and product emphasis.* For this purpose, the costs of all those areas of the value chain required to bring a product to a customer should be included.

2 *Contracting with government agencies.* Government agencies frequently provide detailed guidelines on the allowable and non-allowable items in a product-cost amount. For example, some government agencies explicitly exclude marketing costs from reimbursement to contractors and may reimburse only a part of R&D costs. Hence, the bracket in Exhibit 2.11 shows that a specific contract may provide for recovering all design and production costs and part of R&D costs.

3 *Financial statements.* The focus here is on inventoriable costs. In most countries, generally accepted accounting principles in manufacturing companies allow only manufacturing costs to be assigned to products reported in the financial statements.

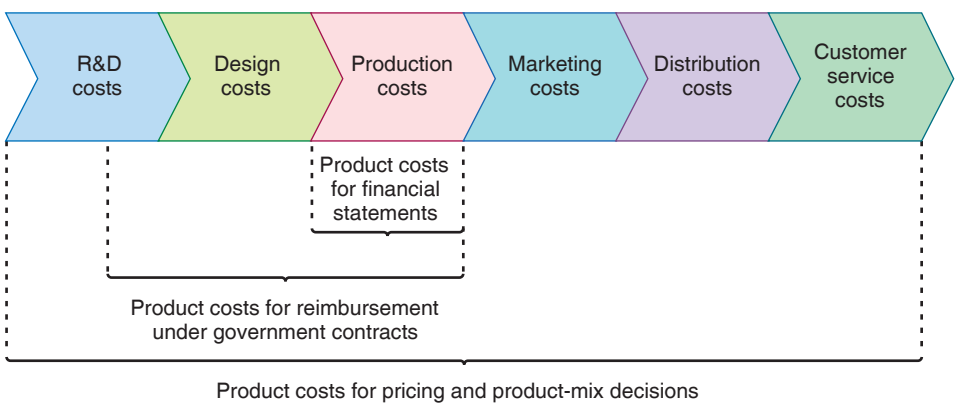
Exhibit 2.11 illustrates how a product-cost amount may include only inventoriable costs in the financial statements, a broader set of costs for reimbursement under a government contract, and a still broader set of costs for pricing and product emphasis.

Classification of costs

This chapter has provided many examples of cost classifications that have various purposes. Classifications can be made on the basis of:

1 Business function
   a Research and development
   b Design of products, services and processes

Exhibit 2.11 Different product costs for different purposes



c Production
d Marketing
e Distribution
f Customer service

2 Assignment to a cost object

a Direct costs
b Indirect costs

3 Behaviour pattern in relation to changes in the level of a cost driver

a Variable costs
b Fixed costs

4 Aggregate or average

a Total costs
b Unit costs

5 Assets or expenses

a Inventoriable (product) costs
b Period costs.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 A cost object is anything for which a separate measurement of costs is desired. Examples include a product, service, project, customer, brand category, activity, department and programme.

2 A direct cost of a cost object is any cost that is related to the cost object and can be traced to that cost object in an economically feasible way. Indirect costs are costs that are related to the cost object but cannot be traced to that cost object in an economically feasible way. A cost may be direct regarding one cost object and indirect regarding other cost objects. This book uses the term *cost tracing* to describe the assignment of direct costs to a cost object and the term *cost allocation* to describe the assignment of indirect costs to a cost object.

3 A cost driver is any factor that affects costs. Examples include the number of set-ups and direct-labour hours in manufacturing and the number of sales personnel and sales euros in marketing. A variable cost is a cost that does change in total in proportion to changes in a cost driver. A fixed cost is a cost that does not change in total despite changes in a cost driver.

4 Unit costs of a cost object should be interpreted with caution when they include a fixed-cost component. When making total cost estimates, think of variable costs as an amount per unit and fixed costs as a total amount.

5 Service-sector companies provide services or intangible products to their customers. In contrast, merchandising- and manufacturing-sector companies provide tangible products to their customers. Merchandising companies do not change the form of the products they acquire and sell. Manufacturing companies convert materials and other inputs into finished goods for sale. These differences are reflected in both the balance sheets and income statements of companies in these sectors.

6 Capitalised costs are first recorded as an asset when they are incurred. They become cost of goods sold when the product is sold. Period costs are expensed in the period in which they are incurred.

7 Managers may assign different costs to the same cost object depending on its purpose. For example, for financial reporting purposes, the (inventoriable) costs of a product include only manufacturing costs. In contrast, costs from all areas of the value chain can be assigned to a product for decisions on pricing and product emphasis.

References

CFO Dive (2021) 'CFOs give top priority to identifying cost issues' (https://www.cfodive.com/press-release/20211013-cfos-give-top-priority-to-identifying-cost-issues-survey-shows/).

CNBC (2022) 'After rocky start to year, Unilever axes 1,500 managers', 25 January (https://www.cnbc.com/2022/01/25/unilever-cuts-1500-management-jobs-as-it-reshapes.html)

Deloitte (2021) '2020 Enterprise transformation and cost reduction survey: Save-to-Thrive during the COVID-19 pandemic' (https://www2.deloitte.com/cn/en/pages/strategy-operations/monitor-deloitte/articles/global-cost-management-survey.html).

Global Happenings (2022) 'Opel Corsa, 11 millionth unit produced in Zaragoza', Global Happenings, 25 January (https://globalhappenings.com/automobile/90745.html)

Kollewe, J. and Jolly, J. (2022). 'Unilever to cut 1,500 jobs as investors increase pressure', *The Guardian*, 25 January (https://www.theguardian.com/business/2022/jan/25/unilever-plans-thousands-of-job-cuts-as-investors-increase-pressure)

PWC (2019) 'International wage projections to 2040', PricewaterhouseCoopers (https://www.pwc.co.uk/economic-services/assets/iwp-report-feb-2019-final.pdf)

Valle, S. and Khan, S. (2022) 'Exxon outlines new cost cutting to drive profit after Russia exit', 22 March (https://www.reuters.com/business/energy/exxon-focuses-returns-emissions-cuts-ahead-investor-day-2022-03-02/)

CHAPTER 2

Assessment material

Review questions

2.1 Define *cost object* and give three examples.

2.2 Which costs are considered direct? Indirect? Give an example of each.

2.3 Describe how a given cost item can be both a direct cost and an indirect cost.

2.4 Give three factors that will affect the classification of a cost as direct or indirect.

2.5 What is a *cost driver*? Give one example for each area in the value chain.

2.6 What is the *relevant range*? What role does the relevant range concept play in explaining how costs behave?

2.7 Explain why *unit costs* must often be interpreted with caution.

2.8 Describe how service-, merchandising- and manufacturing-sector companies differ from each other.

2.9 What are the three major categories of the inventoriable costs of a manufactured product?

2.10 Define the following: direct materials costs, direct manufacturing labour costs, indirect manufacturing costs, prime costs and conversion costs.

Exercises

Basic level

2.11 **Total costs and unit costs** (10 minutes)

A student association has hired a music group for a graduation party. The cost will be a fixed amount of €40 000.

Required

1 Suppose 500 people attend the party. What will be the total cost of the music group? The unit cost per person?

2 Suppose 2000 people attend. What will be the total cost of the music group? The unit cost per person?

3 For prediction of total costs, should the manager of the party use the unit cost in requirement 1? The unit cost in requirement 2? What is the major lesson of this problem?

*2.12 Total costs and unit costs (15 minutes)

George Mathenge is a well-known motivational speaker. The Europe Speaker's Bureau (ESB) wants Mathenge to be the sole speaker at an all-day seminar. Mathenge's agent offers ESB the choice of three possible fee arrangements:

- Schedule 1: €8000 fee
- Schedule 2: €20 per person + €2000 fixed fee
- Schedule 3: €50 per person.

Each attendee will be charged a €200 fee for the all-day seminar.

Required

1 What is ESB's fixed cost and variable cost for hiring Mathenge under each alternative schedule?

2 For each schedule, calculate the total cost and unit cost per seminar attendee if (a) 50 attend, (b) 200 attend, and (c) 500 attend. Comment on the results.

2.13 Total costs and unit costs (10 minutes)

Weltferien AG markets package holidays to Tenerife from Dresden. The package includes a round-trip flight on Saxon-Air. Weltferien pays Saxon-Air €60 000 for each round-trip flight. The maximum load on a flight is 300 passengers.

Required

1 What is the unit cost to Weltferien of each passenger on a Saxon-Air round-trip flight if there are (a) 200, (b) 250 or (c) 300 passengers?

2 What role can the unit-cost figures per passenger calculated in requirement 1 play when Weltferien is predicting the total air-flight costs to be paid next month for Saxon-Air carrying 4000 passengers on 15 scheduled round-trip flights?

2.14 Classification of costs, service sector (15–20 minutes)

Presta-Serviços SA is a marketing research firm that organises focus groups for consumer product companies. Each focus group has eight individuals who are paid €9000 per session to provide comments on new products. These focus groups meet in hotels and are led by a trained independent marketing specialist hired by Presta-Serviços. Each specialist is paid a fixed retainer to conduct a minimum number of sessions and a per-session fee of €360 000. A Presta-Serviços staff member attends each session to ensure that all the logistical aspects run smoothly.

Required

Classify each of the following cost items as:

a Direct or indirect (D or I) costs with respect to each individual focus group.

b Variable or fixed (V or F) costs with respect to how the total costs of Presta-Serviços change as the number of focus groups changes. (If in doubt, select the cost type on the basis of whether the total costs will change substantially if a large number of groups are conducted.)

You will have two answers (D or I; V or F) for each of the following items:

Cost item	D or I	V or F
A Payment to individuals in each focus group to provide comments on new products		
B Annual subscription of Presta-Serviços to *Consumer Reports* magazine		
C Phone calls made by Presta-Serviços staff member to confirm individuals will attend a focus group session. (Records of individual calls are not kept)		

Cost item	D or I	V or F
D Retainer paid to focus group leader to conduct 20 focus groups per year on new medical products		
E Hotel meals provided to participants in each focus group		
F Lease payment by Presta-Serviços for corporate office		
G Cost of tapes used to record comments made by individuals in a focus group session. (These tapes are sent to the company whose products are being tested)		
H Petrol costs of Presta-Serviços staff for company-owned vehicles. (Staff members submit monthly bills with no mileage breakdowns)		

2.15 **Classification of costs, merchandising sector** (15–20 minutes)

Crescendo Srl operates a large entertainment store in Milan. The store has both a film (DVDs) section and a musical (CDs and vinyl) section. Crescendo reports revenues for the film section separately from the musical section.

Required

Classify each of the following cost items as:

a Direct or indirect (D or I) costs with respect to the film section.

b Variable or fixed (V or F) costs with respect to how the total costs of the film section change as the number of films sold changes. (If in doubt, select the cost type on the basis of whether the total costs will change substantially if a large number of films are sold.)

You will have two answers (D or I; V or F) for each of the following items:

Cost item	D or I	V or F
A Annual retainer paid to a film distributor		
B Electricity costs of Crescendo store (single bill covers entire store)		
C Costs of films purchased for sale to customers		
D Subscription to *Video-Novo* magazine		
E Leasing of computer software used for financial budgeting at Crescendo store		
F Cost of popcorn provided free to all customers of Crescendo		
G Earthquake insurance policy for Crescendo store		
H Freight-in costs of films purchased by Crescendo		

Intermediate level

2.16 **Cost drivers and the value chain** (15 minutes)

A Toyota analyst is preparing a presentation on cost drivers. Unfortunately, both the list of its business function areas and the accompanying list of representative cost drivers are accidentally randomised. The two lists now on the computer screen are as follows:

Business function area	Representative cost driver
A Design of Products/Processes	1 Number of cars recalled for defective parts
B Customer Service	2 Number of machine assembly hours
C Marketing	3 Number of research scientists
D Research and Development	4 Hours of computer-aided design (CAD) work
E Distribution	5 Number of sales personnel
F Production	6 Weight of cars shipped

Required

1 Match each business function area with its representative cost driver.

2 Give a second example of a cost driver for each of the business function areas of Toyota.

2.17 Computing cost of goods manufactured and cost of goods sold (20–25 minutes)

Calculate cost of goods manufactured and cost of goods sold from the following account balances relating to 2022 (in € millions):

Property tax on plant building	0.45
Marketing, distribution and customer-service costs	5.55
Finished goods stock, 1 January 2022	4.05
Plant utilities	2.55
Work-in-progress stock, 31 December 2022	3.90
Depreciation of plant building	1.35
General and administrative costs (non-plant)	6.45
Direct materials used	13.05
Finished goods stock, 31 December 2022	5.10
Depreciation of plant equipment	1.65
Plant repairs and maintenance	2.40
Work-in-progress stock, 1 January 2022	3.00
Direct manufacturing labour	5.10
Indirect manufacturing labour	3.45
Indirect materials used	1.65
Miscellaneous plant overhead	0.60

2.18 Income statement and schedule of cost of goods manufactured (25–30 minutes)

Howell Ltd has the following account balances (in millions):

For specific date		For year 2022	
Direct materials, 1 January 2022	£15	Purchases of direct materials	£325
Work in progress, 1 January 2022	10	Direct manufacturing labour	100
Finished goods, 1 January 2022	70	Depreciation – plant building and equipment	80
Direct materials, 31 December 2022	20	Plant supervisory salaries	5
Work in progress, 31 December 2022	5	Miscellaneous plant overhead	35
Finished goods, 31 December 2022	55	Revenues	950
		Marketing, distribution and customer-service costs	240
		Plant supplies used	10
		Plant utilities	30
		Indirect manufacturing labour	60

Required

Prepare an income statement and a supporting schedule of cost of goods manufactured for the year ended 31 December 2022. (For additional questions regarding these facts, see the next problem.)

2.19 Interpretation of statements (continuation of Exercise 2.18) (20–25 minutes)

Refer to the preceding problem.

Required

1. How would the answer to the preceding problem be modified if you were asked for a schedule of cost of goods manufactured and sold instead of a schedule of cost of goods manufactured? Be specific.
2. Would the sales manager's salary (included in marketing, distribution and customer-service costs) be accounted for differently if Howell Ltd were a merchandising company instead of a manufacturing company?
3. Plant supervisory salaries are usually regarded as indirect manufacturing costs. Under what conditions might some of these costs be regarded as direct manufacturing costs? Give an example.
4. Suppose that both the direct materials used and the plant depreciation were related to the manufacture of 1 million units of product. What is the unit cost for the direct materials assigned to those units? What is the unit cost for plant building and equipment depreciation? Assume that yearly plant depreciation is calculated on a straight-line basis.
5. Assume that the implied cost behaviour patterns in requirement 4 persist. That is, direct materials costs behave as a variable cost and depreciation behaves as a fixed cost. Repeat the computations in requirement 4, assuming that the costs are being predicted for the manufacture of 1.2 million units of product. How would the total costs be affected?
6. As a management accountant, explain concisely to the CEO why the unit costs differed in requirements 4 and 5.

2.20 Finding unknown balances (20–25 minutes)

An auditor for the Inland Revenue is trying to reconstruct some partially destroyed records of two taxpayers. For each of the cases in the accompanying list, find the unknowns designated by letters A to D (figures are assumed to be in £000).

	Case 1	Case 2
Debtors, 31 December 2022	£6 000	£2 100
Cost of goods sold	A	20 000
Creditors, 1 January 2022	3 000	1 700
Creditors, 31 December 2022	1 800	1 500
Finished goods stocks, 31 December 2022	B	5 300
Gross margin	11 300	C
Work in progress, 1 January 2022	0	800
Work in progress, 31 December 2022	0	3 000
Finished goods stocks, 1 January 2022	4 000	4 000
Direct material used	8 000	12 000
Direct manufacturing labour	3 000	5 000
Indirect manufacturing costs	7 000	D
Purchases of direct material	9 000	7 000
Revenues	32 000	31 800
Debtors, 1 January 2022	2 000	1 400

2.21 Fire loss, computing stock costs (30–40 minutes)

A distraught employee, Guy Pirault-Manne, put a torch to a manufacturing plant on a blustery day, 26 February 2022. The resulting blaze completely destroyed the plant and its contents. Fortunately, certain accounting records were kept in another building. They revealed the following for the period from 1 January 2022 to 26 February 2022:

Direct materials purchased	€3.2 million
Work in progress, 1 January 2022	€680 000
Direct materials, 1 January 2022	€320 000
Finished goods, 1 January 2022	€600 000
Indirect manufacturing costs	40% of conversion costs
Revenues	€10 million
Direct manufacturing labour	€3.6 million
Prime costs	€5.88 million
Gross margin percentage based on sales	20%
Cost of goods available for sale	€9 million

The loss was fully covered by insurance. The insurance company wants to know the historical cost of the stocks as one factor considered when negotiating a settlement.

Required

Calculate the cost of:

1. Finished goods stock, 26 February 2022.
2. Work-in-progress stock, 26 February 2022.
3. Direct materials stock, 26 February 2022.

2.22 Comprehensive problem on unit costs, product costs (30 minutes)

Overtoom International Nederland BV manufactures and sells metal shelving. It began operations on 1 January 2022. Costs incurred for 2022 (V stands for variable; F stands for fixed) are as follows:

Direct materials used costs	€280 000	V
Direct manufacturing labour costs	60 000	V
Plant energy costs	10 000	V
Indirect manufacturing labour costs	20 000	V
Indirect manufacturing labour costs	32 000	F
Other indirect manufacturing costs	16 000	V
Other indirect manufacturing costs	48 000	F
Marketing, distribution and customer-service costs	245 700	V
Marketing, distribution and customer-service costs	80 000	F
Administrative costs	100 000	F

Vriable manufacturing costs are variable with respect to units produced. Variable marketing, distribution, and customer-service costs are variable with respect to units sold. Stock data are as follows:

	Opening 1 January 2022	Closing 31 December 2022
Direct materials	0 kg	2000 kg
Work in progress	0 units	0 units
Finished goods	0 units	? units

Production in 2022 was 100 000 units. Two kilograms of direct materials are used to make one unit of finished product.

Revenues in 2022 were €873 600. The selling price per unit and the purchase price per kilogram of direct materials were stable throughout the year. The company's ending stock of finished goods is carried at the average unit manufacturing costs for 2022. Finished goods stock, at 31 December 2022, was €41 940.

Required

1 Direct materials stock, total cost, 31 December 2022.
2 Finished goods stock, total units, 31 December 2022.
3 Selling price per unit 2022.
4 Operating profit 2022. Show your computations.

*2.23 **Budgeted income statement** (continuation of Exercise 2.22) (30 minutes)

Assume management predicts that the selling price per unit and variable cost per unit will be the same in 2024 as in 2022. Fixed manufacturing costs and marketing, distribution and customer-service costs in 2024 are also predicted to be the same as in 2022. Sales in 2024 are forecast to be 122 000 units. The desired closing stock of finished goods, 31 December 2024, is 12 000 units. Assume zero closing stock of both direct materials and work in progress. The company's closing stock of finished goods is carried at the average unit manufacturing costs for 2024. The company uses the first-in, first-out stock method. Management has asked that you prepare a budgeted income statement for 2024.

Required

1 Units of finished goods produced in 2024.
2 Budgeted income statement for 2024.

Advanced level

*2.24 **Variable costs and fixed costs** (5–20 minutes)

Lutukka Oy owns the rights to extract minerals from beach sands in Enare Lappmark. Lutukka has costs in three areas:

a Payment to a mining subcontractor who charges €80 per tonne of beach sand mined and returned to the beach (after being processed on the mainland to extract three minerals: ilmenite, rutile and zircon).
b Payment of a government mining and environmental tax of 50 per tonne of beach sand mined.
c Payment to a barge operator. This operator charges €150 000 per month to transport each batch of beach sand – up to 100 tonnes per batch per day – to the mainland and then return to Enare Lappmark (that is, 0 – 100 tonnes per day = €150 000 per month; 101 – 200 tonnes = €300 000 per month, and so on). Each barge operates 25 days per month. The €150 000 monthly charge must be paid even if less than 100 tonnes is transported on any day and even if Lutukka requires fewer than 25 days of barge transportation in that month.

Lutukka is currently mining 180 tonnes of beach minerals per day for 25 days per month.

Required

1 What is the variable cost per tonne of beach sand mined? What is the fixed cost to Lutukka per month?
2 Plot one graph of the variable costs and another graph of the fixed costs of Lutukka. Your plots should be similar to Exhibits 2.4 and 2.5. Is the concept of relevant range applicable to your plots?

3 What is the unit cost per tonne of beach sand mined (a) if 180 tonnes are mined each day, or (b) if 220 tonnes are mined each day? Explain the difference in the unit-cost figures.

2.25 Revenue and cost recording and classifications, ethics (25–30 minutes)

Aran Sweaters Ltd designs and markets wool jumpers to many retailers and distributors around Europe. Its corporate headquarters are situated in Dublin, Ireland. Manufacturing is done by a subcontractor (O'Neil's Clothing Ltd) on Achill Island. The local council in Achill Island grants locally-owned companies a 20% income tax rebate if the ratio of their domestic labour costs to total costs exceeds 25%. Domestic labour costs are defined as the employment costs of all employees who are Achill residents. Siobhan Sheridan, the newly appointed controller of Aran Sweaters, has recently been examining payments made to O'Neil's. She observes that O'Neil's purchased wool from Aran Sweaters (€3 million in 2022). Aran Sweaters paid O'Neil's €12 million for the jumpers manufactured on Achill in 2022. Based on her industry experience, the €12 million amount is very low. She was told it was 'a great deal' for Aran Sweaters. There is also a sizeable payment by Aran Sweaters to the Swiss subsidiary of O'Neil's (€4.8 million in 2022). Sheridan is told by the O'Neil's CEO that this payment is for fabric design work that O'Neil does with Aran Sweaters. Aran Sweaters has included the €4.8 million payments in its own product design cost. The director of product design at Aran Sweaters told Sheridan it is an 'off-statement' item that historically he has neither responsibility for nor any say about. To his knowledge, O'Neil's uses only Aran Sweaters designs with either zero or minimal changes.

O'Neil's domestic labour costs in 2022 were €3.6 million while its total costs were €10 million. Included in this €3.6 million was €1.3 million for labour fringe benefits (for health insurance, etc.). A component of this €1.3 million is €600 000 for life insurance for O'Neil's executives. Aran Sweaters helped arrange this life insurance policy. It negotiated with the insurance company managing its own executive life insurance plans to include the O'Neil's executives at rates much more favourable than those available in Achill.

Required

1 What concerns should Sheridan have about the revenue and cost numbers in Aran Sweaters' financial reports?

2 Which (if any) of the concerns in requirement 1 raise ethical issues for Sheridan? Explain.

3 What steps should Sheridan take to address the ethical issues you identify in requirement 2?

CHAPTER 3

Job costing

How much does it cost Ernst & Young to audit Yamaha? How much does it cost Kraft to promote its new pre-sliced, cracker-sized cheese? How much does it cost Peugeot to manufacture and sell an e-208 all-electric car to a customer? How much does it cost Apple to incorporate wi-fi and Bluetooth within an iPad? Managers ask these questions for many reasons, including formulating overall strategies, determining product and service emphasis and pricing, engaging in cost control and meeting external reporting obligations. This chapter presents concepts and techniques that guide the responses to such questions. Chapter 11 will refine some ideas presented here.

Costing systems aim to report cost numbers that indicate the manner in which particular cost objects – such as products, services and customers – use the resources of an organisation. Before we explore the details of costing systems, three points are worth noting:

1. The cost–benefit–context approach we discussed in Chapter 1 is of relevance in designing and choosing costing systems. The costs of elaborate systems, including the costs of educating managers and other personnel, can be quite high. Managers may choose to install a more sophisticated system if they believe that its benefits will outweigh its costs. In practice, experienced managers tend to act on intuition rather than a fully quantified cost–benefit analysis. Behavioural, political and institutional factors generally influence accounting information systems choice and design.
2. Systems tend to be tailored to the underlying operations and not vice versa. Any significant change in underlying operations is likely to justify a corresponding change in the accompanying costing systems. Systems fail when operating managers perceive them as misleading, useless or incompatible with their management style.
3. Costing systems are only one source of information for managers. Generally, managers combine cost information with non-financial metrics and qualitative information when making decisions.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe the building block concept of costing systems
- Distinguish between job costing and process costing
- Outline a six-step approach to job costing
- Distinguish actual costing from normal costing
- Understand job costing in service and manufacturing contexts
- Describe key source documents used in job-costing systems
- Understand how the steps in the production process are tracked in a job-costing system
- Describe alternative methods of dealing with period-end under- or overallocated indirect costs

The building block concept of costing systems

Let us briefly review some terms introduced in Chapter 2 that we will use in discussing costing systems:

- *Cost object* – anything for which a separate measurement of costs is desired.
- *Direct costs of a cost object* – costs that are related to the particular cost object and can be traced to it in an economically feasible (cost-effective) way.
- *Indirect costs of a cost object* – costs that are related to the particular cost object but cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible (cost-effective) way. Indirect costs are allocated to the cost object using a cost-allocation method.

The relationship among these three concepts is shown in Exhibit 3.1.

Two concepts not previously defined are also important when discussing costing systems:

- **Cost pool** – a grouping of individual cost items. Cost pools can range from the very broad (such as a company-wide total-cost pool for telephones and fax machines) to the very narrow (such as the costs of operating a car used by a travelling salesperson).
- **Cost-allocation base** – a factor that is the common denominator for systematically linking an indirect cost or group of indirect costs to a cost object. A cost-allocation base can be financial (such as direct-labour costs) or non-financial (such as the number of car kilometres travelled). Companies often seek to use the cost driver of the indirect costs as the cost-allocation base. For example, the number of kilometres travelled may be used as the base for allocating motor vehicle operating costs among different sales districts. Or, for example, if the indirect costs of operating metal-cutting machines is £500 000 based on running these machines for 10 000 hours, the cost-allocation rate is £500 000 divided by 10 000 hours = £50 where machine-hours is the cost-allocation base. If a product uses 800 machine-hours, it will be allocated £40 000, or £50 per machine per hour times 800 machine-hours.

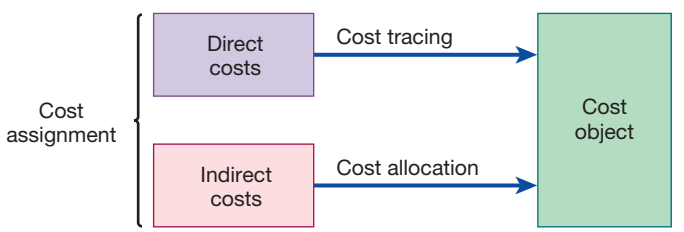
These five terms constitute the building blocks that are considered relevant in the design of costing systems.

Job-costing and process-costing systems

Companies frequently adopt one of two basic types of costing system to assign costs to products or services:

- **Job-costing system**. In this system, costs are assigned to a distinct unit, batch or lot of a product or service. A job is a task for which resources are expended in bringing a distinct product

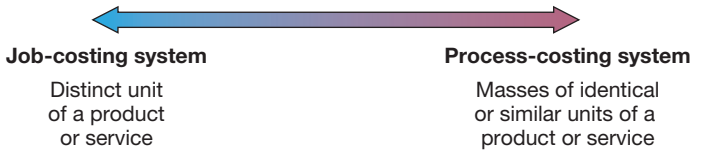
Exhibit 3.1 Relationship between a cost object and direct and indirect costs



or service to market. The product or service is often custom-made, such as an audit by an accounting firm or a gearbox system for a particular car system.

- **Process-costing system**. In this system, the cost object is masses of identical or similar units. The cost of a product or service is obtained by using broad averages to assign costs to masses of identical or similar units. The customers all receive the same product (such as teddy bears or soda ash).

These two types of costing system are best viewed as ends of a continuum:



Most companies have costing systems that are neither pure job costing nor pure process costing. Rather, they combine elements of both job costing and process costing. For now, we introduce these two systems by focusing on their pure versions. Exhibit 3.2 presents examples of job and process costing in the service, merchandising and manufacturing sectors.

The products or services accounted for with job costing can differ greatly. Accounting firms typically define individual audits as jobs, which can differ markedly in complexity among clients. An aircraft assembly company may define an individual aircraft for a specific customer as a job. Customers usually differ in their specifications about electronic equipment, size of toilet cubicles, and so on. Consider also job-order costing in bespoke cars production. Many luxury car brands such as Rolls-Royce, Ferrari and Aston Martin make bespoke cars – cars that are built to customers' specific specifications. Wealthy buyers are willing to pay millions for a personalised, one-off car. The Rolls-Royce 'Boat tail' reportedly cost an anonymous patron £202 million. In this market, customers may 'desire to curate, commission and collect' and 'demand true personalisation in the goods they seek to commission', according to Torsten Müller-Ötvös, CEO of Rolls-Royce (Harvey, 2017). Such bespoke cars can take more than a year to build due to their uniqueness. The car-makers incur various types of costs and use job-order costing to track them. Alex Innes, Head of Rolls-Royce Coachbuild Design, notes that 'The Boat Tail is not about reaching a destination, it is the destination itself' (Banks, 2021). Encrusting diamonds into the car requires direct-labour input from an in-house bespoke team of car designers, clay-model makers, manufacturers, mechanics crew, as well as those of diamond specialists. The direct materials include the auto parts outsourced from material production companies, such as bodies, roofs,

Exhibit 3.2 Examples of job costing and process costing in the service, merchandising and manufacturing sectors

	Service sector	Merchandising sector	Manufacturing sector
Job costing used	• Accounting firm audits • Advertising agency campaigns	• Sending a catalogue to a mailing list • Special promotion of a new store product	• Aircraft assembly • House construction
Process costing	• Deposit processing • Postal delivery (standard items)	• Grain dealing • Processing new magazine subscriptions	• Oil refining • Beverages production

wheels, engines, cooling system and, in this case, diamonds and special paints. Overhead costs include depreciation of equipment, utilities in the factories and headquarters, R&D, marketing and executive salaries. Creating bespoke cars in general involves unusual and rare materials, more crafting and labour input into every process. The costs of making each bespoke car differ due to their 'personalised' nature. A careful track must be kept of all costs involved to ultimately provide accurate information for pricing and profit-determination purposes. In such cases, the service or product is distinct and identifiable. Job-costing systems are designed to accommodate the cost accounting for these individual services or products.

Job costing in service organisations using actual costing

Service-sector companies provide their customers with services or intangible products. Within the service sector, jobs often differ considerably in terms of their length, complexity and resources used. Examples include a service call to repair a television, an audit engagement, the making of a musical and a university research project for a government agency.

Job costing of an audit engagement

Lindsay & Associates is a public accounting firm. Each audit engagement is viewed as an individual job. Lindsay bids a fixed fee for each audit in advance of doing the work. A key issue for Lindsay is the cost of an audit engagement. A record of costs on previous jobs enables it to make informed estimates of the costs of potential future jobs. The more knowledgeable Lindsay is about its own costs, the more likely it is to price jobs so that it makes a profit on those accepted.

First, consider the actual costing system Lindsay uses to determine the cost of individual jobs. Actual costing is a costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by using the actual direct-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the direct-cost input(s) and allocates indirect costs based on the actual indirect-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the cost-allocation base. The Tracy Transport audit illustrates **actual costing**. In November 2022, Lindsay was awarded the 2023 Tracy Transport audit job for a fee of €86 000. The 2023 audit job was done in the January to March 2023 period and covers Tracy Transport's 2022 financial year.

General approach to job costing

The six steps taken in assigning costs to individual jobs are presented here. They apply equally to job costing in the service, merchandising or manufacturing sectors.

Step 1: Identify the job that is the chosen cost object In this example, the job is the annual audit of the financial statements of Tracy Transport.

Step 2: Identify the direct costs for the job Lindsay identifies only one category of direct costs when costing individual audit jobs – professional labour. Each auditor keeps a daily time record for tracing professional labour-hours to individual audit jobs. These records show that the Tracy Transport job used 800 professional labour-hours. The actual direct-labour cost rate is €51 per hour. The actual direct-labour cost rate is the average rate at which professional labour is paid (actual total professional compensation divided by actual total direct-labour-hours worked) during the period in which the Tracy Transport audit was done. Lindsay traces the actual direct-labour costs for the Tracy Transport job as €40 800 (€51 × 800).

Step 3: Identify the indirect-cost pools associated with the job Lindsay groups all its individual indirect costs into a single cost pool called audit support. This cost pool represents all costs in Lindsay's Audit Support Department. The indirect-cost pool consists of a variety of individual

costs, such as general audit and secretarial support, which are less predictable and less traceable to jobs than direct labour. Hence, the actual indirect-cost rate can often only be calculated on an actual basis at the end of the year. In 2023, indirect costs totalled €12 690 000 (€4 990 000 for 'other-labour-related costs' plus €7 700 000 for 'non-labour-related costs').

Step 4: Select the cost-allocation base to use in allocating each indirect-cost pool to the job The allocation base selected for the audit support indirect-cost pool is professional labour-hours. Total professional labour-hours worked in 2023 were 270 000.

Step 5: Develop the rate per unit of the cost-allocation base used to allocate indirect costs to the job The actual indirect-cost rate for Lindsay in 2023 is €47 per professional labour-hour:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Actual indirect-cost rate} &= \frac{\text{Actual total costs in indirect-cost pool}}{\text{Actual total quantity of cost-allocation base}}\\ &= \frac{€4\,990\,000 + €7\,700\,000}{270\,000}\\ &= \frac{€12\,690\,000}{270\,000}\\ &= €47 \text{ per professional labour-hour}\end{aligned}$$

The actual indirect costs allocated to the Lindsay audit job are €37 600 (€47 × 800).

Step 6: Assign the costs to the cost object by adding all direct costs and all indirect costs The information from steps 1 to 5 can now be used to calculate the 2023 actual cost of the Lindsay audit:

Direct job costs traced	
Professional labour, €51 × 800	€40 800
Indirect job costs allocated	
Audit support, €47 × 800	37 600
	€78 400

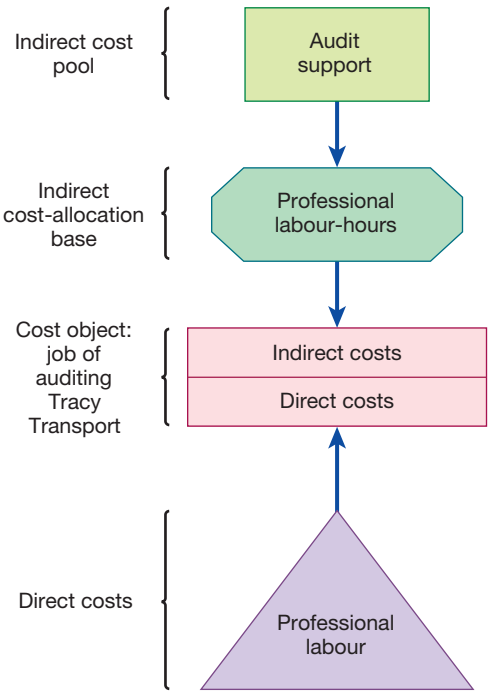
Recall that Lindsay was paid €86 000 for the 2023 Tracy Transport audit. Thus, the actual costing system shows a €7600 operating profit (€86 000 − €78 400) on this audit job.

Exhibit 3.3 presents an overview of the Lindsay job-costing system. This exhibit includes the five building blocks of this chapter: cost object, cost pool, direct costs of a cost object, indirect costs of a cost object and cost-allocation base. Costing-system overviews like Exhibit 3.3 are important learning tools. We urge you to sketch one when you need to understand a costing system. (The symbols in Exhibit 3.3 are used consistently in the costing-system overviews presented in this book. For example, a triangle always identifies a direct cost.)

Source documents

Managers and accountants gather the information that goes into their cost systems through **source documents**, which are the original records that support journal entries in an accounting system. Time records are Lindsay's main source documents. All professional staff members record how they spend each half-hour of the day. At the end of each week, the number of total professional labour-hours spent on each job (both for the most recent week and the cumulative total since the start of the job) is tabulated. The accuracy of information on how employees spend their time is important, especially in service organisations, where labour costs often make up over half of total costs. Accounting and law firms often impose penalties on personnel who do not submit accurate time records when required. Computers simplify the recording and preparation of job cost information.

Exhibit 3.3 Job-costing overview at Lindsay & Associates



Normal costing

The difficulty of calculating actual indirect-labour costs for each job means that Lindsay & Associates has to wait until the end of 2023 to calculate the actual costs on individual jobs done in 2023. Managers often want more timely information about 'actual' job costs. This demand for more timely information has prompted the use of alternatives to the actual costing method described earlier in this chapter. The alternatives are practical responses to the desire for a timely approximation of average actual costs of various jobs. Now we discuss normal costing, whereby budgeted rather than actual amounts are used to calculate indirect-cost rates. The following 2023 budgeted data pertain to the total operations of Lindsay & Associates:

	Budget
Total professional labour-hours worked	288 000
Direct costs	
Total professional labour costs	€14 400 000
Indirect costs	
Total other labour-related costs	5 328 000
Total non-labour-related costs	7 632 000
	€12 960 000

Exhibit 3.4 provides details underlying these amounts.

Exhibit 3.4 Income statement for Lindsay & Associates: 2023 budget and 2023 actual results

	2023 Budget		2023 Actual	
Revenues		€33 120		€29 700
Costs				
Professional labour costs		14 400		13 770
Other labour-related costs				
Office staff	€2 030		€1 840	
Information specialists	1 008		1 230	
Administrative	1 252		1 100	
Other	1 038	5 328	820	4 990
Non-labour-related costs				
Professional liability insurance	2 160		2 069	
Professional development	880		540	
Occupancy	2 000		1 913	
Telephone/fax/copying	1 430		1 530	
Travel	770		718	
Other	392	7 632	930	7 700
Total costs		27 360		26 460
Operating profit		€5 760		€3 240

A **normal costing** method traces direct costs to a cost object by using the actual direct-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the direct-cost input and allocates indirect costs based on the budgeted indirect-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the cost-allocation base(s). Both actual costing and normal costing trace direct costs to jobs in the same way. For the Lindsay & Associates 2023 audit of Tracy Transport, the actual direct costs traced equal €40 800 – the actual direct-cost rate of €51 per professional labour-hour times the actual quantity of 800 hours.

The difference between the actual costing and normal costing methods is that actual costing uses an actual indirect-cost rate, while normal costing uses a budgeted indirect-cost rate to cost jobs. Recall that Lindsay & Associates groups all its individual indirect costs into a single cost pool called audit support. The budgeted amount for audit support in 2023 is €12 960 000. The allocation base for the audit support indirect-cost pool is professional labour-hours. In 2023, the budgeted quantity is 288 000 hours. The budgeted indirect-cost rate for 2023 is €45 per professional labour-hour:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Budgeted indirect-cost rate} &= \frac{\text{Budgeted total costs in indirect-cost pool}}{\text{Budgeted total quantity of cost-allocation base}}\\ &= \frac{\text{€5 328 000} + \text{€7 632 000}}{\text{288 000 hours}}\\ &= \frac{\text{€12 690 000}}{\text{288 000 hours}}\\ &= \text{€45 per professional labour-hour}\end{aligned}$$

Under normal costing, each hour of professional labour on jobs in 2023 is assigned the actual direct-cost rate of €51 and the budgeted indirect-cost rate of €45. The 2023 cost of the Tracy Transport audit using normal costing is €76 800:

Direct job costs traced	
Professional labour, €51 × 800	€40 800
Indirect job costs allocated	
Audit support, €45 × 800	36 000
	€76 800

Normal costing uses actual direct costs because these costs are known and can be quickly traced to a job. Indirect costs, by definition, cannot be traced to jobs. Moreover, actual indirect costs are less predictable and not known until the end of the year. Normal costing uses budgeted rates for indirect costs to estimate or approximate the actual indirect costs of a job soon after the job is completed.

The building industry illustrates the use of normal costing. Here, materials are purchased at a price known at the purchase date and labour is paid on an hourly rate basis that is set at the time workers are hired. Actual cost information on both major direct-cost categories can thus be calculated as construction takes place. Indirect costs are allocated using a budgeted rate.

Note that normal costing uses a predetermined (budgeted) rate for allocating indirect costs, €45 here. In contrast, actual costing used a €47 rate. Later in the book, we'll discuss alternative approaches to accounting for these differences when reporting individual job costs and when preparing income statements and balance sheets.

Job costing in manufacturing

We now discuss job costing in manufacturing. This includes a transaction-by-transaction summary of how a costing system tracks the purchase of manufacturing inputs, their conversion into work in progress and then into finished goods and finally their sale. The six-step approach to job costing illustrated above is also applicable to the manufacturing sector. We illustrate this approach using the Wallace Company, which manufactures specialised machinery for the papermaking industry at its Glasgow plant. Wallace uses a normal costing method – that is, actual costs for direct-cost items and budgeted costs for indirect-cost items.

Step 1: Identify the job that is the chosen cost object The job in this case is a pulp machine manufactured for the Merseyside Paper Company in 2023.

Step 2: Identify the direct costs for the job Wallace identifies two direct manufacturing cost categories: direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

Step 3: Identify the indirect-cost pools associated with the job For product-costing purposes, Wallace uses a single indirect manufacturing cost pool termed manufacturing overhead. This pool represents the indirect costs of the Glasgow Manufacturing Department. It includes items such as depreciation on equipment, energy costs, indirect materials and indirect manufacturing labour and salaries.

Step 4: Select the cost-allocation base to use in allocating each indirect-cost pool to the job Wallace uses machine-hours as the allocation base for manufacturing overhead.

Step 5: Develop the rate per unit of each cost-allocation base used to allocate indirect costs to the job Wallace budgets 2023 manufacturing overhead costs to be €1 280 000 and the 2023 quantity of machine-hours as 16 000. Hence, the 2023 budgeted indirect-cost rate for manufacturing overhead is €80 per machine-hour (€1 280 000 ÷ 16 000 hours).

Step 6: Assign the costs to the cost object by adding all direct costs and all indirect costs The cost of the machine job for Merseyside Paper is €10 135.

Direct manufacturing costs		
Direct materials	€4 606	
Direct manufacturing labour	1 329	€5 935
Indirect manufacturing costs		
Manufacturing overhead (€80 × 52.5 machine-hours)		4 200
Total manufacturing costs of job		€10 135

Exhibit 3.5 presents an overview of the job-costing system for the manufacturing costs of the Wallace Company.

Wallace uses its job-costing system to help manage the costs in its Glasgow Manufacturing Department as well as to determine the cost of individual jobs such as the Merseyside Paper machine. The Manufacturing Department is an important cost object, as is each job manufactured. The relationship between these two important goals of a job-costing system is shown in Exhibit 3.6.

Exhibit 3.5 Job-costing overview for manufacturing costs at the Wallace Company

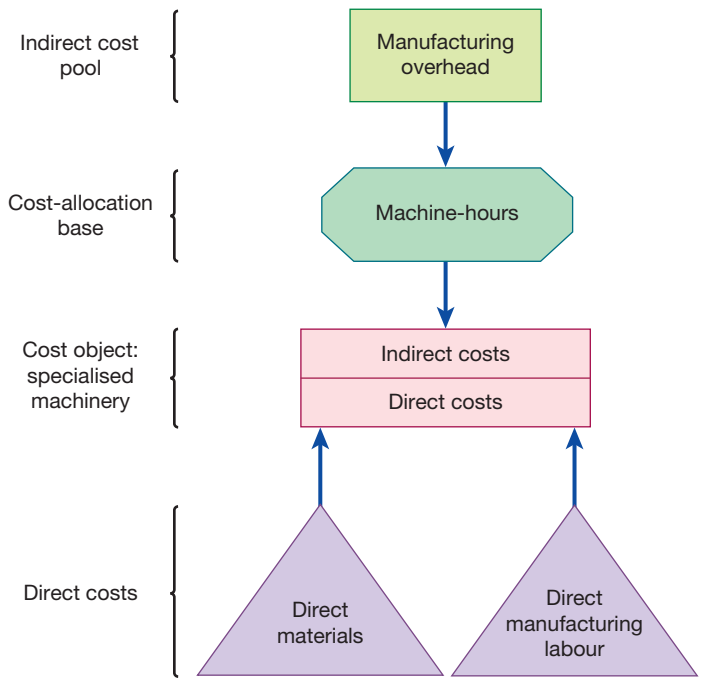
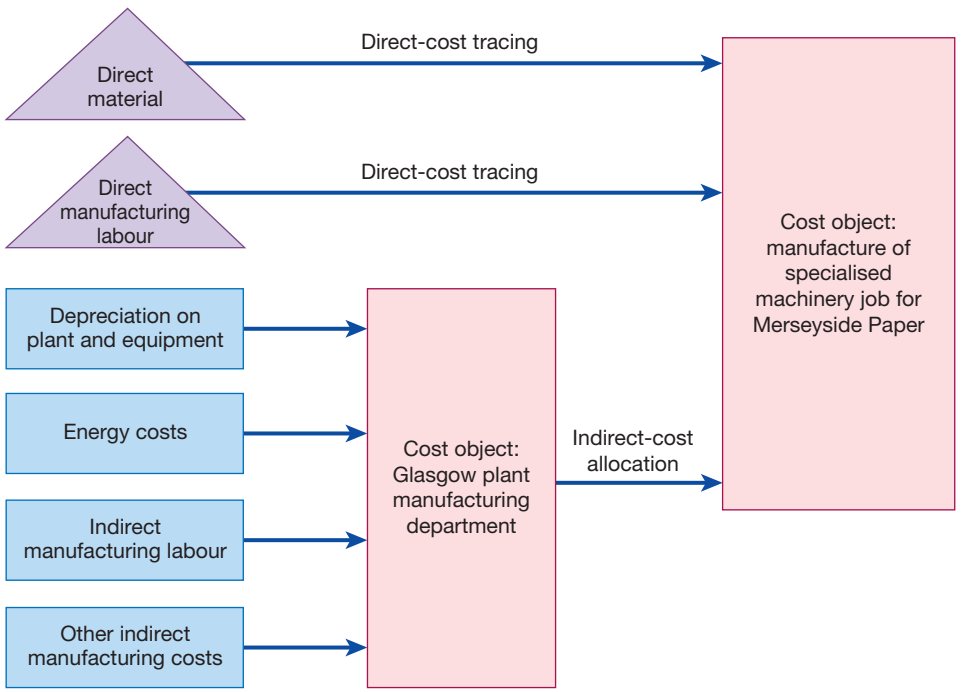


Exhibit 3.6 Department and job costing at the Wallace Company



Source documents

Source documents are the original records that support journal entries in an accounting system. The key source document in a job-costing system is a **job cost record** (also called a **job cost sheet**). This document records and accumulates all the costs assigned to a specific job. Exhibit 3.7, Panel A, shows a typical job cost record at the Wallace Company. Source documents also exist for individual items in a job cost record. Consider direct materials. The basic source document is a **materials requisition record**, which is a form used to charge departments and job cost records for the cost of the materials used on a specific job. Panel B shows a materials requisition record for the Wallace Company. The basic source document for direct manufacturing labour is a **labour time record**, which is used to charge departments and job cost records for labour time used on a specific job. Panel C in Exhibit 3.7 shows a typical labour time record for the Wallace Company. The reliability of job cost records depends on the reliability of the inputs. Problems occurring in this area include materials recorded on one job being 'borrowed' and used on other jobs and erroneous job numbers being assigned to material or labour inputs.

In many costing systems, the source documents exist only in the form of computer records. With barcoding and other forms of online information recording, the materials and time used on jobs are increasingly being recorded without human intervention.

An illustration of a job-costing system in manufacturing

We will use the Wallace Company to illustrate in some detail how a job-costing system operates in manufacturing. Recall that its job-costing system has two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and one indirect-cost pool (manufacturing overhead). See Exhibit 3.7. We will shortly consider events that took place in September 2023. But first, before we look at specific journal entries, let's briefly consider job costing in relation to the two financial

Exhibit 3.7

Source documents at the Wallace Company: Job cost record, materials requisition record and labour time record

Panel A

JOB COST RECORD

JOB NO: WPP298 CUSTOMER: Merseyside Paper
Date started: 7 Feb. 2023 Date completed: 3 April 2023

DIRECT MATERIALS

Materials requisition no.	Part no.	Date received	Quantity used	Unit cost	Billing amount
③ 2015:198	MB 468-A	9 Feb. 2023	8	€14	€112
2015:268	TB 267-F	11 Feb. 2023	12	€63	756
					• • •
Total					€4606

DIRECT MANUFACTURING LABOUR

Labour time record no.	Employee no.	Period covered	Hours used	Hourly rate	Billing amount
③ LT 232	551-87-3076	16–22 Feb. 2023	25	€18	€450
LT 247	287-31-4671	16–22 Feb. 2023	16	18	288
					• • •
Total					€1329

MANUFACTURING OVERHEAD

Cost pool category	Allocation base	Allocation base units used	Allocation base rate	Billing amount
Manufacturing	Machine-hours	52.50	€80	€4200
				• • •
Total				€4200
TOTAL BILLABLE JOB COST				€10135

Panel B

MATERIALS REQUISITION RECORD

Materials requisition record no: 2023:198
Job No: WPP 298 Date: 9 Feb. 2023

Part no.	Part description	Quantity	Unit cost	Total cost
MB468-A	Metal brackets	8	€14	€112

Issued by: B. Clyde Date: 9 Feb. 2023
Received by: L Daley Date: 9 Feb. 2023

Panel C

LABOUR TIME RECORD

Labour time record no: LT 232

Employee name: G.L. Cook Employee no: 551-87-3076

Employee classification code: Grade 3 Machinist

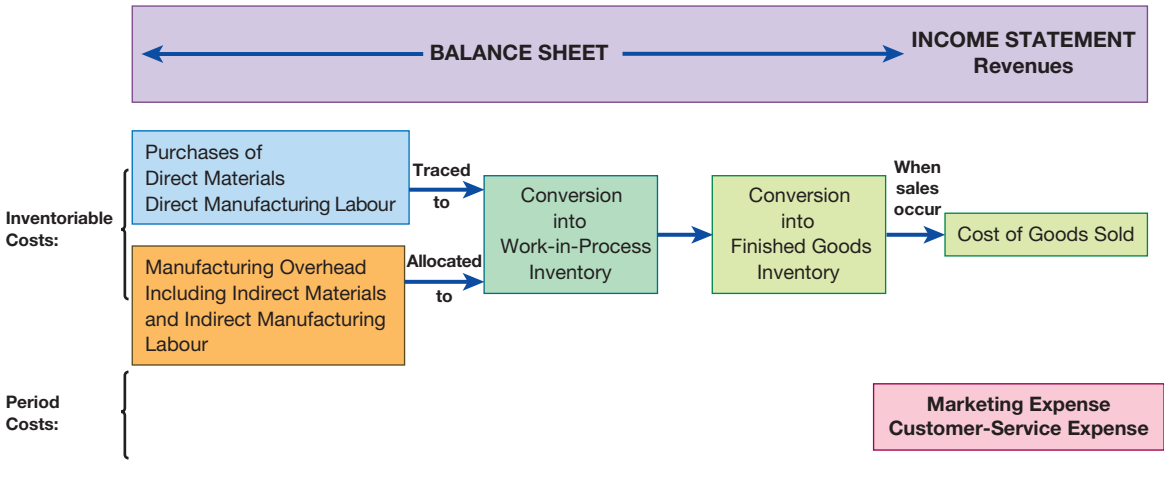
Week start: 16 Feb. 2023 Week end: 22 Feb. 2023

Job. no.	M	T	W	Th	F	S	Su	Total
WPP298	4	8	3	6	4	0	0	25

Supervisor: R. Stuart Date: 23 Feb. 2023

reports – the balance sheet and the income statement – which we come back to later in the book. Exhibit 3.8 shows the flow of inventoriable costs from the purchase of materials and other manufacturing inputs to their conversion into work-in-process and finished goods, to the sale of finished goods. Direct materials used and direct manufacturing labour can be easily traced to jobs. They become part of work-in-process inventory on the balance sheet because direct manufacturing

Exhibit 3.8 Flow of costs in job costing



labour transforms direct materials into another asset, work-in-process inventory. Wallace also incurs manufacturing overhead costs (including indirect materials and indirect manufacturing labour) to convert direct materials into work-in-process inventory. The overhead (indirect) costs, however, cannot be easily traced to individual jobs. As we described earlier in this chapter, manufacturing overhead costs are first accumulated in a manufacturing overhead account and then allocated to individual jobs. As manufacturing overhead costs are allocated, they become part of work-in-process inventory. When individual jobs are completed, work-in-process inventory becomes another balance sheet asset, finished-goods inventory. Only when finished goods are sold is the expense of cost of goods sold recognised in the income statement and matched against revenues earned. The lower part of Exhibit 3.8 shows the period costs – marketing and customer-service costs. These costs do not create any assets on the balance sheet because they are not incurred to transform materials into a finished product. Instead, they are expensed in the income statement, as they are incurred to best match revenues. Let's now consider the specific job-order costing transactions.

General ledger and subsidiary ledgers

As we have noted, a job-costing system has a separate job cost record for each job. This record is typically found in a subsidiary ledger. The general ledger combines these separate job cost records in the Work-in-Progress Control account, which pertains to all jobs undertaken.

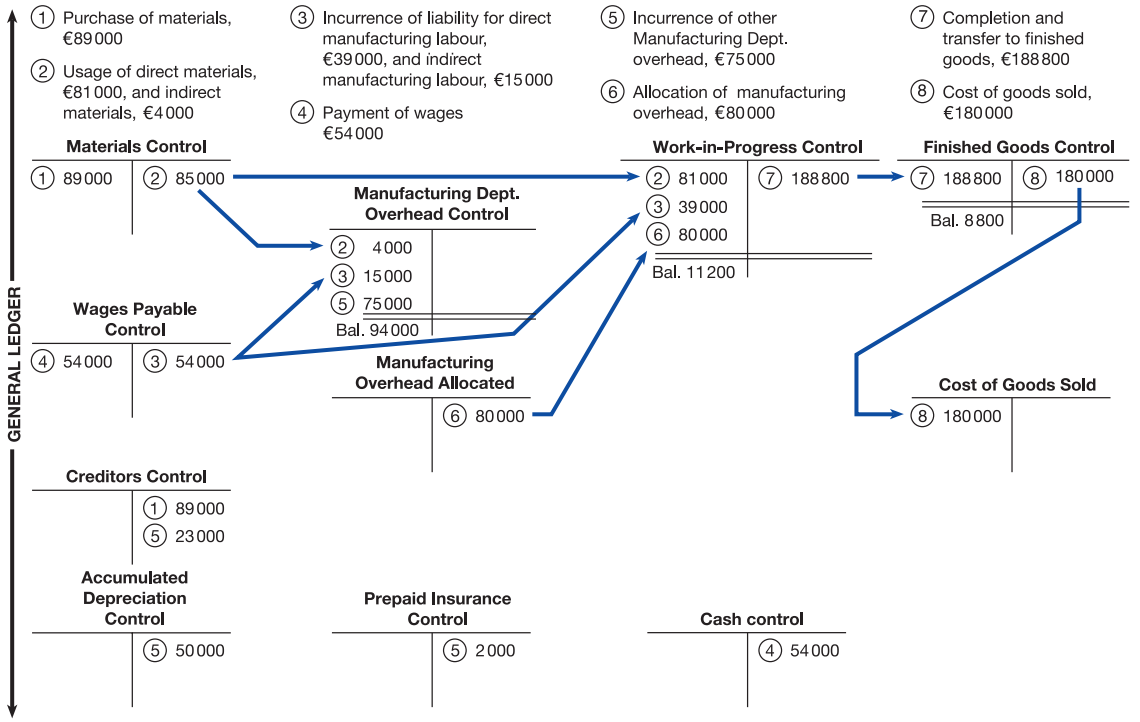
Exhibit 3.9 shows T-account relationships for the Wallace Company's general ledger and illustrative records in the subsidiary ledgers. Panel A shows the general ledger section that gives a 'bird's-eye view' of the costing system; the amounts are based on the illustration that follows. Panel B shows the subsidiary ledgers and the basic source documents that contain the underlying details – the 'worm's-eye view'. General ledger accounts with the word *control* in their titles (such as Materials Control and Creditors Control) are supported by underlying subsidiary ledgers.

Software programs guide the processing of transactions in most accounting systems. Some programs make general ledger entries simultaneously with entries in the subsidiary ledger accounts. Other software programs make general ledger entries at, say, weekly or monthly intervals, with entries made in the subsidiary ledger accounts on a more frequent basis. The Wallace Company makes entries in its subsidiary ledger when transactions occur and then makes entries in its general ledger on a monthly basis.

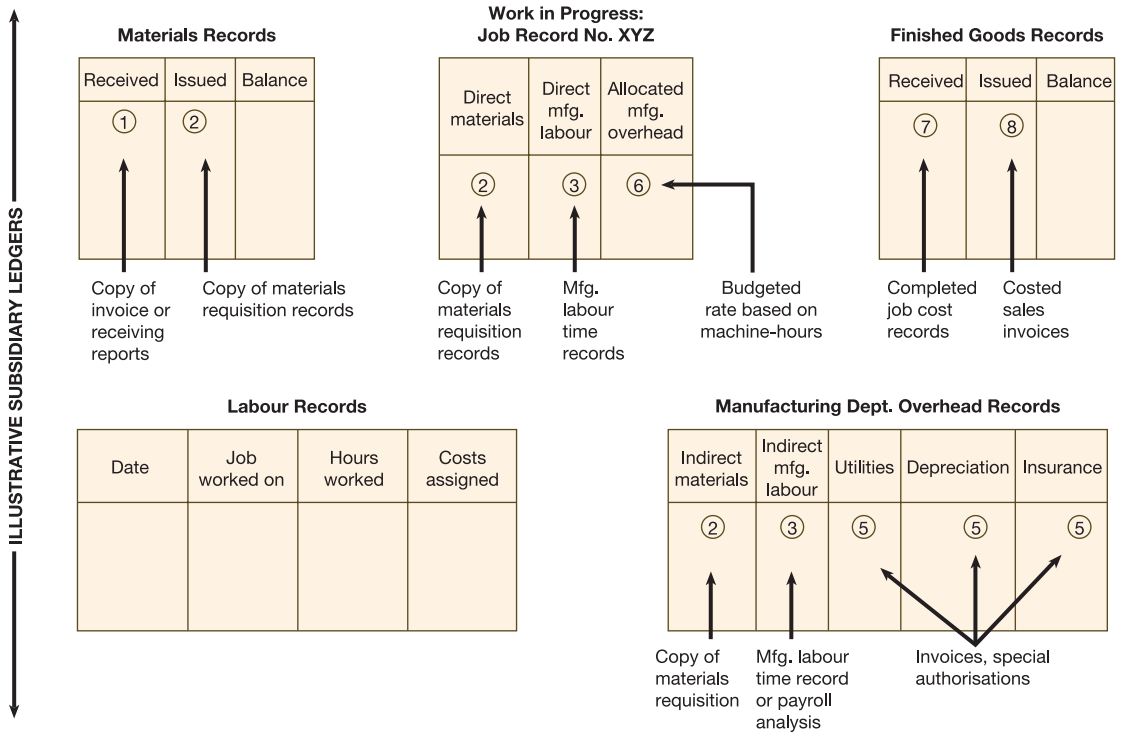
A general ledger should be viewed as only one of many tools that assist management in planning and control. To control operations, managers not only use the source documents in the subsidiary ledgers, they also study non-financial variables such as the percentage of jobs requiring rework.

Exhibit 3.9 Manufacturing job-costing system using normal costing diagram of ledger relationships for September 2023

Panel A: General ledger

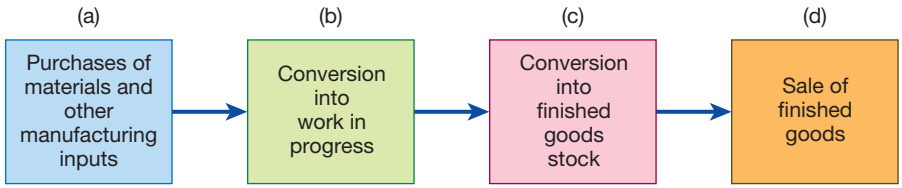


Panel B: Subsidiary ledgers



Explanations of transactions

The following transaction-by-transaction summary analysis explains how a job-costing system serves the twin goals of (1) department responsibility and control, and (2) product costing. These transactions track stages (a) to (d):



It is the existence of stages (b) and (c) that makes the costing of manufactured products more detailed than the costing of services and merchandise described earlier.

1 *Transaction*: Purchases of materials (direct and indirect), €89 000 on account.

Analysis: The asset Materials Control is increased. The liability Creditors Control is increased. Both accounts have the word control in their title in the general ledger because they are supported by records in the subsidiary ledger. The subsidiary records for materials at the Wallace Company – called Materials Records – maintain a continuous record of additions to, and reductions from, stock. At a minimum, these records would contain columns for quantity received, issuance to jobs and balance (see Panel B of Exhibit 3.9). There is a separate subsidiary materials record for each type of material in the subsidiary ledger. The following journal entry summarises all the September 2023 entries in the materials subsidiary ledgers:

Journal Entry:

Materials Control		89 000	
Creditors Control			89 000

Post to General Ledger:

Materials Control			Creditors Control		
a	89 000			a	89 000

Materials Control includes all material purchases, whether the items are classified as direct or indirect costs of products.

2 *Transaction*: Materials sent to manufacturing plant floor: direct materials, €81 000 and indirect materials, €4000.

Analysis: The accounts Work-in-Progress Control and Manufacturing Overhead Control are increased. The account Materials Control is decreased. The assumption is that costs incurred on the work in progress 'attach' to the work in progress, thereby making it a more valuable asset. Responsibility is fixed by using materials requisition records as a basis for charging departments for the materials issued to them. Requisitions are accumulated and posted monthly to the general ledger at the Wallace Company. As direct materials are used, they are charged to individual job records, which are the subsidiary ledger accounts for the Work-in-Progress Control account in the general ledger account. Indirect materials are charged to individual Manufacturing Departments' overhead cost records, which comprise the subsidiary ledger for Manufacturing Overhead Control at the Wallace Company. The cost of these indirect materials is allocated to individual jobs as a part of the Manufacturing Overhead. The Manufacturing Overhead Control account is the record of the actual costs in all the individual overhead categories.

Each indirect-cost pool in a job-costing system will have its own account in the general ledger. Wallace has only one indirect-cost pool: manufacturing overhead.

Journal Entry:

Work-in-Progress Control	81 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Control	4 000	
Materials Control		85 000

Post to General Ledger:

Materials Control				Work-in-Progress Control			
a	89 000	**b**	85 000	**b**	81 000		

Manufacturing Overhead Control			
b	4 000		

3 *Transaction*: Manufacturing labour wages liability incurred, direct (€39 000) and indirect (€15 000).

Analysis: The accounts Work-in-Progress Control and Manufacturing Department Overhead Control are increased. Wages Payable Control is also increased. Labour time records are used to trace direct manufacturing labour to Work-in-Progress Control (see Panel B of Exhibit 3.9) and to accumulate the indirect manufacturing labour in Manufacturing Department Overhead Control. The indirect manufacturing labour is, by definition, not being traced to the individual job. Department managers are responsible for making efficient use of available labour.

Journal Entry:

Work-in-Progress Control	39 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Control	15 000	
Wages Payable Control		54 000

Post to General Ledger:

Wages Payable Control				Work-in-Progress Control			
		c	54 000	**b**	81 000		
				c	39 000		

Manufacturing Overhead Control			
b	4 000		
c	15 000		

4 *Transaction*: Payment of total manufacturing payroll for the month, €54 000. (For simplicity, payroll withholdings from employees are ignored in this example.)

Analysis: The liability Wages Payable Control is decreased. The asset Cash Control is decreased.

Journal Entry:

Wages Payable	54 000	
Cash Control		54 000

Post to General Ledger:

Wages Payable Control				Cash Control			
d	54 000	**c**	54 000	**d**	**54 000**		

For convenience here, wages payable for the month is assumed to be completely paid at month-end.

5 *Transaction:* Additional manufacturing overhead costs incurred during the month, €75 000. These costs consist of utilities and repairs, €23 000; insurance expired, €2000; and depreciation on equipment, €50 000.

Analysis: The indirect-cost account of Manufacturing Overhead Control is increased. The liability Creditors Control is increased, the asset Prepaid Insurance Control is decreased and the asset Equipment is decreased by means of a related contra asset account Accumulated Depreciation Control. The detail of these costs is entered in the appropriate columns of the individual manufacturing overhead cost records that make up the subsidiary ledger for Manufacturing Overhead Control. The source documents for these distributions include invoices (for example, an electricity bill) and special schedules (for example, a depreciation schedule) from the accounting officer responsible.

Journal Entry:

Manufacturing Overhead Control	75 000	
Creditors Control		23 000
Accumulated Depreciation Control		50 000
Prepaid Insurance Control		2 000

Post to General Ledger:

Creditors Control				Manufacturing Overhead Control			
		a	89 000	**b**	4 000		
		e	23 000	**c**	15 000		
				e	75 000		

Accumulated Depreciation Control				Prepaid Insurance Control			
		e	50 000			**e**	2 000

6 *Transaction*: Allocation of manufacturing overhead to products, €80 000.

Analysis: The asset Work-in-Progress Control is increased. The indirect-cost account of Manufacturing Overhead Control is, in effect, decreased by means of its contra account, called **Manufacturing Overhead Allocated**. This is the record of manufacturing overhead allocated to individual jobs on the basis of the budgeted rate multiplied by actual units used of the allocation base. It comprises all manufacturing costs that are assigned to a product (or service) using a cost-allocation base because they cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible way. The 2023 budgeted overhead rate used by Wallace is €80 per machine-hour. The overhead cost allocated to each job depends on the machine-hours used on that job. The job record for each individual job in the subsidiary ledger will include a debit item for manufacturing overhead allocated. It is assumed that 1000 machine-hours were used for all jobs, resulting in a total manufacturing overhead allocation of 1000 × €80 = €80 000.

Note that a subsidiary entry is made for Manufacturing Overhead Allocated when machine-hours are used on a job. These entries are made to the individual job records in the subsidiary ledger. In contrast, subsidiary entries are made for Manufacturing Overhead Control when actual transactions occur during the period.

Journal Entry:

Work-in-Progress Control	80 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Allocated		80 000

Post to General Ledger:

Manufacturing Overhead Allocated				Work-in-Progress Control			
		f	80 000	**b**	81 000		
				c	39 000		
				f	80 000		

7 *Transaction*: Completion and transfer to finished goods of eight individual jobs, €188 800.

Analysis: The asset Finished Goods Control is increased. The asset Work-in-Progress Control is decreased. The total costs of each job are calculated in the subsidiary ledger as each job is completed. Given Wallace's use of a normal costing method, this total will consist of actual direct materials, actual direct manufacturing labour and budgeted manufacturing overhead that is allocated to each job.

Journal Entry:

Finished Goods Control	188 800	
Work-in-Progress Control		188 800

Post to General Ledger:

Work-in-Progress Control				Finished Goods Control			
b	81 000	**g**	188 800	**g**	188 800		
c	39 000						
f	80 000						

8 *Transaction*: Cost of Goods Sold, €180 000.

Analysis: The €180 000 amount represents the cost of goods sold in sales transactions with customers during September 2023. The account Cost of Goods Sold is increased. The asset Finished Goods Control is decreased.

Journal Entry:

Cost of Goods Sold	180 000	
Finished Goods Control		180 000

Post to General Ledger:

Finished Goods Control				Cost of Goods Sold			
g	188 800	**h**	180 000	**h**	180 000		

Information technology gives managers quick and accurate job-costing information, making it easier for them to manage and control jobs. Consider, for example, the direct materials charged to jobs. Managers control these costs as materials are purchased and used. Using Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) technology, companies like Wallace order materials from their suppliers by clicking a few keys on a computer keyboard. EDI, an electronic computer link between a company and its suppliers, ensures that the order is transmitted quickly and accurately with minimal paperwork and costs. A bar code scanner records the receipt of incoming materials, and a computer matches the receipt with the order, prints out a check to the supplier, and records the materials received. When an operator on the production floor transmits a request for materials via a computer terminal, the computer prepares a materials requisition record, instantly recording the issue of materials in the materials and job cost records. Each day, the computer sums the materials requisition records charged to a particular job or manufacturing department. A performance report is then prepared monitoring the actual costs of direct materials. The use of direct materials can be reported hourly if managers believe the benefits exceed the cost of such frequent reporting.

Similarly, information about direct manufacturing labour is obtained as employees log into computer terminals and key in job numbers, their employee numbers, and the start and end times of their work on different jobs. The computer automatically prints the labour time record and, using hourly rates stored for each employee, calculates the direct manufacturing labour costs of individual jobs. Information technology can also give managers instant feedback to help them control manufacturing overhead costs, jobs in process, jobs completed, and jobs

shipped and installed at customer sites. In retail settings particularly, many companies have turned to 'Automated Replenishment' (AR) systems that harness real world, historical sales data to manage the required reorder levels for store replenishment as well as the optimum inventory to purchase from suppliers (see also Chapter 21 on economic order quantity determination). In addition to producing the numbers, the AR system can also automate the physical processes of stock transfers and purchase order generation. This is undertaken by intelligent AI algorithms that combines real-time data analysis based on a multitude of metrics across stores and e-commerce activities like daily sales, supplier lead times and current stock levels. Such systems can be set to either automatically order or suggest to humans replenishment possibilities as a guide to decisions.

At this point, please pause and review all entries in the illustration. Be sure to trace each journal entry, step by step, to the general-ledger accounts in the general ledger section in Panel A of Exhibit 3.9.

Budgeted indirect costs and end-of-period adjustments

Budgeted indirect-cost rates have the advantage of being more timely than actual indirect-cost rates. With budgeted rates, indirect costs can be assigned to individual jobs on an ongoing basis, rather than waiting until the end of the accounting period when actual costs will be known. However, the disadvantage of budgeted rates is that they will probably be inaccurate, having been made up to 12 months before actual costs are incurred. We now consider adjustments made when the indirect costs allocated differ from the actual indirect costs incurred.

Underallocated indirect costs occur when the allocated amount of indirect costs in an accounting period is less than the actual (incurred) amount in that period. **Overallocated indirect costs** occur when the allocated amount of indirect costs in an accounting period exceeds the actual (incurred) amount in that period.

$$\text{Under or overallocated indirect costs} = \text{Indirect costs incurred} - \text{Indirect costs allocated}$$

Equivalent terms are **underapplied** (or **overapplied**) **indirect costs** and **underabsorbed** (or **overabsorbed**) **indirect costs**.

The Wallace Company has a single indirect-cost pool (Manufacturing Overhead) in its job-costing system. There are two indirect-cost accounts in its general ledger that pertain to manufacturing overhead:

- Manufacturing Overhead Control, which is the record of the actual costs in all the individual overhead categories (such as indirect materials, indirect manufacturing labour, power and rent).
- Manufacturing Overhead Allocated, which is the record of the manufacturing overhead allocated to individual jobs on the basis of the budgeted rate multiplied by actual machine-hours.

Assume the following annual data for the Wallace Company:

Manufacturing Overhead Control		Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	
Bal. 31 Dec. 2023	1 200 000	Bal. 31 Dec. 2023	1 000 000

The €80 budgeted indirect-cost rate is calculated by dividing budgeted manufacturing overhead of €1 280 000 (the numerator) by the 16 000 budgeted quantity of machine-hours (the denominator). The €1 200 000 debit balance in Manufacturing Overhead Control is the sum of all the actual costs incurred for manufacturing overhead in 2023. The €1 000 000 credit balance in Manufacturing Overhead Allocated results from 12 500 actual machine-hours worked on all the jobs in 2023 times the budgeted rate of €80 per hour.

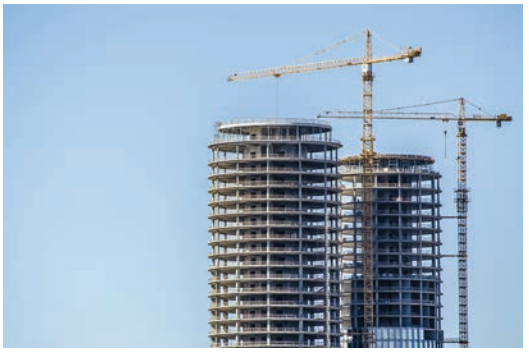
The €200 000 difference (a net debit) is an underallocated amount because actual manufacturing overhead costs exceed the allocated amount. This €200 000 difference in 2023 arises from two reasons related to the computation of the €80 budgeted hourly rate:

1 *Numerator reason* (*budgeted indirect costs*). Actual manufacturing overhead cost of €1 200 000 is less than the budgeted amount of €1 280 000.
2 *Denominator reason* (*budgeted quantity of allocation base*). Actual machine-hours of 12 500 are less than the budgeted amount of 16 000 hours.

There are two main approaches to disposing of this €200 000 underallocation of manufacturing overhead in Wallace's costing system: (1) the adjusted allocation rate approach and (2) the proration approach.

Concepts in action

Better job costing through big data and data analytics



Across the globe, companies are looking to glean meaningful intelligence from large data sets and translate that into competitive advantage. Among Fortune 1000 companies, 73% are currently leveraging big data to decrease their expenses. One way companies can achieve this is by using big data and data analytics to improve their job costing.

Thanks to big data, companies can now analyse millions of internal and external data points to identify the costs and revenues associated with various activities. By aggregating all this data and benchmarking it against historical performance and current activities, it is possible to extract meaningful information about the profitability of doing certain work. Using big data, it is possible to accurately answer specific questions like whether a construction company should bid on a job or whether a consulting firm should hire another business development person.

Companies effectively leveraging data-driven decision making are, on average, 5% more productive and 6% more profitable than their competitors. As a result, new software programs are using big data to help companies improve their job costing capabilities to ensure that each new job is a profitable job.

Sources: Andrew McAfee and Erik Brynjolfsson (2012) 'Big data: The management revolution', *Harvard Business Review*, October (https://hbr.org/2012/10/big-data-the-management-revolution); Randy Bean (2017) 'How companies say they're using Big Data', *Harvard Business Review*, 28 April (https://hbr.org/2017/04/how-companies-say-theyre-using-big-data); Datafloq.com (2016) 'How to make job costing more accurate with Big Data', 14 June (https://datafloq.com/read/how-to-make-job-costing-more-accurate-big-data/2119); Virtu Group press release (2017) 'New Partnership to Launch Big Data scope & costing Tool to Australian agencies', 20 January, Sydney, Australia (https://www.thevirtugroup.com/2017/01/20/tangram-partnership).

Adjusted allocation rate approach

The adjusted allocation rate approach, in effect, restates all entries in the general ledger by using actual cost rates rather than budgeted cost rates. First, the actual indirect-cost rate is calculated at the end of each period. Then, every job to which indirect costs were allocated during the period has its amount recalculated using the actual indirect-cost rate (rather than the budgeted indirect-cost rate). Finally, end-of-period closing entries are made. The result is that every single job cost record – as well as the closing stock and cost of goods sold accounts – accurately represents actual indirect costs incurred.

The widespread adoption of computerised accounting systems has greatly reduced the cost of using the adjusted allocated rate approach. Consider the Wallace Company example. The actual manufacturing overhead (€1 200 000) exceeds the manufacturing overhead allocated (€1 000 000) by 20%. The actual 2023 manufacturing overhead rate was €96 per machine-hour

(€1 200 000 ÷ 12 500 machine-hours) rather than the budgeted €80 per machine-hour. At year-end, Wallace could increase the 2023 manufacturing overhead allocated to each job in that year by 20% using a single software directive. The directive would apply to the subsidiary ledger as well as to the general ledger. This approach increases the accuracy of each individual product cost amount and the accuracy of the end-of-year account balances for stocks and cost of goods sold. This increase in accuracy is an important benefit. After-the-fact analysis of individual product profitability can provide managers with useful insights for future decisions about product pricing and about which products to emphasise. Such decisions are improved by having more accurate product-profitability numbers on prior jobs.

Proration approach

Proration is the term we use to refer to spreading of under- or overallocated overhead among closing stocks and cost of goods sold. Consider the Wallace Company where manufacturing overhead is allocated on the basis of machine-hours. Materials are not allocated any overhead costs. It is not until materials are put into work in progress that machining of them commences. Only the closing work-in-progress and finished goods stocks will have an allocated manufacturing overhead component. Hence, in our Wallace example, it is only these two Closing Stock accounts (and Cost of Goods Sold) for which end-of-period proration is an issue. Assume the following actual results for the Wallace Company in 2023:

	End-of-year balances (before proration)	Manufacturing Overhead Allocated component of year-end balances (before proration)
Work in Progress	€50 000	€13 000
Finished Goods	75 000	25 000
Cost of Goods Sold	2 375 000	962 000
	€2 500 000	€1 000 000

There are three methods for prorating the underallocated €200 000 manufacturing overhead at the end of 2023.

Method 1

Proration is based on the total amount of indirect costs allocated (before proration) in the closing balances of Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold. In our Wallace Company example, the €200 000 underallocated overhead is prorated over the three pertinent accounts in proportion to their total amount of indirect costs allocated (before proration) in column 3 in the following table, resulting in the closing balances (after proration) in column 5.

(1)	Account balance (before proration) (2)	Indirect costs allocated component in the balance in column (2) (3)		Proration of €200 000 Manufacturing Overhead Underallocated (4)		Account balance (after proration) (5) = (2) + (4)
Work in Progress	€50 000	€13 000	(1.3%)	0.013 × €200 000 =	€2 600	€52 600
Finished Goods	75 000	25 000	(2.5%)	0.025 × 200 000 =	5 000	80 000
Cost of Goods Sold	2 375 000	962 000	(96.2%)	0.962 × 200 000 =	192 400	2 567 400
	€2 500 000	€1 000 000	(100.0%)	1.000 ×	€200 000	€2 700 000

The journal entry for this proration would be:

Work-in-Progress Control	2 600	
Finished Goods Control	5 000	
Cost of Goods Sold	192 400	
Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	1 000 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Control		1 200 000

This journal entry results in the 2023 closing balances for Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold being restated to what they would have been had actual cost rates rather than budgeted cost rates been used. Method 1 reports the same 2023 closing balances as does the adjusted allocation rate approach.

Method 2

Proration is based on total closing balances (before proration) in Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold. In our Wallace Company example, the €200 000 underallocated overhead is prorated over the three pertinent accounts in proportion to their total closing balances (before proration) in column 2 in the following table, resulting in the closing balances (after proration) in column 4:

(1)	Account balance (before proration) (2)		Proration of €200 000 Manufacturing Overhead Underallocated (3)		Account balance (after proration) (4) = (2) + (3)
Work in Progress	€50 000	(2%)	0.02 × €200 000 =	€4 000	€54 000
Finished Goods	75 000	(3%)	0.03 × 200 000 =	6 000	81 000
Cost of Goods Sold	2 375 000	(95%)	0.95 × 200 000 =	190 000	2 565 000
	€2 500 000	100%	1.00	€200 000	€2 700 000

For example, work in progress is 2% of the €2 500 000 total, so we allocate 2% of the underallocated amount (0.02 × €200 000 = €4000) to work in progress.

The journal entry for this proration would be:

Work-in-Progress Control	4 000	
Finished Goods Control	6 000	
Cost of Goods Sold	190 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	1 000 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Control		1 200 000

Note that if manufacturing overhead had been overallocated, the Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold accounts would be decreased (credited) instead of increased (debited).

Method 3

Proration is based on year-end write-off to Cost of Goods Sold. Here the total under- or overallocated overhead is included in this year's Cost of Goods Sold. In our Wallace Company example, the journal entry would be:

Cost of Goods Sold	200 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	1 000 000	
Manufacturing Overhead Control		1 200 000

Wallace's two Manufacturing Overhead accounts are closed out with all the difference between them now included in Cost of Goods Sold. The Cost of Goods Sold after proration is €2 375 000 before proration + €200 000 underallocated overhead amount = €2 575 000.

Choice among approaches

Choice among the approaches should be guided by how the resultant information is to be used. The reported account balances under the approaches are:

		Proration approach		
	Proration based Adjusted allocation rate approach	Method 1: Proration on indirect costs allocated component of ending balances	Method 2: based on total ending balances	Method 3: Write-off to Cost of Goods Sold
Work in Progress	€52 600	€52 600	€54 000	€50 000
Finished Goods	80 000	80 000	81 000	75 000
Cost of Goods Sold	2 567 400	2 567 400	2 565 000	2 575 000
	€2 700 000	€2 700 000	€2 700 000	€2 700 000

If managers wish to develop the most accurate record of individual job costs for profitability analysis purposes, the adjusted allocation rate approach is preferred. The proration approaches do not make any adjustment to individual job cost records.

If the purpose is confined to reporting the most accurate stock and cost of goods sold figures, either the adjusted allocation rate or the method 1 proration should be used. Both give the same ending balances of Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold that would have been reported had an actual indirect-cost rate been used. Method 2 is frequently justified as being a lower-cost way of approximating the results from method 1. The implicit assumption in method 2 is that the ratio of manufacturing overhead costs allocated to total manufacturing costs is similar in Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold. Where this assumption is not appropriate, method 2 can yield numbers quite different from those of method 1. Many companies use method 3 for several reasons. First, it is the simplest. Second, the three methods often result in similar amounts for ending Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold.

This section has examined end-of-period adjustments for under- or overallocated indirect costs. The same issues also arise when budgeted direct-cost rates are used and end-of-period adjustments must be made.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 The building blocks of a costing system are cost object, direct costs, indirect costs, cost pool and cost-allocation base. Costing-system overview diagrams present these concepts in a systematic way. Costing systems aim to report cost numbers that reflect the way that chosen cost objects (such as products, services or customers) use the resources of an organisation.

2 Job-costing systems assign costs to a distinct unit of a product or service. In contrast, process-costing systems assign costs to masses of similar units and calculate unit costs on an average basis. These two costing systems are best viewed as opposite ends of a continuum. The costing systems of many companies combine some elements of both job costing and process costing.

3 A general approach to job costing involves identifying (a) the job, (b) the direct-cost categories, (c) the indirect-cost categories, (d) the cost-allocation bases, (e) the cost-allocation rates, and (f) adding all direct and indirect costs.

4 Actual costing and normal costing differ in their use of actual or budgeted indirect-cost rates.

	Actual costing	Normal costing
Direct-cost rates	Actual rates	Actual rates
Indirect-cost rates	Actual rates	Budgeted rates

Both methods use actual quantities of direct-cost inputs and actual quantities of the allocation bases for allocating indirect costs.

5 Costing systems aim to report cost numbers that reflect the way chosen cost objects use the resources of an organisation. This is the case for service, merchandising and manufacturing environments.

6 Three key source documents in a job-costing system are a job cost record, a materials requisition record and a labour time record.

7 The transactions in a job-costing system in manufacturing track (a) the acquisition of materials and other manufacturing inputs, (b) their conversion into work in progress, (c) their eventual conversion into finished goods, and (d) the sale of finished goods. Each of the stages (a) to (d) in the manufacture/sale cycle can be represented by journal entries in the costing system.

8 The theoretically correct alternative to disposing of under- or overallocated indirect costs is to prorate that amount on the basis of the total amount of the allocated indirect cost in the ending balances of stocks and cost of goods sold. For simplicity, many organisations write-off any such amount to Cost of Goods Sold.

References

Banks, N. (2021) 'The story behind Rolls-Royce's new $28 million hand-built boat tail', Forbes, 27 May (https://www.forbes.com/sites/nargessbanks/2021/05/27/this-is-the-design-story-behind-rolls-royces-custom-built-boat-tail/?sh=17aab4933098).

Harvey, M. (2017) 'As is the custom: the ultimate in bespoke car making', *The Telegraph*, 20 October (www.telegraph.co.uk/luxury/motoring/custom-ultimate-bespoke-car-making/).

CHAPTER 3

Assessment material

Review questions

3.1 Define cost pool, cost tracing, cost allocation and cost allocation base.

3.2 'In the production of services, direct materials are usually the major cost.' Is this quote accurate? Explain.

3.3 How does a job-costing system differ from a process-costing system?

3.4 Why might an advertising agency use job costing for an advertising campaign for Pepsi while a bank uses process costing for the cost of current account withdrawals?

3.5 Distinguish between actual costing and normal costing.

3.6 What are two major goals of a job-costing system?

3.7 Describe the role of a manufacturing overhead allocation base in job costing.

3.8 Give two reasons for under- or overallocation of indirect costs at the end of an accounting period.

3.9 Describe alternative ways to prorate end-of-period adjustments for under- or overallocated indirect costs.

3.10 Why might a company prefer the adjusted allocation rate approach over a proration approach to under- or overallocated indirect costs?

Exercises

Basic level

***3.11** **Computing indirect-cost rates, job costing** (20–30 minutes)

Michel Scaramouche, the president of Tax-Assistance SA, is examining alternative ways to calculate indirect-cost rates. He collects the following information from the budget for the year:

- Budgeted variable indirect costs: €10 per hour of professional labour time
- Budgeted fixed indirect costs: €50 000 per quarter.

The budgeted billable professional labour-hours per quarter are:

January–March	20 000 hours
April–June	10 000 hours
July–September	4 000 hours
October–December	6 000 hours

Scaramouche pays all tax professionals employed by Tax-Assistance on an hourly basis (€30 per hour, including all fringe benefits).

Tax-Assistance's job-costing system has a single direct-cost category (professional labour at €30 per hour) and a single indirect-cost pool (office support that is allocated using professional labour-hours).

Tax-Assistance charges clients €65 per professional labour-hour.

Required

1 Calculate budgeted indirect-cost rates per professional labour-hour using:
   a Quarterly budgeted billable hours as the denominator
   b Annual budgeted billable hours as the denominator.
2 Calculate the operating profit for the following four customers using:
   a Quarterly-based indirect-cost rates
   b An annual indirect-cost rate:
      - Jean-Baptiste Roquelin: 10 hours in February
      - Violette Leduc: 6 hours in March and 4 hours in April
      - Alphonse Dudet: 4 hours in June and 6 hours in August
      - Francine Leclerc: 5 hours in January, 2 hours in September and 3 hours in November.
3 Comment on your results in requirement 2.

3.12 **Computing direct-cost rates, consulting firm** (15–20 minutes)

Zimmermann GmbH is an international consulting firm. Its annual budget includes the following for each category of professional labour:

Category	Average salary	Average fringe benefits	Billable time for clients (hours)	Vacation and sick leave (hours)	Professional development (hours)	Unbilled time due to lack of demand
Director	€140 000	€60 000	1 600	160	240	0
Partner	105 000	45 000	1 600	160	240	0
Associate	60 000	20 000	1 600	160	240	0
Assistant	38 000	12 000	1 600	160	240	0

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted direct-cost rate for professional labour (salary and fringe benefits) per hour for (a) directors, (b) partners, (c) associates, and (d) assistants. Use budgeted billable time for clients as the denominator in these computations.
2 Repeat requirement 1. Use the sum of budgeted billable time, vacation and sick leave time and professional development time as the denominator in these calculations.
3 Why are the rates different between requirements 1 and 2? How might these differences affect job costing by Zimmermann GmbH?

3.13 **Accounting for manufacturing overhead** (15 minutes)

Consider the following selected cost data for Schwarzmetal GmbH for 2023.

Budgeted manufacturing overhead	€7 000 000
Budgeted machine-hours	200 000
Actual manufacturing overhead	€6 800 000
Actual machine-hours	195 000

Schwarzmetal's job-costing system has a single manufacturing overhead cost pool (allocated using a budgeted rate based on actual machine-hours). Any amount of under- or overallocation is immediately written off to Cost of Goods Sold.

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted manufacturing overhead rate.

2 Journalise the allocation of manufacturing overhead.

3 Calculate the amount of under- or overallocation of manufacturing overhead. Is the amount significant? Journalise the disposition of this amount on the basis of the closing balances in the relevant accounts.

3.14 **Proration of overhead** (Z. Iqbal, adapted) (20 minutes)

Ti-Enne Srl uses a normal costing system with a single manufacturing overhead cost pool and machine-hours as the allocation base. The following data are for 2023:

Budgeted manufacturing overhead	€4 800 000
Overhead allocation base	Machine-hours
Budgeted machine-hours	80 000
Manufacturing overhead incurred	€4 900 000
Actual machine-hours	75 000

Machine-hours data and the closing balances (before proration of underallocated or overallocated overhead) are as follows:

	Actual machine-hours	2023 end-of-year balance
Cost of Goods Sold	60 000	€8 000 000
Finished Goods	11 000	€1 250 000
Work in Progress	4 000	€750 000

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted manufacturing overhead rate for 2023.

2 Calculate the under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead of Ti-Enne in 2023. Prorate this under- or overallocated amount using:
   - **a** Immediate write-off to Cost of Goods Sold
   - **b** Proration based on closing balances (before proration) in Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold
   - **c** Proration based on the allocated overhead amount (before proration) in the closing balances of Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold.

3 Which proration method do you prefer in requirement 2? Explain.

3.15 **Job costing with single direct-cost category, single indirect-cost pool, law firm** (15–20 minutes)

Tricheur et Associés is a recently formed law partnership. Jean Racine, the managing partner of Tricheur et Associés, has just finished a tense telephone call with Blaise Rascal, president of Morges-Guyère, Sarl. Rascal complained about the price Tricheur charged for some conveyancing legal work done for Morges-Guyère. He requested a breakdown of the charges. He also indicated to Racine that a competing law firm, Andrault & Maque, was seeking more business with Morges-Guyère and that he was going to ask them to bid for a conveyancing job next month.

Rascal ended the telephone call by saying that if Tricheur bid a price similar to the one charged last month, Tricheur would not be hired for next month's job.

Racine is dismayed by the telephone call. He is also puzzled because he believes that conveyancing is an area where Tricheur et Associés has much expertise and is highly efficient. The Morges-Guyère telephone call is the bad news of the week. The good news is that yesterday Racine received a call from its only other client (Verrerie de Lausanne) saying it was very pleased with both the quality of the work (primarily litigation) and the price charged on its most recent case.

Racine decides to collect data on the Morges-Guyère and Verrerie de Lausanne cases. Tricheur et Associés uses a cost-based approach to pricing (billing) each legal case. Currently, it uses a single direct-cost category (for professional labour time) and a single indirect-cost pool (general support). Indirect costs are allocated to cases on the basis of professional labour-hours per case. The case files show the following:

	Morges-Guyère	Verrerie de Lausanne
Professional labour time	104 hours	96 hours

Professional labour costs at Tricheur et Associés are €70 an hour. Indirect costs are allocated to cases at €105 an hour. Total indirect costs in the most recent period were €21 000.

Required

1 Why is it important for Tricheur et Associés to understand the costs associated with individual cases?

2 Present an overview diagram of the existing job-costing system.

3 Calculate the costs of the Morges-Guyère and Verrerie de Lausanne cases.

3.16 Job costing: fill in the blanks (20–30 minutes)

Eldorado SA is a management consulting firm. Its job-costing system has a single direct-cost category (consulting labour) and a single indirect-cost pool (consulting support). Consulting support is allocated to individual jobs using actual consulting labour-hours worked on a job. It is currently examining the actual and normal costs of a strategy review job for Pablo Café that required 70 actual hours of consulting labour. The internal cost expert decides to test your understanding of cost concepts.

Required

1 Fill in the blanks for the Pablo Café job:

	Actual costing		Normal costing	
Direct job costs	€ ?	(€55 × ?)	€ ?	(€ ? × ?)
Indirect job costs	2 660	(€55 × ?)	2 800	(€ ? × 70)
Total job costs	€ ?		€ ?	

2 Fill in the blanks for Eldorado:

	Budgeted amounts for 2023	Actual amounts for 2023
Consulting labour compensation	?	?
Consulting labour-hours	18 000 hours	?
Consulting support costs	?	€798 000

*3.17 Job costing, normal and actual costing (20 minutes)

Idergard AB assembles residential homes. It uses a job-costing system with two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct labour) and one indirect-cost pool (assembly support). Direct-labour-hours is the allocation base for assembly support costs. In December 2022, Peterson budgets 2023 assembly support costs to be SKr 8 000 000 and 2023 direct-labour-hours to be 160 000.

At the end of 2023, Idergard is comparing the costs of several jobs that were started and completed in 2023.

Construction period	Mora model February–June 2023	Solna model May–October 2023
Direct materials	SKr 106 450	SKr 127 604
Direct labour	SKr 36 276	SKr 41 410
Direct-labour-hours	900	1 010

Direct materials and direct labour are paid for on a contract basis. The costs of each are known when direct materials are used or direct-labour-hours are worked. The 2023 actual assembly support costs were SKr 6 888 000 while the actual direct-labour-hours were 164 000.

Required

1 Calculate the (a) budgeted and (b) actual indirect-cost rates. Why do they differ?

2 What is the job cost of the Mora model and the Solna model using (a) normal costing and (b) actual costing?

3 Why might Idergard Construction prefer normal costing over actual costing?

3.18 Job costing, journal entries (30 minutes)

The Editions Sorbonne is wholly owned by the university. It performs the bulk of its work for other university departments, which pay as though the Editions Sorbonne were an outside business enterprise. The Editions Sorbonne also publishes and maintains a stock of books for general sale. A job-costing system is used to cost each job. There are two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and one indirect-cost pool (manufacturing overhead, allocated on the basis of direct-labour costs).

The following data (in €000) pertain to 2023:

Direct materials and supplies purchased on account	€800
Direct materials used	710
Indirect materials issued to various production departments	100
Direct manufacturing labour	1300
Indirect manufacturing labour incurred by various departments	900
Depreciation on building and manufacturing equipment	400
Miscellaneous manufacturing overhead* incurred by various departments (ordinarily would be detailed as repairs, photocopying, utilities, etc.)	550
Manufacturing overhead allocated at 160% of direct manufacturing labour costs	?
Cost of goods manufactured	4120
Revenues	8000
Cost of goods sold	4020
Stock, 31 December 2022:	
Materials control	100
Work-in-progress control	60
Finished goods control	500

* The term 'manufacturing overhead' is not used uniformly. Other terms that are often encountered in printing companies include 'job overhead' and 'shop overhead'.

Required

1. Present an overview diagram of the job-costing system at the Editions Sorbonne.
2. Prepare general journal entries to summarise 2023 transactions. As your final entry, dispose of the year-end over- or underallocated manufacturing overhead as a direct write off to Cost of Goods Sold. Number your entries. Explanations for each entry may be omitted.
3. Show posted T-accounts for all stocks, Cost of Goods Sold, Manufacturing Overhead Control and Manufacturing Overhead Allocated.

For more details concerning these data, see Exercise 3.19.

3.19 Job costing, journal entries and source documents (continuation of Exercise 3.18) (20 minutes)

For each journal entry in your answer to Exercise 3.18, (a) indicate the source document that would most probably authorise the entry and (b) give a description of the entry into the subsidiary ledgers, if any entry needs to be made there.

*3.20 Job costing, engineering consulting firm (20–35 minutes)

Solucions SA, an engineering consulting firm, specialises in analysing the structural causes of major building catastrophes. Its job-costing system in 2023 had a single direct-cost category (professional labour) and a single indirect-cost pool (general support). The allocation base for indirect costs is professional labour costs. Actual costs for 2023 were:

Direct costs	
Professional labour	€100 million
Indirect costs	
General support	190 million
Total costs	€290 million

The following costs were included in the general-support indirect-cost pool:

Technical specialists' costs	€8 million
Telephone/fax machine	6 million
Computer time	37 million
Photocopying	4 million
Total costs	€55 million

The firm's data-processing capabilities now make it feasible to trace these costs to individual jobs. The managing partner is considering whether more costs than just professional labour should be traced to each job as a direct cost. In this way, the firm would be better able to justify billings to clients.

In late 2023, arrangements were made to expand the number of direct-cost categories and to trace them to seven client engagements. Two of the case records showed the following:

	Client case 304	Client case 308
Professional labour	€200 000	€200 000
Technical specialists' costs	20 000	60 000
Telephone/fax machine	10 000	20 000
Computer time	20 000	40 000
Photocopying	10 000	20 000
Total direct costs	€260 000	€340 000

Required

1. Present an overview diagram of the 2023 job-costing system. What was the actual indirect-cost rate per professional labour-euro?
2. Assume that the €55 million of costs included in the 2023 general-support indirect-cost pool were reclassified as direct costs. The result is a system with five direct-cost categories. Calculate the revised indirect-cost rate as a percentage of:
   a. professional labour costs
   b. total direct costs.
3. Calculate the total costs of jobs 304 and 308 using:
   a. the 2023 costing system with a single direct-cost category and a single indirect-cost pool (professional labour costs as the allocation base)
   b. a costing system with five direct-cost categories and a single indirect-cost pool (professional labour costs as the allocation base)
   c. a costing system with five direct-cost categories and a single indirect-cost pool (total direct cos as the allocation base).
4. Assume that clients are billed at 120% of total job costs (that is, a mark-up on cost of 20%). Calculate the billings in requirement 3 for jobs 304 and 308 for the (a), (b) and (c) costing systems.
5. Which method of job costing in requirement 3 do you favour? Explain.

3.21 Job costing, accounting for manufacturing overhead, budgeted rates (25–30 minutes)

Giannacopoulos SA uses a job-costing system at its Korinthos plant. The plant has a Machining Department and an Assembly Department. Its job-costing system has two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and two manufacturing overhead cost pools (the Machining Department, allocated using actual machine-hours, and the Assembly Department, allocated using actual labour cost). The 2023 budget for the plant is as follows:

	Machining Department	Assembly Department
Manufacturing overhead	€1 800 000	€3 600 000
Direct manufacturing labour cost	€1 400 000	€2 000 000
Direct manufacturing labour-hours	€100 000	€200 000
Machine-hours	50 000	200 000

Required

1. Present an overview diagram of Giannacopoulos's job-costing system. What is the budgeted overhead rate that should be used in the Machining Department? In the Assembly Department?
2. During the month of February, the cost record for Job 494 shows the following:

	Machining Department	Assembly Department
Direct material used	€45 000	€70 000
Direct manufacturing labour cost	€14 000	€15 000
Direct manufacturing labour-hours	1 000	1 500
Machine-hours	2 000	1 000

What is the total manufacturing overhead allocated to Job 494?

3 Balances at the end of 2023 are as follows:

	Machining Department	Assembly Department
Manufacturing overhead incurred	€2 100 000	€3 700 000
Direct manufacturing labour cost	–	€2 200 000
Machine-hours	55 000	–

Calculate the under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead for each department.

3.22 Overview of general-ledger relationships (30–40 minutes)

Budenmayer BV is a small machine shop that uses highly skilled labour and a job-costing system (using normal costing). The total debits and credits in certain accounts just before year-end are as follows:

	30 December 2023	
	Total debits	Total credits
Materials Control	€100 000	€70 000
Work-in-Progress Control	320 000	305 000
Manufacturing Department Overhead Control	85 000	–
Finished Goods Control	325 000	300 000
Cost of Goods Sold	300 000	–
Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	–	90 000

All materials purchased are for direct materials. Note that 'total debits' in the stock accounts would include beginning stock balances, if any.

The preceding accounts do not include the following:

a The manufacturing labour costs recapitulation for the 31 December working day: direct manufacturing labour, €5000 and indirect manufacturing labour, €1000.

b Miscellaneous manufacturing overhead incurred on 30 December and 31 December: €1000.

Additional information

- Manufacturing overhead has been allocated as a percentage of direct manufacturing labour costs through 30 December.
- Direct materials purchased during 2023 were €85 000.
- There were no returns to suppliers.
- Direct manufacturing labour costs during 2023 totalled €150 000, not including the 31 December working day described previously.

Required

1 Calculate the stock (31 December 2022) of Materials Control, Work-in-Progress Control and Finished Goods Control. Show T-accounts.

2 Prepare all adjusting and closing journal entries for the preceding accounts. Assume that all under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead is closed directly to Cost of Goods Sold.

3 Calculate the ending stock (31 December 2023), after adjustments and closing, of Materials Control, Work-in-Progress Control and Finished Goods Control.

CHAPTER 4

Process costing

Managerial accountants at companies like Xiaomi (smartphones), Coca-Cola (soft drinks), BP (oil and gas) and Bayer (pharmaceuticals) use process costing because it helps them (1) determine how many units of the product the firm has on hand at the end of an accounting reporting period, (2) evaluate the units' stages of completion, and (3) assign costs to units produced and in stock. A process-costing system is a costing system in which the cost of a product or service is obtained by assigning costs to masses of like or similar units. Unit costs are then calculated on an average basis. Process-costing systems are used in industries that cost like or similar units of products, which are often mass produced. In these industries, relatively homogeneous products are processed in a very similar manner. Other industries using process costing in their manufacturing area include chemical processing, plastics, brick and tile manufacturing, semiconductor chips, and breakfast cereals.

The principal difference between process costing and job costing is the extent of averaging used to calculate unit costs of products or services. The cost object in a job-costing system is a job that constitutes a distinctly identifiable product or service. Individual jobs use different quantities of manufacturing resources, so it would be incorrect to cost each job at the same average manufacturing cost. In contrast, when like or similar units are mass produced and not processed as individual jobs, process costing averages manufacturing costs over all units produced.

Knowing what products cost is important to consider for stock valuation, pricing decisions and product profitability analysis. Companies also use product costs to measure how well they are doing in managing and reducing costs. For example, Anheuser-Busch InBev SA/NV, which is the world's largest brewer, with more than 400 beer brands and over 183 000 employees globally, makes extensive use of process costing. It compiles information from brewing and packaging operations and tracks beer movement and quality measures. Process-costing information allows the enterprise to prepare and monitor beer loss reports. Organisations that produce similar products can be very complex and use the latest technological innovations. Consider for instance the brewing process of a craft beer company in Germany, which uses the Industrial Internet of Things (IIOT) technology and data analytics. Technology can help as brewing is a science with the process lasting a few days to several weeks, with temperature affecting the smell and flavour of the end product. Mr Maximilian Sträb, the Marketing and Sales Manager of SONEM, the provider of the technological system, notes that: 'Due to the high sensitivity, multiple processes have to be monitored and optimized within the brewery'. Sebastian Manning, the CEO of the company, adds: 'Based on the molecular acoustics, different fluids can be clearly classified and monitored

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Recognise when process-costing systems are appropriate
- Describe key steps in process costing
- Calculate and use equivalent units
- Demonstrate the weighted-average and first-in, first-out (FIFO) method of process costing
- Show how standard costs simplify process costing
- Apply process-costing methods to cases with transferred-in costs

during the entire production process. The captured data set allows, due to its informative content, a detailed and diverse analysis' (Moxa, 2022).

As we examine process costing in this chapter, we will be concerned only incidentally with controlling and managing costs and evaluating performance. Our primary focus is on determining the cost of products or services and on stock and cost of goods sold valuation. Operation costing as applied to batches of similar products is discussed in the appendix to this chapter.

Illustrating process costing

In a **process-costing system**, the unit cost of a product or service is obtained by assigning total costs to many identical or similar units. In a manufacturing process-costing setting, each unit is assumed to receive the same amount of direct materials costs, direct manufacturing labour costs and indirect manufacturing costs. Unit costs are then calculated by dividing total costs by the number of units.

The principal difference between process costing and job costing is the extent of averaging used to calculate unit costs of products or services. In a job-costing system, individual jobs use different quantities of production resources. Thus, it would be incorrect to cost each job at the same average production cost. In contrast, when identical or similar units of products or services are mass produced, and not processed as individual jobs, process costing averages production costs over all units produced.

The easiest way to learn process costing is by example. Consider the following illustration.

Example 4.1

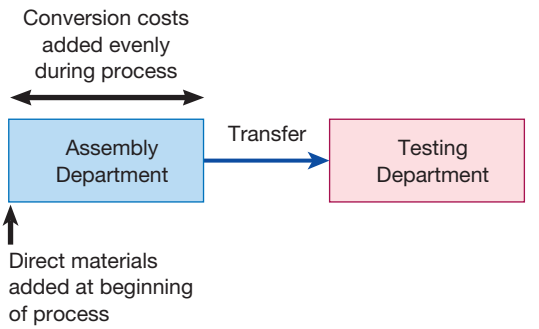
Euro-Défense SA manufactures thousands of components for missiles and military equipment. These components are assembled in the Assembly Department. Upon completion, the units are immediately transferred to the Testing Department. We will focus on the Assembly Department process for one of these components, DG-19. Every effort is made to ensure that all DG-19 units are identical and meet a set of demanding performance specifications. The process-costing system for DG-19 in the Assembly Department has a single direct-cost category (direct materials) and a single indirect-cost category (conversion costs). **Conversion costs** are all manufacturing costs other than direct material costs. These include manufacturing labour, indirect materials, energy, plant depreciation, and so on. Direct materials are added at the beginning of the process in Assembly. Conversion costs are added evenly during Assembly. These facts are summarised in Exhibit 4.1.

Process-costing systems separate costs into cost categories according to the timing of when costs are introduced into the process. Often, as in our Euro-Défense example, only two cost classifications, direct materials and conversion costs, are necessary to assign costs to products. Why? Because **all** direct materials are added to the process at one time and **all** conversion costs are generally added to the process uniformly through time. If, however, two different direct materials are added to the process at different times, two different direct material categories would be needed to assign these costs to products. Similarly, if manufacturing labour is added to the process at a time that is different from other conversion costs, an additional cost category (direct manufacturing labour costs) would be needed to separately assign these costs to products.

We will use the production of the DG-19 component in the Assembly Department to illustrate process costing in three cases:

1 Process costing with zero opening and zero closing work-in-progress stock of DG-19, that is, all units are started and fully completed by the end of the accounting period. This case presents the most basic concepts of process costing and illustrates the key feature of averaging of costs.

Exhibit 4.1 Allocation of direct material costs and conversion costs to assembly process



2 Process costing with zero opening work-in-progress stock but some closing work-in-progress stock of DG-19, that is, some units of DG-19 started during the accounting period are incomplete at the end of the period. This case builds on the basics and introduces the concept of equivalent units.

3 Process costing with both some opening and some closing work-in-progress stock of DG-19. This case adds more detail and describes the effect of weighted-average and first-in, first-out (FIFO) cost-flow assumptions on cost of units completed and cost of work-in-progress stock.

We start with the simple case and work towards the more detailed and more complex cases.

Case 1: Process costing with no opening or closing work-in-progress stock

On 1 January 2022, there was no opening stock of DG-19 units in the Assembly Department. During January 2022, Euro-Défense started, completed assembly of, and transferred out to the Testing Department, 400 DG-19 units.

Data for the Assembly Department for January 2022 are:

Physical units for January 2022	
Work in progress, opening stock (1 January)	0 units
Started during January	400 units
Completed and transferred out during January	400 units
Work in progress, closing stock (31 January)	0 units
Total costs for January 2022	
Direct material costs added during January	€32 000
Conversion costs added during January	24 000
Total Assembly Department costs added during January	€56 000

Euro-Défense records direct material and conversion costs in the Assembly Department as these costs are incurred. By averaging, the assembly costs per unit of DG-19 are €56 000 ÷ 400 units = €140 itemised as follows:

Direct material costs per unit (€32 000 ÷ 400)	€80
Conversion costs per unit (€24 000 ÷ 400)	60
Assembly Department costs per unit	€140

This case shows that in a process-costing system, unit costs can be averaged by dividing total costs in a given accounting period by total units produced in that period. Because each unit is identical, we assume all units receive the same amount of direct materials and conversion costs. This approach can be used by any company that produces a homogeneous product or service but has no incomplete units when each accounting period ends. This situation frequently occurs in service-sector organisations. For example, a bank can adopt this process-costing approach to calculate the unit cost of processing 100 000 similar customer deposits made in a month.

Case 2: Process costing with no opening but a closing work-in-progress stock

In February 2022, Euro-Défense places another 400 units of DG-19 into production. Because all units placed into production in January 2022 were completely assembled, there is no opening stock of partially completed units in the Assembly Department on 1 February 2022. Customer delays in placing orders for DG-19 prevent the complete assembly of all units started in February. Only 175 units are completed and transferred out to the Testing Department.

Data for the Assembly Department for February 2022 are:

Physical units for February 2022	
Work in progress, opening stock (1 February)	0 units
Started during February	400 units
Completed and transferred out	175 units
Work in progress, closing stock (28 February)	225 units

The 225 partially assembled units as of 28 February 2022 are fully processed with respect to direct materials. Why? Because all direct materials in the Assembly Department are added at the beginning of the assembly process. Conversion costs, however, are added evenly during the assembly process. Based on the work completed relative to the total work required to complete the DG-19 units still in the process, an Assembly Department supervisor estimates that the partially assembled units are, on average, 60% complete as to conversion costs.

Total costs for February 2022	
Direct material costs added during February	€32 000
Conversion costs added during February	18 600
Total Assembly Department costs added during February	€50 600

The accuracy of the completion percentages depends on the care and skill of the estimator and the nature of the process. Estimating the degree of completion is usually easier for direct materials than it is for conversion costs because the quantity of direct materials needed for a completed unit and the quantity of direct materials for a partially completed unit can be measured more easily. In contrast, the conversion sequence usually consists of a number of basic operations for a specified number of hours, days or weeks, for various steps in assembly, testing, and so forth. Thus, the degree of completion for conversion costs depends on what proportion of the total effort needed to complete one unit or one batch of production has been devoted to units still in progress. This estimate is more difficult to make accurately. Because of the difficulties in estimating conversion cost completion percentages, department supervisors and line managers – individuals most familiar with the process – often make these estimates. Still, in some industries no exact estimate is possible or, as in the textile industry, vast quantities in progress prohibit the making of costly physical estimates. In these cases, all work in progress in every department is assumed to be complete to some reasonable degree (for example, one-third, one-half or two-thirds complete).

The key point to note in Case 2 is that a partially assembled unit is not the same as a fully assembled unit. Faced with some fully assembled and some partially assembled units, how should

Euro-Défense calculate (1) the cost of fully assembled units in February 2022, and (2) the cost of the partially assembled units still in progress at the end of February 2022?

Euro-Défense calculates these costs by using the following five steps:

Step 1: Summarise the flow of physical units of output.

Step 2: Compute output in terms of equivalent units.

Step 3: Compute equivalent-unit costs.

Step 4: Summarise total costs to account for.

Step 5: Assign total costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress.

Physical units and equivalent units (steps 1 and 2)

Step 1 tracks the physical units of output. Where did the units come from? Where did the units go? The physical units column of Exhibit 4.2 tracks where the physical units came from – 400 units started, and where they went – 175 units completed and transferred out, and 225 units in closing stock.

Step 2 focuses on how the output for February should be measured. The output is 175 fully assembled units plus 225 partially assembled units. Since all 400 physical units are not uniformly completed, output in step 2 is computed in *equivalent units*, not in physical units.

Equivalent units is a derived amount of output units that takes the quantity of each input (factor of production) in units completed or in work in progress, and converts it into the amount of completed output units that could be made with that quantity of input. For example, if 50 physical units of a product in closing work-in-progress stock are 70% complete with respect to conversion costs, there are 35 (70% × 50) equivalent units of output for conversion costs. That is, if all the conversion cost input in the 50 units in stock were used to make completed output units, the company would be able to make 35 completed units of output. Equivalent units are calculated separately for each input (cost category). Examples of equivalent-unit concepts are also found in non-manufacturing settings. For instance, universities often convert their part-time student enrolments into full-time student equivalents.

Exhibit 4.2 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for February 2022

Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Direct materials	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Conversion costs
Work in progress, opening	0		
Started during current period	400		
To account for	400		
Completed and transferred out during current period	175	175	175
Work in progress, closing*	225		
225 × 100%; 225 × 60%		225	135
Accounted for	400		
Work done in current period only		400	310

* Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 60%.

When calculating equivalent units in step 2, focus on quantities. Disregard euro amounts until after equivalent units are computed. In the Euro-Défense example, all 400 physical units – the 175 fully assembled ones and the 225 partially assembled ones – are complete in terms of equivalent units of direct materials. Why? Because all direct materials are added in the Assembly Department at the initial stage of the process. Exhibit 4.2 shows output as 400 *equivalent* units for direct materials because all 400 units are fully complete with respect to direct materials.

The 175 fully assembled units are completely processed with respect to conversion costs. The partially assembled units in closing work in progress are 60% complete (on average). Therefore, the conversion costs in the 225 partially assembled units are *equivalent* to conversion costs in 135 (60% of 225) fully assembled units. Hence, Exhibit 4.2 shows output as 310 *equivalent* units with respect to conversion costs – 175 equivalent units assembled and transferred out and 135 equivalent units in closing work-in-progress stock.

Calculation of product costs (steps 3, 4 and 5)

Exhibit 4.3 shows steps 3, 4 and 5. Together, they are called the *production cost worksheet*. Step 3 calculates equivalent-unit costs by dividing direct materials and conversion costs added during February by the related quantity of equivalent units of work done in February (as calculated in Exhibit 4.2).

We can see the importance of using equivalent units in unit-cost calculations by comparing conversion costs for the months of January and February 2022. Observe that the total conversion costs of €18 600 for the 400 units worked on during February are less than the conversion costs of €24 000 for the 400 units worked on in January. However, the conversion costs to fully assemble a unit are €60 in both January and February. Total conversion costs are lower in February because fewer equivalent units of conversion costs work were completed in February (310) than were in January (400). If, however, we had used *physical* units instead of *equivalent* units in the per-unit

Exhibit 4.3 Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for February 2022

		Total production costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
(Step 3)	Costs added during February	€50 600	€32 000	€18 600
	Divide by equivalent units of work done in current period (Exhibit 4.2)		÷400	÷310
	Cost per equivalent unit		€80	€60
(Step 4)	Total costs to account for	€50 600		
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs:			
	Completed and transferred out (175 units)	€24 500	(175* × €80) + (175* × €60)	
	Work in progress, closing (225 units):			
	Direct materials	18 000	225† × €80	
	Conversion costs	8 100		135† × €60
	Total work in progress	26 100		
	Total costs accounted for	€50 600		

* Equivalent units completed and transferred out from Exhibit 4.1, step 2.
† Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.1, step 2.

calculation, we would have erroneously concluded that conversion costs per unit declined from €60 in January to €46.50 (€18 600 ÷ 400) in February. This incorrect costing might have prompted Euro-Défense, for example, to lower the price of DG-19 inappropriately.

Step 4 in Exhibit 4.3 summarises total costs to account for. Because the opening balance of the work in progress is zero, total costs to account for (that is, the total charges or debits to Work in Progress – Assembly) consist of the costs added during February – direct materials of €32 000, and conversion costs of €18 600, for a total of €50 600.

Step 5 in Exhibit 4.3 assigns these costs to units completed and transferred out and to units still in process at the end of February 2022. *The key idea is to attach euro amounts to the equivalent output units for direct materials and conversion costs in (a) units completed, and (b) closing work in progress calculated in Exhibit 4.2, step 2. To do so, the equivalent output units for each input are multiplied by the cost per equivalent unit calculated in step 3 of Exhibit 4.3.* For example, the 225 physical units in closing work in progress are completely processed with respect to direct materials. Therefore, direct materials costs are 225 equivalent units (Exhibit 4.2, step 2) × €80 (cost per equivalent of direct materials calculated in step 3), which equals €18 000. In contrast, the 225 physical units are 60% complete with respect to conversion costs. Therefore, the conversion costs are 135 equivalent units (60% of 225 physical units, Exhibit 4.2, step 2) × €60 (cost per equivalent unit of conversion costs calculated in step 3), which equals €8100. The total cost of ending work in progress equals €26 100 (€18 000 + €8100).

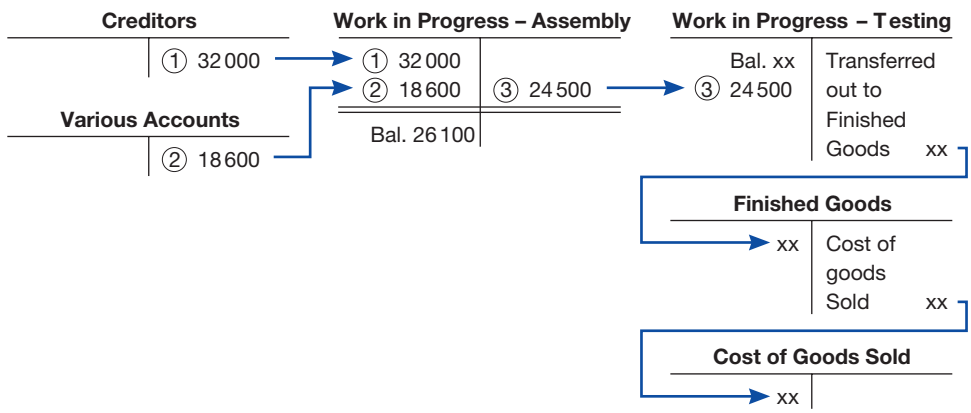
Journal entries

Journal entries in process-costing systems are basically like those made in job-costing systems with respect to direct materials and conversion costs. The main difference is that, in process costing, there is often more than one Work-in-Progress account, one for each process – in our example, Work in Progress – Assembly and Work in Progress – Testing. Euro-Défense purchases direct materials as needed. These materials are delivered directly to the Assembly Department. Using euro amounts from Exhibit 4.3, summary journal entries for the month of February at Euro-Défense are:

1	Work in Progress – Assembly	32 000	
	Creditors Control		32 000
	To record direct materials purchased and used in production during February		
2	Work in Progress – Assembly	18 600	
	Various accounts		18 600
	To record Assembly Department conversion costs for February; examples include energy, manufacturing supplies, all manufacturing labour and plant depreciation		
3	Work in Progress – Testing	24 500	
	Work in Progress – Assembly		24 500
	To record cost of goods completed and transferred from Assembly to Testing during February		

Exhibit 4.4 shows a general framework for the flow of costs through the T-accounts. Notice how entry 3 for €24 500 follows the physical transfer of goods from the Assembly to the Testing Department. The key T-account, Work in Progress – Assembly, shows a closing balance of €26 100, which is the opening balance of Work in Progress – Assembly in March 2022.

Exhibit 4.4 Flow of costs in a process-costing system, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for February 2022



Case 3: Process costing with both some opening and some closing work-in-progress stock

At the beginning of March 2022, Euro-Défense had 225 partially assembled DG-19 units in the Assembly Department. During March 2022, Euro-Défense placed another 275 units into production. Data for the Assembly Department for March 2022 are:

Physical units for March 2022		
Work in progress, opening stock (1 March)		225 units
Direct materials (100% complete)		
Conversion costs (60% complete)		
Started during March		275 units
Completed and transferred out during March		400 units
Work in progress, closing stock (31 March)		100 units
Direct materials (100% complete)		
Conversion costs (50% complete)		
Total costs for March 2022		
Work in progress, opening stock		
Direct materials (225 equivalent units × €80 per unit)	€18 000	
Conversion costs (135 equivalent units × €60 per unit)	8 100	€26 100
Direct material costs added during March		19 800
Conversion costs added during March		16 380
Total costs to account for		€62 280

We now have incomplete units in both opening and closing work-in-progress stock to account for. Our goal is to use the five steps we described earlier to calculate (1) the cost of units completed and transferred out, and (2) the cost of closing work in progress. To assign costs to each of these categories, however, we need to choose a stock cost-flow method. We next describe the five-step approach to process costing using two alternative stock cost-flow methods – the weighted-average method and the first-in, first-out method. The different assumptions will produce different numbers for cost of units completed and for closing work in progress.

Weighted-average method

The **weighted-average process-costing method** calculates the equivalent-unit cost of the *work done to date* (regardless of the period in which it was done) and assigns this cost to equivalent units completed and transferred out of the process and to equivalent units in closing work-in-progress stock. The weighted-average cost is the total of all costs entering the Work in Progress account (regardless of whether it is from opening work in progress or from work started during the period) divided by total equivalent units of work done to date. We now describe the five-step procedure introduced in Case 2 using the weighted-average method.

Step 1: Summarise the flow of physical units The physical units column of Exhibit 4.5 shows where the units came from – 225 units from opening stock and 275 units started during the current period – and where they went – 400 units completed and transferred out and 100 units in closing stock. These data for March were given above.

Step 2: Compute output in terms of equivalent units As we saw in Case 2, even partially assembled units are complete in terms of direct materials because direct materials are introduced at the beginning of the process. For conversion costs, the fully assembled physical units transferred out are, of course, fully completed. The Assembly Department supervisor estimates the partially assembled physical units in March 31 work in progress to be 50% complete (on average).

The equivalent-units columns in Exhibit 4.5 show the equivalent units of work done to date – equivalent units completed and transferred out and equivalent units in closing work in progress (500 equivalent units of direct materials and 450 equivalent units of conversion costs). Notice that the equivalent units of work done to date also equal the sum of the equivalent units in opening stock (work done in the previous period) and the equivalent units of work done in the current period, because:

$$\begin{array}{c}\text{Equivalent units}\\ \text{in opening}\\ \text{work in progress}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Equivalent units}\\ \text{of work done in}\\ \text{current period}\end{array} = \begin{array}{c}\text{Equivalent units}\\ \text{completed and}\\ \text{transferred out}\\ \text{in current period}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Equivalent units}\\ \text{in closing}\\ \text{work in progress}\end{array}$$

Exhibit 4.5 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, weighted-average method of process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units (given p. 97)	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Direct materials	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Conversion costs
Work in progress, opening	225		
Started during current period	275		
To account for	500		
Completed and transferred out during current period	400	400	400
Work in progress, closing*	100		
100 × 100%; 100 × 50%		100	50
Accounted for	500		
Work done to date		500	450

* Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 50%.

The equivalent-unit calculation in the weighted-average method is concerned only with total equivalent units of *work done to date* regardless of (1) whether the work was done during the previous period and is part of opening work in progress, or (2) whether it was done during the current period. That is, the weighted-average method *merges* equivalent units in opening stock (work done before March) with equivalent units of work done in the current period. Thus, the stage of completion of the current-period opening work in progress *per se is irrelevant* and *not* used in the calculation.

Step 3: Compute equivalent-unit costs Exhibit 4.6, step 3, shows the calculation of equivalent-unit costs separately for direct materials and conversion costs. The weighted-average cost per equivalent unit is obtained by dividing the sum of costs for opening work in progress and costs for work done in the current period by total equivalent units of work done to date. When calculating the weighted-average conversion cost per equivalent unit in Exhibit 4.6, for example, we divide total conversion costs, €24 480 (opening work in progress, €8100, plus work done in current period, €16 380) by total equivalent units, 450 (equivalent units of conversion costs in opening work in progress and in work done in current period), to get a weighted-average cost per equivalent unit of €54.40.

Step 4: Summarise total costs to account for The total costs to account for in March 2022 are described in the example data on page 97 – opening work in progress, €26 100 (direct materials, €18 000 and conversion costs, €8100) plus €36 180 (direct material costs added during March, €19 800, and conversion costs, €16 380). The total of these costs is €62 280.

Exhibit 4.6

Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, weighted-average method of process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

		Total production costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
(Step 3)	Work in progress, opening (given p. 97)	€26 100	€18 000	€8 100
	Cost added in current period (given p. 97)	36 180	19 800	16 380
	Cost incurred to date		€37 800	€24 480
	Divide by equivalent units of work done to date (Exhibit 4.5)		÷500	÷450
	Cost per equivalent unit of work done to date		€75.60	€54.40
(Step 4)	Total costs to account for	€62 280		
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs:			
	Completed and transferred out (400 units)	52 000	(400* × €75.60) + (400* × €54.40)	
	Work in progress, closing (100 units):			
	Direct materials	7 560	100† × €75.60	
	Conversion costs	2 720		50† × €54.40
	Total work in progress	10 280		
	Total costs accounted for	€62 280		

* Equivalent units completed and transferred out from Exhibit 4.5, step 2.
† Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.5, step 2.

Step 5: Assign these costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress The key point in this step is to cost all work done to date: (1) the cost of units completed and transferred out of the process, and (2) the cost of closing work in progress. Step 5 in Exhibit 4.6 takes the equivalent units completed and transferred out and equivalent units in closing work in progress calculated in Exhibit 4.5 step 2, and attaches euro amounts to them. These euro amounts are the weighted-average costs per equivalent unit for direct materials and conversion costs calculated in step 3. For example, note that the total cost of the 100 physical units in closing work in progress consists of:

Direct materials:	
100 equivalent units × Weighted-average cost per equivalent unit of €75.60	€7 560
Conversion costs:	
50 equivalent units × Weighted-average cost per equivalent unit of €54.40	2 720
Total costs of closing work in progress	€10 280

The following table summarises the total costs to account for and the €62 280 accounted for in Exhibit 4.6. The arrows indicate that costs of units completed and transferred out and in closing work in progress are calculated using average total costs obtained after merging costs of opening work in progress and costs added in the current period.

Costs to account for		Costs accounted for calculated at weighted-average cost	
Opening work in progress	€ 26 100	Completed and transferred out	€ 52 000
Costs added in current period	36 180	Closing work in progress	10 280
Total costs to account for	€ 62 280	Total costs accounted for	€ 62 280

Before proceeding, please pause and review Exhibits 4.5 and 4.6 carefully to check your understanding of the weighted-average method. Note that Exhibit 4.5 deals only with physical and equivalent units but no costs. Exhibit 4.6 shows the cost amounts.

Using euro amounts from Exhibit 4.6, summary journal entries under the weighted-average method for the month of March at Euro-Défense SA are:

1	Work in Progress – Assembly	19 800	
	Creditors Control		19 800
	To record direct materials purchased and used in production during March		
2	Work in Progress – Assembly	16 380	
	Various accounts		16 380
	To record Assembly Department conversion costs for March; examples include energy, manufacturing supplies, all manufacturing labour, and plant depreciation		
3	Work in Progress – Testing	52 000	
	Work in Progress – Assembly		52 000
	To record cost of goods completed and transferred from Assembly to Testing during March		

The key T-account, Work in Progress – Assembly, under the weighted-average method would show the following:

Work in Progress – Assembly

Opening stock, 1 March	26 100	③ Completed and transferred out to Work in Progress – Testing	52 000
① Direct materials	19 800		
② Conversion costs	16 380		
Closing stock, 31 March	10 280		

First-in, first-out method

In contrast to the weighted-average method, the **first-in, first-out (FIFO) process-costing method** assigns the cost of the previous period's equivalent units in opening work-in-progress stock to the first units completed and transferred out of the process, and assigns the cost of equivalent units worked on during the current period first to complete beginning stock, then to start and complete new units, and finally to units in closing work-in-progress stock. This method assumes that the earliest equivalent units in the Work in Progress – Assembly account are completed first.

A distinctive feature of the FIFO process-costing method is that work done on opening stock before the current period is kept separate from work done in the current period. Costs incurred in the current period and units produced in the current period are used to calculate costs per equivalent unit of work done in the current period. In contrast, equivalent-unit and cost-per-equivalent-unit calculations in the weighted-average method merge the units and costs in opening stock with units and costs of work done in the current period.

We now describe the five-step procedure introduced in Case 2 using the FIFO method.

Step 1: Summarise the flow of physical units Exhibit 4.7, step 1, traces the flow of physical units of production. The following observations help explain the physical units calculations.

- The first physical units assumed to be completed and transferred out during the period are the 225 units from the opening work-in-progress stock.
- Of the 275 physical units started, 175 are assumed to be completed. Recall from the March data given earlier in the chapter (on page xx) that 400 physical units were completed during March. The FIFO method assumes that the first 225 of these units were from opening stock; thus 175 (400 – 225) physical units must have been started and completed during March.
- Closing work-in-progress stock consists of 100 physical units – the 275 physical units started minus the 175 of these physical units completed.
- Note that the physical units 'to account for' equal the physical units 'accounted for' (500 units).

Exhibit 4.7 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, FIFO method of process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

	(Step 1)	(Step 2) Equivalent units	
Flow of production	**Physical units**	**Direct materials**	**Conversion costs**
Work in progress, opening (given p. 98)	225	(work done before current period)	
Started during current period (given p. 98)	275		
To account for	500		
Completed and transferred out during current period:			
From opening work in progress*	225		
225 × (100% − 100%); 225 × (100 − 60%)		0	90
Started and completed	175†		
175 × 100%, 175 × 100%		175	175
Work in progress, closing‡ (given p. 98)	100		
100 × 100%; 100 × 50%		100	50
Accounted for	500		
Work done in current period only		275	315

* Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 60%.
† 400 physical units completed and transferred out minus 225 physical units completed and transferred out from opening work-in-progress stock.
‡ Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 50%.

Step 2: Calculate output in terms of equivalent units Exhibit 4.7 also presents the computations for step 2 under the FIFO method. *The equivalent-unit calculations for each cost category focus on the equivalent units of work done in the current period (March) only.*

Under the FIFO method, the work done in the current period is assumed to first complete the 225 units in opening work in progress. The equivalent units of work done in March on the opening work-in-progress stock are calculated by multiplying the 225 physical units *by the percentage of work remaining to be done to complete these units*: 0% for direct materials, because the opening work in progress is 100% complete with respect to direct materials, and 40% for conversion costs, because the opening work in progress is 60% complete with respect to conversion costs. The results are 0 (0% × 225) equivalent units of work for direct materials and 90 (40% × 225) equivalent units of work for conversion costs.

Next, the work done in the current period is assumed to start and complete the next 175 units. The equivalent units of work done on the 175 physical units started and completed are calculated by multiplying 175 units by 100% for both direct materials and conversion costs, because all work on these units is done in the current period.

Finally, the work done in the current period is assumed to start but leave incomplete the final 100 units as closing work in progress. The equivalent units of work done on the 100 units of closing work in progress are calculated by multiplying 100 physical units by 100% for direct materials (because all direct materials have been added for these units in the current period) and 50% for conversion costs (because 50% of conversion costs work has been done on these units in the current period).

Step 3: Calculate equivalent-unit costs Exhibit 4.8 shows the step 3 calculation of equivalent-unit costs *for work done in the current period only* for direct materials and conversion costs. For example, we divide current-period conversion costs of €16 380 by current-period equivalent units for conversion costs of 315 to obtain cost per equivalent unit of €52.

Step 4: Summarise total costs to account for The total production costs column in Exhibit 4.8 presents step 4 and summarises the total costs to account for in March 2022 (opening work in progress and costs added in the current period) of €62 280, as described in the example data (p. 97).

Step 5: Assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress Finally, Exhibit 4.8 shows the step 5 assignment of costs under the FIFO method. The costs of work done in the current period are first assigned to the additional work done to complete the opening work in progress, then to the work done on units started and completed during the current period, and finally to the closing work in progress. *The easiest way to follow step 5 is to take each of the equivalent units calculated in Exhibit 4.7, step 2, and attach euro amounts to them (using the cost-per-equivalent-unit calculations in step 3).* The goal is to determine the total cost of all units completed from opening stock and from work started and completed in the current period, and the costs of closing work in progress done in the current period.

Notice that the 400 completed units are of two types: 225 units come from opening stock, and 175 units are started and completed during March. The FIFO method starts by assigning the costs of the opening work-in-progress stock of €26 100 to the first units completed and transferred out. This €26 100 is the cost of the 225 equivalent units of direct materials and 135 equivalent units of conversion costs that comprise opening stock. The work that generated these costs was done in February, so these units are costed (see data on page xx) at the February prices of €80 for direct materials and €60 for conversion costs [(225 × €80) + (135 × €60) = €26 100]. As we saw in step 2, an additional 90 equivalent units of conversion costs are needed to complete these units in the current period. The current-period conversion costs per equivalent unit is €52, so €4680 (90 × €52) of additional costs are needed to complete the opening stock. The total production costs for the

Exhibit 4.8

Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, FIFO method of process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

		Total production costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
	Work in progress, opening	€26 100	(costs of work done before current period)	
(Step 3)	Costs added in current period (given p. 97)	36 180	€19 800	€16 380
	Divide by equivalent units of work done in current period (Exhibit 4.7)		÷ 275	÷ 315
	Cost per equivalent unit of work done in current period		€72	€52
(Step 4)	Total costs to account for	€62 280		
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs:			
	Completed and transferred out (400 units):			
	Work in progress, opening (225 units)	€26 100		
	Direct materials added in current period	0	0 × €72	
	Conversion costs added in current period	4 680		90 × €52
	Total from opening stock	30 780		
	Started and completed (175 units)	21 700	(175† × €72)	+ (175† × €52)
	Total costs of units completed and transferred out	52 480		
	Work in progress, closing (100 units):			
	Direct materials	7 200	100‡ × €72	
	Conversion costs	2 600		50‡ × €52
	Total work in progress, closing	9 800		
	Total costs accounted for	€62 280		

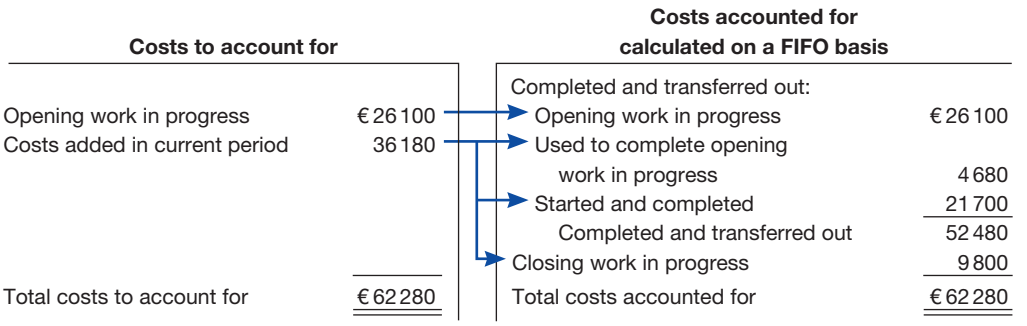
* Equivalent units used to complete opening work in progress from Exhibit 4.7, step 2.
† Equivalent units started and completed from Exhibit 4.7, step 2.
‡ Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.7, step 2.

units in opening stock are €26 100 + €4680 = €30 780. The 175 units started and completed in the current period consist of 175 equivalent units of direct materials and 175 equivalent units of conversion costs. These units are costed at the cost per equivalent unit in the current period (direct materials, €72 and conversion costs, €52) for a total production cost of €21 700.

Under FIFO, the closing work-in-progress stock comes from units that were started but not fully completed during the current period. The total cost of the 100 partially assembled physical units in closing work in progress consists of:

Direct materials:	
100 equivalent units × cost per equivalent unit in March of €72	€7 200
Conversion costs:	
50 equivalent units × cost per equivalent unit in March of €52	2 600
Total costs of work in progress on 31 March	€9 800

The following table summarises the total costs to account for and the costs accounted for of €62 280 in Exhibit 4.8. Notice how under the FIFO method, the layers of opening work in progress and costs added in the current period are kept separate. The arrows indicate where the costs in each layer go (that is, to units completed and transferred out or to closing work in progress). Be sure to include the costs of opening work in progress (€26 100) when calculating the costs of units completed from opening stock.



Before proceeding, you are advised to pause and review Exhibits 4.7 and 4.8 carefully to check your understanding of the FIFO method. Note that Exhibit 4.7 deals only with physical and equivalent units but no costs. Exhibit 4.8 shows the cost amounts.

The journal entries under the FIFO method parallel the journal entries under the weighted-average method. The only difference is that the entry to record the cost of goods completed and transferred out would be for €52 480 under the FIFO method instead of for €52 000 under the weighted-average method.

Only rarely is an application of pure FIFO ever encountered in process costing. As a result, it should really be called a *modified* or *departmental* FIFO method. Why? Because FIFO is applied within a department to compile the cost of units transferred *out*, but the units transferred *in* during a given period usually are carried at a single average unit cost as a matter of convenience. For example, the average cost of units transferred out of the Assembly Department is €52 480 ÷ 400 units = €131.20 per DG-19 unit. The Assembly Department uses FIFO to distinguish between monthly batches of production. The succeeding department, Testing, however, costs these units (that consist of costs incurred in February and March) at one average unit cost (€131.20 in this illustration). If this averaging were not done, the attempt to track costs on a pure FIFO basis throughout a series of processes would be unduly cumbersome.

Comparison of weighted-average and FIFO methods

The following table summarises the costs assigned to units completed and to units still in process under the weighted-average and FIFO process-costing methods for our example:

	Weighted average (from Exhibit 4.6)	FIFO (from Exhibit 4.8)	Difference
Cost of units completed and transferred out	€52 000	€52 480	+€480
Work in progress, closing	10 280	9 800	−€480
Total cost accounted for	€62 280	€62 280	

The weighted-average closing stock is higher than the FIFO closing stock by €480, or 4.9% (€480 ÷ €9800). This is a significant difference when aggregated over the many thousands of products that Euro-Défense makes. The weighted-average method in our example also results in lower cost of goods sold and hence higher operating income and higher income taxes than does

the FIFO method. Differences in equivalent-unit costs of opening stock and work done during the current period account for the differences in weighted-average and FIFO costs. Recall from the data given earlier (on p. 97) that direct materials costs per equivalent unit in opening work-in-progress stock is €80, and conversion costs per equivalent unit in opening work-in-progress stock is €60. These costs are greater than the €72 direct materials and €52 conversion costs per equivalent unit of work done during the current period. This reduction could be due to a decline in the prices of direct materials and conversion cost inputs or could be a result of Euro-Défense becoming more efficient.

For the Assembly Department, FIFO assumes that all the higher-cost units from the previous period in opening work in progress are the first to be completed and transferred out of the process, and closing work in progress consists of only the lower-cost current-period units. The weighted-average method, however, smooths out cost per equivalent unit by assuming that more of the lower-cost units are completed and transferred out, and some of the higher-cost units are placed in closing work in progress. Hence, in this example, the weighted-average method results in a lower cost of units completed and transferred out and a higher closing work-in-progress stock relative to FIFO.

Cost of units completed and, hence, operating income can differ materially between the weighted-average and FIFO methods when (1) the direct materials or conversion costs per unit vary significantly from period to period, and (2) the physical stock levels of work in progress are large in relation to the total number of units transferred out of the process. Thus, as companies move towards long-term procurement contracts that reduce differences in unit costs from period to period, and reduce stock levels, the difference in cost of units completed under the weighted – average and FIFO methods will decrease.

Managers need information from process-costing systems to aid them in pricing and product-mix decisions and to provide them with feedback about their performance. The major advantage of FIFO is that it provides managers with information about changes in the costs per unit from one period to the next. Managers can use this information to evaluate their performance in the current period compared with a benchmark or compared with their performance in the previous period. By focusing on work done and the costs of work done during the current period, the FIFO method provides useful information for these planning and control purposes. The weighted-average method merges unit costs from different periods and so obscures period- to-period comparisons. The major advantages of the weighted-average method, however, are its computational simplicity and its reporting of a more representative average unit cost when input prices fluctuate markedly from month to month.

Note that unlike in job-costing systems, activity-based costing (see Chapter 11) has less applicability in process-costing environments. Why? Because products are homogeneous and hence use resources in a similar way. Furthermore, each process – assembly, testing, and so on – corresponds to the different (production) activities. Managers reduce the costs of activities by controlling the costs of individual processes.

Standard-costing method of process costing

As we have mentioned, companies that use process-costing systems produce masses of identical or similar units of output. Setting standards for quantities of inputs needed to produce output is often relatively straightforward in such companies. Standard costs per input unit may then be assigned to these physical standards to develop standard costs per output unit.

The weighted-average and FIFO methods become very complicated when used in process industries that produce a wide variety of similar products. For example, a steel-rolling mill uses various steel alloys and produces sheets of various sizes and of various finishes. Both the items of direct materials and the operations performed are relatively few. But used in various combinations, they yield such a *wide variety* of products that inaccurate costs for each product result if the *broad* averaging procedure of actual process costing is used. Similarly, complex conditions are frequently found, for example, in plants that manufacture rubber products, textiles, ceramics, paints and packaged food products. The standard-costing method of process costing is especially useful in these situations.

Under the standard-costing method, teams of design and process engineers, operations personnel, and management accountants determine *separate* standard or equivalent-unit costs on the basis of the different technical processing specifications for each product. Identifying standard costs for each product overcomes the disadvantage of costing all products at a single average amount, as under actual costing.

Computations under standard costing

We again use the Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA as an example, except this time we assign standard costs to the process. The same standard costs apply in February and March of 2022:

Direct materials	€74 per unit	
Conversion costs	54 per unit	
Total standard manufacturing costs	€128 per unit	
Data for the Assembly Department are:		
Physical units for March 2022		
Work in progress, opening stock (1 March)	225 units	
Direct materials (100% complete)		
Conversion costs (60% complete)		
Started during March	275 units	
Completed and transferred out during March	400 units	
Work in progress, closing stock (31 March)	100 units	
Direct materials (100% complete)		
Conversion costs (50% complete)		
Total costs for March 2022		
Work in progress, opening stock as standard costs		
Direct materials:	€16 650	
225 equivalent units × €74 per unit		
Conversion costs:	7 290	€23 940
135 equivalent units × €74 per unit		
Actual direct materials costs added during March		19 800
Actual conversion costs added during March		16 380

We illustrate the standard-costing method of process costing using the five-step procedure introduced earlier in the chapter. Exhibit 4.9 presents steps 1 and 2. These steps are identical to the steps described for the FIFO method in Exhibit 4.7. Work done in the current period equals direct materials (275 equivalent units) and conversion costs (315 equivalent units).

Exhibit 4.10 shows the step 3 calculation of equivalent-unit costs. Step 3 is easier under the standard- costing method than it is under the weighted-average and FIFO methods. Why? Because the cost per equivalent unit does not have to be calculated, as was done for the weighted-average and FIFO methods. Instead, the costs per equivalent unit *are* the standard costs: direct materials, €74, and conversion costs, €54. Using standard costs also simplifies the computations for assigning the total costs to account for to units completed and transferred out and to units in closing work-in-progress stock.

The total costs to account for in Exhibit 4.10, step 4, that is, the total debits to Work in Progress – Assembly, differ from the total debits to Work in Progress – Assembly under the actual cost-based weighted-average and FIFO methods explained earlier in the chapter. Why? Because, *as in all standard-costing systems,* the debits to the Work-in-Progress account are at standard costs rather than actual costs. These standard costs total €61 300.

Exhibit 4.10, step 5, assigns total costs to units completed and transferred out and to units in closing work-in-progress stock, as in the FIFO method. Step 5 attaches euro amounts, using standard costs, to the equivalent units calculated in Exhibit 4.9. These costs are assigned first to complete opening work-in-progress stock, then to start and complete new units, and finally to

Exhibit 4.9 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, use of standard costs in process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Direct materials	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Conversion costs
Work in progress, opening (given p. 106)	225		
Started during current period (given p. 106)	275		
To account for	500		
Completed and transferred out during current period:			
From beginning work in progress*			
225 × (100 − 100%); 225 × (100% − 60%)	225	0	90
Started and completed	175†		
175 × 100%; 175% − 100%		175	175
Work in progress, closing‡ (given p. 105)	100		
100 × 100%; 100% − 50%		100	50
Accounted for	500		
Work done in current period only		275	315

* Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 60%.
† 400 physical units completed and transferred out minus 225 physical units completed and transferred out from opening work-in-progress stock.
‡ Degree of completion in this department: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 50%.

start new units that are in closing work-in-progress stock. Note how the total costs accounted for in step 5 of Exhibit 4.10 (€61 300) equal the total costs to account for.

Accounting for variances

Process-costing systems using standard costs usually accumulate actual costs incurred separately from the stock accounts. The following is an example. The actual costs are recorded in the first two entries. Recall that Euro-Défense purchases direct materials as needed and that these materials are delivered directly to the Assembly Department. The total variances are recorded in the next two entries. The final entry transfers out the completed goods at standard costs.

1	Assembly Department Direct Materials Control (at actual)	19 800	
	Creditors Control		19 800
	To record direct materials purchased and used in production during March. This cost control account is debited with actual costs and immediately credited with standard costs assigned to the units worked on (entry 3 below)		
2	Assembly Department Conversion Costs Control (at actual)	16 380	
	Various accounts		16 380
	To record Assembly Department conversion costs for March		
Entries 3, 4 and 5 use standard cost euro amounts from Exhibit 4.10.			
3	Work in Progress – Assembly (at standard costs)	20 350	
	Direct Materials Variances		550
	Assembly Department Direct Materials Control		19 800
	To record actual direct materials used and total direct materials variances		

4	Work in Progress – Assembly (at standard costs)	17 010	
	Conversion Costs Variances		630
	Assembly Department Conversion Costs Control		16 380
	To record actual conversion costs and total conversion costs variances		
5	Work in Progress – Testing (at standard costs)	51 200	
	Work in Progress – Assembly (at standard costs)		51 200
	To record costs of units completed and transferred out at standard cost from Assembly to Testing		

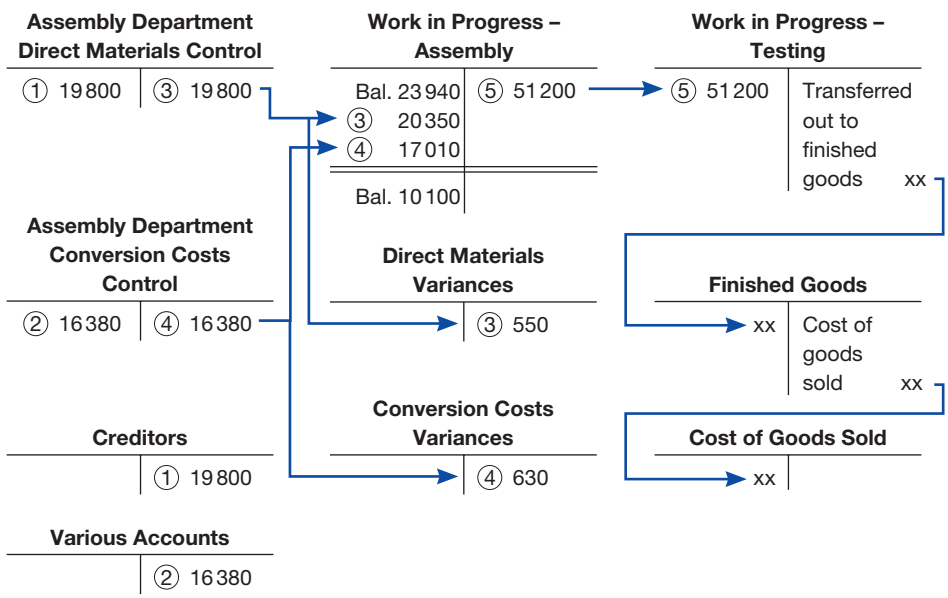
Exhibit 4.10

Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, use of standard costs in process costing, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

		Total production costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
(Step 3)	Standard cost per equivalent unit (given p. 106)		€74	€54
	Work in progress, opening (given p. 106)			
	Direct materials, 225 × €74; Conversion costs, 135 × €54	€23 940		
	Costs added in current period at standard costs			
	Direct materials, 275 × €74; Conversion costs, 315 × €54	37 360	20 350	17 010
(Step 4)	Costs to account for	€61 300		
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs at standard costs:			
	Completed and transferred out (400 units):			
	Work in progress, opening (225 units)	€23 940		
	Direct materials added in current period	0	0* × €74	
	Conversion costs added in current period	4 860		90* × €54
	Total from opening stock	28 800		
	Started and completed (175 units)	22 400	(175† × €74)	+ (175† × €54)
	Total costs of units transferred out	51 200		
	Work in progress, closing (100 units):			
	Direct materials	7 400	100 × €74	
	Conversion costs	2 700		50 × €54
	Total work in progress, closing	10 100		
	Total costs accounted for	€61 300		
Summary of variances for current performance				
Costs added in current period at standard prices (see step 3 above)			€20 350	€17 010
Actual costs incurred (given p. 106)			19 800	16 380
Variance			€550F	€630F

* Equivalent units to complete opening work in progress from Exhibit 4.9, step 2.
† Equivalent units started and completed from Exhibit 4.9, step 2.
‡ Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.9, step 2.

Exhibit 4.11 Flow of standard costs in a process-costing system, Assembly Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

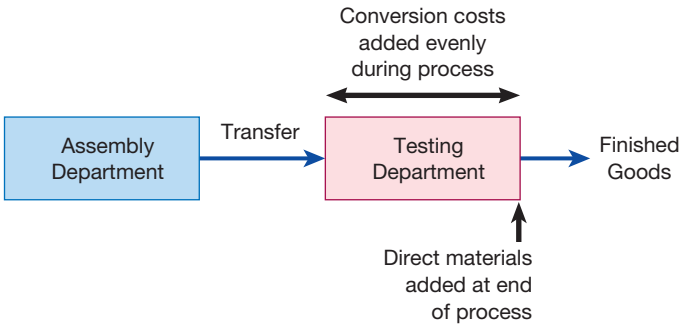


Variances arise under the standard-costing method, as in entries 3 and 4 above. Why? Because the standard costs assigned to products on the basis of work done in the current period do not equal the actual costs incurred in the current period. Variances can be measured and analysed in little or great detail for planning and control purposes, as described in Chapters 15 and 16. Exhibit 4.11 shows how the standard costs flow through the accounts.

Transferred-in costs in process costing

Many process-costing systems have two or more departments or processes in the production cycle. As units move from department to department, the related costs are also transferred by monthly journal entries. If standard costs are used, the accounting for such transfers is relatively simple. However, if the weighted-average or FIFO method is used, the accounting can become more complex. We now extend our Euro-Défense SA example to the Testing Department. As the assembly process is completed, the Assembly Department of Euro-Défense immediately transfers DG-19 units to its Testing Department. Here the units receive additional direct materials, such as crating and other packing materials to prepare the units for shipment, at the end of the process. Conversion costs are added evenly during the Testing Department's process. As units are completed in Testing, they are immediately transferred to Finished Goods. Exhibit 4.12 summarises these facts.

Exhibit 4.12 Allocation of direct material costs and conversion costs to testing process



Concepts in action — Hybrid costing for Adidas customised 3D printed shoes

In 2018, Adidas overtook Nike's Jordan brand to become the second-largest sneaker maker in the United States. Known for its iconic three-stripe logo and partnerships with NBA superstar James Harden and rapper Kanye West, the company is embracing cutting-edge manufacturing and 3D printing to create customized shoes for its customers.

Adidas' Futurecraft 4D running shoes feature a standard 3D-printed midsole. But new versions of the sneakers will feature customised midsoles engineered and printed based on the biomechanical data of each customer. To accomplish this, Adidas computers will make a three-dimensional scan of a customer's feet and measure the load and torque in their running stride. From there, the single-piece customised midsoles will be 3D-printed using digital light synthesis and incorporated into the knit Futurecraft 4D shoes. The result will be a customized pair of running shoes tailored to each person's unique feet and running style.

Customised 3D-printed shoes, like the Futurecraft 4D, use a hybrid-costing system. Accounting for the 3D printing of the midsoles requires job costing, but the similar process used to make the shoes they are stitched into lends itself to process costing.

Along with athletic shoes, 3D printing is letting people create personalized jewelry, headphones, and mobile phone cases. Adoption of 3D printing is growing rapidly, and by 2023 the market for 3D printing is expected to eclipse $32 billion.

Sources: Cheng, A. (2018) 'How Adidas plans to bring 3D printing to the masses', Forbes, 22 May (https://www.forbes.com/sites/andriacheng/2018/05/22/with-adidas-3d-printing-may-finally-see-its-mass-retail-potential/); Flower, I. (2017) 'Is mass customization the future of footwear?' *The Wall Street Journal*, 24 October (https://www.wsj.com/articles/is-mass-customization-the-future-of-footwear-1508850000); Wiener, A. (2017) 'Inside Adidas' robot-powered, on-demand sneaker factory', *Wired*, 29 November (https://www.wired.com/story/inside-speedfactory-adidas-robot-powered-sneaker-factory/). No author (2017) *3D Printing Market* (Chicago, IL: Markets and Markets).

Data for the Testing Department for the month of March 2022 are:

Physical units for March 2022	
Work in progress, opening stock (March 1)	240 units
Transferred-in costs (100% complete)	
Direct materials (0% complete)	
Conversion costs (5/8 or 62.5% complete)	
Transferred in during March	400 units
Completed during March	440 units
Work in progress, closing stock (March 31)	200 units
Transferred-in costs (100% complete)	
Direct materials (0% complete)	
Conversion costs (80% complete)	

Costs of Testing Department for March 2022		
Work in progress, opening stock*		
Transferred-in costs (240 equivalent units × €140 Per equivalent units)	€33 600	
Direct materials	0	
Conversion costs (150 equivalent units × €120 Per equivalent units)	18 000	€51 600
Transferred-in costs during March		
Weighted-average (from Exhibit 4.6)		52 000
FIFO (from Exhibit 4.8)		52 480
Direct material costs added during March		13 200
Conversion costs added during March		48 600

Transferred-in costs (also called **previous department costs**) are the costs incurred in a previous department that are carried forward as the product's cost when it moves to a subsequent process in the production cycle. That is, as the units move from one department to the next, their costs are transferred with them. Thus, calculations of Testing Department costs consist of transferred-in costs as well as the direct materials and conversion costs added in Testing.

Transferred-in costs are treated as if they are a separate type of direct material added at the opening of the process. In other words, when successive departments are involved, transferred units from one department become all or a part of the direct materials of the next department; however, they are called transferred-in costs, not direct material costs.

Transferred-in costs and the weighted-average method

To examine the weighted-average process-costing method with transferred-in costs, we use the five-step procedure described earlier (p. 94) to assign costs of the Testing Department to units completed and transferred out and to units in closing work in progress. Exhibit 4.13 shows steps 1 and 2. The computations are basically the same as the calculations of equivalent units under the weighted-average method for the Assembly Department in Exhibit 4.5, except for the addition of transferred-in costs. The units are fully completed as to transferred-in costs because these costs are simply carried forward from the previous process. Note, however, that direct materials costs have a zero degree of completion in both the opening and closing work-in-progress stocks because, in Testing, direct materials are introduced at the end of the process.

*The opening work-in-progress stock is the same under both the weighted-average and FIFO stock methods because we assume costs per equivalent unit to be the same in both January and February. If the cost per equivalent unit had been different in the two months, the work-in-progress stock at the end of February (beginning of March) would be costed differently under the weighted-average and FIFO methods. If this were the case, the basic approach to process costing with transferred-in costs would still be the same as described in this section, only the opening balances of work in progress would be different.

Exhibit 4.13 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, weighted-average method of process costing, Testing Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units (given p. 111)	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Transferred- in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Work in progress, opening	240			
Transferred in during current period	400			
To account for	640			
Completed and transferred out during current period	440	440	440	440
Work in progress, closing*	200			
200 × 100%; 200 × 0%; 200 × 80%		200	0	160
Accounted for	640			
Work done to date		640	440	600

* Degree of completion in this department: transferred-in costs, 100%; direct materials, 0%; conversion costs, 80%.

Exhibit 4.14 describes steps 3, 4 and 5 for the weighted-average method. Note that opening work in progress and work done in the current period are combined for purposes of computing equivalent-unit costs for transferred-in costs, direct materials and conversion costs.

Exhibit 4.14 Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, weighted-average method of process costing, Testing Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

		Total production costs	Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
(Step 3)	Work in progress, opening (given p. 111)	€51 600	€33 600	€0	€18 000
	Costs added in current period (given p. 111)	113 800	52 000	13 200	48 600
	Costs incurred to date		€85 600	€13 200	€66 600
	Divide by equivalent units of work done to date (Exhibit 4.13)		÷ 640	÷ 440	÷ 600
	Equipment-unit costs of work done to date		€133.75	€30	€111
(Step 4)	Total costs to account for	€165 400			
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs:				
	Completed and transferred out (440 units)	€120 890	(440* × €133.75) + (440* × €30) + (440* × €111)		
	Work in progress, closing (200 units):				
	Transferred-in costs	26 750	200† × €133.75		
	Direct materials	0		0† × €30	
	Conversion costs	17 760			160† × €111
	Total work in progress, closing	44 510			
	Total costs accounted for	€165 400			

* Equivalent units completed and transferred out from Exhibit 4.13, step 2.
† Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.13, step 2.

Using the euro amount from Exhibit 4.14, the journal entry for the transfer out from Testing to Finished Goods stock is:

Finished Goods Control	120 890	
Work in Progress – Testing		120 890

To record cost of goods completed and transferred from Testing to Finished Goods

Entries to the key T-account, Work in Progress – Testing, follow (from Exhibit 4.14).

Work in Progress – Testing

Opening stock, 1 March	51 600	Transferred out	120 890
Transferred-in costs	52 000		
Direct materials	13 200		
Conversion costs	48 600		
Closing stock, 31 March	45 510		

Transferred-in costs and the FIFO method

To examine the FIFO process-costing method with transferred-in costs, we again use the five-step procedure. Exhibit 4.15 shows steps 1 and 2. Other than considering transferred-in costs, the computations of equivalent units are basically the same as those under the FIFO method for the Assembly Department shown in Exhibit 4.7.

Exhibit 4.16 describes steps 3, 4 and 5. Note that the costs per equivalent unit for the current period in step 3 are only calculated on the basis of costs transferred in and work done in the

Exhibit 4.15 Steps 1 and 2: summarise output in physical units and calculate equivalent units, FIFO method of process costing, Testing Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units	(Step 2) Equivalent units: Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Work in progress, opening (given p. 111)	240	(work done before current period)		
Transferred in during current period (given p. 111)	400			
To account for	640			
Completed and transferred out during current period:				
From opening work in progress*	240			
240 × (100% − 100%); 240 × (100 − 0%); 240 × (100 − 62.5%)		0	240	90
Started and completed	200†			
200 × 100%; 200 100%; 200 × 100%		200	200	200
Work in progress, closing‡ (given p. xxx)	200			
200 × 100%; 200 × 0%; 200 × 80%		200	0	160
Accounted for	640			
Work done in current period only		400	440	450

* Degree of completion in this department: Transferred-in costs, 100%; direct materials, 0%; conversion costs, 62.5%.
† 440 physical units completed and transferred out minus 240 physical units completed and transferred out from opening work-in-progress stock.
‡ Degree of completion in this department: transferred-in costs, 100%; direct materials, 0%; conversion costs, 80%.

Exhibit 4.16

Steps 3, 4 and 5: calculate equivalent-unit costs, summarise total costs to account for, and assign costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress, FIFO method of process costing, Testing Department of Euro-Défense SA, for March 2022

		Total production costs	Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
	Work in progress, opening (given p. 111)	€51 600	(costs of work done before current period)		
(Step 3)	Costs added in current period (given p. 111)	114 280	€52 480	€13 200	€48 600
	Divide by equivalent units of work done in current period (Exhibit 4.15)		÷ 400	÷ 440	÷ 450
	Cost per equivalent unit of work done in current period		€131.20	€30	€108
(Step 4)	Total costs to account for	€165 880			
(Step 5)	Assignment of costs:				
	Completed and transferred out (440 units):				
	Work in progress, opening (240 units)	€51 600			
	Transferred-in costs added in current period	0	0† × €131.20		
	Direct materials added in current period	7 200		240† × €30	
	Conversion costs added in current period	9 720			90† × €108
	Total from opening stock	68 520			
	Started and completed (200 units)	53 840	(200† × €131.20)	+ (200† × €30)	+ (200† × €108)
	Total costs of units completed and transferred out	122 360			
	Work in progress, ending (200 units):				
	Transferred-in costs	26 240	(200‡ × €131.20)		
	Direct materials	0		0‡ × €30	
	Conversion costs	17 280			160‡ × €108
	Total work in progress, closing	43 520			
	Total costs accounted for	€165 880			

* Equivalent units used to complete opening work in progress from Exhibit 4.15, step 2.
† Equivalent units started and completed from Exhibit 4.15, step 2.
‡ Equivalent units in closing work in progress from Exhibit 4.15, step 2.

current period. In steps 4 and 5, the total costs to account for and accounted for of €165 880 under the FIFO method differ from the corresponding amounts under the weighted-average method of €165 400. Why? Because of the different costs of completed units transferred in from the Assembly Department under the two methods (€52 480 under FIFO and €52 000 under weighted average).

Using the euro amount from Exhibit 4.16, the journal entry for the transfer of completed units to Finished Goods stock is:

Finished goods Control	122 360	
Work in Progress – Testing		122 360
To record cost of goods completed and transferred from Testing to Finished Goods		

Entries to the key T-account, Work in Progress – Testing, follow using information from Exhibit 4.16.

Work in Progress – Testing

Opening stock, 1 March	51 600	Transferred out	122 360
Transferred-in costs	52 480		
Direct materials	13 200		
Conversion costs	48 600		
Closing stock, 31 March	43 520		

Points to remember about transferred-in costs

Here are some points to remember when accounting for transferred-in costs:

- Remember to include transferred-in costs from previous departments in your calculations.
- In calculating costs to be transferred on a FIFO basis, do not overlook the costs assigned at the opening of the period to units that were in process but are now included in the units transferred. For example, do not overlook the €51 600 in Exhibit 4.16.
- Unit costs may fluctuate between periods. Therefore, transferred units may contain batches accumulated at different unit costs. For example, the 400 units transferred in at €52 480 in Exhibit 4.16 using the FIFO method consist of units that have different unit costs of direct materials and conversion costs when these units were worked on in the Assembly Department (see Exhibit 4.8). Remember, however, that when these units are transferred to the Testing Department, they are costed at *one* average unit cost of €131.20 (€52 480 ÷ 400) as in Exhibit 4.14.
- Units may be measured in different terms in different departments. Consider each department separately. For example, unit costs could be based on kilograms in the first department and litres in the second department. Accordingly, as units are received in the second department, their measurements must be converted to litres.

Hybrid-costing systems

Product-costing systems do not always fall neatly into the categories of job costing or process costing. A **hybrid-costing system** blends characteristics from both job-costing systems and process-costing systems. Job-costing and process-costing systems are best viewed as the ends of a continuum (Exhibit 4.17).

Product-costing systems must often be designed to fit the particular characteristics of different production systems. Many production systems are a hybrid – they have some features of custom-order manufacturing and other features of mass-production manufacturing. Manufacturers of a relatively wide variety of closely related standardised products tend to use a hybrid-costing system. Consider Renault, the car manufacturer. Cars may be manufactured in a continuous flow, but individual units may be customised with a special combination of engine size, gears, in-car stereo system, and so on. Companies develop hybrid-costing systems in such situations. The 'Concepts in action' box in this chapter describe a hybrid-costing system at Adidas. The appendix to this chapter explains *operation costing*, a common type of hybrid-costing system.

Exhibit 4.17 The hybrid-costing systems continuum

Job-costing systems	Hybrid-costing systems	Process-costing systems
Distinct, identifiable units of product or service (for example, custom-made machines and houses)		Masses of identical or similar units of product or service (for example, food or chemical processing)

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. A process-costing system is used to determine the cost of a product or service when masses of identical or similar units are produced. Unit costs are computed by first assigning costs to these similar units and then dividing by the number of these units. Industries using process-costing systems include food, textiles and oil refining.
2. The five key steps in a process-costing system using equivalent units are (a) summarise the flow of physical units of output, (b) compute output in terms of equivalent units, (c) compute equivalent-unit costs, (d) summarise total costs to account for, and (e) assign total costs to units completed and to units in closing work in progress.
3. Equivalent units is a derived amount of output units that takes the quantity of each input in units completed or in work in progress, and converts it into the amount of completed output units that could be made with that quantity of input. Equivalent-unit calculations are necessary when all physical units of output are not uniformly completed during an accounting period. Journal entries in a process-costing system are similar to entries in a job-costing system. The main difference is that in a process-costing system, there is a separate work-in-progress account for each department.
4. The weighted-average method of process costing computes unit costs by focusing on the total costs and the total equivalent units completed to date and assigns this average cost to units completed and to units in closing work-in-progress stock. The first-in, first-out (FIFO) method of process costing assigns the costs of the opening work-in-progress stock to the first units completed, and assigns the costs of the equivalent units worked on during the current period first to complete beginning stock, then to start and complete new units, and finally to units in closing work-in-progress stock.
5. The standard-costing method simplifies process costing because standard costs serve as the costs per equivalent unit when assigning costs to units completed and to units in closing work-in-progress stock.
6. The weighted-average process-costing method computes transferred-in costs per unit by focusing on total transferred-in costs and total equivalent transferred-in units completed to date, and assigns this average cost to units completed and to units in closing work-in-progress stock. The FIFO process-costing method assigns transferred-in costs in opening work in progress to units completed, and the costs transferred in during the current period first to complete opening work-in-progress units, then to start and complete new units, and finally to units in closing work-in-progress stock.

Appendix

Operation costing

This appendix presents key ideas of operation costing and uses an example to illustrate relevant calculations and journal entries.

Overview of operation costing

An **operation** is a standardised method or technique that is performed repetitively regardless of the distinguishing features of the finished good. Operations are usually conducted within departments. For instance, a suit maker may have a cutting operation and a hemming operation within a single department. The term *operation,* however, is often used loosely. It may be a synonym for a department or a process; for example, some companies may call their finishing department a finishing process or a finishing operation.

Operation costing is a hybrid-costing system applied to batches of similar products. Each batch of products is often a variation of a single design and proceeds through a sequence of selected (though not necessarily the same) activities or operations. Within each operation, all product units are treated exactly alike, using identical amounts of the operation's resources. Batches are also termed production runs.

Consider a business that makes suits. Management may select a single basic design for every suit that the company manufactures. Depending on specifications, batches of suits vary from each other. One batch may use wool; another batch, cotton. One batch may require special hand stitching; another batch, machine stitching. Other products that are often manufactured in batches are semiconductors, textiles and shoes.

An operation-costing system uses work orders that specify the needed direct materials and step-by-step operations. Product costs are compiled for each work order. Direct materials that are unique to different work orders are specifically identified with the appropriate work order as in job-costing systems. The conversion cost for each unit passing through a given operation is the same regardless of the work order. Why? Because each unit passing through an operation uses identical amounts of that operation's resources. A single average conversion cost per unit is calculated as in process costing. For each operation, this amount is calculated by aggregating conversion costs and dividing by all units passing through that operation. Our examples assume only two cost categories, direct materials and conversion costs. Of course, operation costing can have more than two cost categories. The costs in each category are identified with work orders using job-costing or process-costing methods as appropriate.

Managers often find operation costing useful in cost management because operation costing focuses on the physical processes, or operations, of a given production system. For example, in the manufacturing of clothing, managers are concerned with fabric waste, the number of fabric layers that can be cut at one time, and so on. Operation costing captures the financial impact of the control of physical processes. Feedback from an operation-costing system can therefore provide essential insight into the control of physical processes and the management of operational costs.

An illustration of operation costing

Consider Aran Sweaters Ltd, a clothing manufacturer that produces two lines of blazers for department stores. Wool blazers use better-quality materials and undergo more operations than do polyester blazers. Let us look at the following operations in 2022:

	Work order 423	Work order 424
Direct materials	Wool Satin full lining Bone buttons	Polyester Rayon partial lining Plastic buttons
Operations		
1 Cutting cloth	Use	Use
2 Checking edges	Use	Do not use
3 Sewing body	Use	Use
4 Checking seams	Use	Do not use
5 Machine sewing of collars and lapels	Do not use	Use
6 Hand sewing of collars and lapels	Use	Do not use

Suppose work order 423 is for 50 wool blazers and work order 424 is for 100 polyester blazers. The following costs are assumed for these two work orders, which were started and completed in March 2022:

	Work order 423	Work order 424
Number of blazers	50	100
Direct material costs	€6 000	€3 000
Conversion costs allocated:		
Operation 1	580	1 160
Operation 2	400	–
Operation 3	1 900	3 800
Operation 4	500	–
Operation 5	–	875
Operation 6	700	–
Total manufacturing costs	€10 080	€8 835

As in process costing, all product units in any work order are assumed to consume identical amounts of conversion costs of a particular operation. Aran Sweaters' operation-costing system uses a budgeted rate to calculate the conversion costs of each operation. For example, the costs of operation 1 might be budgeted as follows (amounts assumed):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Operation 1 budgeted conversion cost rate in 2022} &= \frac{\text{Operation 1 budgeted conversion costs in 2022}}{\text{Operation 1 budgeted product units in 2022}}\\ &= \frac{€232\,000}{20\,000 \text{ units}}\\ &= €1160 \text{ per unit}\end{aligned}$$

The budgeted conversion costs of operation 1 include labour, power, repairs, supplies, depreciation and other overheads of this operation. If some units have not been completed so that all units

in operation 1 have not received the same amounts of conversion costs, the conversion cost rate is calculated by dividing budgeted conversion costs by the *equivalent units* of conversion costs.

As goods are manufactured, conversion costs are allocated to the work orders processed in operation 1 by multiplying the €11.60 conversion costs per unit by the number of product units processed. The conversion costs of operation 1 for 50 wool blazers (work order 423) are €11.60 × 50 = €580, and for 100 polyester blazers (work order 424) are €11.60 × 100 = €1160. If work order 424 contained 75 units, its total costs in operation 1 would be €870 (€11.60 × 75), 150% rather than 200% of the cost of work order 423. If equivalent units have been used to calculate the conversion cost rate, costs are allocated to work orders by multiplying the conversion cost per equivalent unit by the number of equivalent units in the work order. Direct material costs of €6000 for the 50 wool blazers (work order 423) and €3000 for the 100 polyester blazers (work order 424) are specifically identified with each order as in a job-costing system. Note that operational unit costs are assumed to be the same regardless of the work order, but direct material costs vary across orders as the materials themselves vary.

Journal entries

Actual conversion costs for operation 1 in March 2022 (assumed to be €24 400) are entered into a Conversion Costs account:

1	Conversion Costs	24 400	
	Various accounts (such as Wages Payable and Provision for Depreciation)		24 400

Summary journal entries for assigning costs to the polyester blazers (work order 424) follow. Entries for the wool blazers would be similar.

Of the €3000 of direct materials for work order 424, €2975 are used in operation 1. The journal entry for the use of direct materials, which are traced directly to particular batches, for the 100 polyester blazers is:

2	Work in Progress, Operation 1	2975	
	Materials Stock Control		2975

The allocation of conversion costs to products in operation costing uses the budgeted rate €11.60 times the 100 units processed, or €1160.

3	Work in Progress, Operation 1	1160	
	Conversion Costs Allocated		1160

The transfer of the polyester blazers from operation 1 to operation 3 (recall that the polyester blazers do not go through operation 2) would be entered in the journal as follows:

4	Work in Progress, Operation 3	4135	
	Work in Progress, Operation 1		4135

After posting, Work in Progress, Operation 1 account appears as follows:

Work in Progress, Operation 1

2	Direct materials	2975	**4** Transferred to Operation		34 135
3	Conversion costs allocated	1160			

The costs of the blazers are transferred through the pertinent operations and then to Finished Goods in the usual manner. Costs are added throughout the year in the Conversion Costs and Conversion Costs Allocated accounts. Any over- or underallocation of conversion costs is disposed of in the same way as over- or underallocated manufacturing overhead in a job-costing system.

Reference

Moxa-Europe (2022), 'Smart edge turnkey solution for optimizing brewing processes' (https://moxa-europe.com/lp/case-study-ait-sonem/).

CHAPTER 4

Assessment material

Review questions

4.1 Give three examples of industries that often use process-costing systems.

4.2 In process costing, why are costs often divided into two main classifications?

4.3 What problems might arise in estimating the degree of completion of an aircraft blade in a machining shop?

4.4 Describe the distinctive characteristic of weighted-average computations in assigning costs to units completed and closing work in progress.

4.5 Describe the distinctive characteristic of FIFO computations in assigning costs to units completed and closing work in progress.

4.6 Identify a major advantage of the FIFO method for purposes of planning and control.

4.7 Identify the main difference between journal entries in process costing and those in job costing.

4.8 Why should the accountant distinguish between transferred-in costs and additional direct material costs for a particular department?

4.9 'Previous department costs are those incurred in the preceding accounting period.' Do you agree? Explain.

4.10 'There's no reason for me to get excited about the choice between the weighted-average and FIFO methods in my process-costing system. I have long-term contracts with my materials suppliers at fixed prices.' State the conditions under which you would (a) agree and (b) disagree with this statement, made by an accountant. Explain.

Exercises

Intermediate level

4.11 **No opening stock** (25 minutes)

Europe Electronics SNC manufactures microchips in large quantities. Each microchip undergoes assembly and testing. The total assembly costs during January 2022 were:

Direct materials used	€720 000
Conversion costs	760 000
Total manufacturing costs	€1 480 000

Required

1. Assume there was no opening stock on 1 January 2022. During January, 10 000 microchips were placed into production and all 10 000 microchips were fully completed at the end of January. What is the unit cost of an assembled microchip in January 2022?
2. Assume that during February 10 000 microchips were placed into production. Further assume the same total assembly costs for January are also incurred in February, but only 9000 microchips are fully completed at the end of February. All direct materials had been added to the remaining 1000 microchips. However, on average, these remaining 1000 microchips were only 50% complete as to conversion costs. (a) What are the equivalent units for direct materials and conversion costs and their respective equivalent-unit costs for February? (b) What is the unit cost of an assembled microchip in February?
3. Explain the difference in your answers to requirements 1 and 2.

*4.12 **Journal entries** (continuation of Exercise 4.11) (20 minutes)

Refer to requirement 2 of Exercise 4.11.

Required

Prepare summary journal entries for the use of direct materials and conversion costs. Also prepare a journal entry to transfer out the cost of goods completed. Show the postings to the Work in Progress account.

4.13 **Equivalent units and equivalent-unit costs** (25 minutes)

Consider the following data for the satellite Assembly Division of Aéro-France:

	Physical units (satellites)	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Opening work in progress (1 May)*	8	€4 968 000	€928 000
Started in May	50		
Completed during May	46		
Closing work in progress (31 May)†	12		
Costs added during May		€32 200 000	€13 920 000

* Degree of completion: direct materials, 90%; conversion costs, 40%.
† Degree of completion: direct materials, 60%; conversion costs, 30%.

Required

1. Calculate equivalent units of work done in the current period for direct materials and conversion costs. Show physical units in the first column.
2. Calculate cost per equivalent unit of opening work in progress and of work done in the current period for direct materials and conversion costs.

*4.14 **Equivalent-unit computations, benchmarking, ethics** (20–25 minutes)

Radhika Khrishna is the corporate accountant of Manchester Suits plc. Manchester Suits has 20 plants worldwide that manufacture basic suits for retail stores. Each plant uses a process-costing system. At the end of each month, each plant manager submits a production report and a production-cost report. The production report includes the plant manager's estimate of the percentage of completion of the closing work in progress as to direct materials and conversion costs. Khrishna uses these estimates to calculate the equivalent units of work done in each plant and the cost per equivalent unit of work done for both direct materials and conversion costs in each month.

Plants are ranked from 1 to 20, in terms of (a) cost per equivalent unit of direct materials and (b) cost per equivalent unit of conversion costs. Each month Khrishna publishes a report that she calls 'Benchmarking for Efficiency Gains at Manchester Suits'. The top three ranked plants on each category receive a bonus and are written up as the best in their class in the company newsletter.

Khrishna has been pleased with the success of her benchmarking programme. However, she has heard some disturbing news. She has received some unsigned letters stating that two plant managers have been manipulating their monthly estimates of percentage of completion in an attempt to become best in class.

Required

1 How and why might plant managers 'manipulate' their monthly estimates of percentage of completion?
2 Khrishna's first reaction is to contact each plant accountant and discuss the problem raised by the unsigned letters. Is that a good idea?
3 Assume that the plant accountant's primary reporting responsibility is to the plant manager and that each plant accountant receives the telephone call from Khrishna, mentioned in requirement 2. What is the ethical responsibility of each plant accountant (a) to Radhika Khrishna and (b) to Manchester Suits in relation to the equivalent-unit information each plant provides for the 'Benchmarking for Efficiency' report?
4 How might Khrishna gain some insight into whether the equivalent-unit figures provided by particular plants are being manipulated?

4.15 **Process Costing** (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004) (40 minutes)

Duddon Ltd makes a product that has to pass through two manufacturing processes, I and II. All the material is input at the start of process I. No losses occur in process I but there is a normal loss in process II equal to 7% of the input into that process. Losses have no realisable value.

Process I is operated only in the first part of every month, followed by process II in the second part of the month. All completed production from process I is transferred into process II in the same month. There is no work in progress in process II.

Information for last month for each process is as follows:

Process I	
Opening work in progress	200 units (40% complete for conversion costs) valued in total at £16 500
Input into the process	1900 units with a material cost of £133 000
Conversion costs incurred	£93 500
Closing work in progress	50% complete for conversion costs
Process II	
Transfer from process I	1800 units
Conversion costs incurred	£78 450

1650 completed units were transferred to the Finished Goods warehouse.

Required

1 Calculate for process I:
   a the value of the closing work in progress; and
   b the total value of the units transferred to process II.

2 Prepare the process II account for last month.

3 Identify TWO main differences between process costing and job costing.

Advanced level

*4.16 Transferred-in costs, equivalent-unit costs, working backwards (30 minutes)

Le Roi du Plastique Sarl has two processes – extrusion and thermo-assembly. Consider the June 2022 data for physical units in the thermo-assembly process of Le Roi du Plastique: opening work in progress, 15 000 units; transferred in from the Extruding Department during September, 9000; closing work in progress, 5000. Direct materials are added when the process in the Thermo-assembly Department is 80% complete. Conversion costs are added evenly during the process. Le Roi du Plastique uses the weighted-average process-costing method. The following information is available.

	Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Opening work in progress at cost	€90 000	–	€45 000
Cost per equivalent unit of opening work in progress	€6	–	€5
Costs added in current period	€58 500	€57 000	€57 200
Cost per equivalent unit of work done in current period	€6.50	€3	€5.20

Required

1 For each cost element, calculate equivalent units of (a) opening work in progress and (b) work done in the current period.

2 For each cost element, calculate the equivalent units in closing work in progress.

3 (a) For each cost element, calculate the percentage of completion of opening work-in-progress stock and (b) for each cost element, calculate the percentage of completion of closing work-in-progress stock.

4.17 Transferred-in costs, weighted-average method (35–40 minutes)

Telemark-Kjemi AS manufactures an industrial solvent in two departments – mixing and cooking. This question focuses on the Cooking Department. During June 2022, 90 tonnes of solvent were completed and transferred out from the Cooking Department. Direct materials are added at one point in time during the process. Conversion costs are added uniformly during the process. Telemark-Kjemi uses the weighted-average process-costing method. The following information about the actual costs for June 2022 is available.

	Transferred-in costs		Direct materials		Conversion costs	
	Equivalent tonnes	Total costs	Equivalent tonnes	Total costs	Equivalent tonnes	Total costs
Work in progress, 1 June	40	NOK 40 000	0	NOK 0	30	NOK 18 000
Work done in June	80	NOK 87 200	90	NOK 36 000	75	NOK 49 725
Completed in June	?	?	?	?	?	?
Work in progress, 30 June	?	?	?	?	?	?

Required

1. Calculate the equivalent tonnes of solvent completed and transferred out and in closing work in progress for each cost element.
2. Calculate cost per equivalent unit for opening work in progress and work done in current period.
3. Summarise total costs to account for and assign these costs to units completed (and transferred out) and to units in closing work in progress using the weighted-average method.

4.18 Transferred-in costs, FIFO method (35–40 minutes)

Refer to the information in Exercise 4.17. Suppose that Telemark-Kjemi uses the FIFO method instead of the weighted-average method in all its departments. The only changes under the FIFO method are that the total transferred-in cost of opening work in progress is NOK 39 200 and that the cost of work done in the current period is NOK 85 600.

Required

Do Exercise 4.17 using the FIFO method.

4.19 Transferred-in costs, standard-costing method (35–40 minutes)

Refer to the information in Exercise 4.17. Suppose Telemark-Kjemi determines standard costs of NKr 1050 per (equivalent) tonne of transferred-in costs, NOK 390 per (equivalent) tonne of direct materials and NOK 640 per (equivalent) tonne of conversion costs for both opening work in progress and work done in the current period.

Required

Do Exercise 4.17 using the standard-costing method.

4.20 Weighted-average method (25 minutes)

Euro-Défense is a manufacturer of military equipment. Its Tourcoing plant manufactures the Déca-Pite missile under contract to the French government and friendly countries. All Déca-Pites go through an identical manufacturing process. Every effort is made to ensure that all Déca-Pites are identical and meet many demanding performance specifications. The product-costing system at the Tourcoing plant has a single direct-cost category (direct materials) and a single indirect-cost category (conversion costs). Each Déca-Pite passes through two departments – the Assembly Department and the Testing Department. Direct materials are added at the opening of the process in Assembly. Conversion costs are added evenly throughout the two departments. When the Assembly Department finishes work on each Déca-Pite, it is immediately transferred to Testing.

Euro-Défense uses the weighted-average method of process costing. Data for the Assembly Department for October 2022 are:

	Physical units (missiles)	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Work in progress, 1 October*	20	€460 000	€120 000
Started during October	80		
Completed during October	90		
Work in progress, 31 October†	10		
Costs added during October		€2 000 000	€935 000

* Degree of completion: direct materials, ?%; conversion costs, 60%.
† Degree of completion: direct materials, ?%; conversion costs, 70%.

Required

1. For each cost element, calculate equivalent units of work done in October 2022 in the Assembly Department. Show physical units in the first column.
2. For each cost element, calculate cost per equivalent unit of opening work in progress and of work done in October 2022.
3. Summarise the total Assembly Department costs for October 2022 and assign these costs to units completed (and transferred out) and to units in closing work in progress using the weighted-average method.
4. Prepare a set of summarised journal entries for all October 2022 transactions affecting Work in Progress – Assembly. Set up a T-account for Work in Progress – Assembly and post the entries to it.

4.21 **FIFO method** (continuation of Exercise 4.20) (20 minutes)

Required

Do Exercise 4.20 using the FIFO method of process costing. Explain any difference between the cost of work completed and transferred out and cost of closing work in progress in the Assembly Department under the weighted-average method and the FIFO method.

4.22 **Weighted-average method** (25 minutes)

Sligo Toys Ltd manufactures one type of wooden toy figure. It buys wood as its direct material for the Forming Department of its Ballinode plant. The toys are transferred to the Finishing Department, where they are hand-shaped and metal is added to them.

Sligo Toys uses the weighted-average method of process costing. Consider the following data for the Forming Department in April 2022:

	Physical units (missiles)	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Work in progress, 1 April*	300	€7 500	€2 125
Started during April	2 200		
Completed during April	2 000		
Work in progress, 30 April†	500		
Costs added during April		€70 000	€42 500

* Degree of completion: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 40%.
† Degree of completion: direct materials, 100%; conversion costs, 25%.

Required

1. Summarise the total Forming Department costs for April 2022, and assign these costs to units completed (and transferred out) and to units in closing work in progress using the weighted-average method.
2. Prepare a set of summarised journal entries for all April transactions affecting Work in Progress – Forming. Set up a T-account for Work in Progress – Forming and post the entries to it.

4.23 **FIFO computations** (continuation of Exercise 4.22) (20 minutes)

Required

Do Exercise 4.22 (1) using FIFO and four decimal places for unit costs. Explain any difference between the cost of work completed and transferred out and cost of closing work in progress in the Forming Department under the weighted-average method and the FIFO method.

4.24 Transferred-in costs, weighted-average (related to Exercises 4.22 and 4.23) (30 minutes)

Sligo Toys Ltd manufactures wooden toy figures at its Ballinode plant. It has two departments – the Forming Department and the Finishing Department. (Exercises 4.22 and 4.23 focused on the Forming Department.) Consider now the Finishing Department, which processes the formed toys through hand-shaping and the addition of metal. For simplicity here, suppose all additional direct materials are added at the end of the process. Conversion costs are added evenly duringFinishing operations.

Sligo Toys uses the weighted-average method of process costing. The following is a summary of the April 2022 operations in the Finishing Department:

	Physical units (toys)	Transferred- in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Work in progress, 1 April*	500	€17 750	€0	€7 250
Transferred-in during April	2 000			
Completed during April	2 100			
Work in progress, 30 April†	400			
Costs added during April		€104 000	€23 100	€38 400

* Degree of completion: transferred-in costs, 100%; direct materials, 0%; conversion costs, 60%.
† Degree of completion: transferred-in costs, 100%; direct materials, 0%; conversion costs, 30%.

Required

1 Summarise the total Finishing Department costs for April 2022, and assign these costs to units completed (and transferred out) and to units in closing work in progress using the weighted-average method.

2 Prepare journal entries for April transfers from the Forming Department to the Finishing Department and from the Finishing Department to Finished Goods.

4.25 Transferred-in costs, FIFO costing (continuation of Exercise 4.24) (30 minutes)

Required

1 Using the FIFO process-costing method, do the requirements of Exercise 4.24. The transferred-in costs from the Forming Department for the April opening work in progress are €17 520. During April, the costs transferred in are €103 566. All other data are unchanged.

2 Explain any difference between the cost of work completed and transferred out and cost of closing work in progress in the Finishing Department under the weighted-average method and the FIFO method.

CHAPTER 5

Cost allocation

Cost allocation is an inescapable problem in nearly every organisation. How should the airline costs of a trip to attend job interviews from London to Dubai to Tunis and then return to London be allocated among the prospective employers in Dubai and Tunis? How should university costs be allocated among undergraduate, graduate and research degrees? How should the costs of expensive medical equipment, facilities and staff be allocated in a medical centre? How should manufacturing overhead be allocated to individual products in a multiple-product company such as Heinz?

Finding answers to cost-allocation questions is difficult. The answers are seldom entirely right or clearly wrong. But cost allocation is of real importance for most enterprises. While the allocation may not affect the firm's profit as a whole, if the allocation is not performed properly, it can make the profitability of some departments and projects (and their managers) look better or worse than they should. In other cases, the allocations can affect the decisions of managers and the prices paid by consumers. Lock and Dimond (2021) believe that in large organisations, there may be 30–50% of total costs being allocated, that is, moved from one cost object to another. Most of these are the costs of corporate functions like IT, Finance, HR, and so on. Often these are not allocated once only but rather allocated and re-allocated (on average 4.2 times) before being charged eventually to a business unit. According to consultants, 'the process of cost allocation divides organisations as business units seek to protect their profitability by avoiding corporate charges' (Deloitte, 2022). Regardless of the work you do, you will undoubtedly be faced with many cost-allocation questions in your career. We first concentrate on the allocation of costs to departments and later, we'll look at the allocation of costs to individual products, services, customers or jobs. Chapter 6 considers costing issues which arise when two or more products are simultaneously produced with each other and where joint costs are allocated to products and services.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe how a costing system can have multiple cost objects
- Outline four purposes for allocating costs to cost objects
- Discuss key decisions faced when collecting costs in indirect-cost pools
- Describe how the single-rate cost-allocation method differs from the dual-rate method
- Explain how the choice of budgeted versus actual allocation rates changes the risks that managers face
- Distinguish between direct allocation, step-down and reciprocal methods of allocating support department costs
- Distinguish between the incremental and stand-alone cost-allocation methods
- Outline the consequences of the inappropriate use of an allocation base
- Describe why managers may find cost hierarchy-based reports useful in their decisions

Purposes of cost allocation

The indirect costs of a particular cost object are costs that are related to that cost object but cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible or cost-effective way.

Indirect costs often comprise a sizeable percentage of the costs assigned to cost objects such as products, distribution channels and customers. Exhibit 5.1 illustrates four purposes for allocating indirect costs to such cost objects:

1 to provide information for managerial decisions
2 to motivate managers and employees
3 to justify costs or calculate reimbursement
4 to measure income and assets for reporting to external parties.

The allocation of one particular cost need not satisfy all purposes simultaneously. Consider the salary of an aerospace scientist in a central research department of Aérospatiale. This salary cost may be allocated as part of central research costs to satisfy purpose 1 (managerial decisions); it may or may not be allocated to satisfy purpose 2 (motivation); it may or may not be allocated to a government contract to justify a cost to be reimbursed to satisfy purpose 3 (cost reimbursement); and it must not be allocated (under generally accepted accounting principles) to stock to satisfy purpose 4 (income and asset measurement).

Different costs are appropriate for different purposes. Consider product costs of the following business functions in the value chain:

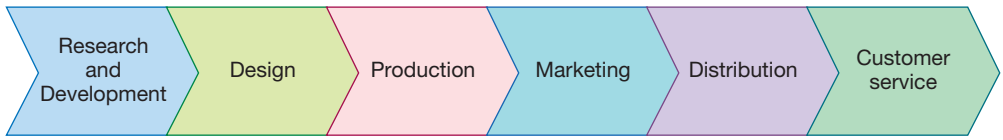


Exhibit 5.1 Purposes of cost allocation

Purpose	Illustrations
1 To provide information for managerial decisions	• To decide whether to add a new airline flight • To decide whether to make a component part of a television set or to purchase it from another manufacturer • To decide on the selling price for a customised product or service
2 To motivate managers and employees	• To encourage the design of products that are simpler to manufacture or less costly to service • To encourage sales representatives to push high-margin products or services
3 To justify costs or calculate reimbursement	• To cost products at a 'fair' price, often done with government defence contracts • To compute reimbursement for a consulting firm that is paid a percentage of the cost savings resulting from the implementation of its recommendations
4 To measure income and assets for meeting external regulatory and legal reporting obligations	• To communicate financial information to shareholders, bondholders and other stakeholders. (In financial reporting statements, 'inventoriable' costs include manufacturing costs but exclude research and development (R&D), marketing, distribution and customer-service costs.)

The same combination of costs in these six business functions typically will not satisfy each of the four purposes in Exhibit 5.1. For the managerial-decision purpose (for example, product pricing), the costs in all six functions should be included. For the motivation purpose, costs from more than one function are often included to emphasise to managers how costs in different functions are related to each other. For example, many Japanese and German companies require product designers to incorporate costs further down the chain than design (such as distribution and customer service, as well as manufacturing) into their product-cost estimates. The aim is to focus attention on how different product-design options affect the total costs of the organisation. For the cost-reimbursement purpose, the particular contract will often stipulate whether all six of the business functions or only a subset of them are to be reimbursed. For instance, for the purpose of income and asset measurement for reporting to external parties, inventoriable costs in the preparation of financial reports usually include only manufacturing costs (and product-design costs in some cases). In most European countries, R&D costs can be capitalised (over up to five years) although there are countries (such as Germany and the UK) where research costs must be written off in the accounting period in which they are incurred. So you can see that cost allocation is a matter of judgement rather than pure economic logic.

Cost allocation and costing systems

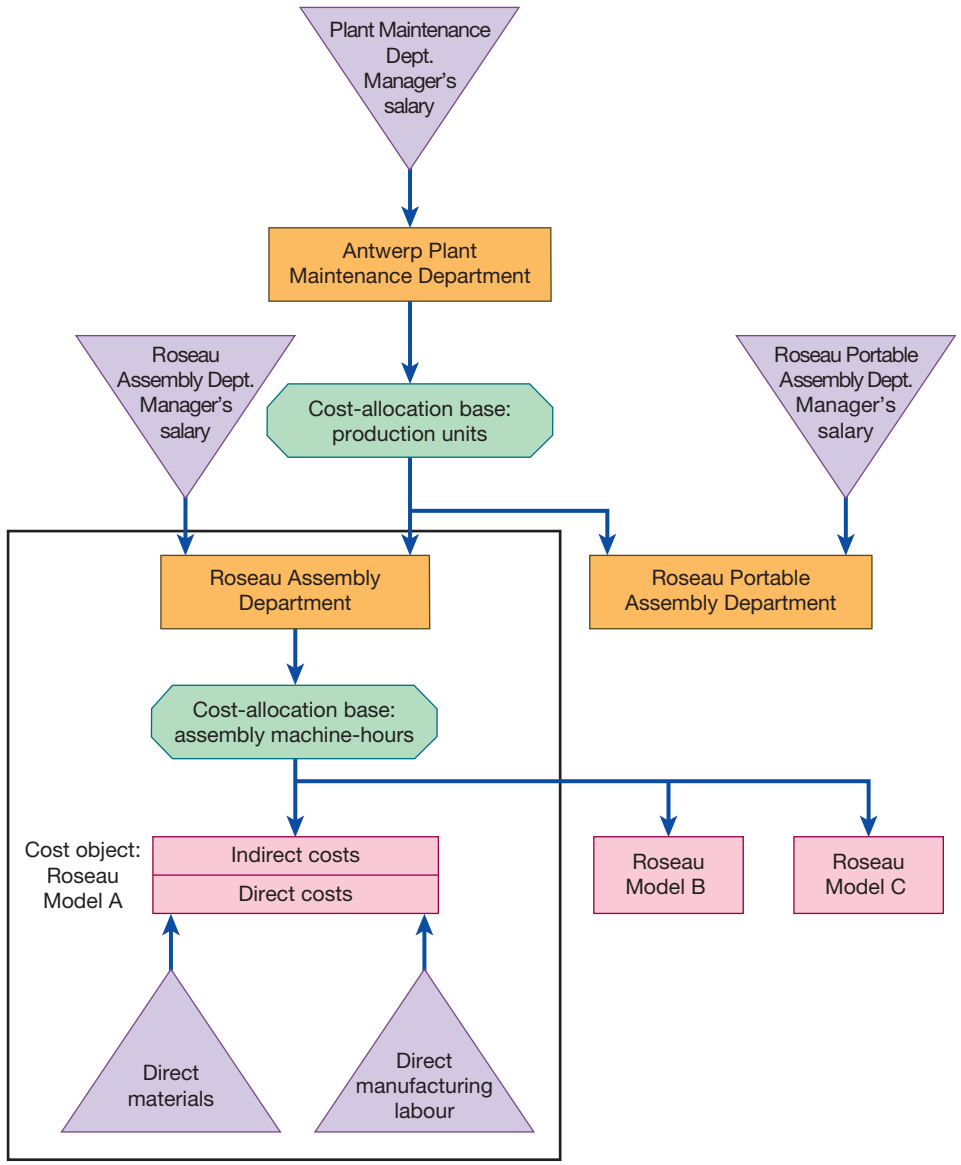
We will use Fontaine Informatique to illustrate how costs incurred in different parts of an organisation can be assigned and then reassigned when costing products, services, customers or contracts. Fontaine Informatique has two manufacturing divisions. The Microcomputer Division manufactures its Roseau, Roseau Portable and Super Roseau products. The Roseau and Roseau Portable are assembled at its Antwerp, Mataró and Longvic plants. The Super Roseau is assembled at its Tourcoing plant. The Peripheral Equipment Division manufactures printers, cables and other items used with its computer products. It has plants in Antwerp and Rotterdam.

Exhibit 5.2 presents an overview of the costing system at the Antwerp assembly plant of the Microcomputer Division. This plant assembles the Roseau line and the Roseau Portable line. The area within the box in Exhibit 5.2 shows a costing system overview for the Model A version of the Roseau. Fontaine Informatique has manufacturing plants located in France, Belgium, the Netherlands and Spain. It has marketing operations in more than 20 countries. Every month it consolidates accounting information from each of its operations to use in its planning and control decisions. A detailed costing overview of this company-wide system would be sizably more complex than that in Exhibit 5.2.

The costing system for the Antwerp plant portrayed in Exhibit 5.2 highlights two important points. First, it highlights how there are multiple cost objects in most costing systems. Examples at the Antwerp plant include the Plant Maintenance Department, the Roseau Assembly Department, the Roseau Portable Assembly Department and the separate products in the Roseau Assembly Department – for example, Roseau Models A, B and C. Note, however, that Exhibit 5.2 presents only a small subset of the separate cost objects at the Antwerp plant. Other examples include the Procurement Department, the Energy Department and the various Roseau Portable products.

Exhibit 5.2 also highlights how an individual cost item can be simultaneously a direct cost of one cost object and an indirect cost of another cost object. Consider the salary of the Plant Maintenance Department manager. This salary is a direct cost traced to the Plant Maintenance Department. Fontaine Informatique then allocates the costs of this department to the two Assembly Departments at the Antwerp plant using units produced as the allocation base. In turn, the costs of the two Assembly Departments are allocated to individual products, such as the Roseau Model A, using assembly machine-hours as the allocation base. Thus, the salary of the Plant Maintenance Department manager is both an indirect cost of each computer assembled at the plant and a direct cost of the Plant Maintenance Department.

Exhibit 5.2 Cost tracing and cost allocation at the Antwerp assembly plant of Fontaine Informatique



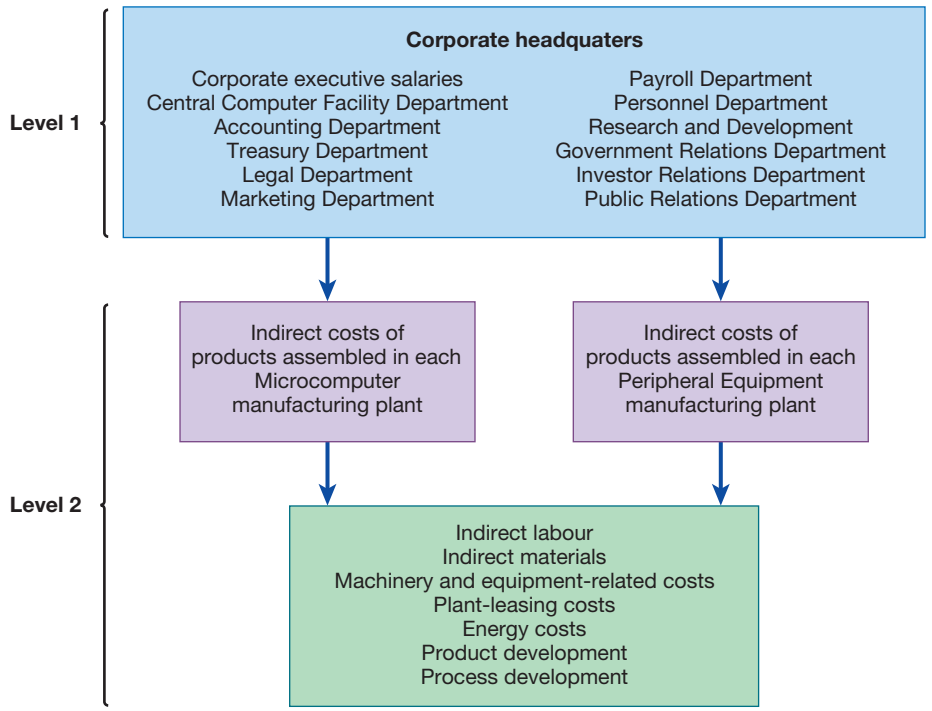
Indirect-cost pools and cost allocation

The indirect costs of products assembled at the manufacturing plants of Fontaine Informatique include (1) costs incurred at corporate headquarters and (2) costs incurred at the manufacturing plants. Exhibit 5.3 illustrates cost pools at both levels (1) and (2).

Choices related to indirect costs

Fontaine Informatique has several key choices to make when accumulating and subsequently allocating the indirect costs to products of the Microcomputer Division:

Exhibit 5.3 Indirect-cost pools (when the cost object is an individual product) of Fontaine Informatique



- Which cost categories from corporate headquarters and the other divisions should be included in the indirect costs of the Microcomputer Division? Should all of the corporate headquarters cost pools in Exhibit 5.3 be allocated, or should only a subset of them be allocated? For example, some companies exclude corporate public relations from any corporate cost allocations to the divisions; division managers have little say in corporate public relations decisions and would object to allocations as 'taxation without representation'.
- How many cost pools should be used when allocating corporate costs to the Microcomputer Division? A cost pool is a grouping of individual cost items. One extreme is to aggregate all corporate costs into a single cost pool. The other extreme is to have numerous individual corporate cost pools. The concept of homogeneity (described in the following section) is important in making this decision.
- Which allocation base should be used for each of the corporate cost pools when allocating corporate costs to the Microcomputer Division? Examples include the following:

Cost pool	Possible allocation bases
Corporate executive salaries	Sales; assets employed; operating profit
Treasury Department	Sales; assets employed; estimated time or usage
Legal Department	Estimated time or usage; sales; assets employed
Marketing Department	Sales; number of sales personnel
Payroll Department	Number of employees; payroll euros
Personnel Department	Number of employees; payroll euros; number of new employees

- Which allocation base should be used when allocating the indirect-cost pools at each manufacturing plant to the products assembled in those plants? Examples include number of parts assembled in each product, direct manufacturing labour-hours, machining-hours and testing-hours.

These allocation bases for both corporate and plant indirect costs are illustrative only. Managers' choices of allocation bases depend on the purpose served by the cost allocation (see Exhibit 5.1), the criteria used to guide the cost allocation (see Exhibit 5.2) and the costs of implementing the different allocation bases.

Determining cost pools

A **homogeneous cost pool** is one in which all the activities whose costs are included in the pool have the same or a similar cause-and-effect relationship or benefits-received relationship between the cost allocator and the costs of the activity. Why is homogeneity important? Because using homogeneous indirect-cost pools enables more accurate product, service and customer costs to be obtained. A consequence of using a homogeneous cost pool is that the cost allocations using that pool will be the same as would be made if costs of each individual activity in that pool were allocated separately. The greater the degree of homogeneity, the fewer cost pools required to explain accurately the differences in how products use resources of the organisation.

Assume that Fontaine Informatique wishes to use the cause-and-effect criterion (that is, identify the variable or variables that cause resources to be consumed) to guide cost-allocation decisions. The company should aggregate only those cost pools that have the same cause-and-effect relationship to the cost object. For example, if the number of employees in a division is the cause for incurring both corporate Payroll Department costs and corporate Personnel Department costs, the payroll cost pool and the personnel cost pool could be aggregated before determining the combined payroll and personnel cost rate per unit of the allocation base. That is, the combined rate per unit of the allocation base is the same as the sum of the rates if the individual cost pools were allocated separately.

A variety of factors may prompt managers to consider recognising multiple cost pools where a single cost pool is currently being used. One factor is the views of line managers and personnel. For example, do they believe important differences exist in how costs are driven or how products use the facilities not currently being recognised using a single cost pool? A second factor is changes made in plant layout, general operations and so on, such that all products do not use the facility in an equivalent way. A third factor is changes in the diversity of products (or services) produced or in the way those products use the resources in the cost pool. Improvements in information and communication technology continuously expand the ability to develop multiple cost pools.

Allocating costs from one department to another

In many cases, the costs of a department will include costs allocated from other departments. Three key issues that arise when allocating costs from one department to another are (1) whether to use a single-rate method or a dual-rate method, (2) whether to use budgeted rates or actual rates, and (3) whether to use budgeted quantities or actual quantities.

Single-rate and dual-rate methods

A **single-rate cost-allocation method** pools all costs in one cost pool and allocates them to cost objects using the same rate per unit of the single allocation base. There is no distinction between costs in the cost pool in terms of cost variability (such as fixed costs versus variable costs). A **dual-rate cost-allocation method** first classifies costs in one cost pool into two subpools (typically into a variable-cost subpool and a fixed-cost subpool). Each subpool has a different allocation rate or a different allocation base.

Consider the Central Computer Department at the corporate headquarters of Fontaine Informatique (shown in Exhibit 5.3). For simplicity, assume that the only users of this facility are the

Microcomputer Division and the Peripheral Equipment Division. The following data apply to the coming budget year:

Fixed costs of operating the facility	€300 000	per year
Total capacity available	1 500	hours
Budgeted long-term usage (quantity) in hours		
Microcomputer Division	800	
Peripheral Equipment Division	400	
Total	1 200	
Budgeted variable costs per hour in the 1000–1500-hour relevant range	€200	per hour used

Under the single-rate method, the costs of the Central Computer Department (assuming budgeted usage is the allocation base and budgeted rates are used) would be allocated as follows:

Total cost pool: €300 000 + (1200 budgeted hours) × €200)	€540 000	per year
Budgeted usage	1 200	hours
Budgeted total rate per hour rate: €540 000 ÷ 1200 hours	€450	per hour used
Allocation rate for Microcomputer Division	€450	per hour used
Allocation rate for Peripheral Equipment Division	€450	per hour used

The rate of €450 per hour differs sizably from the €200 budgeted variable cost per hour. The €450 rate includes an allocated amount of €250 per hour (€300 000 ÷ 1200 hours) for the fixed costs of operating the facility. These fixed costs will be incurred whether the computer runs its 1500-hour capacity, its 1200-hour budgeted usage, or even, say, only 600 hours' usage.

Using the €450 per hour single-rate method (combined with the budgeted usage allocation base) transforms what is a fixed cost to the Central Computer Department (and to Fontaine Informatique) into a variable cost to users of that facility. This approach could lead internal users to purchase computer time outside the company. Consider an external supplier that charges less than €450 per hour but more than €200 per hour. A division of Fontaine Informatique that uses this supplier rather than the Central Computer Department may decrease its own division costs, but the overall costs to Fontaine Informatique are increased. For example, suppose the Microcomputer Division uses an external supplier that charges €360 per hour when the Central Computer Department has excess capacity. In the short run, Fontaine Informatique incurs an extra €160 per hour because this external supplier is used (€360 external purchase price per hour minus the €200 internal variable costs per hour) instead of its own Central Computer Department.

When the dual-rate method is used, allocation bases for each different subcost pool must be chosen. Assume that the budgeted rates are used. The allocation quantities chosen are budgeted usage for fixed costs and actual usage for variable costs. The total budgeted usage of 1200 hours comprises 800 hours for the Microcomputer Division and 400 hours for the Peripheral Equipment Division. The costs allocated to the Microcomputer Division would be as follows:

Fixed-cost function:		
(800 hours ÷ 1200 hours) × €300 000	€200 000	per year
Variable-cost function	€200	per hour used

The costs allocated to the Peripheral Equipment Division would be:

Fixed-cost function:		
(400 hours ÷ 1200 hours) × €300 000	€100 000	per year
Variable-cost function	€200	per hour used

Assume now that during the coming year the Microcomputer Division actually uses 900 hours but the Peripheral Equipment Division uses only 300 hours. The costs allocated to these two divisions would be computed as follows:

Under the single-rate method

Microcomputer Division	$900 \times €450 = €405\,000$
Peripheral Equipment Division	$300 \times €450 = €135\,000$

Under the dual-rate method

Microcomputer Division	$€200\,000 + (900 \times €200) = €380\,000$
Peripheral Equipment Division	$€100\,000 + (300 \times €200) = €160\,000$

One obvious benefit of using the single-rate method is the low cost of implementation. It avoids the often expensive analysis necessary to classify the individual cost items of a department into fixed and variable categories. However, a single-rate method may lead divisions to take actions that appear to be in their own best interest but are not in the best interest of the organisation as a whole.

An important benefit of the dual-rate method is that it signals to division managers how variable costs and fixed costs behave differently. This important information could steer division managers into making decisions that benefit the corporation as well as each division. For example, it would signal that using a third-party computer supplier who charges more than €200 per hour could result in Fontaine Informatique's being worse off than if it had used its own Central Computer Department, which has a variable cost of €200 per hour.

Budgeted versus actual rates

The decision whether to use budgeted cost rates or actual cost rates affects the level of uncertainty that user departments face. Budgeted rates let the user departments know the cost rates they will be charged in advance. Users are then better equipped to determine the amount of the service to request and, if the option exists, whether to use the internal department source or an external supplier. In contrast, when actual rates are used, the user department will not know the rates charged until the end of the period.

Budgeted rates also help motivate the manager of the support department (for example, the Central Computer Department) to improve efficiency. During the budget period, the support department, not the user departments, bears the risk of any unfavourable cost variances. Why? Because the user department does not pay for any costs that exceed the budgeted rates. The manager of the support department would probably view this as a disadvantage of using budgeted rates, especially when unfavourable cost variances occur because of price increases outside the department's control.

Some organisations recognise that it may not always be best to impose all the risks of variances from budgeted amounts completely on the support department (as when costs are allocated using budgeted rates) or completely on the user departments (as when costs are allocated using actual rates). For example, the two departments may agree to share the risk (through an explicit formula) of a large, uncontrollable increase in the price of materials used by the support department.

Budgeted versus actual usage allocation bases

The choice between actual usage and budgeted usage for allocating department fixed costs can also affect a manager's behaviour. Consider the budget of €300 000 fixed costs at the Central Computer Department of Fontaine Informatique. Assume that actual and budgeted fixed costs are equal. Assume also that the actual usage by the Microcomputer Division is always equal to the budgeted usage. We now look at the effect on allocating the €300 000 in total fixed costs when actual usage by the Peripheral Equipment Division equals (case 1), is greater than (case 2) and is less than (case 3) the budgeted usage. Recall that the budgeted usage is 800 hours for the Microcomputer Division and 400 hours for the Peripheral Equipment Division. Exhibit 5.4 presents the allocation of total fixed costs of €300 000 to each division for these three cases.

Exhibit 5.4 Effect of variations in actual usage on departmental cost allocations

	Actual usage		Budgeted usage as allocation base		Actual usage as allocation base	
Case	Microcomputer Division	Peripheral Equipment Division	Microcomputer Division	Peripheral Equipment Division	Microcomputer Division	Peripheral Equipment Division
1	800 hours	400 hours	€200 000*	€100 000†	€200 000*	€100 000†
2	800 hours	700 hours	€200 000*	€100 000†	€160 000‡	€140 000‖
3	800 hours	200 hours	€200 000*	€100 000†	€240 000§	€60 000#

* $\frac{800}{800 + 400} \times €300\,000$ † $\frac{400}{800 + 400} \times €300\,000$ ‡ $\frac{700}{800 + 700} \times €300\,000$

§ $\frac{800}{800 + 200} \times €300\,000$ ‖ $\frac{700}{800 + 700} \times €300\,000$ # $\frac{200}{800 + 200} \times €300\,000$

In case 1, the fixed-cost allocation equals the expected amount. In case 2, the fixed-cost allocation is €40 000 less to the Microcomputer Division than expected (€160 000 vs €200 000). In case 3, the fixed-cost allocation is €40 000 more than expected (€240 000 vs €200 000). Consider case 3. Why is there an increase of €40 000 even though the Microcomputer Division's actual and budgeted usage are exactly equal? Because the fixed costs are spread over fewer hours of usage. Variations in usage in another division will affect the fixed costs allocated to the Microcomputer Division when fixed costs are allocated on the basis of actual usage. When actual usage is the allocation base, user divisions will not know how much cost is allocated to them until the end of the budget period.

When budgeted usage is the allocation base, user divisions will know their allocated costs in advance. This information helps the user divisions with both short-run and long-run planning. The main justification given for the use of budgeted usage to allocate fixed costs relates to long-range planning. Organisations commit to infrastructure costs (such as the fixed costs of a support department) on the basis of a long-range planning horizon; the use of budgeted usage to allocate these fixed costs is consistent with this long-range horizon.

If fixed costs are allocated on the basis of estimated long-run use, some managers may be tempted to underestimate their planned usage. In this way, they will bear a lower fraction of the total costs (assuming all other managers do not similarly underestimate). Some organisations offer rewards in the form of salary increases and promotions to managers who make accurate forecasts of long-range usage. (This is the 'carrot' approach.) Alternatively, some organisations impose cost penalties for underpredicting long-range usage. For instance, a higher cost rate may be charged after a division exceeds its budgeted usage. (This is the 'stick' approach.) It is often the case that a business unit within a large enterprise establishes a final budget for the following year which looks a lot like the one its managers proposed at the beginning of the budget-setting process and which is not much different from the actual performance for the previous year. The reason for this is that managers often get 'anchored'. Lovallo and Sibony (2014) explain that 'anchoring' is a well-known psychological bias whereby one piece of information sticks in one's mind and influences interpretation of subsequent information, even if one is unaware of it. They state that 'In the case of budgeting, getting stuck in the same numbers from year to year is almost unavoidable.' In 2017, Richard Thaler won the Nobel Prize in economics for showing how heavily economic decisions are influenced by cognitive biases. His 'theory of mental accounting' suggests that people making financial decisions really only look at the narrow effect of individual decisions, rather than the whole effect (Vitasek, 2017). So executives who think they are rational actors who maximise utility should be treated with suspicion!

Allocating costs of support departments

Operating departments and support departments

Many organisations distinguish between operating departments and support departments. An **operating department** (also called a **production department**) adds value to a product or service that is observable by a customer. A **support department** (also called a **service department**) provides the services that maintain other internal departments (operating departments and other support departments) in the organisation. Support departments at Fontaine Informatique include the Legal Department and the Personnel Department at corporate headquarters.

Support departments create special accounting problems when they provide reciprocal support to each other as well as support to operating departments. An example of reciprocal support at Fontaine Informatique would be the Legal Department's providing services to the Personnel Department (such as advice on compliance with employment law) and the Personnel Department's providing support to the Legal Department (such as advice about the hiring of solicitors and secretaries). To obtain accurate product, service and customer costs at Fontaine Informatique requires inclusion of support department costs as well as operating department costs. More accurate support department cost allocations results in more accurate product, service and customer costs.

Be cautious here for several reasons. First, organisations differ in the departments located at the corporate and division levels. Some departments located at corporate headquarters of Fontaine Informatique (for example, R&D) are located at the division level in other organisations. Second, organisations differ in their definitions of *operating department and support department*. Always try to ascertain the precise meaning of these terms when analysing data that include allocations of operating department costs and support department costs. Third, organisations differ in the percentage of total support costs allocated using the methods described in this section. Some companies allocate all support department costs using one of the methods outlined below. Other companies only allocate *indirect* support department costs using these methods, with all *direct* support costs traced to the appropriate operating department.

Support department cost-allocation methods

We now examine three methods of allocating the costs of support departments: *direct, step-down* and *reciprocal*. To focus on concepts, we use the single-rate method to allocate the costs of each support department.

Consider Honnigsvåg, AS, which manufactures engines used in electric power generating plants. Honnigsvåg has two support departments (Plant Maintenance and Information Systems) and two operating departments (Machining and Assembly) in its manufacturing facility. Costs are accumulated in each department for planning and control purposes. For stock costing, however, the support department costs of Honnigsvåg must be allocated to the operating departments. The data for our example are listed in Exhibit 5.5. The percentages in this table can be illustrated by reference to the Plant Maintenance Department. This support department provides a total of 8000 hours of support work: 20% (1600 ÷ 8000) goes to the Information Systems support department; 30% (2400 ÷ 8000) to the Machining Department; and 50% (4000 ÷ 8000) to the Assembly Department.

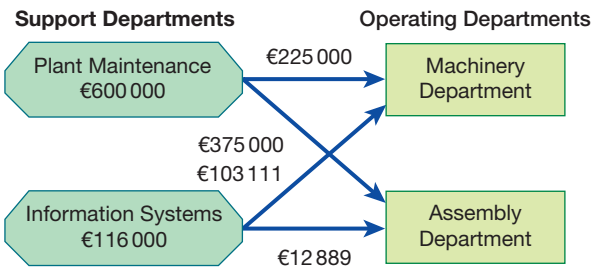
Direct allocation method

The **direct allocation method** (often called the **direct method**) is the most widely used method of allocating support department costs. This method allocates each support department's costs directly to the operating departments. Exhibit 5.6 illustrates this method using the data in Exhibit 5.5. Note how this method ignores both the 1600 hours of support time rendered by

Exhibit 5.5 Data for allocating support department costs at Honnigsvåg for 2022

	Support departments		Operating departments		
	Plant Maintenance	Information Systems	Machining	Assembly	Total
Budgeted manufacturing overhead costs before any interdepartment cost allocations	€600 000	€116 000	€400 000	€200 000	€1 316 000
Support work furnished					
By Plant Maintenance					
Budgeted labour-hours	–	1600	2400	4000	8000
Percentage	–	20%	30%	50%	100%
By Information Systems					
Budgeted computer time	200	–	1 600	200	2 000
Percentage	10%	–	80%	10%	100%

Exhibit 5.6 Direct method of allocating support department costs at Honnigsvåg for 2022



	Support departments		Operating departments		
	Plant Maintenance	Information Systems	Machining	Assembly	Total
Budgeted manufacturing overhead costs before any interdepartment cost allocations	€600 000	€116 000	€400 000	€200 000	€1 316 000
Allocation of Plant Maintenance $\left(\frac{3}{8}, \frac{5}{8}\right)$*	(600 000)		225 000	375 000	
	€0				
Allocation of Information Systems $\left(\frac{8}{9}, \frac{1}{9}\right)$†		(116 000)	103 111	12 889	
		€0			
Total budgeted manufacturing overhead of operating departments			€728 111	€587 889	€1 316 000

* Base is (2400 + 4000), or 6400 hours; 2400 ÷ 6400 = $\frac{3}{8}$; 4000 ÷ 6400 = $\frac{5}{8}$.

† Base is (1600 + 200), or 1800 hours; 1600 ÷ 1800 = $\frac{8}{9}$; 200 ÷ 1800 = $\frac{1}{9}$.

the Plant Maintenance Department to the Information Systems Department and the 200 hours of support time rendered by Information Systems to Plant Maintenance. The base used to allocate Plant Maintenance is the budgeted total maintenance labour-hours worked in the operating departments: 2400 + 4000 = 6400 hours. This amount excludes the 1600 hours of support time provided by Plant Maintenance to Information Systems. Similarly, the base used for allocation of Information Systems costs is 1600 + 200 = 1800 hours of computer time, which excludes the 200 hours of support time provided by Information Systems to Plant Maintenance.

The benefit of the direct method is its simplicity. There is no need to predict the usage of support department resources by other support departments.

Step-down allocation method

Some organisations use the **step-down allocation method** (sometimes called the **step allocation method** or **sequential allocation method**), which allows for *partial* recognition of the services rendered by support departments to other support departments. This method requires the support departments to be ranked (sequenced) in the order in which the step-down allocation is to proceed. The costs in the first-ranked support department are allocated to the other support departments and to the operating departments. The costs in the second-ranked department are allocated to those support departments not yet allocated and to the operating departments. This procedure is followed until the costs in the last-ranked support department have been allocated to the operating departments. Two ways to determine the sequence to allocate support department costs are as follows:

Approach A Rank support departments on the percentage of the support department's total support provided to other support departments. The support department with the highest percentage is allocated first. The support department with the lowest percentage is allocated last. In our Honnigsvåg example, the chosen order would be:

	Percentage of total service provided to other support departments
1 Plant Maintenance	20%
2 Information Systems	10%

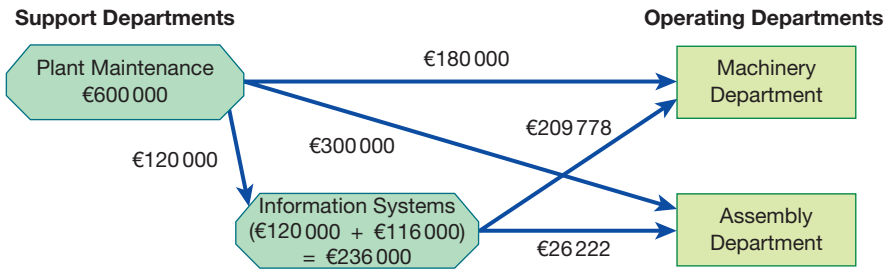
Approach B Rank support departments on the total euros of service provided to other support departments. In our Honnigsvåg example, the chosen order would be:

	Euro amount of total service provided to other support departments
1 Plant Maintenance (0.20 × €600 000)	€120 000
2 Information Systems (0.10 × €116 000)	€11 600

Exhibit 5.7 shows the step-down method where the Plant Maintenance cost of €600 000 is allocated first; €120 000 is allocated to Information Systems (20% of €600 000); €180 000 to Machining (30% of €600 000); and €300 000 to Assembly (50% of €600 000). The costs in Information Systems now total €236 000 (€116 000 + €120 000 from the first-round allocation). This €236 000 amount is then allocated among the two operating departments: €209 778 ($\frac{8}{9}$ × €236 000) to Machining and €26 222 ($\frac{1}{9}$ × €236 000) to Assembly.

Under the step-down method, once a support department's costs have been allocated, no subsequent support department costs are allocated or circulated back to it. Thus, once the Plant Maintenance Department costs are allocated, they receive no further allocation from other (lower-ranked) support departments.

Exhibit 5.7 Step-down method of allocating support department costs at Honnigsvåg for 2022



	Support departments		Operating departments		
	Plant Maintenance	Information Systems	Machining	Assembly	Total
Budgeted manufacturing overhead costs before any interdepartment cost allocations	€600 000	€116 000	€400 000	€200 000	€1 316 000
Allocation of Plant Maintenance $\left(\frac{2}{10}, \frac{3}{10}, \frac{5}{10}\right)$*	(600 000)	120 000	180 000	300 000	
	€0	236 000			
Allocation of Information Systems $\left(\frac{8}{9}, \frac{1}{9}\right)$†		(236 000)	209 778	26 222	
		€0			
Total budgeted manufacturing overhead of operating departments			€789 778	€526 222	€1 316 000

*Base is (1600 + 2400 + 4000),or 8000 hours; 1600 ÷ 8000 = $\frac{2}{10}$; 2400 ÷ 8000 = $\frac{3}{10}$; 4000 ÷ 8000 = $\frac{5}{10}$.

†Base is (1600 + 200),or 1800 hours; 1600 ÷ 1800 = $\frac{8}{9}$; 200 ÷ 1800 = $\frac{1}{9}$.

Reciprocal allocation method

The **reciprocal allocation method** allocates costs by explicitly including the mutual services provided among all support departments. Theoretically, the direct method and the step-down method are less accurate when support departments provide services to one another reciprocally. For example, the Plant Maintenance Department maintains all the computer equipment in the Information Systems Department. Similarly, Information Systems provides database support for Plant Maintenance. The reciprocal allocation method enables us to incorporate interdepartmental relationships *fully* into the support department cost allocations. That is, Plant Maintenance is allocated to Information Systems and Information Systems is allocated to Plant Maintenance; each is allocated to the operating departments as well. Implementing the reciprocal allocation method requires three steps.

Step 1 Express support department costs and reciprocal relationships in linear equation form. Let PM be the *complete reciprocated costs* of Plant Maintenance and let IS be the complete reciprocated costs of Information Systems. We then express the data in Exhibit 5.5 as follows:

$$\text{PM} = €600\,000 + 0.1\text{IS} \quad (1)$$

$$\text{IS} = €116\,000 + 0.2\text{PM} \quad (2)$$

The 0.1IS term in equation (1) is the percentage of the Information Systems work used by Plant Maintenance. The 0.2PM term in equation (2) is the percentage of the Plant Maintenance work used by Information Systems.

By **complete reciprocated cost** in equations (1) and (2), we mean the actual costs incurred by a support department plus a part of the costs of the other support departments that provide service to it. This complete reciprocated costs figure is sometimes called the **artificial costs** of the support department; it is always larger than the actual costs.

Step 2 Solve the set of simultaneous equations to obtain the complete reciprocated costs of each support department. Where there are two support departments, the following substitution approach can be used. Substituting equation (2) into equation (1),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{PM} &= €600\,000 + [0.1(€116\,000 + 0.2\text{PM})] \\ &= €600\,000 + €11\,600 + 0.02\text{PM} \\ 0.98\text{PM} &= €611\,600 \\ \therefore\ \text{PM} &= €624\,082 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting into equation (2),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{IS} &= €116\,000 + 0.2(€624\,082) \\ &= €240\,816 \end{aligned}$$

Where there are more than two support departments with reciprocal relationships, computer programs can be used to calculate the complete reciprocated costs of each support department.

Step 3 Allocate the complete reciprocated costs of each support department to all other departments (both support and operating departments) on the basis of the usage proportions (based on total units of service provided to all departments). Consider the Information Systems Department, which has a complete reciprocated cost of €240 816. This amount would be allocated as follows:

To Plant Maintenance $(\frac{1}{10} \times €240\,816)$	€24 082
To Machining $(\frac{8}{10} \times €240\,816)$	192 653
To Assembly $(\frac{1}{10} \times €240\,816)$	24 082
Total	€240 817

Exhibit 5.8 presents summary data pertaining to the reciprocal method.

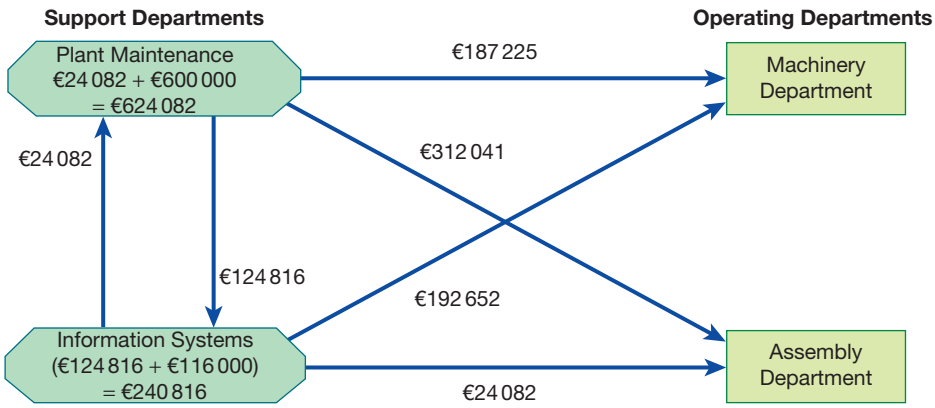
One source of confusion to some managers using the reciprocal cost-allocation method is why the complete reciprocated costs of the support departments, €864 898 (€624 082 and €240 816 in Exhibit 5.8), exceed their budgeted amount of €716 000 (€600 000 and €116 000 in Exhibit 5.5). The excess of €148 898 (€24 082 for Plant Maintenance and €124 816 for Information Systems) is the total costs that are allocated among support departments. The total costs allocated to the operating departments under the reciprocal allocation method are still only €716 000.

Overview of methods

Assume that the total budgeted overhead costs of each operating department in the example in Exhibits 5.6 to 5.8 are allocated to individual products on the basis of budgeted machine-hours for the Machining Department (4000 hours) and budgeted direct labour-hours for the Assembly Department (3000 hours). The budgeted overhead allocation rates associated with each support department allocation method (rounded to the nearest euro) are set out in Exhibit 5.9.

These differences in budgeted overhead rates with alternative support department cost-allocation methods can be important to managers. For example, consider a cost-reimbursement

Exhibit 5.8 Reciprocal method of allocating support department costs at Honnigsvåg for 2022



	Support departments		Operating departments		
	Plant Maintenance	Information Systems	Machining	Assembly	Total
Budgeted manufacturing overhead costs before any interdepartment cost allocations	€600 000	€116 000	€400 000	€200 000	€1 316 000
Allocation of Plant Maintenance $\left(\frac{1}{10},\frac{8}{10},\frac{1}{10}\right)$*	(624 082)	124 816	187 225	312 041	
Allocation of Information Systems $\left(\frac{1}{10},\frac{8}{10},\frac{1}{10}\right)$†	24 082	(240 816)	192 652	24 082	
	€0	€0			
Total budgeted manufacturing overhead of operating departments			€779 877	€536 123	€1 316 000

*Base is $(1600 + 2400 + 4000)$, or 8000 hours; $1600 \div 8000 = \frac{2}{10}$; $2400 \div 8000 = \frac{3}{10}$; $4000 \div 8000 = \frac{5}{10}$.

†Base is $(200 + 1600 + 200)$, or 2000 hours; $200 \div 2000 = \frac{1}{10}$; $1600 \div 2000 = \frac{8}{10}$; $200 \div 2000 = \frac{1}{10}$.

Exhibit 5.9 The budgeted overhead allocation rates associated with each support department allocation method

	Total budgeted overhead costs after allocation of all support department costs		Budgeted overhead rate per hour for product-costing purposes	
Support department cost-allocation method	Machining	Assembly	Machining (4000 machine-hours)	Assembly (3000 labour-hours)
Direct	€728 111	€587 889	€182	€196
Step-down	789 778	526 222	197	175
Reciprocal	779 877	536 123	195	179

contract that uses 100 machine-hours and 15 assembly labour-hours. The support department costs allocated to this contract would be:

Direct	€21 140	(€195 × 100 + €179 × 15)
Step-down	22 325	(€197 × 100 + €175 × 15)
Reciprocal	22 185	(€195 × 100 + €179 × 15)

Use of the step-down method would result in the highest cost reimbursement to the contractor.

The reciprocal method, while conceptually preferable, is not widely used. The advantage of the direct and step-down methods is that they are relatively simple to calculate and understand. However, with the ready availability of computer software to solve sets of simultaneous equations, the extra costs of using the reciprocal method will, in most cases, be minimal. The more likely obstacles to the reciprocal method's being widely adopted are: (1) many managers find it difficult to understand, and (2) the numbers obtained by using the reciprocal method differ little (in some cases) from those obtained by using the direct or step-down method. In the UK, the direct method is the most widespread.

Allocating common costs

We next consider two methods used to allocate **common costs**. A common cost is a cost of operating a facility, operation, activity or other cost object that is shared by two or more users. Consider Emma O'Shea, a third-year undergraduate student in Galway who has been invited to an interview with an employer in Moscow. The round-trip Galway–Moscow airfare costs €1200. A week prior to leaving, O'Shea is also invited to an interview with an employer in Prague. The round-trip Galway–Prague airfare costs €800. O'Shea decides to combine the two recruiting steps into a Galway–Moscow–Prague trip that will cost €1500 in airfare. The €1500 is a common cost that benefits both employers. Two methods for allocating this common cost between the two potential employers are now discussed: the stand-alone method and the incremental method.

Stand-alone cost-allocation method

The **stand-alone cost-allocation method** uses information pertaining to each cost object as a separate operating entity to determine the cost-allocation weights. For the airfare common cost of €1500, information about the separate (stand-alone) return airfares (€1200 and €800) is used to determine the allocation weights:

$$\text{Moscow employer: } \frac{€1200}{€1200 + €800} \times €1500 = 0.60 \times €1500 = €900$$

$$\text{Prague employer: } \frac{€800}{€800 + €1200} \times €1500 = 0.40 \times €1500 = €600$$

Advocates of this method often emphasise an equity or fairness rationale. That is, fairness occurs because each employer bears a proportionate share of total costs in relation to their individual stand-alone costs.

Incremental cost-allocation method

The **incremental cost-allocation method** ranks the individual cost objects and then uses this ranking to allocate costs among those cost objects. The first-ranked cost object is termed the *primary party* and is allocated costs up to its cost as a stand-alone entity. The second-ranked cost object

is termed the *incremental party* and is allocated the additional cost that arises from there being two users instead of only the primary user. If there are more than two parties, the non-primary parties will need to be ranked.

Consider Emma O'Shea and her €1500 airfare cost. Assume that the Moscow employer is viewed as the primary party. O'Shea's rationale was that she had already committed to go to Moscow. The cost allocations would then be:

Party	Costs allocated	Costs remaining to be allocated to other parties
Moscow (primary)	€1200	€300 (€1500 − €1200)
Prague (incremental)	300	0

The Moscow employer is allocated the full Galway–Moscow airfare. The non-allocated part of the total airfare is allocated to the Prague employer. Had the Prague employer been chosen as the primary party, the cost allocations would have been Prague, €800 (the stand-alone Galway–Prague return airfare) and Moscow, €700 (€1500 − €800). Where there are more than two parties, this method requires them to be ranked and the common costs allocated to those parties in the ranked sequence.

Under the incremental method, the primary party typically receives the highest allocation of the common costs. Not surprisingly, most users in common cost situations propose themselves as the incremental party. In some cases, the incremental party is a newly formed 'organisation' such as a new product line or a new sales territory. Chances for its short-term survival may be enhanced if it bears a relatively low allocation of common costs.

A caution is appropriate here as regards O'Shea's cost-allocation options. Her chosen method must be acceptable to each prospective employer. Indeed, some prospective employers may have guidelines that recruiting candidates must follow. For example, the Moscow employer may have a policy that the maximum reimbursable airfare is a seven-day advance booking price in economy class. If this amount is less than the amount that O'Shea would receive under (say) the stand-alone method, then the employer's upper limit guideline would govern how much could be allocated to that interviewer. O'Shea should obtain approval before she purchases her ticket as to which cost-allocation method(s) each potential employer views as acceptable.

Cost-allocation bases and cost hierarchies

Companies make changes in their costing systems at varying degrees of regularity. The prompts to these changes vary. In some cases, it is a change in the operations (for example, an increase in automation or a change in the products manufactured). It can also be a change in information- gathering technology. Another prompt is a change in the products or services offered by competitors (for example, a competitor separately selling as individual products items that were previously sold as a bundle for a single price).

As companies change from labour-paced to machine-paced operations, they increase their use of machine-hours-related allocation bases. In **labour-paced operations**, worker dexterity and productivity determine the speed of production. Machines function as tools that aid production workers. Direct manufacturing labour costs or direct manufacturing labour-hours may still capture cause-and-effect relationships here, even if operations are highly automated. In contrast, in **machine-paced operations**, machines conduct most (or all) phases of production, such as movement of materials to the production line, assembly and other activities on the production line and shipment of finished goods to the delivery bay areas. Machine operators in such environments may simultaneously operate more than one machine. Workers focus their efforts on supervising the production line and general troubleshooting rather than on operating the machines. Computer specialists and industrial engineers guide the speed of production. In machine-paced operations, machine-hours will probably better capture cause-and-effect relationships than the direct labour-hours allocation base.

Consequences of an inappropriate allocation base

Cost figures play a key role in many important decisions. If these figures result from allocation bases that fail to capture cause-and-effect relationships, managers may make decisions that conflict with maximising long-run company net income. Consider the use of direct manufacturing labour costs as an allocation base in machine-paced manufacturing settings. In this environment, indirect-cost rates of 500% of direct manufacturing labour costs (or more) may be encountered. Thus, every €1 of indirect manufacturing labour costs has a €6 impact (€1 in direct costs + 500% per €1 in indirect costs) on reported product costs. Possible negative consequences include the following points:

1 Product managers may make excessive use of external suppliers for parts that have a high direct manufacturing labour content.

2 Manufacturing managers may pay excessive attention to controlling direct manufacturing labour-hours relative to the attention paid to controlling the more costly categories of materials and machining. By eliminating €1 of direct manufacturing labour costs when the indirect-cost rate is 500% of these costs, €6 of reported product cost can be eliminated. When the indirect-cost rate is 500% of these costs, managers can control much of the accounting amounts allocated to products by controlling direct labour use. However, this action does not control the larger materials and machining costs actually incurred.

3 Managers may attempt to classify shop-floor personnel as indirect labour rather than as direct labour. As a result, part of these labour costs will be allocated (inappropriately) to other products.

4 Products may be under- or overcosted. The danger then arises that a company will push to gain market share on products that it believes are profitable when in fact they are unprofitable. Similarly, the company may neglect products that are profitable because it believes they are unprofitable.

Cost drivers and allocation bases

When a cause-and-effect criterion is used, the chosen allocation bases are cost drivers. Because a change in the level of a cost driver causes a change in the total cost of a related cost object, the use of cost drivers as allocation bases increases the accuracy of reported product costs. However, not all chosen cost-allocation bases are cost drivers. Consider the following reasons for using bases that are not cost drivers.

1 Improving the accuracy of individual product costs may be less important to a company than other goals. Think about the goal of restraining the growth in headcount (the number of employees on a company's payroll). Several Japanese companies use direct manufacturing labour-hours as the cost-allocation base, while acknowledging that such labour-hours are not the most important driver of their manufacturing overhead costs. The purpose of this choice is to send a clear signal to all managers that reduction in headcount is a key goal.

   Managers may also prefer direct manufacturing labour-hours as an allocation base so as to promote increased levels of automation. Using this allocation base, product designers are motivated to decrease the direct manufacturing labour content of the products they design. Management may view increased automation as a strategic necessity to remain competitive in the long run.

2 Information about cost-driver variables may not be reliably measured on an ongoing basis. For example, managers often view the number of machine set-ups as a driver of indirect manufacturing costs, but some companies do not systematically record this information.

3 Accounting systems with many indirect-cost pools and allocation bases are more expensive to use than systems with few cost pools and allocation bases. The investment required to develop

and implement a system with many indirect-cost pools – and to educate users about it – can be sizeable. Unfortunately, some firms place a low priority on investments in their internal accounting systems, given that the benefits from such investments are frequently difficult to quantify.

Cost assignment and cost hierarchies

One extreme approach to cost assignment is to fully assign every cost to each individual unit of a product or service. There is growing interest in *cost hierarchy* systems that stop short of this full assignment of costs. A cost hierarchy is a categorisation of costs into different cost pools on the basis of either different classes of cost drivers or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect relationships. Not all costs in a cost hierarchy are driven by unit-level product or unit-level service-related variables. Four levels of costs in the product-based cost hierarchy are: (1) output unit-level costs, (2) batch-level costs, (3) product-sustaining costs, and (4) facility-sustaining costs. Activity-based costing systems (see Chapter 11) often differentiate these four levels.

Is the product-costing system broken?

A student knows when a smartphone no longer works. A driver knows when a motor vehicle no longer starts. The failure of many products is easy to detect and sometimes, so is the cause. The breakdown of a product-costing system is less easy. But an enterprise's environment can send signals about the inadequacy of a costing system in use. Some firms receive, over time, many signals which collectively flag the need for a rigorous review of the accounting system. The following four questions can be posed:

1. Can managers easily explain changes in profit margins from one period to the next?
2. Can managers easily explain why their bids for business are successful or unsuccessful?
3. Does the costing system have a small number of cost pools, and are the items in each cost pool heterogeneous?
4. Are competitors pricing their high-volume products at prices substantially lower than our cost figures for similar products?

No to questions 1 and 2 and yes to questions 3 and 4 are warning responses to the overall question of whether a product-costing system is broken. An individual company that gives such red-flag responses to all four of these questions should quickly examine whether its existing costing system needs to be changed.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. A *cost object* is anything for which a separate measurement of costs is desired. Costing systems in organisations have multiple cost objects (departments, products, services and customers), meaning many individual costs are allocated and reallocated several times before becoming an indirect cost of a specific cost object.
2. The four purposes of cost allocation are to provide information for economic decisions, to motivate managers and employees, to justify costs or calculate reimbursement and to measure income and assets for meeting external regulatory and legal reporting obligations. Different cost allocations may be appropriate depending on the specific purpose.
3. A cost pool is a grouping of individual cost items. Two key decisions related to indirect-cost pools are the number of indirect-cost pools and the allowability of individual cost items to be included in those cost pools.

4 A single-rate cost-allocation method pools all costs in one cost pool and allocates them to cost objects using the same rate per unit of the single allocation base. In the dual-rate method, costs are grouped in two separate cost pools, each of which has a different allocation rate and which may have a different allocation base.

5 When cost allocations are made using budgeted rates, managers of divisions to which costs are allocated face no uncertainty about the rates to be used in that period. In contrast, when actual rates are used for cost allocation, managers do not know the rates to be used until the end of the accounting period.

6 The three main methods of allocating support department costs to operating departments are the direct, step-down and reciprocal. The direct method ignores any reciprocal support among support departments. The step-down method allows for partial recognition while the reciprocal method provides full recognition of support among support departments.

7 Common costs are the costs of operating a facility, operation or activity area that are shared by two or more users. The stand-alone cost-allocation method uses information pertaining to each operating entity to determine how to allocate the common costs. The incremental cost-allocation method ranks cost objects and allocates common costs first to the primary cost object and then to the other remaining (incremental) cost objects.

8 The use of an inappropriate cost allocation base can cause products to be manufactured less efficiently, management to be misfocused and products to be mispriced in the marketplace.

9 There is growing interest in cost hierarchies, which are categorisations of costs into different cost pools based on either different classes of cost drivers or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect relationships.

References and further reading

Deloitte (2022) 'Why do so many organisations struggle with cost allocation?' (https://www2.deloitte.com/ch/en/pages/financial-advisory/articles/why-organisations-struggle-cost-allocation.html)

Fried, C. (28 March 2018).' 'Behavioral Economics: Are Nudges Cost-Effective?' (https://anderson-review.ucla.edu/nudge-worth/).

Lock, M. and Dimond, N. (2021) 'Why do so many organisations struggle with cost allocation?' (https://www2.deloitte.com/ch/en/pages/financial-advisory/articles/why-organisations-struggle-cost-allocation.html)

Lovallo, D. and Sibony, O. (2014) 'Is your budget process stuck on last year's numbers?' McKinsey & Company (https://www.mckinsey.com/business-functions/strategy-and-corporate-finance/our-insights/is-your-budget-process-stuck-on-last-years-numbers)

Vitasek, K. (2017) 'Richard Thaler and the "human factor" in economics', Forbes, 10 October (https://www.forbes.com/sites/katevitasek/2017/10/10/richard-thaler-and-the-human-factor-in-economics/?sh=2bc11ca41b56)

CHAPTER 5

Assessment material

Review questions

5.1 Why might the classification of a cost as a direct cost or an indirect cost of a cost object change over time?

5.2 How can an individual cost item, such as the salary of a plant security guard, be both a direct cost and an indirect cost at the same time?

5.3 A given cost may be allocated for one or more purposes. List four purposes.

5.4 How do cost–benefit considerations affect choices by a company about the allocation of indirect costs to products, services or customers?

5.5 Distinguish among the three methods of allocating the costs of service departments to production departments.

5.6 Distinguish between two methods of allocating common costs.

5.7 Different costs for different purposes means that a cost allocated for one purpose is not allocated for another purpose. Do you agree?

5.8 Why is the distinction between labour-paced and machine-paced operations important when selecting indirect-cost allocation bases?

5.9 Describe two consequences of using direct manufacturing labour-hours as an allocation base in a machine-paced work environment.

Exercises

Basic level

5.10 **Alternative allocation bases for a professional services firm** (15 minutes)

Germinal et Associés provides tax advice to multinational firms. Germinal charges clients for (a) direct professional time (at an hourly rate) and (b) support services (at 30% of the direct professional costs billed). The three professionals in Germinal and their rates per hour are:

Professional	Billing rate per hour
Thérèse Raquin	€500
Jeanne Rozerot	120
Claude Bernard	80

Germinal has just prepared the May 2022 bills for two clients. The hours spent on each client are as follows:

	Hours per client	
Professional	Fortune Plassans	Au Bonheur des Dames
Raquin	15	2
Rozerot	3	8
Bernard	22	30
Total	40	40

Required

1. What amounts did Germinal bill to Fortune Plassans and Au Bonheur des Dames for May 2022?
2. Suppose support services were billed at €50 per labour-hour (instead of 30% of labour costs). How would this change affect the amounts Germinal billed to the two clients for May 2022? Comment on the differences between the amounts billed in requirements 1 and 2.
3. How would you determine whether labour costs or labour-hours is the more appropriate allocation base for Germinal's support services?

*5.11 Cost allocation, use of a separate machining cost pool category (10 minutes)

Azu-Cena Ltda is a manufacturer of motorcycles. Production and cost data for 2022 are as follows:

	500 cc model	1000 cc model
Units produced	10 000	20 000
Direct manufacturing labour-hours per unit	2	4
Machine-hours per unit	8	8

A single cost pool is used for manufacturing overhead. For 2022, manufacturing overhead was €6.4 million. Azu-Cena allocates manufacturing overhead costs to products on the basis of direct manufacturing labour-hours per unit.

Azu-Cena's accountant now proposes that two separate pools be used for manufacturing overhead costs:

- Machining cost pool (€3.6 million in 2022)
- General plant overhead cost pool (€2.8 million in 2022).

Machining costs are to be allocated using machine-hours per unit. General plant overhead costs are to be allocated using direct manufacturing labour-hours per unit.

Required

1. Calculate the overhead costs allocated per unit to each model of motorcycle in 2022 using the current single-cost-pool approach of Azu-Cena.
2. Calculate the machining costs and general plant overhead costs allocated per unit to each model of motorcycle assuming that the accountant's proposal for two separate cost pools is used in 2022.
3. What benefits might arise from the accountant's proposal for separate pools for machining costs and general plant costs?

5.12 Cost allocation with a non-financial variable, retailing (15–20 minutes)

Jyvaskyla Oy is a retail chain of supermarkets. For many years, it has used gross margin (selling price minus cost of goods sold) to guide it in deciding on which products to emphasise or de-emphasise. And, for many years, it has not allocated any costs to products. It changed its internal

reporting system recently and goods-handling costs are now allocated to individual products on the basis of cubic volume. (Most products are delivered to the shelves in cartons. A detailed study showed that cubic volume was the major driver of Jyvaskyla's goods-handling costs. These costs make up over 30% of non-cost-of-goods-sold costs of Jyvaskyla.) The following data focus on four products in April 2022:

Product	Revenue per carton	Cost of goods purchased per carton	Volume (cubic metres)
Breakfast cereal	€82	€56	24
Dairy product	64	52	12
Paper towels	36	26	24
Toothpaste	100	74	12

Each supermarket has a weekly report on product contribution:

Revenue	€	R
Cost of goods sold		C
Gross margin (GM)		R – C
Goods-handling costs		D
Product contribution (PC)	€	GM – D

The April 2022 goods-handling cost allocation rate is €0.50 per cubic metre.

Required

1 Calculate the gross margin for each of the four products. Rank these four products using their gross margin percentage.

2 Calculate the product contribution for each of the four products. Rank these four products using the product contribution to revenue percentage.

3 Compare your ranking in requirement 2 with that in requirement 1. How is the requirement 2 analysis useful to Jyvaskyla management?

Intermediate level

5.13 Cost allocation in centres, alternative allocation criteria (15–20 minutes)

Brian McGarrigle went to Les Arcs for his annual winter vacation. Unfortunately, he suffered a broken ankle while skiing and had to spend two days at the Hôpital de Grasse. McGarrigle's insurance company received a €4800 bill for his two-day stay. One item that caught McGarrigle's eye was an €11.52 charge for a roll of cotton wool. McGarrigle was a salesman for Boots and knew that the cost to the centre of the roll of cotton wool would be in the €2.20 to €3.00 range. He asked for a breakdown of how the €11.52 charge was derived. The accounting office of the centre sent him the following information:

a	Invoiced cost of cotton wool roll	€2.40
b	Processing of paperwork for purchase	0.60
c	Supplies room management fee	0.70
d	Operating-room and patient-room handling charge	1.60
e	Administrative centre costs	1.10
f	University teaching-related recoupment	0.60
g	Malpractice insurance costs	1.20
h	Cost of treating uninsured patients	2.72
i	Profit component	0.60
	Total	€11.52

McGarrigle believes the overhead charge is excessive. He comments, 'There was nothing I could do about it. When they come in and dab your stitches, it's not as if you can say, "Keep your cotton wool. I've brought my own."'

Required

1 Calculate the overhead rate Hôpital de Grasse charged on the cotton wool.

2 What criteria might Hôpital de Grasse use to justify allocation of each of the overhead items b to i in the preceding list? Examine each item separately and use the allocation criteria listed in Exhibit 5.2 in your answer.

3 What should McGarrigle do about the €11.52 charge for the cotton wool?

*5.14 Single-rate versus dual-rate cost-allocation methods (15–20 minutes)

Alxenor SA has a power plant designed and built to serve its three factories. Data for 2022 are as follows:

	Usage in kilowatt-hours	
Factory	Budget	Actual
Kifisia	100 000	80 000
Iraklion	60 000	120 000
Chalandri	40 000	40 000

Actual fixed costs of the power plant were €1 million in 2022; actual variable costs, €2 million.

Required

1 Calculate the amount of power costs that would be allocated to Iraklion using a single-rate method.

2 Calculate the amount of power costs that would be allocated to Iraklion using a dual-rate method.

5.15 Single-rate versus dual-rate allocation methods, support department (20 minutes)

The Fredensborg power plant that services all manufacturing departments of Fabri-Danmark AS has a budget for the coming year. This budget has been expressed in the following terms on a monthly basis:

Manufacturing departments	Needed at practical capacity production level* (kilowatt-hours)	Average expected monthly usage (kilowatt-hours)
Roskilde	10 000	8 000
Køge	20 000	9 000
Nysted	12 000	7 000
Ålborg	8 000	6 000
Totals	50 000	30 000

* This factor was the most influential in planning the size of the power plant.

The expected monthly costs for operating the department during the budget year are DKr 15 000: DKr 6000 variable and DKr 9000 fixed.

Required

1 Assume that a single cost pool is used for the power plant costs. What Danish krone amounts will be allocated to each manufacturing department? Use (a) practical capacity and (b) average expected monthly usage as the allocation bases.

2 Assume a dual-rate method; separate cost pools for the variable and fixed costs are used. Variable costs are allocated on the basis of expected monthly usage. Fixed costs are allocated on the basis of practical capacity. What Danish krone amounts will be allocated to each manufacturing department? Why might you prefer the dual-rate method?

5.16 **Allocation of common costs** (20–30 minutes)

Rolf, Ilse and Ulrich are members of the Frankfurt Fire Brigade. They share an apartment that has a lounge with the latest wide-screen TV. Ulrich owns the apartment, its furniture and the wide-screen TV. He can subscribe to a cable television company that has the following packages available:

Package	Rate per month
A Basic news	€32
B Premium movies	25
C Premium sport	30
D Basic news and premium movies	50
E Basic news and premium sport	54
F Premium movies and premium sport	48
G Basic news, premium movies and premium sport	70

Rolf is a TV news addict, has average interest in movies and no interest in sport ('they are overpaid dummies'). Ilse is a movie buff, likes sport and avoids the news ('it's all depressing anyway'). Ulrich is a sports fan, has average interest in news and no interest in movies ('I always fall asleep before the end'). They all agree that the purchase of the €70 total package is a 'win-win-win' situation.

Each works on a different eight-hour shift at the fire station, so conflicts in viewing are minimal.

Required

1 What criteria might be used to guide the choice about how to allocate the €70 monthly cable fee among Rolf, Ilse and Ulrich?

2 Outline two methods of allocating the €70 among Rolf, Ilse and Ulrich.

5.17 **Allocation of travel costs** (20 minutes)

Catherine MacDougall, a third-year undergraduate student at a university near Edinburgh, received an invitation to visit a prospective employer in Nice. A few days later, she received an invitation from a prospective employer in Copenhagen. She decided to combine her visits, travelling from Edinburgh to Nice, Nice to Copenhagen and Copenhagen to Edinburgh.

MacDougall received job offers from both companies. Upon her return, she decided to accept the offer in Copenhagen. She was puzzled about how to allocate her travel costs between the two employers. She gathered the following data:

Regular round-trip fares with no stopovers	
Edinburgh to Nice	£1400
Edinburgh to Copenhagen	£1100

MacDougall paid £1800 for her three-leg flight (Edinburgh to Nice, Nice to Copenhagen, Copenhagen to Edinburgh). In addition, she paid £30 for a taxi from her home to Edinburgh Airport and another £30 for a taxi from Edinburgh Airport to her home when she returned.

Required

1 How should MacDougall allocate the £1800 airfare between the employers in Nice and Copenhagen? Show the actual amounts you would allocate and give reasons for your allocations.

2 Repeat requirement 1 for the £60 taxi fares at the Edinburgh end of her travels.

5.18 Support department cost allocation; direct and step-down methods (30 minutes)

Olympiakos SA provides outsourcing services and advice to both government and corporate clients. For costing purposes, Olympiakos classifies its departments into two support departments (Administrative/Human Resources and Information Systems) and two operating departments (Government Consulting and Corporate Consulting). For the first quarter of 2022, Olympiakos incurs the following costs in its four departments:

Administrative/Human Resources (A/HR)	€600 000
Information Systems (IS)	€2 400 000
Government Consulting (GOVT)	€8 756 000
Corporate Consulting (CORP)	€12 452 000

The actual level of support relationships among the four departments for the first quarter of 2022 was:

			Used by		
		A/HR	IS	GOVT	CORP
Supplied	A/HR	–	25%	40%	35%
by	IS	10%	–	30%	60%

The Administrative/Human Resource support percentages are based on headcount. The Information Systems support percentages are based on actual hours of computer time used.

Required

1 Allocate the two support department costs to the two operating departments using the following methods:
   - **a** Direct method
   - **b** Step-down method (allocate Administrative/Human Resources first)
   - **c** Step-down method (allocate Information Systems first).

2 Compare and explain differences in the support department costs allocated to each operating department.

3 What criteria could determine the sequence for allocating support departments using the step-down method? What criterion should Olympiakos use if government consulting jobs require the step-down method?

5.19 Manufacturing cost allocation, use of a conversion cost pool category, automation (20–30 minutes)

Euro-Medi Plc manufactures a wide range of medical instruments. Two testing instruments (101 and 201) are produced at its highly automated Limerick plant. Data for December 2022 are as follows:

	Instrument 101	Instrument 201
Direct materials	€100 000	€300 000
Direct manufacturing labour	€20 000	€10 000
Units produced	5 000	20 000
Actual direct labour-hours	1 000	500

Manufacturing overhead is allocated to each instrument product on the basis of actual direct manufacturing labour-hours per unit for that month. Manufacturing overhead cost for December 2022 is €270 000. The production line at the Limerick plant is a machine-paced one. Direct manufacturing labour is made up of costs paid to workers minimising machine problems rather than actually operating the machines. The machines in this plant are operated by computer specialists and industrial engineers.

Required

1 Calculate the cost per unit in December 2022 for instrument 101 and instrument 201 under the existing cost accounting system.

2 The accountant at Euro-Medi proposes combining direct manufacturing labour costs and manufacturing overhead costs into a single conversion costs pool. These conversion costs would be allocated to each unit of product on the basis of direct materials costs. Calculate the cost per unit in December 2022 for instrument 101 and instrument 201 under the accountant's proposal.

3 What are the benefits of combining direct manufacturing labour costs and manufacturing overhead costs into a single conversion costs pool?

5.20 Segment reporting and cost hierarchies (20 minutes)

Koala Ltd has only two divisions: A and B. The following data apply to Division A.

Fixed costs controllable outside division	€100 000
Net revenues	1 500 000
Variable marketing and administrative expenses	200 000
Total traceable costs	1 000 000
Total variable costs	600 000

Required

1 Prepare a segment report for Division A that differentiates between the performance of the manager and the performance of the division.

2 Division B's net revenue is €3 million and its contribution margin is €1.2 million. The segment margin (contribution by division of Division B) is €700 000.

   a Determine fixed costs traceable to Division B.
   b Determine variable costs of Division B.

3 Koala's corporate costs unallocated to divisions are €400 000. Determine Koala's income.

5.21 Departmental cost allocation, university computer-service centre (20–30 minutes)

A computer-service centre of Madrid University serves two major users, the department of Engineering and the department of Humanities and Sciences (H&S).

Required

1 When the computer equipment was initially installed, the procedure for cost allocation was straightforward. The actual monthly costs were compiled and divided between the two departments on the basis of the computer time used by each. In October, the costs were €100 000. H&S used 100 hours and Engineering used 100 hours. How much cost should be allocated to each department? Suppose costs were €110 000 because of various inefficiencies in the operation of the computer centre. How much cost would then be allocated? Does such an allocation seem justified? If not, what improvement would you suggest?

2 Use the same approach as in requirement 1. The actual cost-behaviour pattern of the computer centre was €80 000 fixed cost per month plus €100 variable cost per hour used. In November, H&S used 50 hours and Engineering used 100 hours. How much cost would be allocated to each department? Use a single-rate method.

3 As the computer-service centre developed, a committee was formed that included representatives of H&S and Engineering. This committee determined the size and composition of the centre's equipment. The committee based its planning on the long-run average utilisation of 180 monthly hours for H&S and 120 monthly hours for Engineering. Suppose the €80 000 fixed costs are allocated through a budgeted monthly lump sum based on long-run average utilisation. Variable costs are allocated through a budgeted unit rate of €100 per hour. How much cost should be allocated to each department? What are the advantages of this dual-rate allocation method over other methods?

4 What are the likely behavioural effects of lump-sum allocations of fixed costs? For example, if you were the representative of H&S on the facility planning committee, what would your biases be in predicting long-run usage? How would top management counteract the bias?

Advanced level

***5.22 Cost allocation for all cost categories in the value chain, different costs for different purposes** (30–40 minutes)

Laser Tecnologia Srl develops, assembles and sells two product lines:

- Product Line A (laser scanning systems)
- Product Line B (laser cutting tools).

Product Line A is sold exclusively to the Italian Department of Defence under a cost-plus reimbursement contract. Product Line B is sold to commercial organisations.

Laser Tecnologia classifies costs in each of its six value-chain business functions into two cost pools: direct product-line costs (separately traced to Product Line A or B) and indirect product-line costs. The indirect product-line costs are grouped into a single cost pool for each of the six functions of the value-chain cost structure:

Value-chain indirect product-line cost function	Base for allocating indirect costs to each product line
1 R&D	Hours of R&D time identifiable with each product line
2 Product design	Number of new products
3 Production	Hours of machine assembly time
4 Marketing	Number of salespeople
5 Distribution	Number of shipments
6 Customer service	Number of customer visits

Summary data in 2022 are:

	Product Line A: direct costs (millions)	Product Line B: direct costs (millions)	Total indirect costs (millions)	Product allocation base for indirect costs	Product Line A units of allocation base	Product Line B units of allocation base
R&D	€10.0	€5.0	€20.0	R&D time	6000 hours	2000 hours
Product design	2.0	3.0	6.0	New products	8 new products	4 new products
Production	15.0	13.0	24.0	Machine-hours	70 000 machine-hours	50 000 machine-hours
Marketing	6.0	5.0	7.0	Salespeople	25 people	45 people
Distribution	2.0	3.0	2.0	Shipments	600 shipments	1400 shipments
Customer service	5.0	3.0	1.0	Customer visits	1000 visits	4000 visits

Required

1. For product pricing on its Product Line B, Laser Tecnologia sets a preliminary selling price of 140% of full cost (made up of both direct costs and the allocated indirect costs for all six of the value-chain cost categories). What is the average full cost per unit of the 2000 units of Product Line B produced in 2022?
2. For motivating managers, Laser Tecnologia separately classifies costs into three groups:
   - upstream (R&D and product design)
   - manufacturing
   - downstream (marketing, distribution and customer service).

   Calculate the costs (direct and indirect) in each of these three groups for Product Lines A and B.
3. For the purpose of income and asset measurement for reporting to external parties, inventoriable costs under generally accepted accounting principles for Laser Tecnologia include manufacturing costs and product-design costs (both direct and indirect costs of each category). At the end of 2022, what is the average inventoriable cost for the 300 units of Product Line B on hand? (Assume zero opening stock.)
4. The Department of Defence purchases all Product Line A units assembled by Laser Tecnologia. Laser is reimbursed 120% of allowable costs. Allowable cost is defined to include all direct and indirect costs in the R&D, product design, manufacturing, distribution and customer-service functions. Laser Tecnologia employs a marketing staff that makes many visits to government officials, but the Department of Defence will not reimburse Laser for any marketing costs. What is the 2022 allowable cost for Product Line A?
5. 'Differences in the costs appropriated for different decisions, such as pricing and cost reimbursement, are so great that firms should have multiple accounting systems rather than a single accounting system.' Do you agree?

CHAPTER 6

Cost allocation: joint-cost situations

Rather than emphasise costing either for single-product companies or for companies in which individual products are separately produced, we now consider costing for the more complex case where two or more products are simultaneously produced with each other. Costs incurred in this more complex case are termed joint costs. A joint cost is the cost of a single process that yields multiple products simultaneously. Although joint costs sometimes pose problems of allocation, it may be possible to trace resources consumption to ultimate cost objects such as individual products or organisational units. This can be useful in making certain types of managerial decision. This chapter examines methods for allocating joint costs to products and services.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Identify the split-off point(s) in a joint-cost situation
- Distinguish between joint products and by-products
- Provide several reasons for allocating joint costs to individual products
- Explain alternative methods of allocating joint costs
- Identify the criterion used to support market-based joint-cost allocation methods
- Describe the irrelevance of joint costs in deciding to sell or further process
- Distinguish alternative methods of accounting for by-products

Meaning of joint products and by-products terms

Consider a single process that yields two or more products (or services) simultaneously. The distillation of coal, for example, gives us coke, gas and other products. The cost of this distillation process would be called a **joint cost**. Joint costs are thus the costs of a production process that yields multiple products simultaneously. The juncture in the process when one or more products in a joint-cost setting become separately identifiable is called the **split-off point**. An example is the point where coal becomes coke, gas and other products. **Separable costs** are costs incurred beyond the split-off point that are assignable to one or more individual products. At or beyond the split-off point, decisions relating to sale or further processing of individual products can be made independently of decisions about other products.

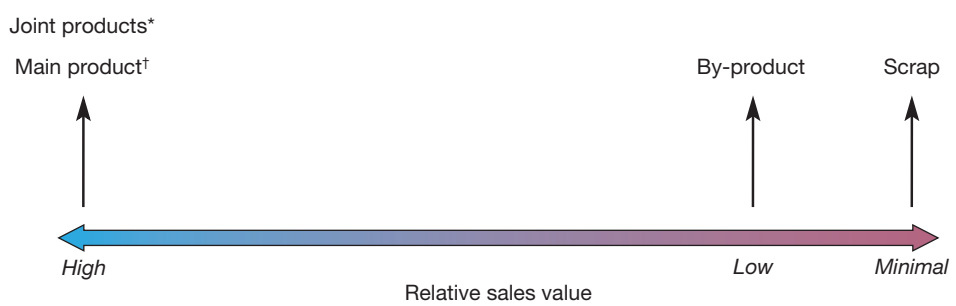
Various terms have arisen in conjunction with production processes. A **product** is any output that has a positive sales value (or an output that enables an organisation to avoid incurring costs). **Joint products** all have relatively high sales value but are not separately identifiable as individual products until the split-off point. When a single process yielding two or more products yields only one product with a relatively high sales value, that product is termed a **main product**. A **by-product** has a low sales value compared with the sales value of the main or joint product(s). **Scrap** has a minimal sales value. The classification of products as main, joint, by-product or scrap can change over time, especially for products (such as tin) whose market price can increase or decrease by, say, 30% or more in any one year.

Exhibit 6.1 shows the relationship between the terms defined in the preceding paragraph. Be careful. These distinctions are not firm in practice. The variety of terminology and accounting practice is bewildering. Always gain an understanding of the terms used by the particular organisation with which you are dealing.

Industries abound in which single processes simultaneously yield two or more products. Exhibit 6.2 presents examples of joint-cost situations in diverse industries. In each example in Exhibit 6.2, no individual product can be produced without the accompanying products appearing, although sometimes the proportions can be varied. A poultry farm cannot kill a turkey wing; it has to kill a whole turkey, which yields breast, drumsticks, giblets, feather meal and poultry meal in addition to wings. In this example, the focus is on building up costs of individual products as disassembly occurs. This focus contrasts with prior chapters that emphasise building up costs of individual products as assembly occurs.

In some joint-cost settings, the number of outputs produced exceeds the number of products. This situation can occur where an output, produced as an inherent part of the joint production process, is recycled without any value being added by its production. For example, the offshore

Exhibit 6.1 Joint products, main product, by-product and scrap



* If multiple products have relatively high sales values
† If only one product has a relatively high sales value

Exhibit 6.2 Examples of joint-cost situations

Industry	Separable products at the split-off point
Agriculture	
Lamb	Lamb cuts, offal, hides, bones, fat
Raw milk	Cream, liquid skim
Turkeys	Breast, wings, drumsticks, giblets, feather meal, poultry meal
Mining industries	
Coal	Coke, gas, benzol, tar, ammonia
Copper ore	Copper, silver, lead, zinc
Petroleum	Crude oil, gas, raw liquefied petroleum gas
Salt	Hydrogen, chlorine, caustic soda
Chemical industries	
Raw liquefied petroleum gas	Butane, ethane, propane
Semiconductor industry	
Fabrication of silicon-wafer chips	Memory chips of different quality (as to capacity), speed, life expectancy and temperature tolerance

processing of hydrocarbons to yield oil and gas also yields water as an output, which is recycled back into the sea. Similarly, the processing of mineral ore to yield gold and silver also yields dirt as an output, which is recycled back into the ground. The water and dirt in these examples typically are not classified as products, but they are outputs. No entries are made in the accounting system to record their processing. The physical quantity of these outputs can be large relative to the physical quantity of outputs that are recorded in the accounting system as products. It is only those outputs that have a positive sales value that are typically labelled products.

Why allocate joint costs?

There are many contexts that require the allocation of joint costs to individual products or services (see Bhimani and Bromwich 2010, chapter 2 for a detailed explanation). Examples include:

- Stock-costing and cost-of-goods-sold computations for external financial statements and reports for income tax authorities.
- Stock-costing and cost-of-goods-sold computations for internal financial reporting. Such reports are used in division profitability analysis when determining compensation for division managers.
- Cost reimbursement under contracts when only a portion of a business's products or services is sold or delivered to a single customer (such as a government agency).
- Customer profitability analysis where individual customers purchase varying combinations of joint products or by-products as well as other products of the company.
- Insurance settlement computations when damage claims made by businesses with joint products, main products or by-products are based on cost information.
- Rate regulation when one or more of the jointly produced products or services are subject to price regulation.

Approaches to allocating joint costs

There are two basic approaches to allocating joint costs:

1 Allocate costs using market-based data (for example, revenues). Three methods that can be used in applying this approach are:
   - **a** the sales value at split-off method
   - **b** the estimated net realisable value (NRV) method
   - **c** the constant gross-margin percentage NRV method.

2 Allocate costs using physical measure-based data such as weight or volume.

We have previously emphasised both the cause-and-effect and benefits-received criteria for guiding cost-allocation decisions. In joint-cost settings, it is not feasible to use the cause-and-effect criterion to guide individual product-cost allocations. Joint costs, by definition, cannot be the subject of cause-and-effect analysis at the individual product level. The cause-and-effect relationship exists only at the joint process level. The benefits-received criterion leads to a preference for methods under approach 1. Revenues, in general, are a better indicator of benefits received than are physical measures such as weight or volume.

In the simplest situation, the joint products are sold at the split-off point without further processing. We use this case first (Example 6.1) to illustrate the sales value at split-off method and the physical measures method using volume as the metric. Then we consider situations involving further processing beyond the split-off point (Example 6.2) to illustrate the estimated NRV method and the constant gross-margin percentage NRV method.

To highlight each joint-cost example, we make extensive use of exhibits in this chapter. We use the following notation:

To enable comparisons across the methods, we report for each method individual gross-margin percentages for individual products.

Example 6.1

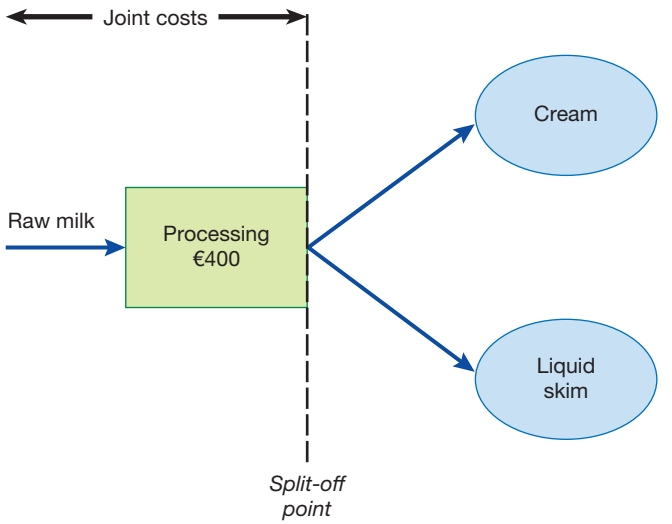
Farmers' Dairy purchases raw milk from individual farms and processes it up to the split-off point, where two products (cream and liquid skim) are obtained. These two products are sold to an independent company, which markets and distributes them to supermarkets and other retail outlets.

Exhibit 6.3 presents an overview of the basic relationships in this example. Summary data for May 2022 are as follows:

- Raw milk processed: 440 litres (440 litres of raw milk yield 400 litres of good product with a 40-litre shrinkage):

	Production	Sales
Cream	100 litres	80 litres at €2 per litre
Liquid skim	300 litres	120 litres at €1 per litre

Exhibit 6.3 Farmers' Dairy: Example 6.1 overview



- Stocks:

	Opening stock	Closing stock
Raw milk	0 litre	0 litre
Cream	0 litre	20 litres
Liquid skim	0 litre	180 litres

- Cost of purchasing 440 litres of raw milk and processing it up to the split-off point to yield 100 litres of cream and 300 litres of liquid skim: €400.

How much of the joint costs of €400 should be allocated to the closing stock of 20 litres of cream and 180 litres of liquid skim? The joint production costs of €400 cannot be uniquely identified with or traced to either product. Why? Because the products themselves were not separated before the split-off point. The joint-cost-allocation methods we now discuss can be used for costing the stock of cream and liquid skim as well as determining cost of goods sold.

Sales value at split-off method

The **sales value at split-off method** allocates joint costs on the basis of the relative sales value at the split-off point of the total production in the accounting period of each product. In Exhibit 6.4, the sales value at split-off of the May 2022 production is €200 for cream and €300 for liquid skim. We then assign a weighting to each product, which is a percentage of total sales value. Using this weighting, we allocate the joint costs to the individual products, as shown in Exhibit 6.4.

Note that this method uses the sales value of the *entire production* of the accounting period. The joint costs were incurred on all units produced and not just those sold. Exhibit 6.5 presents the product-line income statement, using the sales value at split-off method of joint-cost allocation. Use of this method has enabled us to obtain individual product costs and gross margins. Both cream and liquid skim have gross-margin percentages of 20%. The equality of the gross-margin percentages for the two products is a mechanical result reached with the sales value at split-off method when there are no beginning stocks and all products are sold at the split-off point.

Exhibit 6.4 Allocation of joint costs using the sales value at split-off method

	Cream	Liquid skim	Total
1 Sales value at split-off point (cream, 100 litres × €2; liquid skim, 300 litres × €1)	€200	€300	€500
2 Weighting (€200 ÷ €500; €300 ÷ €500)	0.40	0.60	
3 Joint costs allocated (cream, 0.40 × €400; liquid skim, 0.60 × €400)	€160	€240	€400
4 Joint production costs per litre (cream, €160 ÷ 100 litres; liquid skim, €240 ÷ 300 litres)	€1.60	€0.80	

Exhibit 6.5 Farmers' Dairy product-line income statement for May 2022: joint costs allocated using sales value at split-off method

	Cream	Liquid skim	Total
Sales (cream, 80 litres × €2; liquid skim, 120 litres × €1)	€160	€120	€280
Joint costs			
Production costs (cream, 0.4 × €400; liquid skim, 0.6 × €400)	160	240	400
Deduct ending stock (cream, 20 litres × €1.60; liquid skim, 180 litres × €0.80)	32	144	176
Cost of goods sold	128	96	224
Gross margin	€32	€24	€56
Gross-margin percentage	20%	20%	20%

The sales value at split-off point method exemplifies the benefits-received criterion of cost allocation. Costs are allocated to products in proportion to their ability to contribute revenue. This method is both straightforward and intuitive. The cost-allocation base (sales value at split-off) is expressed in terms of a common denominator (euros) that is systematically recorded in the accounting system and well understood by all parties.

Concepts in action Big Data joint products and by-products create new business opportunities

Forward-thinking companies are using their data to create new products and business lines as a byproduct of their operations. For some companies, the value of big data is so significant that it is a joint product, not a byproduct.

UnitedHealth, for example, has built a business by reusing the information contained in the insurance claim forms it processes. These aggregated data allow pharmaceutical companies to see how their products are used, how effective they are, and how well they are competing with rival drugs.

Similarly, Toyota created a new business that leverages the GPS navigation devices it installs in cars sold in Japan.

It captures the speed and position of cars and sells traffic data to municipal planning departments and corporate delivery fleets at prices that start at $2,000 a month.

Cargill developed a new digital product line to supplement its business of selling crop seeds to farmers. By analyzing its large database of information on how its seeds performed in various types of soil and weather conditions, it built software that gives customized advice to farmers looking to increase their crop yields.

Companies are increasingly leveraging their data to find product enhancements that increase revenue, build services that broaden their customer relationships, and even create new businesses that capitalize on the large quantities of data they are collecting to serve new customers.

Source: Alan Lewis and Dan McKone (2016) *Edge Strategy: A New Mindset for Profitable Growth* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press).

Physical measure method

The **physical measure method** allocates joint costs on the basis of their relative proportions at the split-off point, using a common physical measure such as weight or volume of the total production of each product. In Example 6.1, the €400 joint costs produced 100 litres of cream and 300 litres of liquid skim. Joint costs using these quantities are allocated as shown in Exhibit 6.6.

Exhibit 6.7 presents the product-line income statement using this method of joint-cost allocation. The gross-margin percentages are 50% for cream and 0% for liquid skim.

The physical weights used for allocating joint costs may have no relationship to the revenue- producing power of the individual products. Using the benefits-received criterion, the physical measure method is less preferred than the sales value at split-off method. Consider a mine that extracts

Exhibit 6.6 Allocation of joint costs using the physical measure method

	Cream	Liquid skim	Total
1 Physical measure of production (litres)	25	75	100
2 Weighting (100 liters ÷ 400 litres; 300 liters ÷ 400 litres)	0.25	0.75	
3 Joint costs allocated (cream, 0.25 × €400; liquid skim, 0.75 × €400)	€100	€300	€400
4 Joint production costs per litre (cream, €100 ÷ 100 litres; liquid skim, €300 ÷ 300 litres)	€1	€1	

Exhibit 6.7 Farmers' Dairy product-line income statement for May 2022: joint costs allocated using the physical measure method

	Cream	Liquid skim	Total
Sales (cream, 80 litres × €2; liquid skim, 120 litres × €1)	€160	€120	€280
Joint costs			
Production costs (cream, 0.25 × €400; liquid skim, 0.75 × €400)	100	300	400
Deduct closing stock (cream, 20 litres × €1; liquid skim, 180 litres × €1)	20	180	200
Cost of goods sold	80	120	200
Gross margin	€80	€0	€80
Gross-margin percentage	50%	0%	28.6%

ore containing gold, silver and lead. Use of a common physical measure (tonnes) would result in almost all the costs being allocated to the product that weighs the most – lead, which has the lowest revenue-producing power. As a second example, if the joint cost of a pig were assigned to its various products on the basis of weight, loin pork chops would have the same cost per kilogram as pigs' trotters, lard, bacon, bones and so forth. In a product-line income statement, the pork products that have a high sales value per kilogram (for example, loin pork chops) would show a fabulous 'profit', and products that have a low sales value per kilogram (for example, bones) would show consistent losses.

Obtaining comparable physical measures for all products is not always straightforward. Consider oil and gas joint-cost settings, where oil is a liquid and gas is a vapour. Use of a physical measure, such as barrels, will require technical assistance from chemical engineers on how to convert the vapour into a measure additive with barrels of oil. Technical personnel outside accounting may be required when using some physical measures in joint-cost-allocation situations.

Example 6.2

Assume the same situation as in Example 6.1 except that both cream and liquid skim can be processed further:

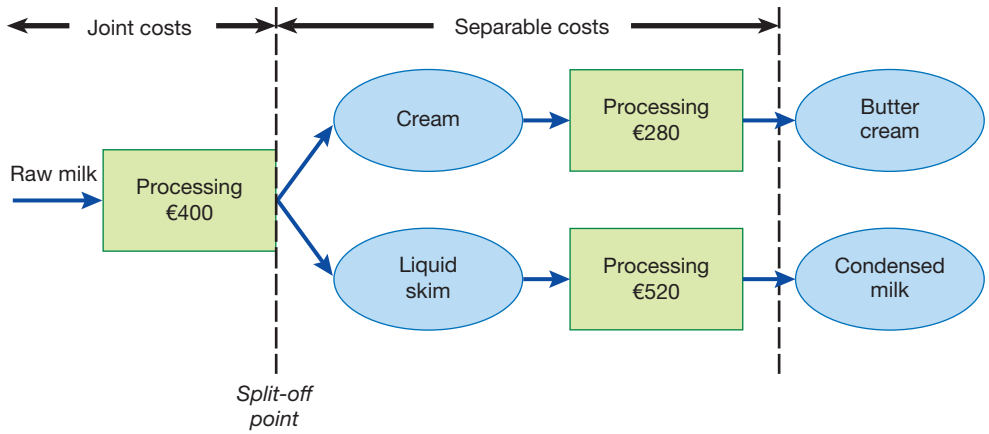
- Cream → Butter cream: 100 litres of cream are further processed to yield 80 litres of butter cream at additional processing (separable) costs of €280. Butter cream is sold for €6.25 per litre.
- Liquid skim → Condensed milk: 300 litres of liquid skim are further processed to yield 200 litres of condensed milk at additional processing costs of €520. Condensed milk is sold for €5.5 per litre.

Sales during the accounting period were 48 litres of butter cream and 180 litres of condensed milk. Exhibit 6.8 presents an overview of the basic relationships. Stock information is as follows:

	Opening stock	Closing stock
Raw milk	0 litres	0 litres
Cream	0 litres	0 litres
Liquid skim	0 litres	0 litres
Butter cream	0 litres	32 litres
Condensed milk	0 litres	20 litres

Example 6.2 will be used to illustrate the estimated net realisable value (NRV) method and the constant gross-margin percentage NRV method.

Exhibit 6.8 Farmers' Dairy: Example 6.2 overview



Estimated net realisable value method

The **estimated net realisable value (NRV) method** allocates joint costs on the basis of the relative *estimated net realisable value* (expected final sales value in the ordinary course of business minus the expected separable costs of production and marketing of the total production of the period). Joint costs would be allocated as shown in Exhibit 6.9.

Exhibit 6.10 presents the product-line income statement using the estimated NRV method. The gross-margin percentages are 22.0% for butter cream and 26.4% for condensed milk.

Estimating the net realisable value of each product at the split-off point requires information about the subsequent processing steps to be taken (and their expected separable costs). (The estimated NRV method is clear-cut when there is only one split-off point. When there are multiple split-off points, however, additional allocations may be required if processes subsequent to the

Exhibit 6.9 Allocation of joint costs using the estimated NRV method

	Butter cream	Condensed milk	Total
1 Expected final sales value of production (butter cream, 80 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 200 litres × €5.5)	€500	€1100	€1600
2 Deduct expected separable costs to complete and sell	280	520	800
3 Estimated NRV at split-off point	€220	€580	€800
4 Weighting (€220 ÷ €800; €580 ÷ €800)	0.275	0.725	
5 Joint costs allocated (butter cream, 0.275 × €400; condensed milk, 0.725 × €400)	€110	€290	€400
6 Production costs per litre [butter cream (€110 + €280), 80 litres condensed milk (€290 + €520), 200 litres]	€4.875	€4.05	

Exhibit 6.10 Farmers' Dairy product-line income statement for May 2022: joint costs allocated using the estimated NRV method

	Butter cream	Condensed milk	Total
Sales (butter cream, 48 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 180 litres × €5.5)	€300	€990	€1290
Cost of goods sold			
Joint costs (butter cream, 0.275 × €400; condensed milk, 0.725 × €400)	110	290	400
Separable processing costs	280	520	800
Cost of goods available for sale	390	810	1200
Deduct closing stock (butter cream, 32 litres × €4.875; condensed milk, 20 litres × €4.05)	156	81	237
Cost of goods sold	234	729	963
Gross margin	€66	€261	€327
Gross-margin percentage	22.0%	26.4%	25.3%

initial split-off point remerge with each other to create a second joint-cost situation.) In some plants, such as in petrochemicals, there may be many possible subsequent steps. Companies may frequently change further processing to exploit fluctuations in the separable costs of each processing stage or in the selling prices of individual products. Under the estimated NRV method, each such change would affect the joint-cost-allocation percentages. (In practice, a set of standard subsequent steps is assumed at the start of the accounting period when using the estimated NRV method.)

The sales value at split-off method is less complex than the estimated NRV method as it does not require knowledge of the subsequent steps in processing. However, it is not always feasible to use the sales value at split-off method. Why? Because there may not be any market prices at the split-off point for one or more individual products. Market prices may not first appear until after processing beyond the split-off point has occurred.

Constant gross-margin percentage NRV method

The **constant gross-margin percentage NRV method** allocates joint costs in such a way that the overall gross-margin percentage is identical for all the individual products. This method entails three steps:

1. Calculate the overall gross-margin percentage.
2. Use the overall gross-margin percentage and deduct the gross margin from the final sales values to obtain the total costs that each product should bear.
3. Deduct the expected separable costs from the total costs to obtain the joint-cost allocation.

Exhibit 6.11 presents these three steps for allocating the €400 joint costs between butter cream and condensed milk. To determine the joint-cost allocation, Exhibit 6.11 uses the expected final sales value of the *total production* of the period (€1600) and *not* the actual sales of the period. The joint costs allocated to each product need not always be positive under this method. Some

Exhibit 6.11 Farmers' Dairy for May 2022: joint costs allocated using constant gross-margin percentage NRV method

	Butter cream	Condensed milk	Total
Step 1			
Expected final sales value of production: (80 litres × €6.25) + (200 litres × €5.5)		€1600	
Deduct joint and separable costs (€400 + €280 + €520)		1200	
Gross margin		€400	
Gross-margin percentage (€400 ÷ €1600)		25%	
Step 2			
Expected final sales value of production (butter cream, 80 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 200 litres × €5.5)	€500	€1100	€1600
Deduct gross margin, using overall gross-margin percentage (25%)	125	275	400
Cost of goods sold	375	825	1200
Step 3			
Deduct separable costs to complete and sell	280	520	800
Joint costs allocated	€95	€305	€400

Exhibit 6.12 Farmers' Dairy product-line income statement for May 2022: joint costs allocated using constant gross-margin percentage NRV method

	Butter cream	Condensed milk	Total
Sales (butter cream, 48 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 180 litres × €5.5)	€300.0	€990.0	€1290.0
Cost of goods sold			
Joint costs (from Exhibit 6.11)	95.0	305.0	400.0
Separable costs to complete and sell	280.0	520.0	800.0
Cost of goods available for sale	375.0	825.0	1200.0
Deduct closing stock (butter cream, 32 litres × €4.6875*; condensed milk, 20 litres × €4.125†)	150.0	82.5	232.5
Cost of goods sold	225.0	742.5	967.5
Gross margin	€75.0	€247.5	€322.5
Gross-margin percentage	25%	25%	25%

* 375 ÷ 80 litres = €4.6875.
† 825 ÷ 200 litres = €4.125.

products may receive negative allocations of joint costs to bring their gross-margin percentages up to the overall company average. The overall gross-margin percentage is 25%. A product-line income statement for the constant gross-margin percentage NRV method is presented in Exhibit 6.12.

The tenuous assumption underlying the constant gross-margin percentage NRV method is that all the products have the same ratio of cost to sales value. A constant ratio of cost to sales value across products is rarely seen in companies that produce multiple products but have no joint costs. The main advantage of this method, however, is that it is easy to implement.

Comparison of methods

Which method of allocating joint costs should be chosen? Because the costs are joint in nature, managers cannot use the cause-and-effect criterion in making this choice. Managers cannot be sure what causes what cost when examining joint costs. The benefits-received criterion leads to a preference for the sales value at split-off point method (or other related revenue or market-based methods). Additional benefits of this method include:

1. No anticipation of subsequent management decisions. The sales value at split-off method does not presuppose an exact number of subsequent steps undertaken for further processing.
2. Availability of a meaningful common denominator to calculate the weighing factors. The denominator of the sales value at split-off method (euros) is a meaningful one. In contrast, the physical measure method may lack a meaningful common denominator for all the separable products (for example, when some products are liquids and other products are solids).
3. Simplicity. The sales value at split-off method is simple. In contrast, the estimated NRV method can be very complex in operations with multiple products and multiple split-off points. The total sales value at split-off is unaffected by any change in the production process after the split-off point.

The purpose of the joint-cost allocation is important. Consider rate regulation. Market-based measures are difficult to use in this context. It is circular to use selling prices as a basis for setting prices (rates) and at the same time use selling prices to allocate the costs on which prices (rates) are based. Physical measures represent one joint-cost-allocation approach available in rate regulation.

Concepts in action — Chicken processing: costing on the disassembly line

Chicken processing operations provide many examples where joint and by-product costing issues can arise. Each chicken is killed and then 'disassembled' into many products. Every effort is made to obtain revenue from each disassembled item.

White breast meat, the highest revenue-generating product, is obtained from the front end of the bird. Dark meat is obtained from the back end. Other edible products include chicken wings, giblets and kidneys. There are many non-edible products, including feathers and blood, the head, feet and intestines. The non-edible products have a diverse set of uses. Examples include poultry feathers (used in bedding and sporting goods); poultry leftover parts such as bones, beaks and feet (ground into livestock pellets and fertiliser); and poultry fat (used in animal feed and pet food).

Poultry companies use individual product-cost information for several purposes. One purpose is in customer profitability analysis. Customers (such as supermarkets and fast-food restaurants) differ greatly in the mix of products purchased. Individual product-cost data enable companies to determine differences in individual customer profitability. A subset of products is placed into frozen storage, which creates a demand for individual product-cost information for stock valuation.

Companies differ in how they cost individual products. Some companies classify white breast meat as the single main product in their costing system. All other products are then classified as by-products. Market selling prices of the many by-products are used to reduce the chicken processing costs that are allocated to the main product. The white breast meat is often further processed into many individual products (such as trimmed chicken and marinated chicken). The separable cost of this further processing is added to the cost per kilogram of deboned white breast meat to obtain the cost of further processed products.

Other companies might classify any product sold to a retail outlet as a joint product. Such products include breast fillets, half breasts, drumsticks, thighs and whole legs. All other products are classified as by-products. Revenue from by-products is offset against the chicken processing cost and is allocated among the joint products. The average selling prices of products sold to retail outlets are used to allocate the net chicken processing cost among the individual joint products. The distribution costs of transporting the chicken products from the processing plants to retail outlets are not taken into account when determining the joint-cost-allocation weights.

No allocation of joint costs

All of the preceding methods of allocating joint costs to individual products are subject to criticism. As a result, some companies refrain from joint-cost allocation entirely. Instead, they carry all stocks at estimated NRV. Income on each product is recognised when production is completed. Industries that use variations of this approach include meat packing, canning and mining.

Accountants ordinarily criticise carrying stocks at estimated NRV. Why? Because income is recognised *before* sales are made. Partly in response to this criticism, some companies using this no-allocation approach carry their stocks at estimated NRV minus a normal profit margin.

Exhibit 6.13 Farmers' Dairy product-line income statement for May 2022: no allocation of joint costs

	Butter cream	Condensed milk	Total
Produced and sold (butter cream, 48 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 180 litres × €5.5)	€300	€990	€1290
Produced but not sold (butter cream, 32 litres × €6.25; condensed milk, 20 litres × €5.5)	200	110	310
Total sales value of production	500	€1100	1600
Separable costs	280	520	800
Contribution to joint costs and operating profit	€220	€580	800
Joint costs			400
Gross margin			€400
Gross-margin percentage			25%

Exhibit 6.13 presents the product-line income statement with no allocation of joint costs for Example 6.2. The separable costs are assigned first, which highlights for managers the cause-and-effect relationship between individual products and the costs incurred on them. The joint costs are not allocated to butter cream and condensed milk as individual products.

Irrelevance of joint costs for decision making

No technique for allocating joint-product costs should guide management decisions regarding whether a product should be sold at the split-off point or processed beyond split-off. When a product is an inevitable result of a joint process, the decision to process further should not be influenced either by the size of the total joint costs or by the portion of the joint costs allocated to particular products. Ultimately, all joint-cost allocations to products are, to a degree, arbitrary.

Sell or process further

The decision to incur additional costs beyond split-off should be based on the incremental operating profit attainable beyond the split-off point. Example 6.2 assumed that it was profitable for both cream and liquid skim to be further processed into butter cream and condensed milk, respectively. The incremental analysis for these decisions to process further is as follows:

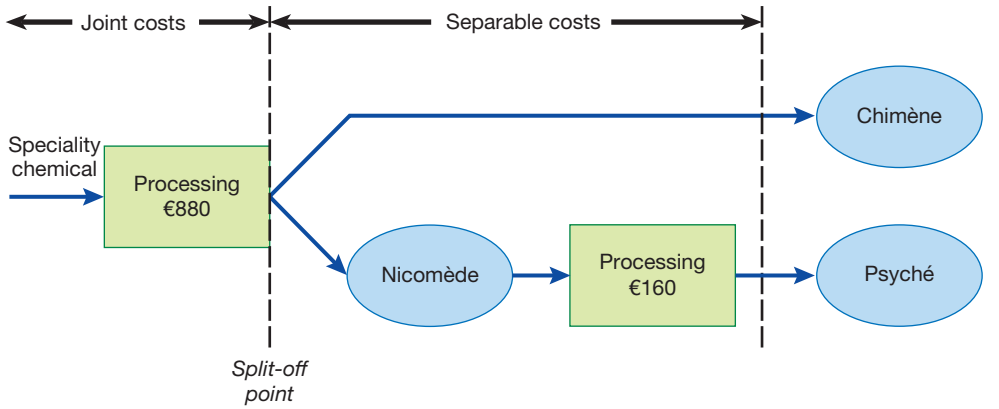
Further processing cream into butter cream	
Incremental revenue (€500 – €200)	€300
Incremental processing costs	280
Incremental operating profit	€20

Further processing liquid skim into condensed milk	
Incremental revenue (€1100 – €300)	€800
Incremental processing costs	520
Incremental operating profit	€280

Example 6.3

Atilla-Parfums jointly processes a speciality chemical that yields two perfumes: 50 ml of Chimène and 150 ml of Nicomède. The sales values per millilitre at split-off are €6 for Chimène and €4 for Nicomède. The joint costs incurred up to the split-off point are €880. The manager has the option of further processing 150 ml of Nicomède to yield 100 ml of Psyché. The total additional costs of converting Nicomède into Psyché would be €160 and the selling price per millilitre of Psyché would be €8. Exhibit 6.14 summarises the relationships in this example.

Exhibit 6.14 Atilla-parfums: Example 6.3 overview



The amount of joint costs incurred up to split-off (€400) – and how it is allocated – is irrelevant in deciding whether to process further cream or liquid skim. Why? Because the joint costs of €400 are the same whether or not further processing is done.

Many manufacturing companies constantly face the decision of whether to process further a joint product. Meat products may be sold as cut or may be smoked, cured, frozen, canned, and so forth. Petroleum refiners are perpetually trying to adjust to the most profitable product mix. The refining process necessitates separating all products from crude oil, even though only two or three may have high revenue potential. The refiner must decide what combination of processes to use to get the most profitable mix of crude oil, gas, butane, ethane, propane and the like.

In designing reports for managers' decisions of this nature, the accountant must concentrate on incremental costs rather than on how historical joint costs are to be allocated among various products. The only relevant items are incremental revenue and incremental costs. This next example illustrates the importance of the incremental-cost viewpoint.

The correct approach in deciding whether to further process Nicomède into Psyché is to compare the incremental revenue with the incremental costs, if all other factors such as invested capital and the time period are held constant:

Incremental revenue of Psyché (100 × €8) − (150 × €4)	€200
Incremental costs of Psyché, further processing	160
Incremental operating profit from converting Nicomède into Psyché	€40

The following is a total income computation of each alternative. The revenues reported for each product are Chimène (50 ml at €6 per ml = €300), Nicomède (150 ml at €4 per ml = €600) and Psyché (100 ml at €8 per ml = €800).

	Alternative 1: Sell Chimène and Nicomède	Alternative 2: Sell Chimène and Psyché	Difference
Total revenues	(€300 + €600) €900	(€300 + €800) €1100	€200
Total processing costs	880	(€880 + €160) 1040	160
Operating profit	€20	€60	€40

As we can see from our example, it is profitable to extend processing and to incur additional costs on a joint product as long as the incremental revenue exceeds incremental costs.

Conventional methods of joint-cost allocation may mislead managers who rely on unit-cost data to guide their sell-or-further-process decisions. For example, the physical measure method (millilitres in our example) would allocate the €880 joint costs as follows:

Product	Millilitres produced	Weighting	Allocation of joint costs
Chimène	50	50 ÷ 200 = 0.25	0.25 × €880 = €220
Nicomède	150	150 ÷ 200 = 0.75	0.75 × €880 = 660
	200		€880

The resulting product-line income statement for the alternative of selling Chimène and Psyché would erroneously imply that the company would suffer a loss by selling Psyché:

	Chimène	Psyché
Revenues	€300	€800
Costs		
Joint costs allocated	220	660
Separable costs	–	160
Cost of goods sold	220	820
Operating profit	€80	€(20)

Accounting for by-products

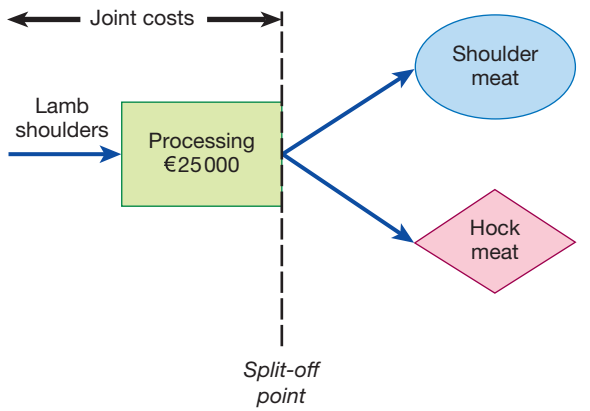
Processes that yield joint products often also yield what are frequently referred to as by-products – products that have relatively low sales value compared with the sales value of the main or joint product(s). We now discuss accounting for by-products. To simplify the discussion, consider a two-product example consisting of a main product and a by-product.

Example 6.4

Deen's Grossierderij BV processes meat from slaughterhouses. One of its departments cuts lamb shoulders and generates two products:

- shoulder meat (the main product) – sold for €60 per pack
- hock meat (the by-product) – sold for €4 per pack.

Exhibit 6.15 Deen's Grossierderij BV: Example 6.4 overview



Both products are sold at the split-off point without further processing, as Exhibit 6.15 shows. Data (number of packs) for this department in July 2022 are as follows:

	Production	Sales	Opening stock	Closing stock
Shoulder meat	500	400	0	100
Hock meat	100	30	0	70

Total manufacturing costs of these products were €25 000.
Accounting methods for by-products address two major questions:

1 When are by-products first recognised in the general ledger? The two basic choices are (a) at the time of production, or (b) at the time of sale.

2 Where do by-product revenues appear in the income statement? The two basic choices are (a) as a cost reduction of the main or joint product(s), or (b) as a separate item of revenue or other income.

Combining these two questions and choices gives four possible ways of accounting for by-products (Exhibit 6.16).

Exhibit 6.16 Four ways to account for by-products

By-product accounting method	When by-products are recognised in in general ledger	Where by-product revenues appear in income statement	Where by-product stocks appear on balance sheet
A	Production	Reduction of cost	By-product stock
B	Production	Revenue or other income item	reported at (unrealised) selling prices
C	Sale	Reduction of cost	By-product stock
D	Sale	Revenue or other income item	not recognised

Exhibit 6.17 presents the income statement figures and stock figures that Deen's Grossierderij would report under each method. Methods A and B recognise the by-product stock at the time of production. Note, however, that by-product stocks are reported on the balance sheet at selling prices rather than at a cost amount. One variation of methods A and B is to report by-product stocks at selling price minus a 'normal profit margin'. This variation avoids including unrealised gains as an offset to cost of goods sold in the period of production. One version of method A deducts the estimated NRV of the by-product(s) from the joint costs before the remainder is allocated to individual joint products. Another version of method A deducts the estimated NRV of the by-product(s) from the total production costs (joint costs plus separable costs).

Methods C and D are rationalised in practice primarily on grounds of the relative insignificance of by-products. By-products are sometimes viewed as incidental. Methods C and D permit managers to 'manage' reported earnings by timing when they sell by-products. Managers may stockpile by-products so that they have flexibility to give revenue a 'boost' when most propitious for them.

Exhibit 6.17 Deen's Grossierderij BV income statement for July 2022

	By-product accounting method			
	A	B	C	D
When by-products are recognised in general ledger	At production	At production	At sale	At sale
Where by-product revenues appear in income statements	Reduction of cost	Revenue item	Reduction of cost	Revenue item
Revenues				
Main product: shoulder meat (400 × €60)	€24 000	€24 000	€24 000	€24 000
By-product: hock meat (30 × €4)	–	120	–	120
Total revenue	24 000	24 120	24 000	24 120
Cost of goods sold				
Total manufacturing costs	25 000	25 000	25 000	25 000
Deduct by-product net revenue (30 × €4)	120	–	120	–
Net manufacturing costs	24 880	25 000	24 880	25 000
Deduct main product stock*	4 976	5 000	4 976	5 000
Deduct by-product stock (70 × €4)	280	280		
Total cost of goods sold	19 624	19 720	19 904	20 000
Gross margin	€4 376	€4 400	€4 096	€4 120
Gross-margin percentage	18.23%	18.24%	17.07%	17.08%
Inventoriable costs (end of period)				
Main product: shoulder meat	€4 976	€5 000	€4 976	€5 000
By-product: hock meat†	280	280	0	0

* (100 ÷ 500) × net manufacturing costs.
† Shown at selling prices.

Deen's Grossierderij uses method B in its accounting system. This method highlights how each saleable product contributes to its total revenues. Over time, the revenues contributed by individual products can vary. Method B enables managers to track these changing contributions easily.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. A joint cost is the cost of a single process that yields multiple products. The split-off point is the juncture in the process when the products become separately identifiable.
2. Joint products have relatively high sales value and are not separately identifiable as individual products until the split-off point. A by-product has a low sales value compared with the sales value of a joint product. Individual products can change from being a by-product or a joint product when their market prices move sizably in one direction.
3. The purposes for allocating joint costs to products include stock costing for external financial reporting, internal financial reporting, cost reimbursement under contracts, customer profitability analysis, insurance settlements and rate regulation.
4. The accounting methods available for allocating joint costs include using market selling price (either sales value at split-off or estimated net realisable value) or using a physical measure. Choosing not to allocate is also an option.
5. The benefits-received criterion leads to a preference for revenue or market-based methods such as the sales value at split-off point method. Additional pros of this method include not anticipating subsequent management decisions on further processing, using a meaningful common denominator and being simple.
6. The incremental-cost analysis emphasised elsewhere in this book applies equally to joint-cost situations. No techniques for allocating joint-product costs should guide decisions about whether a product should be sold at the split-off point or processed beyond split-off because joint costs are irrelevant.
7. By-product accounting is an area where there is much inconsistency in practice and where some methods used are justified on the basis of expediency rather than theoretical soundness. By-products can be recognised at production or at the point of sale. By-product revenues can appear as a separate revenue item or an offset to other costs.

References and further reading

Bhimani, A. and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (Oxford: CIMA/Elsevier).

Labro, E. (2006) 'Analytics of costing system design', in A. Bhimani (ed) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 217–42.

CHAPTER 6

Assessment material

Review questions

6.1 What is a joint cost?

6.2 Define separable costs.

6.3 Give two examples of industries in which joint costs are found. For each example, what are the individual products at or beyond the split-off point?

6.4 Why might the number of products in a joint-cost setting differ from the number of outputs? Give an example.

6.5 Provide three reasons for allocating joint costs to individual products or services.

6.6 Give two limitations of the physical measure method of joint-cost allocation.

6.7 Which joint-cost-allocation method is supported by the cause-and-effect criterion for choosing among allocation methods?

6.8 'Managers must decide whether a product should be sold at split-off or processed further. The sales value at split-off method of joint-cost allocation is the best method for generating the information managers need.' Do you agree? Why?

6.9 'Managers should consider only additional revenues and separable costs when making decisions about selling now or processing further.' Do you agree? Why?

6.10 Describe an accounting method that would eliminate some key inconsistencies that often arise in by-product reporting.

Exercises

Basic level

6.11 **Matching terms with definitions** (10 minutes)

Terms

a Split-off point

b Joint cost

c Separable cost

d By-product

e Joint product

f Product

Definitions

1 Product with low sales value compared with the sales value of the main or joint product(s).
2 Any output that has a positive sales value.
3 Junction in the process when one or more products in a joint-cost setting become separately identifiable.
4 Cost of a single process that yields multiple products simultaneously.
5 Cost incurred beyond the split-off point that are assignable to one or more individual products.
6 Product that is one of two or more products with relatively high sales value but not separately identifiable until the split-off point.

Required

Match each term with its appropriate definition.

6.12 Estimated net realisable value method (10 minutes)

Miljø-Såpe AS produces two joint products, cooking oil and soap oil, from a single vegetable oil refining process. In July 2022, the joint costs of this process were NOK 24 000 000. Separable processing costs beyond the split-off point were cooking oil, NOK 30 000 000; and soap oil, NOK 7 500 000. Cooking oil sells for NOK 50 per drum. Soap oil sells for NOK 25 per drum. Miljø-Såpe produced and sold 1 000 000 drums of cooking oil and 500 000 drums of soap oil. There are no beginning or ending stocks of cooking oil or soap oil.

Required

Allocate the NOK 24 000 000 joint costs using the estimated NRV method.

Intermediate level

*6.13 Joint-cost allocation, insurance settlement (20–30 minutes)

Galinha-Esquina SA grows and processes chickens. Each chicken is disassembled into five main parts. Information pertaining to production in July 2022 is as follows:

Parts	Kilograms of product	Wholesale selling price per kilogram at end of production line
Breast	100	€1.10
Wings	20	0.40
Thighs	40	0.70
Bones	80	0.20
Feathers	10	0.10

Joint costs of production in July 2022 were €100.

A special shipment of 20 kg of breasts and 10 kg of wings has been destroyed in a fire. Galinha-Esquina's insurance policy provides for reimbursement for the cost of the items destroyed. The insurance company permits Galinha-Esquina to use a joint-cost-allocation method. The split-off point is assumed to be at the end of the production line.

Required

1 Calculate the cost of the special shipment destroyed using (a) the sales value at split-off point method, and (b) the physical measure method using kilograms of finished product.
2 Which joint-cost-allocation method would you recommend that Galinha-Esquina use?

*6.14 Accounting for a main product and a by-product (30 minutes)

Claude Deux-Bussy is the owner and operator of Boissons Barbe-Bleue Sarl, a bulk soft-drink producer. A single production process yields two bulk soft drinks, Pelléas (the main product) and Mélisande (the by-product). Both products are fully processed at the split-off point and there are no separable costs.

Summary data for September 2022 are as follows:

- Cost of soft-drink operations = €120 000
- Production and sales data

	Production (litres)	Sales (litres)	Selling price per litre
Main product (Pelléas)	40 000	32 000	€20.00
By-product (Mélisande)	8 000	5 600	2.00

There were no opening stocks on 1 September 2022. The following is an overview of operations:

Required

1. What is the gross margin for Boissons Barbe-Bleue under methods A, B, C and D of by-product accounting described in this chapter (on p. 172)?
2. What are the stock amounts reported in the balance sheet on 30 September 2022 for Pelléas and Mélisande under each of the four methods of by-product accounting cited in requirement 1?
3. Which method would you recommend Boissons Barbe-Bleue to use? Explain.

6.15 Joint costs and by-products (W. Crum, adapted) (35–45 minutes)

Pohjanmaan Oy processes an ore in Department 1, out of which come three products, L, W and X. Product L is processed further through Department 2. Product W is sold without further processing. Product X is considered a by-product and is processed further through Department 3. Costs in Department 1 are €800 000 in total; Department 2 costs are €100 000; and Department 3 costs are €50 000. Processing 600 000 kg in Department 1 results in 50 000 kg of product L, 300 000 kg of product W and 100 000 kg of product X.

Product L sells for €10 per kg. Product W sells for €2 per kg. Product X sells for €3 per kg. The company wants to make a gross margin of 10% of sales on product X and also allow 25% for marketing costs on product X.

Required

1. Calculate unit costs per kilogram for products L, W and X, treating X as a by-product. Use the estimated NRV method for allocating joint costs. Deduct the estimated NRV of the by-product produced from the joint cost of products L and W.
2. Calculate unit costs per kilogram for products L, W and X, treating all three as joint products and allocating costs by the estimated NRV method.

6.16 Estimated net realisable value method, by-products (CMA, adapted) (30 minutes)

Flori-Dante Srl grows, processes, packages and sells three joint apple products: (a) sliced apples that are used in frozen pies, (b) apple sauce, and (c) apple juice. The apple peel, processed as animal feed, is treated as a by-product. Flori-Dante uses the estimated NRV method to allocate costs of the joint process to its joint products. The by-product is inventoried at its selling price when produced; the net realisable value of the by-product is used to reduce the joint production costs before the split-off point. Details of Flori-Dante production process are presented here:

- The apples are washed and the peel is removed in the Cutting Department. The apples are then cored and trimmed for slicing. The three joint products and the by-product are recognisable

after processing in the Cutting Department. Each product is then transferred to a separate department for final processing.

- The trimmed apples are forwarded to the Slicing Department, where they are sliced and frozen. Any juice generated during the slicing operation is frozen with the apple slices.
- The pieces of apple trimmed from the fruit are processed into apple sauce in the Crushing Department. The juice generated during this operation is used in the apple sauce.
- The core and any surplus apple pieces generated from the Cutting Department are pulverised into a liquid in the Juicing Department. There is a loss equal to 8% of the weight of the good output produced in this department.
- The peel is chopped into animal feed and packaged in the Feed Department. It can be kept in cold storage until needed.

A total of 270 000 kg of apples were entered into the Cutting Department during November. The following schedule shows the costs incurred in each department, the proportion by weight transferred to the four final processing departments and the selling price of each end-product.

Processing data and costs November 2022

Department	Costs incurred	Proportion of product by weight transferred to departments	Selling price per kilogram of final product
Cutting	€60 000		
Slicing	11 280	33%	€0.80
Crushing	8 550	30	0.55
Juicing	3 000	27	0.40
Feed	700	10	0.10
Total	€83 530	100%	

Required

1 Flori-Dante uses the estimated NRV method to determine stock cost of its joint products; by-products are reported on the balance sheet at their selling price when produced. For the month of November 2022, calculate the following:

   a The output for apple slices, apple sauce, apple juice and animal feed, in kilograms.
   b The estimated NRV at the split-off point for each of the three joint products.
   c The amount of the cost of the Cutting Department assigned to each of the three joint products and the amount assigned to the by-product in accordance with corporate policy.
   d The gross margins in euros for each of the three joint products.

2 Comment on the significance to management of the gross-margin monetary information by joint product for planning and control purposes, as opposed to stock-costing purposes.

6.17 Joint product/by-product distinctions, ethics (continuation of Exercise 6.16) (20–30 minutes)

Flori-Dante classifies animal feed as a by-product. The by-product is inventoried at its selling price when produced; the net realisable value of the product is used to reduce the joint production costs before the split-off point. Prior to 2022, Flori-Dante classified both apple juice and animal feed as by-products. These by-products were not recognised in the accounting system until sold. Revenues from their sale were treated as a revenue item at the time of sale.

Flori-Dante uses a 'management by objectives' basis to compensate its managers. Every six months, managers are given 'stretch' operating-income to revenue ratio targets. They receive no bonus if the target is not met and a fixed amount if the target is met or exceeded.

Required

1 Assume that Flori-Dante managers aim to maximise their bonuses over time. What by-product method (the pre-2022 method or the 2022 method) would the manager prefer?

2 How might an accountant gain insight into whether the manager of the Apple Products division is 'abusing' the accounting system in an effort to maximise his bonus?

3 Describe an accounting system for Flori-Dante that would reduce 'gaming' behaviour by managers with respect to accounting rules for by-products.

6.18 Processing cost issues (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2007) (25 minutes)

A company simultaneously produces three products (X, Y and Z) from a single process. X and Y are processed further before they can be sold; Z is a by-product that is sold immediately for $6 per unit without incurring any further costs. The sales prices of X and Y after further processing are $50 per unit and $60 per unit respectively. Data for October are as follows:

	$
Joint production costs that produced 2500 units of X, 3500 units of Y and 3000 units of Z	140 000
Further processing costs for 2500 units of X	24 000
Further processing costs for 3500 units of Y	46 000

Joint costs are apportioned using the final sales value method.

Required

Calculate the total cost of the production of X for October.

Advanced level

***6.19 Net realisable value cost-allocation method, further process decision** (20–30 minutes)

Langholmen-Sverige AB crushes and refines mineral ore into three products in a joint-cost operation. Costs and production for 2022 were as follows:

- Department 1, at initial joint costs of SKr 420 000, produces 20 000 kg of Vadstena, 60 000 kg of Vättervik and 100 000 kg of Birgitta.
- Department 2 processes Vadstena further at a cost of SKr 100 000.
- Department 3 processes Vättervik further at a cost of SKr 200 000.

Results for 2022 are:

- Vadstena: 20 000 kg completed; 19 000 kg sold for SKr 20 per kg; closing stock, 1000 kg.
- Vättervik: 60 000 kg completed; 59 000 kg sold for SKr 6 per kg; closing stock, 1000 kg.
- Birgitta: 100 000 kg completed; 99 000 kg sold for SKr 1 per kg; closing stock, 1000 kg; Birgitta required no further processing.

Required

1 Use the estimated NRV method to allocate the joint costs of the three products. Calculate the total costs and unit costs of closing stock.

2 Calculate the individual gross-margin percentages of the three products.

3 Suppose Langholmen-Sverige receives an offer to sell all of its Vätervik product for a price of SKr 2 per kg at the split-off point before going through Department 3, just as it comes off the production line in Department 1. Using last year's figures, would Langholmen-Sverige be

better off by selling Vätervik that way or processing it through Department 3 and selling it? Show computations to support your answer. Disregard all other factors not mentioned in the problem.

6.20 Alternative joint-cost-allocation methods, further process decision (40 minutes)

Jerónimos Ltda produces two products, turpentine and methanol (wood alcohol), by a joint process. Joint costs amount to €120 000 per batch of output. Each batch totals 40 000 litres: 25% methanol and 75% turpentine. Both products are processed further without gain or loss in volume. Separable processing costs include: methanol, €0.75 per litre, and turpentine, €0.5 per litre. Methanol sells for €5.25 per litre; turpentine sells for €3.5 per litre.

Required

1. What joint costs per batch should be allocated to the turpentine and methanol, assuming that joint costs are allocated on a physical measure (number of litres at split-off point) basis?
2. If joint costs are to be assigned on an estimated NRV basis, what amounts of joint cost should be assigned to the turpentine and to the methanol?
3. Prepare product-line income statements per batch for requirements 1 and 2. Assume no opening or closing stocks.
4. The company has discovered an additional process by which the methanol can be made into a pleasant tasting alcoholic beverage. The new selling price would be €15 per litre. Additional processing would increase separable costs by €2.25 per litre (in addition to the €0.75 separable cost required to yield methanol). The company would have to pay excise taxes of 20% on the new selling price. Assuming no other changes in cost, what is the joint cost applicable to the methanol (using the estimated NRV method)? Should the company use the new process?

6.21 Alternative methods of joint-cost allocation, product-mix decisions (40 minutes)

Schmidsendl GmbH buys crude vegetable oil. Refining this oil results in four products at the split-off point: A, B, C and D. Product C is fully processed at the split-off point. Products A, B and D can be individually further refined into Super A, Super B and Super D. In the most recent month (December), the output at the split-off point was:

Product A	300 000 litres
Product B	100 000 litres
Product C	50 000 litres
Product D	50 000 litres

The joint costs of purchasing the crude vegetable oil and processing it were €100 000.

Schmidsendl had no beginning or ending stocks. Sales of product C in December were €50 000. Total output of products A, B and D was further refined and then sold. Data related to December are as follows:

	Separable processing costs to make Super products	Sales
Super A	€200 000	€300 000
Super B	80 000	100 000
Super D	90 000	120 000

Schmidsendl had the option of selling products A, B and D at the split-off point. This alternative would have yielded the following sales for the December production:

Product A	€50 000
Product B	30 000
Product D	70 000

Required

1 What is the gross-margin percentage for each product sold in December, using the following methods for allocating the €100 000 joint costs: (a) sales value at split-off, (b) physical measure, and (c) estimated NRV?

2 Could Schmidsendl have increased its December operating profit by making different decisions about the further refining of products A, B or D? Show the effect on operating profit of any changes you recommend.

6.22 Joint and by-products, estimated net realisable value method (CPA, adapted) (30 minutes)

Protomastoras SA produces three products: Alpha, Beta and Gamma. Alpha and Gamma are joint products and Beta is a by-product of Alpha. No joint costs are to be allocated to the by-product. The production processes for a given year are as follows:

a In Department 1, 110 000 kg of direct material Rho are processed at a total cost of €120 000. After processing in Department 1, 60% of the units are transferred to Department 2 and 40% of the units (now Gamma) are transferred to Department 3.

b In Department 2, the material is further processed at a total additional cost of €38 000. Seventy per cent of the units (now Alpha) are transferred to Department 4 and 30% emerge as Beta, the by-product, to be sold at €1.20 per kg. Separable marketing costs for Beta are €8100.

c In Department 4, Alpha is processed at a total additional cost of €23 660. After this processing, Alpha is ready for sale at €5 per kg.

d In Department 3, Gamma is processed at a total additional cost of €165 000. In this department, a normal loss of units of Gamma occurs, which equals 10% of the good output of Gamma. The remaining good output of Gamma is then sold for €12 per kg.

Required

1 Prepare a schedule showing the allocation of the €120 000 joint costs between Alpha and Gamma using the estimated NRV method. The estimated NRV of Beta should be treated as an addition to the sales value of Alpha.

2 Independent of your answer to requirement 1, assume that €102 000 of total joint costs were appropriately allocated to Alpha. Assume also that there were 48 000 kg of Alpha and 20 000 kg of Beta available to sell. Prepare an income statement through gross margin for Alpha using the following facts:

   a During the year, sales of Alpha were 80% of the kilograms available for sale. There was no opening stock.
   b The estimated NRV of Beta available for sale is to be deducted from the cost of producing Alpha. The closing stock of Alpha is to be based on the net costs of production.
   c All other cost and selling price data are listed in a–d.

Collaborative learning exercise

6.23 Joint-cost allocation, process further or sell by-products (CMA, adapted) (75 minutes)

Nor-Pharma AS manufactures three joint products from a joint process: Altox, Lorex and Hycol. Data regarding these products for the fiscal year ended 31 May 2022 are as follows:

	Altox	Lorex	Hycol
Units produced	170 000	500 000	330 000
Selling price per unit at split-off	€3.50	–	€2.00
Separable costs	–	€1 400 000	–
Final selling price per unit	–	€5.00	–

The joint production cost up to the split-off point where Altox, Lorex and Hycol become separable products is €1 800 000 (which includes the €17 500 disposal costs for Dorzine as described below).

The president of Nor-Pharma, Gro Seljord, is reviewing an opportunity to change the way in which these three products are processed and sold. Proposed changes for each product are as follows:

- Altox is currently sold at the split-off point to a manufacturer of vitamins. Altox can also be refined for use as a medication to treat high blood pressure; however, this additional processing would cause a loss of 20 000 units of Altox. The separable costs to further process Altox are estimated to be €250 000 annually. The final product would sell for €5.50 per unit.
- Lorex is currently processed further after the split-off point and sold by Nor-Pharma as a cold remedy. The company has received an offer from another pharmaceutical company to purchase Lorex at the split-off point for €2.25 per unit.
- Hycol is an oil produced from the joint process and is currently sold at the split-off point to a cosmetics manufacturer. Nor-Pharma's Research Department has suggested that the company process this product further and sell it as an ointment to relieve muscle pain. The additional processing would cost €75 000 annually and would result in 25% more units of product. The final product would be sold for €1.80 per unit.

The joint process currently used by Nor-Pharma also produces 50 000 units of Dorzine, a hazardous chemical waste product. The company pays €0.35 per unit to dispose of the Dorzine properly. Nor-Chem, AS, is interested in using the Dorzine as a solvent; however, Nor-Pharma would have to refine the Dorzine at an annual cost of €43 000. Nor-Chem would purchase all the refined Dorzine produced by Nor-Pharma and is willing to pay €0.75 for each unit.

Instructions
Form groups of two or more students to complete the following requirements.

Required

1. Allocate the €1 800 000 joint production cost to Altox, Lorex and Hycol using the estimated NRV method.
2. Identify which of the three joint products Nor-Pharma should sell at the split-off point in the future and which of the three main products the company should process further in order to maximise profits. Support your decisions with appropriate calculations.
3. Assume that Nor-Pharma has decided to refine the waste product Dorzine for sale to Nor-Chem and will treat Dorzine as a by-product of the joint process in the future.
   a. Evaluate whether Nor-Pharma made the correct decision regarding Dorzine. Support your answer with appropriate calculations.
   b. Explain whether the decision to treat Dorzine as a by-product will affect the decisions reached in requirement 2.

CHAPTER 7

Income effects of alternative stock-costing methods

Profit figures capture the attention of managers in a way few other numbers do. Consider three examples:

- Planning decisions typically include an analysis of how the considered options affect future reported profit.
- Increases in reported profit are the object of many decisions related to cost reduction.
- Reported profit is a key number in the performance evaluation of managers.

The reported profit number of manufacturing companies is affected by cost accounting choices related to stock. In this chapter we examine two such choices:

A Stock-costing choices – the choices here relate to which costs are to be recorded as stock when they are incurred. We discuss two alternatives: variable costing and absorption costing.

B Denominator-level choices – the choices here relate to the pre-selected level of the cost-allocation base used to set budgeted fixed manufacturing cost rates. We discuss four alternatives: theoretical capacity, practical capacity, normal utilisation and master-budget utilisation.

We will see in this chapter that there are instances when the compensation and reward systems of a firm in relation to the choice of stock-costing methods used to prepare the financial statements, may induce managers to make decisions that benefit short-term reported earnings at the expense of a firm's long-term financial health.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Identify what distinguishes variable costing from absorption costing
- Construct income statements using absorption costing and variable costing
- Explain differences in profit under absorption costing and variable costing
- Understand how absorption costing influences performance evaluation decisions
- Describe the various denominator-level concepts that can be used in absorption costing
- Explain how the choice of denominator level affects reported operating profit and stock costs

PART A: Stock-costing methods

The two most commonly encountered methods of costing stock are variable costing and absorption costing. Absorption costing is the required method under generally accepted accounting principles for external reporting in most countries. Management accountants most frequently use variable costing for decision making and performance evaluation purposes.

Variable costing and absorption costing

These two methods differ in only one conceptual respect: whether fixed manufacturing costs (both direct and indirect) are 'inventoriable' costs. In other words, fixed manufacturing costs are allocated to product rather than expenses on a period basis. If the former treatment is adopted, then a proportion of fixed manufacturing costs will be carried forward to future periods in closing stocks. Recall from Chapter 2 that inventoriable costs for a manufacturing company are costs associated with the acquisition and conversion of materials and all other manufacturing inputs into goods for sale; these costs are first recorded as part of stock and then subsequently become an expense when the goods are sold.

Variable costing is a method of stock costing in which all variable manufacturing costs are included as inventoriable costs. All fixed manufacturing costs are excluded from inventoriable costs; they are costs of the period in which they are incurred. **Absorption costing** is a method of stock costing in which all variable manufacturing costs and all fixed manufacturing costs are included as inventoriable costs. That is, stock 'absorbs' all manufacturing costs. Throughout this chapter, to emphasise underlying concepts, we assume that the chosen denominator level for computing the variable and fixed manufacturing overhead allocation rates is a production-output-related variable. Examples include direct labour-hours, direct machine-hours and units of production output.

We will use Centurion, which manufactures speciality clothing belts, to illustrate the difference between variable costing and absorption costing. (The variable versus absorption-costing choice is but one of several pertaining to stock costing. For example, decisions related to cost flows – FIFO ('first-in-first-out'), LIFO ('last-in-last-out'), weighted average, and so on – must also be made.) Centurion uses a normal costing system. That is, its direct costs are traced to products using actual prices and the actual inputs used and its indirect (overhead) costs are allocated using budgeted indirect cost rate(s) times actual inputs used. The allocation base for all indirect manufacturing costs is units produced. The allocation base for all variable indirect marketing costs is units sold. (Only manufacturing costs are included in inventoriable costs.)

To keep our focus on variable versus absorption-costing issues, we assume the following for 2022:

- The budgeted number and actual number of units produced are equal (1 100 000 units).
- The budgeted number and actual number of units sold are equal (1 000 000 units).
- The budgeted and actual fixed costs are equal.
- Work in progress is minimal.
- No opening stock on 1 January 2022.
- All variable costs are driven by an output-unit-related variable. (We assume, for example, that batch-level and product-sustaining costs are zero.)

With 2022 production of 1 100 000 units and sales of 1 000 000 units, the closing stock on 31 December 2022 is 100 000 units.

The per unit and total actual costs for 2022 are shown in Exhibit 7.1.

Exhibit 7.1 Centurion's per unit and total costs for 2022

	Per unit	Total costs
Variable costs		
Direct materials	€3.50	€3 850 000
Direct manufacturing labour	1.60	1 760 000
Indirect manufacturing costs	0.90	990 000
Manufacturing costs	6.00	6 600 000
Direct marketing costs	0.80	800 000
Indirect marketing costs	1.60	1 600 000
Marketing costs	2.40	2 400 000
Total variable costs	€8.40	€9 000 000
Fixed costs		
Direct manufacturing costs	€0.30	€330 000
Indirect manufacturing costs	1.70	1 870 000
Manufacturing costs	2.00	2 200 000
Direct marketing costs	2.10	2 100 000
Indirect marketing costs	3.40	3 400 000
Marketing costs	5.50	5 500 000
Total fixed costs	€7.50	€7 700 000

The heart of the difference between variable and absorption costing for financial reporting is accounting for fixed manufacturing costs:

		Direct	Indirect
Same under both methods	Variable	Direct manufacturing cost	Indirect manufacturing
Differs under both methods	Fixed	Direct manufacturing cost	Indirect manufacturing

For stock valuation under both methods, all variable manufacturing costs (both direct and indirect) are costs which remain unexpired until the stock is sold. That is, they are first recorded as an asset when they are incurred. Under variable costing, fixed manufacturing costs (both direct and indirect) are deducted as a period cost in the period in which they are incurred. Examples of variable direct manufacturing costs are direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. An example of a fixed direct manufacturing cost is the annual lease cost of a machine dedicated to the assembly of a single product. The annual lease cost of a building in which multiple products are assembled illustrates a fixed indirect manufacturing cost. Under absorption costing, fixed manufacturing costs are initially treated as stock-based costs. They then become expenses in the form of cost of goods sold when sales occur. The unit inventoriable costs for Centurion under the two methods are set out in Exhibit 7.2.

Exhibit 7.3 presents the variable-costing and absorption-costing income statements for Centurion in 2022. The variable-costing income statement differentiates between fixed and variable costs. It entails the determination of a 'contribution margin' which represents sales less variable costs. We refer to this type of income statement as the 'contribution' format. The absorption-costing income statement calculates a 'gross margin' which represents sales less cost of goods sold. Why these differences in format? The distinction between variable and fixed costs is central to variable costing; the contribution format highlights this distinction. The distinction between manufacturing and non-manufacturing costs is central to absorption costing; the

Exhibit 7.2 Centurion's unit inventoriable costs under variable and absorption costing

	Variable costing		Absorption costing	
Variable manufacturing costs				
Direct materials	€3.50		€3.50	
Direct manufacturing labour	1.60		1.60	
Indirect manufacturing costs	0.90	6.00	0.90	6.00
Fixed manufacturing costs				
Direct manufacturing costs			0.30	
Indirect manufacturing costs			1.70	2.00
Total inventoriable costs		€6.00		€8.00

gross-margin format highlights this distinction. Many companies using absorption costing do not make any distinction between variable and fixed costs in their accounting system.

See how the fixed manufacturing costs of €2 200 000 are accounted for in Exhibit 7.3. The income statement under variable costing deducts the €2 200 000 lump sum as a period cost in 2022. In contrast, the income statement under absorption costing regards each finished unit as absorbing €2 of fixed manufacturing costs. Under absorption costing the €2 200 000 is initially treated as a product cost in 2022. Given the preceding data for Centurion, €2 000 000 subsequently becomes an expense in 2022 and €200 000 remains part of closing finished goods stock, 100 000 units × €2, at 31 December 2022. The variable manufacturing costs are accounted for in the same way in both income statements in Exhibit 7.3.

Never overlook the heart of the matter. The difference between variable costing and absorption costing centres on accounting for fixed manufacturing costs. If stock levels change, operating profit will differ between the two methods because of the difference in accounting for fixed manufacturing overhead. Compare sales of 900 000, 1 000 000 and 1 100 000 units by Centurion in 2022. Fixed manufacturing costs would be included in the 2022 expense as follows:

	Fixed manufacturing costs treated as an expense in 2022
Variable costing, whether	
• sales are 900 000, 1 000 000 or 1 100 000 units	€2 200 000
Absorption costing, where	
• sales are 900 000 units, €400 000 (200 000 × €2) held back in stock	€1 800 000
• sales are 1 000 000 units, €200 000 (100 000 × €2) held back in stock	€2 000 000
• sales are 1 100 000 units, €0 held back in stock	€2 200 000

Some companies use the term **direct costing** to describe the stock-costing method we call variable costing. Direct costing is an unfortunate choice of terms for two reasons.

(1) Variable costing does not include all direct costs as inventoriable costs. Only direct variable manufacturing costs are included. Any direct fixed manufacturing costs and any direct non-manufacturing costs (such as marketing) are excluded from inventoriable costs. (2) Variable costing includes as inventoriable costs not only direct manufacturing costs, but also some indirect costs (variable indirect manufacturing costs).

Exhibit 7.3 Comparison of variable-costing and absorption-costing income statements for the year ended 31 December 2022 for Centurion (in €000)

Panel A: Variable costing

Revenues: €17.00 × 1 000 000 units		€17 000
Variable costs		
Opening stock	€0	
Variable cost of goods manufactured: €6.00 × 1 100 000	6 600	
Cost of goods available for sale	6 600	
Closing stock: €6.00 × 100 000	600	
Variable manufacturing cost of goods sold	6 000	
Variable marketing costs	2 400	
Adjustment for variable-cost variances	0	
Total variable costs		8 400
Contribution margin		8 600
Fixed costs		
Fixed manufacturing costs	2 200	
Fixed marketing costs	5 500	
Adjustment for fixed-cost variances	0	
Total fixed costs		7 700
Operating profit		€900

Panel B: Absorption costing

Revenues: €17.00 × 1 000 000 units		€17 000
Cost of goods sold		
Opening stock	€0	
Variable manufacturing costs: €6.00 × 1 100 000	6 600	
Fixed manufacturing costs: €200 × 1 100 000	2 200	
Cost of goods available for sale	8 800	
Closing stock: €8.00 × 100 000	800	
Adjustment for manufacturing variances	0	
Cost of goods sold		8 000
Gross margin		9 000
Marketing costs		
Variable marketing costs	2 400	
Fixed marketing costs	5 500	
Adjustment for marketing variances	0	
Total marketing costs		7 900
Operating profit		€1 100

Comparison of variable costing and absorption costing

Our next example explores the implications of accounting for fixed manufacturing costs in more detail. Daxenberger manufactures and markets telescopes. It uses a standard costing system for both its manufacturing and marketing costs. (For ease of exposition, we assume that Daxenberger uses a standard costing system for all its operating costs, that is, it uses standards (or budgeted estimates) for both variable and fixed costs in both its manufacturing and marketing.) Standard costing systems are further discussed in Chapters 14 and 15. It began business on 1 January 2022 and it is now March 2022. The chairman asks you to prepare comparative income statements for January 2022 and February 2022. The simplified unit data that are available are set out in Exhibit 7.4.

The standard variable manufacturing costs per unit of €20 include €11 for direct materials. For simplicity, we assume all fixed manufacturing costs are indirect product costs.

We assume work in progress is minimal. There were no opening or closing stocks of materials. On 1 January 2022, there was no opening stock of finished goods. In order to highlight the effect of the 'production-volume variance', we assume that actual costs and actual volumes were equal to budgeted costs and budgeted volumes during January and February of 2022; in other words, there were no other variances (variances are discussed in Chapters 15 and 16). The standard fixed manufacturing cost per unit is €16 (€12 800 ÷ 800). Thus the key standard cost data per unit are

Variable costs	
Standard variable manufacturing costs	€20
Standard variable marketing costs	19
Total variable costs	€39
Manufacturing costs	
Standard variable manufacturing costs	€20
Standard fixed manufacturing costs	16
Total manufacturing costs	€36

Assume that managers at Daxenberger receive a bonus based on reported monthly income. The following points illustrate how the choice between variable and absorption costing will affect Daxenberger's reported monthly income and hence the bonuses their managers will receive.

Exhibit 7.4 Unit data available for Daxenberger at March 2022

Unit data	January 2022	February 2022	
Opening stock	0	200	
Production	600	650	
Sales	400	750	
Closing stock	200	100	
Other data			
Selling price			€99
Standard variable manufacturing costs per unit			€20
Standard variable marketing costs per unit			€19
Standard fixed manufacturing costs per month			€12 800
Standard fixed marketing costs per month			€10 400
Budgeted denominator level of production per month			800 output units

Comparative income statements

Exhibit 7.5 contains the comparative income statements under variable costing (Panel A) and absorption costing (Panel B) for Daxenberger in January 2022 and February 2022. The operating profit numbers are:

	January 2022	February 2022
1 Absorption costing	€4 000	€20 200
2 Variable costing	800	21 800
3 Difference (1) – (2)	€3 200	€(1 600)

In Panel A, variable costing, all variable-cost line items are at standard cost except the last line item, 'Adjustment for variances'. This line item would include any variance related to variable-cost items (which are zero in our Daxenberger example). In Panel B, absorption costing, all cost of goods sold line items are at standard cost except the last line item, 'Adjustment for variances'. This line item would include all manufacturing cost variances. Only the production-volume variance is relevant in our Daxenberger example.

Keep the following points in mind about absorption costing as you study Panel B of Exhibit 7.5:

1. The inventoriable costs are €36 per unit, not €20, because fixed manufacturing costs (€16) as well as variable manufacturing costs (€20) are assigned to each unit of product.
2. The €16 fixed manufacturing costs rate was based on a denominator level of 800 units per month (€12 800 ÷ 800 = €16). Whenever production (not sales) deviates from the denominator level, a production-volume variance arises. The amount of the variance is €16 multiplied by the difference between the actual level of production and the denominator level.
3. The production-volume variance, which relates to fixed manufacturing overhead, exists only under absorption costing and not under variable costing. (All other variances, discussed in Chapters 15 and 16, exist under both absorption costing and variable costing.)
4. The absorption-costing income statement classifies costs primarily by business function, such as manufacturing and marketing. In contrast, the variable-costing income statement features cost behaviour (variable or fixed) as the basis of classification. Absorption-costing income statements need not differentiate between the variable and fixed costs. Exhibit 7.5 does make this differentiation for Daxenberger in order to highlight how individual line items are classified differently under variable- and absorption-costing formats.

Explaining differences in operating profit

If the stock level increases during an accounting period, variable costing will generally report less operating profit than absorption costing; when the stock level decreases, variable costing will generally report more operating profit than absorption costing. These differences in operating profit are due solely to moving fixed manufacturing costs into stock as stock increase and out of stock as they decrease.

The difference between operating profit under absorption costing and variable costing can be calculated by formula 1 below, which is illustrated with Exhibit 7.5 data. This formula assumes that the amounts used for opening and closing stock are after proration of manufacturing overhead variances (see Chapter 3).

Exhibit 7.5 Daxenberger: Comparison of variable costing and absorption costing income statements for January 2022 and February 2022

Panel A: Variable costing

	January 2022	February 2022
Revenue*	€39 600	€74 250
Variable costs		
Opening stock	0	4 000
Variable cost of goods manufactured†	12 000	13 000
Cost of goods available for sale	12 000	17 000
Closing stock‡	4 000	2 000
Variable manufacturing cost of goods sold	8 000	15 000
Variable marketing costs§	7 600	14 250
Total variable costs (at standard)	15 600	29 250
Contribution margin (at standard)	24 000	45 000
Adjustment for variable-cost variances	0	0
Contribution margin	24 000	45 000
Fixed costs		
Fixed manufacturing costs	12 800	12 800
Fixed marketing costs	10 400	10 400
Total fixed costs (at standard)	23 200	23 200
Adjustment for fixed-cost variances	0	0
Total fixed costs	23 200	23 200
Operating profit	€800	€21 800

* 400 × €99 = €39 600; 750 × €99 = €74 250.
† 600 × €20 = €12 000; 650 × €20 = €13 000.
‡ 200 × €20 = €4000; 100 × €20 = €2000.
§ 400 × €19 = €7600; 750 × €19 = €14 250.

Panel B: Absorption costing

	January 2022	February 2022
Revenue*	€39 600	€74 250
Cost of goods sold		
Opening stock	0	7 200
Variable manufacturing costs†	12 000	13 000
Fixed manufacturing costs‡	9 600	10 400
Cost of goods available for sale	21 600	30 600
Closing stock§	7 200	3 600
Total cost of goods sold (at standard)	14 400	27 000
Gross margin (at standard costs)	25 200	47 250
Adjustment for manufacturing variances	3 200 U	2 400 U
Gross margin	22 000	44 850
Marketing costs		
Variable marketing costs#	7 600	14 250
Fixed marketing costs	10 400	10 400
Total marketing (at standard)	18 000	24 650
Adjustment for marketing variances‖	0	0
Total marketing	18 000	24 650
Operating profit	€4 000	€20 200

* 400 × €99 = €39 600; 750 × €99 = €74 250.
† 600 × €20 = €12 000; 650 × €20 = €13 000.
‡ 600 × €16 = €9600; 650 × €16 = €10 400.
§ 200 × (€20 + €16) = €7200; 100 × (€20 + €16) = €3600.
‖ January 2022 has €3200 unfavourable (U) production-volume variance (600 − 800) × 16 = €3200 unfavourable. February 2022 has €2400 unfavourable production-volume variance (650 − 800) × €16.00 = €2400 unfavourable.
400 × €19 = €7600; 750 × €19 = €14 250.

Formula 1

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Absorption-costing operation profit}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Variable-costing operation profit}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Fixed manufacturing costs in closing stock}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Fixed manufacturing costs in opening stock}\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{January 2022:}\quad €4000 - €800 &= (200 \times €16) - (0 \times €16)\\ €3200 &= €3200\\ \text{February 2022:}\quad €20\,200 - €21\,800 &= (100 \times €16) - (200 \times €16)\\ -€1600 &= -€1600\end{aligned}$$

Fixed manufacturing costs in closing stock are a current-period expense under variable costing that absorption costing defers to future period.

Two alternative formulae can be used if we assume that all manufacturing variances are written off as period costs, that no change occurs in work-in-progress stock and that no change occurs in the budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead rate between accounting periods:

Formula 2

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Absorption-costing operation income}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Variable-costing operation income}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Units produced} - \text{Units sold}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Budget fixed manufacturing costs rate}\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{January 2022:}\quad €4000 - €800 &= (600 - 400) \times €16\\ €3200 &= €3200\\ \text{February 2022:}\quad €20\,200 - €21\,800 &= (650 - 750) \times €16\\ -€1600 &= -€1600\end{aligned}$$

Formula 3

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Absorption-costing operation income}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Variable-costing operation income}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Closing stock in units} - \text{Opening stock in units}\end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix}\text{Budget fixed manufacturing costs rate}\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{January 2022:}\quad €4000 - €800 &= (200 - 0) \times €16\\ €3200 &= €3200\\ \text{February 2022:}\quad €20\,200 - €21\,800 &= (100 - 200) \times €16\\ -€1600 &= -€1600\end{aligned}$$

Effect of sales and production on operating profit

The period-to-period change in operating profit under variable costing is driven solely by changes in the unit level of sales, given a constant contribution margin per unit (that is, unit sales less unit variable costs). Consider for Daxenberger the variable-costing operating profit in February 2022 versus that in January 2022:

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Change in operating profit}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Contribution margin}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{Change in unit sales level}\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}€21\,800 - €800 &= (€99 - €39) \times (750 - 400)\\ €21\,000 &= €60 \times 350\\ €21\,000 &= €21\,000\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 7.6 Daxenberger: effect on absorption-costing operating profit of different production levels holding the unit sales level constant, data for February 2022 with sales of 750 units

	February 2022 production level				
	550	650	700	800	850
Unit data					
Opening stock	200	200	200	200	200
Production	550	650	700	800	850
Goods available for sale	750	850	900	1 000	1 050
Sales	750	750	750	750	750
Closing stock	0	100	150	250	300
Income statement					
Revenues	€74 250	€74 250	€74 250	€74 250	€74 250
Opening stock	7 200	7 200	7 200	7 200	7 200
Variable manufacturing costs*	11 000	13 000	14 000	16 000	17 000
Fixed manufacturing costs†	8 800	10 400	11 200	12 800	13 600
Cost of goods available for sale	27 000	30 600	32 400	36 000	37 800
Closing stock‡	0	3 600	5 400	9 000	10 800
Cost of goods sold (at standard cost)	27 000	27 000	27 000	27 000	27 000
Adjustment for manufacturing variances§	4 000 U	2 400 U	1 600 U	0	800 F
Total cost of goods sold	31 000	29 400	28 600	27 000	26 200
Gross margin	43 250	44 850	45 650	47 250	48 050
Total marketing and administrative costs	24 650	24 650	24 650	24 650	24 650
Operating profit	€18 600	€20 200	€21 000	€22 600	€23 400

* €20 per unit.
† Assigned at €16 per unit.
‡ €36 per unit.
§ (Production in units − 800) × €16. All written off to cost of goods sold at end of the accounting period.

Note that under variable costing, Daxenberger managers cannot increase operating profit (and hence their bonuses) by producing for stock.

Under absorption costing, however, period-to-period change in operating profit is driven by variations in both the unit level of sales and the unit level of production. Exhibit 7.6 illustrates this point. The exhibit shows how absorption-costing operating profit for February 2022 changes as the production level in February 2022 changes. This exhibit assumes that all variances (including the production-volume variance) are written off to cost of goods sold at the end of each accounting period. The opening stock in February 2022 of 200 units and the February sales of 750 units are unchanged. Exhibit 7.6 shows that production of only 550 units meets February 2022 sales of 750. Operating profit at this production level is €18 600. By producing more than 550 units in February 2022, Daxenberger increases absorption-costing operating profit. Each unit in February 2022 closing stock will increase February operating profit by €16. For example, if 800 units are produced, closing stock will be 250 units and operating profit will be €22 600. This amount is €4000 more than the operating profit with zero closing stock (250 units × €16 = €4000) on 28 February 2022. Recall that Daxenberger's managers receive a bonus based on monthly operating

Exhibit 7.7 Comparative income effects of variable costing and absorption costing

Question	Variable costing	Absorption costing	Comment
Are fixed manufacturing costs inventoried?	No	Yes	Basic theoretical question when these costs should be expensed as period costs
Is there a production-volume variance?	No	Yes	Choice of denominator level affects measurement of operating profit under absorption costing only
How are the other variances treated?	Same	Same	Highlights that the basic difference is the accounting for fixed manufacturing costs, not the accounting for any variable manufacturing costs
Are classifications between variable and fixed costs routinely made?	Yes	Not always	Absorption costing can be easily modified to obtain sub-classifications for variable and fixed costs, if desired (for example, see Exhibit 7.3, Panel B)
How do changes in unit stock levels affect operating profit?			Differences are attributable to the timing of when fixed manufacturing costs become period costs
Production = sales	Equal	Equal	
Production > sales	Lower*	Higher†	
Production < sales	Higher	Lower	
What are the effects on cost–volume–profit relationships?	Driven by unit sales	Driven by unit sales level and unit production level	Management control benefit: effects of changes in production level on operating profit are easier to understand under variable costing

* That is, lower operating income than under absorption costing.
† That is, higher operating income than under variable costing.

profit. Absorption costing enables them to increase operating profit (and hence their bonuses) by producing for stock.

Exhibit 7.7 compares the key differences between variable and absorption costing.

Capsule comparison of stock-costing methods

Variable costing or absorption costing may be combined with actual, normal or standard costing (discussed in Chapters 15 and 16). Exhibit 7.8 presents a capsule comparison of a job-costing record under six alternative stock-costing systems:

Variable costing	Absorption costing
1 Actual costing	4 Actual costing
2 Normal costing	5 Normal costing
3 Standard costing	6 Standard costing

Exhibit 7.8 Capsule comparison of alternative stock-costing systems

			Actual costing	Normal costing	Standard costing
Absorption costing	Variable costing	Variable direct conversion costs*	Actual prices × Actual inputs used	Actual prices × Actual inputs used	Standard prices × Standard inputs allowed for actual output achieved
		Variable indirect manufacturing costs	Actual variable indirect rates × Actual inputs used	Budgeted variable indirect rates × Actual inputs used	Standard variable indirect rates × Standard inputs allowed for actual output achieved
		Fixed direct manufacturing costs	Actual prices × Actual inputs used	Actual prices × Actual inputs used	Standard prices × Standard inputs allowed for actual output achieved
		Fixed indirect manufacturing costs	Actual fixed indirect rates × Actual inputs used	Budgeted fixed indirect rates × Actual inputs used	Standard fixed indirect rates × Standard inputs allowed for actual output achieved

* Conversion costs are all manufacturing costs minus direct materials costs.

The data in Exhibit 7.8 represent the debits to job-costing account (that is, the amounts assigned to product) under alternative stock-costing systems.

Variable costing has been a controversial subject among accountants – not so much because there is disagreement about the need for delineating between variable and fixed costs for management planning and control, but because there is a question about using variable costing for external reporting. Those favouring variable costing for external reporting maintain that the fixed portion of manufacturing costs is more closely related to the capacity to produce than to the production of specific units. Supporters of absorption costing maintain that stock should carry a fixed manufacturing cost component. Why? Because both variable and fixed manufacturing costs are necessary to produce goods, both types of cost should be inventoriable, regardless of their having different behaviour patterns.

Absorption costing (or variants close to it) is the method most commonly used for the external regulatory purpose of accounting systems. For external reporting to shareholders, most companies around the globe tend to follow the generally accepted accounting principle that all manufacturing overhead is inventoriable.

Performance measures and absorption costing

Undesirable stockbuilding

Absorption costing enables managers to increase operating profit in the short run by increasing the production schedule independent of customer demand for products. Exhibit 7.6 shows how a Daxenberger manager could increase February 2022 operating profit from €18 600 to €22 600 by producing an additional 250 units for stock. Such an increase in the production schedule can

increase the costs of doing business without any attendant increase in sales. For example, a manager whose performance is evaluated on the basis of absorption-costing income may increase production at the end of a review period solely to increase reported income. Each additional unit produced absorbs fixed manufacturing costs that would otherwise have been written off as a cost of the period.

The undesirable effects of such an increase in production may be sizeable and they can arise in several ways as the following examples show.

1. A plant manager may switch production to those orders that absorb the highest amount of fixed manufacturing costs, irrespective of the customer demand for these products (called 'cherry picking' the production line). Some difficult-to-manufacture items may be delayed, resulting in failure to meet promised customer delivery dates.
2. A plant manager may accept a particular order to increase production even though another plant in the same company is better suited to handle that order.
3. To meet increased production, a manager may defer maintenance beyond the current accounting period. Although operating profit may increase now, future operating profit will probably decrease because of increased repairs and less efficient equipment.

Current criticisms of absorption costing have increasingly emphasised its potentially undesirable incentives for managers. Indeed, one critic labels absorption costing as 'one of the black holes of cost accounting', in part because it may induce managers to make decisions 'against the long-run interests' of the company.

Proposals for revising performance evaluation

Critics of absorption costing have made a variety of proposals for revising how managers are evaluated. Their proposals include the following:

1. Changing the accounting system. As discussed previously in this chapter, variable costing reduces the incentives of managers to stockbuild. An alternative approach is to incorporate into the accounting system a charge for managers who tie up funds in stock. The higher the amount of stock held, the higher the stock holding charge.
2. Changing the time period used to evaluate performance. Critics of absorption costing give examples where managers take actions that maximise quarterly or annual income at the potential expense of long-run income. By evaluating performance over a three- to five-year period, the incentive to take short-run actions that reduce long-term income is lessened.
3. Careful budgeting and stock planning to reduce management's freedom to build excess stock. For instance, the budgeted monthly balance sheets have estimates of the value of stock. If the actual stock values exceed these estimated amounts, top management is alerted to investigate the stock build-ups.
4. Including non-financial as well as financial variables in the measures used to evaluate performance. Companies are currently using non-financial variables, such as the following, to monitor managers' performance in key areas:

   a $$\frac{\text{Closing stock in units this period}}{\text{Closing stock in units last period}}$$

   b $$\frac{\text{Sales in units this period}}{\text{Closing stock in units this period}}$$

Any build-up of stock at the end of the year would be signalled by tracking the month-to-month behaviour of these two non-financial stock measures (where a company manufactures or sells several products, the two measures could be reported on a product-by-product basis).

Concepts in action — Can ESPN avoid the cord-cutting 'death spiral'?

For years, ESPN has dominated the sports-broadcasting airwaves in the United States and around the world. Consisting of eight cable-television networks, a website, a magazine and various international operations, ESPN is an $11 billion business unit within The Walt Disney Company.

In 2015, ESPN contributed about half of all revenue from Disney's media networks business, the company's biggest segment, and had operating margins of 40%, good for a $4.4 billion profit.

Despite its financial success, ESPN lost more than 16 million subscribers from 2012 to 2018. With new entertainment options from Netflix and Amazon Prime, many television viewers have cancelled their costly cable subscriptions (people known as 'cord cutters') or never signing up for cable to begin with ('cord nevers'). With subscriber fees for the ESPN's networks costing around $8 per month, cord-cutting cost ESPN nearly $1.5billion in 2018 revenue, at a time when its fixed costs are rising. In recent years, the fees paid by ESPN to sports leagues to carry live events have risen dramatically. For example, in 2015 ESPN signed a new deal with the NBA that will cost the network $1.4 billion per year over nine years to show live professional basketball games, three times the amount of the previous agreement. In 2018, ESPN signed a similar deal with the Ultimate Fighting Championship to pay $300 million per year for five years for broadcast and streaming rights.

Some observers have wondered whether cord cutting will lead to a downward demand spiral for ESPN and other cable networks, better known as a 'death spiral'. Under this scenario, a further reduction in subscribers would force ESPN to raise its subscription rates to make up for the lost revenue to cover its high fixed costs. The higher unit costs, in turn, would encourage even more subscribers to cut the cord, further slashing revenues and making ESPN's model unsustainable.

As a result, ESPN managers have taken aggressive action to reduce its costs where possible. Between 2015 and 2017, ESPN laid off more than 450 on-air and behind-the-scenes employees. The company is also pursuing new revenue opportunities, including its new ESPN+ streaming service. For $4.99 per month, subscribers get access to thousands of Major League Baseball, National Hockey League, Major League Soccer, and Professional Golf Association events, as well as popular international sports, including soccer, cricket and rugby. While many sports fans are still tuning in, will enough of them pay for ESPN in the years ahead to ensure it avoids a 'death spiral'? That remains to be seen.

Sources: Bowman, J. (2016) 'Don't expect ESPN to cut the cord anytime soon', *The Motley Fool*, 24 January (https://www.fool.com/ investing/general/2016/01/24/dont-expect-espn-to-cut-the-cord-anytime-soon.aspx); Draper, K. (2017) 'ESPN is laying off 150 more employees', *The New York Times*, 29 November (https://www.nytimes.com/2017/11/29/sports/espn-layoffs.html); Spangle, T. (2018) 'ESPN+ launches with a ton of live sports – and limited ads', *Variety*, 12 April (https://variety.com/2018/digital/news/espn-plus-subscription-sports-streaming-limitedads-1202751319/); Trefis Team (2018) 'With subscriber declines continuing, how much is ESPN worth?' Forbes, 15 March (https://www. forbes.com/sites/greatspeculations/2018/03/15/with-subscriber-declines-continuing-how-much-is-espn-worth/); Ramachandran, S. (2018) 'Adding to ESPN's struggles: Politics', *The Wall Street Journal*, 25 May (https://www.wsj.com/articles/how-a-weakened-espn-became-consumed-bypolitics-1527176425); Littleton, C. (2018) 'ESPN loses 2 million subscribers in Fiscal 2018', *Variety*, 21 November (https://variety.com/2018/biz/ news/espn-disney-channel-subscriber-losses-2018-1203035003/)

PART B: Denominator-level concepts and absorption costing

Now we examine how alternative denominator-level concepts affect fixed manufacturing overhead rates and operating profit under absorption costing. Reported cost numbers can be sizably affected by the choice of a denominator level. This can be important in many contexts, such as pricing and contracting based on reported cost numbers.

Alternative denominator-level concepts

We use a coconut juice bottling plant to illustrate several alternative denominator-level concepts. Cocobot is a specialist Sri Lankan company with a new process. It produces 500 ml bottles of coconut juice. The variable manufacturing costs of each bottle are €0.35. The fixed monthly

manufacturing costs of the bottling plant are €50 000. Cocobot uses absorption costing for its monthly internal reporting system and for financial reporting to shareholders. Cocobot could use any one of at least four different denominator-level concepts for computing the fixed manufacturing overhead rate – theoretical capacity, practical capacity, normal utilisation and master-budget utilisation. Whichever the denominator-level concept, Cocobot defines its denominator in output units (500 ml bottles of coconut juice).

Theoretical capacity and practical capacity

The term capacity means constraint, an upper limit. **Theoretical capacity** is the denominator-level concept that is based on the production of output at full efficiency for all of the time. Cocobot can produce 2400 bottles an hour when the bottling lines are operating at full speed. There is a maximum of two 8-hour shifts per day following a trade union agreement. Thus, the theoretical monthly capacity would be:

$$2400 \text{ per hour} \times 16 \text{ hours} \times 30 \text{ days} = 1\,152\,000 \text{ bottles}$$

Theoretical capacity is theoretical in the sense that it does not allow for any plant maintenance, any interruptions because of bottle breakages on the filling lines, or a host of other factors. While it is a rare plant that is able to operate at theoretical capacity, it can represent a goal or target level of usage.

Practical capacity is the denominator-level concept that reduces theoretical capacity for unavoidable operating interruptions such as scheduled maintenance time, shutdowns for holidays, and so on. Assume that the practical hourly production rate is 2000 bottles an hour and that the plant can operate 25 days a month. The practical monthly capacity is thus:

$$2000 \text{ per hour} \times 16 \text{ hours} \times 25 \text{ days} = 800\,000 \text{ bottles}$$

Engineering, economic and human factors are important to consider when estimating theoretical or practical capacity. Engineers at Cocobot's plant can provide input on the technical capabilities of machines for filling bottles. In some cases, however, an increase in capacity may be technically possible but not economically sound. For example, the trade union may actually permit a third shift per day but only at unusually high wage rates that clearly do not make financial sense in the coconut juice market. Human-safety factors, such as increased injury risk when the line operates at faster speeds, are also important to consider.

Normal utilisation and master-budget utilisation

Both theoretical capacity and practical capacity measure the denominator level in terms of what a plant can supply. In contrast, normal utilisation and master-budget utilisation (discussed further in Chapters 14 and 15) measure the denominator level in terms of demand for the output of the plant. In many cases, budgeted demand is well below the supply available (productive capacity).

Normal utilisation is the denominator-level concept based on the level of capacity utilisation that satisfies average customer demand over a period (say, of two to three years) that includes seasonal, cyclical or other trend factors. **Master-budget utilisation** is the denominator-level concept based on the anticipated level of capacity utilisation for the next budget period. These two denominator levels can differ – for example, when an industry has cyclical periods of high and low demand or when management believes that the budgeted production for the coming period is unrepresentative of 'long-term' demand.

Consider our Cocobot example of coconut juice production. The master budget for 2022 is based on production of 400 000 bottles per month. Hence the master-budget denominator level is 400 000 bottles. However, Cocobot senior management believes that over the next one to three years the normal monthly production level will be 500 000 bottles. They consider the 2022 budgeted production level of 400 000 bottles to be 'abnormally' low. Why? A major competitor has

been sharply reducing its coconut juice prices and has also been spending enormous amounts on advertising. Cocobot expects that the lower prices and advertising blitz will be a short-run phenomenon and that in 2022 the market share it has lost to this competitor will be regained.

A major reason for choosing master-budget utilisation over normal utilisation is the difficulty of forecasting normal utilisation in many industries with long-run cyclical patterns. A similar problem occurs when estimating 'normal' demand. Some marketing managers are prone to overestimating their ability to regain lost market share. Their estimate of 'normal' demand for their product may be based on an overly optimistic outlook (a case of counting chickens before they have hatched).

Effect on financial statements

Cocobot has budgeted fixed manufacturing costs equivalent to €50 000 per month. Assume that actual costs are also €50 000. To keep this example simple, we assume all fixed manufacturing costs are indirect. The budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead rates in May 2022 for the four alternative denominator-level concepts discussed are:

Denominator-level concept	Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead per month	Budgeted denominator level (in bottles)	Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead cost rate
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4) = (2) ÷ (3)
Theoretical capacity	€50 000	1 152 000	€0.0434
Practical capacity	50 000	800 000	0.0625
Normal utilisation	50 000	500 000	0.1000
Master-budget utilisation	50 000	400 000	0.1250

The budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead rate based on master-budget utilisation (€0.1250) is more than 180% above the rate based on theoretical capacity (€0.0434).

Assume now that Cocobot's actual production in May 2022 is 460 000 bottles of coconut juice. Actual sales are 420 000 bottles. Also assume no opening stock on 1 May 2022 and no variances in manufacturing for May 2022. The manufacturing plant sells bottles of coconut juice to another division for €0.50 per bottle. Its only costs are variable manufacturing costs of €0.35 per bottle and €50 000 per month for fixed manufacturing overhead. Cocobot writes off all variances to cost of goods sold on a monthly basis.

The budgeted manufacturing costs per bottle of coconut juice for each denominator-level concept is the sum of €0.35 in variable manufacturing costs and the budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead costs (shown from the preceding table).

Denominator-level concept	Variable manufacturing costs	Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead cost rate	Total manufacturing costs
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4) = (2) + (3)
Theoretical capacity	€0.35	€0.0434	€0.3934
Practical capacity	0.35	0.0625	0.4125
Normal utilisation	0.35	0.1000	0.4500
Master-budget utilisation	0.35	0.1250	0.4750

Each denominator-level concept will result in a different production-volume variance.

$$\text{Production-volume variance} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Denominator level in output units}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Actual output units}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budget fixed manufacturing overhead rate per output unit}\end{array}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{Theoretical capacity} &= (1\,152\,000 - 460\,000) \times €0.0434 \\
&= €30\,033\,\text{U (rounded up)} \\
\text{Practical capacity} &= (800\,000 - 460\,000) \times €0.0625 \\
&= €21\,250\,\text{U} \\
\text{Normal utilisation} &= (500\,000 - 460\,000) \times €0.1000 \\
&= €4000\,\text{U} \\
\text{Master-budget utilisation} &= (400\,000 - 460\,000) \times €0.1250 \\
&= €7500\,\text{F}
\end{aligned}
$$

Exhibit 7.9 shows how the choice of a denominator affects Cocobot's operating profit for May 2022. Using the master-budget denominator results in assigning the highest amount of fixed manufacturing overhead costs per bottle to the 40 000 bottles in closing stock. Accordingly, operating profit is highest using the master-budget utilisation denominator. Recall that Cocobot had no opening stock on 1 May 2022, production in May of 460 000 bottles and sales in May of 420000 bottles. Hence, the closing stock on 31 May is 40 000 bottles. The differences among the operating profit for the four denominator-level concepts in Exhibit 7.9 are due to different amounts of fixed manufacturing overhead being inventoried:

Denominator-level concept	Fixed manufacturing overhead in 31 May 2022 stock
Theoretical capacity	40 000 × €0.0434 = €1736
Practical capacity	40 000 × 0.0625 = 2500
Normal utilisation	40 000 × 0.1000 = 4000
Master-budget utilisation	40 000 × 0.1250 = 5000

Thus, in Exhibit 7.9 the difference in operating profit between the master-budget utilisation concept and the normal utilisation concept of €1000 (€8000 − €7000) is due to the difference in fixed manufacturing overhead inventoried (€5000 − €4000).

Exhibit 7.9 Cocobot: Income statement effects of alternative denominator-level concepts for May 2022

	Theoretical capacity	Practical capacity	Normal utilisation	Master-budget utilisation
Sales, €0.50 × 420 000	€210 000	€210 000	€210 000	€210 000
Cost of goods sold (COGS)				
Opening stock	0	0	0	0
Variable manufacturing costs*	161 000	161 000	161 000	161 000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs†	19 964	28 750	46 000	57 500
Cost of goods available for sale	180 964	189 750	207 000	218 500
Closing stock‡	15 736	16 500	18 000	19 000
Total COGS (at standard costs)	165 228	173 250	189 000	199 500
Adjustment for manufacturing variances§	30 033 U	21 250 U	4 000 U	7 500 F
Total COGS	195 261	194 500	193 000	192 000
Gross margin	14 739	15 500	17 000	18 000
Marketing costs	10 000	10 000	10 000	10 000
Operating profit	€4 739	€5 500	€7 000	€8 000

* €0.35 × 460 000 = €161 000

† Fixed manufacturing overhead costs:
€0.0434 × 460 000 = €19 964
€0.0625 × 460 000 = €28 750
€0.1000 × 460 000 = €46 000
€0.1250 × 460 000 = €57 500

‡ Closing stock costs
(0.35 + 0.0434) × (460 000 − 420 000) = €15 736
(0.35 + 0.0625) × (460 000 − 420 000) = €16 500
(0.35 + 0.1000) × (460 000 − 420 000) = €18 000
(0.35 + 0.1250) × (460 000 − 420 000) = €19 000

§ The only variance for Cocobot in May 2022 is the production-volume variance. See text for the computations.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. Variable costing and absorption costing differ in only one respect: how to account for fixed manufacturing overhead costs. Under variable costing, fixed manufacturing overhead costs are excluded from inventoriable costs and are a cost of the period in which they are incurred. Under absorption costs, these costs are inventoriable and become expenses only when a sale occurs.
2. The variable-costing income statement is based on the contribution margin format. The absorption-costing income statement is based on the gross-margin format.
3. Under variable costing, reported operating profit is driven by variations in unit sales levels. Under absorption costing, reported operating profit is driven by variations in unit production levels as well as by variations in unit sales levels.
4. Managers can increase operating profit when absorption costing is used by producing for stock even when there is no immediate demand for the extra production. Critics of absorption costing label this as the major negative consequence of treating fixed manufacturing overhead as an inventoriable cost. Such negative consequences can be highlighted by using non-financial as well as financial variables for performance evaluation.
5. The denominator level chosen for fixed manufacturing overhead can greatly affect reported stock and operating profit amounts. In some cases it can also affect pricing and contract reimbursement. Denominator levels focusing on the capacity of a plant to supply product are theoretical capacity and practical capacity. Denominator levels focusing on the demand for the products a plant can manufacture are normal utilisation and master-budget utilisation.
6. The smaller the denominator level chosen, the higher the fixed manufacturing overhead cost per output unit that is inventoriable.

Appendix

Breakeven points in variable and absorption costing

This appendix considers breakeven point calculations (discussed further in Chapter 8) under variable and absorption costing. If variable costing is used, the breakeven point (where reported operating profit is zero) is unique: there is only one breakeven point. It is a function of (1) fixed costs, (2) unit contribution margin and (3) sales level in units. Holding (1) and (2) constant, operating profit rises as the sales level in units rises and vice versa. As the level of sales in units rises, operating profit rises and vice versa. In our Daxenberger illustration for February 2022, the following holds:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Breakeven number of units} &= \frac{\text{Total fixed costs}}{\text{Unit contribution margin}} \\
\text{Let Q} &= \text{Number of units sold to break even} \\
\text{Q} &= \frac{€12\,800 + €10\,400}{€99 - (€20 + €19)} \\
&= \frac{€23\,200}{€60} \\
&= 387 \text{ units (rounded)}
\end{aligned}$$

Proof of breakeven point:

Revenues: €99 × 387	€38 313
Costs: €39 × 387	15 093
Contribution margin	23 220
Fixed costs	23 200
Operating profit (rounding error)	€20

If absorption costing is used, the breakeven point (reported operating profit of zero) is not unique. The following formula, which can be used to calculate the breakeven point under absorption costing, highlights several factors that will affect the breakeven point:

$$\text{Breakeven number of units} = \frac{\text{Fixed manufacturing cost rate} \times \left(\text{Breakeven sales in units} \times \text{Units produced} \right)}{\text{Unit contribution margin}}$$

Consider Daxenberger in February 2022:

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \frac{€12\,800 + €10\,400 + [€16(Q - 650)]}{€99 - (€20 - €19)} \\ &= \frac{€23\,200 + €16Q - €10\,400}{€60} \\ €60Q &= €12\,800 + €16\,Q \\ €44Q &= €12\,800 \\ Q &= 291 \text{ units (rounded)} \end{aligned}$$

Proof of breakeven point:

Revenues: €99 × 291		€28 809
Cost of goods sold		
Cost of goods sold (standard): €36 × 291	€10 476	
Production-volume variance: (800 − 650) × €16	2 400	12 876
Gross margin		15 933
Marketing costs		
Variable marketing: €19 × 291	5 529	
Fixed marketing	10 400	15 929
Operating profit (rounding error)		€4

The breakeven point under absorption costing depends on (1) fixed costs, (2) unit contribution margin, (3) sales level in units, (4) production level in units and (5) the denominator level chosen to set the fixed manufacturing costs rate. For Daxenberger in February 2022, a combination of fixed costs of €23 200, unit contribution margin of €60, units sold of 291 (rounded), 650 units produced and an 800-unit denominator level would result in an operating profit of zero. Note, however, there are many combinations of these five factors that would give an operating profit of zero.

We see that variable costing accords with cost–volume–profit analysis. Managers using variable costing can easily calculate the breakeven point or any effects that changes in the sales level in units may have on operating profit. In contrast, managers using absorption costing must also consider the unit production level and the denominator level before making such computations.

Suppose in our illustration that actual production in February 2022 was equal to the denominator level, 800 units. Also suppose that there were no sales and no fixed marketing costs. All the production would be placed in stock and so all the fixed manufacturing overhead would be included in stock. There would be no production-volume variance. Thus, the company could break even with no sales whatsoever. In contrast, under variable costing the operating loss would be equal to the fixed costs of €12 800.

CHAPTER 7

Assessment material

Review questions

7.1 Differences in operating profit between variable and absorption costing are due solely to accounting for fixed costs. Do you agree? Explain.

7.2 The term variable costing could be improved by calling it variable manufacturing costing. Do you agree? Why?

7.3 Explain the main conceptual issue under variable and absorption costing regarding the proper timing for the release of fixed manufacturing overhead as expense.

7.4 'Companies that make no variable-cost/fixed-cost distinctions must use absorption costing and those that do make variable-cost/fixed-cost distinctions must use variable costing.' Do you agree? Explain.

7.5 'The main trouble with variable costing is that it ignores the increasing importance of fixed costs in modern manufacturing.' Do you agree? Why?

7.6 Give an example of how, under absorption costing, operating profit could fall even though the unit sales level rises.

7.7 Critics of absorption costing have increasingly emphasised its potential for promoting undesirable incentives for managers. Give an example.

7.8 What are two ways of reducing the negative aspects associated with using absorption costing to evaluate the performance of a plant manager?

7.9 Which denominator-level concepts emphasise what a plant can supply? Which denominator-level concepts emphasise what customers demand for products produced by a plant?

7.10 Name one reason why many companies prefer the master-budget utilisation-level concept rather than the normal utilisation-level concept.

Exercises

Intermediate level

7.11 **Comparison of actual-costing methods** (20–30 minutes)

Haselbach GmbH sells its razors at €3 per unit. The company uses a first-in, first-out actual-costing system. A new fixed manufacturing overhead allocation rate is calculated each year by dividing the actual fixed manufacturing overhead cost by the actual production units. The following simplified data are related to its first two years of operation:

	Year 1	Year 2
Unit data		
Sales	1000	1200
Production	1400	1000
Cost		
Variable manufacturing	€700	€500
Fixed manufacturing	700	700
Variable marketing and administration	1000	1200
Fixed marketing and administration	400	400

Required

1 Prepare income statements based on (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing for each year.

2 Prepare a reconciliation and explanation of the difference in the operating profit for each year resulting from the use of absorption costing and variable costing.

3 Critics have claimed that a widely used accounting system has led to undesirable stockbuilding levels. (a) Is variable costing or absorption costing more likely to lead to such build-ups? Why? (b) What can be done to prevent undesirable stock build-ups?

*7.12 Effects of denominator-level concept choice (20–35 minutes)

Forza San Marino Srl installed standard costs and a flexible budget on 1 January 2022. The president had been pondering how fixed manufacturing overhead should be allocated to products. Machine-hours had been chosen as the allocation base. Her remaining uncertainty was the denominator-level concept for machine-hours. She decided to wait for the first month's results before making a final choice of what denominator-level concept should be used from that day forward.

In January 2022, the actual units of output had a standard of 70 000 machine-hours allowed. If the company used practical capacity as the denominator-level concept, the fixed manufacturing overhead spending variance would be €10 000, unfavourable and the production-volume variance would be €36 000, unfavourable. If the company used normal utilisation as the denominator-level concept, the production-volume variance would be €20 000, favourable. Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead was €120 000 for the month.

Required

1 Calculate the denominator level, assuming that the normal utilisation concept is chosen.

2 Calculate the denominator level, assuming that the practical capacity concept is chosen.

3 Suppose you are the executive vice-president. You want to maximise your 2022 bonus, which depends on 2022 operating profit. Assume that the production-volume variance is charged or credited to income at year-end. Which denominator-level concept would you favour? Why?

7.13 Income method alternatives (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2006) (30 minutes)

Pinafore Ltd manufactures and sells a single product. The budgeted profit statement for this month, which has been prepared using marginal costing principles, is as follows:

	£000	£000
Sales (24 000 units)		864
Less Variable production cost of sales:		
Opening stock (3000 units)	69	
Production (22 000 units)	506	
Closing stock (1000 units)	(23)	
		(552)
		312
Less Variable selling cost		(60)
Contribution		252
Less Fixed overhead costs:		
Production	125	
Selling and administration	40	
		(165)
Net profit		87

The normal monthly level of production is 25 000 units and stocks are valued at standard cost.

Required

1 Prepare in full a budgeted profit statement for this month using absorption-costing principles. Assume that fixed production overhead costs are absorbed using the normal level of activity.

2 Prepare a statement that reconciles the net profit calculated in (1) with the net profit using marginal costing.

3 Which of the two costing principles (absorption or marginal) is more relevant for short-run decision making, and why?

7.14 **Income method alternatives** (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005) (30 minutes)

Archibald Ltd manufactures and sells one product. Its budgeted profit statement for the first month of trading is as follows:

	£	£
Sales (1200 units at £180 per unit)		216 000
Less Cost of sales:		
Production (1800 units at £100 per unit)	180 000	
Less Closing stock (600 units at £100 per unit)	(60 000)	
		(120 000)
Gross profit		96 000
Less Fixed selling and distribution costs		(41 000)
Net profit		55 000

The budget was prepared using absorption costing principles. If budgeted production in the first month had been 2000 units then the total production cost would have been £188 000.

Required

1 Using the high-low method, calculate:
   - **a** the variable production cost per unit; and
   - **b** the total monthly fixed production cost.
2 If the budget for the first month of trading had been prepared using marginal costing principles, calculate:
   - **a** the total contribution; and
   - **b** the net profit.
3 Explain clearly the circumstances in which the monthly profit or loss would be the same using absorption or marginal costing principles.

7.15 **Absorption vs marginal costing** (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004) (40 minutes)

Langdale Ltd is a small company manufacturing and selling two different products – the Lang and the Dale. Each product passes through two separate production cost centres – a machining department, where all the work is carried out on the same general purpose machinery, and a finishing section. There is a general service cost centre providing facilities for all employees in the factory.

The company operates an absorption costing system using budgeted overhead absorption rates. The management accountant has calculated the machine hour absorption rate for the machining department as £3.10 but a direct labour hour absorption rate for the finishing section has yet to be calculated. The following data have been extracted from the budget for the coming year:

	Product	
	Lang	**Dale**
Sales (units)	6 000	9 000
Production (units)	7 200	10 400
Direct material cost per unit	£52	£44
Direct labour cost per unit:		
– machining department (£8 per hour)	£72	£40
– finishing section (£6 per hour)	£42	£36
Machining department – machine-hours per unit	5	3
Fixed production overhead costs:		
– machining department	£183 120	
– finishing section	£241 320	
– general service cost centre	£82 800	
Number of employees:		
– machining department	14	
– finishing section	32	
– general service cost centre	4	

Service cost centre costs are reapportioned to production cost centres.

Required

1 Calculate the direct labour hour absorption rate for the finishing section.
2 Calculate the budgeted total cost for one unit of product Dale only, showing each main cost element separately.
3 The company is considering a changeover to marginal costing. State, with reasons, whether the total profit for the coming year calculated using marginal costing would be higher or lower than the profit calculated using absorption costing. No calculations are required.

7.16 **Overhead cost issues** (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level 1 Paper, November 2006) (25 minutes)

X Ltd has two production departments, Assembly and Finishing, and two service departments, Stores and Maintenance. Stores provides the following service to the production departments: 60% to Assembly and 40% to Finishing. Maintenance provides the following service to the production and service departments: 40% to Assembly, 45% to Finishing and 15% to Stores. The budgeted information for the year is as follows:

Budgeted fixed production overheads	
Assembly	£100 000
Finishing	£150 000
Stores	£50 000
Maintenance	£40 000
Budgeted output	100 000 units

At the end of the year after apportioning the service department overheads, the total fixed production overheads debited to the Assembly department's fixed production overhead control account were £180 000. The actual output achieved was 120 000 units.

Required

1 Calculate the under/over absorption of fixed production overheads for the Assembly department.

Advanced level

7.17 **Variable and absorption costing, explaining operating profit differences** (30 minutes)

Starzmann GmbH assembles and sells motor vehicles. It uses an actual-costing system, in which unit costs are calculated on a monthly basis. Data relating to April and May of 2022 are:

	April	May
Unit data		
Opening stock	0	150
Production	500	400
Sales	350	520
Variable-cost data		
Manufacturing costs per unit produced	€10 000	€10 000
Marketing costs per unit sold	3 000	3 000
Fixed-cost data		
Manufacturing costs	€2 000 000	€2 000 000
Marketing costs	600 000	600 000

The selling price per motor vehicle is €24 000.

Required

1 Present income statements for Starzmann in April and May of 2022 under (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing.

2 Explain any differences between (a) and (b) for April and May.

7.18 Variable and absorption costing, explaining operating profit differences (40 minutes)

Svenborg AS manufactures and sells wide-screen television sets. It uses an actual-costing system, in which unit costs are calculated on a monthly basis. Data relating to January, February and March of 2022 are:

	January	February	March
Unit data			
Opening stock	0	300	300
Production	1 000	800	1 250
Sales	700	800	1 500
Variable-cost data			
Manufacturing costs per unit produced	DKK 900	DKK 900	DKK 900
Marketing costs per unit sold	600	600	600
Fixed-cost data			
Manufacturing costs	DKK 400 000	DKK 400 000	DKK 400 000
Marketing costs	140 000	140 000	140 000

The selling price per unit is DKr 2500.

Required

1 Present income statements for Svenborg in January, February and March of 2022 under (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing.

2 Explain any differences between (a) and (b) for January, February and March.

*7.19 Income statements (SMA, adapted) (30–40 minutes)

Ericsson AB manufactures and sells a single product. The following data cover the two latest years of operations:

		2022	2023
Unit data			
Sales		25 000	25 000
Opening stock		1 000	1 000
Closing stock		1 000	5 000
Selling price per unit		SEK 40	SEK 40
Cost data			
Standard fixed costs			
Manufacturing overhead		SEK 120 000	SEK 120 000
Marketing and administrative		SEK 190 000	SEK 190 000
Standard variable costs per unit:			
Direct materials	SEK 10.50		
Direct manufacturing labour	SEK 9.50		
Manufacturing overhead	SEK 4.00		
Marketing and administrative	SEK 1.20		

The denominator level is 30 000 output units per year. Ericsson's accounting records produce variable-costing information and year-end adjustments are made to produce external reports showing absorption-costing information. All variances are charged to cost of goods sold.

Required

1 Prepare two income statements for 2023, one under variable costing and one under absorption costing.

2 Explain briefly why the operating profit figures calculated in requirement 1 agree or do not agree.

3 Give two advantages and two disadvantages of using variable costing for internal reporting.

7.20 **Alternative denominator-level concepts** (25–30 minutes)

Bières Ronsard SA recently purchased a brewing plant from a bankrupt company. The brewery is in Montpazier, France. It was constructed only two years ago. The plant has budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead of €42 million (€3.5 million each month) in 2022. Alain Cassandre, the accountant of the brewery, must decide on the denominator-level concept to use in its absorption costing system for 2022. The options available to him are:

a Theoretical capacity: 600 barrels an hour for 24 hours a day × 365 days = 5 256 000 barrels.

b Practical capacity: 500 barrels an hour for 20 hours a day × 350 days = 3 500 000 barrels.

c Normal utilisation for 2022: 400 barrels an hour for 20 hours a day × 350 days = 2 800 000 barrels.

d Master-budget utilisation for 2022 (separate rates calculated for each half-year):

- January to June 2022 budget: 320 barrels an hour for 20 hours a day × 175 days = 1 120 000 barrels
- July to December 2022 budget: 480 barrels an hour for 20 hours a day × 175 days = 1 680 000 barrels.

Variable standard manufacturing costs per barrel are €45 (variable direct materials, €32; variable manufacturing labour, €6; and variable manufacturing overhead, €7). The Montpazier brewery 'sells' its output to the sales division of Bières Ronsard at a budgeted price of €68 per barrel.

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead rate using each of the four denominator-level concepts for (a) beer produced in March 2022 and (b) beer produced in September 2022. Explain why any differences arise.

2 Explain why the theoretical capacity and practical capacity concepts are different.

3 Which denominator-level concept would the plant manager of the Montpazier brewery prefer when senior management of Bières Ronsard is judging plant manager performance during 2022? Explain.

7.21 **Operating profit effects of alternative denominator-level concepts** (continuation of Exercise 7.20) (30 minutes)

In 2022, the Montpazier brewery of Bières Ronsard showed these results:

Unit data in barrels	
Opening stock, 1 January 2022	0
Production	2 600 000
Closing stock, 31 December 2022	200 000

The Montpazier brewery had actual costs of:

Cost data	
Variable manufacturing	€120 380 000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	€40 632 000

The sales division of Bières Ronsard purchased 2 400 000 barrels in 2022 at the €68 per barrel rate.

All manufacturing variances are written off to cost of goods sold in the period in which they are incurred.

Required

1 Calculate the operating profit of the Montpazier brewery using the following: (a) theoretical capacity, (b) practical capacity and (c) normal utilisation denominator-level concepts. Explain any differences among (a), (b) and (c).

2 What denominator-level concept would Bières Ronsard prefer for income tax reporting? Explain.

3 Explain the ways in which the tax office might restrict the flexibility of a company like Bières Ronsard, which uses absorption costing, to reduce its reported taxable income.

7.22 **Ginnungagap** (40 minutes)

It is the end of 2023. Ginnungagap Oy began operations in January 2022. The company is so named because it has no variable costs. All its costs are fixed; they do not vary with output.

Ginnungagap is located on the bank of a river and has its own hydroelectric plant to supply power, light and heat. The company manufactures a synthetic fertiliser from air and river water and sells its product at a price that is not expected to change. It has a small staff of employees, all hired on a fixed annual salary. The output of the plant can be increased or decreased by adjusting a few dials on a control panel.

The following are data regarding the operations of Ginnungagap Oy:

	2022	2023*
Sales (units)	10 000	10 000
Production (units)	20 000	–
Selling price per tonne	€30	€30
Costs (all fixed):		
Manufacturing	€280 000	€280 000
Marketing and administrative	€40 000	€40 000

* Management adopted the policy, effective from 1 January 2023, of producing only as much product as was needed to fill sales orders. During 2023, sales were the same as for 2022 and were filled entirely from stock at the start of 2023.

Required

1 Prepare income statements with one column for 2022, one column for 2023 and one column for the two years together, using (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing.

2 What is the breakeven point under (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing?

3 What stock costs would be carried on the balance sheets at 31 December 2022 and 2023 under each method?

4 Assume that the performance of the top manager of the company is evaluated and rewarded largely on the basis of reported operating profit. Which costing method would the manager prefer? Why?

*7.23 **Audumla** (30 minutes)

Audumla Oy began operations in 2022 and differs from Ginnungagap (described in Exercise 7.22) in only one respect: it has both variable and fixed manufacturing costs. Its variable manufacturing costs are €7 per tonne, and its fixed manufacturing costs are €140 000 per year. The denominator level is 20 000 tonnes per year.

Required

1. Using the same data as in Exercise 7.22 except for the change in manufacturing cost behaviour, prepare income statements with adjacent columns for 2022, 2023 and the two years together, under (a) variable costing and (b) absorption costing.
2. Why did Audumla have operating profit for the two-year period when Ginnungagap in Exercise 7.22 suffered an operating loss?
3. What value for stock would be shown in the balance sheet as at 31 December 2022 and 31 December 2023 under each method?
4. Assume that the performance of the top manager of the company is evaluated and rewarded largely on the basis of reported operating profit. Which costing method would the manager prefer? Why?

PART I

Case study problems

Case 101

The European Savings Bank

The case considers the ethical issues involved in making illegal copies of a software program by a professional management accountant.

It is a busy day at the office and Joe Fordham is hard at work for the European Savings Bank. Joe is in a quandary. He has a piece of software at work that he believes makes him more efficient and effective at his job. Unfortunately, the bank purchased only one copy. Joe really wants to have access to the software at home and he also wants to share it with his colleagues. The problem is that Joe does not have the necessary funds to purchase an additional copy for himself and he does not want to ask his supervisor for additional copies until he can prove the worth of the software. Joe knows that he can easily copy the software to use at home and to share with his colleagues. He is debating whether he should make the copies.

The following may be affected by Joe's decision.

Tareq Hassan

Three years ago, Tareq graduated from university with a combined major in computer science and accounting. Immediately after graduation, Tareq spent two years and €400 000 developing a computer software package, Loan Net, that provides a comprehensive loan analysis system. Loan Net has been proved to predict loan failures six months in advance of the failure date with 87% accuracy, far exceeding older methods that have only a 20% accuracy rate. His software is copyrighted and is being marketed by Data Sources SA. At the current time the software sells for €500 per copy. Sales to date have totalled just over 1000 copies, but the package has been well received and Tarq is very excited about the future potential. In fact, he is currently working on an upgrade for the package. A friend recently told Tareq that several banks may be using unauthorised copies of the program.

Anna Rodriguez

Anna graduated from university seven years ago with a concentration in marketing and a couple of courses in management information systems. She is currently Director of Sales at Data Sources

---

Source: Christiansen, A. and Eining, M.M. (1994) 'Software piracy – who does it impact?', *Issues in Accounting Education*, 9(1), Spring 1994. Reproduced with permission from the American Accounting Association.

SA, a medium-sized and rapidly growing software distribution company with current sales of €30 million. All software distributed by Data Sources SA is copyrighted, but because of customer complaints, copy protection devices were removed from all software packages this year. Anna is concerned that, while many customers are pleased that it is now easy to make back-up copies of Data Sources software, it will be difficult to control unauthorised copies. She has also heard rumours about Loan Net being copied.

Joe Fordham

Joe is a young management accountant who was hired last year by European Savings Bank, which has multiple branches throughout Europe. He previously worked for a major accounting firm and specialised in bank audits. He currently works in the loan department of Savings Bank and hopes to advance to Director of Finance within the next five years. Joe has found that competition for promotion to Director is very tight. Joe wants desperately to demonstrate that he is Director material and, therefore, often takes work home. He has a computer at home with a spreadsheet and a word processor, all of which he purchased himself and frequently uses for bank business. Recently, he has been working at the office with the single copy of Loan Net his company purchased and is very impressed with its performance. He believes that he could increase his productivity and, therefore, his chances for promotion if he had a copy of Loan Net for home use. Joe would also like to introduce the program to colleagues at other branches and the four loan officers whom he supervises. Joe doesn't want to spend €500 for a copy of Loan Net to use at home. He estimates that he can save the bank a minimum of €2000 by making copies of Loan Net rather than purchasing them.

Mia Huber

Mia is an internal auditor/accounting information system analyst at European Savings Bank. She is responsible for determining information needs of management, for evaluating the means of providing this information, and for computer education and training. She is in charge of both hardware and software acquisitions. Mia wonders about her responsibility to control software usage and account for copies of software. She knows some people would like additional copies of certain programs, but her budget for software is limited. Mia suspects that some people may be making more than back-up copies of software programs.

Dave Saunders

At 47, Dave is the dynamic and motivated CEO of European Savings Bank. He wants to see the bank rise from being the third most profitable in Europe to the first. He takes an interest in his employees and expects hard work, especially from those who wish to rise in the management ranks. He is interested in identifying those individuals who have insight into making the bank more profitable. Three years ago, he was instrumental in upgrading both the mainframe and personal computer systems at the bank. He is concerned that there is increasing pressure from some individuals to acquire new software and he is unsure how much the software will really be used.

Society

Society in general is affected by the actions of software developers, software vendors and purchasers of the software. The basic objectives of society include an improved standard of living, technological progress, and protection of personal freedom. All behaviours, including software piracy, have potential costs and benefits to society. Society must adopt a stance towards software piracy that will help achieve its goals and objectives.

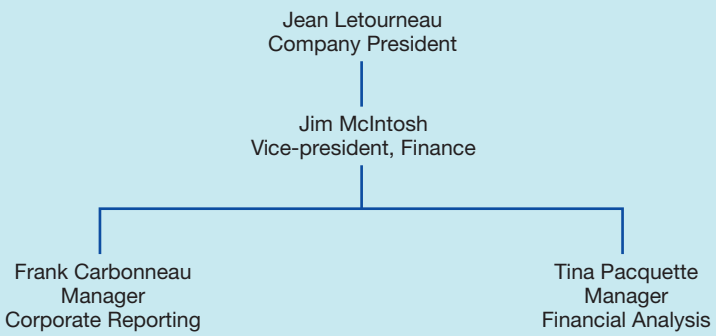
Question

Discuss the facts relevant to the issue of copying the software program, including the ethical issues involved. Evaluate also the consequences of the different possible courses of action which may be taken.

Case 102

The ethical dilemma at Northlake

The case assumes no technical knowledge of management and cost accounting but deals with ethical issues that often face accounting professionals. It engages in a discussion of how far the notion of 'different costs for different purposes' might extend.



Our story opens with an irate Jim McIntosh confronting his manager of corporate reporting: 'I thought we had an understanding on this issue, Frank. Tina tells me that you are threatening to go public with your stupid statements about the report. For Pete's sake, Frank, come to your senses! You're about to damage all the important things in your life: your career, your friendships, and your company!'

Frank sat quietly in the overstuffed sofa in his Vice President's expansive office. He thought that the pale green report lying on the desk looked innocent enough, but it certainly had provided the basis for some serious turmoil: Jim stood by his desk trembling with rage. His face was bright red and mottled with anger. Frank had often seen Jim upset, but never in a temper such as this.

'I'm sorry, Jim', Frank replied softly, 'I know how much this means to you, but I don't think that I have a choice in this matter. I can't sit idle while you and that twit from financial analysis allow this report to go forward. You both know that these numbers have no foundation in fact?'

The report, entitled 'Endangered Species: The Pulp and Paper Industry in the Upper Peninsula', laid out the industry's response to the new government proposals to put effluent controls on the discharge of waste water from pulp and paper mills in environmentally sensitive regions of the province. One section of the report detailed the financial consequences of the emission controls as

---

Source: Grant, R. (1993) 'The ethical dilemma at Northlake', *CMA Magazine,* March. Reproduced with permission from the Centre for Accounting Ethics.

determined by each of the five pulp and paper companies operating in the region. Amalgamated Forest Products had taken the industry lead in developing the report, and the company president, Janine Letourneau, was scheduled to testify before a legislative sub-committee next week, giving the industry perspective on the proposed legislation.

Amalgamated had three major mills, located in some of the more remote locations in the province. The firm had been facing difficult financial times due to the recession, and this had caused substantial hardship in the three small communities where the mills were located. Corporate offices were located in Northlake, a town of approximately 10 000 people.

The section of the report dealing with the dollar impact to Amalgamated Forest Products of installing the emission control equipment had been prepared by Tina Pacquette. Tina, a long-term employee of the firm, had risen through the accounting department to become the manager of financial analysis. While Tina and Frank were at equal levels in the organisational structure, their working relationship had not been particularly cordial. In Frank's opinion, Tina's work was barely adequate, but then, no one asked for his opinion.

'Well, Frank, your pig-headedness has really caused a problem for all of us! Wait here! I'll get Janine Letourneau, and we'll see what she thinks about your efforts.' Jim left the office and slammed the door.

As he waited in the silence of his boss's beautifully decorated office, Frank looked back over his ten years with Amalgamated Forest Products. Just like his father before him, Frank started with the firm after completing high school and his first job was as a yard man sorting out damaged logs before processing. That's when Frank severely damaged his right leg on the job. He had been celebrating the birth of his son the night before and he was unable to manoeuvre his footing with the dexterity required. Surgery saved the leg and he was extremely grateful that the company had brought him inside to the accounting office. An accounting clerk's salary was low compared with being a yard helper, but in a short time his natural talent for analysis brought him to the attention of the Vice President, Finance. Within two years, Jim McIntosh had arranged for him to go to university, complete his CMA designation after graduation, and then return to Amalgamated. The financial support provided by the firm had been adequate but not lavish by any means, and Frank had done well in his studies. He was the gold medalist for his province on the CMA examinations, and he had returned to Northlake in triumph. With three young children and a proud wife, Frank had been appointed to a new position in corporate reporting. After a year of having Jim as his mentor, he rose to the position of manager of corporate reporting.

The office door opened abruptly, and Jim entered with the company president. Janine Letourneau was a distinguished woman of approximately 60 years of age. She had a long history with Amalgamated and a solid reputation in the pulp and paper industry.

'What's the problem, Frank?' Janine's voice broke into the silence. 'Jim tells me that you have a few concerns about the report that we're submitting to the legislative committee.'

'Well, Mrs Letourneau, I think we – the company – have some major problems here. The report indicates that we'll have severe financial problems if we're forced into building a lagoon for waste water treatment. In fact, the report says we are likely to be pushed into bankruptcy if the legislation is passed. But we all know these estimates of costs are highly inflated. There's no way that our operating costs would be raised by 30%. I could see our operating costs rising by only 8–10%. That's what the internal report Tina wrote a year ago predicts and there's really been no significant change. Moreover, you have to testify before the legislative committee as to the truthfulness of this report – and there's not a shred of truth in it. The other cost estimates are all high, and the prediction of our product demand is based upon a further deepening of the recession. For our internal purposes, we have been using an estimated increase of 10% in demand.'

'Slow down,' Letourneau's calm voice broke in. 'We have to use different figures for different purposes. When we report to our shareholders, we give them numbers that are substantially altered from the internal documents, right? In this case, we have to make those dunderheads in the government see what all this regulation is doing to us. Besides, they know we're going to use the most effective numbers to justify our position.'

'But this isn't simply a matter of different figures', Frank spluttered. 'These numbers have been totally fabricated. And they don't take into account the damage that we're doing to the Wanawashee River. The same stuff we're dumping was cleaned up by our competition years ago. The community downstream is still drinking this garbage. We're going to be subject to a huge lawsuit if they ever trace it to us. Then, where will we be? I've got to worry about my professional obligations as well. If this blows up, you could go to jail, and I could get my designation revoked.'

'We'll cross that bridge when we come to it', Jim McIntosh interjected. 'You've got to remember what's at stake here. Northlake's totally dependent on the mill for its economic survival. As the mill goes, so goes the town. It's your buddies you'd be threatening to put out of work, Frank. This legislation may not bankrupt us, but it will certainly put a squeeze on profits. If profits are gone, no more reinvestment by Chicago. Head office is putting lots of pressure on us to improve the bottom line since the takeover last year. They're talking about cutting all of that new production line equipment we requested.'

'The bottom line is this, Frank', Letourneau spoke softly. 'You're an important part of our team – we've invested a lot in you. Jim was talking about working you into a new role: V.P.-controller. We'd hate to let you go because of this small issue. However, we need to have everybody working towards the same goal. Besides, Jim tells me this isn't even your responsibility. If you hadn't picked up the copy of the report on Tina's desk, we wouldn't even have involved you. Now take the rest of the day off, go home to Cheryl and the kids, and take out that new speedboat of yours. Think the problem through, and I'm sure you'll see the long-term benefit of what we're doing. This pollution problem is a "Northern problem" that we can resolve here, not in some fancy legislature in the south. Besides, we've had the problem for as far back as I can remember. So a few extra years certainly won't hurt.'

Question

What would you do if you were Frank?

Case 103

Electronic Boards plc

John Innes and Falconer Mitchell, University of Edinburgh

This is a general case on the design of a management and cost accounting system for a firm operating in a high-tech environment. It provides an opportunity for a broad discussion not only of the appropriateness of particular accounting techniques, but also of the need to consider strategic, behavioural and organisational factors.

Introduction

Jack Watson, an electrical engineer, established Electronic Boards plc as a one person company thirty years ago. From small beginnings, the company earned a reputation for the quality and reliability of its products, and grew rapidly and consistently. Last year it achieved a turnover of

---

Source: Innes, J. and Mitchell, F. (1988) 'Electronic Boards plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission.

£56 million and a profit after tax of £4.1 million. In addition to Jack Watson, the CEO, the board consists of a production director, a research director and a marketing director. The company employs 200 people.

Market circumstances

The company produces customised batches of electronic circuit boards for approximately 15 major customers in the defence, computer, electrical goods and automotive industries. The market is highly competitive in respect of both price and quality. Market price has fallen steadily in recent years. In addition to several other independent firms from both the UK and the Far East, many of their larger customers have in-house facilities for the production of circuit boards. These latter firms deliberately subcontract a portion of their circuit board requirements for strategic reasons. In a recession they can cease or reduce their subcontracting and bring the work in-house, so stabilising their own employment levels.

Operational circumstances

The production process for circuit boards is complex, multi-stage and highly automated. Production flows continuously through the various processes and any hold-up quickly affects the flow of work at all production stages. Experience has shown that a proportion of the final output contains faults and has to be scrapped. These scrap levels typically vary between 10% and 25% of good output, a considerable learning effect is apparent and the yield on repeat orders is usually significantly improved. At present, faulty products are identified only on completion, although action has been instigated (in the form of an investigative working party) to achieve an earlier identification of faults.

Orders are obtained in three ways:

1. By written tender for large contracts (approximately 40% of business)
2. By telephone quotation for small orders (approximately 20% of business) – a price is normally quoted to the caller during the call
3. By repeat orders (approximately 40% of business).

Prices are calculated by estimating the direct material cost of an order and adding on an allowance for all other costs and profit. This allowance is based on the previous year's direct material cost to sales margin. In recent years the cost structure of the firm's output has been as follows:

Cost structure of current boards

Direct materials	65%
Direct labour	5
Production overheads	20
Non-production overheads	10
	100%

Direct materials are by far the major cost component and this importance is reflected in the high levels of materials stock which are held by the company.

Financial information

It is generally accepted by the senior members of management that the development of a management accounting system has been neglected. This has been attributed mainly to the dismissive attitude of line management to accountants. Encapsulating this view was the comment of one senior manager, 'they are "bean-counters" who know nothing about the electronics industry, the problems we face and the decisions we have to take'. The consistent success of the company in

the absence of any management accounting system has reinforced this type of attitude among managers and directors in the company. No qualified accountants have been appointed to the board, and until last year only one qualified accountant was employed by the company. His prime responsibility was the preparation of statutory financial accounting statements for shareholders. A half-yearly company profit and loss account and balance sheet is now prepared for the board.

No product costing system has been in operation. For financial statement preparation, work in progress is simply valued at an estimate of its direct material content cost and finished goods stock is valued at a discounted selling price (using the previous year's gross profit percentage). However, some managers have complained about their lack of knowledge of unit production costs and about their inability to pinpoint which contracts or types of work have been profitable for the company.

Budgets are no longer prepared. Attempts were made to produce annual budgets a decade before but the firm's accountant then experienced great difficulty in obtaining reliable estimates from line management. His lack of authority within the firm and the absence of a finance director to provide support rendered his requests for information ineffective. Consequently, acceptance of the budgets which he prepared was not forthcoming. They were quickly viewed as unrealistic by management and after a few months ignored.

Capital budgeting decisions have been based upon the need for the firm to remain at the forefront of production technology. If new equipment became available which would improve the firm's product quality, it was usually purchased and then funds were 'found' to finance it. This had often led to the company having unexpected overdrafts and high bank charges and interest expenses.

Recession

This year, the firm experienced its first recession. Market share fell, sales dropped to £51.5 million, a loss of £1.7 million was made and the company's liquidity suffered considerably. The market decline is expected to continue into next year and the CEO of Electronic Boards plc has sought ways of alleviating the effects of the recession on the company's financial performance. He found, however, that the lack of management accounting information hampered him in pinpointing problem areas and in identifying cost-reduction possibilities. Consequently, he approached a firm of management consultants to provide a blueprint for the development of a management accounting system over the next two years.

Question

As the management consultant, prepare a blueprint for the board of Electronic Boards plc outlining the main factors which it should consider in establishing a useful management accounting function within the company.

PART II

Accounting information for decision making

Part I introduced fundamental management and cost accounting concepts. Our objective in Part II is to focus on internal accounting concepts which are aimed at assisting managerial decision making. Chapters 8, 9 and 10 discuss long-established principles of cost relationships as organisational activities take place. They mainly address aspects of decision making in the short term and how a firm's available resources can be influenced and reallocated to achieve immediate goals. The focus in these chapters is largely on scale changes, whereas Chapter 11 considers scope and production complexity issues in relation to cost changes. The costing approach (activity-based costing) discussed in Chapter 11 looks at both volume- and non-volume-based cost drivers. Chapter 12 introduces pricing considerations and cost-related prioritisation of organisational activities. Chapter 13 then provides a perspective on assessing long-term issues in cost change decisions. It considers techniques used to evaluate capital budgeting for investments.

Chapter 8	Cost–volume–profit analysis	220
Chapter 9	Determining how costs behave	247
Chapter 10	Relevant information for decision making	287
Chapter 11	Activity-based costing	318
Chapter 12	Pricing issues and customer profitability analysis	351
Chapter 13	Capital investment decisions	387
Part II	Case study problems	417

CHAPTER 8

Cost–volume–profit analysis

Cost–volume–profit analysis provides a sweeping financial overview of the planning process. **Cost–volume–profit (CVP) analysis** examines the behaviour of total revenues, total costs and operating profit as changes occur in the output level, selling price, variable costs or fixed costs. CVP analysis is among the most basic tools available to managers. Managers commonly use CVP as a tool to help them answer such questions as: How will revenues and costs be affected if we sell 1000 more units? If we raise or lower our selling prices, how will that affect the output level? If we expand into Far East markets, what will be the impact on costs? These questions have a 'what-if' theme.

Companies need to achieve breakeven before they can produce profits (this is inherent in the definition of breaking even). Consider, for instance, Thyssenkrupp, an international group of companies comprising mainly independent industrial and technology businesses and employing more than 100 000 people across 56 countries, which suffered losses during early quarters of 2020. This prompted some downsizing. The company decided to sell its prized lifts unit for €17 billion in 2020 after the unit was seen to have been mismanaged and its ill-fated expansion led to losses. Thyssenkrupp also sold its carbon components and infrastructure businesses in 2021, as well as an Italian stainless-steel plant. The chief financial officer Klaus Keysberg says, 'Our next major milestone is to reach break-even in cash flow,' with the turnround at Thyssenkrupp remaining 'in full swing' (Miller, 2022).

Executives like Keysberg and Mirza will often consider profitability scenarios in relation to breakeven cost points. In fact, for most firms, decisions at some stage entail an assessment of cost–volume–profit implications. CVP is built on simplifying assumptions about revenue and cost behaviour patterns. This chapter examines CVP analysis and explains how the reasonableness underlying its assumptions affects the reliability of its results.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Distinguish between what drives revenues and costs
- Describe the assumptions underlying cost–volume–profit (CVP) analysis
- Understand methods for determining the breakeven point and target operating profit
- Explain how sensitivity analysis can help managers cope with uncertainty
- Illustrate how CVP can assist cost planning
- Describe the effect of revenue mix on operating profit

Revenue drivers and cost drivers

Revenues are inflows of assets received in exchange for products or services provided to customers. A **revenue driver** is a factor that affects revenues. Examples of revenue drivers are units of output sold, selling prices and levels of marketing costs. Chapter 2 defined cost as a resource sacrificed or forgone to achieve a specific objective and a *cost driver* as any factor that affects cost – that is, a change in the cost driver will cause a change in the total cost of a related cost object. Examples of cost drivers include units of output manufactured, number of sales visits made and number of packages shipped.

The most detailed way of predicting total revenues and total costs is to consider multiple revenue drivers and multiple cost drivers. We call this the general case. It can require extensive analysis and is likely to be very time-consuming. For now, we focus on a special case where we assume a single revenue driver and a single cost driver. That single driver is units of output (either output units sold or output units manufactured). The term *CVP analysis* is widely used as representing this special case. A single revenue driver and a single cost driver are used in this analysis.

The straightforward relationships provide an excellent base for understanding the more complex relationships that exist with multiple revenues and multiple cost drivers:

General case	Special case
Many revenue drivers	Single revenue driver (output units)
Many cost drivers	Single cost driver (output units)
Various time spans for decisions (short run, long run, product life cycles)	Short-run decisions (time span, typically less than one year, in which fixed costs do not change within the relevant range)

Our restriction to units of output as the sole revenue or cost driver is important to keep in mind. It means that in the CVP model, changes in the level of revenues and costs arise only because the output level changes. This restriction means that we will not consider a revenue driver such as the number of advertisements for a new product. Nor will we consider a cost driver such as the number of calls a customer makes for after-sales service or service repairs. These factors are examples of revenue or cost drivers that are not a function of units of output.

Before we can study CVP, we must understand its terminology. In this chapter, we assume total costs (also termed total expenses) are made up of only two categories: variable costs (variable with respect to units of output) and fixed costs.

$$\text{Total costs} = \text{Variable costs} + \text{Fixed costs}$$

Recall from Chapter 2 (Exhibit 2.6) that variable costs include both direct variable costs and indirect variable costs of a chosen cost object. Similarly, fixed costs include both direct fixed costs and indirect fixed costs of a chosen cost object.

Operating profit is total revenues from operations minus total costs from operations (excluding income taxes):

$$\text{Operating profit} = \text{Total revenues} - \text{Total costs}$$

Net profit is operating profit plus non-operating revenues (such as interest revenue) minus non-operating costs (such as interest cost) minus income taxes. For simplicity, throughout this chapter non-operating revenues and non-operating costs are assumed to be zero. Thus, net profit will be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Net profit} = \text{Operating profit} - \text{Income taxes}$$

In the examples that follow, the measure of output is the number of units manufactured or units sold. Different industries often use different terminology to describe their measure of output. Examples include:

Industry	Measure of output
Airlines	Passenger-kilometres
Cars	Vehicles manufactured
Hospitals	Patient-days
Hotels	Rooms occupied

The following abbreviations are used in this chapter:

USP = Unit selling price
UVC = Unit variable costs
UCM = Unit contribution margin (USP – UVC)
FC = Fixed costs
Q = Quantity of output units sold (or manufactured)
OP = Operating profit
TOP = Target operating profit

CVP assumptions

The CVP analysis that we now discuss is based on the following assumptions:

1. Total costs can be divided into a fixed component and a component that is variable with respect to the level of output.
2. The behaviour of total revenues and total costs is linear (straight line) in relation to output units within the relevant range.
3. The unit selling price, unit variable costs and fixed costs are known and are constant. (This assumption is discussed later in the chapter and in the appendix to this chapter.)
4. The analysis either covers a single product or assumes that the proportion of different products when multiple products are sold will remain constant as the level of total units sold changes. (This assumption is also discussed later in the chapter.)
5. All revenues and costs can be added and compared without taking into account the time value of money. (Chapter 13 relaxes this assumption.)
6. Changes in the level of revenues and costs arise only because of changes in the number of products (or service) units produced and sold. The number of output units is the only revenue and cost driver.

These CVP assumptions simplify organisational realities. Some managers may prefer a more sophisticated approach. Nevertheless, CVP provides a useful basis for exploring certain business decision situations in which cost–volume–profit relationships are highlighted.

The breakeven point

CVP analysis can be used to examine how various 'what-if' alternatives being considered by a decision maker affect operating profit. The breakeven point is frequently one point of interest in this analysis. Managers wish to avoid the stigma of making a loss. The **breakeven point** is that quantity of output where total revenues and total costs are equal, that is, where the operating profit is zero.

Example 8.1

Mary Frost plans to sell Do-All Software, a software package, at a heavily attended two-day computer convention. Mary can purchase this software from a computer software wholesaler at €120 per package with the privilege of returning all unsold units and receiving a full €120 rebate per package. The units (packages) will be sold at €200 each. Mary has already paid €2000 to Computer Conventions Ltd for the booth rental for the two-day convention. What quantity of units will she need to sell in order to break even? Assume there are no other costs.

Using the information in the following example, this section examines three methods for determining the breakeven point: the equation method, the contribution margin method and the graph method.

Equation method

The first approach for computing the breakeven point is the equation method. Using the terminology in this chapter, the income statement can be expressed in equation form as follows:

$$\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} = \text{Operating profit}$$
$$(\text{USP} \times \text{Q}) - (\text{UVC} \times \text{Q}) - \text{FC} = \text{OP}$$

This equation provides the most general and easy-to-remember approach to any CVP situation. Setting operating profit equal to zero in the preceding equation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} €200\text{Q} - €120\text{Q} - €2000 &= €0 \\ €80\text{Q} &= €2000 \\ \text{Q} &= €2000 \div €80 \\ &= 25 \text{ units} \end{aligned}$$

If Mary sells fewer than 25 units, she will have a loss; if she sells 25 units, she will break even; and if she sells more than 25 units, she will make a profit. This breakeven point is expressed in units. It can also be expressed in sales euros: 25 units $\times$ €200 selling price = €5000.

Contribution margin method

A second approach is the contribution margin method, which is simply an algebraic manipulation of the equation method. Contribution margin is equal to revenues minus all costs of the output (a product or service) that vary with respect to the units of output. This method uses the fact that:

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{UPS} \times \text{Q}) - (\text{UVC} \times \text{Q}) - \text{FC} &= \text{OP} \\ (\text{USP} - \text{UVC}) \times \text{Q} &= \text{FC} + \text{OP} \\ \text{UCM} \times \text{Q} &= \text{FC} + \text{OP} \\ \text{Q} &= \frac{\text{FC} + \text{OP}}{\text{UCM}} \end{aligned}$$

At the breakeven point, operating profit is, by definition, zero. Setting OP = 0, we obtain:

$$\text{Breakeven number of units} = \frac{\text{Fixed costs}}{\text{Unit contribution margin}} = \frac{\text{FC}}{\text{UCM}}$$

The calculations in the equation method and the contribution margin method appear similar because one is merely a restatement of the other. In our example, fixed costs are €2000 and the unit contribution margin is €80 (€200 − €120). Therefore,

$$\text{Breakeven number of units} = €2000 \div €80 = 25 \text{ units}$$

A **contribution income statement** groups line items by cost behaviour pattern to highlight the contribution margin. The following such statement confirms the preceding breakeven calculations:

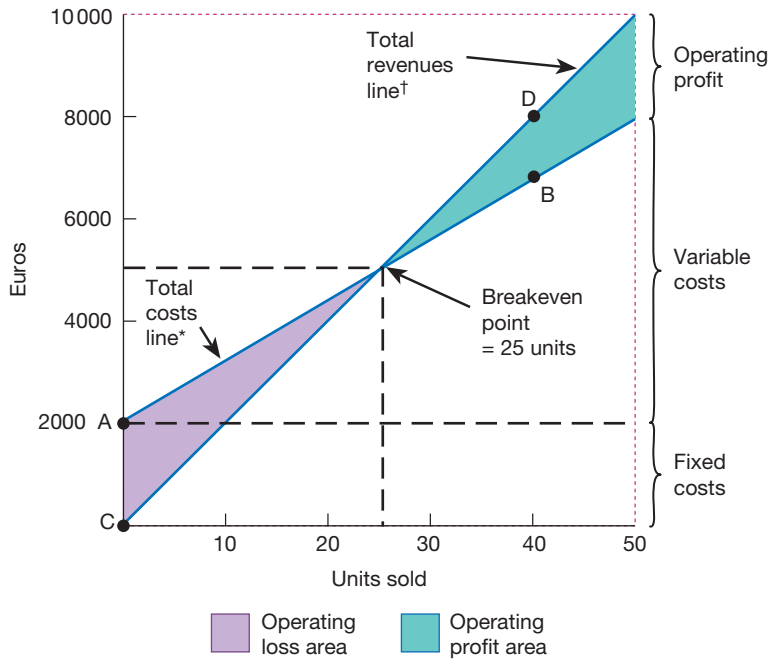
Revenues, €200 × 25	€5000
Variable costs, €120 × 25	3000
Contribution margin, €80 × 25	2000
Fixed costs	2000
Operating profit	€0

Graph method

In the graph method, we plot the total costs line and the total revenues line. Their point of intersection is the breakeven point. Exhibit 8.1 illustrates this method for our Do-All example. We need only two points to plot each line if each is assumed to be linear:

1 *Total costs line.* This line is the sum of the fixed costs and the variable costs. Fixed costs are €2000 at all output levels within the relevant range. To plot fixed costs, measure €2000 on the vertical axis (point A) and extend a line horizontally. Variable costs are €120 per unit. To plot

Exhibit 8.1 Cost–volume–profit graph



* Slope of the total cost line is the variable cost per unit = €120.
† Slope of the total revenue line is the selling price = €200.

the total costs line, use as one point the €2000 fixed costs at 0 output units (point A). Select a second point by choosing any other convenient output level (say, 40 units) and determining the corresponding total costs. The total variable costs at this output level are €4800 (40 × €120). Fixed costs are €2000 at all output levels within the relevant range. Hence, total costs at 40 units of output are €6800, which is point B in Exhibit 8.1. The total costs line is the straight line from point A passing through point B.

2 *Total revenues line*. One convenient starting point is zero revenues at the zero output level, which is point C in Exhibit 8.1. Select a second point by choosing any other convenient output level and determining its total revenues. At 40 units of output, total revenues are €8000 (40 × €200), which is point D in Exhibit 8.1. The total revenues line is the straight line from point C passing through point D.

The breakeven point is where the total revenues line and the total costs line intersect. At this point, total revenues equal total costs. But Exhibit 8.1 shows the profit or loss outlook for a wide range of output levels. Many people describe the topics covered in this chapter as breakeven analysis. We prefer to use the phrase cost–volume–profit analysis to avoid overemphasising the single point where total revenues equal total costs. Managers want to know how operating profit differs at many different output levels.

Target operating profit

Let us introduce a profit element by asking the following question: How many units must be sold to earn an operating profit of €1200? The equation method provides a straightforward way to answer this question. Let QT be the number of units sold to earn the target operating profit:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} &= \text{Target operating profit}\\
€200\text{QT} - €120\text{QT} - €2000 &= €1200\\
€80\text{QT} &= €2000 + €1200\\
€80\text{QT} &= €3200\\
\text{QT} &= €3200 \div €80\\
&= 40 \text{ units}
\end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, we could use the contribution margin method. The numerator now consists of fixed costs plus target operating profit:

$$\text{QT} = \frac{\text{Fixed costs} + \text{Target operating profit}}{\text{Unit contribution margin}} = \frac{\text{FC} + \text{TOP}}{\text{UCM}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{QT} &= \frac{€2000 + 1200}{€80}\\
€80\text{QT} &= €3200\\
\text{QT} &= €3200 \div €80\\
&= 40 \text{ units}
\end{aligned}$$

Proof:		
	Revenues, €200 × 40	€8000
	Variable costs, €120 × 40	4800
	Contribution margin, €80 × 40	3200
	Fixed costs	2000
	Operating profit	€1200

The graph in Exhibit 8.1 indicates that at the 40-unit output level, the difference between total revenues and total costs is the €1200 operating profit.

The PV graph

We can recast Exhibit 8.1 in the form of a profit–volume (PV) graph. A **PV graph** shows the impact on operating profit of changes in the output level. Exhibit 8.2 (Graph A) presents the PV graph for Do-All (fixed costs of €2000, selling price of €200, and variable costs per unit of €120). The PV line can be drawn using two points. One convenient point (X) is the level of fixed costs at zero output – €2000, which is also the operating loss at this output level. A second convenient point (Y) is the breakeven point – 25 units in our example. The PV line is drawn by connecting points X and Y and extending the line beyond Y. Each unit sold beyond the breakeven point will add €80 to operating profit. At the 35-unit output level, for example, operating profit would be €800:

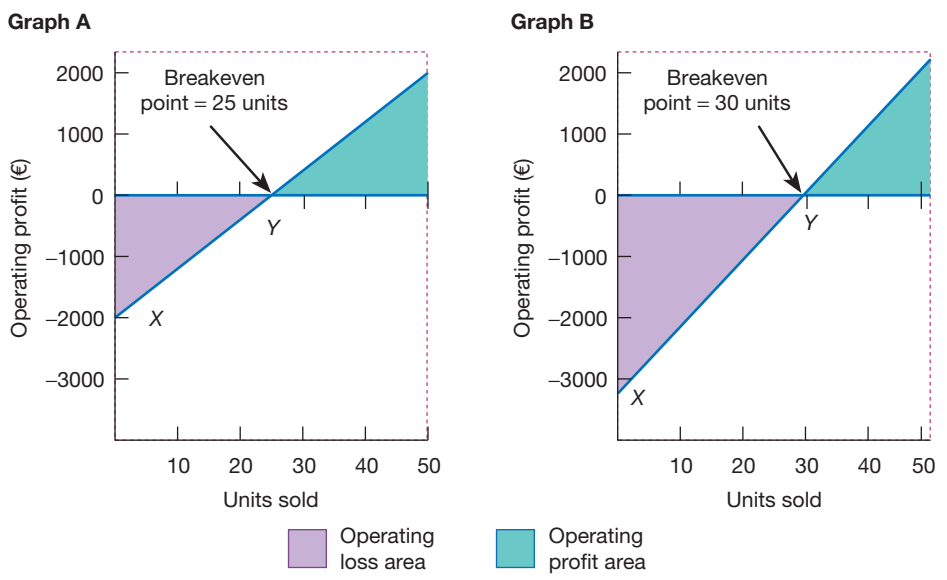
$$(€200 \times 35) - (€120 \times 35) - €2000 = €800$$

A comparison of PV charts representing different what-if possibilities can highlight their effects on operating profit. Graph B in Exhibit 8.2 shows the PV chart for Do-All assuming fixed costs of €3300 (compared with €2000 in Graph A) and variable costs per unit of €90 (compared with €120 in Graph A). The selling price is €200 in both graphs. The unit contribution margin in Graph B is €110. The breakeven point in Graph B is 30 units:

$$\begin{aligned} €200Q - €90Q - €3300 &= 0 \\ Q &= €3300 \div €110 \\ &= 30 \text{ units} \end{aligned}$$

Each unit sold beyond the breakeven point will add €110 to operating profit. The PV graph in Graph B has a steeper slope for its operating profit line, which means that the operating profit increases at a faster rate as the level of output increases.

Exhibit 8.2 Profit–volume graph



Impact of income taxes

When we introduced a target operating profit in our earlier Do-All Software example, the following income statement was shown:

Revenues, €200 × 40	€8000
Variable costs, €120 × 40	4800
Contribution margin	3200
Fixed costs	2000
Operating profit	€1200

The net profit of Do-All is operating profit minus income taxes. What number of units of Do-All must be sold to earn a net profit of €1200, assuming operating profit is taxed at a rate of 40%? The only change in the equation method of CVP analysis is to modify the target operating profit to allow for income taxes. Recall our previous equation method:

$$\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} = \text{Operating profit}$$

We now introduce income tax effects:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Target net profit} &= (\text{Operating profit}) - [(\text{Operating profit}) \times (\text{Tax rate})] \\
\text{Target net profit} &= (\text{Operating profit}) \times (1 - \text{Tax rate}) \\
\text{Target net profit} &= \frac{\text{Target net profit}}{1 - \text{Tax rate}}
\end{aligned}$$

So, taking income taxes into account, the equation method yields:

$$\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} = \frac{\text{Target net profit}}{1 - \text{Tax rate}}$$

Substituting numbers from our Do-All example, the equation would now be:

$$\begin{aligned}
€200Q - €120Q - €2000 &= \frac{\text{Target net profit}}{1 - \text{Tax rate}} \\
€200Q - €120Q - €2000 &= \frac{€1200}{1 - 0.40} \\
€200Q - €120Q - €2000 &= €2000 \\
€80Q &= €4000 \\
Q &= €4000 \div €80 \\
&= 50 \text{ units}
\end{aligned}$$

Proof:

Revenues, €200 × 50	€10 000
Variable costs, €120 × 50	6 000
Contribution margin	4 000
Fixed costs	2 000
Operating profit	2 000
Income taxes, €2000 × 0.40	800
Net profit	€1 200

Suppose the target net profit were set at €1680 instead of €1200. The required number of unit sales would rise from 50 to 60 units:

$$\text{Operating profit} = \frac{\text{Target net profit}}{1 - \text{Tax rate}}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
€200Q - €120Q - €2000 &= \frac{€1680}{1 - 0.40} \\
€80Q - €2000 &= €2800 \\
€80Q &= €4800 \\
Q &= €4800 \div €80 \\
&= 60 \text{ units}
\end{aligned}$$

The presence of income taxes will not change the breakeven point. Why? Because, by definition, operating profit at the breakeven point is zero, and thus no income taxes will be paid. However, other types of tax may affect the breakeven point. For example, a sales tax paid by the seller that is a fixed percentage of revenues can be treated as a variable cost and hence will increase the breakeven point.

Sensitivity analysis and uncertainty

Sensitivity analysis is a what-if technique that examines how a result will change if the original predicted data are not achieved or if an underlying assumption changes. In the context of CVP, sensitivity analysis answers such questions as: What will operating profit be if the output level decreases by 5% from the original prediction? What will operating profit be if variable costs per unit increase by 10%? The sensitivity to various possible outcomes broadens managers' perspectives as to what might actually occur despite their well-laid plans.

The widespread use of electronic spreadsheets has led to an increase in the use of CVP analysis in many organisations. Using spreadsheets, managers can easily conduct CVP-based sensitivity analyses to examine the effect and interaction of changes in selling prices, unit variable costs, fixed costs and target operating profits. Exhibit 8.3 displays a spreadsheet for our Do-All Software example. Mary Frost can immediately see the revenues that need to be generated to reach particular operating profit levels, given alternative levels of fixed costs and variable costs per unit. For example, revenues of €6000 (30 units at €200 per unit) are required to earn an operating profit of

Exhibit 8.3 Spreadsheet analysis of CVP relationships for Do-All Software

Fixed costs	Variable costs per unit	Revenue required at €200 selling price to earn operating profit of			
		€0	€1 000	€1 500	€2 000
€2 000	€100	€4 000	6 000	7 000	8 000
	120	5 000	7 500	8 750	10 000
	140	6 667	10 000	11 667	13 333
€2 500	€100	€5 000	7 000	8 000	9 000
	120	6 250	8 750	10 000	11 250
	140	8 333	11 667	13 333	15 000
€3 000	€100	€6 000	8 000	9 000	10 000
	120	7 500	10 000	11 250	12 500
	140	10 000	13 333	15 000	16 667

€1000 if fixed costs are €2000 and variable costs per unit are €100. Mary can also use Exhibit 8.3 to assess whether she wants to sell at the computer convention if, for example, the booth rental is raised to €3000 (thus increasing fixed costs to €3000) or the software supplier raises its price to €140 per unit (thus increasing variable costs to €140 per unit).

One aspect of sensitivity analysis is the **margin of safety**, which is the excess of budgeted revenues over the breakeven revenues. The margin of safety is the answer to the what-if question: If budgeted revenues are above breakeven and drop, how far can they fall below budget before the breakeven point is reached? Such a fall could be due to a competitor having a better product, poorly executed marketing, and so on. Assume that Mary Frost has fixed costs of €3000, a selling price of €200, and variable costs per unit of €140. For 75 units sold, the budgeted revenues are €15 000 and the budgeted operating profit is €1500. The breakeven point for this set of assumptions is 50 units (€3000 ÷ €60) or €10 000 (€200 × 50). Hence, the margin of safety is €5000 (€15000 − €10 000) or 25 units.

Sensitivity analysis is one approach to recognising **uncertainty**, which is defined here as the possibility that an actual amount will deviate from an expected amount. Another approach is to calculate expected values using probability distributions. The appendix to this chapter illustrates this approach.

Concepts in action

Can cost–volume–profit analysis help Whole Foods escape the 'whole paycheck' trap?

For many years, Whole Foods – the American supermarket chain – has been criticised for the high prices of its organic groceries. While it has the highest profit margin in the industry, Whole Foods has struggled to shake its 'whole paycheck' reputation as a grocery store for wealthy people who are willing to pay top dollar for asparagus water and ornamental kale.

In 2017, Amazon purchased Whole Foods for $13.7 billion. Its first order of business was to cut prices on more than 500 groceries, including bananas, avocados, and eggs. Why? Amazon believed that lower prices would drive new customers to Whole Foods and boost its profits.

'We're determined to make healthy and organic food affordable for everyone. Everybody should be able to eat Whole Foods quality – we will lower prices without compromising Whole Foods' long-held commitment to the highest standards,' said Amazon executive Jeff Wilke.

Amazon also rolled out special discounts at Whole Foods for its Amazon Prime members, including 10% off hundreds of sale items and rotating weekly specials such as $10 per pound off halibut steaks. It also began selling Whole Foods' private-label brands through its Web site and its Amazon Fresh, Prime Pantry, and Prime Now programs. One year after Amazon acquired Whole Foods, annual revenue grew approximately 7% and the number of items purchased per transaction increased.

Sources: Abha Bhattarai (2017) 'Whole Foods has tried to lower prices before. Can Amazon make it work?' *The Washington Post*, 25 August (https://www.washingtonpost.com/business/capitalbusiness/whole-foods-has-tried-lower-prices-before-can-amazon-make-it-work/2017/08/25/2b2d1308-89a1-11e7-a50f-e0d4e6ec070a_story.html); Tonya Garcia (2018) 'Amazon Prime members are adopting Whole Foods benefits faster than previous perks', MarketWatch.com, 31 July (https://www.marketwatch.com/story/amazon-prime-members-are-adopting-whole-foods-benefits-faster-than-previous-perks-2018-07-27); Christian Hetrick (2018) 'A year after Amazon takeover, Whole Foods still hasn't shed its whole paycheck status', *The Philadelphia Inquirer*, 20 August (http://www2.philly.com/philly/business/consumer_news/amazon-whole-foods-prices-prime-wegman-20180820.html); Lisa Baertlein and Jeffrey Dastin (2018) 'Amazon cuts Whole Foods prices for Prime members in new grocery showdown', *Reuters*, 16 May (https://www.reuters.com/article/us-amazon-com-whole-foods/amazon-cuts-whole-foods-prices-for-prime-members-in-new-grocery-showdown-idUSKCN1IH0BM).

Cost planning and CVP

Alternative fixed-cost/variable-cost structures

Sensitivity analysis highlights the risks that an existing cost structure poses for an organisation. This may lead managers to consider alternative cost structures. CVP helps managers in this task. Consider again Mary Frost and her booth rental agreement with Computer Conventions Ltd. Our original example has Mary paying a €2000 booth rental fee. Suppose, however, Computer Conventions offers her three rental alternatives:

- Option 1: €2000 fixed fee.
- Option 2: €1400 fixed fee plus 5% of the convention revenues from Do-All sales.
- Option 3: 20% of the convention revenues from Do-All sales with no fixed fee.

Mary is interested in how her choice of a rental agreement will affect the risks she faces. Exhibit 8.4 presents these options in the CVP format:

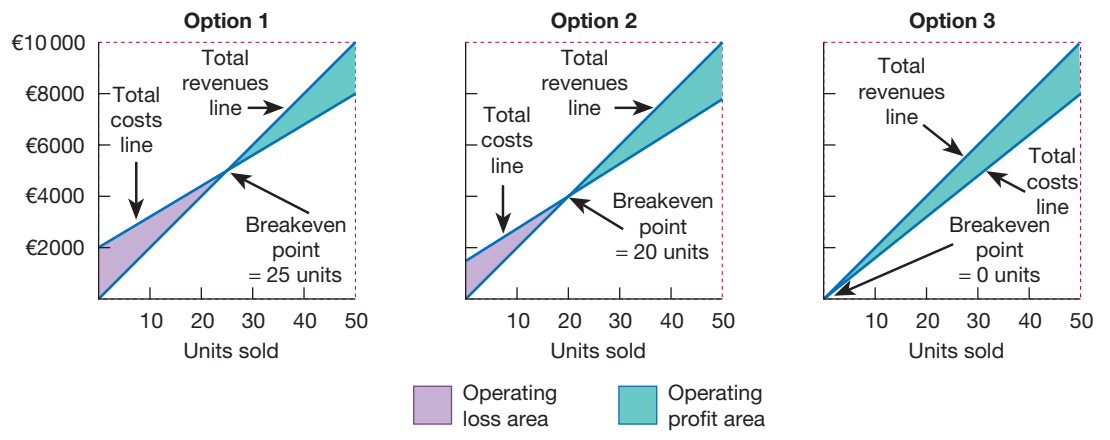
- Option 1 exposes her to fixed costs of €2000 and a breakeven point of 25 units. This option brings €80 additional operating profit for each unit sold above 25 units.
- Option 2 exposes her to lower fixed costs of €1400 and a lower breakeven point of 20 units. There is, however, only €70 in additional operating profit for each unit sold above 20 units.
- Option 3 has no fixed costs. Mary makes €40 in additional operating profit for each unit sold. This €40 addition to operating profit starts from the first unit sold. This option enables Mary to break even if no units are sold.

The breakeven points are calculated as follows:

- The breakeven point of 25 units for option 1 was calculated earlier in this chapter.
- The breakeven point (Q) for option 2 is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Fixed costs} &= €1400 \\
\text{Unit contribution} &= €120 + 0.05\,(€200) = €130 \\
\text{Unit contribution margin} &= €200 - €130 = €70 \text{ per unit} \\
€200Q - €130Q - €1400 &= €1400 \div €70 \\
Q &= €1400 \div €70 \\
&= 20 \text{ units}
\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 8.4 CVP graphs for alternative rental schedules for Do-All Software



- Option 3 has a breakeven point of zero units because there are no fixed costs. The variable costs per unit are €160 (€120 + 0.20 [€200]) The contribution margin per unit is €40 (€200 − €160).

CVP analysis highlights the different risks and different returns associated with each option. For example, while option 1 has the most risk (a €2000 fixed up-front payment), it also has the highest contribution margin per unit. This €80 contribution margin per unit translates to high potential if Mary is able to generate sales above 25 units. By moving from option 1 to option 2, Mary faces less risk (lowers her fixed costs) if demand is low, but she must accept less potential (because of the higher variable costs) if demand is high. The choice among options 1, 2 and 3 will be influenced by her confidence in the level of demand for Do-All Software and her willingness to risk money.

The risk–return trade-off across alternative cost structures is usefully summarised in a measure called *operating leverage*. **Operating leverage** describes the effects that fixed costs have on changes in operating profit as changes occur in units sold and hence in contribution margin. Organisations with a high proportion of fixed costs in their cost structures, as is the case under option 1 in our example, have high operating leverage. As a result, small changes in sales lead to large changes in operating profits. Consequently, if sales increase, operating profits increase even more, yielding higher returns. If sales decrease, however, operating profits decline yet more, leading to a greater risk of losses. *At any given level of sales*, the *degree of operating leverage* equals contribution margin divided by operating profit.

The following table shows the degree of operating leverage at sales of 40 units for the three alternative rental options.

		Option 1	Option 2	Option 3
1	Contribution margin per unit (p. 000)	€80	€50	€30
2	Contribution margin (row 1 × 40 units)	€3200	€2000	€1200
3	Operating profit (from Exhibit 8.4)	€1200	€1200	€1200
4	Degree of operating leverage (line 2 ÷ line 3)	$\frac{€3200}{€1200} = 2.67$	$\frac{€2000}{€1200} = 1.67$	$\frac{€1200}{€1200} = 1.00$

These numbers indicate that, when sales are 40 units, a percentage change in sales and contribution margin will result in 2.67 times that percentage change in operating profit for option 1, but the same percentage change in operating profit for option 3. Consider, for example, a sales increase of 50% from 40 units to 60 units. Contribution margin will increase by 50% under each option. Operating profit, however, will increase by 2.67 × 50% = 133% from €1200 to €2800 in option 1 but only by 1.00 × 50% = 50% from €1200 to €1800 in option 3 (see Exhibit 8.5). The degree of operating leverage at a given level of sales helps managers calculate the effect of fluctuations in sales on operating profits.

Exhibit 8.5 Mary Frost's budgets for Do-All and Superword software products

	Do-All	Superword	Total
Units sold	60	30	90
Revenues, €200 and €130 per unit	€12 000	€3 900	€15 900
Variable costs, €120 and €90 per unit	7 200	2 700	9 900
Contribution margin, €80 and €40 per unit	€4 800	€1 200	6 000
Fixed costs			2 000
Operating profit			€4 000

Effect of time horizon

A critical assumption of CVP analysis is that costs can be classified as either variable or fixed. This classification can be affected by the time period being considered. The shorter the time horizon we consider, the higher the percentage of total costs we may view as fixed. Consider Lufthansa. Suppose a Lufthansa plane will depart from its gate in 30 minutes and there are 20 empty seats. A potential passenger arrives bearing a transferable ticket from a competing airline. What are the variable costs to Lufthansa of placing one more passenger in an otherwise empty seat? Variable costs (such as one more meal) would be negligible. Virtually all the costs in that decision situation are fixed. In contrast, suppose Lufthansa must decide whether to include another city in its routes. This decision may have a one-year planning horizon. Many more costs would be regarded as variable and fewer as fixed in this decision.

This example underscores the importance of how the time horizon of a decision affects the analysis of cost behaviour. In brief, whether costs really are fixed depends heavily on the relevant range, the length of the time horizon in question, and the specific decision situation.

Effects of revenue mix on profit

Revenue mix (also called **sales mix**) is the relative combination of quantities of products or services that constitutes total revenues. If the mix changes, overall revenue targets may still be achieved. However, the effects on operating profit depend on how the original proportions of lower or higher contribution margin products have shifted.

Suppose Mary Frost in our computer convention example is now budgeting for the next convention. She plans to sell two software products – Do-All and Superword. Her budgets are set out in Exhibit 8.5.

What is the breakeven point? Unlike the single product (or service) situation, there is not a unique number of units for a multiple-product situation. This number instead depends on the revenue mix. The following approach can be used when it is assumed that the budgeted revenue mix (two units of Do-All sold for each unit of Superword sold) will not change at different levels of total revenue.

Let S be the number of units of Superword that need to be sold in order to break even. Then 2S is the number of units of Do-All that need to be sold in order to break even.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} &= \text{Operating profit} \\
[€200(2S) + €130S] - [€120(2S) + €90S] - €2000 &= 0 \\
€530S - €330S &= €2000 \\
€200S &= €2000 \\
S &= 10 \\
2S &= 20
\end{aligned}
$$

The breakeven point is 30 units when the revenue mix is 20 units of Do-All and 10 units of Superword. The total contribution margin of €2000 (Do-All €80 × 20 = €1600 plus Superword €40 × 10 = €400) equals the fixed costs of €2000 at this mix.

Alternative revenue mixes (in units) that have a contribution margin of €2000 and thus result in breakeven operations include the following:

Do-All	25	20	15	10	5	0
Superword	0	10	20	30	40	50
Total	25	30	35	40	45	50

Other things being equal, for any given total quantity of units sold, if the mix shifts towards units with higher contribution margins, operating profit will be higher. Thus, if the mix shifts

towards Do-All (say, to 70% Do-All from 60% Do-All) with a contribution margin of twice that of Superword, Mary's operating profit will increase.

Despite their desire to maximise revenues from all products, managers must frequently cope with limited (constrained) resources. For instance, additional production capacity may be unavailable. Which products should be produced? As Chapter 9 explains in more detail, the best decision is not necessarily to make the product having the highest contribution margin per unit. Rather, the best decision recognises the contribution margin per unit of the constraining factor.

Not-for-profit organisations and CVP

CVP can be readily applied to decisions by both not-for-profit and for-profit organisations. Suppose a social welfare department has a government budget appropriation (revenue) for 2022 of €900 000. This not-for-profit agency's major purpose is to assist people with disabilities who are seeking employment. On average, the agency supplements each person's income by €5000 annually. The agency's fixed costs are €270 000. There are no other costs. The agency manager wants to know how many people could be assisted in 2022. We can use CVP analysis here by assuming zero operating profit. Let Q be the number of people to be assisted:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Revenue} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} &= €0 \\ €900\,000 - €5000Q - €270\,000 &= €0 \\ €5000Q &= €900\,000 - €270\,000 \\ Q &= €630\,000 \div €5000 \\ &= 126 \text{ people} \end{aligned}$$

Suppose the manager is concerned that the total budget appropriation for 2022 will be reduced by 15% to a new amount of € 765 000. The manager wants to know how many people with disabilities will be assisted. Assume the same amount of monetary assistance per person:

$$\begin{aligned} €765\,000 - €5000Q - €270\,000 &= €0 \\ €5000Q &= €765\,000 - €270\,000 \\ Q &= €495\,000 \div €5000 \\ &= 99 \text{ people} \end{aligned}$$

Note the following two characteristics of the CVP relationships in this not-for-profit situation:

1. The percentage drop in service (126 − 99) ÷ 126, or 21.4% is more than the 15% reduction in the budget appropriation. Why? Because the existence of €270 000 in fixed costs means that the percentage drop in service exceeds the percentage drop in budget appropriation.
2. If the relationships were graphed, the budget appropriation (revenue) amount would be a straight horizontal line of €765 000. The manager could adjust operations to stay within the reduced appropriation in one or more of three major ways: (a) reduce the number of people assisted; (b) reduce the variable costs (the assistance per person); or (c) reduce the total fixed costs.

Contribution margin and gross margin

Contribution margin is a key concept in this chapter. We now consider how it is related to the gross margin concept discussed in Chapter 2. First some definitions:

Contribution margin = Revenues − All variable costs

Gross margin = Revenues − Cost of goods sold

Cost of goods sold in the merchandising sector is made up of goods purchased for resale. Cost of goods sold in the manufacturing sector consists entirely of manufacturing costs (including fixed manufacturing costs).

Service-sector companies can calculate a contribution margin figure but not a gross margin figure. Service-sector companies do not have a cost of goods sold item in their income statement.

Merchandising sector

The two areas of difference between contribution margin and gross margin for companies in the merchandising sector are fixed cost of goods sold (such as a fixed annual payment to a supplier to guarantee an exclusive option to purchase merchandise) and variable non-cost of goods sold items (such as a salesperson's commission that is a percentage of sales euros). Contribution margin is calculated after all variable costs have been deducted, whereas gross margin is calculated by deducting only cost of goods sold from revenues. The following example for Lia Ltd illustrates this difference. Lia Ltd is a London-based seller of jewellery, lounge wear, beachwear and accessories. Figures given are assumed to be in pounds sterling (£).

Contribution margin format

Revenues (£)		200
Variable cost of goods sold	120	
Other variable costs	43	163
Contribution margin		37
Other fixed costs		19
Operating profit (£)		18

Gross margin format

Revenues (£)	200
Cost of goods sold (120)	120
Gross margin	80
Operating costs (43 + 19)	62
Operating profit (£)	18

Manufacturing sector

The two areas of difference between contribution margin and gross margin for companies in the manufacturing sector are fixed manufacturing costs and variable non-manufacturing costs. The following example (figures assumed to be in €million) illustrates this difference:

Revenues (£)		1000
Variable manufacturing costs	250	
Variable non-manufacturing costs	270	520
Contribution margin		480
Fixed manufacturing costs	160	
Fixed non-manufacturing costs	138	298
Operating profit (£)		182

Revenues (£)	1000
Cost of goods sold (250 + 160)	410
Gross margin	590
Non-manufacturing costs (270 + 138)	408
Operating profit (£ million)	182

Fixed manufacturing costs are not deducted from revenues when computing contribution margin but are deducted when computing gross margin. Cost of goods sold in a manufacturing company includes entirely manufacturing costs. Variable non-manufacturing costs are deducted from revenues when computing contribution margins but are not deducted when computing gross margins.

Both the **contribution margin** and the **gross margin** can be expressed as totals, as an amount per unit, or as percentages. The **contribution margin percentage** is the total contribution margin divided by revenues. The **variable-cost percentage** is the total variable costs (with respect to units of output) divided by revenues. The contribution margin percentage in our manufacturing-sector example is 48% (480 ÷ 1000), while the variable-cost percentage is 52% (520 ÷ 1000). The **gross margin percentage** is the gross margin divided by revenues −59% (590 ÷ 1000) in our manufacturing-sector example.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 General profit planning in its full complexity assumes that there are many revenue drivers and many cost drivers. CVP is a special case that, in a restricted number of settings, can assist managers in understanding the behaviour of total costs, total revenues and operating profit as changes occur in the output level, selling price, variable costs or fixed costs.

2 Using CVP requires simplifying assumptions, including that costs are either fixed or variable with respect to the number of output units (units produced and sold) and that total sales and total cost relationships are linear.

3 Managers often select the method they find easiest for computing the breakeven point: the equation method, the contribution margin method or the graph method. Income taxes can be incorporated into CVP analysis in a straightforward way by adjusting operating profit by the income tax rate. The breakeven point is unaffected by the presence of income taxes because no income taxes are paid if there is no operating profit.

4 Sensitivity analysis, a 'what-if' technique, can systematically examine the effect on operating profit and net profit of different levels of fixed costs, variable costs per unit, selling prices and output.

5 CVP can highlight to managers the risk and potential reward of alternatives that differ in their fixed costs and variable costs.

6 When CVP is applied to a multiple-product firm, it is assumed that there is a constant sales mix of products as the total quantity of units sold changes.

Appendix

Decision models and uncertainty

Managers make predictions and decisions in a world of uncertainty. This appendix explores the characteristics of uncertainty and describes how managers can cope with it. We also illustrate the additional insights gained when uncertainty is recognised in CVP analysis.

Coping with uncertainty

Role of a decision model

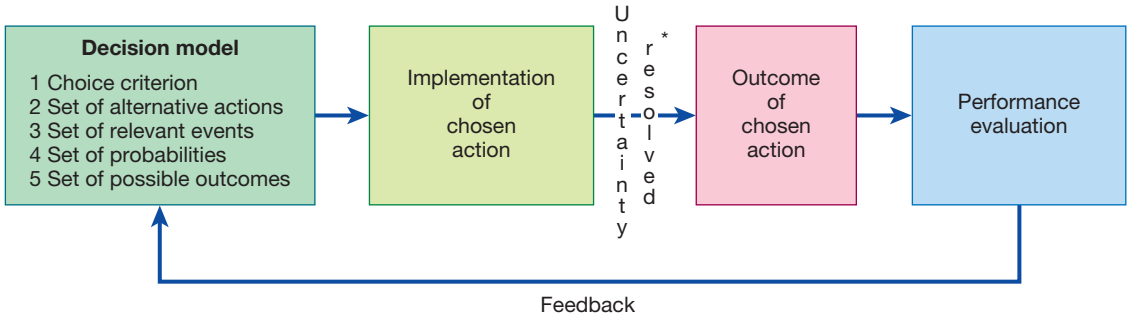
Uncertainty is the possibility that an actual amount will deviate from an expected amount. For example, marketing costs might be forecast at €400 000 but actually turn out to be €430 000. A **decision model** helps managers deal with uncertainty; it is a formal method for making a choice that often involves quantitative analysis. It usually includes the following elements:

1 A **choice criterion**, which is an objective that can be quantified. This objective can take many forms. Most often the choice criterion is expressed as a maximisation of income or a minimisation of cost. The choice criterion provides a basis for choosing the best alternative action.

2 A set of the alternative actions being considered.

3 A set of all the relevant events that may occur, where an **event** is a possible occurrence. This set of events should be mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive. Events are mutually exclusive if they cannot occur at the same time. Events are collectively exhaustive if, taken together, they make up the entire set of possible occurrences (and no other event can occur).

Exhibit 8.6 A decision model and its link to performance evaluation



* Uncertainty resolved means the event becomes known.

Examples are growth or no growth in industry demand, and increase, decrease or no change in interest rates. Only one event in a set of mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive events will actually occur.

4 A set of probabilities, where a **probability** is the likelihood or chance of occurrence of an event.

5 A set of possible **outcomes** that measures, in terms of the choice criterion, the predicted consequences of the various possible combinations of actions and events.

It is important to distinguish actions from events. Actions are choices made by management–for example, the prices it should charge for the company's products. Events are occurrences that management cannot control – for example, a growing or declining economy. The outcome is the operating profit the company makes, which depends on both the action management selects (pricing strategy) and the event that occurs (how the economy performs). Exhibit 8.6 presents an overview of a decision model, the implementation of the chosen action, its outcome and subsequent performance evaluation.

Probabilities

Assigning probabilities is a key aspect of the decision model approach to coping with uncertainty. A **probability distribution** describes the likelihood (or probability) of each of the mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive set of events. The probabilities of these events will add to 1.00 because they are collectively exhaustive. In some cases there will be much evidence to guide the assignment of probabilities. For example, the probability of obtaining a head in the toss of a fair coin is $\frac{1}{2}$ that of drawing a particular playing card from a standard, well-shuffled pack is $\frac{1}{52}$. In business, the probability of having a specified percentage of defective units may be assigned with great confidence, on the basis of production experience with thousands of units. In other cases, there will be little evidence supporting estimated probabilities. For example, how many units of a new pharmaceutical product will be sold next year?

Expected value

An **expected value** is a weighted average of the outcomes with the probability of each outcome serving as the weight. Where the outcomes are measured in monetary terms, expected value is often called **expected monetary value**.

Managers often prefer being presented with the entire probability distribution. Information can also be presented in three categories: best-case scenario, most likely and worst-case scenario. All three categories remind the user that uncertainty exists in the decision at hand.

Illustrative problem

Reconsider Mary Frost and the booth rental alternatives offered by Computer Conventions to sell Do-All Software:

- Option 1: €2000 fixed fee.
- Option 2: €1400 fixed fee plus 5% of the convention revenues from Do-All sales.
- Option 3: 20% of the convention revenues from Do-All sales (but no fixed fee).

Mary estimates a 0.60 probability that sales will be 40 units and a 0.40 probability that sales will be 70 units. Each Do-All Software package will be sold for €200. Mary will purchase the package from a computer software wholesaler at €120 per unit with the privilege of returning all unsold units. Which booth rental alternative should Mary choose?

General approach to uncertainty

The construction of a decision model consists of five steps that are keyed to the five characteristics described at the beginning of this appendix.

Step 1 Identify the choice criterion of the decision maker. Assume that Mary's choice criterion is to maximise expected net cash inflow at the convention.

Step 2 Identify the set of alternative actions under consideration. The notation for an action is a. Mary has three possible actions:

$$a_1 = \text{Pay €2000 fixed fee}$$
$$a_2 = \text{Pay €1400 fixed fee plus 5\% of convention revenues}$$
$$a_3 = \text{Pay 20\% of convention revenues (but no fixed fee)}$$

Step 3 Identify the set of relevant events that can occur. Mary's only uncertainty is the number of units of Do-All Software that she can sell. Using x as the notation for an event,

$$x_1 = 40 \text{ units}$$
$$x_2 = 70 \text{ units}$$

Step 4 Assign the set of probabilities for the events that can occur. Mary assesses a 60% chance that she will sell 40 units and a 40% chance that she will sell 70 units. Using $P(x)$ as the notation for the probability of an event, the probabilities are:

$$\text{P}(x_1) = 0.60$$
$$\text{P}(x_2) = 0.40$$

Step 5 Identify the set of possible outcomes that are dependent on specific actions and events. The outcomes in this example take the form of six possible net cash flows that are displayed in a decision table in Exhibit 8.7. A **decision table** is a summary of the contemplated actions, events, outcomes and probabilities of events.

Mary can now use the information in Exhibit 8.7 to calculate the expected net cash inflow of each action as follows:

Pay €2000 fixed fee:	$\text{E}(a_1) = 0.60\,(€1200) + 0.40\,(€3600) = €2160$
Pay €1400 fixed fee plus 5% of revenues:	$\text{E}(a_2) = 0.60\,(€1400) + 0.40\,(€3500) = €2240$
Pay 20% of revenues (but no fixed fee):	$\text{E}(a_3) = 0.60\,(€1600) + 0.40\,(€2800) = €2080$

Exhibit 8.7 Decision table for Do-All Software

Actions	Probability of events: $x_1 = 40$ units sold $P(x_1) = 0.60$	Probability of events: $x_2 = 70$ units sold $P(x_2) = 0.40$
a_1: Pay €2000 fixed fee	€1200*	€3600†
a_2: Pay €1400 fixed fee plus 5% of convention revenues	€1400‡	€3500§
a_3: Pay 20% of convention revenues (but no fixed fee)	€1600#	€2800**

* Net cash flows = (€200 − €120)(40) − €2000 = €1200.
† Net cash flows = (€200 − €120)(70) − €2000 = €3600.
‡ Net cash flows = (€200 − €120 − €10‖)(40) − €1400 = €1400.
§ Net cash flows = (€200 − €120 − €10‖)(70) − €1400 = €3500.
‖ €10 = 5% of selling price of €200.
Net cash flows = (€200 − €120 − €40††) − (40) = €1600.
** Net cash flows = (€200 − €120 − €40††) − (70) = €2800.
†† €40 = 20% of selling price of €200.

To maximise expected net cash inflows, Mary should select action a_2 that is, contracting to pay Computer Conventions a €1400 fixed fee plus 5% of convention revenues.

Consider the effect of uncertainty on the preferred action choice. If Mary was certain that she would sell only 40 units of Do-All Software (that is, $P(x_1) = 1$), she would prefer alternative a_3 – pay 20% of revenues and no fixed fee. To follow this reasoning, examine Exhibit 8.7. When 40 units are sold, alternative a_3 yields the maximum net cash inflows of €1600. Because fixed costs are zero, booth rental costs are low when sales are low.

However, if Mary was certain that she would sell 70 units of Do-All Software (that is, $P(x2 = 1)$, she would prefer alternative a_1 – pay a €2000 fixed fee. Exhibit 8.7 indicates that when 70 units are sold, alternative a_1 yields the maximum net cash inflows of €3600. Rental payments under a_2 and a_3 increase with units sold but are fixed under a_1.

Good decisions and good outcomes

Always distinguish between a good decision and a good outcome. One can exist without the other. By definition, uncertainty rules out guaranteeing, after the fact, that the best outcome will always be obtained. It is possible that bad luck will produce unfavourable consequences even when good decisions have been made.

Suppose you are offered a one-time-only gamble tossing a fair coin. You will win €20 if the event is heads, but you will lose €1 if the event is tails. As a decision maker, you proceed through the logical phases: gathering information, assessing outcomes and making a choice. You accept the bet. Why? Because the expected value is $€9.50\,[0.5(€20) + 0.5\,(-€1)]$. The coin is tossed and the event is tails. You lose. From your viewpoint, this was a good decision but a bad outcome.

A decision can be made only on the basis of information available at the time of the decision. Hindsight is flawless, but a bad outcome does not necessarily mean that a bad decision was made. Making a good decision is our best protection against a bad outcome.

Reference and further reading

Alam, K. (2021) 'Foodpanda to reach breakeven in 2023: CEO', *Dawn*, 17 October (www.dawn.com/news/1)

Miller, J. (2022). 'Germany's shrinking conglomerates enjoy profits surge after streamlining', *Financial Times*, 10 February (https://www.ft.com/content/be06fa73-87ae-4f5d-8351-29f2d0d378b6)

CHAPTER 8

Assessment material

Review questions

Note: To underscore the basic CVP relationships, the assessment material ignores income taxes unless stated otherwise.

8.1 Describe how the special case labelled CVP is different from the general case for predicting total revenues, total costs and operating profit.

8.2 Distinguish between operating profit and net profit.

8.3 Describe the assumptions underlying CVP analysis.

8.4 'CVP is both simple and simplistic. If you want realistic analysis to underpin your decisions, look beyond CVP.' Do you agree? Explain.

8.5 Define contribution margin, gross margin, contribution margin percentage, variable-cost percentage and margin of safety.

8.6 Give an example of how a manager can decrease variable costs while increasing fixed costs.

8.7 Give an example of how a manager can increase variable costs while decreasing fixed costs.

8.8 'There is no such thing as a fixed cost. All costs can be "unfixed" given sufficient time.' Do you agree? What is the implication of your answer for CVP analysis?

8.9 How can a company with multiple products calculate its breakeven point?

8.10 How does an increase in the income tax rate affect the breakeven point?

Exercises

Basic level

***8.11 CVP computations** (20 minutes)

Fill in the blanks for each of the following independent cases.

Case	Selling price	Variable costs per unit	Total units sold	Total contribution margin	Total fixed costs	Operating profit/loss
a	£30	£20	70 000	£?	£?	−£15000
b	25	?	180 000	900 000	800 000	?
c	?	10	150 000	300 000	220 000	?
d	20	14	?	120 000	?	12 000

8.12 CVP, changing revenues and costs (15–20 minutes)

Soleil Voyages SA is a travel agency specialising in flights between Paris and London. It books passengers on Air Chanson. Air Chanson charges passengers €1000 per round-trip ticket. Soleil Voyages receives a commission of 8% of the ticket price paid by the passenger. Soleil Voyages's fixed costs are €22 000 per month. Its variable costs are €35 per ticket, including an €18 delivery fee by Lièvre-Express SA. (Assume each ticket purchased is delivered in a separate package; thus the delivery fee applies to every individual ticket.)

Required

1 What is the number of tickets Soleil Voyages must sell each month to (a) break even, and (b) make a target operating profit of €10 000?

2 Assume Tortue-Express SA offers to charge Soleil Voyages only €12 per ticket delivered. How would accepting this offer affect your answers to (a) and (b) in requirement 1?

8.13 CVP, changing revenues and costs (continuation of Exercise 8.12) (20 minutes)

Air Chanson changes its commission structure to travel agents. Up to a ticket price of €600, the 8% commission applies. For tickets costing €600 or more, there is a fixed commission of €48. Assume Soleil Voyages has fixed costs of €22 000 per month and variable costs of €29 per ticket (including a €12 delivery fee by Lièvre-Express).

Required

1 What is the number of Paris-to-London round-trip tickets Soleil Voyages must sell each month to (a) break even, and (b) make a target operating profit of €10 000? Comment on the results.

2 Soleil Voyages decides to charge its customers a delivery fee of €5 per ticket. How would this change affect your answers to (a) and (b) in requirement 1? Comment on the results.

8.14 CVP exercises (20 minutes)

Grünberg Lehrmittelverlag GmbH manufactures and sells pens. Present sales output is 5 million annually at a selling price of €0.50 per unit. Fixed costs are €900 000 per year. Variable costs are €0.30 per unit.

Required

(Consider each case separately.)

1 **a** What is the present operating profit for a year?
b What is the present breakeven point in revenues?

Calculate the new operating profit for each of the following changes:

2 A €0.04 per unit increase in variable costs.

3 A 10% increase in fixed costs and a 10% increase in units sold.

4 A 20% decrease in fixed costs, a 20% decrease in selling price, a 10% decrease in variable costs per unit, and a 40% increase in units sold.

Calculate the new breakeven point in units for each of the following changes:

5 A 10% increase in fixed costs.

6 A 10% increase in selling price and a €20 000 increase in fixed costs.

8.15 CVP, changing cost inputs (5–10 minutes)

Maria Kabaliki is planning to sell a vegetable slicer-dicer for €15 per unit at a country fair. She purchases units from a local distributor for €6 each. She can return any unsold units for a full refund. Fixed costs for booth rental, set-up and cleaning are €450.

Required

1 Calculate the breakeven point in units sold.

2 Suppose the unit purchase cost is €5 instead of €6, but the selling price is unchanged. Calculate the new breakeven point in units sold.

8.16 CVP, international cost structure differences (10 minutes)

Knitwear Ltd is considering three countries for the sole manufacturing site of its new sweater: Cyprus, Turkey and Ireland. All sweaters are to be sold to retail outlets in Ireland at €32 per unit. These retail outlets add their own mark-up when selling to final customers. The three countries differ in their fixed costs and variable costs per sweater.

	Annual fixed costs	Variable manufacturing costs per sweater	Variable marketing and distribution costs per sweater
Cyprus	€6.5 million	€8.00	€11.00
Turkey	4.5 million	5.50	11.50
Ireland	12.0 million	13.00	9.00

Required

1 Calculate the breakeven point of Knitwear Ltd in both (a) units sold, and (b) revenues for each of the three countries considered for manufacturing the sweaters.

2 If Knitwear Ltd sells 800 000 sweaters in 2022, what is the budgeted operating profit for each of the three countries considered for manufacturing the sweaters? Comment on the results.

8.17 CVP, income taxes (10–15 minutes)

Koninklijke BolsWessanen NV has fixed costs of €300 000 and a variable-cost percentage of 80%. The company earns net profit of €84 000 in 2022. The income tax rate is 40%.

Required

Calculate (1) operating profit, (2) contribution margin, (3) total revenues and (4) breakeven revenues.

8.18 CVP, movie production (10 minutes)

Espasso SA has just finished production of *Tornado*, the latest action film directed by Domingos Vieira and starring Arnaldo Moura and Victoria Rebello. The total production cost to Espasso was €5 million. All the production personnel and actors on *Tornado* received a fixed salary (included in the €5 million) and will have no 'residual' (equity interest) in the revenues or operating income from the movie. Artes e Media Ltda will handle the marketing of *Tornado*. Media agrees to invest a minimum €3 million of its own money in marketing the movie and will be paid 20% of the revenues Espasso itself receives from the box-office receipts. Espasso receives 62.5% of the total box-office receipts (out of which comes the 20% payment to Artes e Media).

Required

1 What is the breakeven point to Espasso for *Tornado* expressed in terms of (a) revenues received by Espasso, and (b) total box-office receipts?

2 Assume in its first year of release, the box-office receipts for *Tornado* total €300 million. What is the operating income to Espasso from the movie in its first year?

8.19 CVP, cost structure differences, movie production (continuation of Exercise 8.18) (20 minutes)

Espasso is negotiating for *Tornado 2*, a sequel to its mega-blockbuster *Tornado*. This negotiation is proving more difficult than for the original movie. The budgeted production cost (excluding payments to the director Vieira and the stars Moura and Rebello) for *Tornado 2* is €21 million. The agent negotiating for Vieira, Moura and Rebello proposes either of two contracts:

- *Contract A*: Fixed-salary component of €15 million for Vieira, Moura and Rebello (combined) with no residual interest in the revenues from *Tornado 2*.
- *Contract B*: Fixed-salary component of €3 million for Vieira, Moura and Rebello (combined) plus a residual of 15% of the revenues Espasso receives from *Tornado 2*.

Artes e Media will market *Tornado 2*. It agrees to invest a minimum of €10 million of its own money. Because of its major role in the success of *Tornado*, Artes e Media will now be paid 25% of the revenues Espasso receives from the total box-office receipts. Espasso receives 62.5% of the total box-office receipts (out of which comes the 25% payment to Artes e Media).

Required

1. What is the breakeven point for Espasso expressed in terms of:
   a. revenues received by that company
   b. total box-office receipts for Tornado 2

   for contracts A and B? Explain the difference between the breakeven points for contracts A and B.
2. Assume *Tornado 2* achieves the same €300 million in box-office revenues as *Tornado*. What is the operating income to Espasso from *Tornado 2* if it accepts contract B? Comment on the difference in operating income between the two films.

8.20 Not-for-profit institution (15–25 minutes)

The Ville de Genève, Switzerland, makes a SFr 400 000 lump-sum budget appropriation to an agency to conduct a counselling programme for drug addicts for a year. All of the appropriation is to be spent. The variable costs for drug prescriptions average SFr 400 per patient per year. Fixed costs are SFr 150 000.

Required

1. Calculate the number of patients that could be served in a year.
2. Suppose the total budget for the following year is reduced by 10%. Fixed costs are to remain the same. The same level of service to each patient will be maintained. Calculate the number of patients that could be served in a year.
3. As in requirement 2, assume a budget reduction of 10%. Fixed costs are to remain the same. The drug counsellor has discretion over how much in drug prescriptions to give to each patient. She does not want to reduce the number of patients served. On average, what is the cost of drugs that can be given to each patient? Calculate the percentage decline in the annual average cost of drugs per patient.

8.21 Appendix: CVP under uncertainty (15 minutes)

Bomuldstaft AS is considering two new colours for their umbrella products – emerald green and shocking pink. Either can be produced using present facilities. Each product requires an increase in annual fixed costs of €400 000. The products have the same selling price (€10) and the same variable costs per unit (€8).

Management, after studying past experience with similar products, has prepared the following probability distribution:

Event (units demanded)	Probability for Emerald green umbrella	Probability for Shocking pink umbrella
50 000	0.0	0.1
100 000	0.1	0.1
200 000	0.2	0.1
300 000	0.4	0.2
400 000	0.2	0.4
500 000	0.1	0.1
	1.0	1.0

Required

1 What is the breakeven point for each product?

2 Which product should be chosen, assuming the objective is to maximise expected operating profit? Why? Show your computations.

3 Suppose management is absolutely certain that 300 000 units of shocking pink will be sold, but it still faces the same uncertainty about the demand for emerald green as outlined in the problem. Which product should be chosen? Why? What benefits are available to management from having the complete probability distribution instead of just an expected value?

Intermediate level

*8.22 CVP, income taxes (20–25 minutes)

La Pilotta has two restaurants in Lausanne that are open 24 hours a day. Fixed costs for the two restaurants together total SFr 450 000 per year. Service varies from a cup of coffee to full meals. The average bill for each customer is SFr 8.00. The average cost of food and other variable costs for each customer is SFr 3.20. The income tax rate is 30%. Target net profit is SFr 105 000.

Required

1 Calculate the revenues needed to obtain the target net profit.

2 How much in sales terms is needed (a) to earn net income of SFr 105 000, and (b) to break even?

3 Calculate net income if the number of bills is 150 000.

8.23 Appendix: uncertainty, CVP (15–20 minutes)

Kristina Larsson is the Stockholm promoter for Gustav Häglund Larsson is promoting a new world championship fight for Häglund The key area of uncertainty is the size of the cable pay-per-view TV market. Larsson will pay Häglund a fixed fee of SEK 2 million and 25% of net cable pay-per-view revenue. Every cable TV home receiving the event pays SEK 29.95, of which Larsson receives SEK 16. Larsson pays Häglund 25% of the SEK 16.

Larsson estimates the following probability distribution for homes purchasing the pay-per-view event:

Demand	Probability
100 000	0.05
200 000	0.10
300 000	0.30
400 000	0.35
500 000	0.15
1 000 000	0.05

Required

1 What is the expected value of the payment Larsson will make to Häglund?

2 Assume the only uncertainty is cable TV demand for the fight. Larsson wants to know the breakeven point given her own fixed costs of SEK 1 million and her own variable costs of SEK 2 per home. (Also include Larsson's payments to Häglund in your answer.)

8.24 **CVP** (From CIMA, Paper P1, November 2014) (20–30 minutes)

The manager of a tourist attraction is considering whether to open on 1 January, a day when the attraction has, in previous years, been closed. The attraction has a daily capacity of 1000 visitors. If the attraction opens for business on that day it will incur additional specific fixed costs of £30 000.

The contribution from the sale of tickets would be £25 per visitor. The number of visitors is uncertain but based on past experience it is expected to be as follows:

	Probability
800 visitors	50%
900 visitors	30%
1000 visitors	20%

It is expected that visitors will also purchase souvenirs and refreshments. The contribution which would be made from these sales has been estimated as follows:

	Probability
£8 per visitor	35%
£10 per visitor	40%
£12 per visitor	25%

Required

1 Calculate whether it is worthwhile opening the tourist attraction on 1 January. You should use expected value as the basis of your analysis.
   - **a** Prepare a two-way data table to show the contribution to general fixed overheads for each of the nine possible outcomes.
   - **b** Calculate the probability of making a positive contribution to general fixed overheads by opening on 1 January.

8.25 **CVP** (From CIMA, Paper P2, November 2014) (Continuation of Exercise 8.24) (15 minutes)

A company sells three products: D, E and F. The market for the products dictates that the numbers of products sold are always in the ratio of 3D:4E:5F.

Budgeted sales volumes and prices, and cost details for the previous period were as follows:

	D	E	F
Sales units	300	400	500
Selling price per unit	£80	£55	£70
Contribution to sales ratio	70%	65%	50%

The budgeted total fixed costs for that period were £31 200.

Required:
Calculate for that period:

1 The breakeven sales revenue.
2 The volume of each product that would have needed to be sold if the company had wanted to earn a profit of £29 520 in that period.

*8.26 **Revenue mix, two products** (20–25 minutes)

Presencia Equipajes SA retails two products, a standard and a deluxe version of a luggage carrier. The budgeted income statement is as follows:

	Standard carrier	Deluxe carrier	Total
Units sold	150 000	50 000	200 000
Revenues			
@ €20 and €30 per unit	€3 000 000	€1 500 000	€4 500 000
Variable costs			
@ €14 and €18 per unit	2 100 000	900 000	3 000 000
Contribution margins			
@ €6 and €12 per unit	€900 000	€600 000	1 500 000
Fixed costs			1 200 000
Operating profit			€300 000

Required

1 Calculate the breakeven point in units, assuming that the planned revenue mix is maintained.
2 Calculate the breakeven point in units (a) if only standard carriers are sold, and (b) if only deluxe carriers are sold.
3 Suppose 200 000 units are sold, but only 20 000 are deluxe. Calculate the operating profit. Calculate the breakeven point if these relationships persist in the next period. Compare your answers with the original plans and the answer in requirement 1. What is the major lesson of this problem?

8.27 **Budget issues** (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, May 2006) (25 minutes)

S plc produces and sells three products, X, Y and Z. It has contracts to supply products X and Y, which will utilise all of the specific materials that are available to make these two products during the next period. The revenue these contracts will generate and the contribution to sales (c/s) ratios of products X and Y are as follows:

	Product X	Product Y
Revenue	£10 million	£20 million
C/S ratio	15%	10%

Product Z has a c/s ratio of 25%.

The total fixed costs of S plc are £5.5 million during the next period and management have budgeted to earn a profit of £1 million.

Required
Calculate the revenue that needs to be generated by Product Z for S plc to achieve the budgeted profit.

8.28 **Margin of safety** (From CIMA Performance Management, section B, March 2014) (30 minutes)

GF is a company that manufactures clothes for the fashion industry. The fashion industry is fast moving and consumer demand can change quickly due to the emergence of new trends.

GF manufactures three items of clothing: the S, the T and the B using the same resources but in different amounts.

Budget information per unit is as follows:

	S €	T €	B €
Selling price	250	40	100
Direct material (€20 per m^2)	100	10	30
Direct labour (€12 per hour)	36	12	27
Variable overhead (€3 per machine hour)	9	3	6.75

Total fixed costs are €300 000 per month.

Included in the original budget constructed at the start of the year, was the sales demand for the month of March as shown below:

	S	T	B
Demand in March (units)	2000	6000	4000

After the original budget had been constructed, items of clothing S, T and B have featured in a fashion magazine. As a result of this, a new customer (a fashion retailer), has ordered 1000 units each of S, T and B for delivery in March. The budgeted demand shown above **does not** include this order from the new customer.

In March there will be limited resources available. Resources will be limited to:
Direct materials 14 500 m^2
Direct labour 30 000 hours

There will be no opening inventory of material, work in progress or finished goods in March.

The Board of Directors have now addressed the shortage of key resources at GF to ensure that production will meet demand in April. The production plan for the month of **April** is shown below:

	S	T	B
Production (units)	4000	5000	4000

Required

For April:

1 Calculate the breakeven sales revenue for the given product mix in the production plan.

2 Calculate the margin of safety percentage.

3 Explain THREE limitations of breakeven analysis for GF.

CHAPTER 9

Determining how costs behave

This chapter focuses on how to determine cost behaviour, that is, on understanding how costs change with changes in activity levels, units of products produced, and so on. Knowing how costs vary by identifying the drivers of costs and by distinguishing fixed from variable costs is frequently the key to making considered management decisions. Many managerial functions such as planning and control rely on knowing how costs will behave. For example, consider the following questions: Should a component part be made or purchased? What price should we charge for altering a product's packaging? Should we make the item or buy it? What effect will a 20% increase in units sold have on operating profit? Decisions in the control area, such as the interpretation of some variances, similarly rely heavily on knowledge of cost behaviour. Determining and visualising how costs behave are among the most important functions of the management accountant. Moreover, understanding the drivers of costs and revenues is a valuable technical skill whose importance has grown in recent years with the increased availability of new, massive datasets and cheap computing power to analyze them. The knowledge gained in this process can motivate an organisation to alter its operations in innovative ways and tackle important challenges.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Explain the two assumptions frequently used in cost-behaviour estimation
- Describe linear cost functions and three common ways in which they behave
- Recognise various approaches to cost estimation
- Outline six steps in estimating a cost function on the basis of current or past cost relationships
- Describe three criteria to evaluate and choose cost drivers
- Explain and give examples of non-linear cost functions
- Distinguish between the cumulative average-time learning model and the incremental unit-time learning model

General issues in estimating cost functions

Basic assumptions and examples of cost functions

A cost function is a mathematical function describing cost-behaviour patterns – how costs change with changes in the cost driver. Cost functions can be plotted on graph paper by measuring the cost driver on the x-axis and the corresponding amount of total costs on the y-axis.

Two assumptions are frequently made when estimating cost functions:

1. Variations in the total costs of a cost object are explained by variations in a single cost driver.
2. Cost behaviour is adequately approximated by a **linear cost function** of the cost driver within the relevant range. A linear cost function is a cost function where, within the relevant range, the graph of total costs versus a single cost driver forms a straight line.

We use these assumptions throughout much of this chapter. Later sections give examples of non-linear cost-behaviour patterns in which the plot of the relationship between the cost driver and total costs is not a straight line. The last section in the appendix describes how changes in two or more cost drivers can explain changes in the level of total costs. We illustrate cost functions in the context of negotiations between Verre-Laine and Nord-Sud Communications (NSC) for exclusive use of a telephone line between Paris and Barcelona. NSC offers Verre-Laine three alternative cost structures.

- *Alternative 1*: €5 per minute of phone use. As we saw in Chapter 2, this is a *strictly variable cost* for Verre-Laine. The number of phone-minutes used is the cost driver; that is, the number of phone-minutes used is the factor whose change causes a change in total costs.

  Graph 1 in Exhibit 9.1 presents the *strictly variable or proportionately variable* cost. Total costs (measured along the vertical y-axis) change in proportion to the number of phone-minutes used (measured along the horizontal x-axis) within the relevant range. The *relevant range,* described in Chapter 2, is the range of the cost driver where the relationship between total costs and the driver is valid. There are no fixed costs. Every additional minute adds €5 to total costs. Graph 1 of Exhibit 9.1 illustrates the €5 **slope coefficient**, the amount by which total costs change for a unit change in the cost driver within the relevant range.

  We can write the cost function in Graph 1 of Exhibit 9.1 as:

  $$y = €5X$$

  where X measures the number of phone-minutes used and y measures the total costs of the phone-minutes determined from the cost function.

- *Alternative 2*: €10 000 per month. Under this alternative, Verre-Laine has a fixed cost of €10 000. Graph 2 in Exhibit 9.1 presents the *fixed cost*. The total costs will be €10 000 per month regardless of the number of phone-minutes used. (We use the same cost driver, the number of phone-minutes used, to compare cost-behaviour patterns under various alternatives.)

  Graph 2 in Exhibit 9.1 refers to the fixed cost of €10 000 as a **constant** or **intercept**, the component of total costs that, within the relevant range, does not vary with changes in the level of the cost driver. Under alternative 2, the constant or intercept accounts for all the costs, since there are no variable costs. The slope is zero.

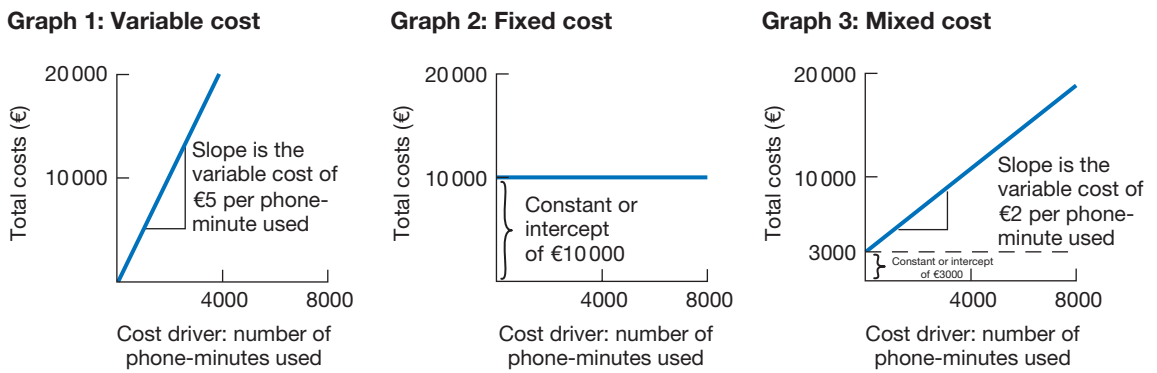
  We can write the cost function in Graph 2 of Exhibit 9.1 as:

  $$y = €10\,000$$

  showing that total costs will be €10 000, regardless of the number of phone-minutes used by Verre-Laine.

- *Alternative 3*: €3000 per month plus €2 per minute of phone use. This is an example of a *mixed cost*. A **mixed cost** (or **semivariable cost**) is a cost that has both fixed and variable elements. Graph 3 in Exhibit 9.1 presents the mixed cost. It has one component that is fixed regardless of the number of phone-minutes used (€3000 per month) and another component that is

Exhibit 9.1 Examples of linear cost functions



variable with respect to the number of phone-minutes used (€2 per minute of phone use). In this example, the constant or intercept is €3000 and the slope coefficient is €2.

We can write the cost function in Graph 3 of Exhibit 9.1 as:

$$y = €3000 + €2X$$

In the case of mixed costs, the total costs in the relevant range increase as the number of phone-minutes used increases in the relevant range. *However, total costs do not change in proportion to the change in the number of phone-minutes used in the relevant range.* For example, when 4000 phone-minutes are used, the total costs are [€3000 + (€2 × 4000)] = €11 000, but when 8000 phone-minutes are used, the total costs are [€3000 + (€2 × 8000)] = €19 000. Although the number of phone-minutes used has doubled, the total costs have increased to only 1.73 (€19 000 ÷ €11 000) times the original costs.

Understanding cost-behaviour patterns is a crucial input in choosing among the alternatives. Suppose Verre-Laine expects to use at least 4000 phone-minutes per month. Its costs for 4000 phone-minutes under the three alternatives would be: alternative 1, €20 000 (€5 × 4000); alternative 2, €10 000; alternative 3, €11 000 [€3000 + (€2 × 4000)]. Alternative 2 is the least costly. Moreover, if Verre-Laine used more than 4000 phone minutes, alternatives 1 and 3 would be even more costly than alternative 2. Verre-Laine would prefer alternative 2.

Basic terms

Note two features of the cost functions in the Verre-Laine/NSC example. For specificity, consider Graph 3 in Exhibit 9.1.

1. Variations in a *single* cost driver (number of phone-minutes used) explain variations in total costs.
2. The cost functions are linear; that is, the plot of total costs versus phone-minutes used is a straight line. Because Graph 3 is a straight line, the only information we need to draw is the constant or intercept term (€3000) and the slope coefficient (€2 per phone-minute used). These two pieces of information describe total costs for the entire relevant range of the number of phone-minutes used. That is, within the relevant range, linear cost functions (in the single cost driver case) can be described by a single constant or intercept (called a) and a single slope coefficient (called b). We write the linear cost function as:

$$y = a + bX$$

Under alternative 1, a = €0 and b = €5 per phone-minute used; under alternative 2, a = €10 000, b = €0 per phone-minute used; and under alternative 3, a = €3000, b = €2 per phone-minute used.

The Verre-Laine/NSC example illustrates variable, fixed and mixed cost functions using information about future cost structures proposed to Verre-Laine by NSC. Often, however, cost functions are estimated from past cost data. **Cost estimation** is the attempt to measure *past* cost relationships between total costs and the drivers of those costs. For example, managers could use cost estimation to understand what causes marketing costs to change from year to year (the number of cars sold or the number of new models introduced), and its fixed- and variable-cost components. Managers are interested in estimating past cost-behaviour patterns primarily because these estimates can help them make more accurate **cost predictions**, or forecasts, about future costs. Better cost predictions help managers make more informed planning and control decisions, such as the marketing costs budget for next year.

Chapter 2 outlined three other specifications necessary to classify costs into their variable and fixed-cost components. We review them briefly here.

Choice of cost object

A particular cost item could be variable with respect to one cost object and fixed with respect to another. For example, annual van registration and licence costs would be a variable cost with respect to the number of vans owned and operated by Reise-Plus GmbH, an airport transportation company, but registration and licence costs for a particular van are a fixed cost with respect to the number of kilometres that the van covered during the year.

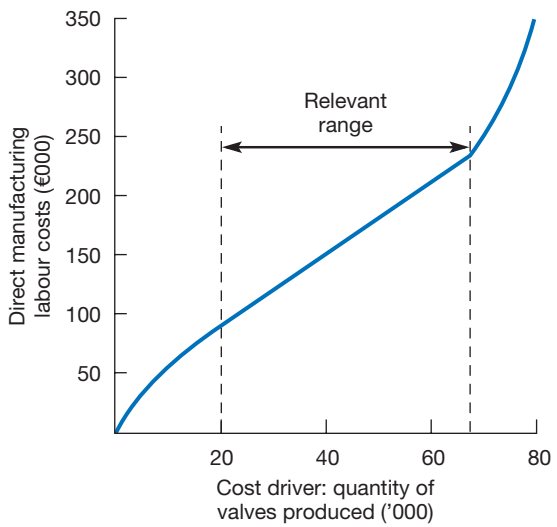
Time span

Whether a cost is variable or fixed with respect to a particular driver depends on the time span considered in the decision situation. The longer the time span, other things being equal, the more likely that the cost will be variable. For example, inspection salaries and costs at Aérospatiale are typically fixed in the short run with respect to hours of inspection activity. But in the long run, Aérospatiale's total inspection costs will vary with the inspection time required: more inspectors will be hired if more inspection is needed, while some inspectors will be reassigned to other tasks if less inspection is needed.

Relevant range

Accountants and managers use linear cost functions to approximate the relation of total costs to cost drivers within a relevant range. Exhibit 9.2 plots the relationship over several years between total direct manufacturing labour costs and the number of valves produced each year by an

Exhibit 9.2 Linearity within relevant range



industrial machinery component producer, AMC Ltd, at its Leeds plant. Costs are non-linear outside the relevant range. In this case, non-linearities occur when the valve output is low because of inefficiencies in using manufacturing labour. Non-linearities occur at very high levels of production because of greater congestion in the plant and the need for more coordination.

The cause-and-effect criterion in choosing cost drivers

The most important issue in estimating a cost function is to determine whether a cause-and-effect relationship exists between the cost driver and the resulting costs. The cause-and-effect relationship might arise in several ways.

1. It may be due to a physical relationship between costs and the cost driver. An example of a physical relationship is when units of production is used as the cost driver of materials costs. To produce more units requires more materials, which results in higher materials costs.
2. Cause and effect can arise from a contractual arrangement, as in the Verre-Laine example described earlier, where the number of phone-minutes used is the cost driver of the telephone line costs.
3. Cause and effect can be implicitly established by logic and knowledge of operations. An example is when the number of component parts is used as a cost driver of design costs. It seems intuitively clear that a complex product design with many component parts that must fit together precisely will incur higher design costs than a simple product with few parts.

Be careful not to interpret a high correlation, or connection, between two variables to mean that either variable causes the other. A high correlation between two variables, u and v, indicates merely that the two variables move together. It is possible that u may cause v; v may cause u; u and v may interact; both may be affected by a third variable z; or the correlation may be due to chance. No conclusions about cause and effect are warranted by high correlations. For example, higher production generally results in higher materials costs and higher labour costs. Materials costs and labour costs are highly correlated, but neither causes the other.

Consider another example. Observation in a Swedish town revealed that 'in years when more storks build their nests on house chimneys, more babies were born in the town and vice versa' (Rees, 2000). There is, however, no plausible cause-and-effect explanation for this correlation.

Only a true cause-and-effect relationship, not merely correlation, establishes an economically plausible relationship between costs and their cost drivers. Economic plausibility gives the analyst confidence that the estimated relationship will appear again and again in other similar sets of data. Establishing economic plausibility is a vital aspect of cost estimation.

Cost estimation approaches

There are four approaches to cost estimation:

1. industrial engineering method
2. conference method
3. account analysis method
4. quantitative analysis of current or past cost relationships.

These approaches differ in the costs of conducting the analysis, the assumptions they make, and the evidence they provide about the accuracy of the estimated cost function. They are not mutually exclusive. Many organisations use a combination of these approaches.

Industrial engineering method

The **industrial engineering method**, also called the **work-measurement method**, estimates cost functions by analysing the relationship between inputs and outputs in physical terms. This method has its roots in studies and techniques developed by Frank and Lillian Gilbreth in the early twentieth century (Opex Learning, 2019). Consider, for example, a carpet manufacturer that uses inputs of cotton, wool, dyes, direct labour, machine time and power. Production output is square metres of carpet. Time-and-motion studies analyse the time and materials required to perform the various operations to produce the carpet. For example, a time-and-motion study may conclude that to produce 20 square metres of carpet requires 2 kilograms of cotton and 3 litres of dye. Standards and budgets transform these physical input and output measures into costs. The result is an estimated cost function relating total manufacturing costs to the cost driver, square metres of carpet.

The industrial engineering method can be very time-consuming. Some government contracts mandate its use. Many organisations, however, find it too costly for analysing their entire cost structure. More frequently, organisations use this approach for direct-cost categories such as materials and labour but not for indirect-cost categories such as manufacturing overhead. Physical relationships between inputs and outputs may be difficult to specify for individual overhead cost items.

Conference method

The **conference method** estimates cost functions on the basis of analysis and opinions about costs and their drivers gathered from various departments of an organisation (purchasing, process engineering, manufacturing, employee relations, and so on). The Metro Bank in the UK has a cost-estimating department that develops cost functions for its retail banking products (current account, Mastercards, mortgages, and so on) on the basis of a consensus of estimates from the relevant departments. The bank uses this information to price products, to adjust its product mix to the products that are most profitable, and to monitor and measure cost improvements over time.

The conference method allows cost functions and cost estimates to be developed quickly. The pooling of expert knowledge from each value-chain area gives the conference method credibility. The accuracy of the cost estimates largely depends on the care and detail taken by the people providing the inputs.

Account analysis method

The **account analysis method** estimates cost functions by classifying cost accounts in the ledger as variable, fixed, or mixed with respect to the identified cost driver. Typically, managers use qualitative rather than quantitative analysis when making these cost-classification decisions. The account analysis approach is widely used.

Consider indirect manufacturing labour costs for a small production area (or cell) at Møre-Teppe AS which weaves carpets for homes and offices and uses state-of-the-art automated weaving machines. These costs include maintenance, quality control and set-up costs for the machines. During the most recent twelve-week period, Møre-Teppe worked the machines in the cell for a total of 862 hours and incurred total indirect manufacturing labour costs of €12 501. Management wants the cost analyst to use the account analysis method to estimate a linear cost function for indirect manufacturing labour costs with machine-hours as the cost driver.

The cost analyst decides to separate total indirect manufacturing labour costs (€12 501) into costs that are fixed (€2157) and costs that are variable (€10 344) with respect to the number of machine-hours worked. Variable costs per machine-hour are €10 344 ÷ 862 = €12. The general cost equation, $y = a + bX$, is indirect manufacturing labour costs = €2157 + (€12 × number of machine-hours). The indirect manufacturing labour cost per machine-hour is €12 501 ÷ 862 = €14.50.

Management at Møre-Teppe can use the cost function to estimate the indirect manufacturing labour costs of using 950 machine-hours to produce carpet in the next twelve-week period. Using the cost function, estimated costs = €2157 + (950 × 12) = €13 557. The indirect manufacturing labour costs per machine-hour decrease to €13 557 ÷ 950 = €14.27, as fixed costs are spread over a greater number of units.

Organisations differ with respect to the care taken in implementing account analysis. In some organisations, individuals thoroughly knowledgeable about the operations make the cost-classification decisions. For example, manufacturing personnel may classify costs such as machine lubricants and materials-handling labour, while marketing personnel may classify costs such as advertising brochures and sales salaries. In other organisations, only cursory analysis is conducted, sometimes by individuals with limited knowledge of operations, before cost-classification decisions are made. Clearly, the former approach would provide more reliable cost classifications, and hence estimates of the fixed and variable components of the cost, than the latter. Supplementing the account analysis method by the conference method improves its credibility.

One survey of 300 UK manufacturing companies reports that 59% of these companies used a subjective approach to classify costs in terms of their behaviour. Twenty-eight per cent viewed all overheads as fixed costs and direct costs as variable costs. Only 2% of these companies used statistical regression techniques (see section below) and 11% did not distinguish between fixed and variable costs.

Steps in estimating a cost function

Quantitative analyses of cost relationships are formal methods to fit linear cost functions to past data observations. Columns 1 and 2 of Exhibit 9.3 break down the €12 501 of total indirect manufacturing labour costs and the 862 total machine-hours for the most recent twelve-week period into weekly data. Note that the data are paired. For example, week 12 shows indirect manufacturing labour costs of €963 and 48 machine-hours. In this section, the data in Exhibit 9.3 are used to illustrate how to use quantitive analysis.

Exhibit 9.3 Weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs, machine-hours and direct manufacturing labour-hours for Møre-Teppe

Week	Indirect manufacturing labour costs (1)	Cost driver: machine-hours (2)	Alternative cost driver: direct manufacturing labour-hours (3)
1	€1190	68	30
2	1211	88	35
3	1004	62	36
4	917	72	20
5	770	60	47
6	1456	96	45
7	1180	78	44
8	710	46	38
9	1316	82	70
10	1320	94	30
11	752	68	29
12	963	48	38

There are six steps in estimating a cost function on the basis of an analysis of current or past cost relationships. (1) Choose the dependent variable (the variable to be predicted, which is some type of cost); (2) identify the cost driver(s) (independent variable(s)); (3) collect data on the dependent variable and the cost driver(s); (4) plot the data; (5) estimate the cost function; and (6) evaluate the estimated cost function. As we discussed earlier in this chapter, choosing a cost driver is not always straightforward. Frequently, the cost analyst will cycle through these steps several times trying alternative economically plausible cost drivers to see which cost driver best fits the data.

Step 1: Choose the dependent variable. Choice of the **dependent variable** (the cost variable to be predicted) will depend on the purpose for estimating a cost function. For example, if the purpose is to determine indirect manufacturing costs for a production line, then the dependent variable should incorporate all costs that are classified as indirect with respect to the production line.

Step 2: Identify the independent variable(s) or cost driver(s) The **independent variable** (level of activity or cost driver) is the factor used to predict the dependent variable (costs). Usually we use the term 'cost driver' to describe the independent variable. The chosen cost driver should have an economically plausible relationship with the dependent variable and be accurately measurable. Ideally, all the individual items included in the dependent variable should have the same cost driver(s). Where a single relationship does not exist, the cost analyst should investigate the possibility of estimating more than one cost function.

Consider several types of fringe benefit paid to employees and their cost drivers:

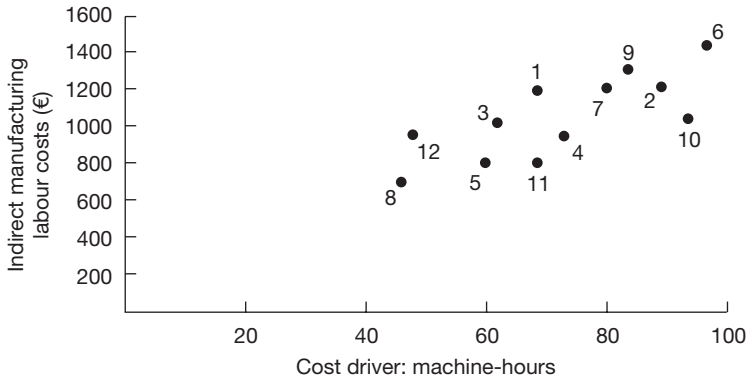
Fringe benefit	Cost driver
Health benefits	Number of employees
Canteen meals	Number of employees
Pension benefits	Salaries of employees
Life insurance	Salaries of employees

The costs of health benefits and cafeteria meals can be combined into one cost pool because they both have the same cost driver, number of employees. Pension benefits and life insurance costs have a different cost driver, salaries of employees, and hence should not be combined with health benefits and canteen meals. Instead, they should be combined into a separate cost pool and estimated using salaries of employees receiving the benefits as the cost driver.

Step 3: Collect data on the dependent variable and the cost driver(s) This step is usually the most difficult one in cost analysis. Cost analysts obtain data from company documents, from interviews with managers, and through special studies. These data may be time-series data or cross-sectional data. *Time-series data* pertain to the same entity (organisation, plant, activity area, and so on) over a sequence of past time periods. Weekly observations of indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours in the Møre-Teppe illustration are an example of time-series data. The ideal time-series database would contain numerous observations for a firm whose operations have not been affected by economic or technological change. Stable technology ensures that data collected in the estimation period represent the same underlying relationship between the dependent variable and the cost driver(s). Moreover, the time periods (for example, daily, weekly or monthly) used to measure the dependent variable and the cost driver(s) should be identical. *Cross-sectional data* pertain to different entities for the same time period. For example, studies of personnel costs and loans processed at 50 individual branches of a bank during March would produce cross-sectional data for March.

Step 4: Plot the data The expression 'a picture is worth a thousand words' conveys the benefits of plotting the data. The general relation between the dependent variable and the cost driver can readily be observed in a plot of the data. Moreover, the plot highlights extreme observations that analysts should check. Was there an error in recording the data or an unusual event, such as a strike, that makes these observations unrepresentative of the normal relationship between the

Exhibit 9.4 Plot of weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours for Møre-Teppe



dependent variable and the cost driver? Plotting the data can also provide insight into whether the relation is approximately linear and what the relevant range of the cost function is.

Exhibit 9.4 plots the weekly data from columns 1 and 2 of Exhibit 9.3. There is strong visual evidence of a positive relation between indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours (that is, when machine-hours go up, so do costs). There do not appear to be any extreme observations in Exhibit 9.4. The relevant range is from 46 to 96 machine-hours per week.

Step 5: Estimate the cost function We show how to estimate the cost function for our Møre-Teppe data using the high–low method and regression analysis.

Step 6: Evaluate the estimated cost function We describe criteria for evaluating a cost function after illustrating the high–low method and regression analysis.

High–low method

Managers, at times, use very simple methods to estimate cost functions. An example is the **high–low method**, which entails using only the highest and lowest observed values of the *cost driver* within the relevant range. The line connecting these two points becomes the estimated cost function.

We illustrate the high–low method using data from Exhibit 9.3.

	Cost driver: machine-hours	Indirect manufacturing labour costs
Highest observation of cost driver (week 6)	96	€1456
Lowest observation of cost driver (week 8)	46	710
Difference	50	€746

$$\text{Slope coeffcient } b = \frac{\text{Difference between costs associated with highest and lowest observations of the cost driver}}{\text{Difference between highest and lowest observations of the cost driver}}$$

$$= €746 \div 50$$

$$= €14.92 \text{ per machine-hour}$$

To compute the constant, we can use either the highest or the lowest observation of the cost driver. Both calculations yield the same answer (because the solution technique solves two linear equations with two unknowns, the slope coefficient and the constant).

$$\text{Since } y = a + bX,\ a = y - bX$$

At the highest observation of the cost driver,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Constant } a &= €1456 - (€14.92 \times 96)\\ &= €23.68\end{aligned}$$

At the lowest observation of the cost driver,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Constant } a &= €710 - (€14.92 \times 46)\\ &= €23.68\end{aligned}$$

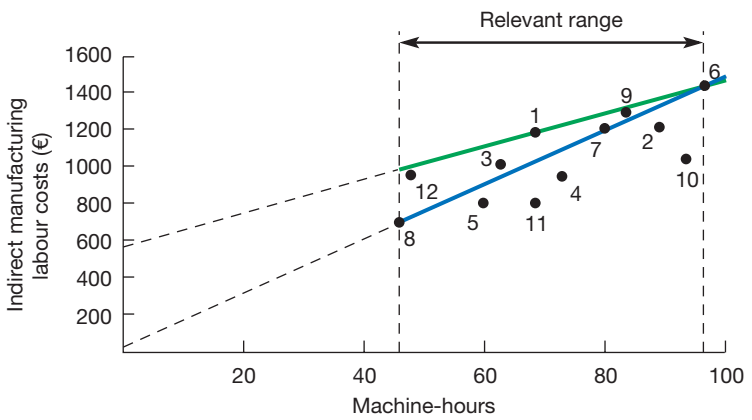
Therefore, the high–low estimate of the cost function is:

$$\begin{aligned}y &= a + bX\\ &= €23.68 + (€14.92 \times \text{machine-hours})\end{aligned}$$

The blue line in Exhibit 9.5 shows the estimated cost function using the high–low method. The estimated cost function is a straight line joining the observations with the highest and lowest values of the cost driver (machine-hours). The constant, or intercept, term does not serve as an estimate of the fixed costs of Møre-Teppe if no machines were run. Why? Because running no machines and shutting down the plant is outside the relevant range. The intercept term is the constant component of the equation that provides the best (linear) approximation of how a cost behaves within the relevant range.

Suppose indirect manufacturing labour costs in week 6 were €1280 instead of €1456 while 96 machine-hours were worked. In this case, the highest observation of the cost driver (machine-hours of 96 in week 6) will not coincide with newly highest observation of the dependent variable (costs of €1316 in week 9). Given that causality runs from the cost driver to the dependent variable in a cost function, choosing the highest and lowest observation of the cost driver is appropriate. The high–low method would estimate the new cost function still using data from weeks 6 and 8.

Exhibit 9.5 High–low method for weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours for Møre-Teppe



There is an obvious danger of relying on only two observations. Suppose that because of certain provisions in the labour contract that guarantee certain minimum payments, indirect manufacturing labour costs in week 8 were €1000 instead of €710 when only 46 machine-hours were worked. The green line in Exhibit 9.5 shows the revised estimated cost function using the high–low method. It lies above the data. In this case, picking the highest and lowest observations for the machine-hours variable can result in an estimated cost function that poorly describes the underlying (linear) cost relationship between indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours.

Sometimes the high–low method is modified so that the two observations chosen are a representative high and a representative low. The reason is that management wants to avoid having extreme observations, which arise from abnormal events, affecting the cost function. Even with such a modification, this method ignores information from all but two observations when estimating the cost function.

Regression analysis method

Unlike the high–low method, regression analysis uses all available data to estimate the cost function. **Regression analysis** is a statistical method that measures the average amount of change in the dependent variable that is associated with a unit change in one or more independent variables. In the Møre-Teppe example, the dependent variable is total indirect manufacturing labour costs. The independent variable, or cost driver, is machine-hours. **Simple regression** analysis estimates the relationship between the dependent variable and one independent variable; **multiple regression** analysis estimates the relationship between the dependent variable and multiple independent variables.

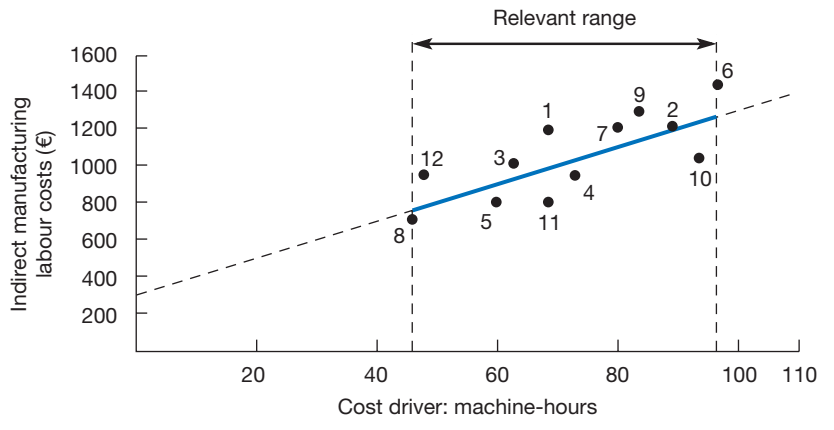
We emphasise the interpretation and use of output from computer software programs for regression analysis and so only present detailed computations for deriving the regression line in the chapter appendix. Commonly available programs calculate almost all the statistics referred to in this chapter.

Exhibit 9.6 shows the line developed using regression analysis that best fits the data in columns 1 and 2 of Exhibit 9.3. The estimated cost function is:

$$y = €300.98 + €10.31X$$

where y is the predicted indirect manufacturing labour costs for any level of machine-hours (X). The constant, or intercept, term of the regression, a, is €300.98, and the slope coefficient b is €10.31 per machine-hour.

Exhibit 9.6 Regression model for weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours for Møre-Teppe



How do we derive the regression equation and regression line in Exhibit 9.6? We use the least-squares technique. We draw the regression line to minimise the sum of the squared vertical distances from the data points (the various points on the graph) to the regression line. Vertical differences measure distance between actual cost and the estimated cost for each observation. The difference between actual and predicted cost is called the **residual term**. The smaller the residual term, the better the fit between predicted costs and actual cost observations. Goodness of fit indicates the strength of the relationship between the cost driver and costs. The regression line in Exhibit 9.6 rises reasonably steeply from left to right. The positive slope of this line indicates that, on average, indirect manufacturing labour costs increase as machine-hours increase.

The vertical dashed lines in Exhibit 9.6 indicate the relevant range. As discussed previously, the estimated cost function applies to cost driver levels only *within the relevant range,* not to cost driver levels outside the relevant range.

The estimate of the slope coefficient b indicates that the average indirect manufacturing labour costs vary at the rate of €10.31 for every machine-hour within the relevant range. Management can use this equation when budgeting for future indirect manufacturing labour costs. For instance, if 90 machine-hours are budgeted for the coming week, the predicted indirect manufacturing labour costs would be:

$$\begin{aligned} y &= €300.98 + (€10.31 \times 90) \\ &= €1228.88 \end{aligned}$$

Compare the regression equation with the high–low equation in the preceding section, which was €23.68 + €14.92 per machine-hour. For 90 machine-hours, the predicted cost based on the high–low equation is €23.68 + (€14.92 × 90) = €1366.48. Suppose that for three weeks over the next twelve-week period, Møre-Teppe runs its machines for 90 hours each week. Assume average indirect manufacturing labour costs for those three weeks is €1300. Based on the high–low prediction of €1366.48, Møre-Teppe would conclude it has performed well. But comparing the €1300 performance with the €1228.88 prediction of the regression model tells a different story, and would probably prompt Møre-Teppe to search for ways to improve its cost performance.

Evaluating and choosing cost drivers

Correctly identifying the cost driver is aided substantially by a thorough understanding of both operations and cost accounting. Suppose management at Møre-Teppe is thinking of introducing a new style of carpet. Sales of 650 square metres of this carpet are expected each week at a price of €12 per square metre. To make this decision, management needs to estimate costs. The key to doing so is identifying the correct cost drivers and cost functions. This requires some knowledge of the underlying operational processes. Consider, in particular, indirect manufacturing labour costs. Management believes that both machine-hours and direct manufacturing labour-hours are plausible cost drivers of indirect manufacturing labour costs. It estimates 72 machine-hours and 21 direct manufacturing labour-hours would be required to produce the square metres of carpet it needs.

What guidance do the different cost estimation methods provide for choosing among cost drivers? The industrial engineering method relies on analysing physical relationships between costs and cost drivers, which are difficult to specify in this case. The conference method and the account analysis method use subjective assessments to choose a cost driver and to estimate the fixed and variable components of the cost function. In these cases, management must go with its best judgement. Management cannot use these methods to test and try alternative cost drivers. The major advantage of quantitative methods is that managers can use these methods to evaluate different cost drivers. We illustrate how using the regression analysis approach.

Suppose Møre-Teppe wants to evaluate whether direct manufacturing labour-hours is a better cost driver than machine-hours for indirect manufacturing labour costs. The cost analyst at Møre-Teppe inputs the data in columns 1 and 3 of Exhibit 9.3 into a computer program and estimates the cost function:

$$y = €744.67 + €7.72X$$

Exhibit 9.7 Regression model for weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours for Møre-Teppe

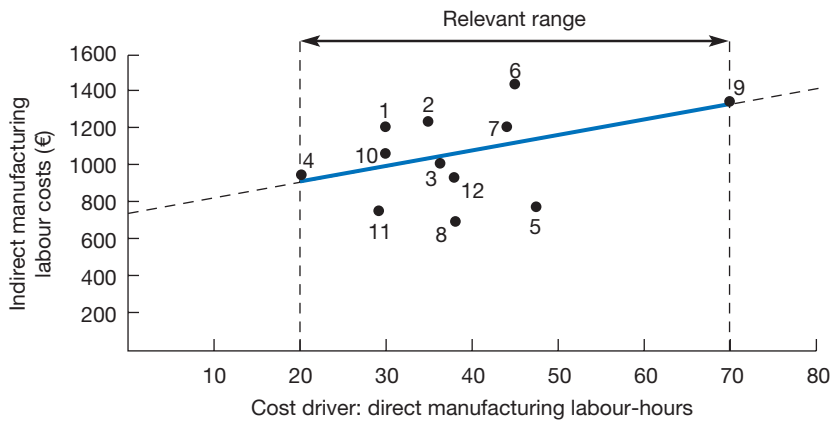


Exhibit 9.7 shows the plots for indirect manufacturing labour costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours, and the regression line that best fits the data.

Which cost driver should Møre-Teppe choose? We consider three of the most important criteria.

1. *Economic plausibility.* Both cost drivers are economically plausible. However, in the state-of-the-art, highly automated production environment of Møre-Teppe, costs are likely to be more closely related to machine-hours than to direct manufacturing labour-hours.
2. *Goodness of fit*. Compare Exhibits 9.6 and 9.7. The vertical differences between actual and predicted costs are much smaller for machine-hours than for direct manufacturing labour-hours – machine-hours has a stronger relationship with indirect manufacturing labour costs.
3. *Slope of regression line*. Again compare Exhibits 9.6 and 9.7. The machine-hours regression line has a relatively steep slope while the direct manufacturing labour-hours regression line is relatively flat (small slope). A relatively flat regression line indicates a weak or no relationship between indirect manufacturing labour costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours since, on average, changes in direct manufacturing labour-hours appear to have a minimal effect on indirect manufacturing labour costs.

Møre-Teppe should prefer machine-hours as the cost driver and use the cost function $y = €300.98 + (€10.31 \times \text{machine-hours})$ to predict future indirect manufacturing labour costs. Using this model, Møre-Teppe would predict costs of $y = €300.98 + (€10.31 \times 72) = €1043.30$. Had it used direct manufacturing labour-hours as the cost driver, it would have incorrectly predicted costs of $€744.67 + (€7.72 \times 21) = €906.79$. If Møre-Teppe systematically underestimates costs and chooses incorrect cost drivers for other indirect costs as well, it would conclude that the costs of manufacturing the new style of carpet are quite low and essentially fixed (the regression line is relatively flat). But the actual costs driven by machine-hours would prove to be much higher. Without identifying the correct cost drivers, management would be misled into believing that the new style of carpets are more profitable than they actually are.

Incorrectly estimating the cost function will also have repercussions for cost management and cost control. Suppose direct manufacturing labour-hours was used as the cost driver, and actual indirect manufacturing labour costs were €970. Actual costs would then be higher than the predicted costs of €906.79. Management would feel compelled to find ways to cut costs. In fact, on the basis of the preferred machine-hour cost driver, the plant has actual costs lower than the predicted amount (€1043.30) – a performance that management should seek to replicate, not change.

Cost drivers and activity-based costing

In activity-based costing (ABC) systems (discussed more fully in Chapter 11), operations managers and cost analysts identify key activities, and the cost drivers and costs of each activity at the output unit-level, batch-level or product-sustaining level. The basic approach to evaluating cost drivers described in the previous section applies to ABC systems as well. An ABC system, however, has a greater number and variety of cost drivers and cost pools.

Generally, ABC systems emphasise long-run relationships between the cost driver (level of activity) and cost. The long-run focus means that more costs are variable, which leads to a stronger cause-and-effect relationship between the cost driver and the corresponding cost. Hence, the ideal database to estimate cost driver rates will contain data over a longer time period. If the time period used to estimate the cost relationship is short, the relationship between changes in the cost driver and changes in cost may be weak. Why? Because many costs are acquired in lump-sum amounts and hence are fixed in the short run while the levels of activity vary.

Consider, for example, salaries and fringe benefits of engineers and line managers responsible for supervising the set-up activity. In the short run, these costs are fixed and will not vary with changes in the quantity of set-up hours. In the long run, however, there is a clear cause-and-effect relationship between set-up hours and indirect set-up costs – increases in set-up hours will cause more engineers and line managers to be hired while decreases will result in engineers and line managers being assigned to other tasks.

Concepts in action — Activity-based costing and cost estimation

Cost estimation in activity-based costing and other systems blend the various methods presented in this chapter. To determine the cost of an activity, ABC systems often rely on expert analyses and opinions gathered from operating personnel (the conference method). For example, Loan Department staff at the Co-operative Bank in the UK subjectively estimate the costs of the loan processing activity and the cost driver of loan processing costs (the number of loans processed, a batch-level cost driver, rather than the value of the loans, an output unit-level cost driver), to derive the cost of processing a loan. ABC systems sometimes use input–output relationships (the industrial engineering method) to identify cost drivers and the cost of an activity.

In complex environments, multiple cost drivers are necessary for accurate product costing. Consider how heavy equipment manufacturer Caterpillar identifies the cost driver for receiving costs in its ABC system. Three plausible cost drivers are the weight of parts received, the number of parts received, or the number of shipments received. The weight of parts and number of parts are output unit-level cost drivers, while the number of shipments is a batch-level cost driver. Caterpillar uses the weight of parts as the basis for cost assignment because a regression analysis showed that it is the primary driver of the costs of receiving material. Caterpillar also uses a variety of other cost drivers in assigning costs to its products. Thus, managers using ABC systems employ a variety of methods to estimate cost relationships. In the United Kingdom, the City of London Police uses input–output relationships (the industrial engineering method) to identify cost drivers and the cost of an activity. Using a surveying methodology, officials can determine the total costs associated with responding to house robberies, dealing with burglaries, and filling out police reports. The industrial engineering method is also used by US government agencies such as the United States Postal Service, to determine the cost of each post office transaction, and the United States Patent and Trademark Office, to identify the costs of each patent examination.

When choosing among methods, managers trade off level of detail, accuracy, feasibility, and costs of estimating cost functions. For example, to estimate the cost of an activity such as opening a bank account or making a transfer payment, Bankinter in Spain uses work-measurement methods, while Royal Bank of Canada uses advanced analytical techniques, including regression.

Source: Kaplan, R.S. and Datar, S.M. (1995) 'The Co-operative Bank', *Harvard Business School Cases*, No. 9-195–96, 23 March (revised 22 April 1997).

As the 'Concepts in action' feature indicates, managers implementing ABC systems use a variety of methods – conference, industrial engineering and regression – to estimate cost driver rates. In making these choices, managers trade off level of detail, accuracy, feasibility and costs of estimating cost functions.

Many ABC systems have a great number and variety of cost drivers and cost pools. This means the systems require managers to estimate many cost relationships. When estimating the cost function for each cost pool, the manager must pay careful attention to the cost hierarchy. For example, if a cost is a batch-level cost such as set-up cost, the manager must only consider batch-level cost drivers like number of set-up-hours. In some cases, the costs in a cost pool may have more than one cost driver from different levels of the cost hierarchy. The cost drivers for one company's indirect manufacturing labour costs could be machine-hours and the number of production batches of goods manufactured. Furthermore, it may be difficult to subdivide the indirect manufacturing labour costs into two cost pools and to measure the costs associated with each cost driver. In cases like these, companies use multiple regression to estimate costs based on more than one independent variable. The appendix to this chapter discusses multiple regression in more detail.

Big data, machine learning and cost analysis

We have mentioned 'big data' in several places in this book. This concept refers formally to datasets for which traditional processing techniques (for capturing, storing, querying or analysing) are inadequate due to the quantity or complexity of the data. Such data sources are increasingly available because of the presence of inexpensive sensors, including those found on mobile devices, cameras, drones, satellites and personal fitness devices. The costs of storing the data have dropped significantly. Moreover, vast quantities of cheap computing power are now available on demand due to cloud-based providers.

More and more, companies are using big-data-focused quantitative analysis to determine the cost drivers of activities. DHL Express, the international shipping company, recently switched from the conference method to performing in-depth quantitative analysis on its big data system. Now managers have a single, worldwide activity-based costing system that shows the cost and profitability for every shipment in its network. By rigorously analysing its database, DHL Express can link the profit of what's being shipped on a particular flight with the cost of shipping it and then determine which of its 250 airplanes would be best for the job.

Taken in combination, digital technologies and the availability of growing data pools have given companies the opportunity to carry out sophisticated analyses on larger datasets at relatively low cost. Companies have taken advantage by using regression and related techniques to better target customers and optimise operations in order to improve profitability. One tool in particular that has proven to be powerful is 'logistic regression', which is used when the dependent variable takes on a limited set of values (for example, a binary variable, such as whether someone will purchase a car or not). Logistic regression is used in credit scoring by banks to predict whether you are going to default in the next year on each of your credit products. Regression methods are sometimes hampered by the presence of large quantities of data because of the sheer number of potential regressors available. However, analytical approaches can complement regression analysis to reduce the likelihood of false positives. In other situations, the available data are in the forms of text, images or audio rather than numbers. Examples include health records, Twitter feeds, webpages and podcasts. Regression techniques are not feasible in these cases. However, it is possible to use natural language processing to exploit the linguistic structure inherent in all human communication, and thereby identify trends in the data. Often, this is done via machine learning, which can extract value from big and disparate data sources with little reliance on human direction. It is data driven and runs at machine scale, and, unlike traditional analysis, thrives on growing datasets. The more data fed into a machine learning system, the more it can learn and apply the results to higher quality insights, with the goal to discover and display the patterns buried in the data. The importance to managers of understanding the value of such techniques will only grow.

Non-linearity and cost functions

So far we have assumed linear cost functions. In practice, cost functions are not always linear. A **non-linear cost function** is a cost function where, within the relevant range, the graph of total costs versus the level of a single activity is not a straight line. Exhibit 9.2 graphically illustrated a cost function that is non-linear over the range from 0 to 80 000 valves produced. Consider another example. Economies of scale in advertising may enable an advertising agency to double the number of advertisements for less than double the costs. Even direct materials costs are not always linear variable costs. Consider quantity discounts on direct materials purchases. As shown in Exhibit 9.8, the total direct materials costs rise, but they rise more slowly as the cost driver increases because of quantity discounts. The cost function in Exhibit 9.8 has $b = €25$ for 1–1000 units purchased; $b = €15$ for 1001–2000 units purchased; and $b = €10$ for 2001 or more units purchased ($a = €0$ for all ranges of the units purchased). The cost per unit falls at each price break; that is, the cost per unit decreases with larger orders.

Step cost functions are also examples of non-linear cost functions. A **step cost function** is a cost function in which the cost is constant over various ranges of the cost driver, but the cost increases by discrete amounts (that is, in steps) as the cost driver moves from one range to the next. The graph in Exhibit 9.9 shows a *step variable-cost function*, a step cost function in which cost is constant over narrow ranges of the cost driver in each relevant range. Exhibit 9.9 shows

Exhibit 9.8 Effects of quantity discounts on slope of direct materials cost function

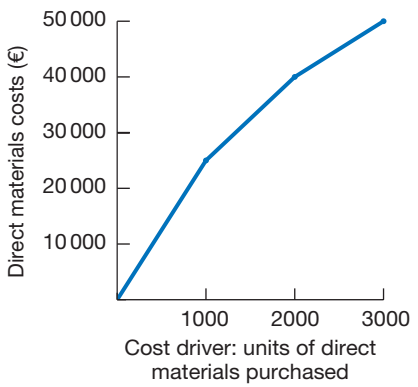


Exhibit 9.9 Step variable-cost function

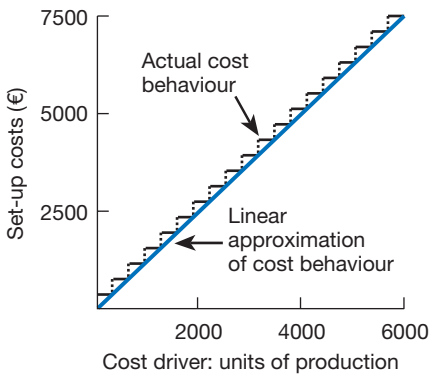
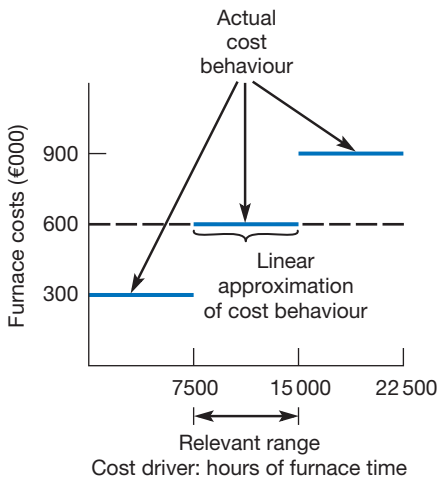


Exhibit 9.10 Step fixed-cost function



the relationship between set-up costs and units of production. The pattern is a step cost function because set-up costs are incurred only when each production batch is started. This step-pattern behaviour also occurs when inputs such as production scheduling, product design labour and process engineering labour are acquired in discrete quantities but used in fractional quantities. As shown in Exhibit 9.9, management often approximates step variable costs with a variable cost function.

The graph in Exhibit 9.10 shows a *step fixed-cost function* for Bayern Metal, a company that operates large heat-treatment furnaces to harden steel parts. The main difference relative to Exhibit 9.9 is that the cost in a step fixed-cost function is constant over large ranges of the cost driver in each relevant range. The ranges indicate the number of furnaces being used (each furnace costing €300 000). The cost changes from one range to the next higher range when the hours of furnace time demanded require the use of another furnace. The relevant range indicates that the company expects to operate with two furnaces at a cost of €600 000. Management considers the cost of operating furnaces as a fixed cost within the relevant range of operation. However, over the range from 0 to 22 500 hours, the cost function is non-linear.

Learning curves and non-linear cost functions

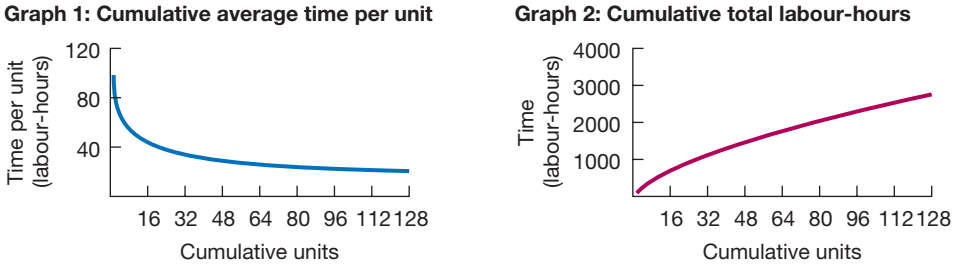
Learning curves also result in cost functions being non-linear. A **learning curve** is a function that shows how labour-hours per unit decline as units of production increase and workers learn and become better at what they do. Managers use learning curves to predict how labour-hours (or labour costs) will change as more units are produced.

The aircraft-assembly industry first documented the effect that learning has on efficiency. As workers become more familiar with their tasks, their efficiency improves.

Managers learn how to improve the scheduling of work shifts. Plant operators learn how best to operate the facility. Unit costs decrease as productivity increases, which means that the unit-cost function behaves non-linearly.

Managers are now extending the learning-curve notion to include other cost areas in the value chain, such as marketing, distribution and customer service. The term *experience curve* describes this broader application of the learning curve. An **experience curve** is a function that shows how full product costs per unit (including manufacturing, marketing, distribution, and so on) decline as units of output increase.

Exhibit 9.11 Plots for cumulative average-time learning model



We now describe two learning-curve models: the cumulative average-time learning model and the incremental unit-time learning model.

Cumulative average-time learning model

In the **cumulative average-time learning model**, the cumulative average time per unit declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced doubles. Exhibit 9.11 illustrates the cumulative average-time learning model with an 80% learning curve. The 80% means that when the quantity of units produced is doubled from X to $2X$, the cumulative average time *per unit* for the $2X$ units is 80% of the cumulative average time *per unit* for the X units. In other words, average time per unit has dropped by 20%. Graph 1 in Exhibit 9.11 shows the cumulative average time *per unit* as a function of units produced. Graph 2 in Exhibit 9.11 shows the cumulative *total* labour-hours as a function of units produced. The data points underlying Exhibit 9.11 and the details of their calculation are presented in Exhibit 9.12. To obtain the cumulative total time, multiply the cumulative average time per unit by the cumulative number of units produced. For example, to produce 4 cumulative units would require 256.00 labour-hours (4×64).

Incremental unit-time learning model

In the **incremental unit-time learning model**, the incremental unit time (the time needed to produce the last unit) declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced doubles. Exhibit 9.13 illustrates the incremental unit-time learning model with an 80% learning curve. The 80% here means that when the quantity of units produced is doubled from X to $2X$, the time needed to produce the *last unit* at the $2X$ production level is 80% of the time needed to produce the *last unit* at the X production level. Graph 1 in Exhibit 9.13 shows the cumulative average time *per unit* as a function of cumulative units produced. Graph 2 in Exhibit 9.13 shows the cumulative *total* labour-hours as a function of units produced. The data points underlying Exhibit 9.13 and the details of their calculation are presented in Exhibit 9.14. We obtain the cumulative total time by summing the individual unit times. For example, to produce 4 cumulative units would require 314.21 labour-hours ($100.00 + 80.00 + 70.21 + 64.00$).

The incremental unit-time model predicts that a higher cumulative total time is required to produce two or more units than the cumulative average-time model predicts, assuming the same learning rate for the two models (compare results in Exhibit 9.12 with results in Exhibit 9.14). For example, to produce four cumulative units, the 80% incremental unit-time learning model predicts 314.21 labour-hours whereas the 80% cumulative average-time learning model predicts 256.00 labour-hours.

Exhibit 9.12 Cumulative average-time learning model

Cumulative number of units (1)	Cumulative average time per unit (y): labour-hours (2)	Cumulative total time: labour-hours (3) = (1) × (2)	Individual unit time for *X*th unit: labour-hours (4)
1	100.00	100.00	100.00
2	80.00 (100 × 0.8)	160.00	60.00
3	70.21	210.63	50.63
4	64.00 (80 × 0.8)	256.00	45.37
5	59.57	297.85	41.85
6	56.17	337.02	39.17
7	53.45	374.15	37.13
8	51.20 (64 × 0.8)	409.60	35.45
–	–	–	–
–	–	–	–
–	–	–	–
16	40.96 (5.12 × 0.8)	655.36	28.06

Note: The mathematical relationship underlying the cumulative average-time learning model is:

$$y = pX^q$$

where y = cumulative average time (labour-hours) per unit
X = cumulative number of units produced
p = time (labour-hours) required to produce the first unit
q = rate of learning.

The value of q is calculated as:

$$q = \frac{\ln (\%\ \text{learning})}{\ln 2}$$

For an 80% learning curve,

$$q = \frac{-0.2231}{0.6931} = -0.3219$$

As an illustration, when $X = 3, p = 100$, and $q = -0.3219$,

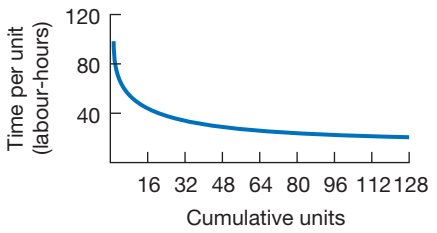
$$y = 100 \times 3^{-0.3219} = 70.21 \text{ labour-hours}$$

The cumulative total time when $X = 3$ is $70.21 \times 3 = 210.63$ labour-hours.

The individual unit times in column 4 are calculated using the data in column 3. For example, the individual unit time of 50.63 labour-hours for the third unit is calculated as 210.63 – 160.00.

Exhibit 9.13 Plots for incremental unit-time learning model

Graph 1: Cumulative average time per unit



Graph 2: Cumulative total labour-hours

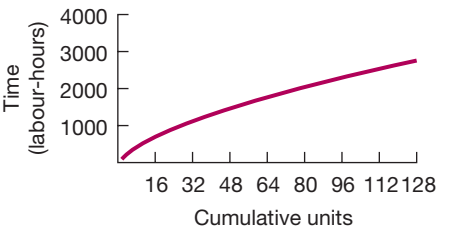


Exhibit 9.14 Incremental unit-time learning model

Cumulative number of units (1)	Individual unit time for *X*th unit (*m*): labour-hours (2)	Cumulative total time: labour-hours (3)	Cumulative average time per unit: labour-hours (4) = (3) ÷ (1)
1	100.00	100.00	100.00
2	80.00 (100 × 0.8)	180.00	90.00
3	70.21	250.21	83.40
4	64.00 (80 × 0.8)	314.21	78.55
5	59.57	373.78	74.76
6	56.17	429.95	71.66
7	53.45	483.40	69.06
8	51.20 (64 × 0.8)	534.60	66.82
–	–	–	–
–	–	–	–
–	–	–	–
16	40.96 (51.2 × 0.8)	892.00	55.75

Note: The mathematical relationship underlying the incremental unit-time learning model is:

$$m >= pX^{q}$$

where m = time (labour-hours) taken to produce the last single unit

X = cumulative number of units produced

p = time (labour-hours) required to produce the first unit

q = rate of learning.

The value of q is calculated as:

$$q = \frac{\ln (\%\ \text{learning})}{\ln 2}$$

For an 80% learning curve,

$$q = \frac{-0.2231}{0.6931} = -0.3219$$

As an illustration, when $X = 3$, $p = 100$, and $q = -0.3219$,

$$m = 100 \times 3^{-0.3219} = 70.21 \text{ labour-hours}$$

The cumulative total time when $X = 3$ is $100 + 80 + 70.21 = 250.21$ labour-hours.

Concepts in action

Learning curves and the falling price of renewable energy

Over time, renewable energy providers have moved 'up the learning curve' and reduced manufacturing and deployment costs. As the number of installations around the world increases, *learning by* doing has improved manufacturing and distribution operations, installation procedures, and sales and financing processes. Fixed costs have spread over a larger volume of production. Costs have also decreased with the adoption of newer technologies and spillover effects of innovation from other industries.

The net effect is a dramatic drop in the price of renewable energy. From 2009 to 2017, the price of solar installations globally decreased 81%, while the cost to produce a kilowatt hour (kWh) of solar energy dropped 73% from $0.36 to $0.10. Similar price decreases have also occurred in the hydropower, offshore wind, and onshore wind markets.

Over time, all renewable power-generation technologies that are now in commercial use will produce power at or below the kWh price for fossil fuels such as coal and oil. Thanks to learning curves, renewable energy is an increasingly competitive way to meet new energy generation needs around the world.

The learning-curve models examined here assume that learning is driven by a single variable (production output). Other models of learning have been developed (by companies such as Analog Devices and Hewlett-Packard) that focus on how quality – rather than manufacturing labor-hours – will change over time, regardless of whether more units are produced. Studies indicate that factors other than production output, such as job rotation and organizing workers into teams, contribute to learning that improves quality.

Sources: Alan AtKisson (2018) 'The "big push": Transforming the world's energy systems', *North Star* (blog), *GreenBiz*, 23 January (https://www.greenbiz.com/article/big-push-transforming-worlds-energy-systems); National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (2016) *The Power of Change: Innovation for Development and Deployment of Increasingly Clean Electric Power Technologies*, Washington, DC: The National Academies Press (https://www.nap.edu/catalog/21712/the-power-of-change-innovation-for-development-and-deployment-of); International Renewable Energy Agency (2018) *Renewable Power Generation Costs in 2017*, Abu Dhabi: International Renewable Energy Agency (https://www.irena.org/-/media/Files/IRENA/Agency/Publication/2018/Jan/IRENA_2017_Power_Costs_2018.pdf).

Which of these two models is preferable? The one that more accurately approximates the behaviour of manufacturing labour-hour usage as production levels increase. The choice can be decided only on a case-by-case basis. Engineers, plant managers and workers are good sources of information on the amount and type of learning actually occurring as production increases. Plotting this information is helpful in selecting the appropriate model.

Setting prices, budgets and standards

Predictions of costs should allow for learning. Consider the data in Exhibit 9.12 for the cumulative average-time learning model. Suppose the variable costs subject to learning effects consist of direct manufacturing labour (€20 per hour) and related overhead (€30 per hour). Management should predict the costs shown in Exhibit 9.15.

These data show that the effects of the learning curve could have a major influence on decisions. For example, a company might set an extremely low selling price on its product in order to generate high demand. As the company's production increases to meet this growing demand, costs per unit drop. The company rides the product down the learning curve as it establishes a higher market share. Although the company may have earned little on its first unit sold – it may actually have lost money – the company earns more profit per unit as output increases.

Exhibit 9.15 Predicting costs using learning curves

Cumulative number of units	Cumulative total labour-hours*	Cumulative costs	Additions to cumulative costs
1	100.00	€5 000 (100.00 × €50)	€5 000
2	160.00	8 000 (160.00 × €50)	3 000
4	256.00	12 800 (256.00 × €50)	4 800
8	409.60	20 480 (409.60 × €50)	7 680
16	655.36	32 768 (655.36 × €50)	12 288

* Based on the cumulative average-time learning model. See Exhibit 9.12 for the computation of these amounts.

Alternatively, subject to legal and other considerations, the company might set a low price on just the final eight units. After all, the labour and related overhead costs per unit are predicted to be only €12 288 for these final eight units (€32 768 − €20 480). The per unit costs of €1536 on these final eight units (€12 288 ÷ 8) are much lower than the €5000 costs per unit of the first unit produced.

Many companies incorporate learning-curve effects when evaluating performance. For example, the Nissan Motor Company sets assembly-labour efficiency standards for new models of cars after taking into account the learning that will occur as more units are produced.

The learning-curve models examined in Exhibits 9.11 to 9.14 assume that learning is driven by a single variable (production output). Other models of learning have been developed by companies such as Analog Devices and Yokogawa Hewlett-Packard that focus on how quality (rather than manufacturing labour-hours) will change over time (rather than as more units are produced). Some recent studies suggest that factors other than production output – such as job rotation and organising workers into teams – contribute to learning that improves quality.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. Two assumptions frequently made in cost-behaviour estimation are: (a) that changes in total costs can be explained by changes in the level of a single cost driver, and (b) that cost behaviour can adequately be approximated by a linear function of the cost driver within the relevant range.
2. A linear cost function is a cost function where, within the relevant range, the graph of total costs versus a single cost driver forms a straight line. Linear cost functions can be described by a single constant (a), which represents the estimate of the total cost component that does not vary with changes in the level of the cost driver, and a slope coefficient (b), which represents the estimate of the amount by which total costs change for each unit change in the level of the cost driver. Three types of linear cost functions are: variable, fixed and mixed (or semivariable).
3. Four broad approaches to estimating cost functions are: the industrial engineering method, the conference method, the account analysis method, and quantitative analysis of cost relationships (the high–low method and regression analysis method). Regression analysis is a systematic approach to estimating a cost function on the basis of identified cost drivers. Ideally, the cost analyst applies more than one approach; each approach serves as a check on the others.

4 The six steps in estimating a cost function on the basis of an analysis of current or past cost relationships are: (a) choose the dependent variable; (b) identify the cost driver(s); (c) collect data on the dependent variable and the cost driver(s); (d) plot the data; (e) estimate the cost function; and (f) evaluate the estimated cost function. In most situations, the cost analyst will cycle through these steps several times before identifying an acceptable cost function. A growing pool of data is becoming available through big data and machine learning applications which enhances the potential for cost analysis for many firms.

5 Three criteria for evaluating and choosing cost drivers are: (a) economic plausibility, (b) goodness of fit, and (c) the slope of the regression line.

6 A non-linear cost function is a cost function where, within the relevant range, the graph of total costs versus a single cost driver does not form a straight line. Non-linear costs can arise due to economies of scale, quantity discounts, step cost functions and learning-curve effects.

7 The learning curve is an example of a non-linear cost function. Labour-hours per unit decline as units of production increase. In the cumulative average-time learning model, the cumulative average-time per unit declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced doubles. In the incremental unit-time learning model, the incremental unit time (the time needed to produce the last unit) declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced doubles.

Appendix

Regression analysis

This appendix describes formulae for estimating the regression equation and several commonly used statistics. We use the data for Møre-Teppe presented in Exhibit 9.3. The appendix also discusses goodness of fit, significance of independent variables, and specification analysis of estimation assumptions for regression analysis.

Estimating the regression line

The least-squares technique for estimating the regression line minimises the sum of the squares of the vertical deviations (distances) from the data points to the estimated regression line.

The object is to find the values of a and b in the predicting equation $y = a + bX$, where y is the predicted cost value as distinguished from the observed cost value, which we denote by Y. We wish to find the numerical values of a and b that minimise $\sum(Y - y)^2$. This calculation is accomplished by using two equations, usually called the normal equations:

$$\Sigma Y = na + b(\Sigma X)$$
$$\Sigma XY = a(\Sigma X) + b(\Sigma X^2)$$

where n is the number of data points; ΣX and ΣY are, respectively, the sums of the given X and Y values; ΣX^2 is the sum of squares of the X values; and ΣXY is the sum of the amounts obtained by multiplying each of the given X values by the associated observed Y value.

Exhibit 9.16 shows the calculations required for obtaining the line that best fits the data of indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours for Møre-Teppe. Substituting into the two normal equations simultaneously, we obtain:

$$12\,501 = 12a + 862b$$
$$928\,716 = 862a + 64\,900b$$

Exhibit 9.16 Computation for least-squares regression between indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours for Møre-Teppe

Week (1)	Machine hours* X (2)	Indirect manufacturing labour costs* Y (3)	X^2 (4)	XY (5)	Y (6)	Variance of Y $(Y-\bar{Y})^2$ (7)	Unexplained variance $(Y-Y)^2$ (8)	Variance of X $(X-\bar{X})^2$ (9)
1	68	1 190	4 624	80 920	1 002.06	21 978	35 321	15
2	88	1 211	7 744	106 568	1 208.26	28 646	8	261
3	62	1 004	3 844	62 248	940.20	1 425	4 070	97
4	72	917	5 184	66 024	1 043.30	15 563	15 952	0
5	60	770	3 600	46 200	919.58	73 848	22 374	140
6	96	1 456	9 216	139 776	1 290.74	171 603	27 311	584
7	78	1 180	6 084	92 040	1 105.16	19 113	5 601	38
8	46	710	2 116	32 660	775.24	110 058	4 256	667
9	82	1 316	6 724	107 912	1 146.40	75 213	28 764	103
10	94	1 032	8 836	97 008	1 270.12	95	56 701	491
11	68	752	4 624	51 136	1 002.06	83 955	62 530	15
12	48	963	2 304	46 224	795.86	6 202	27 936	568
Total	862	12 501	64 900	928 716	≈ 12 501	607 699	290 824	2 979

* Same data as in columns 1 and 2 of Exhibit 9.3.

The solution is $a = €300.98$ and $b = €10.31$, which can be obtained by direct substitution if the normal equations are re-expressed symbolically as:

$$a = \frac{(\Sigma Y)(\Sigma X^2) - (\Sigma X)(\Sigma XY)}{n(\Sigma X^2) - (\Sigma X)(\Sigma X)}$$

$$b = \frac{n(\Sigma XY) - (\Sigma X)(\Sigma Y)}{n(\Sigma X^2) - (\Sigma X)(\Sigma X)}$$

For our illustration, we now have:

$$a = \frac{(12\,501)(64\,900) - (862)(928\,716)}{12(64\,900) - (862)(862)} = €300.98$$

$$b = \frac{12(928\,716) - (862)(12\,501)}{12(64\,900) - (862)(862)} = €10.31$$

Placing the amounts for a and b in the equation of the least-squares line, we have:

$$y = €300.98 + €10.31X$$

where y is the predicted indirect manufacturing labour costs for any specified number of machine-hours within the relevant range. Generally, these computations are done using software packages such as SPSS, SAS and Statistica.

Goodness of fit

Goodness of fit measures how well the predicted values, y, based on the cost driver, X, match actual cost observations, Y. The regression analysis method computes a formal measure of goodness of fit, called the coefficient of determination. The **coefficient of determination**, r^2, measures the percentage of variation in Y explained by X (the independent variable). The coefficient of determination (r^2) indicates the proportion of the variance of Y, $(Y - \overline{Y})^2 \div n$, that is explained by the independent variable X (where $\overline{Y} = \Sigma Y \div n$). It is more convenient to express the coefficient of determination as 1 minus the proportion of total variance that is not explained by the independent variable. The unexplained variance arises because of differences between the actual values of Y and the predicted values of y:

$$r^2 = 1 - \frac{\text{Unexplained variation}}{\text{Total variation}} = 1 - \frac{\Sigma(Y - y)^2}{\Sigma(Y - \overline{Y})^2}$$
$$= 1 - \frac{290\,824}{607\,699}$$
$$= 0.52$$

The calculations indicate that r^2 increases as the predicted values y more closely approximate the actual observations Y. The range of r^2 is from 0 (implying no explanatory power) to 1 (implying perfect explanatory power). When $r^2 = 1$, the predicted cost values exactly equal actual cost values; that is, the independent variable X has perfectly explained variations in actual costs Y. Generally, an r^2 of 0.30 or higher passes the goodness-of-fit test. Do not rely exclusively on goodness of fit. It can lead to the indiscriminate inclusion of independent variables that increase r^2 but have no economic plausibility as cost driver(s). Goodness of fit has meaning only if the relationship between costs and the drivers is economically plausible.

Significance of independent variables

A key question that managers ask is: Do changes in the economically plausible independent variable result in significant changes in the dependent variable, or alternatively, is the slope b of the regression line significant? Recall, for example, that in the regression of machine-hours on indirect manufacturing labour costs in the Møre-Teppe illustration, b is estimated from a sample of 12 observations. The estimate b is subject to random factors, as are all sample statistics. That is, a different sample of 12 data points will give a different estimate of b. The **standard error of the estimated coefficient** indicates how much the estimated value b is likely to be affected by random factors. The t-value of the b coefficient measures how large the value of the estimated coefficient is relative to its standard error. A t-value with an absolute value greater than 2.00 suggests that the b coefficient is significantly different from zero. In other words, a relationship exists between the independent variable and the dependent variable that cannot be attributed to chance alone.

The benchmark for inferring that a b coefficient is significantly different from zero is a function of the degrees of freedom in a regression. The benchmark of 2.00 assumes a sample size of 60 observations. The number of degrees of freedom is calculated as the sample size minus the number of a and b parameters estimated in the regression. For a simple regression, the benchmark values for the t-values are:

Sample size	Benchmark*
12	$\lvert t\rvert > 2.23$
15	$\lvert t\rvert > 2.16$
20	$\lvert t\rvert > 2.10$
30	$\lvert t\rvert > 2.05$
60	$\lvert t\rvert > 2.00$

*$|t|$ denotes the absolute value of the t-value.

Exhibit 9.17 Simple regression results with indirect manufacturing labour costs as dependent variable and machine-hours as independent variable for Møre-Teppe

Variable	Coefficient (1)	Standard error (2)	*t*-value (3) = (1) ÷ (2)
Constant	€300.98	€229.75	1.31
Independent variable 1: Machine-hours	€10.31	€3.12	3.30

$r^2 = 0.52$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 2.05.

For simplicity, we use a cut-off *t*-value of 2.00 throughout this appendix.

Exhibit 9.17 presents a convenient format for summarising the regression results for indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours. The *t*-value for the slope coefficient *b* is €10.31 ÷ €3.12 = 3.30, which exceeds the benchmark of 2.00. Therefore, the coefficient of the machine-hours variable is significantly different from zero. The probability is low (less than 5%) that random factors could have caused the coefficient *b* to be positive. Alternatively, we can restate our conclusion in terms of a 'confidence interval': there is less than a 5% chance that the true value of the machine-hours coefficient lies outside the range €10.31 ± (2.00 × €3.12) or €10.31 ± €6.24, or from €4.07 and €16.55. Therefore, we can conclude that changes in machine-hours do affect indirect manufacturing labour costs. Similarly, using data from Exhibit 9.17, the *t*-value for the constant term *a* is €300.98 ÷ €229.76 = 1.31, which is less than 2.00. This value indicates that, within the relevant range, the constant term is not significantly different from zero.

Specification analysis of estimation assumptions

Specification analysis is the testing of the assumptions of regression analysis. If the assumptions of (1) linearity within the relevant range, (2) constant variance of residuals, (3) independence of residuals, and (4) normality of residuals hold, the simplest regression procedures give reliable estimates of unknown coefficient values. This section provides a brief overview of specification analysis. When these assumptions are not satisfied, more complex regression procedures are necessary to obtain the best estimates. For details see, for example, Watson et al. (1993) and Greene (2000).

1 *Linearity within the relevant range.* A common assumption is that a linear relationship exists between the independent variable *X* and the dependent variable *Y* within the relevant range. If a linear regression model is used to estimate a fundamentally non-linear relationship, however, the coefficient estimates obtained will be inaccurate.

Where there is only one independent variable, the easiest way to check for linearity is by studying the data on a scatter diagram, a step that often is unwisely skipped. Exhibit 9.6 presents a scatter diagram for the indirect manufacturing labour costs and machine-hours variables of Møre-Teppe shown in Exhibit 9.3. The scatter diagram reveals that linearity appears to be a reasonable assumption for these data.

The learning-curve models discussed in the chapter are examples of non-linear cost functions; costs increase when the level of production increases, but by lesser amounts than would occur with a linear cost function. In this case, the analyst should estimate a non-linear cost function that explicitly incorporates learning effects.

2 *Constant variance of residuals.* The vertical deviation of the observed value *Y* from the regression line estimate *y* is called the *residual term, disturbance term* or *error term*, $u = Y - y$. The assumption of constant variance implies that the residual terms are unaffected by the level of the independent variable. The assumption also implies that there is a uniform scatter, or dispersion, of the data points about the regression line. The scatter diagram is the easiest way

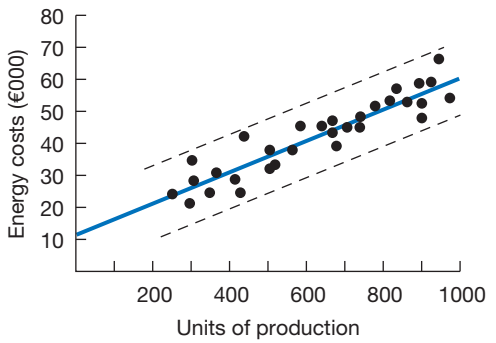
to check for constant variance. This assumption holds for Graph A of Exhibit 9.18 but not for Graph B. Constant variance is also known as *homoscedasticity*. Violation of this assumption is called *heteroscedasticity*.

Heteroscedasticity does not affect the accuracy of the regression estimates a and b. It does, however, reduce the reliability of the estimates of the standard errors, and thus affects the precision with which inferences can be drawn.

3 *Independence of residuals*. The assumption of the independence of residuals is that the residual term for any one observation is not related to the residual term for any other observation. The problem of *serial correlation* in the residuals (also called *autocorrelation*) arises when the residuals are not independent. Serial correlation means that there is a systematic pattern in the sequence of residuals such that the residual in observation n conveys information about the residuals in observations $n + 1$, $n + 2$, and so on. In time-series data, inflation is a common cause of autocorrelation because it causes costs (and hence residuals) to be related over time. Autocorrelation can also occur in cross-sectional data as, for example, in Exhibit 9.19. The scatter diagram helps in identifying autocorrelation. Autocorrelation does not exist in Graph A of Exhibit 9.19 but does exist in Graph B. Observe the systematic pattern of the

Exhibit 9.18 Constant variance of residuals assumption

Graph A: Example of constant variance (uniform scatter of data points around regression line)



Graph B: Example of non-constant variance (higher outputs have larger residuals)

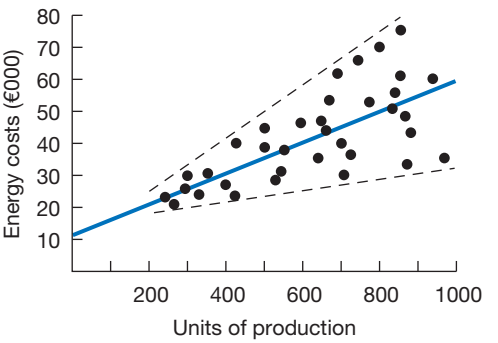
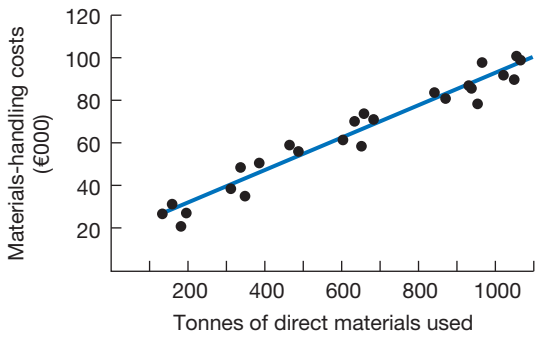
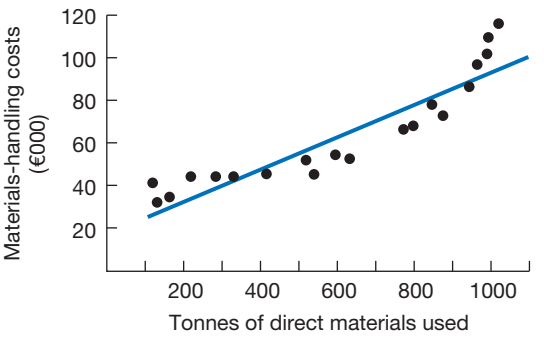


Exhibit 9.19 Independence of residuals assumption

Graph A: Example of independence of residuals (no pattern in residuals)



Graph B: Example of serial correlation in residuals (a pattern of positive residuals for extreme direct materials used; negative residuals for moderate direct materials used)



residuals in Graph B: positive residuals for extreme quantities of direct materials used and negative residuals for moderate quantities of direct materials used. No such systematic pattern prevails for Graph A.

Like non-constant variance in residuals, serial correlation does not affect the accuracy of the regression estimates a and b. It does, however, affect the standard errors of the coefficients, which in turn affect the precision with which inferences about the population parameters can be drawn from the regression estimates.

The *Durbin–Watson statistic* is one measure of serial correlation in the estimated residuals. For samples of 10–20 observations, a Durbin–Watson statistic in the 1.10–2.90 range suggests that the residuals are independent. The Durbin–Watson statistic for the regression results of Møre-Teppe in Exhibit 9.17 is 2.05. Therefore, an assumption of independence in the estimated residuals seems reasonable for this regression model.

4 *Normality of residuals.* The normality of residuals assumption means that the residuals are distributed normally around the regression line. This assumption is necessary for making inferences about y, a and b.

Using regression output to choose cost drivers of cost functions

Consider the two choices of cost driver we described earlier:

$$y = a + (b \times \text{Machine-hours})$$
$$y = a + (b \times \text{Direct manufacturing labour-hours})$$

Exhibits 9.6 and 9.7 present plots of the data for the two regressions. Exhibit 9.17 reports regression results for the cost function using machine-hours as the independent variable. Exhibit 9.20 presents comparable regression results for the cost function using direct manufacturing labour-hours as the independent variable.

On the basis of the material in this appendix, which regression is better? Exhibit 9.21 compares these two cost functions in a systematic way. For several criteria, the cost function based on machine-hours is preferable to the cost function based on direct manufacturing labour-hours. The economic plausibility criterion is especially important.

Exhibit 9.20 Simple regression results with indirect manufacturing labour costs as dependent variable and direct manufacturing labour-hours as independent variable for Møre-Teppe

Variable	Coefficient (1)	Standard error (2)	*t*-value (3) = (1) ÷ (2)
Constant	€744.67	€217.61	3.42
Independent variable 1: Direct manufacturing labour-hours	€7.72	€5.40	1.43

$r^2 = 0.17$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 2.26.

Exhibit 9.21 Comparison of alternative cost functions for indirect manufacturing labour costs estimated with simple regression for Møre-Teppe

Criterion	Cost function 1: machine-hours as independent variable	Cost function 2: direct manufacturing labour-hours as independent variable
Economic plausibility	A positive relationship between indirect manufacturing labour costs (technical support labour) and machine-hours is economically plausible in a highly automated plant	A positive relationship between indirect manufacturing labour costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours is economically plausible, but less so than machine-hours in a highly automated plant on a week-to-week basis
Goodness of fit	$r^2 = 0.52$ Excellent goodness of fit	$r^2 = 0.17$ Poor goodness of fit
Significance of independent variable(s)	The *t*-value of 3.30 is significant	The *t*-value of 1.43 is not significant
Specification analysis of estimation assumptions	Plot of the data indicates that assumptions of linearity, constant variance, independence of residuals and normality of residuals hold, but inferences drawn from only 12 observations are not reliable; Durbin–Watson statistic = 2.05	Plot of the data indicates that assumptions of linearity, constant variance, independence of residuals and normality of residuals hold, but inferences drawn from only 12 observations are not reliable; Durbin–Watson statistic = 2.26

Do not always assume that any one cost function will perfectly satisfy all the criteria in Exhibit 9.21. A cost analyst must often make a choice among 'imperfect' cost functions, in the sense that the data of any particular cost function will not perfectly meet one or more of the assumptions underlying regression analysis.

Multiple regression and cost hierarchies

In some cases, a satisfactory estimation of a cost function may be based on only one independent variable, such as machine-hours. In many cases, however, basing the estimation on more than one independent variable is more economically plausible and improves accuracy. The most widely used equations to express relationships between two or more independent variables and a dependent variable are linear in the form

$$Y = a + b_1X_1 + b_2X_2 + \cdots + u$$

where

Y = cost variable to be predicted
$X_1, X_2, \cdots$ = independent variables on which the prediction is to be based
$a, b_1, b_2 \cdots$ = estimated coefficients of the regression model
u = residual term that includes the net effect of other factors not in the model and measurement errors in the dependent and independent variables.

Example 9A.1

Consider the Møre-Teppe data in Exhibit 9.22. Indirect manufacturing labour costs include sizeable costs incurred for set-up and changeover costs when production on one carpet batch is stopped and production on another batch is started. Management believes that in addition to machine-hours (an output unit-level cost driver), indirect manufacturing labour costs are also affected by the number of different batches of carpets produced during each week (a batch-level driver). Møre-Teppe estimates the relation between two independent variables, machine-hours and number of separate carpet jobs worked on during the week, and indirect manufacturing labour costs.

Exhibit 9.23 presents results for the following multiple regression model, using data in columns 1, 2 and 4 of Exhibit 9.22:

$$y = €42.58 + €7.60X_1 + €37.77X_2$$

where X_1 is the number of machine-hours and X_2 is the number of production batches. It is economically plausible that both machine-hours and production batches would help explain variations in indirect manufacturing labour costs at Møre-Teppe. The r^2 of 0.52 for the simple regression using machine-hours (Exhibit 9.17) increases to 0.72 with the multiple regression in Exhibit 9.23. The t-values suggest that the independent variable coefficients of both machine-hours and production batches are significantly different from zero ($t = 2.74$ for the coefficient on machine-hours, and $t = 2.48$ for the coefficient on production batches). The multiple regression model in Exhibit 9.23 satisfies both economic and statistical criteria, and it explains much greater variation in indirect manufacturing labour costs than does the simple regression model using only machine-hours as the independent variable. The information in Exhibit 9.23 indicates that both machine-hours and production batches are important cost drivers of monthly indirect manufacturing labour costs at Møre-Teppe.

Exhibit 9.22 Weekly indirect manufacturing labour costs, machine-hours, direct manufacturing labour-hours and number of production batches for Møre-Teppe

Week	Indirect manufacturing labour costs (1)	Machine-hours (2)	Direct manufacturing labour-hours (3)	Number of production batches (4)
1	€1190	68	30	12
2	1211	88	35	15
3	1004	62	36	13
4	917	72	20	11
5	770	60	47	10
6	1456	96	45	12
7	1180	78	44	17
8	710	46	38	7
9	1316	82	70	14
10	1032	94	30	12
11	752	68	29	7
12	963	48	38	14

Exhibit 9.23 Multiple regression results with indirect manufacturing labour costs and two independent variables (machine-hours and production batches) for Møre-Teppe

Variable	Coefficient (1)	Standard error (2)	*t*-value (3) = (1) ÷ (2)
Constant	€42.58	€213.91	0.20
Independent variable 1: Machine-hours	€7.60	€2.77	2.74
Independent variable 2: Production batches	€37.77	€15.25	2.48

$r^2 = 0.72$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 2.49.

In Exhibit 9.23, the slope coefficients −€7.60 for machine-hours and €37.77 for production batches – measure the change in indirect manufacturing labour costs associated with a unit change in an independent variable (assuming that the other independent variable is held constant). For example, indirect manufacturing labour costs increase by €37.77 when one more production batch is added, assuming that the number of machine-hours is held constant.

An alternative approach would create two separate cost pools – one for costs tied to machine-hours and another for costs tied to production batches. Møre-Teppe would then estimate the relationship between the cost driver and overhead costs separately for each cost pool. The difficult task under that approach would be properly dividing overhead costs into the two cost pools.

Multicollinearity

A major concern that arises with multiple regression is multicollinearity. **Multicollinearity** exists when two or more independent variables are highly correlated with each other. Generally, users of regression analysis believe that a coefficient of correlation between independent variables greater than 0.70 indicates multicollinearity. Multicollinearity increases the standard errors of the coefficients of the individual variables. The result is that there is greater uncertainty about the underlying value of the coefficients of the individual independent variables. That is, variables that are economically and statistically significant will appear insignificant.

The coefficients of correlation between the potential independent variables for Møre-Teppe in Exhibit 9.22 are:

Pairwise combinations	Coefficient of correlation
Machine-hours and direct manufacturing labour-hours	0.12
Machine-hours and production batches	0.40
Direct manufacturing labour-hours and production batches	0.31

These results indicate that multiple regressions using any pair of the independent variables in Exhibit 9.23 are not likely to encounter multicollinearity problems.

If severe multicollinearity exists, try to obtain new data that does not suffer from multicollinearity problems. Do not drop an independent variable (cost driver) that should be included in a model because it is correlated with another independent variable. Omitting such a variable will cause the estimated coefficient of the independent variable included in the model to be biased away from its true value.

References and further reading

Anderson, D. and Sweeney, D. (2019) *Essentials of Statistics for Business and Economics* (Boston, US: Cengage).

Greene, W.H. (2018) *Econometric Analysis*, 4th edn (New York: Macmillan).

Opex Learning (2019) 'Frank and Lillian Gilbreth' (https://opexlearning.com/resources/frank-and-lillian-gilbreth/27818/)

Page-Gould, E. (2022) *Mastering Statistics* (London: Sage).

Rees, D. (2000) *Essential Statistics* (London: Chapman and Hall).

CHAPTER 9

Assessment material

Review questions

9.1 Describe three alternative linear cost functions.

9.2 What two assumptions are frequently made when estimating a cost function?

9.3 What is the difference between a linear and a non-linear cost function? Give an example of each type of cost function.

9.4 'High correlation between two variables means that one is the cause and the other is the effect.' Do you agree? Explain.

9.5 Name four approaches to estimating a cost function.

9.6 Describe three criteria for evaluating cost functions and choosing cost drivers.

9.7 Define learning curve. Outline two models that can be used when incorporating learning into the estimation of cost functions.

9.8 What are the four key assumptions examined in specification analysis in the case of simple regression?

9.9 'All the independent variables in a cost function estimated with regression analysis are cost drivers.' Do you agree? Explain.

9.10 'Multicollinearity exists when the dependent variable and the independent variable are highly correlated.' Do you agree? Explain.

Exercises

Basic level

***9.11 Estimating a cost function** (10 minutes)

The controller of Iso-Mets Oy wants you to estimate a cost function from the following two observations in a general-ledger account called Maintenance:

Month	Machine-hours	Maintenance costs incurred
January	4000	€3000
February	7000	3900

Required

1 Estimate the cost function for maintenance.

2 Can the constant in the cost function be used as an estimate of fixed maintenance cost per month? Explain.

9.12 Identifying variable, fixed and mixed cost functions (15 minutes)

Bellingwolde BV operates car rental agencies at over 20 airports. Customers can choose from one of three contracts for car rentals of one day or less:

- Contract 1: €50 for the day.
- Contract 2: €30 for the day plus €0.20 per km travelled.
- Contract 3: €1.00 per km travelled.

Required

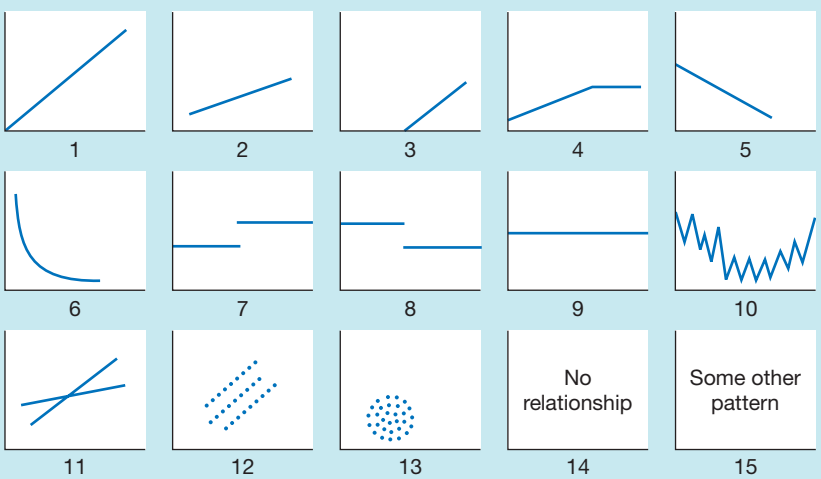
1 Present separate plots for each of the three contracts, with costs on the vertical axis and kilometres travelled on the horizontal axis.

2 Describe each contract as a linear cost function of the form $y = a + bX$.

3 Describe each contract as a variable, fixed or mixed cost function.

9.13 Matching graphs with descriptions of cost behaviour (20 minutes)

Given below are a number of charts, each indicating some relationship between cost and a cost driver. No attempt has been made to draw these charts to any particular scale; the absolute numbers on each axis may be closely or widely spaced.



Required

Indicate by number which one of the charts best fits each of the situations or items described. Each situation or item is independent of all the others; all factors not stated are assumed to be irrelevant. Some charts will be used more than once; some may not apply to any of the situations. Note that category 14, 'No relationship', is not the same as 15, 'Some other pattern'.

If the horizontal axis represents the production output over the year and the vertical axis represents total cost or revenue, indicate the one best pattern or relationship for:

1 Direct material costs.

2 Supervisors' salaries.

3 A breakeven chart.

4 Mixed costs – for example, fixed electrical power demand charge plus variable usage rate.

5 Depreciation of plant, calculated on a straight-line basis.

6 Data supporting the use of a variable cost rate, such as manufacturing labour cost of SFr 14 per unit produced.

7 Incentive bonus plan that pays managers SFr 0.10 for every unit produced above some level of production.

8 Interest charges on money borrowed at a fixed rate of interest to finance the acquisition of a plant, before any payments on principal.

Intermediate level

9.14 **Account analysis method** (20 minutes)

Lorenzo-Netto, Srl, operates a brushless car wash. Incoming cars are put on an automatic, continuously moving conveyor belt. Cars are washed as the conveyor belt carries the car from the start station to the finish station. After the car moves off the conveyor belt, the car is dried manually. Workers then clean and vacuum the inside of the car. Workers are managed by a single supervisor. Lorenzo-Netto serviced 80 000 cars in 2022. Lorenzo-Netto reports the following costs for 2022:

Account description	Costs
Car wash labour	€240 000
Soap, cloth and supplies	32 000
Water	28 000
Power to move conveyor belt	72 000
Depreciation	64 000
Supervision	30 000
Cashier	16 000

Required

1 Classify each account as variable or fixed with respect to cars washed. Explain.

2 Lorenzo-Netto expects to wash 90 000 cars in 2023. Use the cost classification you developed in requirement 1 to estimate Lorenzo-Netto's total costs in 2023.

3 Calculate the average cost of washing a car in 2022 and 2023. (Use the expected 90 000 car wash level for 2023.)

9.15 **Linear cost approximation** (25 minutes)

Pierre Corneille, managing director of Marre-Quise Consultants SA, is examining how overhead costs behave with variations in monthly professional labour-hours billed to clients. Assume the following historical data:

Total overhead costs	Professional labour-hours billed to clients
€340 000	3000
400 000	4000
435 000	5000
477 000	6000
529 000	7000
587 000	8000

Required

1 Calculate the linear cost function, relating total overhead cost to professional labour-hours, using the representative observations of 4000 and 7000 hours. Plot the linear cost function. Does the constant component of the cost function represent the fixed overhead costs of Marre-Quise Consultants? Why?

2 What would be the predicted total overhead costs for (a) 5000 hours and (b) 8000 hours using the cost function estimated in requirement 1? Plot the predicted costs and actual costs for 5000 and 8000 hours.

3 Corneille had a chance to accept a special job that would have boosted professional labour-hours from 4000 to 5000 hours. Suppose Corneille, guided by the linear cost function, rejected this job because it would have brought a total increase in contribution margin of €38 000, before deducting the predicted increase in total overhead cost, €43 000. What is the total contribution margin actually forgone?

9.16 Regression analysis, service company (CMA, adapted) (25 minutes)

Hans Mehrlich owns a catering company that prepares banquets and parties for both individual and business functions throughout the year. Mehrlich's business is seasonal, with a heavy schedule during the summer months and the year-end holidays and a light schedule at other times. During peak periods there are extra costs.

One of the major events Mehrlich's customers request is a cocktail party. He offers a standard cocktail party and has developed the following cost structure on a per-person basis:

Food and beverages	€15.00
Labour (0.5 hour × €10 per hour)	5.00
Overhead (0.5 hour × €14 per hour)	7.00
Total costs per person	€27.00

Mehrlich is quite certain about his estimates of the food, beverages and labour costs but is not as comfortable with the overhead estimate. This estimate was based on the actual data for the past 12 months presented below. These data indicate that overhead expenses vary with the direct labour-hours expended. The €14 estimate was determined by dividing total overhead expended for the 12 months by total labour-hours.

Month	Labour-hours	Overhead costs
January	2 500	€55 000
February	2 700	59 000
March	3 000	60 000
April	4 200	64 000
May	4 500	67 000
June	5 500	71 000
July	6 500	74 000
August	7 500	77 000
September	7 000	75 000
October	4 500	68 000
November	3 100	62 000
December	6 500	73 000
Total	57 500	€805 000

Mehrlich has recently become aware of regression analysis. He estimated the following regression equation with overhead costs as the dependent variable and labour-hours as the independent variable:

$$y = €48\,271 + €3.93X$$

Required

1 Plot the relationship between overhead costs and labour-hours. Draw the regression line and evaluate it using the criteria of economic plausibility, goodness of fit and slope of the regression line.

2 Using data from the regression analysis, what is the variable cost per person for a cocktail party?

3 Hans Mehrlich has been asked to prepare a bid for a 200-person cocktail party to be given next month. Determine the minimum bid price that Mehrlich would be willing to submit to earn a positive contribution margin.

9.17 Learning curve, cumulative average-time learning curve (20 minutes)

Genève Défense Systèmes manufactures radar systems. It has just completed the manufacture of its first newly designed system, RS-32. It took 3000 direct manufacturing labour-hours (DMLH) to produce this one unit. Genève Défense Systèmes believes that a 90% cumulative average-time learning model for direct manufacturing labour-hours applies to RS-32. (A 90% learning curve implies $q = -0.1520$.) The variable costs of producing RS-32 are:

Direct materials costs	SFr 80 000 per RS-32
Direct manufacturing labour costs	SFr 25 per DMLH
Variable manufacturing overhead costs	SFr 15 per DMLH

Required

Calculate the total variable costs of producing 2, 4 and 8 units.

9.18 Learning curve, incremental unit-time learning curve (20 minutes)

Assume the same information for Genève Défense Systèmes as in Exercise 9.17 except that Genève Défense Systèmes uses a 90% *incremental unit-time* learning curve as a basis for forecasting direct manufacturing labour-hours. (A 90% learning curve implies $q = -0.1520$.)

Required

1 Calculate the total variable costs of producing 2, 3 and 4 units.

2 If you solved Exercise 9.17, compare your cost predictions in the two exercises for 2 and 4 units. Why are the predictions different?

9.19 Evaluating alternative simple regression models, not for profit (Chapter appendix) (30–40 minutes)

Pauline Raphaël, executive assistant to the principal of Ecole Supérieure des Mines de St Etienne, is concerned about the overhead costs at her university. Cost pressures are severe, so controlling and reducing overheads is very important. Raphaël believes overhead costs incurred are generally a function of the number of different academic programmes (including different specialisations, degrees and research programmes) that the university has and the number of enrolled students. Both have grown significantly over the years. She collects the following data:

Year	Overhead costs ('000)	Number of academic programmes	Number of enrolled students
1	€13 500	29	3400
2	19 200	36	5000
3	16 800	49	2600
4	20 100	53	4700
5	19 500	54	3900
6	23 100	58	4900
7	23 700	88	5700
8	20 100	72	3900
9	22 800	83	3500
10	29 700	73	3700
11	31 200	101	5600
12	38 100	103	7600

She finds the following results for two separate simple regression models:

- *Regression 1.* Overhead costs = $a + (b \times$ Number of academic programmes)

Variable	Coefficient	Standard error	*t*-value
Constant	€7127.75	€3335.34	2.14
Independent variable 1: Number of academic programmes	€240.64	€47.33	5.08

$r^2 = 0.72$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 1.81

- *Regression 2.* Overhead costs = $a + (b \times$ Number of enrolled students)

Variable	Coefficient	Standard error	*t*-value
Constant	€5991.75	€5067.88	1.18
Independent variable 1: Number of enrolled students	€3.78	€1.07	3.53

$r^2 = 0.55$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 0.77

Required

1 Plot the relationship between overhead costs and each of the following variables: (a) number of academic programmes, and (b) number of enrolled students.

2 Compare and evaluate the two simple regression models estimated by Raphaël. Use the comparison format employed in Exhibit 9.20.

3 What insights do the analyses provide about controlling and reducing overhead costs at the Ecole Supérieure?

***9.20 Evaluating multiple regression models, not for profit** (continuation of Exercise 9.19) (Chapter appendix) (30 minutes)

Required

1 Given your findings in Exercise 9.19, should Raphaël use multiple regression analysis to better understand the cost drivers of overhead costs? Explain your answer.

2 Raphaël decides that the simple regression analysis in Exercise 9.19 should be extended to a multiple regression analysis. She finds the following result:

- *Regression 3.* Overhead costs = $a + (b_1 \times$ Number of academic programmes) + $(b_2 \times$ Number of enrolled students)

Variable	Coefficient	Standard error	*t*-value
Constant	€2779.62	€3620.05	0.77
Independent variable 1: Number of academic programmes	€178.37	€51.54	3.46
Independent variable 2: Number of enrolled students	€1.87	€0.92	2.03

$r^2 = 0.81$; Durbin–Watson statistic = 1.84

The coefficient of correlation between number of academic programmes and number of students is 0.60. Use the format in Exhibit 9.21 to evaluate the multiple regression model. (Assume linearity, and constant variance and normality of residuals.) Should Raphaël choose the multiple regression model over the two simple regression models of Exercise 9.19?

3 How might the principal of the Ecole Supérieure use these regression results to manage overhead costs?

Advanced level

***9.21 High–low and regression approaches** (Chapter appendix) (30–40 minutes)

Bildt-Östersund AN wishes to set a flexible budget for its power costs, which are primarily a function of machine-hours worked. Data for the first four periods follows:

Period	Power costs (Y)	Machine-hours (X)
1	SKr 350	200
2	450	300
3	300	100
4	500	400

Required

1 Plot the relationship between power costs and machine-hours.

2 Calculate the constant a and slope coefficient b of the function $y = a + bX$ using (i) the high–low approach, and (ii) the regression approach. Comment on the results.

3 For the regression approach, calculate the coefficient of determination, r^2. Comment on the result.

9.22 Labour cost focus (From CIMA, Paper P2, May 2014) (15 minutes)

SVC is a car manufacturer. SVC is planning the development of a prototype hydrogen-powered car, the Model Q. The prototype Model Q car will have a limited production run of 250 cars. To ensure that the Model Q is ready by SVC's stated deadline, production will take place over the course of one month. Details for the development and production of the prototype Model Q are shown below.

Forecast development cost	€6 500 000
Forecast design cost	€1 300 000
Forecast manufacturing costs	
Material cost	€25 500 per car
Variable production overhead cost	€780 per car (this is not related to labour-hours)
Direct labour	€60 per hour (see note 2 below)

Direct labour

SVC plans to hire a team of 12 specialist production staff. The specialist production staff will be paid a premium on their basic hourly rate of pay dependent on the total number of labour-hours required to produce all 250 prototype Model Q cars as follows:

Note: a prototype is defined as a preliminary version of a vehicle from which other forms may be developed.

Total labour-hours	Premium on basic hourly labour rate
0–2000	35%
2001–2500	30%
2501–3000	25%
3001–3500	20%
More than 3500	0%

The premium on the basic hourly labour rate will be applicable to all labour-hours during production.

Learning curve

It is estimated that the manufacture of the first car will take 13 labour-hours. There is expected to be a 95% learning curve that will continue until 128 cars have been produced. Thereafter, each car will take the same time to produce as the 128th.

Notes

1 The learning index for a 95% learning curve $= -0.074$.

2 The hourly direct labour rate stated above under 'Forecast manufacturing cost' is inclusive of a premium on the basic hourly labour rate, which has been calculated assuming that each of the 250 cars takes the same time to produce as the first.

Required

Calculate the total labour cost of producing 250 cars.

CHAPTER 10

Relevant information for decision making

The provision of decision-relevant information is one important function of the management accountant. In fact, it is for individuals as well. To take a simple example, you might make a decision to buy a coffee maker. When you make the decision to do so, you might evaluate the costs and benefits. But once you have purchased the coffee maker, its cost is irrelevant when calculating how much money you save each time you brew coffee at home versus buy it at Costa. You incurred the cost of the coffee maker in the past, and you cannot recoup that cost. In this chapter, we focus on decisions such as accepting or rejecting a one-time-only special order, insourcing or outsourcing products or services, and replacing or keeping equipment. We stress the importance of distinguishing between relevant and irrelevant items in making these decisions.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe a five-step sequence in the decision process
- Differentiate relevant costs from irrelevant costs and revenues
- Distinguish between quantitative factors and qualitative factors in decisions
- Identify two potential problems in relevant-cost analysis
- Describe the opportunity cost concept; explain why it is used in decision making
- Describe the key concept in choosing which among multiple products to produce when there are capacity constraints
- Explain why the book value of equipment is irrelevant in equipment-replacement decisions

Information and the decision process

Managers often adopt a personalised approach for deciding among different courses of action. The approach may be highly stylised, informal and subjective. It will usually also draw on formally structured information. A decision model is here taken to signify a formal method for making a choice, frequently involving quantitative and qualitative analyses. Accountants aim to supply managers with relevant data to guide their decisions. There are many instances where the data is first analysed by the accountant and their implications are presented to the decision maker. This is increasingly the case with big data analyses where the naked human eye cannot decipher trends but quantitative explorations of the data using machine learning functions can produce important indications of options to consider. The information assessed by management accountants is usually structured and acts as an input to decision making which will rely also on other information forms.

Consider a decision that Home Appliances, a manufacturer of vacuum cleaners, faces: Should it rearrange a manufacturing assembly line to reduce manufacturing labour costs? For simplicity, assume that the only alternatives are 'do not rearrange' and 'rearrange'. The rearrangement will eliminate all manual handling of materials. The current manufacturing line uses 20 workers – 15 workers operate machines, and 5 workers handle materials. Each worker puts in 2 000 hours annually. The rearrangement is predicted to cost €90 000. The predicted production output of 25 000 units for the next year will be unaffected by the decision. Also unaffected by the decision are the predicted selling price per unit of €250, direct-materials costs per unit of €50, other manufacturing overhead of € 750 000, and marketing costs of €2 000 000. The cost driver is units of production.

To make the decision, management may hypothetically proceed in a sequence of steps. The first step is to gather more information about manufacturing labour costs. The historical manufacturing labour rate of €14 per hour is the starting point for predicting total manufacturing labour costs under both alternatives. The manufacturing labour rate is expected to increase to €16 per hour following a recently negotiated increase in employee benefits.

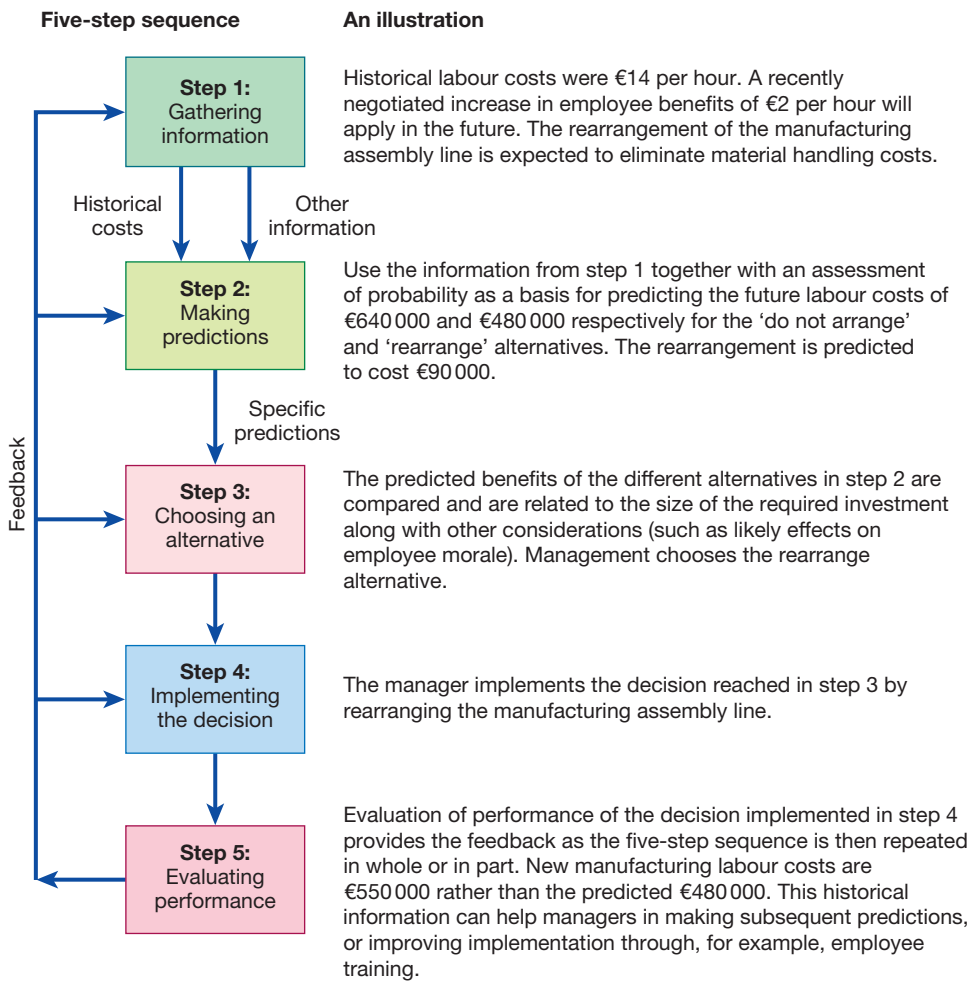
The second step is to predict future costs under the two alternatives. Predicted manufacturing labour costs under the 'do not rearrange' alternative are 20 workers × 2000 hours × €16 per hour = €640 000. Predicted manufacturing labour costs under the 'rearrange' alternative are 15 workers × 2000 hours × €16 per hour = €480 000. Predicted costs of rearrangement are €90 000.

As the third step, Home Appliances' management compares the predicted savings from eliminating materials handling labour costs 15 workers × 2000 hours × €16 per hour = €160 000 to the costs of rearrangement of €90 000. It also takes into account other qualitative considerations such as the effect that reducing the number of workers will have on employee morale. After weighing the costs and benefits, management chooses the 'rearrange' alternative. Management next implements the decision in the fourth step by rearranging the manufacturing assembly line.

As the fifth and final step, management gathers information about the actual results of the plant rearrangement to evaluate performance and to provide feedback. Actual results show that the new manufacturing labour costs are €550 000 (due to, say, lower than expected manufacturing labour productivity) rather than the predicted €480 000. This feedback may lead to better implementation through, for example, a change in supervisory behaviour, employee training or personnel so that the €480 000 target is achieved in subsequent periods. However, the feedback may convince the decision maker that the prediction method, rather than the implementation, was faulty. Perhaps the prediction method for similar decisions in the future should be modified to allow for worker training or learning time.

Exhibit 10.1 summarises the five-step decision process that we just described: gathering information, making predictions, choosing an alternative, implementing the decision, and evaluating actual performance to provide feedback. The feedback, in turn, might affect future predictions, the prediction method itself, the decision model or the implementation.

Exhibit 10.1 Accounting information and the decision process



The concept of relevance

Relevant costs and relevant revenues

The most important decision-making concepts in this chapter are relevant costs and relevant revenues. **Relevant costs** are those *expected future costs* that differ among alternative courses of action. The two key aspects to this definition are that the costs must occur in the future and that they must differ among the alternative courses of action. We focus on the future because *every decision deals with the future – nothing can be done to alter the past*. Also, the future costs must differ among the alternatives because if they do not, there will be no difference in costs no matter what decision is made. Likewise, **relevant revenues** are those expected future revenues that differ among alternative courses of action. It is important to recognise that relevant costs and relevant revenues must:

- *Occur in the future*: every decision deals with a manager selecting a course of action based on its expected future results.
- *Differ among the alternative courses of action*: future costs and revenues that do not differ will not matter and, therefore, will have no bearing on the decision being made.

The question is always, 'What difference will a particular action make?'

In Exhibit 10.2, the €640 000 and €480 000 manufacturing labour costs are relevant costs – they are expected future costs that differ between the two alternatives. The past manufacturing labour rate of €14 per hour and total past manufacturing labour costs of €560 000 (2000 hours × 20 workers × €14 per hour) are not relevant, even though they may play a role in preparing the €640 000 and €480 000 labour cost predictions. Although they may be a useful basis for making informed judgements for predicting expected future costs, historical costs in themselves are irrelevant to a decision. Why? Because they deal strictly with the past, not the future.

Exhibit 10.2 presents the quantitative data underlying the choice between the 'do not rearrange' and the 'rearrange' alternatives. The first two columns present all data. The last two columns present only relevant costs or revenues. The revenues, direct materials, manufacturing overhead and marketing items can be ignored. Why? Because although they are expected future costs, they do not differ between the alternatives. They are thus irrelevant. The data in Exhibit 10.2 indicate that rearranging the production line will increase next year's predicted operating profit by €70 000. Note that we reach the same conclusion whether we use all data or include only the relevant data in the analysis. By confining the analysis to only the relevant data, managers can clear away related but irrelevant data that might confuse them.

The difference in total cost between two alternatives is a **differential cost**. The differential cost between alternatives 1 and 2 in Exhibit 10.2 is €70 000.

Qualitative factors can be relevant

We divide the consequences of alternatives into two broad categories: quantitative and qualitative. **Quantitative factors** are outcomes that are measured in numerical terms. Some quantitative factors

Exhibit 10.2 Determining relevant revenues and relevant costs for Home Appliances

	All data		Relevant data	
	Alternative 1: Do not rearrange	Alternative 2: Rearrange	Alternative 1: Do not rearrange	Alternative 2: Rearrange
Revenues*	€6 250 000	€6 250 000	–	–
	–	–		
Costs				
Direct materials†	1 250 000	1 250 000	–	–
Manufacturing labour	640 000‡	480 000§	€640 000‡	€480 000§
Manufacturing overhead	750 000	750 000	–	–
Marketing	2 000 000	2 000 000	–	–
Rearrangement costs	–	90 000	–	90 000
Total costs	4 640 000	4 570 000	640 000	570 000
Operating profit	€1 610 000	€1 680 000	€(640 000)	€(570 000)
	€70 000 difference		€70 000 difference	

* 25 000 × €250 = €6 250 000.
† 25 000 × €50 = €1 250 000.
‡ 20 × 2000 × €16 = €640 000.
§ 15 × 2000 × €16 = €480 000.

are financial, that is, they can be easily expressed in financial terms. Examples include the costs of direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and marketing. Other quantitative factors are non-financial, that is, they can be measured numerically, but they are not expressed in financial terms. Reduction in page download time for an Internet company and the percentage of on-time flight arrivals for an airline company are examples of quantitative, non-financial factors. **Qualitative factors** are outcomes that cannot be measured in numerical terms. Employee morale is an example.

Cost analysis generally emphasises quantitative factors that can be expressed in financial terms. But just because qualitative factors and non-financial quantitative factors cannot be easily measured in financial terms does not make them unimportant. Managers must at times give more weight to qualitative or non-financial quantitative factors. For example, Home Appliances may find that it can purchase a part from an outside supplier at a price that is lower than what it costs to manufacture the part in-house. Home Appliances may still choose to make the part in-house because it feels that the supplier is unlikely to meet the demanding delivery schedule – a quantitative non-financial factor – and because purchasing the part from outside may adversely affect employee morale – a qualitative factor. Trading off non-financial and financial considerations, however, is seldom easy.

An illustration of relevance: choosing output levels

Managers often make decisions that affect output levels. For example, managers must choose whether to introduce a new product or sell more units of an existing product. When changes in output levels occur, managers are interested in the effect it has on the organisation and on operating profit. Why? Because maximising organisational objectives (typically operating profit in our illustrations) also increases managers' rewards.

One-off special orders

Management sometimes faces the decision of accepting or rejecting one-off special orders when there is idle production capacity and where the order has no long-run implications. We assume that all costs can be classified as either variable with respect to a single driver (units of output) or fixed. The following example illustrates how focusing on revenues, variable costs and contribution margins can provide key information for decisions about the choice of output level. The example also indicates how reliance on unit-cost numbers calculated after allocating fixed costs can mislead managers about the effect that increasing output has on operating profit.

Exhibit 10.3 presents data in an absorption-costing format: fixed manufacturing costs are included as product costs. The manufacturing cost per unit is €12 (€7.50 of which is variable and €4.50 of which is fixed), which is above the €11 price offered by the hotel chain. Using the €12 absorption cost as a guide in decision making, a manager might reject the offer.

Exhibit 10.3 Budgeted income statement for August, absorption-costing format for Huber GmbH

	Total	Per unit
Sales (30 000 towels × €20)	€600 000	€20
Cost of goods sold	360 000	12
Gross margin (gross profit)	240 000	8
Marketing costs	210 000	7
Operating profit	€30 000	€1

Example 10.1

Huber GmbH manufactures quality bath towels at its highly automated Heidelberg plant. The plant has a production capacity of 48 000 towels each month. Current monthly production is 30 000 towels. Retail department stores account for all existing sales. Expected results for the coming month (August) are shown in Exhibit 10.3. (Note that these amounts are predictions.) The manufacturing costs per unit of €12 consist of direct materials €6 (all variable), direct manufacturing labour €2 (€0.50 of which is variable), and manufacturing overhead €4 (€1 of which is variable). The marketing costs per unit are €7 (€5 of which is variable). Huber GmbH has no R&D costs or product-design costs. Marketing costs include distribution costs and customer-service costs.

A luxury hotel chain offers to buy 5000 towels per month at €11 a towel for each of the next three months. No subsequent sales to this customer are anticipated. No marketing costs will be necessary for the 5000-unit one-off special order. The acceptance of this special order is not expected to affect the selling price or the quantity of towels sold to regular customers. Should Huber GmbH accept the hotel chain's offer?

Exhibit 10.4 presents data in a contribution income statement format. The relevant costs are the expected future costs that differ between the alternatives – the variable manufacturing costs of €37 500 (€7.50 per unit × 5000 units). The fixed manufacturing costs and all marketing costs (including variable marketing costs) are irrelevant in this case; they will not change in total whether or not the special order is accepted. Therefore, the only relevant items here are sales revenues and variable manufacturing costs. Given the €11 relevant revenue per unit (the special- order price) and the €7.50 relevant costs per unit, Huber would gain an additional €17500 [(€11.00 − €7.50) × 5000] in operating profit per month by accepting the special order. In this example, comparisons based on either total amounts or relevant amounts (Exhibit 10.4) avoid the misleading implication of the absorption cost per unit (Exhibit 10.3).

The additional costs of €7.50 per unit that Huber will incur if it accepts the special order for 5000 towels are sometimes called **incremental costs**. Incremental costs are additional costs to obtain an additional quantity, over and above existing or planned quantities, of a cost object. Huber could avoid these costs if it did not accept the special order. Huber incurs no incremental fixed manufacturing costs if it accepts the special order; those costs will not change whether or not the special order is accepted. Fixed manufacturing costs do not change because the analysis in Exhibit 10.4 assumes that the 5000-towel special order will use already acquired capacity that will otherwise remain idle for each of the next three months.

The assumption of no long-run or strategic implications is crucial in the analysis we present for the one-off special order decision. Suppose, for example, that Huber is concerned that the retail department stores (its regular customers) will demand a lower price if it sells towels at €11 each to the luxury hotel chain. In this case, the analysis of the luxury hotel chain order must be modified to consider both the short-term benefits from accepting the order and the long-term consequences on Huber's business and profitability.

Potential problems in relevant-cost analysis

It is important in relevant-cost analysis not to assume that all variable costs are relevant. In the Huber GmbH example, the marketing costs of €5 per unit are variable but not relevant. Why? Because for the special-order decision, Huber incurs no extra marketing costs.

Similarly, it is important not to assume that all fixed costs are irrelevant. Consider fixed manufacturing costs. In our example, we assume that the extra production of 5000 towels per month does not affect fixed manufacturing costs. That is, we assume that the relevant range is at least between 30 000 and 35 000 towels per month. In some cases, however, the extra 5000 towels might increase fixed manufacturing costs. Assume that Huber would have to run three shifts of 16 000 towels per shift to achieve full capacity of 48 000 towels per month. Increasing the monthly production from 30 000 to 35 000 would require a partial third shift because two shifts alone

Exhibit 10.4 Comparative income statements for August, contribution income statement format for Huber GmbH

	Without one-off special order, 30 000 units		With one-off special order, 35 000 units	Difference, 5000 units
	Per unit	Total	Total	Total
Sales	€20.00	€600 000	€655 000	€55 000[‡]
Variable costs				
Manufacturing	7.50*	225 000	262 500	37 500[§]
Marketing	5.00	150 000	150 000	–[‖]
Total variable costs	12.50	375 000	412 500	37 500
Contribution margin	7.50	225 000	242 500	7 500
Fixed costs				
Manufacturing	4.50[†]	135 000	135 000	–[#]
Marketing	2.00	60 000	60 000	–[#]
Total fixed costs	6.50	195 000	195 000	–
Operating profit	€1.00	€30 000	€47 500	€17 500

* Variable manufacturing cost = direct materials, €6 + direct manufacturing labour, €0.50 + manufacturing overhead, €1 = €7.50.
† Fixed manufacturing costs = direct manufacturing labour, €1.50 + manufacturing overhead, €3 = €4.50.
‡ 5000 × €11.00 = €55 000.
§ 5000 × €7.50 = €37 500.
‖ No variable marketing costs would be incurred for the 5000-unit one-off special order.
Fixed manufacturing costs and fixed marketing costs are also unaffected by the special order.

could produce only 32 000 towels. This extra shift would probably increase fixed manufacturing costs, thereby making any partial additional fixed manufacturing costs relevant for this decision.

The best way to avoid these problems is to require each item included in the analysis *both* (1) to be an expected future revenue or cost, and (2) to differ among the alternatives. Note also that unit-cost data mislead decision makers in two major ways: (a) when costs that are irrelevant to a particular decision are included in unit costs, and (b) when unit costs that are calculated at different output levels are used to choose among alternatives. Unitised fixed costs are often erroneously interpreted as if they behave like unit variable costs. Generally, use total costs rather than unit costs in relevant-cost analysis.

Outsourcing and make-or-buy decisions

We now consider the strategic decision of whether a company should make a part or buy it from a supplier. We again assume idle capacity.

Outsourcing and idle facilities

Outsourcing is the process of purchasing goods and services from outside vendors rather than producing the same goods or providing the same services within the organisation, which is called **insourcing**. Outsourcing is an increasingly common practice though it has a long history. As Kim (2018) explains in relation to the UK, for well over a century, an increase of legal and accounting jobs being outsourced has been in evidence. During the 1850s, the common law system required business cases to be settled by qualified specialists who were familiar with settling similar

cases. As a consequence, private law offices emerged across the country. The greater the amount of services they provided, the broader their consulting routines became and they ultimately turned into the law outsourcing firms. The Big Four accountancy firms rose in a similar manner. Over time PwC (PricewaterhouseCoopers), Deloitte, Ernst & Young and KPMG, outsourced their legal work with accounting audits becoming common and becoming the focus of their business but evolving into the provision of a variety of professional business services. Today, firms like Nike, IBM, Coca-Cola and LinkedIn use service suppliers for sales, marketing, system integration, and ongoing customer support. Hallmark UK, the greetings card manufacturer, outsources much of its card production to the South East Asia. Likewise, Honda relies on outside vendors as outsourcers to supply some component parts but chooses to manufacture other parts internally (insourcing). Foxconn, the Taiwanese electronics manufacturer, acts as an outsourcee for Apple Inc. and Amazon.com, and Toyota relies on outside suppliers to supply some parts and components but chooses to manufacture other parts internally. The BBC likewise outsources many of its accounting-based activities, as does British Airways. Similarly, WhatsApp which was founded by two former Yahoo! employees, Brian Acton and Jan Koum, and acquired by Meta (previously Facebook) for over $19 billion, outsourced much of its core development to a Russian contractor. This proved useful as the company had very little starting capital – namely a 'seed round' of $250 000 (see Bhimani 2022). Following the invasion of Ukraine, companies like Meta, Microsoft and Spotify reduced or entirely stopped trading with Russian enterprises and consumers. In making decisions about outsourcing and insourcing, cost is usually a major factor for any company as discussed in the Concepts in action box below. But qualitative factors are equally important and often take precedence.

Concepts in action

Costs, outsourcing and politics

Prior to 1980, outsourcing of public services to the private sector in the UK was a foreign idea. Local authorities directly employed workers to collect rubbish and build roads. But in 1980, Margaret Thatcher changed that with privatisation policies, putting work out to tender. By 2019–2020, outsourcing amounted to about half of public spending (£233 billion) (Sass and Davies, 2020).

The collapse of Carillion, a British multinational facilities management and construction services company and the government's biggest contractor, is considered a harbinger to the end of the privatisation era. It went into liquidation on 15 January 2018 with debts of up to £7 billion, making it the most dramatic insolvency case in the UK. Prior to its liquidation, the company, as do many other private tenderers, signed up for contracts committing to provide various public services, from hospital-building to school-meals-supplying, at questionably low costs. Private providers in turn tried to reduce their workers' pay, holiday and sickness entitlements. This has fuelled dissatisfaction and thousands of workers have transferred into the public sector. A decade of austerity and a change in political mood has prompted councils to cut their payment to private providers as they realised they could provide many services more cheaply and effectively. The opposition party Labour's then leader, Jeremy Corbyn, called for an end to the policy of extreme outsourcing by public-sector organisations, claiming that this has 'fleeced the public of billions of pounds' and 'wreaked havoc' as it is often, according to him, 'the same companies that have gone from service to service, creaming off profits and failing to deliver the quality of service our people deserve'.

The trend to reduced costs through outsourcing is clearest in IT and technology-intensive sectors where human resources and payroll functions have declined in absolute terms in the past decade. Politics are at the heart of many decisions. However, consider Infosys which was founded in 1981, providing business consulting, information technology and outsourcing services. The Indian tech giant halted its operations in Russia in April 2022 following accusations that co-founder NR Narayan Murthy's son-in-law, the UK's Prime Minister Rishi Sunak, has profited from the Putin regime. The company stated that it was 'in the process of urgently closing down its Russian operation' and 'relocating staff to other countries'. While the economics matter, politics are at the heart of many decisions and the two are often intertwined.

Sources: Parker, G. and Tetlow, G. (2017) 'Fall of Carillion should herald end of outsourcing, says Corbyn', *Financial Times*, 17 January; Plimmer, G. (2018) and 'How outsourcing fell out of fashion in the UK', *Financial Times*, 9 February (www.ft.com/content/983c4598-0d88-11e8-839d-41ca06376bf2); *Arab News* (2022), 'Indian tech giant Infosys closes down operations in Russia over UK FinMin accusations', 3 April (https://arab.news/zhre7); Sass, T. and Davies, N. (2020) 'Outsourcing and privatisation', Institute for Government (https://www.instituteforgovernment.org.uk/explainers/outsourcing-and-privatisation)

Decisions about whether a producer of goods or services will insource or outsource are also called **make-or-buy decisions.** Often qualitative factors dictate management's make-or-buy decision.

In the Brumaire SA example described here, assume that financial factors predominate in the make-or-buy decision. The question we address is: What financial factors are relevant?

Brumaire SA manufactures thermostats for home and industrial use. Thermostats consist of relays, switches and valves. Brumaire makes its own switches. Columns 1 and 2 of Exhibit 10.5 report the current costs for its heavy-duty switch (HDS) based on an analysis of its various manufacturing activities.

Materials handling and set-up activities occur each time a batch of HDS is made. Brumaire produces the 10 000 units of HDS in 25 batches of 400 units each. The cost driver is the number of batches. Total materials handling and set-up consist of fixed costs of €5000 plus variable costs of €500 per batch, amounting to €5000 + 25 × €500 = €17 500. Brumaire only commences production after it receives a firm customer order. Brumaire's customers are pressuring the company to supply thermostats in smaller batch sizes. Brumaire anticipates that next year, the 10 000 units of HDS will be manufactured in 50 batches of 200 units each. Through continuous improvement, Brumaire expects to reduce variable costs per batch for materials handling and set-up costs to €300 per batch. No other changes in fixed costs or unit variable costs are anticipated.

Another manufacturer offers to sell Brumaire 10 000 units of HDS next year for €16 per unit on whatever delivery schedule Brumaire wants. Should Brumaire make or buy the part?

Columns 3 and 4 of Exhibit 10.5 indicate the expected total costs and the expected per unit cost of producing 10 000 units of HDS next year. Direct materials, direct manufacturing labour, and variable manufacturing overhead costs that vary with units produced are not expected to change since Brumaire plans to continue to produce 10 000 units next year at the same variable costs per unit as this year. The costs of materials handling, and set-ups are expected to increase even though there is no expected change in the total production quantity. Why? Because these costs vary with the number of batches started, not the quantity of production. Expected total materials handling and set-up costs = €5000 + 50 batches × the cost per batch of €300 = €5000 + €15 000 = €20 000. Brumaire expects fixed overhead costs to remain the

Exhibit 10.5 Financial data for HDS manufacturing at Brumaire SA

	Total current costs of producing 10 000 units (1)	Current cost per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 10 000	Expected total costs of producing 10 000 units next year (3)	Expected cost per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 10 000
Direct materials	€80 000	€8.00	€80 000	€8
Direct manufacturing labour	10 000	1.00	10 000	1
Variable manufacturing overhead costs for power and utilities	40 000	4.00	40 000	4
Mixed overhead costs of materials handling and set-ups	17 500	1.75	20 000	2
Fixed overhead costs of plant depreciation, insurance and administration	30 000	3.00	30 000	3
Total manufacturing costs	€177 500	€17.75	€180 000	€18

same. The expected manufacturing cost per unit equals €18. At this cost, it seems that the company should buy HDS from the outside supplier because making the part appears to be more costly than the €16 per unit to buy it. A make-or-buy decision, however, is rarely obvious. A key question for management is: What is the difference in relevant costs between the alternatives?

For the moment, suppose the capacity now used to make HDS will become idle if HDS is purchased and that the €30 000 of fixed manufacturing overhead will continue to be incurred next year, regardless of the decision made. Assume that the €5000 in fixed clerical salaries to support set-up, receiving and purchasing will not be incurred if the manufacture of HDS is completely shut down. Further suppose that the €30 000 in plant depreciation, insurance and administration costs represents fixed manufacturing overhead that will not vary regardless of the decision made.

Exhibit 10.6 presents the relevant cost calculations. Brumaire saves €10 000 by making HDS rather than buying it from the outside supplier. Alternatively stated, purchasing HDS costs €160 000 but saves only €150 000 in manufacturing costs. Making HDS is thus the preferred alternative. Exhibit 10.6 excludes the €30 000 of plant depreciation, insurance and administration costs under both the make and the buy alternatives. Why? Because these costs are irrelevant; they do not differ between the two alternatives. Alternatively, the €30 000 could be included under both alternatives since the €30 000 will continue to be incurred whether HDS is bought or made. Exhibit 10.6 includes the €20 000 of materials handling and set-up costs under the make alternative but not under the buy alternative. Why? Because buying HDS and not having to manufacture it saves both the variable costs per batch and the avoidable fixed costs. The €20 000 of costs differ between the alternatives and hence are relevant to the make-or-buy decision.

In Exhibit 10.6, the incremental cost of making HDS is the additional cost of €150 000. Likewise, the incremental cost of buying HDS from an outside supplier is the additional cost of €160 000. The differential cost between making and buying HDS is €10 000. Note that, in practice, incremental and differential costs are often used interchangeably.

The figures in Exhibit 10.6 are valid only if the released facilities remain idle. If the component part is bought from the outside supplier, the released facilities can potentially be used for other, more profitable purposes. More generally, then, the choice in our example is not fundamentally whether to make or buy, it is how best to use available facilities.

Exhibit 10.6 Relevant (incremental) items for make-or-buy decision for HDS at Brumaire SA

	Total relevant costs		Per unit relevant costs	
Relevant items	**Make**	**Buy**	**Make**	**Buy**
Outside purchase of parts		€160 000		€16
Direct materials	€80 000		€8	
Direct manufacturing labour	10 000		1	
Variable manufacturing overhead and set-up overhead*	40 000		4	
Mixed materials handling	20 000		2	
Total relevant costs	€150 000	€160 000	€15	€16
Difference in favour of making HDS		€10 000		€1

* Alternatively, the €30 000 of depreciation, plant insurance and plant administration costs could be included under both alternatives. These are, however, irrelevant to the decision.

The use of otherwise idle resources can often increase profitability. For example, consider the machine-repair plant of Beijing Engineering, where the decision was whether to drop or keep a product. The plant kept producing electric plaster-spraying machines even though the unit cost exceeded the selling price. Based on cost calculations, each sprayer cost 1230 yuan to make but sold for only 985 yuan, resulting in a loss of 245 yuan per sprayer. Still, to meet market demand, the plant continued to produce sprayers. Workers and machines would otherwise be idle, and the plant would still have to pay 759 yuan even if no sprayers were made. In the short run, the production of sprayers, even at a loss, actually helps cut the company's operating loss. Consider also, Tesla, which in 2017 had a total market value of $51 billion but showed a loss of $1.96 billion. Ford's market value was then $45 billion, reporting a profit of $7.6 billion and selling over 6.6 million cars in 2017 versus Tesla's 101,000. By the end of 2020, Tesla's profit was $5.5 billion and was valued at $658 billion. Ford was then valued at $20 billion losing $1.3 billion. Similarly, in early December 2021, Tesla's value was $1.09 trillion for profit of $3.3 billion in the first quarter of 2022. Tesla was worth more at the time than every other car brand in the top 10 (Fallah, 2022). One reason for the difference in these companies' market worth is that Tesla's valuation reflects the expectation that clean energy will replace fossil fuels and the battery market will grow exponentially. Tesla will convert the market from coal and petroleum and its Model S is expected to be produced in high volumes once production bottlenecks are resolved. With both the Tesla and Beijing Engineering illustrations there is also the notion that fixed costs can be high and lead to losses but they have to be incurred to enable scale. Once over a critical production point, unit costs go down such that total unit costs fall below selling prices and profits follow. Depending on future expectations, sustaining losses for a time can be justified if it is thought that profitability will follow.

Opportunity costs, outsourcing and capacity constraints

Reconsider the Brumaire SA example where we assumed that the capacity currently used to make HDS became idle if the parts were purchased. Suppose instead that Brumaire has alternative uses for the extra capacity. The best available alternative is for Brumaire to use the capacity to produce 5000 units each year of a regular switch (RS) that Ventôse SA wants. Charlotte de Calonne, the accountant at Brumaire, estimates the following future revenues and future costs if RS is manufactured and sold:

Expected additional future revenues		€80 000
Expected additional future costs		
Direct materials	€30 000	
Direct manufacturing labour	5 000	
Variable overhead (power, utilities)	15 000	
Materials handling and set-up overheads	5 000	
Total expected additional future costs		55 000
Expected additional operating profit		€25 000

Since Brumaire cannot make both HDS and RS, the three alternatives available to management are as follows:

1. Make HDS and do not make RS for Ventôse.
2. Buy HDS and do not make RS for Ventôse.
3. Buy HDS and use excess capacity to make and sell RS to Ventôse.

Exhibit 10.7, Panel A, summarises the 'total-alternatives' approach – the incremental expected future costs and expected future revenues for *all* alternatives. Buying HDS and using the excess capacity to make RS and sell it to Ventôse is the preferred alternative. The incremental costs

Exhibit 10.7 Total-alternatives approach and opportunity-costs approach to make-or-buy decisions for Brumaire

Panel A: Total-alternatives approach to make-or-buy decisions

	Choices for Brumaire		
Relevant items	**Make HDS and do not make RS**	**Buy HDS and do not make RS**	**Buy HDS and make RS**
Total incremental costs of making/buying HDS (from Exhibit 10.6)	€150 000	€160 000	€160 000
Excess of future revenues over future costs from RS	0	0	(25 000)
Total relevant costs	€150 000	€160 000	€135 000

Panel B: Opportunity-costs approach to make-or-buy decisions

	Choices for Brumaire	
Relevant items	**Make HDS**	**Buy HDS**
Total incremental costs of making/buying HDS (from Exhibit 10.6)	€150 000	€160 000
Opportunity cost: Profit contribution forgone because capacity cannot be used to make RS, the next-best alternative	25 000	0
Total relevant costs	€175 000	€160 000
Difference in favour of buying HDS	€15 000	

of buying HDS from an outside supplier are more than the incremental costs of making HDS in-house (€160 000 to buy versus €150 000 to make). But the capacity freed up by buying HDS from the outside supplier enables Brumaire to gain €25 000 in operating profit (expected additional future revenues of €80 000 minus expected additional future costs of €55 000) by making RS and selling to Ventôse. The total relevant costs of buying HDS (and making and selling RS) are €160 000 − €25 000 = €135 000.

Deciding to use a resource in a particular way causes a manager to give up the opportunity to use the resource in alternative ways. The lost opportunity is a cost that the manager must take into account when making a decision. **Opportunity cost** is the contribution to income that is forgone (rejected) by not using a limited resource in its next-best alternative use.

Exhibit 10.7, Panel B, displays the opportunity-costs approach for analysing the alternatives faced by Brumaire. Management focuses on the two alternatives before it: whether to make or buy HDS. It does not explicitly include RS in the analysis. Focus first on the make HDS column and ask what are all the costs of choosing this alternative? Certainly, Brumaire incurs €150 000 of incremental costs to make HDS. But is this the entire cost? No, because by using limited manufacturing resources to make HDS, Brumaire gives up the opportunity to earn €25 000 from not using these resources to make RS. Therefore, the relevant costs of making HDS are the incremental costs of €150 000 plus the opportunity cost of €25 000. Next consider the buy alternative. The incremental costs are €160 000. The opportunity cost is zero because choosing this alternative does not require the use of a limited resource – Brumaire's manufacturing capacity is still available to make and sell RS. Panel B leads management to the same conclusion as Panel A does – buying HDS is the preferred alternative by an amount of €15 000.

Panels A and B of Exhibit 10.7 describe two consistent approaches to decision making with capacity constraints. The total-alternatives approach in Panel A includes only incremental costs and benefits and no opportunity costs. Why? Because the incremental benefit from making RS when HDS is bought is explicitly considered under the alternatives. Panel B does not explicitly consider the incremental benefits from selling RS. Instead, it factors in the forgone benefit as a cost of the make alternative. Panel B highlights the idea that when capacity is constrained, relevant costs equal the incremental costs plus the opportunity cost.

Opportunity costs are seldom incorporated into formal financial accounting reports because these costs do not entail cash receipts or disbursements. Accountants usually confine their systematic recording to costs that require cash disbursements currently or in the near future. Historical record keeping is limited to alternatives selected rather than those rejected, because once rejected, there are no transactions to record. For example, if Brumaire makes HDS, it would not make RS, and it would not record any accounting entries for RS. Yet the opportunity cost of making HDS, which equals the profit contribution that Brumaire forgoes by not making RS, is a crucial input into the make-versus-buy decision. Consider again Exhibit 10.7, Panel B. On the basis of incremental costs alone, the costs systematically recorded in the accounting system, it is less costly for Brumaire to make rather than buy HDS. Recognising the opportunity cost of €25 000 leads to a different conclusion. It is preferable to buy HDS.

Suppose Brumaire has sufficient excess capacity to make RS (and indeed any other part) even if it makes HDS. Under this assumption, the opportunity cost of making HDS is zero. Why? Because Brumaire gives up nothing even if it chooses to manufacture HDS. It follows from Panel B (substituting opportunity costs equal to zero) that, under these conditions, Brumaire would prefer to make HDS.

Our analysis emphasises purely quantitative considerations. The final decision, however, should consider qualitative factors as well. For example, before deciding to buy HDS from an outside supplier, Brumaire management will consider such qualitative factors as the supplier's reputation for quality and the supplier's dependability for on-time delivery.

Carrying costs of stock

The notion of opportunity cost can also be illustrated for a direct-materials purchase-order decision. Suppose Nøkleby, AS, has enough cash to pay for whatever quantity of direct materials it buys.

Annual estimated direct-materials requirements for the year	120 000 kg
Cost per kg for purchase orders below 120 000 kg	€10.00
Cost per kg for purchase orders equal to or greater than 120 000 kg; €10.00 minus 2% discount	€9.80
Alternatives under consideration:	
A. Buy 120 000 kg at start of year	
B. Buy 10 000 kg per month	
Average investment in stock:	
A. (120 000 kg × €9.80) ÷ 2*	€588 000
B. (10 000 kg × €10.00) ÷ 2*	€50 000
Annual interest rate for investment in government bonds	6%

* The example assumes that the direct materials purchased will be used up uniformly at the rate of 10 000 kg per month. If direct materials are purchased at the start of the year (month), the average investment in stock during the year is the cost of the stock at the beginning of the year (month) plus the cost of stock at the end of the year (month) divided by 2.

The following table presents the two alternatives.

	Alternative A: Purchase 120 000 kg at beginning of year (1)	Alternative B: Purchase 10 000 kg at beginning of each month (2)	Difference (3) = (1) − (2)
Annual purchase (incremental) costs (120 000 × €9.80: 120 000 × €10)	€1 176 000	€1 200 000	€(24 000)
Annual interest income that could be earned if investment in stock were invested in government bonds (opportunity cost) (6% × €588 000; 6% × €50 000)	35 280	3 000	32 280
Relevant costs	€1 211 280	€1 203 000	€8 280

The opportunity cost of holding stock is the income forgone from not investing this money elsewhere. These opportunity costs would not be recorded in the accounting system because they are not incremental or outlay costs. Column 3 indicates that, consistent with the trends towards holding smaller stocks as in just-in-time systems (see Chapter 21), purchasing 10 000 kg per month is preferred to purchasing 120 000 kg at the beginning of the year because the lower opportunity cost of holding smaller stock exceeds the higher purchase cost. If other incremental benefits of holding lower stock such as lower insurance, materials handling, storage, obsolescence and breakage costs were considered, alternative B would be preferred even more.

Concepts in action

Outsourcing versus automation at Nike

There are six major footwear manufacturers across the world, namely Nike, Adidas, Reebok, Fila, New Balance and Converse. In terms of market share, Nike has 47% share of the market, with Reebok coming second at 16%. Nike does not have manufacturing facilities but instead it has been a pioneer in outsourcing production to the developing world with contractors in the Philippines, Vietnam, China, Indonesia and Taiwan all in all across 42 countries. For all the Nike group's products, its contracted factories employ over 1.1 million workers. The company's employees maintain stringent quality checks on these factories and Nike reaps considerable cost savings in the process. Their sales revenues for the year ending 28 February 2021 were $44.5 billion and operating income of $6.9 billion.

Nike follows an integrated two-step process for its shoe manufacturing. All the Nike vendors are given various inputs at all stages of production. This results in the end product being the same, no matter in which country or factory it is produced.

As Fashinza reports, the first step in the manufacture of Nike footwear entails sourcing the raw materials required for the production. These come from different parts of the world and shipped to factories worldwide. Nike vendors work with these raw materials solely for the company ensuring high quality standards are maintained. The raw material includes cotton, leather, rubber, recycled polyester, and PVC as well as PVA foam, mesh fabric and lightweight plastic. The next step then is the actual production of the footwear.

Why does Nike outsource to over 530 factories mostly in Asia? This is because of the low cost of wages and the ability to produce high-quality products for a fraction of the cost that apply in more economically developed countries, like of that in North America. A firm can maximise its profit margins using this strategy. Nike's profits exceed 44% on its products but would fall to as low as 5% if manufacturing took place say in North America. Nike's running shoes cost around £3.50 to manufacture thereby leaving a huge profit margin for the company even after incurring operating expenses tied to shipping, packaging, marketing, and corporate expenses. The company was accused of using 'sweatshops' paying very low wages until about 2010 but has since reshaped its working practices that are now seen to be much more equitable. Nike's website, under *Pilot Projects for Compensation.* states: 'We know that compensation systems that reward performance and attract talent will benefit all stakeholders. We are now collaborating

internally, with our leading suppliers, and with external experts to explore the next steps on scaling the learnings from this research pilot' (Pino, 2020).

Source: Gallimore, D. (2021) OA, 14 October (https://www.outsourceaccelerator.com/articles/nikes-approach-to-outsourcing/); Pino, G. (2020) 'Nike products are manufactured in over 41 countries', *Sourci*, 22 June (https://sourci.com.au/blog/nike-products-are-manufactured-in-over-41-countries); Fashinza (2022) 'Who manufactures Nikes?' (https://fashinza.com/textile/fashion-industry/who-manufactures-nikes/).

Product-mix decisions under capacity constraints

Companies with capacity constraints, such as Brumaire, must also often decide which products to make and in what quantities. When a multiple-product plant operates at full capacity, managers must often make decisions regarding which products to emphasise. These decisions frequently have a short-run focus. For example, BMW must continually adapt the mix of its different models of cars to short-run fluctuations in materials costs, selling prices and demand. Throughout this section, we assume that as short-run changes in product mix occur, the only costs that change are those that are variable with respect to the number of units produced (and sold).

Analysis of individual product contribution margins provides insight into the product mix that maximises operating profit. Consider Tiilikainen, a company that manufactures engines for a broad range of commercial and consumer products. At its Helsinki plant, it assembles two engines: a snowmobile engine and a boat engine. Information on these products is as follows:

	Snowmobile engine	Boat engine
Selling price	€800	€1000
Variable costs per unit	560	625
Contribution margin per unit	€240	€375
Contribution margin ratio	30%	37.5%

At first glance, boat engines appear more profitable than snowmobile engines. The product to be emphasised, however, is not necessarily the product with the higher individual contribution margin per unit or contribution margin percentage. Rather, managers should aim for the *highest contribution margin per unit of the constraining factor* – that is, the scarce, limiting or critical factor. The constraining factor restricts or limits the production or sale of a given product. (See also Chapter 20 on the theory of constraints.)

Assume that only 600 machine-hours are available daily for assembling engines. Additional capacity cannot be obtained in the short run. Tiilikainen can sell as many engines as it produces. The constraining factor, then, is machine-hours. It takes two machine-hours to produce one snowmobile engine and five machine-hours to produce one boat engine.

	Snowmobile engine	Boat engine
Contribution margin per engine	€240	€375
Machine-hours required to produce one engine	2 machine-hours	5 machine-hours
Contribution margin per machine-hour (240 ÷ 2; 375 ÷ 5)	€120	€75
Total contribution margin for 600 machine-hours (€120 × 600; €75 × 600)	€72 000	€45 000

Producing snowmobile engines contributes more margin per machine-hour, which is the constraining factor in this example. Therefore, choosing to emphasise snowmobile engines is the correct decision. Other constraints in manufacturing settings can be the availability of direct materials, components or skilled labour, as well as financial and sales considerations. In a retail department store, the constraining factor may be linear metres of display space. The greatest possible contribution margin per unit of the constraining factor yields the maximum operating profit.

Concepts in action — Slashing cost at LEGO

For decades, Denmark-based LEGO Group has delighted children of all ages with its sets of construction toys. It is one of the largest toymaker in the world. LEGO is controlled by the Kirk Kristiansen family, descendants of founder Ole Kirk Christiansen, a master carpenter who made the first LEGO toy – a wooden duck. Kjeld Kirk Kristiansen, grandson of Ole, is Chairman of Kirkbi, the family holding company that owns 75% of LEGO. This has made him Denmark's richest person. In the first half of 2017, LEGO saw a 5% decline in revenues. No sales drop occurred in the prior ten years. Jorgen Vig Knudstorp, Chairman and former CEO of LEGO Group, then announced a 'one-off, big move' where 1400 positions would go within six months. The company did not think that the landscape of retail was the key problem, but rather the business as a whole needed to transform: 'The way we do business, the way we do our marketing, the way we do our market management, but also how we run the whole administration of the company unfortunately has become too complicated as we've grown the company massively over the past 12 to 13 years'. Over the course of 2017, sales continued to decline – overall by 8% from the prior year and profits dropped by 17%. The 85-year-old company was 'on the brink of collapse and foreign venture capitalists were circling ready to pounce' according to Neate (2018). The firm's new CEO, Niels Christiansen, said he could not see a 'quick fix' to the problem and decided to focus on 'slashing costs and overhauling the company's bloated structure.'

When a firm decides to engage in a major business re-organisation, employees are often fired. This may involve finding ways to reduce the cost of labour as well as to enable altered processes and structures and deal with perceived inefficiencies which have set in. A new CEO taking over a company whose sales and profits are in decline, such as Niels Christiansen, will often require detailed cost information before deciding to implement a new strategy. Extreme cost cutting and restructuring often go hand in hand. In December 2021, the Lego group committed to a $1 billion investment in Vietnam. The intention was to build a carbon neutral factory by 2024 enabling the company to expand its global supply chain network with factories located closer to its major growing markets at low labour costs and reduced expenses tied to long distance shipping.

Source: Neate, R. (2018) 'LEGO reports first sales fall in 13 years, saying "there is no quick fix"', *The Guardian*, 6 March (www.theguardian.com/lifeandstyle/2018/mar/06/lego-sales-fall-growth-job-cuts); Lego (2021) 'Group announces plans to build new factory in Vietnam to support long-term growth' (https://www.lego.com/en-us/aboutus/news/2021/december/new-factory-in-vietnam)

As you can imagine, in many cases a manufacturer or retailer must meet the challenge of trying to maximise total operating profit for a variety of products, each with more than one constraining factor. The problem of formulating the most profitable production schedules and the most profitable product mix is essentially that of maximising the total contribution margin in the face of many constraints. Optimisation techniques, such as the linear-programming technique discussed in the appendix to this chapter, help solve these complicated problems.

Customer profitability and relevant costs

In addition to making choices among products, companies must often decide whether they should add some customers and drop others. This section illustrates relevant-revenue and relevant-cost analysis when different cost drivers are identified for different activities. The cost object in our example is customers. The analysis focuses on customer profitability at Imbro-Glio, the Naples sales office of Papa-Geno Srl, a wholesaler of specialised furniture.

Imbro-Glio supplies furniture to three local retailers, Lucrezia, Borgia and Rigo-Letto. Exhibit 10.8 presents representative revenues and costs of Imbro-Glio by customers for the coming year. Additional information on Imbro-Glio's costs for different activities at various levels of the cost hierarchy is as follows:

1. Materials handling labour costs vary with the number of units of furniture shipped to customers.
2. Different areas of the warehouse stock furniture for different customers. Materials handling equipment in an area and depreciation costs on the equipment are identified with individual

Exhibit 10.8 Analysis of Imbro-Glio customer profits

	Lucrezia	Borgia	Rigo-Letto	Total
Sales	€500 000	€300 000	€400 000	€1 200 000
Cost of goods sold	370 000	220 000	330 000	920 000
Materials handling labour	41 000	18 000	33 000	92 000
Materials handling equipment cost written off as depreciation	10 000	6 000	8 000	24 000
Rent	14 000	8 000	14 000	36 000
Marketing support	11 000	9 000	10 000	30 000
Purchase orders and delivery processing	13 000	7 000	12 000	32 000
General administration	20 000	12 000	16 000	48 000
Total operating costs	479 000	280 000	423 000	1 182 000
Operating profit	€21 000	€20 000	€(23 000)	€18 000

customer accounts. Any equipment not used remains idle. The equipment has a one-year useful life and zero disposal price.

3 Imbro-Glio allocates rent to each customer account on the basis of the amount of warehouse space occupied by the products to be shipped to that customer.

4 Marketing costs vary with the number of sales visits made to customers.

5 Purchase-order costs vary with the number of purchase orders received; delivery-processing costs vary with the number of shipments made.

6 Imbro-Glio allocates fixed general administration costs to customers on the basis of euro sales made to each customer.

Relevant-cost analysis of dropping a customer

Exhibit 10.8 indicates a loss of €23 000 on sales to Rigo-Letto. Imbro-Glio's manager believes this loss occurred because Rigo-Letto places many low-volume orders with Imbro-Glio, resulting in high purchase-order and delivery processing, and materials handling and marketing activity. Imbro-Glio is considering several possible actions with respect to the Rigo-Letto account – reducing its own costs of supporting Rigo-Letto by becoming more efficient, cutting back on some of the services it offers Rigo-Letto, charging Rigo-Letto higher prices, or dropping the Rigo-Letto account. The following analysis focuses on the operating profit effect of dropping the Rigo-Letto account. Exhibit 10.8 is essentially a customer profitability analysis (this management accounting approach is further discussed in Chapter 12).

The key question is: What are the relevant costs and relevant revenues? The following information about the effect of reducing various activities related to the Rigo-Letto account is available.

1 Dropping the Rigo-Letto account will save cost of goods sold, materials handling labour, marketing support, purchase-order and delivery-processing costs incurred on the Rigo-Letto account.

2 Dropping the Rigo-Letto account will mean that the warehouse space currently occupied by products for Rigo-Letto and the materials handling equipment used to move them will become idle.

3 Dropping the Rigo-Letto account will have no effect on fixed general administration costs.

Exhibit 10.9 presents the relevant-revenue and relevant-cost calculations. Imbro-Glio's operating profit will be €15 000 lower if it drops the Rigo-Letto account, so Imbro-Glio decides to keep the Rigo-Letto account. The last column in Exhibit 10.9 shows that the cost savings from dropping the Rigo-Letto account, €385 000, are not enough to offset the loss of €400 000 in revenue. The key reason is that depreciation, rent and general administration costs will not decrease if the Rigo-Letto account is dropped.

Exhibit 10.9 Relevant-cost analysis for Imbro-Glio dropping the Rigo-Letto account

	Amount of total revenues and total costs		Difference: incremental (loss in revenue) and savings in costs from dropping Rigo-Letto account
	Keep Rigo-Letto account	Drop Rigo-Letto account	
Sales	€1 200 000	€800 000	€(400 000)
Cost of goods sold	920 000	590 000	330 000
Materials handling labour	92 000	59 000	33 000
Materials handling equipment cost written off as depreciation	24 000	24 000	0
Rent	36 000	36 000	0
Marketing support	30 000	20 000	10 000
Purchase orders and delivery processing	32 000	20 000	12 000
General administration	48 000	48 000	0
Total operating costs	1 182 000	797 000	385 000
Operating profit (loss)	€18 000	€3 000	€(15 000)

Now suppose that if Imbro-Glio drops the Rigo-Letto account, it could lease the extra warehouse space to Nessun-Dorma, which has offered €20 000 per year for it. Then the €20 000 that Imbro-Glio would receive would be the opportunity cost of continuing to use the warehouse to service Rigo-Letto. Imbro-Glio would gain €5000 by dropping the Rigo-Letto account (€20 000 from lease revenue minus lost operating profit of €15 000). Before reaching a final decision, however, Imbro-Glio must examine whether Rigo-Letto can be made more profitable so that supplying products to Rigo-Letto earns more than the €20 000 from leasing to Nessun-Dorma. Imbro-Glio must also consider qualitative factors such as the effect of the decision on Imbro-Glio's reputation for developing stable, long-run business relationships.

Relevant-cost analysis of adding a customer

Suppose that in addition to Lucrezia, Borgia and Rigo-Letto, Imbro-Glio is evaluating the profitability of adding a fourth customer, Bocca-Negra. Imbro-Glio is already paying rent of €36 000 for the warehouse and is incurring general administration costs of €48 000. These costs will not change if Bocca-Negra is added as a customer. Bocca-Negra is a customer with a profile much like Rigo-Letto's. Suppose Imbro-Glio predicts other revenues and costs of doing business with Bocca-Negra to be the same as those described under the Rigo-Letto column of Exhibit 10.8. Should Imbro-Glio add Bocca-Negra as a customer? Exhibit 10.10 shows incremental revenues exceed incremental costs by €7000. Imbro-Glio would prefer to add Bocca-Negra as a customer. Note that both volume and non-volume factors drive costs. This is the principle underlying activity-based costing which is further discussed in the next chapter. The key point is that the cost of acquiring new equipment to support the Bocca-Negra order (written off as depreciation of €8000 in Exhibit 10.10) is included as a relevant cost. Why? Because this cost can be avoided if Imbro-Glio decides not to do business with Bocca-Negra. Note the critical distinction here. Depreciation cost is irrelevant in deciding whether to drop Rigo-Letto as a customer (because it is a past cost), but the purchase cost of the new equipment that will then be written off as depreciation in the future is relevant in deciding whether to add Bocca-Negra as a new customer.

Exhibit 10.10 Relevant-cost analysis for adding the Bocca-Negra account

	Amount of total revenues and total costs		Difference: incremental revenue and (incremental costs) from adding Bocca-Negro account
	Do not add Bocca-Negra account	Add Bocca- Negra account	
Sales	€1 200 000	€1 600 000	€400 000
Cost of goods sold (variable)	920 000	1 250 000	(330 000)
Materials handling labour	92 000	125 000	(33 000)
Materials handling equipment cost written off as depreciation	24 000	32 000	(8 000)
Rent	36 000	36 000	0
Marketing support	30 000	40 000	(10 000)
Purchase orders and delivery processing	32 000	44 000	(12 000)
General administration	48 000	48 000	0
Total operating costs	1 182 000	1 575 000	393 000
Operating profit	€18 000	€25 000	€7 000

Irrelevance of past costs and equipment-replacement decisions

The illustrations in this chapter have shown that expected future costs that do not differ among alternatives are irrelevant. Now we return to the idea that all past costs are irrelevant.

Consider an example of equipment replacement. The irrelevant cost illustrated here is the **book value** (original cost minus total depreciation) of the existing equipment. Assume that Bjørnstjerne is considering replacing a metal-cutting machine for kitchen parts with a more technically advanced model. The new machine has an automatic quality-testing capability and is more efficient than the old machine. The new machine, however, has a shorter life. Bjørnstjerne uses the straight-line depreciation method. Sales from kitchen parts (€1.1 million per year) will be unaffected by the replacement decision. Summary data on the existing machine and the replacement machine are as follows:

	Existing machine	Replacement machine
Original cost	€1 000 000	€600 000
Useful life in years	5 years	2 years
Current age in years	3 years	0 years
Useful life remaining in years	2 years	2 years
Total depreciation	€600 000	Not acquired yet
Book value	€400 000	Not acquired yet
Current disposal price (in cash)	€40 000	Not acquired yet
Terminal disposal price (in cash 2 years from now)	€0	€0
Annual operating costs (maintenance, energy, repairs, coolants, and so on)	€800 000	€460 000

To focus on the main concept of relevance, we ignore the time value of money in this illustration.

Exhibit 10.11 presents a cost comparison of the two machines.

Exhibit 10.11 Cost comparison: replacement of machinery, including relevant and irrelevant items for Bjørnstjerne

	Two years together		
	Keep	**Replace**	**Difference**
Sales	€2 200 000	€2 200 000	–
Operating costs			
Cash-operating costs	1 600 000	920 000	€680 000
Old machine book value			
Periodic write-off as depreciation or	400 000	–	–
Lump-sum write-off	–	400 000*	
Current disposal price of old machine	–	(40 000)*	40 000
New machine cost, written off periodically as depreciation	–	600 000	(600 000)
Total operating costs	2 000 000	1 880 000	120 000
Operating profit	€200 000	€320 000	€(120 000)

* In a formal income statement, these two items would be combined as 'loss on disposal of machine' of €360 000.

We can apply our definition of relevance to four important items in the equipment-replacement decision facing Bjørnstjerne:

1 *Book value of old machine*. Irrelevant, because it is a past (historical) cost. All past costs are 'down the drain'. Nothing can change what has already been spent or what has already happened.

2 *Current disposal price of old machine*. Relevant, because it is an expected future cash inflow that differs between alternatives.

3 *Gain or loss on disposal*. This is the algebraic difference between items 1 and 2. It is a meaningless combination blurring the distinction between the irrelevant book value and the relevant disposal price. Each item should be considered separately.

4 *Cost of new machine*. Relevant, because it is an expected future cash outflow that will differ between alternatives.

Exhibit 10.11 should clarify these four assertions. The difference column in Exhibit 10.11 shows that the book value of the old machine is not an element of difference between alternatives and could be completely ignored for decision-making purposes. No matter what the timing of the charge against revenue, the amount charged is still €400 000 regardless of the alternative chosen because it is a past (historical) cost (note that the advantage of replacing is €120 000 for the two years together). In contrast, the €600 000 cost of the new machine is relevant because it can be avoided by deciding not to replace.

Past costs that are unavoidable because they cannot be changed, no matter what action is taken, are sometimes described as **sunk costs**. In our example, old equipment has a book value of €400 000 and a current disposal price of €40 000. What are the sunk costs in this case? The entire €400 000 is sunk and down the drain because it represents an outlay made in the past that cannot be changed. Thus, past costs and sunk costs are synonyms.

Exhibit 10.12 concentrates on relevant items only. Note that the same answer (the €120 000 net difference) will be obtained even though the book value is completely omitted from the calculations. The only relevant items are the cash-operating costs, the disposal price of the old machine and the cost of the new machine (represented as depreciation in Exhibit 10.12).

Exhibit 10.12 Cost comparison: replacement of machinery, relevant items only for Bjørnstjerne

	Two years together		
	Keep	Replace	Difference
Cash-operating costs	€1 600 000	€920 000	€680 000
Current disposal price of old machine	–	(40 000)	40 000
New machine, written off periodically as depreciation	–	600 000	(600 000)
Total relevant costs	€1 600 000	€1 480 000	€120 000

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. The five steps which managers might undertake in a decision process are: (a) obtain information, (b) make predictions, (c) choose alternative courses of action, (d) implement decisions, and (e) evaluate performance.
2. To be relevant to a particular decision, a revenue or cost must meet two criteria: (a) it must be an expected future revenue or cost, and (b) it must differ among alternative courses of action.
3. The consequences of alternative actions can be quantitative and qualitative. Quantitative factors are outcomes that are measured in numerical terms. Some quantitative factors can be easily expressed in financial terms, others cannot. Qualitative factors, such as employee morale, organisational culture or political fallout cannot be measured in numerical terms. Due consideration must be given to both financial and non-financial factors in making decisions.
4. There are two common problems in relevant-cost analysis: (a) assuming all variable costs are relevant, and (b) assuming all fixed costs are irrelevant.
5. Opportunity cost is the maximum available contribution to income that is forgone (rejected) by not using a limited resource in its next-best alternative use. The idea of an opportunity cost arises when there are multiple uses for resources and some alternatives are not selected. Opportunity cost is often included in decision making because it represents the best alternative way in which an organisation may have used its resources had it not made the decision it did.
6. In choosing among multiple products when resource capacity is constrained, managers should emphasise the product that yields the highest contribution margin per unit of the constraining or limiting factor.
7. Expected future revenues and costs are the only revenues and costs relevant in any decision model. The book value of existing equipment in equipment-replacement decisions represents past (historical) cost and therefore is irrelevant.

Appendix

Linear programming

Linear programming (LP) is an optimisation technique used to maximise total contribution margin (the objective function), given multiple constraints. LP models typically assume that all costs can be classified as either variable or fixed with respect to a single driver (units of output). LP models also require certain other linear assumptions to hold. When these assumptions fail, other decision models should be considered.

Exhibit 10.13 Operating data for Tiilikainen

Product	Department capacity (per day) in product units: Assembly	Department capacity (per day) in product units: Testing	Selling price	Variable cost per unit	Contribution margin per unit
Only snowmobile engines	300	120	€800	€560	€240
Only boat engines	120	240	€1 000	€625	€375

Consider the Tiilikainen example described earlier in the chapter. Suppose that both the snowmobile and boat engines must be tested on a very expensive machine before they are shipped to customers. The available testing-machine time is limited. Production data are as follows:

Department	Available daily capacity in hours	Use of capacity in hours per unit of product: Snowmobile engine	Use of capacity in hours per unit of product: Boat engine	Daily maximum production in units: Snowmobile engine	Daily maximum production in units: Boat engine
Assembly	600 machine-hours	2.0	5.0	300*	120
Testing	120 testing-hours	1.0	0.5	120	240

* For example, 600 machine-hours ÷ 2.0 machine-hours per snowmobile engine = 300, the maximum number of snowmobile engines that the Assembly Department can make if it works exclusively on snowmobile engines.

Exhibit 10.13 summarises these and other relevant data. Note that snowmobile engines have a contribution margin of €240 and that boat engines have a contribution margin of €375. Material shortages for boat engines will limit production to 110 boat engines per day. How many engines of each type should be produced daily to maximise operating profit?

Steps in solving an LP problem

We use the data in Exhibit 10.13 to illustrate the three steps in solving an LP problem. Throughout this discussion, S equals the number of units of snowmobiles produced and B equals the number of units of boat engines produced.

Step 1: Determine the objective

The **objective function** of a linear program expresses the objective or goal to be maximised (for example, operating profit) or minimised (for example, operating costs). In our example, the objective is to find the combination of products that maximises total contribution margin in the short run. Fixed costs remain the same regardless of the product mix chosen and are therefore irrelevant. The linear function expressing the objective for the total contribution margin (TCM) is

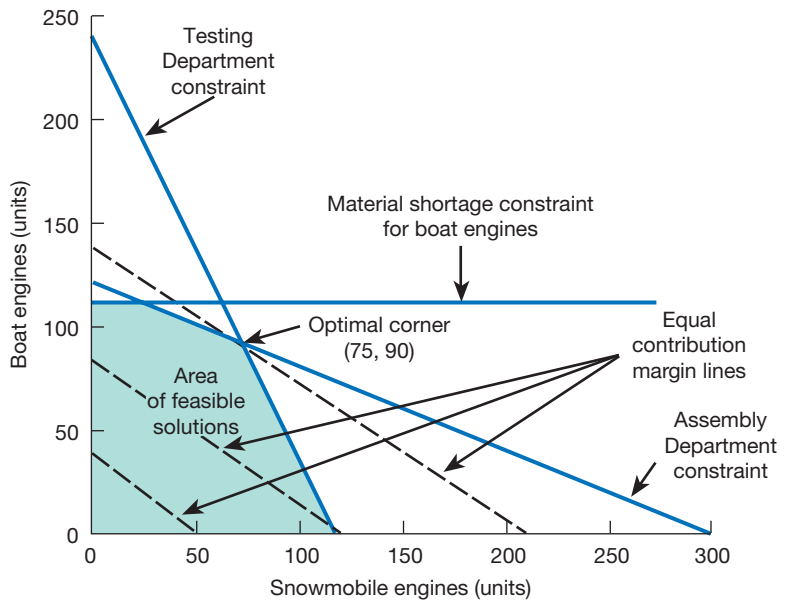
$$\text{TCM} = €240S + €375B$$

Step 2: Specify the constraints

A **constraint** is a mathematical inequality or equality that must be satisfied by the variables in a mathematical model. The following linear inequalities depict the relationships in our example:

Assembly Department constraint	$2S + 5B \leq 600$
Testing Department constraint	$1S + 0.5B \leq 120$
Material shortage constraint for boat engines	$B \leq 110$
Negative production is impossible	$S \geq 0$ and $B \geq 0$

Exhibit 10.14 Linear programming: graphic solution for Tiilikainen



The coefficients of the constraints are often called technical coefficients. For example, in the Assembly Department, the technical coefficient is 2 machine-hours for snowmobile engines and 5 machine-hours for boat engines.

The three solid lines on the graph in Exhibit 10.14 show the existing constraints for Assembly and Testing and the material shortage constraint. The feasible alternatives are those combinations of quantities of snowmobile engines and boat engines that satisfy all the constraining factors. The shaded 'area of feasible solutions' in Exhibit 10.14 shows the boundaries of those product combinations that are feasible, or technically possible.

As an example of how the lines are plotted in Exhibit 10.14, use equal signs instead of inequality signs and assume for the Assembly Department that $B = 0$; then $S = 300$ (600 machine-hours ÷ 2 machine-hours per snowmobile engine). Assume that $S = 0$; then $B = 120$ (600 machine-hours ÷ 5 machine-hours per boat engine). Connect those two points with a straight line.

Step 3: Calculate the optimal solution

We present two approaches for finding the optimal solution: the trial-and-error approach and the graphic approach. These approaches are easy to use in our example because there are only two variables in the objective function and a small number of constraints. An understanding of these two approaches provides insight into LP modelling. In most real-world LP applications, however, managers use computer software packages to calculate the optimal solution.

Although the trial-and-error and graphic approaches can be useful for two or possibly three variables, they are impractical when many variables exist. Standard computer software packages rely on the *simplex method*. The simplex method is an iterative step-by-step procedure for determining the optimal solution to an LP problem. It starts with a specific feasible solution and then tests it by substitution to see whether the result can be improved. These substitutions continue until no further improvement is possible and the optimal solution is obtained.

Trial-and-error approach The optimal solution can be found by trial and error, by working with coordinates of the corners of the area of feasible solutions. The approach is simple.

First, select any set of corner points and calculate the total contribution margin. Five corner points appear in Exhibit 10.14. It is helpful to use simultaneous equations to obtain the exact graph coordinates. To illustrate, the point ($S = 75$; $B = 90$) can be derived by solving the two pertinent constraint inequalities as simultaneous equations:

$$2S + 5B = 600 \quad (1)$$
$$1S + 0.5B = 120 \quad (2)$$

Multiplying (2) by 2, we get $2S + 1B = 240$ (3)

Subtracting (3) from (1): $4B = 360$

Therefore, $B = 360 \div 4 = 90$

Substituting for B in (2): $1S + 0.51902 = 120$

$$S = 120 - 45 = 75$$

Given $S = 75$ and $B = 90$,

$$\text{TCM} = €240(75) + €375(90) = €51\,750$$

Second, move from corner point to corner point, computing the total contribution margin at each corner point. The total contribution margin, at each corner point is as follows:

Trial	Corner point (S, B)	Snowmobile engines (S)	Boat engines (B)	Total contribution margin
1	(0, 0)	0	0	€240(0) + €375(0) = €0
2	(0, 110)	0	110	€240(0) + €375(110) = 41 250
3	(25, 110)	25	110	€240(25) + €375(110) = 47 250
4	(75, 90)	75	90	€240(75) + €375(90) = 51 750*
5	(120, 0)	120	0	€240(120) + €375(0) = 28 800

* Indicates the optimal solution.

The optimal product mix is the mix that yields the highest total contribution: 75 snowmobile engines and 90 boat engines.

Graphic approach Consider all possible combinations that will produce an equal total contribution margin of, say, €12 000. That is,

$$€240S + €375B = €12\,000$$

This set of €12 000 contribution margins is a straight dashed line in Exhibit 10.14 through ($S = 50$; $B = 0$) and ($S = 0$; $B = 32$). Other equal total contribution margins can be represented by lines parallel to this one. In Exhibit 10.14, we show three dashed lines. The equal total contribution margins increase as the lines get farther from the origin because lines drawn farther from the origin represent more sales of both snowmobile and boat engines.

The optimal line is the one farthest from the origin but still passing through a point in the area of feasible solutions. This line represents the highest contribution margin. The optimal solution is the point at the corner ($S = 75$; $B = 90$). This solution will become apparent if you put a ruler on the graph and move it outward from the origin and parallel with the €12 000 line. The idea is to move the ruler as far away from the origin as possible (that is, to increase the total contribution margin) without leaving the area of feasible solutions. In general, the optimal solution in a maximisation problem lies at the corner where the dashed line intersects an extreme point of the area of feasible solutions. Moving the ruler out any further puts it outside the feasible region.

Sensitivity analysis

What are the implications of uncertainty about the accounting or technical coefficients used in the LP model? Changes in coefficients affect the slope of the objective function (the equal contribution margin lines) or the area of feasible solutions. Consider how a change in the contribution margin of snowmobile engines from €240 to €300 per unit might affect the optimal solution. Assume the contribution margin for boat engines remains unchanged at €375 per unit. The revised objective function will be

$$\text{TCM} = €300S + €375B$$

Using the trial-and-error approach, calculate the total contribution margin for each of the five corner points described in the table above. The optimal solution is still ($S = 75$; $B = 90$). What if the contribution margin falls to €160? Again, the optimal solution remains the same ($S = 75$; $B = 90$). Big changes in the contribution margin per unit of snowmobile engines have no effect on the optimal solution in this case.

References and further reading

Bhimani, A. (2022) *Financial Management for Technology Start-ups* (London: Kogan Page)

Bhimani, A. and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (Oxford: CIMA/Elsevier, Chapter 4).

Fallah, A. (2022) 'The world's most valuable car companies', *The West Australian*, 13 April (https://thewest.com.au/lifestyle/motoring/the-worlds-most-valuable-car-companies-c-6342234).

Kim, M. (2018) 'The history of outsourcing: From carpenters to accountants', The Startup, 20 February (https://medium.com/swlh/the-history-of-outsourcing-65fb5cdb196e).

CHAPTER 10

Assessment material

Review questions

10.1 Outline the five-step sequence in a decision process.

10.2 Define relevant cost. Why are historical costs irrelevant?

10.3 'All future costs are relevant.' Do you agree? Why?

10.4 Distinguish between quantitative and qualitative factors in decision making.

10.5 'Variable costs are always relevant, and fixed costs are always irrelevant.' Do you agree? Why?

10.6 'A component part should be purchased whenever the purchase price is less than its total unit manufacturing cost.' Do you agree? Why?

10.7 Define opportunity cost.

10.8 'Cost written off as depreciation is always irrelevant.' Do you agree? Why?

10.9 'Managers will always choose the alternative that maximises operating profit or minimises costs in the decision model.' Do you agree? Why?

10.10 How might the optimal solution of a linear-programming problem be determined?

Exercises

Basic level

10.11 **Relevant costs, contribution margin, product emphasis** (20–25 minutes)

Monteagudo-Playa SA is a take-away food store at a popular beach resort. Consuelo Herreros, owner of Monteagudo-Playa, is deciding how much refrigerator space to devote to four different drinks. Pertinent data on these four drinks are as follows:

	Cola	Lemonade	Punch	Natural orange juice
Selling price per case	€108.00	€115.20	€158.40	€230.40
Variable costs per case	€81.00	€91.20	€120.60	€181.20
Cases sold per metre of shelf-space per day	25	24	4	5

Consuelo has a maximum front shelf-space of 12 metres to devote to the four drinks. She wants a minimum of 1 metre and a maximum of 6 metres of front shelf-space for each drink.

Required

1 What is the contribution margin per case of each type of drink?

2 A co-worker of Consuelo's recommends that she maximise the shelf-space devoted to those drinks with the highest contribution margin per case. Evaluate this recommendation.

3 What shelf-space allocation for the four drinks would you recommend for Monteagudo-Playa?

Intermediate level

10.12 Customer profitability, choosing customers (20–25 minutes)

Jours-Daim SA operates a printing press with a monthly capacity of 2000 machine-hours. Jours-Daim has two main customers, Harpes-à Gonds, SNC and Fourbe-Riz SA. Data on each customer for January follow:

	Harpesà-Gonds	Fourbe-Riz	Total
Revenues	€120 000	€80 000	€200 000
Variable costs	42 000	48 000	90 000
Fixed costs (allocated on the basis of revenues)	60 000	40 000	100 000
Total operating costs	102 000	88 000	190 000
Operating profit	€18 000	€(8 000)	€10 000
Machine-hours required	1500 hours	500 hours	2000 hours

Each of the following requirements refers only to the preceding data; there is *no connection* between the requirements.

Required

1 Should Jours-Daim drop the Fourbe-Riz business? If Jours-Daim drops the Fourbe-Riz business, its total fixed costs will decrease by 20%.

2 Fourbe-Riz indicates that it wants Jours-Daim to do an *additional* €80 000 worth of printing jobs during February. These jobs are identical to the existing business Jours-Daim did for Fourbe-Riz in January in terms of variable costs and machine-hours required. Jours-Daim anticipates that the business from Harpes-à Gonds in February would be the same as that in January. Jours-Daim can choose to accept as much of the Harpes-à Gonds and Fourbe-Riz business for February as it wants. Assume that total fixed costs for February will be the same as the fixed costs in January. What should Jours-Daim do? What will Jours-Daim's operating profit be in February?

10.13 Relevance of equipment costs (30–40 minutes)

Jääskinen Oy has just today paid for and installed a special machine for polishing cars at one of its several outlets. It is the first day of the company's fiscal year. The machine cost €20 000. Its annual operating costs total €15 000, exclusive of depreciation. The machine will have a four-year useful life and a zero terminal disposal price.

After the machine has been used for a day, a machine salesperson offers a different machine that promises to do the same job at a yearly operating cost of €9000, exclusive of depreciation. The new machine will cost €24 000 cash, installed. The 'old' machine is unique and can be sold outright for only €10 000, minus €2000 removal cost. The new machine, like the old one, will have a four-year useful life and zero terminal disposal price.

Sales, all in cash, will be €150 000 annually, and other cash costs will be €110 000 annually, regardless of this decision.

For simplicity, ignore income taxes, interest and present-value considerations.

Required

1 **a** Prepare a statement of cash receipts and disbursements for each of the four years under both alternatives. What is the cumulative difference in cash flow for the four years taken together?

b Prepare income statements for each of the four years under both alternatives. Assume straight-line depreciation. What is the cumulative difference in operating profit for the four years taken together?

c What are the irrelevant items in your presentations in requirements (a) and (b)? Why are they irrelevant?

2 Suppose the cost of the 'old' machine was €1 million rather than €20 000. Nevertheless, the old machine can be sold outright for only €10 000, minus €2000 removal cost. Would the net differences in requirements 1 and 2 change? Explain.

3 'To avoid a loss, we should keep the old machine.' What is the role of book value in decisions about replacement of machines?

*10.14 Contribution approach, relevant costs (30 minutes)

Air Calabria owns a single jet aircraft and operates between Cantazaro and Venice. Flights leave Cantazaro on Mondays and Thursdays and depart from Venice on Wednesdays and Saturdays. Air Calabria cannot offer any more flights between Cantazaro and Venice. Only tourist-class seats are available on its planes. An analyst has collected the following information:

Seating capacity per plane	360 passengers
Average number of passengers per flight	200 passengers
Flights per week	4 flights
Flights per year	208 flights
Average one-way fare	€500
Variable fuel costs	€14 000 per flight
Food and beverage service cost (no charge to passenger)	€20 per passenger
Commission to travel agents paid by Air Calabria (all tickets are booked by travel agents)	8% of fare
Fixed annual lease costs allocated to each flight	€53 000 per flight
Fixed ground services (maintenance, check in, baggage handling) cost allocated to each flight	€7000 per flight
Fixed flight crew salaries allocated to each flight	€4000 per flight

For simplicity, assume that fuel costs are unaffected by the actual number of passengers on a flight.

Required

1 What is the operating profit that Air Calabria makes on each one-way flight between Cantazaro and Venice?

2 The Market Research Department of Air Calabria indicates that lowering the average one-way fare to €480 will increase the average number of passengers per flight to 212. Should Air Calabria lower its fare?

3 Cima-Rosa, a tour operator, approaches Air Calabria on the possibility of chartering (renting out) its jet aircraft twice each month, first to take Cima-Rosa's tourists from Cantazaro to Venice and then to bring the tourists back from Venice to Cantazaro. If Air Calabria accepts Cima-Rosa's offer, Air Calabria will be able to offer only 184 (208 – 24) of its own flights each year. The terms of the charter are as follows: (a) For each one-way flight, Cima-Rosa will pay Air Calabria €75 000 to charter the plane and to use its flight crew and ground service staff; (b) Cima-Rosa will pay for fuel costs; and (c) Cima-Rosa will pay for all food costs. On purely financial considerations, should Air Calabria accept Cima-Rosa's offer? What other factors should Air Calabria consider in deciding whether or not to charter its plane to Cima-Rosa?

10.15 **Optimal production plan, computer manufacturer** (Chapter appendix) (30 minutes)

Fiordi-Ligi Srl assembles and sells two products: printers and desktop computers. Customers can purchase either (a) a computer, or (b) a computer plus a printer. The printers are not sold without the computer. The result is that the quantity of printers sold is equal to or less than the quantity of desktop computers sold. The contribution margins are €200 per printer and €100 per computer.

Each printer requires 6 hours assembly time on production line 1 and 10 hours assembly time on production line 2. Each computer requires 4 hours assembly time on production line 1 only. (Many of the components of each computer are preassembled by external suppliers.) Production line 1 has 24 hours of available time per day. Production line 2 has 20 hours of available time per day.

Let X represent units of printers and Y represent units of desktop computers. The production manager must decide on the optimal mix of printers and computers to manufacture.

Required

1 Express the production manager's problem in an LP format.
2 Which combination of printers and computers will maximise the operating profit of Fiordi-Ligi? Use both the trial-and-error and the graphic approaches.

10.16 **Optimal sales mix for a retailer, sensitivity analysis** (Chapter appendix) (30–40 minutes)

Vier-und-Zwanzig GmbH operates a chain of food stores open 24 hours a day. Each store has a standard 4000 square metres of floor space available for merchandise. Merchandise is grouped in two categories: grocery products and dairy products. Vier-und-Zwanzig requires each store to devote a minimum of 1000 square metres to grocery products and a minimum of 800 square metres to dairy products. Within these restrictions, each store manager can choose the mix of products to carry.

The manager of the Salzburg store estimates the following weekly contribution margins per square metre: grocery products, €100; dairy products, €30.

Required

1 Formulate the decision facing the store manager as an LP model. Use G to represent square metres of floor space for grocery products and D to represent square metres of floor space for dairy products.
2 Why might Vier-und-Zwanzig set minimum bounds on the floor space devoted to each line of products?
3 Compute the optimal mix of grocery products and dairy products for the Salzburg store.
4 Will the optimal mix determined in requirement 3 change if the contribution margins per square metre change to grocery products, €80, and dairy products, €50?

10.17 Relevant costing (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004) (40 minutes)

Ennerdale Ltd has been asked to quote a price for a one-off contract. The company's management accountant has asked for your advice on the relevant costs for the contract. The following information is available:

Materials

The contract requires 3000 kg of material K, which is a material used regularly by the company in other production. The company has 2000 kg of material K currently in stock which had been purchased last month for a total cost of £19 600. Since then the price per kilogram for material K has increased by 5%. The contract also requires 200 kg of material L. There are 250 kg of material L in stock which are not required for normal production. This material originally cost a total of £3125. If not used on this contract, the stock of material L would be sold for £11 per kg.

Labour

The contract requires 800 hours of skilled labour. Skilled labour is paid £9.50 per hour. There is a shortage of skilled labour and all the available skilled labour is fully employed in the company in the manufacture of product P. The following information relates to product P:

	£ per unit
Selling price	100
Less	
Skilled labour	38
Other variable costs	22
	(60)
	40

Required

1 Prepare calculations showing the total relevant costs for making a decision about the contract in respect of the following cost elements:
   a materials K and L; and
   b skilled labour.
2 Explain how you would decide which overhead costs would be relevant in the financial appraisal of the contract.

Advanced level

***10.18 Special-order decision** (35–40 minutes)

Fri-Flask specialises in the manufacture of one-litre plastic bottles. The plastic moulding machines are capable of producing 100 bottles per hour. The firm estimates that the variable cost of producing a plastic bottle is 25 øre. The bottles are sold for 55 øre each.

Management has been approached by a local toy company that would like the firm to produce a moulded plastic toy for them. The toy company is willing to pay DKK 3.00 per unit for the toy. The unit variable cost to manufacture the toy will be DKK 2.40. In addition, Fri-Flask would have to incur a cost of DKK 20 000 to construct the mould required exclusively for this order. Because the toy uses more plastic and is of a more intricate shape than a bottle, a moulding machine can produce only 40 units per hour. The customer wants 100 000 units. Assume that Fri-Flask has a total capacity of 10 000 machine-hours available during the period in which the toy company wants delivery of the toys. The firm's fixed costs, excluding the costs to construct the toy mould, during the same period will be DKK 200 000.

Required

1. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 750 000 units, and the special toy order has to be either taken in full or rejected totally. Should Fri-Flask accept the special toy? Explain your answer.
2. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 850 000 units, and the special toy order has to be either taken in full or rejected totally. Should Fri-Flask accept the special toy order? Explain your answer.
3. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 850 000 units, and Fri-Flask can accept any quantity of the special toy order. How many bottles and toys should it manufacture?
4. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 900 000 units, and the special toy order has to be either taken in full or rejected totally. Should Fri-Flask accept the special toy order? Explain your answer.
5. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 900 000 units, and Fri-Flask can accept any quantity of the special toy order. How many bottles and toys should it manufacture?
6. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 950 000 units and Fri-Flask can accept any quantity of the special toy order. How many bottles and toys should it manufacture?
7. The management has located a firm that has just entered the moulded plastic business. This firm has considerable excess capacity and more efficient moulding machines, and is willing to subcontract the toy job, or any portion of it, for DKK 2.80 per unit. It will construct its own toy mould. Suppose the demand for its bottles is 900 000 units, and Fri-Flask can accept any quantity of the special toy order. How many toys should it subcontract out?

CHAPTER 11

Activity-based costing

Managers find cost information useful in making many types of decisions. What should the selling price of a product/service be relative to the costs incurred? Does the market price allow a profit to be made? How far do existing cost-allocation practices reflect the resource consumption of a company's different product lines? Simple costing systems often cannot answer such questions. Changing organisational circumstances at times lead management accounting systems to lose their effectiveness in providing effective costings. Investment in capital-intensive technology, for instance, can alter the material/labour/overhead cost mix of an organisation's products. Operational knowledge of how resources are consumed may not tally with information reported by the costing system. Consequently, a difficult-to-make product may attract very little cost allocation under the prevailing accounting system which may be outdated. Likewise, the life of a product type may be getting shorter because of more intensive competition by technologically driven companies. Under such situations, managers may find themselves with cost information provided by an accounting system relying on product-life assumptions which are rapidly becoming inappropriate. Managers may even reduce the selling price of a loss-making product based on costing information indicating that the product is very profitable. The costing approaches discussed in Chapters 3 and 4 are appropriate starting points for tackling such questions. However, refinement is often seen as necessary when circumstances dictate enhanced cost-information complexity in pursuit of greater cost accuracy. Activity-based costing and activity-based management systems aim to provide such refinement. Activity-based accounting systems have been implemented in many organisations such as Siemens, Hoffman La Roche, Philips, Volvo, Ericsson, Bank of Scotland, Coca Cola, Nike, Apple and the BBC among others. Activity-based costing/management finds widespread use; it alters managerial views of product costs and helps organisations in their decision making in many very significant ways.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Explain undercosting and overcosting of products
- Present three guidelines for refining a costing system
- Distinguish between the traditional and the activity-based costing approaches to designing a costing system
- Describe a four-part cost hierarchy
- Cost products or services using activity-based costing
- Use activity-based costing systems for activity-based management
- Compare activity-based costing and department-costing systems
- Appreciate the significance of organisational context issues in activity-based costing/management system design and implementation

Undercosting and overcosting

We might use the term **cost smoothing** to describe a costing approach that uses broad averages to uniformly assign the cost of resources to cost objects (such as products, services or customers) when the individual products, services or customers in fact use those resources in a non-uniform way.

Cost smoothing can lead to undercosting or overcosting of products or services:

- **Product undercosting**. A product consumes a relatively high level of resources but is reported to have a relatively low total cost.
- **Product overcosting**. A product consumes a relatively low level of resources but is reported to have a relatively high total cost.

Companies that undercost products may actually make sales that result in losses under the erroneous impression that these sales are profitable. That is, these sales bring in less revenue than the cost of the resources they use. Companies that overcost products run the risk of losing market share to existing or new competitors. Because these products actually cost less than what is reported to management, the company could cut selling prices to maintain or enhance market shares and still make a profit on each sale.

Product-cost cross-subsidisation

Product-cost cross-subsidisation means that at least one miscosted product is resulting in the miscosting of other products in the organisation. A classic example arises when a cost is uniformly spread across multiple users without recognition of their different resource demands. Consider the costing of a restaurant bill for four colleagues who meet once a month to discuss business developments. Each diner orders separate entrées, desserts and drinks. The restaurant bill for the most recent meeting is as follows:

	Entrée	Dessert	Drinks	Total
Emmanuelle	€55	€0	€20	€75
Jean-Paul	100	40	70	210
Nathalie	75	20	40	135
Christophe	70	20	30	120
Total	€300	€80	€160	€540
Average	€75	€20	€40	€135

The €540 total restaurant bill produces a €135 average cost per dinner. This broad-average costing approach treats each diner the same. Emmanuelle would probably object to paying €135 because her actual cost is only €75. Indeed, she ordered the lowest-cost entrée, had no dessert, and had the lowest drink bill. When costs are averaged across all four diners, both Emmanuelle and Christophe are overcosted, Jean-Paul is undercosted and Nathalie is accurately costed.

The restaurant example is both simple and intuitive. The amount of cost cross-subsidisation of each diner can be readily calculated given that all cost items can be traced as direct costs to each diner. More complex costing issues arise, however, when there are indirect costs. Then resources are used by two or more individual diners. By definition, indirect costs require allocation – for example, the cost of a bottle of wine shared by two or more diners.

To see the effects of cost smoothing on both direct and indirect costs, we consider the existing costing system at Plastim Limited.

Costing system at Plastim Limited

Plastim Limited manufactures lenses for the tail-lights of cars. The lens, made from black, red, orange or white plastic, is the part of the lamp visible on the car's exterior. Lenses are made using injection moulding. The moulding operation consists of injecting molten plastic into a mould to give the lamp its desired shape. The mould is cooled to allow the molten plastic to solidify, and the part is removed.

Under its contract with Giovanni Motors, a major car manufacturer, Plastim makes two types of lens: a complex lens, CL5, and a simple lens, S3. The complex lens is a large lens with special features such as multicolour moulding (where more than one colour is injected into the mould) and complex shapes that wrap around the corner of the car. Manufacturing these lenses is more complex because various parts in the mould must align and fit precisely. The simple lens is smaller and has few special features.

Design, production and distribution processes

The sequence of steps to design, produce and distribute lenses, whether simple or complex, is as follows:

1. *Design of products and processes.* Each year Giovanni Motors specifies some modifications to the simple and complex lenses. Plastim's Design Department designs the moulds from which the lenses will be made and defines the processes needed (details of the manufacturing operations).
2. *Manufacturing operations.* The lenses are moulded, as described earlier, finished, cleaned and inspected.
3. *Shipping and distribution.* Finished lenses are packed and sent to Giovanni Motors.

Plastim is operating at capacity and incurs very low marketing costs. Because of its high-quality products, Plastim has minimal customer-service costs. Plastim's business environment is very competitive with respect to simple lenses. At a recent meeting, Giovanni's purchasing manager indicated that a new competitor, who makes only simple lenses, was offering to supply the S3 lens to Giovanni at a price of around €53, well below Plastim's price of €63. Unless Plastim lowers its selling price, it will be in jeopardy of losing the Giovanni business for the simple lens, similar to S3, for the upcoming model year. Plastim's management is very concerned about this development. The same competitive pressures do not exist for the complex lens, which Plastim currently sells to Giovanni at a price of €137 per lens.

Plastim's management has various alternatives available to them. Plastim can give up the Giovanni business in simple lenses if it is going to be this unprofitable. It can reduce the price on the simple lens and either accept a lower margin or aggressively seek to reduce costs. But first, management needs to understand what it costs to make and sell the S3 and CL5 lenses. To guide their pricing and cost management decisions, Plastim's managers assign all costs, both manufacturing and non-manufacturing, to the S3 and CL5 lenses. Had the focus been on inventory costing, they would only assign manufacturing costs to the lenses.

Existing single indirect-cost pool system

To cost products, Plastim currently uses a job-costing system with a single indirect-cost rate, similar to the system described in Chapter 3. The steps are as follows.

Step 1: Identify the chosen cost objects The cost objects are the 60 000 simple S3 lenses, and the 15 000 complex CL5 lenses that Plastim makes. Plastim's goal is to calculate the *total* costs of manufacturing and distributing these lenses. Plastim then determines unit costs of each lens by dividing total costs of each lens by 60 000 for S3 and 15 000 for CL5.

Step 2: Identify the direct costs of the products Plastim identifies the direct costs of the lenses – direct materials and direct manufacturing labour – as follows:

	60 000 Simple lenses (S3)		15 000 Complex lenses (CL5)		
	Total (1)	Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 60 000	Total (3)	Per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 15 000	Total (5) = (1) + (3)
Direct materials	€1 125 000	€18.75	€675 000	€45.00	€1 800 000
Direct manufacturing labour	600 000	10.00	195 000	13.00	795 000
Total direct costs	€1 725 000	€28.75	€870 000	€58.00	€2 595 000

Step 3: Select the cost-allocation bases to use for allocating indirect costs to the products Most of the indirect costs consist of salaries paid to supervisors, engineers, manufacturing support and maintenance staff that support direct manufacturing labour. Hence, Plastim uses direct manufacturing labour-hours as the only allocation base to allocate all indirect costs to S3 and CL5. In the current year, Plastim used 39 750 actual direct manufacturing labour-hours.

Step 4: Identify the indirect costs associated with each cost-allocation base Plastim groups all indirect costs totalling €2 385 000 into a single overhead cost pool.

Step 5: Compute the rate per unit of each cost-allocation base used to allocate indirect costs to the products

$$\text{Actual indirect-cost rate} = \frac{\text{Actual total costs in indirect-cost pool}}{\text{Actual total quantity of cost-allocation base}}$$

$$= \frac{€2\ 385\ 000}{39\ 750 \text{ hours}} = €60 \text{ per direct manufacturing labour-hour}$$

Exhibit 11.1, Panel A, shows an overview of Plastim's existing costing system.

Step 6: Compute the indirect costs allocated to the products Plastim uses 30 000 total direct manufacturing labour-hours to make the simple S3 lenses and 9750 direct manufacturing labour-hours to make the complex CL5 lenses. Exhibit 11.1, Panel B, shows indirect costs of €1 800 000 (€60 per direct manufacturing labour-hour × 30 000) allocated to the simple lens and €585 000 (€60 per direct manufacturing labour-hour × 9750) allocated to the complex lens.

Step 7: Compute the total cost of the products by adding all direct and indirect costs assigned to them Exhibit 11.1, Panel B, presents the product costs for the simple and complex lenses. The direct costs are calculated in step 2 and the indirect costs in step 6. Note the correspondence between the costing system overview diagram (Exhibit 11.1, Panel A) and the costs calculated in step 7. Panel A shows two direct-cost categories and one indirect-cost pool. Hence the cost of each type of lens in step 7 (Panel B) has three line items: two for direct costs and one for allocated indirect costs.

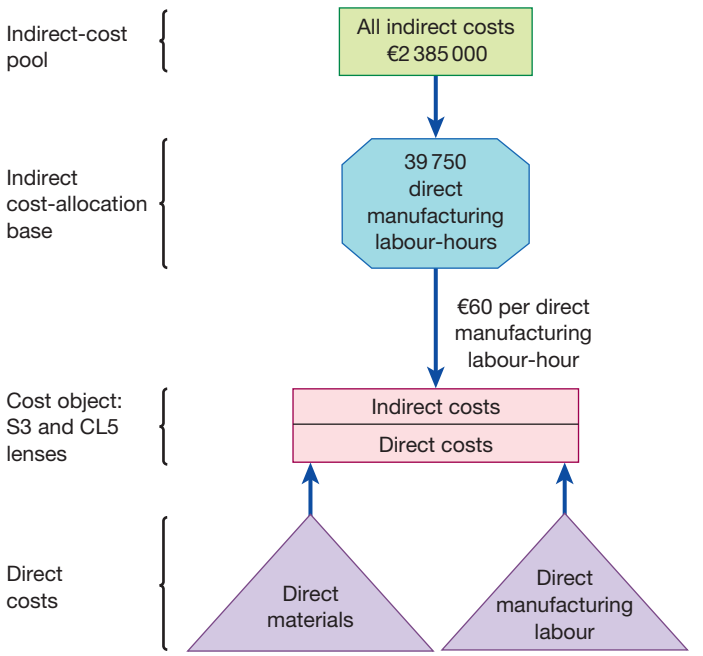
Plastim's management begins investigating why the S3 lens costs €58.75, well above the €53 price quoted by Plastim's competitor. Are Plastim's technology and processes inefficient in manufacturing and distributing the simple S3 lens? Further analysis indicates that such inefficiency is not the reason. Plastim has years of experience in manufacturing and distributing lenses like S3. Because Plastim often makes process improvements, management is confident that their technology and processes for making simple lenses are not inferior to their competitors. However, management is less certain about Plastim's capabilities in manufacturing and distributing complex lenses. Indeed, Plastim has only recently started making this type of lens. Management

is pleasantly surprised to learn that Giovanni Motors considers the prices of CL5 lenses to be very competitive. It is puzzling that, even at these prices, Plastim earns very large margins on the CL5 lenses:

	60 000 Simple lenses (S3)		15 000 Complex lenses (CL5)		
	Total (1)	Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 60 000	Total (3)	Per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 15 000	Total (5) = (1) + (3)
Revenues	€3 780 000	€63.00	€2 055 000	€137.00	€5 835 000
Costs	3 525 000	58.75	1 455 000	97.00	4 980 000
Operating profit	€255 000	€4.25	€600 000	€40.00	€855 000
Operating profit ÷ Revenues		6.75%		29.20%	

Exhibit 11.1 Product costs at Plastim Ltd using existing single overhead cost pool

Panel A: Overview of Plastim's existing costing system



Panel B: Product costs using the existing costing system

	60 000 Simple lenses (S3)		15 000 Complex lenses (CL5)		
	Total (1)	Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 60 000	Total (3)	Per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 15 000	Total (5) = (1) + (3)
Direct materials	€1 125 000	€18.75	€675 000	€45.00	€1 800 000
Direct manufacturing labour	600 000	10.00	195 000	13.00	795 000
Total direct costs	1 725 000	28.75	870 000	58.00	2 595 000
Indirect costs allocated	1 800 000	30.00	585 000	39.00	2 385 000
Total costs	€3 525 000	€58.75	€1 455 000	€97.00	€4 980 000

Plastim's managers are surprised that the margins are low on the S3 product where the company has strong capabilities, whereas the margins are quite high on the newer, less-established CL5 product. Since they are not deliberately charging a low price for S3, they wonder whether the costing system overcosts the simple S3 lens (assigning excessive costs to it) and undercosts the complex CL5 lens (assigning too little costs to it).

Plastim's management is quite confident about the direct materials and direct manufacturing labour costs of the lenses. Why? Because these costs can be traced to the lenses in an economically feasible way. They are less certain about the accuracy of the costing system in measuring the overhead resources used by each type of lens. The key question then is: How might the system of allocating overhead costs to lenses be refined?

Refining a costing system

A **refined costing system** reduces the use of broad averages for assigning the cost of resources to cost objects (such as jobs, products, and services) and provides better measurement of the costs of indirect resources used by different cost objects – no matter how differently the different cost objects use indirect resources. Refining costing systems requires gathering, validating, analysing, and storing vast quantities of data. Advances in information technology have drastically reduced the costs of performing these activities.

Many organisations – such as ABB, the Swiss-Swedish power company; the Antwerp Port Authority; Kanthal, the Swedish manufacturer of heating elements; the Barcelona City Council; and the NatWest bank in the United Kingdom – have refined their costing systems. What has caused such diverse companies operating in different parts of the world, to do so? There are three principal reasons:

- **Increase in product diversity.** Customers are demanding more customised products and, to differentiate themselves from competitors, companies are producing and selling many more products than in the past. Kanthal, for example, produces more than 10 000 different types of electrical heating wires and thermostats. Hospitals carry out a multitude of health services. Banks offer a large range of accounts and services: premium customer accounts, ATM and credit cards, electronic payments, and investment and insurance services. These different products make different demands on the resources needed to produce them because of differences in volume, process and complexity. The resources demanded by these different products cannot be measured by a simple costing system that allocates indirect costs on the basis of, say, direct manufacturing labour-hours. Using such a simple costing system will result in inaccurate and misleading product costs.
- **Increase in indirect costs.** Advances in product and process technology have led to increases in indirect costs and decreases in direct costs, particularly direct manufacturing labour costs. For example, flexible organisational technologies such as computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM), robots and 3-D Printing have significantly reduced the direct manufacturing labour costs of products. Computers on the manufacturing floor give instructions to set-up and run equipment quickly and automatically. The computers accurately measure hundreds of production parameters and directly control the manufacturing processes to achieve high-quality output. Managing more complex technology and producing very diverse products requires committing an increasing amount of resources for various support functions, such as production scheduling and product and process design and engineering. Because direct manufacturing labour is not a direct driver of these costs, allocating indirect costs using direct manufacturing labour as a proxy often does not accurately measure how resources are being used by different products. Naturally, service-based organisations also make extensive use of advanced computer technologies and intelligent automation. Costing system refinements require more data gathering and more analysis and make the costing system more detailed. Improvements

in information technology and the accompanying decline in the costs of tracking data make it more cost-effective to implement refinements in costing systems. It is more practical now to create systems that have multiple pools of indirect costs for allocating costs to products.

- **Competition in product markets.** As markets have become more competitive managers have felt the need to obtain more-accurate cost information to help them make important strategic decisions, such as how to price products and which products to sell. Making correct pricing and product-mix decisions is critical in competitive markets because competitors quickly capitalise on a company's mistakes.

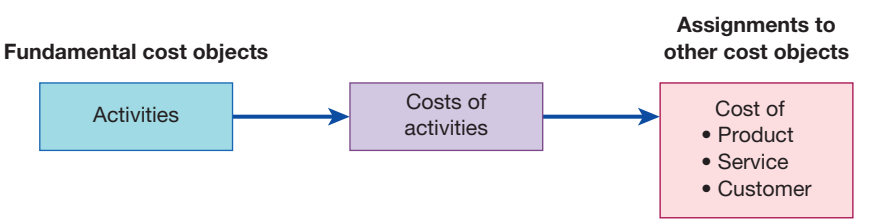
This chapter describes three guidelines for refining a costing system:

- **Direct-cost tracing.** Classify as many of the total costs as direct costs of the cost object as is economically feasible. This guideline aims to reduce the amount of costs classified as indirect.
- **Indirect-cost pools.** Expand the number of indirect-cost pools until each pool is more homogeneous. In a *homogeneous cost pool,* all of the costs have the same or a similar cause-and-effect (or benefits-received) relationship with the cost-allocation base. For example, a single indirect-cost pool containing both indirect machining costs and indirect distribution costs that are allocated to products using machine-hours is not homogeneous because machining costs and distribution costs do not have the same cause-and-effect relationship with machine-hours. Increases in machine-hours – the cause – have the effect of increasing machining costs but not distribution costs. Now, suppose machining costs and distribution costs are subdivided into two separate indirect-cost pools using machine-hours as the cost-allocation base for the machining cost pool and the number of shipments as the cost-allocation base for the distribution-cost pool. Each indirect-cost pool would now be homogeneous, which means that within each cost pool, all costs have the same cause-and-effect relationship with their respective cost-allocation base.
- **Cost-allocation bases.** Use the cause-and-effect criterion, when possible, to identify the cost-allocation base (the cause) for each indirect-cost pool (the effect).

Activity-based costing systems

One often-used approach for refining a costing system is *activity-based costing.* **Activity-based costing (ABC)** systems refine costing systems by focusing on individual activities as the fundamental cost objects. An **activity** is an event, task, or unit of work with a specified purpose, for example designing products, setting up machines, operating machines and distributing products. ABC systems calculate the costs of individual activities and assign costs to cost objects such as products and services on the basis of the activities undertaken to produce each product or service.

We describe key ideas of an ABC system in the context of our Plastim example. ABC systems focus on indirect costs because direct costs can be traced to products and jobs relatively easily. A key step in implementing ABC at Plastim is to identify activities that help explain why Plastim incurs the costs that it currently classifies as indirect. To define these activities, Plastim organises a cross-functional team from design, manufacturing, distribution, and accounting and administration. The team identifies key activities using a flowchart of all the steps and processes needed to design, manufacture and distribute lenses.



Plastim's team identifies seven major activities:

1. Design products and processes.
2. Set-up moulding machine to ensure the mould is properly held in place and parts are properly aligned before manufacturing starts.
3. Operate machines to manufacture lenses.
4. Maintain and clean the mould after lenses are manufactured.
5. Set-up batches of finished lenses for shipment.
6. Distribute lenses to customers.
7. Administer and manage all processes at Plastim.

By defining activities and identifying the costs of performing each activity, ABC systems seek a greater level of detail in understanding how an organisation uses its resources. As we describe ABC systems, keep in mind three features:

1. ABC systems create smaller cost pools linked to the different activities. Plastim partitions its original single overhead cost pool into seven activity-related cost pools.
2. For each activity-cost pool, a measure of the activity performed serves as the cost-allocation base. For example, Plastim defines set-up hours as a measure of set-up activity and cubic metres of packages moved as a measure of distribution activity. Because each activity-cost pool pertains to a narrow and focused set of costs (e.g. set-up or distribution), the cost pools are homogeneous – over time, the costs in each cost pool have a cause-and-effect relationship with the cost-allocation base. At Plastim, over the long run, set-up hours is a cost driver of set-up costs, and cubic metres of packages moved is a cost driver of distribution costs.
3. In some cases, costs in a cost pool can be traced directly to products. In the Plastim example, the cleaning and maintenance activity consists of salaries and wages paid to workers responsible for cleaning the mould. Following guideline 1 of refining a costing system, these costs can be traced directly to the specific mould used to produce the lens. Direct tracing of costs improves cost accuracy because it makes no assumptions about the cause-and-effect relationship between the cost pool and the cost-allocation base.

The logic of ABC systems is that more finely structured activity-cost pools with activity-specific cost-allocation bases, which are cost drivers for the cost pool, are considered to lead to more accurate costing of activities. Allocating costs to products by measuring the cost-allocation bases of different activities used by different products leads to more accurate product costs. In contrast, consider the case when the cause-and-effect relationship between overhead costs and the cost-allocation base(s) is weak. For example, in its existing costing system, Plastim uses direct manufacturing labour-hours as the cost-allocation base for all overhead costs, whether in set-up or distribution. Direct manufacturing labour-hours do not drive the costs in these activity-cost pools. Consequently, measuring the direct manufacturing labour-hours used by various products does not capture the overhead costs demanded by the different products.

By focusing on the set-up activity, we illustrate the effect of allocating all overhead costs to products using direct manufacturing labour-hours versus an ABC system with its emphasis on individual activities. Set-ups frequently entail trial runs, fine-tuning and adjustments. Improper set-ups cause quality problems such as scratches on the surface of the lens. The resources needed for each set-up depend on the complexity of the manufacturing operation: complex lenses require more set-up resources per set-up than do simple lenses. Furthermore, complex lenses can be produced only in small batches because the mould needs to be cleaned more often. Relative to simple lenses, complex lenses not only use more resources per set-up, they also need more frequent set-ups.

Set-up data for the simple S3 lens and the complex CL5 lens are as follows:

		Simple S3 lens	Complex CL5 lens	Total
1	Quantity of lenses produced	60 000	15 000	
2	Number of lenses produced per batch	240	50	
3 = (1) ÷ (2)	Number of batches	250	300	
4	Set-up time per batch	2 hours	5 hours	
5 = (3) × (4)	Total set-up-hours	500 hours	1500 hours	2000 hours

Plastim identifies the total costs of set-ups (consisting mainly of allocated costs of process engineers, supervisors and set-up equipment) of €300 000. The following table shows how set-up costs are allocated to the simple and complex lenses using direct manufacturing labour-hours and set-up-hours, respectively, as the allocation bases. The set-up cost per direct manufacturing labour-hour equals €7.54717 (€300 000 ÷ 39 750). The set-up cost per set-up-hour equals €150 (€300 000 ÷ 2000 set-up-hours).

	Simple S3 lens	Complex CL5 lens	Total
Cost allocated using direct manufacturing labour-hours			
€7.54717 × 30 000; €7.54717 × 9750	€226 415	€73 585	€300 000
Cost allocated using set-up-hours			
€150 × 500; €150 × 1500	€75 000	€225 000	€300 000

Which allocation base should Plastim use? Plastim should allocate set-up costs on the basis of set-up-hours. Why? Because, following guidelines 2 and 3, there is a strong cause-and-effect relationship between set-up-related overhead costs and set-up-hours, but there is almost no relationship between set-up-related overhead costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours. ABC systems that use available time (set-up-hours in our example) to calculate the cost of a resource and to allocate costs to cost objects are sometimes called **time-driven activity-based costing (TDABC) systems**. Following guidelines 2 and 3, we see that the CL5 lens uses substantially more set-up-hours than the S3 lens (1500 hours, 2000 hours = 75% of the total set-up-hours) because the CL5 requires a greater number of set-ups (batches) and each set-up is more challenging and requires more set-up-hours. The ABC system therefore allocates significantly more set-up costs to CL5 than to S3. When direct manufacturing labour-hours rather than set-up-hours are used to allocate set-up costs in the simple costing system, the S3 lens is allocated a very large share of the set-up costs because the S3 lens uses a larger proportion of direct manufacturing labour-hours (30 000 hours, 39 750 hours = 75.47%). As a result, the simple costing system overcosts the S3 lens with regard to set-up costs.

We will see later in the chapter that ABC systems provide valuable information to managers beyond more-accurate product costs. For example, identifying set-up-hours as the cost driver correctly orients managers' cost-reduction efforts on reducing set-up-hours and cost per set-up-hour. Note that set-up-hours are related to batches (or groups) of lenses made, not the number of individual lenses. Activity-based costing attempts to identify the most relevant cause-and-effect relationship for each activity pool without restricting the cost driver to be units of output or variables related to units of output (such as direct manufacturing labour-hours). As our discussion of set-ups illustrates, limiting cost-allocation bases to only units of output weakens the cause-and-effect relationship between the cost-allocation base and the costs in a cost pool. Broadening cost drivers to batches (or groups) of lenses, not just individual lenses, leads us to *cost hierarchies*. Set-up costs depend on the number of batches and the complexity of the set-ups and hence set-up-hours drive set-up costs. The simple S3 lens attracts more of the set-up costs when costs are

allocated on the basis of direct manufacturing labour-hours. This occurs because more direct manufacturing labour-hours are needed to produce S3 lenses. However, direct manufacturing labour-hours required by the S3 and CL5 lenses bear no relationship to the set-up-hours demanded by the S3 and CL5 lenses. The *cost hierarchy* distinguishes costs by whether the cost driver is a unit of output (or variables such as machine-hours or direct manufacturing labour-hours that are a function of units of output), or a *group* of units of a product (such as a batch in the case of set-up costs), or the *product itself* (such as the complexity of the mould in the case of design costs).

Cost hierarchies

A **cost hierarchy** categorises costs into different cost pools on the basis of the different types of cost driver (or cost-allocation base) or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect (or benefits-received) relationships.

ABC systems commonly use a four-part cost hierarchy – output-unit-level costs, batch-level costs, product-sustaining costs and facility-sustaining costs – to identify cost-allocation bases that are preferably cost drivers of costs in activity-cost pools.

Output-unit-level costs are resources sacrificed on activities performed on each individual unit of a product or service. Manufacturing operations costs (such as energy, machine depreciation, and repair) that are related to the activity of running the automated moulding machines are output-unit-level costs. Why? Because the cost of this activity increases with each additional unit of output produced (or machine-hour run).

Suppose that in our Plastim example, each S3 lens requires 0.15 moulding machine-hours. Then S3 lenses require a total of 9000 moulding machine-hours (0.15 hour × 60 000 lenses). Similarly, suppose CL5 lenses require 0.25 moulding machine-hours. Then the CL5 lens requires 3750 moulding machine-hours (0.25 hour × 15 000 lenses) The *total* moulding machine costs allocated to S3 and CL5 depend on the quantity of each type of lens produced, regardless of the number of batches in which the lenses are made. Plastim's ABC system uses machine-hours, an output-unit-level cost-allocation base, to allocate manufacturing operation costs to products.

Batch-level costs are resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a group of units of product(s) or service(s) rather than to each individual unit of product or service. In the Plastim example, set-up costs are batch-level costs. Set-up resources are used each time moulding machines are set-up to produce a batch of lenses. The S3 lens requires 500 set-up-hours (2 hours per set-up × 250 batches). The CL5 lens requires 1500 set-up-hours (5 hours per set-up × 300 batches). The total set-up costs allocated to S3 and CL5 depend on the total set-up-hours required by each type of lens, not on the number of units of S3 and CL5 produced. Plastim's ABC system uses set-up-hours, a batch-level cost-allocation base to allocate set-up costs to products.

In companies that purchase many different types of direct materials (Plastim purchases mainly plastic pellets), procurement costs can be significant. Procurement costs include the costs of placing purchase orders, receiving materials, and paying suppliers. These costs are batch-level costs because they are related to the number of purchase orders placed rather than to the quantity or value of materials purchased.

Product-sustaining (or **service-sustaining**) costs are resources sacrificed on activities undertaken to support individual products or services. In the Plastim example, design costs are product-sustaining costs. Design costs for each type of lens depend largely on the time spent by designers on designing and modifying the product, mould and process. These costs are a function of the complexity of the mould, measured by the number of parts in the mould multiplied by the area (in square metres) over which the molten plastic must flow (12 parts × 2.5 square metres or 30 parts-square metres for the S3 lens, and 14 parts × 5 square metres or 70 parts-square metres for the CL5 lens). The *total* design costs allocated to S3 and CL5 depend on the complexity of the mould, regardless of the number of units or batches in which the units are produced. Design costs cannot be linked in any cause-and-effect way to individual units of products or to individual batches of products. Plastim's ABC system uses parts-square metres, a product-sustaining cost-allocation base, to allocate design costs to products. Another example of product-sustaining costs is engineering costs incurred to change product designs, although such changes are infrequent at Plastim.

Facility-sustaining costs are resources sacrificed on activities that cannot be traced to individual products or services but which support the organisation as a whole. In the Plastim example, the general administration costs (including rent and building security) are facility-sustaining costs. It is usually difficult to find good cause-and-effect relationships between these costs and a cost-allocation base. This lack of a cause-and-effect relationship causes some companies not to allocate these costs to products and instead to deduct them from operating income. Other companies, such as Plastim, allocate facility-sustaining costs to products on some basis – for example, direct manufacturing labour-hours – because management believes all costs should be allocated to products. Allocating all costs to products or services becomes particularly important when management wants to set selling prices on the basis of a cost number that seeks to include all costs.

Implementing activity-based costing

Now that we understand the basic concepts of ABC, we use it to refine Plastim's existing costing system. We again follow the seven-step approach to costing presented at the beginning of the chapter and the three guidelines for refining costing systems (increasing direct-cost tracing, creating homogeneous indirect-cost pools, and identifying cost-allocation bases that have a cause-and-effect relationship with costs in the cost pool).

Step 1: Identify the chosen cost objects The cost objects are the S3 and CL5 lenses. That is, the cost objects are the 60 000 S3 and the 15 000 C5 lenses that Plastim will produce. Platim's managers want to know the *total* costs of designing, manufacturing, and distributing these lenses and then the per-unit costs.

Step 2: Identify the direct costs of the products Plastim identifies direct materials costs, direct manufacturing labour costs, and mould-cleaning and maintenance costs as direct costs of the lenses. In its existing costing system, Plastim classified mould-cleaning and maintenance costs as indirect costs and allocated them to products using direct manufacturing labour-hours. However, these costs can be traced directly to a lens because each type of lens can only be produced from a specific mould. Note that because mould-cleaning and maintenance costs consist of workers' wages for cleaning moulds after each batch of lenses is produced, cleaning and maintenance costs are direct batch-level costs. Complex lenses incur more cleaning and maintenance costs than simple lenses because Plastim produces more batches of complex lenses than simple lenses and because the moulds of complex lenses are more difficult to clean. Direct manufacturing labour-hours do not capture the demand that complex and simple lenses place on mould-cleaning and maintenance resources.

Plastim's direct costs are as follows:

		60 000 Simple lenses (S3)		15 000 Complex lenses (CL5)		
Description	Cost hierarchy category	Total (1)	Per unit (2) + (3) ÷ 60 000	Total (3)	Per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 15 000	Total (5) = (1) + (3)
Direct materials	Output-unit level	€1 125 000	€18.75	€675 000	€45.00	€1 800 000
Direct mfg. labour	Output-unit level	600 000	10.00	195 000	13.00	795 000
Cleaning and maintenance	Batch level	120 000	2.00	150 000	10.00	270 000
Total direct costs		€1 845 000	€30.75	€1 020 000	€68.00	€2 865 000

Exhibit 11.2 Activity-cost rates for Plastim's indirect-cost pools

Activity (1)	Cost hierarchy category (2)	(Step 4) Total costs (3)	(Step 3) Quantity of cost-allocation base (4)	(Step 5) Overhead allocation rate (5) = (3) ÷ (4) (6)	Brief explanation of the cause-and-effect relationship that motivates the choice of the allocation base (6)
Design	Product-sustaining	€450 000	100 parts-square metres	€4500 per parts-square metres	Complex moulds (more parts and larger surface area) require greater Design Department resources
Set-ups of moulding machines	Batch level	€300 000	2000 set-up-hours	€150 per set-up-hour	Overhead costs of the set-up activity increase as set-up-hours increase
Manufacturing operations	Output-unit level	€637 500	12 750 moulding machine-hours	€50 per moulding machine-hour	Plastim has mostly automated moulding machines. Manufacturing overhead costs support automated moulding machines and hence increase with moulding machine usage
Shipment set-up	Batch level	€81 000	200 shipments	€405 per shipment	Costs incurred to prepare batches for shipment increase with the number of shipments
Distribution	Output-unit level	€391 500	67 500 cubic metres	€5.80 per cubic metre	Overhead costs of the distribution activity increase with cubic metres of packages shipped
Administration	Facility-sustaining	€255 000	39 750 direct manufacturing labour-hours	€6.4151 per direct manufacturing labour-hour	Administration Department resources support direct manufacturing labour-hours because the demand for these resources increases with direct manufacturing labour-hours

Step 3: Select the cost-allocation bases to use for allocating indirect costs to the products

Plastim identifies six activities – design, moulding machine set-ups, manufacturing operations, shipment set-up, distribution and administration – for allocating indirect costs to products. Exhibit 11.2, column 4, shows the cost-allocation base and the quantity of the cost-allocation base for each activity.

The cost-allocation base is pivotal in defining the number of activity pools in an ABC system. For example, rather than define the design activities of product design, process design and prototyping as separate activities, Plastim defines these activities as part of a combined design activity.

Why? Because the complexity of the mould is an appropriate cost driver for costs incurred in all three design subactivities.

A second consideration in choosing a cost-allocation base is the availability of reliable data and measures. Consider, for example, the problem of choosing a cost-allocation base for the design activity. The driver of design cost, a product-sustaining cost, is the complexity of the mould – more complex moulds take more time to design. In its ABC system, Plastim measures complexity in terms of the number of parts in the mould and the surface area of the mould. If these data are difficult to obtain, or if measurement errors are large, Plastim may be forced to use some other measure of complexity, such as the amount of material flowing through the mould. The problem then is that the quantity of material flow may not adequately represent the complexity of the design activity.

Step 4: Identify the indirect costs associated with each cost-allocation base In this step, overhead costs incurred by Plastim are assigned to activities, to the extent possible, on the basis of a cause-and-effect relationship between the costs of an activity and the cost-allocation base for the activity. For example, costs in the distribution-cost pool have a cause-and-effect relationship to cubic metres of packages moved. Of course, the strength of the cause-and-effect relationship between costs of an activity and its respective cost-allocation base varies across cost pools. For example, the cause-and-effect relationship between administration activity costs and direct manufacturing labour-hours is not as strong as the relationship between set-up activity costs and set-up-hours.

Some costs can be directly identified with a particular activity. For example, salaries paid to design engineers are directly identified with the design activity. Other costs need to be allocated across activities. For example, on the basis of interviews or time records, manufacturing engineers and supervisors identify the time spent on design activities, moulding machine set-up activity and manufacturing operations. The time spent on these activities serves as a basis for allocating manufacturing engineers' and supervisors' salary costs to various activities. So, if a manufacturing engineer spends 15% of their time on design, 45% of her time managing moulding machine set-ups, and 40% of their time on moulding operations, the company will allocate the manufacturing engineer's salary to each of these activities in proportion to the time spent. Similarly, other costs are allocated to activity-cost pools using allocation bases that best describe the costs incurred for the different activities. For example, space costs are allocated on the basis of square metres used for different activities. However, the allocation base chosen may sometimes be constrained by the availability of reliable data.

The key point here is that all costs do not fit neatly into activity categories. Often, costs may first need to be allocated to activities before the costs of the activities can be allocated to products.

Step 5: Compute the rate per unit of each cost-allocation base used to allocate indirect costs to the products Exhibit 11.2 summarises the calculation of the activity-cost rates using the cost-allocation bases selected in step 3 and the indirect costs of each activity calculated in step 4. Exhibit 11.3, Panel A, presents an overview of the ABC system.

Step 6: Compute the indirect costs allocated to the products Exhibit 11.3, Panel B, shows indirect costs of €1 153 953 allocated to the simple lens and €961 047 allocated to the complex lens. To calculate indirect costs of each lens, the total quantity of the cost-allocation base used for each activity by each type of lens (using data provided by Plastim's operations personnel) is multiplied by the cost-allocation rate calculated in step 5 (see Exhibit 11.2, column 5). For example, of the 2000 hours of the set-up activity (Exhibit 11.2, column 4), the S3 lens uses 500 set-up-hours and the CL5 lens uses 1500 set-up-hours. Hence the total costs of the set-up activity allocated to the S3 lens is €75 000 (500 set-up-hours × €150, the set-up rate calculated in Exhibit 11.2, column 5) and to the CL5 lens is €225 000 (1500 set-up-hours × €150). The set-up

cost per unit can then be calculated as €1.25 (€75 000 ÷ 60 000 units) for the S3 lens and as €15 (€225 000 ÷ €15 000 units) for the CL5 lens.

Step 7: Compute the total costs of the products by adding all direct and indirect costs assigned to them Exhibit 11.3, Panel B, presents the product costs for the simple and complex lenses. The direct costs are calculated in step 2 and the indirect costs in step 6. The activity-based costing system overview in Exhibit 11.3, Panel A, shows three direct-cost categories and six indirect-cost pools. Hence, the cost of each lens type in Exhibit 11.3, Panel B, has nine line items, three for direct costs and six for indirect costs. The differences in the ABC product costs of S3 and CL5 calculated in Exhibit 11.3, Panel B, highlight how these products use different amounts of direct costs and different amounts of resources in each activity area.

We emphasise two key features of ABC systems. First, these systems identify all costs used by products, whether the costs are variable or fixed in the short run. Why? Because the focus of ABC systems is on longer-run decisions when more of the costs can be managed and fewer costs are regarded as fixed and given. Hence, ABC systems identify all resources used by products regardless of how individual costs behave in the short run. Second, as we have already described, recognising the hierarchy of costs is critical when allocating costs to products. It is easiest to use the cost hierarchy to calculate *total* costs. For this reason, we recommend calculating total costs first. The per-unit costs can then be easily calculated by dividing total costs by the number of units produced.

Exhibit 11.3 Product costs at Plastim Ltd using activity-based costing

Panel A: Overview of Plastim's activity-based costing

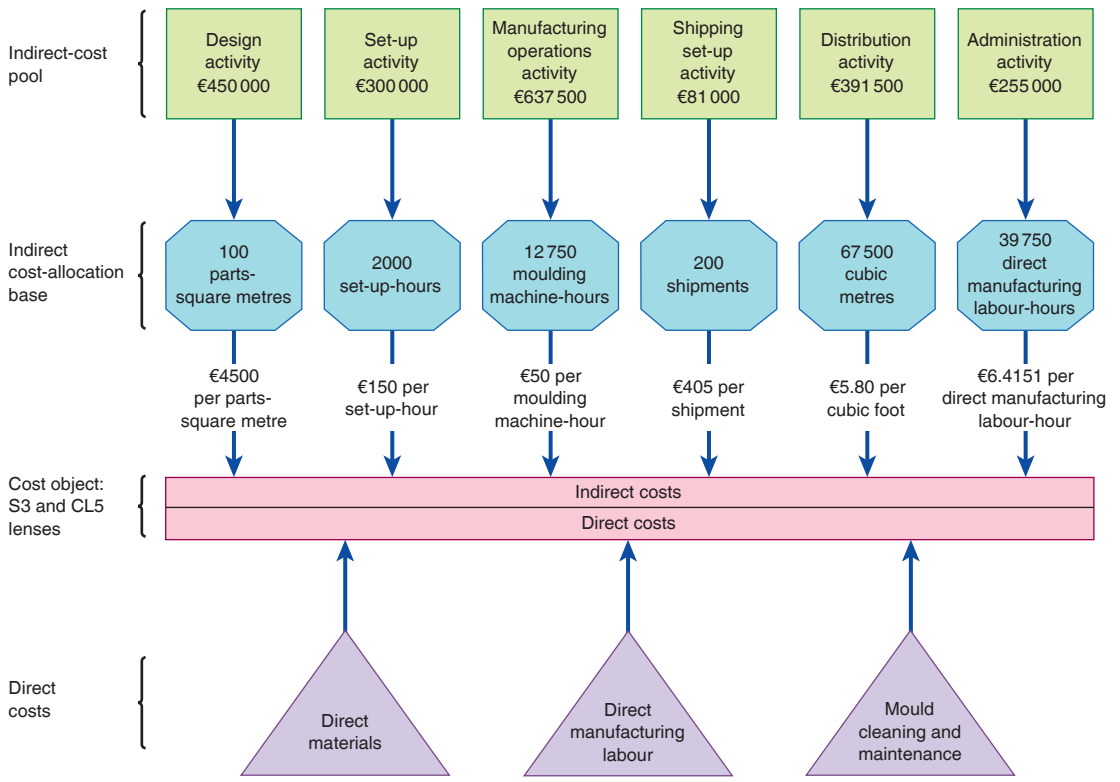


Exhibit 11.3 continued

Panel B: Product costs using the activity-based costing system

Description of Cost and the Quantity of Activity Used by Each Type of Lens	60 000 Simple lenses (S3) Total (1)	60 000 Simple lenses (S3) Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 60 000	15 000 Complex lenses (CL5) Total (3)	15 000 Complex lenses (CL5) Per unit (4) = (3) ÷ 15 000	Total (5) = (1) + (3)
Direct costs					
Direct materials	€1 125 000	€18.75	€675 000	€45.00	€1 800 000
Direct manufacturing labour	600 000	10.00	195 000	13.00	795 000
Direct mould-cleaning and maintenance costs	120 000	2.00	150 000	10.00	270 000
Total direct costs	1 845 000	30.75	1 020 000	68.00	2 865 000
Indirect costs					
Design activity costs					
S3, 30 parts-square metres × €4500	135 000	2.25			450 000
CL5, 70 parts-square metres × €4500			315 000	21.00	
Set-up activity costs					
S3, 500 set-up-hours × €150	75 000	1.25			300 000
CL5, 1500 set-up-hours × €150			225 000	15.00	
Manufacturing operations activity costs					
S3, 9000 moulding machine-hours × €50	450 000	7.50			637 500
CL5, 3750 moulding machine-hours × €50			187 500	12.50	
Shipping set-up activity					
S3, 100 shipment × €405	40 500	0.67			81 000
CL5, 100 shipments × €405			40 500	2.70	
Distribution activity					
S3, 45 000 cubic metres × €5.80	261 000	4.35			391 500
CL5, 22 500 cubic metres × €5.80			130 500	8.70	
Administration activity					
S3, 30 000 direct manufacturing labour-hours × €6.4151	192 453	3.21			255 000
CL5, 9750 direct manufacturing labour-hour × €6.4151			62 547	4.17	
Total indirect costs	1 153 953	19.23	961 047	64.07	2 115 000
Total costs	€2 998 953	€49.98	€1 981 047	€132.07	€4 980 000

Comparing alternative costing systems

Exhibit 11.4 compares key features of and differences resulting from Plastim's existing single indirect-cost pool system (Exhibit 11.1) and the ABC system (Exhibit 11.3). We emphasise three points in Exhibit 11.4: (1) ABC systems trace more costs as direct costs; (2) ABC systems create more cost pools linked to different activities; and (3) for each activity-cost pool, ABC systems seek a cost-allocation base that has a cause-and-effect relationship with costs in the cost pool.

The homogeneous cost pools and the choice of cost-allocation bases, tied to the cost hierarchy, gives Plastim's managers greater confidence in the activity and product-cost numbers from the ABC system. Allocating costs to lenses using only an output-unit-level allocation base, direct manufacturing labour-hours, as in the existing single indirect-cost pool system, overcosts the

Exhibit 11.4 Comparing alternative costing systems

	Existing single indirect-cost pool system (1)	ABC system (2)	Difference (3) = (2) − (1)
Direct-cost categories	2	3	1
	Direct materials	Direct materials	
	Direct manufacturing labour	Direct manufacturing labour	
		Direct cleaning and maintenance labour	
Total direct costs	€2 595 000	€2 865 000	€270 000
Indirect-cost pools	1	6	5
	Single indirect-cost pool allocated using direct manufacturing labour-hours	Design cost pool allocated using parts-square metres	
		Moulding machine set-up-cost pool allocated using set-up-hours	
		Manufacturing operations-cost pool allocated using machine-hours	
		Shipment set-up-cost pool allocated using number of shipments	
		Distribution-cost pool allocated using cubic metres of packages shipped	
		Administration-cost pool allocated using direct manufacturing labour-hours	
Total indirect costs	€2 385 000	€2 115 000	(€270 000)
Total costs assigned to simple (S3) lens	€3 525 000	€2 998 953	(€526 047)
Cost per unit of simple (S3) lens	€58.75	€49.98	(€8.77)
Total costs assigned to complex (CL5) lens	€1 455 000	€1 981 047	€526 047
Cost per unit of complex(CL5) lens	€97.00	€132.07	€35.07

simple S3 lens and undercosts the complex CL5 lens. The CL5 (S3) lens uses a disproportionately larger (smaller) amount of output-unit-level, batch-level and product- sustaining costs than is represented by the direct manufacturing labour-hour cost-allocation base.

The benefits of ABC systems arise in part from using ABC information in seeking to make decisions that are different from those in the absence of ABC. But these benefits must be traded off against the measurement and implementation costs and challenges of these systems. We focus on these issues next.

Concepts in action

Mayo Clinic uses time-driven activity-based costing to reduce costs and improve care

About 17% of gross domestic product in the United States is spent on health care. In Germany, France and the UK, this ranges between 10–12%, and in China, India and Russia the range is 3–6%. Across nations, healthcare costs are rising. Costing healthcare delivery is therefore of significance at the national and organisational level. Several medical centres, such as the Mayo Clinic in Rochester, Minnesota, are using time-driven activity-based costing (TDABC) to help bring accurate cost and value measurement practices into the health care delivery system.

TDABC assigns all of the organisation's resource costs to cost objects using a framework that requires two sets of estimates. TDABC first calculates the cost of supplying resource capacity, such as a doctor's time. The total cost of resources – including personnel, supervision, insurance, space occupancy, technology and supplies – is divided by the available capacity – the time available for doctors to do their work – to obtain the capacity cost rate. Next, TDABC uses the capacity cost rate to drive resource costs to cost objects, such as the number of patients seen, by estimating the demand for resource capacity (time) that the cost object requires.

Medical centres implementing TDABC have succeeded in reducing costs. For orthopaedic procedures at the Mayo Clinic, the TDABC-modified process resulted in shorter stays for patients, a 24% decrease in patients discharged to expensive skilled nursing facilities, and a 15% decrease in cost. Follow-on improvements have included obtaining patient-reported outcomes from tablets and smartphones and eliminating major variations in the cost of prostheses and other supplies.

More broadly, healthcare providers implementing TDABC have found that better outcomes for patients often go hand in hand with lower total costs. For example, spending more on early detection and better diagnosis of disease reduces patient suffering and often leads to less-complex and less-expensive care. With the insights from TDABC, healthcare providers can utilise medical staff, equipment, facilities and administrative resources far more efficiently; streamline the path of patients through the system; and select treatment approaches that improve outcomes while eliminating services that do not.

Sources: Haas, D. A., Helmers, R. A., Rucci, M., Brady, M. and Kaplan, R. S. (2015) 'The Mayo Clinic model for running a value-improvement program', *Harvard Business Review*, 22 October (https://hbr.org/2015/10/the-mayo-clinic-model-for-running-a-value-improvement-program); Mangan, D. (2015) '$1 of every $5 spent in US will be on health care', CNBC, 28 July (www.cnbc.com/2015/07/28/1-of-every-5-spent-in-us-will-be-on-health-care.html); Kaplan, R. S. and Porter, M. E. (2011) 'How to solve the cost crisis in health care', *Harvard Business Review*, September (https://hbr.org/2011/09/how-to-solve-the-cost-crisis-in-health-care); Kaplan, R. S. and Anderson, S. R. (2007) 'The innovation of time-driven activity-based costing', *Journal of Cost Management*, 21(2) (March–April): 5–15; Statista (2022) 'Health expenditure as a % of GDP in select countries' (https://www.statista.com/statistics/268826/health-expenditure-as-gdp-percentage-in-oecd-countries/).

From activity-based costing to activity-based management

The emphasis of this chapter so far has been on the role of ABC systems in obtaining altered activity and product costs. Companies use ABC information for pricing, product mix, and cost management decisions. **Activity-based management (ABM)** describes management decisions that use activity-based costing information to satisfy customers and manage profitability. Although ABM has many definitions, we define it broadly to include pricing and product-mix decisions, cost reduction and process improvement decisions, and product design decisions.

Pricing and product-mix decisions

An ABC system gives management particular insights into the cost structures for making and selling diverse products. As a result, management can make pricing and product-mix decisions. For example, the ABC system indicates that Plastim can reduce the price of S3 to the €53 range and still make a profit, because the ABC cost of S3 is €49.98. Without this ABC information, Plastim management might erroneously conclude that they would incur an operating loss on the S3 lens at the €53 price. This incorrect conclusion might cause Plastim to reduce its business in simple lenses and focus instead on complex lenses, where its existing single indirect-cost pool system indicates it is very profitable.

Focusing on complex lenses would be a mistake. The ABC system indicates that the cost of making the complex lens is much higher (€132.07 versus €97 under Plastim's existing direct manufacturing labour-based costing system). As Plastim's operations staff had thought all along, Plastim has no comparative advantage in making CL5 lenses. At a price of €137 per lens for CL5, the margins look very small. As Plastim reduces prices on simple lenses, it will probably have to negotiate a higher price for the complex lenses.

Cost reduction and process improvement decisions

Manufacturing and distribution personnel use ABC systems to focus cost-reduction efforts. Managers set cost reduction targets in terms of reducing the cost per unit of the cost-allocation base in different activity areas. For example, the supervisor of the distribution activity area at Plastim could have a performance target of decreasing the distribution cost per cubic metre of products shipped from €5.80 to €5.40 by reducing distribution labour and warehouse rental costs.

Doing an analysis of the cost of important activities (activity-cost pools) and the factors that cause these costs to be incurred (cost drivers and cost-allocation bases) reveals many opportunities for improving efficiency. Management can evaluate whether particular activities can be reduced or eliminated by improving processes. Each of the indirect-cost-allocation bases in the ABC system is a non-financial variable (number of hours of set-up time, cubic metres shipped, and so on). Controlling physical items such as set-up-hours or cubic metres shipped is often the most fundamental way that operating personnel manage costs. For example, Plastim can decrease distribution costs by packing the lenses in a way that reduces the bulkiness of the shipment.

The following table shows the reduction in distribution costs of the S3 and CL5 lenses as a result of process and efficiency improvements that lower the cost per cubic metre (from €5.80 to €5.40) and the total cubic metres of shipments (from 45 000 to 40 000 for S3 and 22 500 to 20 000 for CL5).

	60 000 S3 lenses		15 000 CL5 lenses	
	Total	Per unit	Total	Per unit
	(1)	(2) = (1) ÷ 60 000	(3)	(4) = (3) ÷ 15 000
Distribution cost per unit (from Exhibit 11.3, Panel B)	€261 000	€4.35	€130 500	€8.70
Distribution costs as a result of process improvements	216 000	3.60		
S3, 40 000 cubic metres × €5.40				
CL5, 20 000 cubic metres × €5.40			108 000	7.20
Savings in distribution cost from process improvements	€45 000	€0.75	€22 500	€1.50

Design decisions

Management can identify and evaluate new designs to improve performance by evaluating how product and process designs affect activities and costs. Companies can then work with their customers to evaluate the costs and prices of alternative design choices. For example, creative design decisions that decrease the complexity of the mould reduce costs of design, materials, labour, set-ups, moulding machine operations, and mould-cleaning and maintenance.

If Plastim uses its existing direct manufacturing labour-hour-based system to choose among alternative designs, which design choices will Plastim favour? Those designs that reduce direct manufacturing labour-hours the most. Why? Because the cost system would erroneously signal that reducing direct manufacturing labour-hours reduces overhead costs. However, as our discussion of ABC systems indicates, direct manufacturing labour-hours have little impact on Plastim's overhead costs.

Planning and managing activities

As was the case with Plastim, most companies implementing ABC systems for the first time analyse actual costs to identify activity-cost pools and activity-cost rates. Many companies then use ABC systems for planning and managing activities. They specify budgeted costs for activities and use budgeted cost rates to cost products using normal costing. At year-end, budgeted and actual costs are compared in order to provide feedback on how well activities were managed. Adjustments are also made for under- or overallocated indirect costs for each activity area using the methods described in Chapter 3 (adjusted allocation-rate approach, proration or write-off to cost of goods sold).

ABC and department-costing systems

Companies often use costing systems that have features of ABC systems – such as multiple cost pools and multiple cost-allocation bases – but that do not emphasise individual activities. Many companies have broadened their costing systems from using a single indirect-cost rate system, to using separate indirect-cost rates for each department (for example, design, manufacturing, distribution, and so on) or sub-department (for example, machining and assembly departments within manufacturing). Why? Because the cost drivers of resources in each department or sub-department differ from the single, company-wide, cost-allocation base. ABC systems are a further refinement of department-costing systems. In this section, we compare ABC systems and department-costing systems.

Reconsider our Plastim illustration. The indirect-cost rate for the design activity is, in fact, a Design Department indirect-cost rate. Plastim calculates the design activity rate by dividing total Design Department costs by a measure of the complexity of the mould (the driver of Design Department costs). Plastim does not find it worthwhile to calculate separate activity rates within the Design Department. Why? Because the complexity of the mould is an appropriate cost-allocation base for costs incurred for all design activities – the Design Department costs are homogeneous.

In contrast, in the Manufacturing (also in the Distribution) Department, Plastim identifies two activity-cost pools – a set-up-cost pool and a manufacturing operations-cost pool – instead of using a single Manufacturing Department indirect-cost pool. Why? For two reasons. First, each of these activities within manufacturing incurs significant costs and has a different driver of costs. Second, the S3 and CL5 lenses do not use resources from these two activity areas in the same proportion. For example, CL5 uses 75% (1500 ÷ 2000) of the set-up-hours but only 29.4% (3750 ÷ 12 750) of the machine-hours. Using only machine-hours, say, to allocate all Manufacturing Department costs at Plastim would result in CL5 being undercosted because it would not be charged for the significant set-up resources it actually uses.

The preceding discussion suggests the following. Using department indirect-cost rates to allocate costs to products results in the same product costs as activity-cost rates if (1) a single activity accounts for a sizeable fraction of the department's costs, or (2) significant costs are incurred on

different activities within a department but each activity has the same cost-allocation base, or (3) significant costs are incurred on different activities with different cost-allocation bases within a department but different products use resources from the different activity areas in the same proportions.

Where any one of these three conditions holds, using department indirect-cost rates rather than activity rates is often adequate. In companies where none of these conditions hold, department-costing systems can be refined using ABC. Emphasising activities leads to more focused and homogeneous cost pools, and aids in identifying activity-cost-allocation bases that have a better cause-and-effect relationship with the costs in activity-cost pools. But the benefits of an ABC system must be balanced against its costs and limitations.

Implementing ABC systems

Managers choose the level of detail in their costing systems by evaluating the costs of the system against the benefits that accrue from using these systems while also taking into account the context in which such systems are to operate. There are 'tell-tale' signs that indicate when ABC systems are likely to provide benefits. We list some signals here:

1. Significant amounts of indirect costs are allocated using only one or two cost pools.
2. All or most indirect costs are identified as output-unit-level costs (i.e. few indirect costs are described as batch-level, product-sustaining or facility-sustaining costs).
3. Products make diverse demands on resources because of differences in volume, process steps, batch size or complexity.
4. Products that a company is well suited to make and sell show small profits, whereas products that a company is less suited to produce and sell show large profits.
5. Complex products appear to be very profitable, and simple products appear to be losing money.
6. Operations staff have significant disagreements with the accounting staff about the costs of manufacturing and marketing products and services.

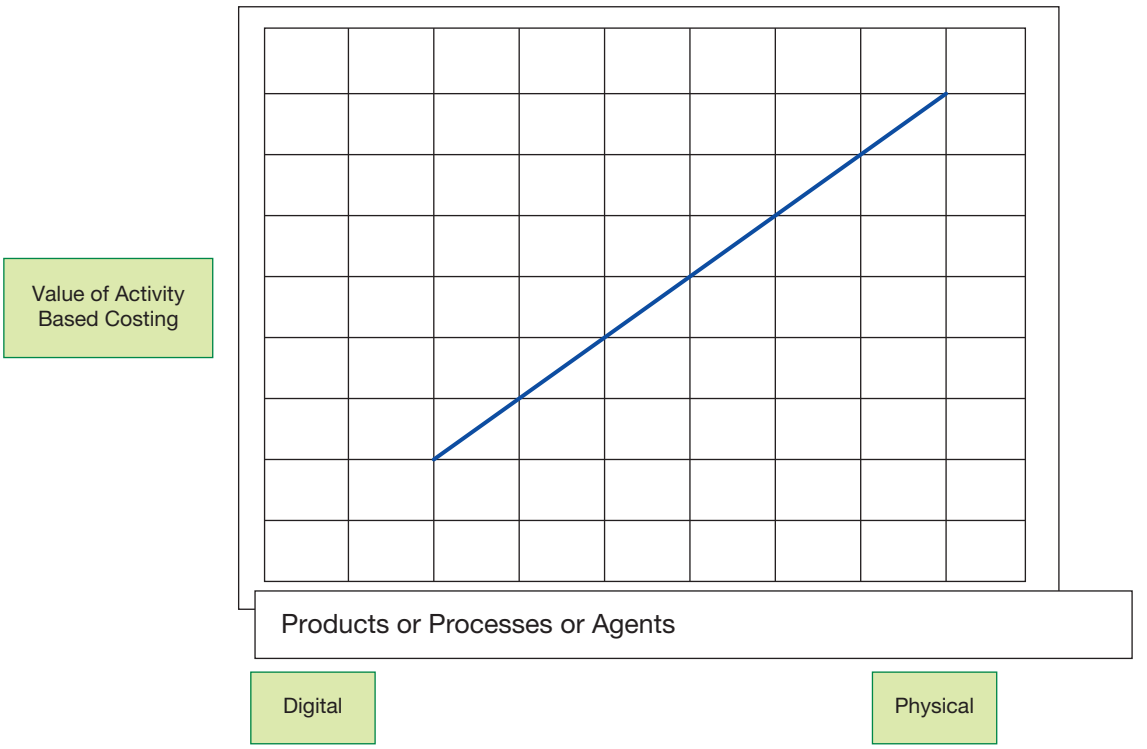
When a company decides to implement ABC, it must make important choices about the level of detail. Should it choose many finely specified activities, cost drivers and cost pools, or would a few suffice? For example, Plastim could define a different moulding machine-hour rate for each different type of moulding machine. In making such choices, managers consider the context, costs and limitations of refining costing systems.

ABC systems require management to estimate costs of activity pools and to identify and measure cost drivers for these pools to serve as cost-allocation bases. Even basic ABC systems require many calculations to determine costs of products and services. These measurements are costly. Activity-cost rates also need to be updated regularly. Very detailed ABC systems are costly to operate and difficult to understand.

In very detailed ABC systems, the allocations necessary to calculate activity costs often result in activity-cost pools being measured with error. At times, companies are also forced to use substitute allocation bases for which data are readily available rather than preferred allocation bases. For example, a company might be forced to use the number of loads moved, instead of the complexity and distance of different loads moved as the allocation base for material handling costs because the former is easier to measure. When measurement errors are large, activity-cost information can be misleading. For example, if the cost per load moved decreases, a company may conclude that it has become more efficient in its materials-handling operations. In fact, the lower cost per load moved may have resulted solely from moving lighter loads over shorter distances.

Managers always trade off the expected benefits of designing a more detailed and accurate ABC system against the expected measurement and implementation costs of the system. Improvements in information technology and accompanying declines in technology costs have enabled ABC to be a practical costing system in many organisations. Consider for instance, an enterprise

Exhibit 11.5 How digitalisation alters the value of activity based costing



Source: Adapted from Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How Digitalization is Changing Finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA).

which is digitalizing its activities and business hypotheses. It would likely witness alterations in its cost structure as it transforms, and the usage of cost information would also change. Digitalisation is likely to reduce the value of activity-based costing for most organisations. See Exhibit 11.5.

Cultural factors, management style and organisational characteristics are all important to consider prior to mobilising any accounting systems change. This is discussed next.

Concepts in action Do banks provide 'free' services?

A major source of profitability in retail banks is the interest rate spread (the difference between the rate at which a bank lends or invests money and the rate it pays its depositors). Banks use this interest rate spread to cover the costs of the many 'free' services provided to customers, such as 'free' cheques and 'free' overdrafts. Many banks use activity-based costing (ABC) to determine the costs of their many individual services. This involves examining how each service (such as a current account) uses the resources of the bank. Some banks believe that they have been losing money on customers who hold small balances and make frequent use of the many 'free'

services. In contrast, customers holding large balances and making limited use of the 'free' services are highly profitable to banks. These customers cross-subsidise those with small-balance accounts. This situation has particularly affected banks with a physical high-street retail presence. Likewise, e-banking services require fewer resources than the provision of off-line banking services. Banks offering both may also experience some level of cross-subsidisation. Many banks have responded to increased competition by instituting a detailed set of charges for services such as the following:

- non-approved overdraft over a preset limit
- banker's draft preparation
- special statement requests
- cheque stop-payment request
- cheque returned because of insufficient funds in account.

These charges may be derived following an analysis of the activities underlying each service. For example, returning a cheque because of lack of funds uses up more resources than putting a stop-payment on a cheque into effect. ABC information enables the magnitude of costs (and cross-subsidisation) to be known. This is useful to managers in understanding the effects of flat-fee pricing.

In 2018, Accenture reported that pricing was the foremost reason why consumers switch banks. About 40% of customers said they switched financial institutions because of pricing reasons. Principato (2021) notes however that 'protection of data' has become the most important factor on consumers' decision to switch banks. Pricing and fees come second. Very importantly, Millennials (those born between 1980 and 1994) and Generation Zers (born between 1995 and 2010) are the most likely to switch. They also place much less emphasis on physical branch location than older generations since their bank is their phone. We consider pricing at more length in Chapter 12. For now, it is important to know that for a bank or any enterprise, an understanding of product costs is useful as this usually feeds into pricing decisions.

Sources: www.hsbc.co.uk/1/2/savings-accounts/online-bonus-saver/apply-online-savings; Accenture (2018) 'The Financial Brand' (https://thefinancialbrand.com/69957/personalization-dynamic-pricing-ai-banking-analytics/). Principato, C. (2021) 'Here's why customers switch their primary bank', *Morning Consult*, 13 July (https://morningconsult.com/2021/07/13/heres-why-customers-switch-their-primary-bank/).

ABC and the organisational context

Throughout this book we have emphasised the need to consider technical management accounting issues in the light of organisational context. Organisations are subject to a variety of social and behavioural influences. One manager's aspirations will differ from the pursuits of another at the personal level. Different individuals tend to be motivated in different ways by common reward criteria. Moreover, individuals behave differently when working in teams as opposed to operating individually. Organisations have distinct cultures and sub-cultures and, often, political influence at the corporate level is tied to 'belonging' to particular groups or cliques or is simply determined by functional specialism. It is important to recognise that the implementation of a novel cost management approach can, in part, be the outcome of pressure for change as articulated by influential groups within the enterprise who show a preference for more financially oriented approaches to managerial control.

It is often the case that relations between management accountants and operational managers improve significantly following the implementation of activity-based costing. Perhaps this is due partly to ABC systems' requiring the management accountant to integrate operational information based on first-hand observation and discussions with individuals across different departments, functions and activities within the enterprise. Nevertheless, resistance to accounting systems change is often present. The cure is not always management education.

Aside from organisational culture and related contextual factors, it is likely that attitudes towards and preferences for cost management practices are influenced by wider factors which can

be nationally rooted (Bhimani et al., 2005). For instance, the traditional French full costing method is very similar to ABC. Therefore, many French managers perceive little or no incremental benefit from introducing ABC in their companies. Language also may be an obstacle, especially since there is no precise translation in French for ABC concepts. Activity-based costing has been developed in the USA and is based on a contractual system that clearly sets out the performances expected of each manager in each department. This system is consistent with the traditional 'managing by numbers' style that is prevalent in many American business organisations. The logic of this style of management stipulates that each person responsible for a budget must be assessed according to clearly defined objectives that were negotiated beforehand. As ABC identifies activities and cost drivers, it also defines activities in which managers have complete freedom to manoeuvre and the progress for which managers are individually or jointly responsible. It is possible that French cultural specificities may explain why the implementation of the ABC method has been slower in France than in Anglo-Saxon countries.

Sometimes, the intended objectives of an ABC or ABM system do not fully materialise and, indeed, a variety of unanticipated consequences arise. Changes in accounting systems rarely produce effects which are fully anticipated at the outset. Accounting systems changes tend to become enmeshed with interactions between individuals, processes, technologies, markets and other institutional factors, in often unpredictable ways. A good accounting system implementation is one which recognises the organisational state of flux within which it operates. What is clear is that the many experiences of ABC systems in use in organisations indicate that successful implementation requires more than an understanding of ABC technicalities. What then are some of the behavioural issues that the management accountant must be sensitive to? The following gives some pointers:

1. **Gain the support of top management:** this requires management accountants to lay out the vision for the ABC project and to clearly communicate its strategic benefits (for example, the resulting improvements in product and process design). It also requires selling the managers in the various areas affected by the ABC the idea to end-users and working with members of other departments as business partners of project.
2. **Create a coalition of supportive managers through the value chain:** systems measure how the resources of an organisation are used. Managers responsible for these resources have the best knowledge about activities and cost drivers. Getting managers to cooperate and take the initiative for implementing ABC is essential for gaining the required expertise, the proper credibility, and the necessary leadership. Gaining wider participation among managers has other benefits. Managers who feel more involved in the process are likely to commit more time to and be less sceptical of the ABC effort. Engaging managers throughout the value chain also creates greater opportunities for coordination and cooperation across the different functions, for example, design and manufacturing.
3. **Disseminating information about ABC throughout the organisation:** this allows workers in all areas of a business to use their knowledge of ABC to make improvements. Some firms share ABC information with its workers and also establish an incentive plan that give employees a percentage of the cost savings. The results can be dramatic because employees become empowered and motivated to implement numerous cost-saving projects.
4. **Look for small improvements initially:** too often, managers and management accountants seek big results and major changes far too quickly. In many situations, achieving a significant change overnight is difficult. However, showing how ABC information helps improve a process and save costs, even if only in small ways, motivates the team to stay on course and build momentum. The credibility gained from small victories leads to additional and bigger improvements involving larger numbers of people and different parts of the organisation. Eventually, ABC and ABM become rooted in the culture of the organisation. Sharing short-term successes may also help motivate employees to be innovative.
5. **Don't oversell ABC:** management accountants must help managers to recognise both the value and the limitations of ABC and not oversell it. Open and honest communication about ABC ensures that managers use ABC thoughtfully to make good decisions. Critical judgements can then be made without being adversarial, and tough questions can be asked to help drive better decisions about the system.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. Product undercosting (or overcosting) occurs when a product or service consumes a relatively high (low) level of resources, but is reported to have a relatively low (high) cost. Cost smoothing, a common cause of under- or overcosting, is the result of using broad averages that uniformly assign (spread) the cost of resources to products when the individual products use those resources in a non-uniform way. Product-cost cross-subsidisation exists when one or more undercosted (overcosted) products results in one or more other products being overcosted (undercosted).
2. Refining a costing system means making changes that result in cost numbers that better measure the way cost objects (such as jobs) differentially use the resources of the organisation. These changes can require additional direct-cost tracing, the choice of more indirect-cost pools, or the use of different cost-allocation bases.
3. An ABC approach differs from the traditional approach by its fundamental focus on activities. An ABC approach typically results in (a) more indirect-cost pools than the traditional approach, (b) more cost drivers used as cost-allocation bases, and (c) more frequent use of non-financial variables as cost-allocation bases.
4. A cost hierarchy is a categorisation of costs into different cost pools on the basis of different classes of cost drivers or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect (or benefits-received) relationships. Four levels of costs are output-unit-level costs, batch-level costs, product-sustaining costs and facility-sustaining costs.
5. In ABC, costs of activities are used to assign costs to other cost objects such as products or services.
6. Activity-based management (ABM) describes management decisions that use ABC information to satisfy customers and improve profits. ABM information can assist in decisions concerning pricing, product mix, costs reductions, process improvement, process or product redesign, and planning or managing activities.
7. Department-costing systems approximate ABC systems only when each department has a single activity or a single allocation base for different activities or when different products use departmental activities in the same proportions.
8. Extent of digitalization as well as organisational issues, cultural factors and employee behaviour affect the value of ABC adoption as well as its consequences and perceived success.

References and further reading

Bhimani, A. and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (London: Elsevier/CIMA)

Bhimani, A. M., Gosselin, M. and Ncube, M. (2005) 'Strategy and Activity Based Costing: A Cross National Study of Process and Outcome', *International Journal of Accounting, Auditing and Performance* Evaluation 2 (3): 187–205.

Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How Digitalization is Changing Finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA).

Cooper, R. and Kaplan, R.S. (1999) *The Design of Cost Management Systems* (Harlow: Prentice Hall).

Kaplan, R.S. and Cooper, R. (1998) *Cost and Effect* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press).

Major, M. (2007) 'Activity-based costing and management: a critical review', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds.) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall).

CHAPTER 11

Assessment material

Review questions

11.1 Define cost smoothing, and explain how managers can determine whether it occurs with their costing system.

11.2 Why should managers worry about product over- or undercosting?

11.3 What is costing system refinement? Describe three guidelines for such refinement.

11.4 What is an activity-based approach to designing a costing system?

11.5 'Increasing the number of indirect-cost pools is guaranteed to sizably increase the accuracy of product, service or customer costs.' Do you agree? Why?

11.6 The accountant of a retailer has just had a €50 000 request to implement an activity-based costing system quickly turned down. A senior vice-president, in rejecting the request, noted, 'Given a choice, I will always prefer a €50 000 investment in improving things a customer sees or experiences, such as our shelves or our store layout. How does a customer benefit by our spending €50 000 on a supposedly better accounting system?' How should the accountant respond?

11.7 What are the most frequently used allocation bases for manufacturing overhead costs?

11.8 Describe four levels of a manufacturing cost hierarchy.

11.9 'The existence of non-output-unit-level costs means that managers should not calculate unit product costs based on total manufacturing costs in all levels of the cost hierarchy.' Do you agree? Explain.

11.10 How is an activity-based approach different from a traditional approach to designing a job-costing system?

Exercises

Intermediate level

***11.11** **ABC, product-cost cross-subsidisation** (30 minutes)

McCarthy Potatoes processes potatoes into chips at its highly automated Longford plant. For many years, it processed potatoes for only the retail consumer market where it had a superb reputation for quality. Recently, it started selling chips to the institutional market that includes hospitals, cafeterias and university halls of residence. Its penetration into the institutional market has been slower than predicted. McCarthy's existing costing system has a single direct-cost category (direct materials, which are the raw potatoes) and a single indirect-cost pool (production

support). Support costs are allocated on the basis of kilograms of chips processed. Support costs include packaging material. This year's total actual costs for producing 1 000 000 kg of chips (900 000 for the retail market and 100 000 for the institutional market) are:

Direct materials used	€150 000
Production support	€983 000

The existing costing system does not distinguish between chips produced for the retail or the institutional markets.

At the end of the year, McCarthy unsuccessfully bid for a large institutional contract. Its bid was reported to be 30% above the winning bid. This came as a shock as McCarthy included only a minimum profit margin on its bid. Moreover, the Longford plant was widely acknowledged as the most efficient in the industry.

As part of its lost contract bid review process, McCarthy decided to explore several ways of refining its costing system. First, it identified that €188 000 of the €983 000 pertains to packaging materials that could be traced to individual jobs (€180 000 for retail and €8000 for institutional). These will now be classified as a direct material. The €150 000 of direct materials used were classified as €135 000 for retail and €15 000 for institutional. Second, it used activity-based costing (ABC) to examine how the two products (retail chips and institutional chips) used the support area differently. The finding was that three activity areas could be distinguished and that different usage occurred in two of these three areas. The indirect cost per kilogram of finished product at each activity area is as follows:

Activity area	Retail chips	Institutional chips
Cleaning	€0.120	€0.120
Cutting	0.240	0.150
Packaging	0.480	0.120

There was no opening or closing amount of any stock (materials, work in progress or finished goods).

Required

1 Using the current costing system, what is the cost per kilogram of chips produced by McCarthy?

2 Using the refined costing system, what is the cost per kilogram of (a) retail market chips, and (b) institutional market chips?

3 Comment on the cost differences shown between the two costing systems in requirements 1 and 2. How might McCarthy use the information in requirement 2 to make better decisions?

*11.12 ABC, activity area cost driver rates (continuation of Exercise 11.11) (30 minutes)

Exercise 11.11 reports ABC data for the three activity areas (cleaning, cutting and packaging) on a per output-unit basis (per kilogram of chips). This format emphasises product costing. An alternative approach that emphasises the costs of individual processes (activities) is to identify (a) the costs at each activity area, and (b) the rate per unit of the cost driver at each activity area. The following information pertains to (a) and (b):

- Cleaning activity area: McCarthy used 1.2 million kilograms of raw potatoes to yield 1 million kilograms of chips. No distinction is made as to the end-product when cleaning potatoes. The cost driver is kilograms of raw potatoes cleaned.

- Cutting activity area: McCarthy processes raw potatoes for the retail market independently of those processed for the institutional market. The production line produces (a) 250 kg of retail chips per cutting-hour, and (b) 400 kg of institutional chips per cutting-hour. The cost driver is cutting-hours on the production line.
- Packaging activity area: McCarthy packages chips for the retail market independently of those packaged for the institutional market. The packaging line packages (a) 25 kg of retail chips per packaging-hour, and (b) 100 kg of institutional chips per packaging-hour. The cost driver is packaging-hours on the production line.

Required

1 What are the total activity costs in the (a) cleaning, (b) cutting and (c) packaging activity areas?
2 What is the cost rate per unit of the cost driver in the (a) cleaning, (b) cutting and (c) packaging activity areas?
3 How might McCarthy Potatoes use information about the cost driver rates calculated in requirement 2 to better manage the Longford plant?

11.13 Activity-based costing, product-cost cross-subsidisation (30–40 minutes)

Starkuchen GmbH has been in the food-processing business for three years. For its first two years (2021 and 2022), its sole product was raisin cake. All cakes were manufactured and packaged in 1 kg units. A normal costing system was used by Starkuchen. The two direct-cost categories were direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. The sole indirect manufacturing cost category – manufacturing overhead – was allocated to products using a units of production allocation base.

In its third year (2023) Starkuchen added a second product – layered carrot cake – that was packaged in 1 kg units. This product differs from raisin cake in several ways:

- more expensive ingredients are used
- more direct manufacturing labour time is required
- more complex manufacturing is required.

In 2023, Starkuchen continued to use its existing costing system where a unit of production of either cake was weighted the same.

Direct materials costs in 2023 were €0.60 per kg of raisin cake and €0.90 per kg of layered carrot cake. Direct manufacturing labour cost in 2023 was €0.14 per kg of raisin cake and €0.20 per kg of layered carrot cake.

During 2023, Starkuchen sales people reported greater-than-expected sales of layered carrot cake and less-than-expected sales of raisin cake. The budgeted and actual sales volumes for 2023 were as follows:

	Budgeted	Actual
Raisin cake	160 000 kg	120 000 kg
Layered carrot cake	40 000 kg	80 000 kg

The budgeted manufacturing overhead for 2023 was €210 800.

At the end of 2023, Wolfgang Iser, the accountant of Starkuchen, decided to investigate how use of an activity-based costing system would affect the product-cost numbers. After consultation with operating personnel, the single manufacturing overhead cost pool was subdivided into five activity areas. These activity areas, their driver, their 2023 budgeted rate and the driver units used per kilogram of each cake are as follows:

Activity	Driver	Budgeted 2023 cost per driver unit	Driver units per kg of raisin cake	Driver units per kg of layered carrot cake
1 Mixing	Labour time	€0.04	5	8
2 Cooking	Oven time	€0.14	2	3
3 Cooling	Cool room time	€0.02	3	5
4 Creaming/icing	Machine time	€0.25	0	3
5 Packaging	Machine time	€0.08	3	7

Required

1 Calculate the 2023 unit product cost of raisin cake and layered carrot cake with the normal costing system used in the 2021 to 2022 period.

2 Calculate the 2023 unit product cost per cake under the activity-based normal costing system.

3 Explain the differences in unit product costs calculated in requirements 1 and 2.

4 Describe three uses Starkuchen might make of the activity-based cost numbers.

11.14 Activity-based costing, under- or overallocated indirect costs (continuation of Exercise 11.13) (40 minutes)

Wolfgang Iser, the accountant of Starkuchen, wants to further examine the relative profitability of raisin cake and layered carrot cake. He questions the accuracy of the activity-based normal costing numbers. He notes that the 2021 actual manufacturing indirect cost was €256 256. This differs sizably from the €210 800 budgeted amount. The 2021 actual indirect costs per activity area were as follows:

Activity area	2021 actual costs
Mixing	€62 400
Cooking	83 840
Cooling	12 416
Creaming/icing	36 000
Packaging	61 600
	€256 256

Required

1 Calculate the under- or overallocated manufacturing indirect costs in 2021 for:
   a Each of the five activity area indirect-cost pools.
   b The *aggregate* of individual activity area indirect costs.

2 Assume that Starkuchen allocates under- or overallocated indirect costs to individual accounts based on the allocated overhead component in that account. What are the pros and cons of using:
   a Five separate under- or overallocated adjustments (one for each activity area)?
   b One under- or overallocated adjustment for the aggregate of all activity area indirect costs?

3 Calculate the 2021 actual unit product cost for raisin cake and layered carrot cake using the information calculated in requirement 1a.

4 Comment on the implications of the product-cost numbers in requirement 3 for Starkuchen's pricing decisions in 2022.

11.15 ABC and Budgets (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006) (25 minutes)

CJD Ltd manufactures plastic components for the car industry. The following budgeted infomation is available for three of their key plastic components:

	W £ per unit	X £ per unit	Y £ per unit
Selling price	200	183	175
Direct material	50	40	35
Direct labour	30	35	30
Units produced and sold	10 000	15 000	18 000

The total number of activities for each of the three products for the period is as follows:

	W	X	Y
Number of purchase requisitions	1 200	1 800	2 000
Number of set-ups	240	260	300

Overhead costs have been analysed as follows:

Receiving/inspecting quality assurance	£1 400 000
Production scheduling/machine set-up	£1 200 000

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted profit per unit for each of the three products using activity-based budgeting.

Advanced level

11.16 Activity-based job-costing system (40 minutes)

Henriksen AS manufactures and sells packaging machines. It recently used an activity-based approach to refine the job-costing system at its Vejle plant. The resulting job-costing system has one direct-cost category (direct materials) and four indirect manufacturing cost pools. These four indirect-cost pools and their allocation bases were chosen by a team of product designers, manufacturing personnel and marketing personnel:

Indirect manufacturing cost pool	Cost-allocation base	Budgeted cost-allocation rate
1 Materials handling	Component parts	DKr 8 per part
2 Machining	Machine-hours	DKr 68 per hour
3 Assembly	Assembly-line-hours	DKr 75 per hour
4 Inspection	Inspection-hours	DKr 104 per hour

Langeland recently purchased 50 can-packaging machines from Henriksen AS. Each machine has direct materials costs of DKr 3000, requires 50 component parts, 12 machine-hours, 15 assembly-hours and 4 inspection-hours.

Henriksen's prior costing system had one direct-cost category (direct materials) and one indirect-cost category (manufacturing overhead, allocated using assembly-hours).

Required

1. Present overview diagrams of the prior job-costing system and the refined activity-based job-costing system.
2. Calculate the unit manufacturing costs (using ABC) of each machine and the total manufacturing cost of the Langeland job.
3. The activity-based job-costing system of Henriksen has only one manufacturing direct-cost category: direct materials. A competitor of the Henriksen Company has two direct-cost categories at its manufacturing plant: direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. Why might Henriksen not have a direct manufacturing labour costs category in its job-costing system? Where are the manufacturing labour costs included in the Henriksen costing system?
4. What information might members of the team that refined the prior costing system find useful in the activity-based job-costing system?

11.17 Activity-based job costing (15 minutes)

Baden-Möbel GmbH manufactures a variety of prestige boardroom chairs. Its job-costing system was designed using an activity-based approach. There are two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and three indirect-cost pools. These three cost pools represent three activity areas at the plant:

Manufacturing activity area	Budgeted costs for 2022	Cost driver used as allocation base	Cost-allocation rate
Materials handling	200 000	Parts	€0.25
Cutting	2 160 000	Parts	2.50
Assembly	2 000 000	Direct manufacturing labour-hours	25.00

Two styles of chairs were produced in March, the executive chair and the chairman chair. Their quantities, direct material costs and other data for March 2022 are as follows:

	Units produced	Direct material costs	Number of parts	Direct manufacturing labour-hours
Executive chair	5 000	€600 000	100 000	7 500
Chairman chair	100	25 000	3 500	500

The direct manufacturing labour rate is €20 per hour. Assume no opening or closing stock.

Required

1. Calculate the March 2022 total manufacturing costs and unit costs of the executive chair and the chairman chair.
2. Suppose that the upstream activities to manufacturing (R&D and design) and the downstream activities (marketing, distribution and customer service) were analysed. The unit costs in 2022 were budgeted to be as follows:

	Upstream activities	Downstream activities
Executive chair	€60	€110
Chairman chair	146	236

Calculate the full product costs per unit of each line of chairs. (Full product costs are the sum of the costs in all business function areas.)

*11.18 Activity-based job costing, unit-cost comparisons (30 minutes)

Aircomposystèmes SA has a machining facility specialising in work for the aircraft components market. The prior job-costing system had two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and a single indirect-cost pool (manufacturing overhead, allocated using direct labour-hours). The indirect-cost-allocation rate of the prior system for the year would have been SFr 115 per direct manufacturing labour-hour. Recently, a team with members from product design, manufacturing and accounting used an activity-based approach to refine its job-costing system. The two direct-cost categories were retained. The team decided to replace the single indirect-cost pool with five indirect-cost pools. These five cost pools represent five activity areas at the facility, each with its own supervisor and budget responsibility. Pertinent data are as follows:

Activity area	Cost driver used as allocation base	Cost-allocation rate
Materials handling	Parts	SFr 0.40
Lathe work	Turns	0.20
Milling	Machine-hours	20.00
Grinding	Parts	0.80
Testing	Units tested	15.00

Information-gathering technology has advanced to the point where all the data necessary for budgeting in these five activity areas are automatically collected. Two representative jobs processed under the new system at the facility in the most recent period had the following characteristics:

	Job 410	Job 411
Direct materials cost per job	SFr 9 700	SFr 59 900
Direct manufacturing labour cost per job	750	11 250
Direct manufacturing labour-hours per job	25	375
Parts per job	500	2 000
Turns per job	20 000	60 000
Machine-hours per job	150	1 050
Units per job	10	200

Required

1. Calculate the per-unit manufacturing costs of each job under the prior job-costing system.
2. Calculate the per-unit manufacturing costs of each job under the activity-based job-costing system.
3. Compare the per-unit cost figures for Jobs 410 and 411 calculated in requirements 1 and 2. Why do the prior and the activity-based costing systems differ in their job cost estimates for each job? Why might these differences be important to Aircomposystèmes?

11.19 Question from the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants, Pilot Paper 2.4, Financial Management and Control (45 minutes)

1 Discuss the conditions under which the introduction of ABC is likely to be most effective, paying particular attention to:
- product mix;
- the significance of overheads and the ABC method of charging costs;
- the availability of information collection procedures and resources; and
- other appropriate factors.

2 Explain why ABC might lead to a more accurate assessment of management performance than absorption costing.

11.20 Question from the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Performance Management, section B, June 2015 (40 minutes)

Beckley Hill (BH) is a private hospital carrying out two types of procedures on patients. Each type of procedure incurs the following direct costs:

Procedure	A (€)	B (€)
Surgical time and materials	1200	2640
Anaesthesia time and materials	800	1620

BH currently calculates the overhead cost per procedure by taking the total overhead cost and simply dividing it by the number of procedures, then rounding the cost to the nearest 2 decimal places. Using this method, the total cost is €2 475.85 for Procedure A and €4735.85 for Procedure B. Recently, another local hospital has implemented activity-based costing (ABC). This has led the finance director at BH to consider whether this alternative costing technique would bring any benefits to BH. He has obtained an analysis of BH's total overheads for the last year and some additional data, all of which is shown below:

Cost	Cost driver	€
Administrative costs	Administrative time per procedure	1 870 160
Nursing costs	Length of patient stay	6 215 616
Catering costs	Number of meals	966 976
General facility costs	Length of patient stay	8 553 600
Total overhead costs		17 606 352

Procedure	A	B
No. of procedures	14 600	22 400
Administrative time per procedure (hours)	1	1.5
Length of patient stay per procedure (hours)	24	48
Average number of meals required per patient	1	4

Required

1 Calculate the full cost per procedure using activity-based costing.

2 Making reference to your findings in part (a), advise the finance director as to whether activity-based costing should be implemented at BH.

11.21 Question from Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Performance Management, June 2014, (45 minutes)

Duff Co manufactures three products, X, Y and Z. Demand for products X and Y is relatively elastic while demand for product Z is relatively inelastic. Each product uses the same materials and the same type of direct labour but in different quantities. For many years, the company has been using full absorption costing and absorbing overheads on the basis of direct labour hours. Selling prices are then determined using cost plus pricing. This is common within this industry, with most competitors applying a standard mark-up. Budgeted production and sales volumes for X, Y and Z for the next year are 20 000 units, 16 000 units and 22 000 units respectively. The budgeted direct costs of the three products are shown below:

Product	X (£ per unit)	Y (£ per unit)	Z (£ per unit)
Direct materials	25	28	22
Direct labour (£12 per hour)	30	36	24

In the next year, Duff Co also expects to incur indirect production costs of £1 377 400, which are analysed as follows:

Cost pools	£	Cost drivers
Machine set-up costs	280 000	Number of batches
Material ordering costs	316 000	Number of purchase orders
Machine running costs	420 000	Number of machine-hours
General facility costs	361 400	Number of machine-hours
	1 377 400	

The following additional data relate to each product:

Product	X	Y	Z
Batch size (units)	500	800	400
No of purchase orders per batch	4	5	4
Machine-hours per unit	1.5	1.25	1.4

Duff Co wants to boost sales revenue in order to increase profits but its capacity to do this is limited because of its use of cost plus pricing and the application of the standard mark-up. The finance director has suggested using activity-based costing (ABC) instead of full absorption costing, since this will alter the cost of the products and may therefore enable a different price to be charged.

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted full production cost per unit of each product using Duff Co's current method of absorption costing. All workings should be to two decimal places.

2 Calculate the budgeted full production cost per unit of each product using activity-based costing. All workings should be to two decimal places.

3 Discuss the impact on the selling prices and the sales volumes *of each product* which a change to activity-based costing would be expected to bring about.

CHAPTER 12

Pricing issues and customer profitability analysis

Pricing decisions are concerned with what to charge for the products and services delivered by organisations. For brevity, we use the term 'pricing decision' in this chapter to include decisions about the profitability of products. These decisions impact upon the revenues a company earns, which must exceed total costs if profits are to be achieved. Consequently, determining product costs is important for pricing decisions. There is, however, no single way of computing a product cost that is universally relevant for all pricing decisions. Why? Because pricing decisions differ greatly in both their time horizons and their contexts. For instance, McDonald's may set a price of £2.99 for a hamburger. This is a 'take it or leave it' price. A house-seller may set an asking price of €495 000 for her villa in Faro and expect potential buyers to negotiate downwards from this price. We emphasise how an understanding of cost-behaviour patterns and cost drivers can lead to more informed pricing decisions and we apply the relevant-revenue and relevant-cost framework described in Chapter 10 in choosing between options. Proper pricing can heighten a company's profits yet surveys on pricing practices reveal that companies often fail to engage in the best pricing approaches. A recent study asked consumers to identify approaches they thought are commonly used by businesses in communicating aspects of a brand or a product (Bertini et al., 2022). The study indicated that in 24% of cases price was mentioned and, in fact, price was ranked as the most effective tool or activity by half the respondents. When executives from different industries were asked the same question, over 60% regarded conventional or digital advertising as the most important, with 'price' not being mentioned at all!

You may have searched for a particular product or service online and faced a price that alters rapidly. The online seller may be using 'dynamic pricing', where as more and more data captured in real time is analysed, the price for the product you want to purchase is recalculated. Here, data analytics on the product's demand, supply and customer characteristics feed into a dynamic of continuous price determination and revenue management (Bhimani 2021).

Economic theory indicates that companies acting optimally should produce and sell units until the marginal revenue (the additional revenue from selling an additional unit based on the demand for a product) equals the marginal or variable cost (the additional cost of supplying an additional unit). The market price is the price that creates a demand for these optimal numbers of units. This chapter describes how managers evaluate demand at different prices, manage their costs to influence supply, and earn a profit. We also consider the analysis of customer revenues and customer costs. Customer profitability analysis provides important information on profits generated by different customers rather than generic profits by product types.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Discuss the three major influences on pricing decisions
- Distinguish between short-run and long-run pricing decisions
- Describe the target-costing approach to pricing
- Distinguish between cost incurrence and locked-in costs
- Describe the cost-plus approach to pricing
- Explain how life-cycle product budgeting and costing assist in pricing decisions
- Discuss why revenues can differ across customers purchasing the same product
- Apply the concept of cost hierarchy to customer costing
- Show how customer profitability reports can be prepared to highlight differences across customers in their profitability

Major influences on pricing

There are three major influences on pricing decisions: customers, competitors and costs.

Customers

Managers must always examine pricing problems through the eyes of their customers. A price increase may cause customers to reject a company's product and choose a competing or substitute product. Understanding customers' price and product characteristic preferences is a core competitive strength for business today. As noted above many organisations use dynamic pricing where firms price in response to demand, to create demand, to learn from its customers' sensitivity to price, to make certain customers loyal, and so on. Many businesses use customer profiling and targeted pricing to refine product offerings to match individual customers' characteristics.

Competitors

Competitors' reactions influence pricing decisions. Companies such as Carrefour or Tesco, which face alternative or substitute products of competitors, can see their demand being affected, causing them to lower prices. Other companies such as Apple and Porsche have distinctive products and limited competition and are free to set higher prices. So, at one extreme, a rival's prices and products may force a business to lower its prices in order to be competitive. At the other extreme, a business without a rival in a given situation, can set higher prices. A business with knowledge of its rivals' technology, plant capacity and operating policies can estimate its rivals' costs, which is valuable information in setting competitive prices.

Competitor analysis takes different forms. Many companies across the globe have established departments to search out information on their competitors' financial performance, patents, technologies, revenue and cost structures, and strategic alliances. Competitors themselves and their customers, suppliers and former employees are important sources of information. Another form of obtaining information is via reverse engineering – a process of analysing and tearing down competitors' products – to incorporate the best features, materials and technology in a company's own designs.

Competition spans international borders. For example, when companies have excess capacity in their domestic markets, they often take an aggressive pricing policy in their export markets. Today, managers often take a global viewpoint, and it is increasingly common for them to consider both domestic and international rivals in making pricing decisions.

Costs

Companies generally price products to exceed the costs of making them. The study of cost- behaviour patterns gives insight into the income that results from different combinations of price and output quantities sold for a particular product.

Surveys and corporate case studies of how executives make pricing decisions reveal that companies weigh customers, competitors and costs differently. Companies selling commodity-type products in highly competitive markets must accept the price determined by market forces. For example, sellers of wheat, rice and soya beans have many competitors, each offering the identical product at the same price. The market sets the price, but cost data can help these sellers to decide, say, on the output level that best meets a company's particular objective.

In less competitive markets, such as for televisions or mobile phones, products are differentiated, and all three factors affect price. The pricing decision depends on how much customers value the product, the pricing strategies of competitors, and the costs of the product. As competition lessens even more, the key factor affecting pricing decisions is the customer's willingness to pay; costs and competitors become less important in the pricing decision.

When reducing costs, a company must consider costs across all its value-chain business functions, from R&D to customer service. In computing the costs within these functions that are relevant in a pricing decision, the time horizon of the decision is critical. Most pricing decisions are either short run or long run. Short-run decisions include (1) pricing for a one-off special order with no long-term implications, and (2) adjusting product mix and output volume in a competitive market. The time horizon used to calculate those costs that differ among the alternatives for short-run decisions is typically six months or less but sometimes as long as a year. Long-run decisions include pricing a product in a major market where price setting has considerable leeway. A time horizon of a year or longer is used when computing relevant costs for these long-run decisions. Many pricing decisions have both short-run and long-run implications. We next examine short-run pricing decisions.

Costing and pricing for the short run

A one-off special order

Consider a one-off special order from a customer to supply products for the next four months. Acceptance or rejection of the order will not affect the revenues (units sold or the selling price per unit) from existing sales outlets. The customer is unlikely to place any future sales orders.

The English Tea Company (ETC) operates a plant with a monthly capacity of 1 million cases (each case consisting of 200 cans) of iced tea. Current production and sales are 600 000 cases per month. The selling price is €90 per case. Costs of R&D and product and process design at ETC are negligible. Customer-service costs are also small and are included in marketing costs. All variable costs vary with respect to output units (cases), and production is equal to sales. The variable cost per case and the fixed cost per case (based on a production quantity of 600 000 cases per month) are as follows:

	Variable cost per case	Fixed cost per case	Variable and fixed cost per case
Manufacturing costs			
Direct materials costs	€7	–	€7
Packaging costs	18	–	18
Direct manufacturing labour costs	4	–	4
Manufacturing overhead costs	6	€13	19
Manufacturing costs	35	13	48
Marketing costs	5	16	21
Distribution costs	9	8	17
Full product costs	€49	€37	€86

Variable manufacturing overhead of €6 per case is the cost of heating, cooling and lighting. Details of the fixed manufacturing overhead costs and their per-case unitised costs (based on a production quantity of 600 000 cases per month) are as follows:

	Total fixed manufacturing overhead costs	Fixed manufacturing overhead cost per case
Depreciation and production support costs	€3 000 000	€5
Materials procurement costs	600 000	1
Salaries paid for process changeover	1 800 000	3
Product and process engineering costs	2 400 000	4
Total fixed manufacturing overhead costs	€7 800 000	€13

Uganda Tea (UT) is constructing a new plant to make iced tea in Kampala. The plant will not open for 4 months. UT's management, however, wants to start selling 250 000 cases of iced tea each month for the next 4 months in Uganda. UT has asked ETC and two other companies to bid on this special order. From a manufacturing-cost viewpoint, the iced tea to be made for UT is identical to that currently made by ETC.

If ETC makes the extra 250 000 cases, the existing total fixed manufacturing overhead (€7 800 000 per month) would continue to be incurred. In addition, ETC would incur a further €300 000 in fixed manufacturing overhead costs (materials procurement costs of €100 000 and process-changeover costs of €200 000) each month. No additional costs will be required for R&D, design, marketing, distribution or customer service. The 250 000 cases will be marketed by UT in Uganda, where ETC does not sell its iced tea.

A senior manager of UT notifies each potential bidder that a bid above €45 per case will probably be non-competitive. ETC knows that one of its competitors, with a highly efficient plant, has sizeable idle capacity and will definitely bid for the contract. What price should ETC bid for the 250 000-case contract?

To calculate the relevant costs for the price-bidding decision, ETC systematically analyses the costs in each business function of the value chain. In this example, only manufacturing costs are relevant. All other costs in the value chain will be unaffected if the special order is accepted, so they are irrelevant.

Exhibit 12.1 presents an analysis of the relevant costs. They include all manufacturing costs that will change in total if the special order is obtained: all direct and indirect variable manufacturing costs plus materials procurement costs and process-changeover salaries related to the special order. *Existing* fixed manufacturing overhead costs are irrelevant. Why? Because these costs will not change if the special order is accepted. But the *additional* materials procurement and process-changeover salaries of €300 000 per month for the special order are relevant because these additional fixed manufacturing costs will only be incurred if the special order is accepted.

Exhibit 12.1 shows the total relevant costs of €9 050 000 per month (or €36.20 per case) for the 250 000-case special order. Any bid above €36.20 per case will improve ETC's profitability. For example, a successful bid of €40 per case, well under UT's ceiling of €45 per case, will add €950 000 to ETC's monthly operating profit: 250 000 × (€40 − €36.20) = €950 000. Note again how unit costs can mislead. The first table in this example reports total manufacturing costs to be €48 per case. The €48 cost might erroneously suggest that a bid of €45 per case for the UT special order will result in ETC sustaining a €3 per case loss on the contract. Why erroneous? Because total manufacturing cost per case includes €13 of fixed manufacturing cost per case that will not be incurred on the 250 000-case special order. These costs are hence irrelevant for the special-order bid.

Exhibit 12.1 Monthly relevant costs for ETC: the 250 000-case one-off special order

Direct materials (250 000 cases × €7)		€1 750 000
Packaging (250 000 cases × €18)		4 500 000
Direct manufacturing labour (250 000 cases × €4)		1 000 000
Variable manufacturing overhead (250 000 cases × €6)		1 500 000
Fixed manufacturing overhead		
Materials procurement	€100 000	
Salaries paid for process changeover	200 000	
Total fixed manufacturing overhead		300 000
Total relevant costs		€9 050 000
Per case relevant costs: (€9 050 000 ÷ 250 000 cases = €36.20)		

Cost data, though key information in ETC's decision on the price to bid, are not the only inputs. ETC must also consider business rivals and their likely bids. For example, if ETC knows that its under-capacity rival plans to bid €39 per case, ETC will bid €38 per case instead of €40 per case.

Costing and pricing for the long run

Many pricing decisions are made for the long run. Buyers – whether a person buying a bar of chocolate, a construction company, such as Tarmac, buying a fleet of tractors, or Lloyd's bank buying audit services – prefer stable prices over an extended time horizon. A stable price reduces the need for continuous monitoring of suppliers' prices. Greater price stability also improves planning and builds long-run buyer–seller relationships. But to charge a stable price and earn the target long-run return, managers must know and manage long-run costs of supplying products to customers, which includes *all* future direct and indirect costs. Recall that *indirect costs* of a particular cost object are costs that are related to that cost object, but cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible (cost-effective) way. These costs often comprise a large percentage of the overall costs assigned to cost objects such as products, customers, and distribution channels.

Calculating product costs

Obtaining appropriate product-cost information is useful to a manager making a pricing decision. In industries such as oil and gas and mining, competitive forces set the price for a product, and knowledge of long-run product costs can guide decisions about entering or remaining in the market. In other industries such as specialised machines, appliances and motor vehicles, managers have some control over the price charged for a product, and long-run product costs can be used as a base for setting that price.

Consider the Astel Computer Company. Astel manufactures two brands of personal computers (PCs): Deskpoint and Provalue. Deskpoint is Astel's top-of-the-range product using the Intel Core i5-12600K processor sold through computer dealers to large organisations and government accounts. Our analysis focuses on pricing Provalue, a less powerful Intel Core i3-7100-based machine sold through catalogues and mass merchandisers to individual consumers and small organisations.

The manufacturing costs of Provalue are calculated using the activity-based costing (ABC) approach described in Chapter 11. Astel has three direct manufacturing cost categories (direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and direct machining costs) and three indirect manufacturing cost pools (materials handling, testing and inspection, and rework) in its accounting system. Astel treats machining costs as a direct cost of Provalue because it is manufactured on machines that are used for no other products. The following table summarises the activity-cost pools, the cost driver for each activity, and the cost per unit of the cost driver Astel uses to allocate manufacturing overhead costs to products.

	Manufacturing activity	Description of activity	Cost driver	Cost per unit of cost driver
1	Materials handling	Placing orders, receiving and paying for components	Number of orders	€80 per order
2	Testing and inspection	Testing components and final product	Testing-hours	€2 per testing-hour
3	Rework	Correcting and fixing errors and defects	Units reworked	€100 per unit reworked

Astel uses a long-run time horizon to price Provalue. Over this horizon, Astel's management views direct materials costs and direct manufacturing labour costs as variable with respect to the units of Provalue produced, and manufacturing overhead costs as variable with respect to their chosen cost drivers. For example, ordering and receiving costs vary with the number of orders. Staff members responsible for placing orders can be reassigned or laid off in the long run if fewer orders need to be placed. Direct machining costs (rent paid on leased machines) do not vary over this time horizon for the relevant range of production; they are fixed long-run costs.

Astel has no opening or closing stock of Provalue in 2022 and manufactures and sells 150 000 units. How does Astel calculate Provalue's manufacturing costs? It uses the following information, which indicates the resources used to manufacture Provalue in 2022:

1. Direct materials costs per unit of Provalue are €460.
2. Direct manufacturing labour costs per unit of Provalue are €64.
3. Direct fixed costs of machines used exclusively for the manufacture of Provalue are €11 400 000.
4. Number of orders placed to purchase components required for the manufacture of Provalue is 22 500. (We assume for simplicity that Provalue has 450 components supplied by different suppliers, and that 50 orders are placed for each component to match Provalue's production schedule.)
5. Number of testing-hours used for Provalue is 4 500 000 (150 000 Provalue units are tested for 30 hours per unit).
6. Number of units of Provalue reworked during the year is 12 000 (8% of the 150 000 units manufactured).

The detailed calculations underlying each of these numbers are shown in Exhibit 12.2. This exhibit indicates that the total costs of manufacturing Provalue are €102 million, and the manufacturing cost per unit of Provalue is €680. Manufacturing, however, is just one business function in the value chain. For setting long-run prices and for managing costs, Astel determines the full product costs of Provalue.

Exhibit 12.2 Manufacturing costs of Provalue in 2022 using activity-based costing

	Total manufacturing costs for 150 000 units (1)	Manufacturing cost per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 150 000
Direct manufacturing costs		
Direct materials costs (150 000 units × €460)	€69 000 000	€460
Direct manufacturing labour costs (150 000 units × €64)	9 600 000	64
Direct machining costs (fixed costs of €11 400 000)	11 400 000	76
Direct manufacturing costs	90 000 000	600
Manufacturing overhead costs		
Ordering and receiving costs (22 500 orders × €80)	1 800 000	12
Testing and inspection costs (4 500 000 hours × €2)	9 000 000	60
Rework costs (12 000 units × €100)	1 200 000	8
Manufacturing overhead costs	12 000 000	80
Total manufacturing costs	€102 000 000	€680

Exhibit 12.3 Product profitability of Provalue in 2022 based on value-chain activity-based costing

	Total for 150 000 units (1)	Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 150 000
Revenues	€150 000 000	€1000
Cost of goods sold*		
(from Exhibit 12.2)		
Direct materials costs	69 000 000	460
Direct manufacturing labour costs	9 600 000	64
Direct machining costs	11 400 000	76
Manufacturing overhead costs	12 000 000	80
Cost of goods sold	102 000 000	680
Operating costs		
R&D costs	5 400 000	36
Design costs of products and processes	6 000 000	40
Marketing costs	15 000 000	100
Distribution costs	3 600 000	24
Customer-service costs	3 000 000	20
Operating costs	33 000 000	220
Full product costs	135 000 000	900
Operating profit	€15 000 000	€100

* Cost of goods sold = Total manufacturing costs since there is no opening or closing stock of Provalue in 2022.

For brevity, we do not present any detailed analyses or calculations for the other value-chain functions. Astel chooses cost drivers and cost pools in each value-chain function to measure the cause-and-effect relationship between the activities and costs within each activity's cost pool. Costs are allocated to Provalue on the basis of the quantity of cost driver units that Provalue requires. Exhibit 12.3 summarises the product operating profit statement for Provalue for the year 2022 based on an activity analysis of costs in its value-chain functions (supporting calculations for non-manufacturing value-chain functions are not given). Astel earned €15 million from Provalue, or €100 per unit sold. We next consider the role of costs in long-run pricing decisions.

Alternative long-run pricing approaches

The starting point for pricing decisions can be:

1 market-based
2 cost-based (also called cost-plus).

The market-based approach to pricing *starts* by asking: Given what our customers want and how our competitors will react to what we do, what price should we charge? The cost-based approach to pricing *starts* by asking: What does it cost us to make this product, and hence what price should we charge that will recoup our costs and produce a desired profit? Both approaches consider customers, competitors and costs. Only their starting points differ.

In very competitive markets (for example, oil and gas, and airlines) the market-based approach is logical. The items produced or services provided by one company are very similar to those produced or provided by others, so companies have no influence over the prices to charge. In other industries, where there is more product differentiation (for example, motor vehicles, management consulting and legal services) firms have some discretion over prices, products and services.

Companies choose prices and product and service features on the basis of anticipated customer and competitor reactions. A final decision on price, product and service is made after evaluating these external influences on pricing along with the costs to produce and sell the product.

Under the cost-plus approach, price is first calculated on the basis of the costs to produce and sell a product. Typically, a mark-up, representing a reasonable return, is added to cost. Often, the price is then modified on the basis of anticipated customer reaction to alternative price levels and the prices charged by competitors for similar products. In short, market forces dictate the eventual size of the mark-up and thus the final price. Recent surveys of pricing practices report widespread use of cost-plus pricing.

Concepts in action — Pricing and digitalisation at H&M

The Swedish-based company H&M is the world's second biggest fashion retailer. It employs over 125 000 people working at more than 4800 stores across 74 countries. H&M has been an innovator in that when it decides to produce an item, members of its 160 in-house team of designers set out to strike the right balance between fashion, quality and price. Concept teams of designers, buyers, pattern makers and a controller work together to set a target price. H&M outsources to suppliers throughout Europe and Asia to manufacture the item. High-volume items such as basics and children's wear are ordered far in advance to ensure volume-based cost efficiencies. Trendy items in small quantities are produced at shorter notice. Once produced, the items are shipped to H&M's logistics centres for distribution to stores. H&M stores carry no backup stocks. Stores are replenished directly from the logistic centres, allowing stores to be restocked quickly with only the best-selling products. H&M has incorporated sustainability into its target pricing and cost management practices. Around 90% of H&M's products are transported from suppliers to distribution centres via sea or rail to avoid fossil-fuel-intensive air and road shipping. H&M achieved high growth through aggressive target pricing, coupled with 'cost-consciousness' across the company and fast-fashion concepts. The COVID-19 pandemic caused losses. The first quarter of 2021 showed losses of $140 million but the fashion retailer was back in profit during the first quarter of 2022 with pretax profit of $30 million. H&M CEO Helena Helmersson noted that: 'We are increasing digital investments, accelerating store consolidation, and making the channels further integrated.' This reflected the trend that, 'More and more customers started shopping online during the pandemic, and they are making it clear that they value a convenient and inspiring experience in which stores and online interact and strengthen each other.' The company had profits exceeding $250 million in the first pre-pandemic quarter of 2020 and analysts had forecasted a profit of about $100 million for 2022 quarter 1. CEO Helmersson's strategy is to focus on pricing: 'Looking at inflation it's primarily raw material and transportation costs that affect us and we see, as do many others, that we need to adjust our prices . . . We'll raise different product types in different countries depending on competition and demand.'

Sources: Andrew Hoffman et al. (2014) 'H&M's global supply chain management sustainability: factories and fast fashion', University of Michigan Erb Institute No. 1-429-373 (Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan); 'Sales development in 2015', H&M AB press release (Stockholm, Sweden, 15 December 2015) (https://hmgroup.com/wp-content/uploads/2020/11/1624199_en.pdf); H&M AB, 'From idea to store' (https://hmgroup.com/investors/five-year-summary/); Clara Lu (2014), 'Behind H&M's fashion forward retail inventory control', *TradeGecko* blog, 12 August (www.tradegecko.com/blog/hm-retail-inventory-control); Investopedia (2021) (https://www.investopedia.com/articles/investing/041216/hm-secret-its-success.asp); 'H&M flags higher prices after profit falls short of expectations' (31 March 2022) (https://www.reuters.com/business/retail-consumer/hm-profit-lags-expectations-pandemic-investments-weigh-2022-03-31/).

Target costing for target pricing

An important form of market-based price is the *target price*. A **target price** is the estimated price for a product (or service) that potential customers will be willing to pay. This estimate is based on an understanding of customers' perceived value for a product and competitors' responses. A **target operating profit per unit** is the operating profit that a company wants to earn on each unit of a product (or service) sold. The target price leads to a *target cost*. A **target cost per unit** is the estimated long-run cost per unit of a product (or service) that, when sold at the target price,

enables the company to achieve the target operating profit per unit. Target cost per unit is derived by subtracting the target operating profit per unit from the target price.

What relevant costs should we include in the target cost calculations? *All* costs, both variable and fixed. Why? Because in the long run, a company's prices and revenues must recover all its costs. If not, the company's best alternative is to shut down. Relative to the shutting-down alternative, all costs, whether fixed or variable, are relevant.

Target cost per unit is often lower than the existing full product cost per unit. To achieve the target cost per unit and the target operating profit per unit, the organisation must improve its products and processes. Target costing is widely used among different industries around the world. General Motors, Renault, Toyota, Daimler-Chrysler, Fiat and Volvo in the motor vehicle industry, and Siemens, Panasonic, Sharp and HP in the electronics and personal computer industries, are examples of companies that use target pricing and target costing.

Implementing target pricing and target costing

Developing target prices and target costs typically entails the following steps:

- Step 1: Develop a product that satisfies the needs of potential customers.
- Step 2: Choose a *target price* based on customers' perceived value for the product and the prices competitors charge, and a *target operating profit per unit*.
- Step 3: Derive a *target cost per unit* by subtracting the target operating profit per unit from the target price.
- Step 4: Perform *value engineering* to achieve target costs. **Value engineering** is a systematic evaluation of all aspects of the value-chain business functions, with the objective of reducing costs while satisfying customer needs. Value engineering can result in improvements in product designs, changes in materials specifications or modifications in process methods.

We illustrate the above steps for target pricing and target costing using the Astel Computer example introduced earlier in the chapter.

Step 1: Product planning for Provalue Astel is in the process of planning design modifications for Provalue. Astel is very concerned about severe price competition from several competitors.

Step 2: Target price of Provalue Astel expects its competitors to lower the prices of PCs that compete against Provalue by 15%. Astel's management believes that it must respond aggressively by reducing Provalue's price by 20%, from €1000 per unit to €800 per unit. At this lower price, Astel's marketing manager forecasts an increase in annual sales from 150 000 to 200 000 units.

Step 3: Target cost per unit of Provalue Astel's management wants a 10% target operating profit on sales revenues.

Total target sales revenues	= €800 × 200 000 units = €160 000 000
Total target operating profit	= 10% × €160 000 000 = €16 000 000
Target operating profit per unit	= €16 000 000 ÷ 200 000 units = €80 per unit
Target cost per unit	= Target price − Target operating profit per unit
	= €800 − €80 = €720
Total current costs of Provalue	= €135 000 000 (from Exhibit 12.3)
Current cost per unit of Provalue	= €135 000 000 ÷ 150 000 units = €900 per unit

The target cost per unit of €720 is substantially lower than Provalue's existing unit cost of €900. The goal is to find ways to reduce the cost per unit of Provalue by €180, from €900 to €720. The challenge in step 4 is to achieve the target cost through value engineering.

Step 4: Value engineering for Provalue An important element of Astel's value engineering is determining the kind of low-end PC that will meet the needs of potential customers. For example,

the existing Provalue design accommodates various upgrades that can make the PC run faster and perform calculations more quickly. It also comes with special audio features. An essential first step in the value-engineering process is to determine whether potential customers are willing to pay the price for these features. Customer feedback indicates that customers do not value Provalue's extra features. They want Astel to redesign Provalue into a no-frills PC and sell it at a much lower price. Value engineering at Astel then proceeds with cross-functional teams consisting of marketing managers, product designers, manufacturing engineers and production supervisors making suggestions for design improvements and process modifications. Cost accountants estimate the savings in costs that would result from the proposed changes.

Managers often find the distinction between value-added and non-value-added activities and costs introduced in Chapter 2 useful in value engineering. A *value-added cost* is a cost that customers perceive as adding value, or utility (usefulness), to a product or service. Determining value-added costs requires identifying attributes that customers perceive to be important. For Provalue, these attributes include the PC's features and its price. Activities undertaken within the company (such as the manufacturing line) influence the attributes that customers value. Astel assesses whether each activity adds value or not. Activities and the costs of these activities do not always fall neatly into value-added or non-value-added categories. Some costs fall in the grey area in between, and include both value-added and non-value-added components. The following classification typifies value-added and non-value-added categories in a manufacturing organisation:

Category	Examples
Value-added costs	Costs of assembly, design, tools and machinery
Non-value-added costs	Costs of rework, expediting, special delivery and obsolete stock
Grey area	Costs of testing, materials movement and ordering

In the Provalue example, direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and machining costs are value-added costs, ordering and testing costs fall in the grey area (customers perceive some portion but not all of these costs as necessary for adding value), while rework costs are non-value-added costs.

Value engineering seeks to reduce or eliminate non-value-added activities and hence non-value-added costs by reducing the cost drivers of the non-value-added activities. For example, to reduce rework costs, Astel must reduce rework-hours. Value engineering also focuses on achieving greater efficiency in value-added activities to reduce value-added costs. For example, to reduce direct manufacturing labour costs, Astel must reduce the time it takes to make Provalue. But how should Astel reduce rework time and direct manufacturing labour time? We focus on these issues next.

Cost incurrence and locked-in costs

Two key concepts in value engineering and in managing value-added and non-value-added costs are cost *incurrence* and *locked-in costs*. **Cost incurrence** occurs when a resource is sacrificed or used up. Costing systems emphasise cost incurrence. They recognise and record costs only when costs are incurred. Astel's costing system, for example, recognises the direct materials costs of Provalue as each unit of Provalue is assembled and sold. But Provalue's direct materials costs per unit are determined much earlier when designers finalise the components that will go into Provalue. Direct materials costs per unit of Provalue are *locked in* (or *designed in*) at the product- design stage. **Locked-in costs (designed-in costs)** are those costs that have not yet been incurred but that will be incurred in the future on the basis of decisions that have already been made. They are committed but mostly not yet incurred costs.

Why is it important to distinguish between when costs are locked in and when costs are incurred? Because it is difficult to alter or reduce costs that have already been locked in. For example, if Astel experiences quality problems during manufacturing, its ability to improve quality and reduce scrap may be limited by Provalue's design. Scrap costs are incurred during manufacturing, but they may be locked in by a faulty design. Similarly, in the software industry, costs of producing

software are often locked in at the design and analysis stage. Costly and difficult-to-fix errors that appear during coding and testing are frequently locked in by bad designs.

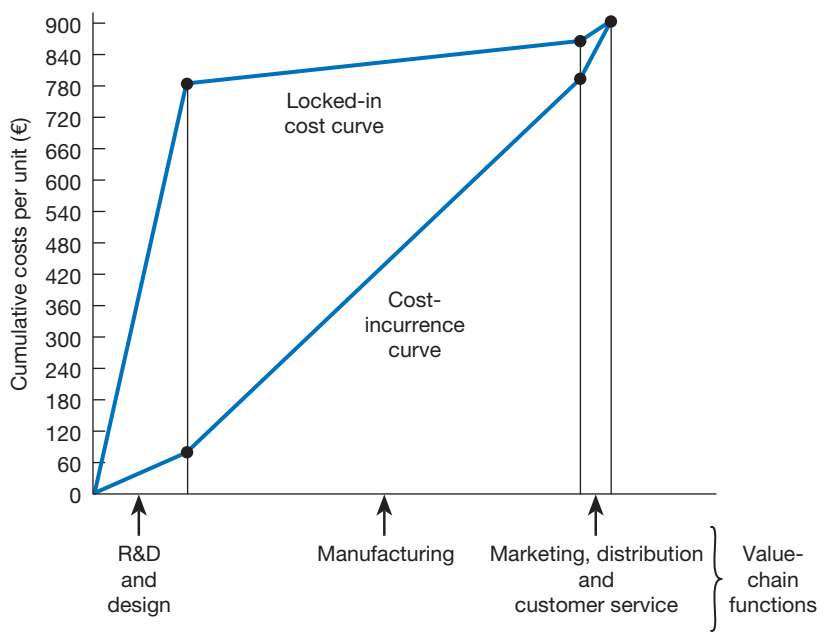
Exhibit 12.4 illustrates how the locked-in cost curve and the cost incurrence curve might appear in the case of Provalue. (The numbers underlying the graph are assumed.) The bottom curve plots the cumulative costs per unit incurred in different business functions. The top curve plots the cumulative costs locked in. Both curves deal with the same total cumulative costs per unit. The graph emphasises the wide divergence between the time when costs are locked in and the time when those costs are incurred. In our example, once the product and processes are designed, more than 86% (say, €780 ÷ €900) of the unit costs of Provalue are locked in when only about 8% (say, €76 ÷ €900) of the unit costs are actually incurred. For example, at the end of the design stage, costs such as direct materials, direct manufacturing labour, direct machining, and many manufacturing, marketing, distribution and customer-service overheads are all locked in. To reduce total costs, Astel must act to modify the design before costs get locked in.

We caution that it is not always the case that costs are locked in early in the design stage as was the case with Provalue. In some industries, such as mining, costs are locked in and incurred at about the same time. When costs are not locked in early, cost-reduction activities can be successful right up to the time that costs are incurred. In these industries, the key to lowering costs is improved operational efficiency and productivity rather than better design.

When a sizeable fraction of the costs is locked in at the design stage, as in the Provalue example, the focus of value engineering is on making innovations and modifying designs at the product-design stage. The best way to evaluate the effect of alternative design decisions on the target cost per unit is to organise a cross-functional value-engineering team consisting of marketing managers, product designers, manufacturing engineers, production supervisors, purchasing managers, suppliers and cost accountants. Why a cross-functional team? Because only a cross-functional team can evaluate the impact of design decisions on all value-chain functions.

The cross-functional team generates cost-reduction ideas and tests them. The management accountant's challenge is to estimate cost savings and explain cost implications of alternative design decisions. To do so, the management accountant must develop a solid understanding of

Exhibit 12.4 Pattern of cost incurrence and locked-in costs for Provalue



the technical and business aspects of the entire value chain and interact knowledgeably with other team members. A cross-functional team makes it easier to choose and implement new designs. Why? Because all parts of the organisation have 'bought into' the new design.

Achieving the target cost per unit for Provalue

Astel's value-engineering teams focus their cost-reduction efforts on analysing the Provalue design. Their goal? To design a high-quality, highly reliable machine with fewer features that meets customers' price expectations and achieves target cost.

Provalue is discontinued. In its place, Astel introduces Provalue II. Provalue II has fewer components than does Provalue and is easier to manufacture and test. The following tables compare the direct costs and the manufacturing overhead costs and cost drivers of Provalue and Provalue II. In place of the 150 000 Provalue units manufactured and sold in 2022, Astel expects to make and sell 200 000 Provalue II units in 2023.

Direct costs

		Costs per unit		
	Cost category	Provalue	Provalue II	Explanation of costs for Provalue II
1	Direct materials	€460	€385	The Provalue II design will use a simplified main printed circuit board, fewer components and no audio features
2	Direct manufacturing labour	€64	€53	Provalue II will require less assembly time
3	Direct machining costs	€76	€57	Machining costs are fixed at €11 400 000. Astel can use the machine capacity to produce 200 000 units of Provalue II. The new design will enable Astel to manufacture each unit of Provalue II in less time than a unit of Provalue. Direct machining costs per unit of Provalue II will equal €57 (€11 400 000 ÷ 200 000)

Manufacturing overhead costs

		Quantity of cost driver		
	Cost driver	Provalue*	Provalue II	Explanation for quantity of cost driver used by Provalue II
1	Number of orders	22 500	21 250	Astel will place 50 orders for each of the 425 components in Provalue II. Total orders for Provalue II will equal 21 250 (425 × 50)
2	Testing-hours	4 500 000	3 000 000	Provalue II is easier to test and will require 15 testing-hours per unit. Total number of expected testing-hours will equal 3 000 000 (15 × 200 000)
3	Units reworked	12 000	13 000	Provalue II will have a lower rework rate of 6.5% because it is easier to manufacture. Total units reworked will equal 13 000 (6.5% × 200 000)

* From Exhibit 12.2.

Note that value-engineering activities reduce both value-added and non-value-added costs. For example, direct manufacturing labour cost per unit, a value-added cost, is reduced by designing a product that requires fewer direct manufacturing labour-hours (the cost driver for direct manufacturing labour costs). Rework cost per unit, a non-value-added cost, is reduced by simplifying the design to reduce defects during manufacturing and hence rework-hours (the cost driver for rework costs).

Exhibit 12.5 presents the target manufacturing costs of Provalue II, assuming no change in the cost per unit of the cost drivers. For comparison, Exhibit 12.5 also reproduces the manufacturing costs per unit of Provalue from Exhibit 12.2. Exhibit 12.5 shows that the new design is expected to reduce the manufacturing cost per unit by €140 to €540 from €680. A similar analysis (not presented) estimates the expected effect of the new design on costs in other value-chain business functions. Exhibit 12.6 shows that the estimated full product cost per unit equals €720 – the target cost per unit for Provalue II. Astel's goal is to sell Provalue II at the target price, achieve target cost, and earn the target operating profit.

Unless managed properly, value engineering and target costing can have undesired consequences (see also Cooper and Slagmulder 1997):

- The cross-functional team may add too many features in an attempt to accommodate the different wishes of team members.
- Long development times may result as alternative designs are evaluated endlessly.
- Organisational conflicts may develop as the burden of cutting costs falls unequally on different parts of the organisation.

To avoid these pitfalls, target-costing efforts should always focus on the customer, pay attention to schedules, and build a culture of teamwork and cooperation across business functions.

Exhibit 12.5 Target manufacturing costs of Provalue II

	Provalue II		Provalue
	Estimated manufacturing costs for 200 000 units (1)	Estimated manufacturing costs per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 200 000	Manufacturing costs per unit (Exhibit 12.2, column 2) (3)
Direct manufacturing costs			
Direct material costs (200 000 units × €385)	€77 000 000	€385.00	€460.00
Direct manufacturing labour costs (200 000 units × €53)	10 600 000	53.00	64.00
Direct machining costs (fixed costs of €11 400 000)	11 400 000	57.00	76.00
Direct manufacturing costs	99 000 000	495.00	600.00
Manufacturing overhead costs			
Ordering and receiving costs (21 250 000 orders × €80)	1 700 000	8.50	12.00
Testing and inspection costs (3 000 000 hours × €2)	6 000 000	30.00	60.00
Rework costs (13 000 units × €100)	1 300 000	6.50	8.00
Manufacturing overhead costs	9 000 000	45.00	80.00
Total manufacturing costs	€108 000 000	€540.00	€680.00

Exhibit 12.6 Target product profitability of Provalue II in 2023

	Total for 200 000 units (1)	Per unit (2) = (1) ÷ 200 000
Revenues	€160 000 000	€800
Cost of goods sold* (from Exhibit 12.5)		
Direct materials costs	77 000 000	385
Direct manufacturing labour costs	10 600 000	53
Direct machining costs	11 400 000	57
Manufacturing overhead costs	9 000 000	45
Cost of goods sold	108 000 000	540
Operating costs		
R&D costs	4 000 000	20
Design of products and processes costs	6 000 000	30
Marketing costs	18 000 000	90
Distribution costs	5 000 000	25
Customer-service costs	3 000 000	15
Operating costs	36 000 000	180
Full product costs	144 000 000	720
Operating profit	€16 000 000	€80

* Cost of goods sold = Total manufacturing costs (since we assume no opening or closing stock for Provalue II in 2023).

Cost-plus pricing

As illustrated in the last section, Astel uses an external market-based approach in its long-run pricing decisions. An alternative approach is to determine a cost-based price. Managers can turn to numerous pricing formulas based on cost. The general formula for setting a price adds a mark-up to the cost base:

Cost base	€X
Mark-up component	Y
Prospective selling price	€X + Y

Concepts in action — Target pricing for the Indian car market

Despite India's rapid economic growth and growing market for consumer goods, transport options in the world's most populous country remain limited. Historically, Indians relied on public transport, bicycles and motorcycles to get around. Today, about 7.5% of Indian people own cars (in Germany, France, Italy and the US more than 80% of households own one or more cars). For many Indians, foreign-made cars traditionally had unnecessary product features and were priced too high. But Ratan Tata, ex-chairman of India's Tata Motors, saw India's dearth of cars as an opportunity and set a challenge for his company to build a 'people's car' for the Indian market with three requirements: it should (1) adhere to existing regulatory requirements, (2) achieve certain performance targets for fuel efficiency and acceleration, and (3) cost only 1 lakh rupees (approx. £1250).

The task was daunting: the target price was about half the price of the cheapest Indian car. One of Tata's suppliers said, 'It's basically throwing out everything the auto industry has thought about cost structures in the past and taking

a clean sheet of paper and asking, 'What's possible?' Mr Tata and his managers responded with what some analysts have described as 'Gandhian engineering' principles: deep frugality with a willingness to challenge conventional wisdom. At a fundamental level, Tata Motors' engineers created a new category of car by doing more with less. Extracting costs from traditional car development, Tata eschewed traditional long-term supplier relationships, and instead forced suppliers to compete for its business using internet-based auctions. Engineering innovations led to a hollowed-out steering-wheel shaft, a smaller diameter drive shaft, a trunk with space for a briefcase, one windshield wiper instead of two, and a rear-mounted engine not much more powerful than a high-end ride-on lawnmower. Moreover, Tata's car has no radio, no power steering, no power windows and no air conditioning – features that are standard on most vehicles.

Tata Motors introduced the 'Nano' in 2008 as a one-lakh-rupee entry-level car that was fuel efficient; did 100 kilometres on 5.6 litres; reached 100 kilometre per hour speed; and met all Indian emission, pollution and safety standards. Today, a much improved Nano can be purchased for under £2500. Sales of the Nano have been low – perhaps because of its low price! The price of a product signals something about the buyer. It is often the case that consumers do not like to be seen to purchase the lowest priced product especially in relation to high ticket items such as cars. To a consumer this displays lack of social standing. This may be why the Nano has lost money for Tata according to analysts. How managers evaluate demand at different prices and manage costs across the value chain and over a product's life cycle to achieve profitability is important. Target pricing must take care to take account of social aspects of purchases. Target pricing applied in India and indeed in any company, is in principle market-focused but in practice integrates also a company-specific twist.

Today, Ratan Tata remains a supporter of the Nano. Aged 84 years, in May 2022, he went out for a dinner at the Taj Hotel in a small Tata Nano car. He is actively refining an electric variant of the Nano: the 72V Nano EV.

Sources: Giridharadas, A. (2008) 'Four wheels for the masses: the $2,500 car', *New York Times*, 9 January (www.nytimes.com/2008/01/08/business/worldbusiness/08indiacar.html); Kripalani, M. (2008) 'Inside the Tata Nano factory', *Business Week*, 9 May (https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2008-05-09/inside-the-tata-nano-factorybusinessweek-business-news-stock-market-and-financial-advice#xj4y7vzkg); Torchinsky, J. (2018) 'The Tata Nano is way better than the world's cheapest car has any right to be' (https://jalopnik.com/the-tata-nano-is-way-better-than-the-worlds-cheapest-ca-1823653663); *The Economic Times* (2022) 'The "moment of truth": Ratan Tata takes his white, bespoke electric 72C Nano for a drive' (https://economictimes.indiatimes.com/magazines/panache/the-moment-of-truth-ratan-tata-takes-his-white-bespoke-electric-nano-for-a-drive/articleshow/89478080.cms?utm_source=contentofinterest&utm_medium=text&utm_campaign=cppst); BBC News (2022) 'Ratan Tata: Tycoon's ride in India's cheapest car wins internet', 19 May (https://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-india-61503989).

Cost-plus target rate of return on investment

Consider a cost-based pricing formula that Astel could use for Provalue II. Assume that Astel's engineers have redesigned Provalue into Provalue II as described earlier and that Astel uses a 12% mark-up on the full product cost per unit in developing the prospective selling price.

Cost base (full product cost per unit, from Exhibit 12.6)	€720.00
Mark-up component (12% × €720)	86.40
Prospective selling price	€806.40

How is the mark-up percentage of 12% determined? One approach is to choose a mark-up to earn a *target rate of return on investment*. The **target rate of return on investment** is the target operating profit that an organisation must earn divided by invested capital. Invested capital can be defined in many ways. In this chapter, we define it as total assets (long-term or fixed assets plus current assets). Companies usually specify the target rate of return required on investments. Suppose Astel's (pre-tax) target rate of return on investment is 18%. Assume that the capital investment needed for Provalue II is €96 million. The target operating profit that Astel must earn from Provalue II can then be calculated as follows:

Invested capital	€96 000 000
Target rate of return on investment	18%
Total target operating profit (18% × €96 000 000)	€17 280 000
Target operating profit per unit of Provalue II (€17 280 000 ÷ 200 000 units)	€86.40

The calculation indicates that Astel would like to earn a target operating profit of €86.40 on each unit of Provalue II. What mark-up does this return amount to? Expressed as a percentage of the full product cost per unit of €720, the mark-up is equal to 12% (€86.40 ÷ €720). Do not confuse the 18% target rate of return on investment with the 12% mark-up percentage. The 18% target rate of return on investment expresses Astel's expected operating profit as a percentage of investment. The 12% mark-up expresses operating profit per unit as a percentage of the full product cost per unit. Astel first calculates the target rate of return on investment, and then determines the mark-up percentage.

Companies sometimes find it difficult to determine the capital invested to support a product. Computing invested capital requires allocations of investments in equipment and buildings (used for design, production, marketing, distribution and customer service) to individual products – a difficult and sometimes arbitrary task. Some companies therefore prefer to use alternative cost bases and mark-up percentages that do not require calculations of invested capital to set price. We illustrate these alternatives using the Astel example. Exhibit 12.7 separates the cost per unit for each value-chain business function into its variable and fixed components (without providing details of the calculations). The following table illustrates some alternative cost bases and mark-up percentages:

Cost base	Estimated cost per unit of Provalue II (1)	Mark-up percentage (2)	Mark-up component for Provalue II (3) = (1) × (2)	Prospective selling price for Provalue II (4) = (1) + (3)
Variable manufacturing costs	€483.00	65%	€313.95	€796.95
Variable product costs	547.00	45	246.15	793.15
Manufacturing function costs	540.00	50	270.00	810.00
Full product cost	720.00	12	86.40	806.40

To illustrate the mark-up calculations, we have assumed (but not derived) the mark-up percentages in the table. The different cost bases and mark-up percentages that we use in the table give prospective selling prices that are relatively close to one another. In practice, a company will choose a cost base that it regards as reliable, and a mark-up percentage on the basis of its

Exhibit 12.7 Estimated cost structure for Provalue II

Business function	Variable cost per unit	Fixed cost per unit*	Business function cost per unit
R&D	€8.00	€12.00	€20.00
Design of product/process	10.00	20.00	30.00
Manufacturing	483.00	57.00	540.00
Marketing	25.00	65.00	90.00
Distribution	15.00	10.00	25.00
Customer service	6.00	9.00	15.00
Product costs	€547.00	€173.00	€720.00
	Variable product cost per unit	Fixed product cost per unit	Full product cost per unit

* Based on budgeted annual production of 200 000 units.

experience in pricing products to recover its costs and earn a desired return on investment. For example, a company may choose a full product cost base if it is unsure about variable- and fixed-cost distinctions.

The mark-up percentages in the table vary a great deal, from a high of 65% on variable manufacturing costs to a low of 12% on full product costs. Why? Because the mark-up based on variable manufacturing costs takes into account the need to earn a profit, and to recoup fixed manufacturing costs and other business function costs such as R&D, marketing and distribution. The greater these costs relative to variable manufacturing costs, the higher the mark-up percentage. The mark-up percentage on full product costs is much lower. Why? Because full product costs already include all costs incurred to sell the product. The precise mark-up percentage also depends on the competitiveness of the product market. Mark-ups and profit margins tend to be lower the more competitive the market.

The advantages cited by many companies for including fixed costs per unit for pricing decisions include the following:

1 *Full product cost recovery.* For long-run pricing decisions, full product costs inform managers of the bare minimum costs they need to recover to continue in business rather than shut down. Using variable costs as a base does not give managers this information. There is then a temptation to engage in excessive long-run price cutting as long as prices give a positive contribution margin. Long-run price cutting, however, may result in long-run revenues being less than long-run (full product) costs, resulting in the company going out of business.

2 *Price stability.* Managers believe that full-cost formula pricing promotes price stability, because it limits the ability of managers to cut prices. Managers prefer price stability because it facilitates planning.

3 *Simplicity.* A full-cost formula for pricing does not require a detailed analysis of cost-behaviour patterns to separate costs into fixed and variable components for each product. Calculating variable costs for each product is expensive and prone to errors. For these reasons, many managers believe that full-cost formula pricing meets the cost–benefit test.

Including unit fixed costs when pricing is not without its problems. Allocating fixed costs to products can be somewhat arbitrary. Calculating fixed cost per unit requires an estimate of expected future sales quantities. If actual sales fall short of this estimate, the actual full product cost per unit could exceed price. There are instances where non-cost factors are relevant in price setting.

Price discrimination is the practice of charging some customers a higher price than is charged to other customers. Peak-load pricing is the practice of charging a higher price for the same product or service when demand approaches physical capacity limits. Under price discrimination and peak-load pricing, prices differ among market segments even though the outlay costs of providing the product or service are approximately the same. For instance, airlines often charge business travellers higher fares than pleasure travellers. This is possible because business travellers tend to return home within the same week. Likewise, telephone companies can charge higher prices for telephone calls made during business hours. There are illustrations of price discrimination and peak-load pricing.

Life-cycle product budgeting and costing

The **product life cycle** spans the time from initial R&D to the time at which support to customers is withdrawn. For motor vehicles, this time span may range from 5 to 10 years. For some pharmaceutical products, the time span may be 3–5 years. For fashion clothing products, the time span may be less than 1 year.

Using **life-cycle budgeting**, managers estimate the revenues and costs attributable to each product from its initial R&D to its final customer servicing and support in the marketplace. **Life-cycle costing** tracks and accumulates business function costs across the entire value chain from a product's initial R&D to its final customer service and support. Life-cycle budgeting and life-cycle costing span several years.

There are, according to Baker et al. (2010), two essential points 'to price effectively throughout the life of a product or service. First, companies should actively manage the trade-off between price and volume or profit and market share to maximise returns [. . .]. Second, companies must make pricing decisions in the context of their broader product portfolios.' We consider here and in later chapters both volume and portfolio-mix issues.

Life-cycle budgeting and pricing decisions

Life-cycle budgeted costs can provide important information for pricing decisions. For some products, the development period is relatively long, and many costs are incurred prior to manufacturing. Consider Fjalar AS, a computer software company developing a new accounting package, 'General Ledger'. Assume the following budgeted amounts for General Ledger over a six-year product life cycle:

Years 1 and 2

R&D costs	€240 000
Design costs	€60 000

Years 3 to 6

	One-time set-up costs	Costs per package
Production costs	€100 000	€25
Marketing costs	70 000	24
Distribution costs	50 000	16
Customer-service costs	80 000	30

To be profitable, Fjalar must generate revenues to cover costs in all six business functions. A product life-cycle budget highlights the importance of setting prices and budgeting revenues to recover costs in *all* the value-chain business functions rather than costs in only some of the functions (such as production). The life-cycle budget also indicates the costs to be incurred over the life of the product. Exhibit 12.8 presents the life-cycle budget for General Ledger.

Three combinations of the selling price per package and predicted demand are shown. The high non-production costs at Fjalar are readily apparent in Exhibit 12.8. For example, R&D and product-design costs constitute over 30% of total costs for each of the three combinations of selling price and predicted sales quantity. Fjalar should put a premium on having as accurate a set of revenue and cost predictions for General Ledger as possible, given the high percentage of total life-cycle costs incurred before any production begins and before any revenue is received.

Exhibit 12.8 assumes that the selling price per package is the same over the entire life cycle. For strategic reasons, however, Fjalar may choose to 'skim the market' by charging higher prices to customers eager to try General Ledger when it first comes out, and lower prices to customers who are willing to wait. The life-cycle budget will then express this strategy.

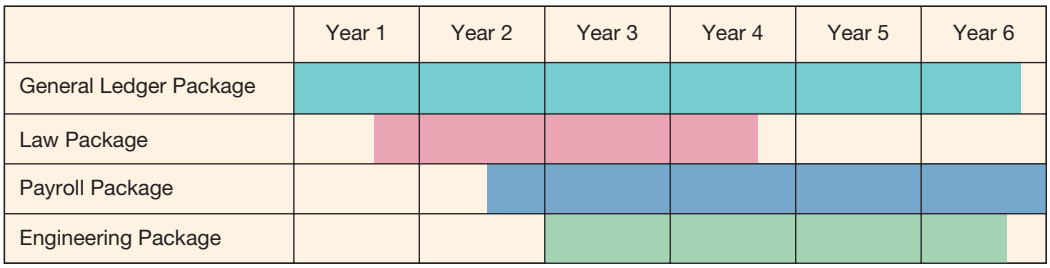
Exhibit 12.8 Budgeted life-cycle revenues and costs for 'general ledger' software package of Fjalar AS*

	Alternative selling price/sales-quantity combinations		
	1	2	3
Selling price per package:	€400	€480	€600
Sales quantity in units:	5000	4000	2500
Life-cycle revenues (€400 × 5000); (€480 × 4000; €600 × 2500)	€2 000 000	€1 920 000	€1 500 000
Life-cycle costs			
R&D costs	240 000	240 000	240 000
Design costs of product/process	160 000	160 000	160 000
Production costs			
€100 000 + (€25 × 5000); €100 000 + (€25 × 4000); €100 000 + (€25 × 2500)	225 000	200 000	162 500
Marketing costs			
€70 000 + (€24 × 5000); €70 000 + (€24 × 4000); €70 000 + (€24 × 2500)	190 000	166 000	130 000
Distribution costs			
€50 000 + (€16 × 5000); €50 000 + (€16 × 4000); €50 000 + (€16 × 2500)	130 000	114 000	90 000
Customer-service costs			
€80 000 + (€30 × 5000); €80 000 + (€30 × 4000); €80 000 + (€30 × 2500)	230 000	200 000	155 000
Total life-cycle costs	1 175 000	1 080 000	937 500
Life-cycle operating profit	€825 000	€840 000	€562 500

* This exhibit does not take into consideration the time value of money when computing life-cycle revenues or life-cycle costs. Chapter 13 outlines how this important factor can be incorporated into such calculations.

Developing life-cycle reports

Most accounting systems emphasise reporting on a calendar basis – monthly, quarterly and annually. In contrast, product life-cycle reporting does not have this calendar-based focus. Consider the life spans of four Fjalar products:



Each product spans more than one calendar year.

Developing life-cycle reports for each product requires tracking costs and revenues on a product-by-product basis over several calendar periods. For example, the R&D costs included in a product life-cycle cost report are often incurred in different calendar years. When R&D costs are tracked over the entire life cycle, the total magnitude of these costs for each individual product can be calculated and analysed.

A product life-cycle reporting format offers at least three important benefits:

1. The full set of revenues and costs associated with each product becomes visible. Manufacturing costs are highly visible in most accounting systems. However, the costs associated with upstream areas (for example, R&D) and downstream areas (for example, customer service) are frequently less visible on a product-by-product basis.
2. Differences among products in the percentage of their total costs incurred at early stages in the life cycle are highlighted. The higher this percentage, the more important it is for managers to develop, as early as possible, accurate predictions of the revenues for that product.
3. Interrelationships among business function cost categories are highlighted. For example, companies that cut back their R&D and product-design costs may experience major increases in customer-service costs in subsequent years. Those costs arise because products fail to meet promised quality-performance levels. A life-cycle revenue and cost report prevents such causally related changes among business function costs from being hidden (buried) as they are in calendar profit statements.

Life-cycle costs further reinforce the importance of locked-in costs, target costing and value engineering in pricing and cost management. For products with long life cycles, a very small fraction of the total life-cycle costs are actually incurred at the time when costs are locked in. But locked-in costs will determine how costs will be incurred over several years. Motor vehicle manufacturers combine target costing with life-cycle budgeting. For example, Ford, General Motors, Nissan and Volvo determine target prices and target costs for their car models on the basis of estimated costs and revenues over a multi-year horizon.

Where managers apply life-cycle costing and value engineering, environmental costs can be a critical area of concern. Environmental laws now increasingly affect companies and the cost of their activities. There are a variety of regulations which impose increasingly stricter standards affecting, for instance, clean-up requirements, with severe penalties for polluting the air and contaminating subsurface soil and groundwater. The European Union use a 'cap-and-trade' system, where the government puts a limit or cap on the overall level of carbon pollution and conducts a market auction for pollution quotas. Companies pay for the right to pollute and can then either sell (or buy) these rights to (or from) other companies if they pollute less (or more) than their quotas. The carbon tax acts as a fee or surcharge on carbon-based fuels and other sources of pollution outing a monetary price on greenhouse gas emissions.

Environmental costs that are incurred over several years of the product's life cycle are often locked in at the product- and process-design stage. To avoid environmental liabilities or reduce carbon taxes, managers in industries such as oil refining, chemical processing, and automobile manufacturing value engineer and design products and processes to prevent and reduce pollution over the product's life cycle. For example, laptop computer manufacturers like Hewlett-Packard and Apple have introduced recycling programmes to ensure that chemicals from nickel-cadmium batteries do not leak hazardous chemicals into the soil. The carbon tax has spurred innovation in the design of energy-efficient products and clean energy solutions, such as solar and wind power. What is the effect of sustainability investments on overall financial performance in subsequent periods? The Sustainability Accounting Standards Board (SASB) defines standards for environmental, social, and governance (ESG) performance for different industries. The relevant (or material) ESG standards vary across industries based on financial impact and interest of user groups. For example, the relevant ESG standards in the oil and gas industry include greenhouse gas emissions and water and wastewater management, while the relevant ESG standards in the technology and communications industry include life-cycle impacts of products and services and energy management. When measured over multiple periods, companies that have higher relevant ESG ratings have higher future profitability and financial performance, perhaps because of customer loyalty and satisfaction, employee engagement, or brand and reputation (Khan et al. 2016).

Data protection regulations, like environmental laws need to be factored into product costs. For instance, in May 2018 the European Union made it a requirement for any business that processes

the personal information of European citizens to comply with the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR). A firm that breaks the GDPR rules will incur maximum fines of €20 million or 4 per cent of its global annual turnover, whichever is largest. To ensure effective compliance, many companies costed the resources that are essential in terms of hiring lawyers, data protection consultants and educating employees about the new data framework. For a medium-size UK company, this is estimated to cost over £75 000, and for FTSE100 firms, implementation costs to comply can run at £15 million to £19 million for energy, commodities and utilities, retail goods and technology and telecommunications companies, with other sector enterprises looking at spending approximately £5 million to £11 million (Coolegem, 2022; Khan, 2017). These are costs which companies need to build into their costing estimates.

Customer profitability analysis

Customer profitability analysis refers to the reporting and analysis of customer revenues and customer costs. Managers need to ensure that customers contributing sizably to the profitability of an organisation receive a comparable level of attention from the organisation. An accounting system that reports customer profitability helps managers in this task. See Bhimani (2022) and Smith (1997) for discussions and further examples of the application of customer profitability analysis.

The marketing efforts of companies aim to attract and retain profitable customers. This section examines the reporting and analysis of customer revenues and customer costs. We will discuss the Spring Distribution Company, a distributor of water bottled by Spring Products. Spring Distribution buys bottled water from Spring Products at €0.50 a bottle. It sells to wholesale customers at a list price of €0.60 a bottle. Customers range from large supermarkets, hospitals and university canteens to small corner shops. It does not sell to final end-point consumers.

Customer revenues

Customer revenues are inflows of assets from customers received in exchange for products or services being provided to those customers. More accurate customer revenues can likewise be obtained by tracing as many revenue items (such as sales returns and coupons) as possible to individual customers.

The analysis of customer profitability is enhanced by retaining as much detail as possible about revenue. A key concern here is **price discounting**, which is the reduction of selling prices below listed levels in order to encourage an increase in purchases by customers. Accounting systems differ with respect to how details on discounting are recorded. Spring Distribution offers price discounts below its €0.60 list price per bottle to key customers. Individual sales representatives have discretion as to the amount of discounting. Its largest customer is SuperMart, to which it sold 1 million bottles at €0.56 per bottle in November 2022. The two main revenue recording options are:

Option A.	Recognise the list price (€0.60 per bottle) and the discount (€0.04 per bottle) from this list price as separate line items.	
	Revenues at list prices, €0.60 × 1 000 000	€600 000
	Deduct revenue discounting, €0.04 × 1 000 000	40 000
	Reported revenues	€560 000
Option B.	Record only the actual price when reporting revenues.	
	Reported revenues, €0.56 × 1000 000	€560 000

Option A has the benefit of highlighting the extent of price discounting. It facilitates further analysis that could examine which customers had price discounting and which sales representatives at

Spring Distribution most frequently resorted to price discounting. Option B effectively precludes such systematic analysis of price discounting.

Studies on customer profitability in companies have found large price discounting to be an important explanation for a subset of customers being below their expected profitability. Sales representatives may have given these customers large price discounts that are unrelated to their current or potential future value to a company.

Customer costs

Chapters 5 and 11 discussed the *cost-hierarchy* concept. Here we apply this concept to customers. A **customer cost hierarchy** categorises costs related to customers into different cost pools on the basis of different types of cost drivers (or cost-allocation bases) or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect (or benefits received) relationships. Spring Distribution has an activity-based costing (ABC) system that focuses on customers rather than products.

Spring's ABC system has one direct cost, the cost of bottles, and multiple indirect-cost pools. The indirect costs belong to different categories of the customer cost hierarchy. Spring identifies five categories in its customer cost hierarchy:

1. *Customer output-unit-level costs* – resources sacrificed on activities performed to sell each unit (bottle) to a customer. An example is product-handling costs of each bottle sold.
2. *Customer batch-level costs* – resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a group of units (bottles) sold to a customer. Examples are costs incurred to process orders or to make deliveries.
3. *Customer-sustaining costs* – resources sacrificed on activities undertaken to support individual customers, regardless of the number of units or each batch of product delivered to customers. Examples are costs of customer visits or costs of displays at customer sites.
4. *Distribution-channel costs* – resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a particular distribution channel rather than to each unit of product, batches of product, or specific customers. An example is the salary of the manager of Spring's retail distribution channel.
5. *Corporate-sustaining costs* – resources sacrificed on activities that cannot be traced to individual customers or distribution channels. Examples are senior management and general administration costs.

Spring has one additional cost-hierarchy category, distribution-channel costs, for the costs it incurs to support each of its distribution channels. We now consider decisions made at the individual customer level.

Customer-level costs

Customer-level costs include cost of goods sold and costs incurred in the first three categories of the customer cost hierarchy: customer output-unit-level costs, customer batch-level costs and customer-sustaining costs. The following table shows five activities (in addition to cost of goods sold) that Spring identifies as resulting in customer-level costs. The table indicates the cost drivers and cost driver rates for each activity as well as the cost-hierarchy category for each activity.

Activity	Cost driver and rate	Cost-hierarchy category
Order taking	€100 per purchase order	Customer batch-level costs
Customers visits	€80 per customer visit	Customer-sustaining costs
Delivery vehicles	€2 per delivery mile travelled	Customer batch-level costs
Product handling	€0.02 per bottle sold	Customer output-unit-level costs
Expedited deliveries	€300 per expedited delivery	Customer batch-level costs

Exhibit 12.9 shows a customer profitability analysis for four customers. Data underlying this exhibit are as follows:

Exhibit 12.9 Customer profitability analysis for four retail channel customers of Spring Distribution for June 2022

	Customer			
	A	B	G	J
Revenues at list prices €0.60 × 1000 000; 800 000; 70 000; 60 000	€600 000	€480 000	€42 000	€36 000
Discount €0.04 × 1000 000; €0.01 × 800 000; €0.05 × 70 000; €0 × 60 000	40 000	8 000	3 500	0
Revenues (at actual prices)	560 000	472 000	38 500	36 000
Cost of goods sold €0.50 × 1000 000; 800 000; 70 000; 60 000	500 000	400 000	35 000	30 000
Gross margin	60 000	72 000	3 500	6 000
Customer-level operating costs				
Order taking €100 × 30; 25; 15; 10	3 000	2 500	1 500	1 000
Customer visits €80 × 6; 5; 4; 3	480	400	320	240
Delivery vehicles €2 × (5 × 60); (12 × 30) (20 × 20); (6 × 15)	600	720	800	180
Product handling €0.02 × 1000 000; 800 000; 70 000; 60 000	20 000	16 000	1 400	1 200
Expedited deliveries €300 × 1; 0; 2; 0	300	0	600	0
Total	24 380	19 620	4 620	2 620
Customer-level operating profit	€35 620	€52 380	€(1 120)	€3 380

	Customer			
	A	B	G	J
Bottles sold	1 000 000	800 000	70 000	60 000
List selling price	€0.60	€0.60	€0.60	€0.60
Actual selling price	€0.56	€0.59	€0.55	€0.60
Number of purchase orders	30	25	15	10
Number of sales visits	6	5	4	3
Number of deliveries	60	30	20	15
Kilometres travelled per delivery	5	12	20	6
Number of expedited deliveries	1	0	2	0

Spring Distribution can use the information underlying Exhibit 12.9 to persuade its customers to reduce usage of the cost drivers. For example, consider customer G, which is only 7% the size of customer A (in terms of bottles purchased – G purchased 70 000 while A purchased 1 000 000). Yet, G uses 50% of purchase orders, 662/3% of sales visits, 332/3% of deliveries, and twice the number of expedited deliveries in comparison to customer A. Spring Distribution could seek to have customer G make fewer purchase orders, require fewer customer visits, have fewer deliveries and reduce expedited deliveries, while preserving opportunities for higher sales to customer G in the future.

The ABC system underlying Exhibit 12.9 provides a road map that facilitates less use of cost drivers by individual customers in order to promote cost reduction. Another advantage of ABC is that it highlights a second way cost reduction can be promoted by Spring Distribution. Spring can

Exhibit 12.10 Income statement of Spring Distribution for June 2022

	Customer distribution channels									
		Wholesale customers					Retail customers			
	Total	Total	A1	A2	.....	Total	A*	B*	...	...
	(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)
Revenues	€12 470 000	€10 470 000	€1 946 000	€1 476 000			€2 000 000	€560 000	€472 000		
Customer-level costs	11 939 000	10 073 000	1 868 000	1 416 000			1 866 000	524 380	419 620		
Customer-level operating profit	531 000	397 000	€78 000	€60 000			134 000	€35 620	€52 380		
Distribution-channel costs	190 000	132 000					58 000				
Distribution-channel-level operating income	341 000	€265 000					€76 000				
Corporate-sustaining costs	263 000										
Operating profit	€78 000										

* Full details are presented in Exhibit 12.9.

take actions to reduce the costs in each of its own activities. For example, order taking currently is estimated to cost €100 per purchase order. By making its own ordering process more efficient (such as having its customers order electronically), Spring can reduce its costs even if its customers place the same number of orders.

Exhibit 12.10 shows the monthly operating income for Spring Distribution. The customer-level operating profit of customers A and B in Exhibit 12.9 are shown in columns 8 and 9 of Exhibit 12.10. The format of Exhibit 12.10 is structured on Spring Distribution's cost hierarchy. This format dovetails with the different levels at which Spring Distribution makes decisions.

Customer profitability profiles

Exhibit 12.11 shows two approaches to presenting customer profitability profiles. For simplicity, we assume Spring Distribution has only 10 customers. Panel A ranks customers on operating profit. Column 4 shows the cumulative operating profit for these customers. This column is calculated by cumulatively adding up the individual customer profits. For example, row three for customer C has a cumulative profit of €108 650 in column 4. This is the sum of €52 380 for customer B, €35 620 for customer A, and €20 650 for customer C. Column 5 shows what percentage this €108 650 amount is of the total operating profit of €134 000. Thus, the three most profitable customers contribute 81% of total operating profit. This high percentage contribution by a small

Exhibit 12.11 Customer profitability analysis for Spring Distribution

Panel A: Customers ranked on 2022 operating profit

Customer code (1)	Customer operating profit (2)	Customer revenue* (3)	Cumulative operating profit (4)	Percentage of cumulative operating profit to total operating profit (5)
B	€52 380	€480 000	€52 380	39%
A	35 620	600 000	88 000	66
C	20 650	247 000	108 650	81
D	16 840	227 000	125 490	94
F	6 994	99 000	132 484	99
J	3 380	36 000	135 864	101
E	3 176	193 000	139 040	104
G	−1120	42 000	137 920	103
H	−1760	39 000	136 160	102
I	−2 160	37 000	134 000	100
	€134 000	€2 000 000		

Panel B: Customers ranked on 2022 revenues

Customer code (1)	Customer revenue* (2)	Customer operating profit (3)	Operating profit revenues (4)	Cumulative revenues (5)	Percentage of cumulative revenue to total revenues (6)
A	€600 000	€35 620	0.059	€600 000	30%
B	480 000	52 380	0.109	1 080 000	54
C	247 000	20 650	0.084	1 327 000	66
D	227 000	16 840	0.074	1 554 000	78
E	193 000	3 176	0.016	1 747 000	87
F	99 000	6 994	0.071	1 846 000	92
G	42 000	−1 120	(0.027)	1 888 000	94
H	39 000	−1 760	(0.045)	1 927 000	96
I	37 000	−2 160	(0.058)	1 964 000	98
J	36 000	3 380	0.094	2 000 000	100
	€2 000 000	€134 000			

* Customer revenue is gross revenue prior to price offset items such as a price discount.

number of customers is a common finding in many studies. It highlights the importance of Spring Distribution maintaining good relations with this pivotal set of customers.

Exhibit 12.11, Panel B, ranks customers on revenue (before price discounts). Three of the four smallest customers (based on revenue) are unprofitable. Moreover, customer E, with revenues of €193 000, is only marginally profitable. Further analysis revealed that a former sales representative gave customer E an excessively high price discount in an attempt to meet a monthly sales- volume target.

Managers often find the bar chart presentation in Exhibit 12.12 to be the most intuitive way to analyse customer profitability. The highly profitable customers clearly stand out. Moreover, the number of loss-customers and the magnitude of their losses are apparent.

Assessing customer value

The information in Exhibits 12.9 and 12.12 relates to customer profitability in a monthly accounting period. This is one of several factors that managers should consider in deciding how to allocate resources across customers. Other factors include:

1 *Short-run and long-run customer profitability.* This factor will be influenced by factors 2 and 3 below, as well as by the level of resources likely to be required to retain the accounts.

2 *Likelihood of customer retention*. The more likely a customer is to continue doing business with a company, the more valuable the customer. Customers can differ in their loyalty and their willingness to 'take their business elsewhere' on a frequent basis.

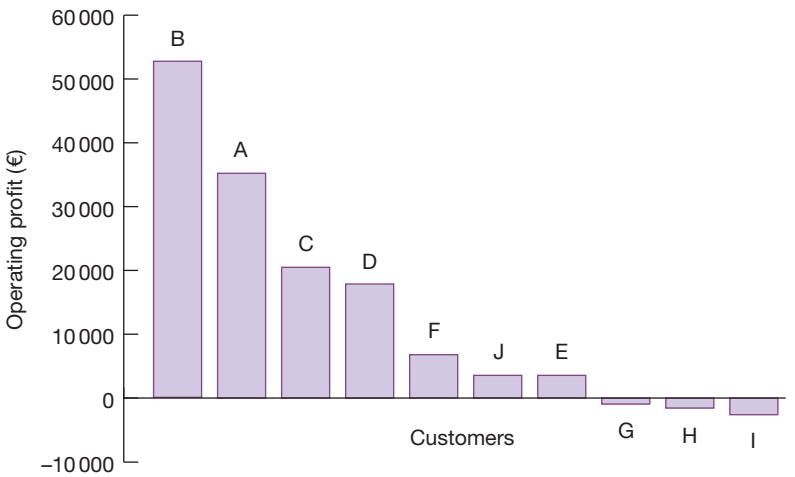
3 *Potential for customer growth*. This factor will be influenced by the likely growth of the customer's industry and the likely growth of the customer (due to, say, its ability to develop new products). This factor will also be influenced by cross-selling opportunities, that is, when a customer of one of the company's products becomes a customer of one or more of the company's other products.

4 *Increases in overall demand from having well-known customers*. Some customers with established reputations are often worth mentioning during customer visits to drive sales. Other customers are valuable because of their willingness to provide product endorsements.

5 *Ability to learn from customers*. Customers can be an important source of ideas about new products or ways to improve existing products. Customers willing to provide such input can be especially valuable.

Managers should be particularly cautious when deciding to drop customers. Long-run profitability reports may provide misleading signals about their short-run profitability. Not all costs assigned to a customer are variable in the short run. Dropping a currently unprofitable customer will not necessarily eliminate in the short run all the costs assigned to that customer.

Exhibit 12.12 Bar chart presentation of customer profitability for Spring Distribution



Concepts in action

Zara uses target pricing to become the world's largest fashion retailer

In recent years, fast fashion has taken the apparel world by storm. Quickly designed and manufactured to respond to the latest fashion trends, fast fashion retailers work to ensure their store shelves are always stocked with the trendiest clothes at affordable prices. At Zara, many of the items you see in stores today will have been designed as little as two weeks before. This has allowed Zara's parent company, Inditex SA, to become the world's largest fashion retailer by sales. In 2017, Zara sold nearly $20 billion worth of the 18 000 fast-fashion designs on its racks in 2251 stores in 50 countries. How did this happen? Aggressive target pricing, coupled with a unique business model focused on speed to market and reducing unnecessary costs.

Every day, more than 200 designers located at Zara headquarters in Spain collect information about the decisions made by customers in each of the chain's stores. When Zara decides to produce an item, an inhouse team of designers, production managers, and logisticians establish its price and how many will be made. Unlike most fashion retailers who focus only on their spring and fall collections, Zara changes its inventory every 15 days or so. They produce items in small batches, which allows more than 60% of its garments to be manufactured in Spain and nearby countries in a matter of days. This is critical for Zara, because all garments are shipped directly to stores from its headquarters, meaning it does not use warehouses to store excess inventory. This means that Zara has much lower inventories than its rivals, and therefore lower inventory costs and less need to discount unsold goods. On average, only 15–20% of Zara items are marked down, compared to 45% for competitor H&M. When a Zara store needs more inventory of a particular item, it notifies managers at headquarters and the process begins anew.

This model inspires customers to spend their money differently. In Zara, every purchase is an impulse buy; that trendy leather jacket in the window is likely to be gone in a matter of days. As a result, Zara customers typically visit stores four or five times more often than customers of more traditional fashion retailers.

Sources: Intedex SA, *2017 Annual Report* (Arteixo, Spain: Intedex SA, 2018); Girotra, K. and Netessine, S. (2012) 'Business model innovation is the gift that keeps on giving', *Harvard Business Review*, 5 December (https://hbr.org/2012/12/the-gift-that-keeps-giving-bus); Buck, T. (2014) 'Fashion: A better business model', *Financial Times*, 18 June (https://www.ft.com/content/a7008958-f2f3-11e3-a3f8-00144feabdc0); Colon, J. (2016) 'A model for fast fashion', *The Wall Street Journal*, 7 December (https://www.wsj.com/articles/fast-fashion-how-a-zara-coat-went-from-design-to-fifth-avenue-in-25-days-1481020203); Hansen, S. (2012) 'How 1 grew into the world's largest fashion retailer', *The New York Times Magazine*, 9 November (https://www.nytimes.com/2012/11/11/magazine/how-zara-grew-into-the-worlds-largest-fashion-retailer.html).

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Three major influences on pricing decisions are customers, competitors and costs.

2 Short-run pricing decisions focus on a period of a year or less and have no long-run implications. Long-run pricing decisions focus on a product in a major market with a time horizon of longer than one year. The time horizon appropriate to a decision on pricing dictates which costs are relevant.

3 One approach to pricing is to use a target price. Target price is the estimated price that potential customers are willing to pay for a product (or service). A target operating profit per unit is subtracted from the target price to determine the target cost per unit. The target cost per unit is the estimated long-run cost of a product (or service) that when sold enables the firm to achieve the targeted profit. The challenge for the organisation is to make the cost improvements necessary through value-engineering methods to achieve the target cost.

4 Cost incurrence arises when resources are actually sacrificed or used up. Locked-in costs refer to costs that have not yet been incurred but which, based on decisions that have already been made, will be incurred in the future.

5 The cost-plus approach to pricing chooses prospective prices by using a general formula that adds a mark-up to a cost base. Many different costs (such as full product costs or manufacturing costs) can serve as the cost base in applying the cost-plus formula. Prices are then modified on the basis of customers' reactions and competitors' responses.

6 Life-cycle budgeting and life-cycle costing estimate, track and accumulate the costs (and revenues) attributable to each product from its initial R&D to its final customer service and support in the marketplace. Life-cycle costing offers three important benefits: (a) the full set of costs associated with each product become visible; (b) differences among products in the percentage of their total costs incurred at early stages in the life cycle are highlighted; and (c) interrelationships among value-chain business function costs are emphasised. Companies choose prices to maximise the profits earned over a product's life cycle.

7 The revenues of customers purchasing the same product can differ due to differences in the quantity of units purchased and discounts from list price.

8 Customer cost hierarchies highlight how some costs can be reliably assigned to individual customers while other costs can be reliably assigned only to distribution channels or to corporate-wide efforts.

9 Customer profitability reports, shown in a cumulative form, often reveal that a small percentage of customers contribute a large percentage of profits. It is important that companies devote sufficient resources to maintaining and expanding relationships with these key contributors to profitability.

References and further reading

Ansari, S. and Bell, J. (2009) *Target Costing: The Next Frontier in Strategic Cost Management* (Chicago, IL: Irwin).

Baker, W., Marn, M. and Zawada, C. (2010) 'Do you have a long-term pricing strategy?', *McKinsey Quarterly*, pp. 47–52.

Baker, W., Kiewell, D. and Winkler, G. (2014) 'Using big data to make better pricing decisions', *McKinsey Quarterly*, pp. 2–5.

Bertini, M., von Schuckmann, J. and Kronrod, A. (2022) 'Talking to your customers about prices', *Harvard Business Review*, 31 March (https://hbr.org/2022/03/talking-to-your-customers-about-prices).

Bhimani, A. (2006) 'Management accounting and digitization', in A. Bhimani (ed) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 69–91.

Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How digitalization is changing finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA).

Bhimani, A. (2022) *Financial Management for Technology Start-ups* (London: Kogan Page).

Coolegem, D. (2022) 'Preparing for the GDPR – Why you need £15m or £300–£450 per employee on average to implement the GDPR' (http://en.finance.sia-partners.com/20220115/preparing-gdpr-why-you-need-ps15m-or-ps300-ps450-employee-average-implement-gdpr).

Cooper, R. and Slagmulder, R. (1997) *Target Costing and Value Engineering* (Portland, OR: Productivity Press).

Khan, M. (2017) 'Companies face high cost to meet new EU data protection rules' (www.ft.com/content/0d47ffe4-ccb6-11e7-b781-794ce08b24dc).

Khan, M., Serafeim, G. and Yoon, A. (2016) 'Corporate sustainability: first evidence on materiality,' *The Accounting Review*, 91(6), pp. 1697–1724.

Lawrence, A. (2007) 'Junk strategies', *Information Age*, pp. 16–18.

Smith, M. (1997) *Strategic Management Accounting* (Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann).

CHAPTER 12

Assessment material

Review questions

12.1 What are the three major influences on pricing decisions?

12.2 Give two examples of pricing decisions with a short-run focus.

12.3 How is activity-based costing useful for pricing decisions?

12.4 What is a target cost per unit?

12.5 Give two examples each of a value-added cost and a non-value-added cost.

12.6 'It is not important for a firm to distinguish between cost incurrence and locked-in costs.' Do you agree? Explain.

12.7 Describe three alternative cost-plus methods.

12.8 Give two examples where the difference in the costs of two products or services is much smaller than the difference in their prices.

12.9 Why is customer profitability analysis a vitally important topic to managers?

12.10 'A customer profitability profile highlights those customers that should be dropped to improve profitability.' Do you agree?

Exercises

Intermediate level

12.11 **Relevant-cost approach to short-run pricing decisions** (20–30 minutes)

Alexon SL is an electronics business with eight product lines. Profit data for one of the products (XT-107) for the month just ended (June 2022) are as follows:

Sales, 200 000 units at average price of €100		€20 000 000
Variable costs		
Direct materials at €35 per unit	€7 000 000	
Direct manufacturing labour at €10 per unit	2 000 000	
Variable manufacturing overhead at €5 per unit	1 000 000	
Sales commissions at 15% of sales	3 000 000	
Other variable costs at €5 per unit	1 000 000	
Total variable costs		14 000 000
Contribution margin		6 000 000
Fixed costs		5 000 000
Operating profit		€1 000 000

Xuclà Mecàniques Fluvià SA, an instruments company, has a problem with its preferred supplier of XT-107 component products. This supplier has had a three-week strike and will not be able to supply Xuclà 3000 units next month. Xuclà approaches the sales representative of Alexon SL, Angela Zamora, about providing 3000 units of XT-107 at a price of €80 per unit. Zamora informs the XT-107 product manager, Francisco García-Salve, that she would accept a flat commission of €6000 rather than the usual 15% if this special order were accepted. Alexon has the capacity to produce 300 000 units of XT-107 each month, but demand has not exceeded 200 000 units in any month in the last year.

Required

1 If the 3000-unit order from Xuclà is accepted, what will be the effect on monthly operating profit? (Assume the same cost structure as occurred in June 2022.)

2 Francisco ponders whether to accept the 3000-unit special order. He is afraid of the precedent that might be set by cutting the price. He says, 'The price is below our full cost of €95 per unit. I think we should quote a full price, or Xuclà will expect favoured treatment again and again if we continue to do business with them.' Do you agree with Francisco? Explain.

12.12 Target prices, target costs, activity-based costing (25–30 minutes)

Pagnol-Carrelages SNC is a small distributor of marble tiles. Pagnol-Carrelages identifies its three major activities and cost pools as ordering, receiving and storage, and shipping, and reports the following details for 2022:

Activity	Quantity of cost driver	Cost per unit of cost driver	Cost driver
1 Placing and paying for orders of marble tiles	Number of orders	500	€50 per order
2 Receiving and storage	Number of loads moved	4000	€30 per load
3 Shipping of marble tiles to retailers	Number of shipments	1500	€40 per shipment

Pagnol-Carrelages buys 250 000 marble tiles at an average cost of €3 per tile and sells them to retailers at an average price of €4 per tile. Fixed costs are €40 000.

Required

1 Calculate Pagnol-Carrelages' operating profit for 2022.

2 For 2023, retailers are demanding a 5% discount off the 2022 price. Pagnol-Carrelages' suppliers are only willing to give a 4% discount. Pagnol-Carrelages expects to sell the same quantity of marble tiles in 2023 as it did in 2022. If all other costs and cost driver information remain the same, what will Pagnol-Carrelages' operating profit be in 2023?

3 Suppose further that Pagnol-Carrelages decides to make changes in its ordering, and receiving and storing practices. By placing long-term orders with its key suppliers, it expects to reduce the number of orders to 200 and the cost per order to €25. By redesigning the layout of the warehouse and reconfiguring the crates in which the marble tiles are moved, Pagnol-Carrelages expects to reduce the number of loads moved to 3125 and the cost per load moved to €28. Will Pagnol-Carrelages achieve its target operating profit of €0.30 per tile in 2023? Show your calculations.

*12.13 Cost-plus and market-based pricing (25 minutes)

Hospedeiras de Portugal Lda, a large labour contractor, supplies contract labour to building construction companies. For 2022, Hospedeiras has budgeted to supply 80 000 hours of contract labour. Its variable cost is €12 per hour and its fixed costs are €240 000. Manuel Girardi, the general manager, has proposed a cost-plus approach for pricing labour at full cost plus 20%.

Required

1 Calculate the price per hour that Hospedeiras should charge based on Manuel's proposal.

2 Mirella Restrepo, the marketing manager, has supplied the following information on demand levels at different prices:

Price per hour	Demand (hours)
€16	120 000
17	100 000
18	80 000
19	70 000
20	60 000

Hospedeiras can meet any of these demand levels. Fixed costs will remain unchanged for all the preceding demand levels. On the basis of this additional information, what price per hour should Hospedeiras charge?

3 Comment on your answers to requirements 1 and 2. Why are they the same or not the same?

*12.14 Relevant-cost approach to pricing decisions (30 minutes)

Østerbro AS cans peaches for sale to food distributors. All costs are classified as either manufacturing or marketing. Østerbro prepares monthly budgets. The March 2022 budgeted absorption-costing income statement is as follows:

Sales (1000 crates × DKK 100 a creat)	DKK 100 000	100%
Cost of goods sold	60 000	60
Gross profit	40 000	40
Marketing costs	30 000	30
Operating profit	DKK 10 000	10%

Normal mark-up percentage:
DKK 40 000 ÷ DKK 60 000 = 66.7% of absorption cost

Monthly costs are classified as fixed or variable (with respect to the cans produced for manufacturing costs and with respect to the cans sold for marketing costs):

	Fixed	Variable
Manufacturing	DKK 20 000	DKK 40 000
Marketing	16 000	14 000

Østerbro has the capacity to can 1500 crates per month. The relevant range in which monthly fixed manufacturing costs will be 'fixed' is from 500 to 1500 crates per month.

Required

1 Calculate the normal mark-up percentage based on total variable costs.

2 Assume that a new customer approaches Østerbro to buy 200 crates at DKK 55 per crate. The customer does not require additional marketing effort except that additional manufacturing costs of DKK 2000 (for special packaging) will be required. Østerbro believes that this is a one-time-only special order because the customer is discontinuing business in six weeks' time. Østerbro is reluctant to accept this 200-crate special order because the DKK 55 per crate price is below the DKK 60 per crate absorption cost. Do you agree with this reasoning? Explain.

3 Assume that the new customer decides to remain in business. How would this longevity affect your willingness to accept the DKK 55 per crate offer? Explain.

12.15 Product costs, activity-based costing systems (20–25 minutes)

Combrai Informatique (CI) manufactures and sells computers and computer peripherals to several nationwide retail chains. Marcel Proust is the manager of the printer division. Its two largest selling printers are P-41 and P-63.

The manufacturing cost of each printer is calculated using CI's activity-based costing system. CI has one direct-manufacturing cost category (direct materials) and the following five indirect-manufacturing-cost pools:

Indirect manufacturing cost pool	Allocation base	Allocation rate
1 Materials handling	Number of parts	€1.20 per part
2 Assembly management	Hours of assembly time	€40 per hour of assembly time
3 Machine insertion of parts	Number of machine-inserted parts	€0.70 per machine-inserted part
4 Manual insertion of parts	Number of manually inserted parts	€2.10 per manually inserted part
5 Quality testing	Hours of quality testing time	€25 per testing-hour

Product characteristics of P-41 and P-63 are as follows:

	P-41	P-63
Direct material costs	€407.50	€292.10
Number of parts	85 parts	46 parts
Hours of assembly time	3.2 hours	1.9 hours
Number of machine-inserted parts	49 parts	31 parts
Number of manually inserted parts	36 parts	15 parts
Hours of quality testing	1.4 hours	1.1 hours

Required

What is the manufacturing cost of P-41? Of P-63?

12.16 Profit calculation (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005) (40 minutes)

Ella Ltd recently started to manufacture and sell product DG. The variable cost of product DG is £4 per unit and the total weekly fixed costs are £18 000. The company has set the initial selling price of product DG by adding a mark-up of 40% to its total unit cost. It has assumed that production and sales will be 3000 units per week. The company holds no stocks of product DG.

Required

1 Calculate for product DG:

   a the initial selling price per unit; and
   b the resultant weekly profit.

   The management accountant has established that a linear relationship between the unit selling price (P in £) and the weekly demand (Q in units) for product DG is given by:

$$P = 20 - 0.002Q$$

   The marginal revenue (MR in £ per unit) is related to weekly demand (Q in units) by the equation:

$$MR = 20 - 0.004Q$$

2 Calculate the selling price per unit for product DG that should be set in order to maximise weekly profit.

3 Distinguish briefly between penetration and skimming pricing policies when launching a new product.

Advanced level

*12.17 Life-cycle product costing, product emphasis (30–40 minutes)

Decision Support Systems (DSS) is examining the profitability and pricing policies of its software division. The DSS software division develops software packages for engineers. DSS has collected data on three of its more recent packages:

- EE-46: package for electrical engineers
- ME-83: package for mechanical engineers
- IE-17: package for industrial engineers.

Summary details on each package over their two-year 'cradle-to-grave' product lives are as follows:

		Number of units sold	
Package	**Selling price**	**Year 1**	**Year 2**
EE-46	€250	2000	8000
ME-83	300	2000	3000
IE-17	200	5000	3000

Assume that no stock remains on hand at the end of year 2.

DSS is deciding which product lines to emphasise in its software division. In the past two years, the profitability of this division has been mediocre. DSS is particularly concerned with the increase in R&D costs in several of its divisions. An analyst at the software division pointed out that for one of its most recent packages (IE-17), major efforts had been made to cut back R&D costs.

Last week Kari Pystynen, the software division manager, attended a seminar on product life-cycle management. The topic of life-cycle reporting was discussed. Kari decides to use this approach in her own division. She collects the following life-cycle revenue and cost information for the EE-46, ME-83 and IE-17 packages:

	EE-46		ME-83		IE-17	
	Year 1	**Year 2**	**Year 1**	**Year 2**	**Year 1**	**Year 2**
Revenues	€500 000	€2 000 000	€600 000	€900 000	€1 000 000	€600 000
Costs						
R&D	700 000	0	450 000	0	240 000	0
Design of product	185 000	15 000	110 000	10 000	80 000	16 000
Manufacturing	75 000	225 000	105 000	105 000	143 000	65 000
Marketing	140 000	360 000	120 000	150 000	240 000	208 000
Distribution	15 000	60 000	24 000	36 000	60 000	36 000
Customer service	50 000	325 000	45 000	105 000	220 000	388 000

Required

1 How does a product life-cycle income statement differ from an income statement that is calendar-based? What are the benefits of using a product life-cycle reporting format?

2 Present a product life-cycle income statement for each software package. Which package is the most profitable, and which is the least profitable?

3 How do the three software packages differ in their cost structure (the percentage of total costs in each cost category)?

12.18 Target cost, activity-based costing systems (continuation of Exercise 12.15) (50–60 minutes)

Assume all the information in Exercise 12.15. Marcel has just received some bad news. A foreign competitor has introduced products very similar to P-41 and P-63. Given their announced selling prices, he estimates the P-41 clone to have a manufacturing cost of approximately €680 and the P-63 clone to have a manufacturing cost of approximately €390. He calls a meeting of product designers and manufacturing personnel at the printer division. They all agree to have the €680 and €390 figures become target costs for redesigned versions of CI's P-41 and P-63, respectively. Product designers examine alternative ways of designing printers with comparable performance but lower cost. They come up with the following revised designs for P-41 and P-63 (termed P-41 REV and P-63 REV, respectively):

	P-41 REV	P-63 REV
Direct material costs	€381.20	€263.10
Number of parts	71 parts	39 parts
Hours of assembly time	2.1 hours	1.6 hours
Number of machine-inserted parts	59 parts	29 parts
Number of manually inserted parts	12 parts	10 parts
Hours of quality testing	1.2 hours	0.9 hours

Required

1 What is a target cost per unit?

2 Using the activity-based costing system outlined in Exercise 12.15, calculate the manufacturing costs of P-41 REV and P-63 REV. How do they compare with the €680 and €390 target costs per unit?

3 Explain the differences between P-41 and P-41 REV and between P-63 and P-63 REV.

4 Assume now that Marcel has achieved major cost reductions in one of the activity areas. As a consequence, the allocation rate in the assembly-management activity area will be reduced from €40 to €28 per assembly-hour. How will this activity-area cost reduction affect the manufacturing costs of P-41 REV and P-63 REV? Comment on the results.

12.19 Life-cycle product costing, activity-based costing (35–40 minutes)

Les Saturniens SA makes digital watches. Les Saturniens is preparing a product life-cycle budget for a new watch, MX3. Development on the new watch with features such as a calculator and a daily diary is to start shortly. Les Saturniens expects the watch to have a product life cycle of three years. Estimates about MX3 are as follows:

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Units manufactured and sold	50 000	200 000	150 000
Price per watch	€45	€40	€35
R&D and design costs	€900 000	€100 000	–
Manufacturing			
Variable cost per watch	€16	€15	€15
Variable cost per batch	€700	€600	€600
Watches per batch	400	500	500
Fixed costs	€600 000	€600 000	€600 000

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Marketing			
Variable cost per watch	€3.60	€3.20	€2.80
Fixed costs	€400 000	€300 000	€300 000
Distribution			
Variable cost per watch	€1	€1	€1
Variable cost per batch	€120	€120	€100
Watches per batch	200	160	120
Fixed costs	€240 000	€240 000	€240 000
Customer service costs per watch	€2	€1.50	€1.50

Ignore the time value of money in your answers.

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted life-cycle operating profit for the new watch.

2 What percentage of the budgeted product life-cycle costs will be incurred at the end of the R&D and design stages?

3 An analysis reveals that 80% of the total product life-cycle costs of the new watch will be locked in at the end of the R&D and design stages. What implications would this finding have on managing MX3's costs?

4 Les Saturniens' Market Research Department estimates that reducing MX3's price by €3 each year will increase sales by 10% each year. If sales increase by 10%, Les Saturniens plans to increase manufacturing and distribution batch sizes by 10% as well. Assume that all variable costs per watch, variable costs per batch and fixed costs will remain the same. Should Les Saturniens reduce MX3's price by €3?

12.20 Customer profitability, service company (20–30 minutes)

Overloon BV is a repair-service company specialising in the rapid repair of photocopying machines. Each of its 10 clients pays a fixed monthly service fee (based on the type of photocopying machines owned by that client and the number of employees at that site). Overloon keeps records of the time technicians spend at each client as well as the cost of the equipment used to repair each photocopying machine. Overloon recently decided to calculate the profitability of each customer. The following data (in thousands) pertain to May 2022:

	Customer revenues	Customer costs
Hytop BV	€260	€182
Koninklijk Nederlands Meteorologisch Instituut	180	184
Hoogovens Scrap Processing	163	178
Borgh Pensioen Consultancy	322	225
Edah Supermarkten	235	308
Hogeschool Eindhoven	80	74
Koninklijk Instituut voor de Marine	174	100
Eindhovens Dagblad	76	108
Randmeer College	137	110
NRC Handelsblad	373	231

Required

1 Calculate the operating profit of each customer. Prepare exhibits for Overloon that are similar to Exhibits 12.11 and 12.12. Comment on the results.

2 What options regarding individual customers should Overloon consider in light of your customer profitability analysis in requirement 1?

3 What problems might Overloon encounter in accurately estimating the operating cost of each customer?

12.21 Customer profitability, distribution (40 minutes)

Spring Distribution has decided to analyse the profitability of another five customers (see pages 373 of the text). It buys bottled water at €0.50 per bottle and sells to wholesale customers at a list price of €0.60 per bottle. Data pertaining to five customers are:

	Customer				
	P	Q	R	S	T
Bottles sold	50 000	210 000	1 460 000	764 000	94 000
List selling price	€0.60	€0.60	€0.60	€0.60	€0.60
Actual selling price	€0.60	€0.59	€0.55	€0.58	€0.54
Number of purchase orders	15	25	30	25	30
Number of sales visits	2	4	6	2	3
Number of deliveries	10	30	60	40	20
Kilometres travelled per delivery	14	4	3	8	40
Number of expedited deliveries	0	0	0	0	1

Its five activity areas and their cost drivers are:

Activity area	Cost driver and rate
Order taking	€100 per purchase order
Sales visits	€80 per sales visit
Delivery vehicles	€2 per delivery kilometre travelled
Product handling	€0.02 per bottle sold
Expedited deliveries	€300 per expedited delivery

Required

1 Calculate the operating profit of each of the five customers now being examined (P, Q, R, S and T). Comment on the results.

2 What insights are gained by reporting both the list selling price and the actual selling price for each customer?

3 What factors should Spring Distribution consider in deciding whether to drop one or more of customers P, Q, R, S or T?

CHAPTER 13

Capital investment decisions

Organisations often make decisions whose consequences are felt over many future years. Such decisions frequently involve large investments of money and have uncertain actual outcomes that have long-lasting effects on the organisation. For example, Airbus, one of the largest global aircraft manufacturers is making investments to produce the world's first zero emission commercial aircraft. The company will do so by exploring different configurations and hydrogen technologies. The concept is referred to as ZEROe for aircraft powered by hydrogen combustion through modified gas turbine engines. Companies react to economic and technological possibilities and gauging customer appetite for new product concepts. The President of Airbus Africa and the Middle East, Mikail Houari notes that the 'market is expecting this from us. As a leader in the industry, we are responsible for driving the whole ecosystem into a sustainable value chain' (Arab News, 2022). Sometimes companies with a project investment causing losses may decide to invest more to attain profitability. For instance, in February 2022, Airbus and the Canadian province of Quebec, Canada's aerospace hub, agreed a $1.2 billion investment deal to remain in the loss-making A220 jet programme, expecting it to ultimately become profitable. Quebec would invest $325 billion with the balance coming from Airbus. The latter would buy back Quebec's investment in 2030. The province had in 2015 already invested $1.2 billion into the venture intending a buyout in 2026. The Quebec Economy Minister Pierre Fitzgibbon defended the investment noting that the A220 programme showed sufficient promise to be profitable with a further four years added to the buyout as well as generate key jobs for the province: 'I'm very hopeful we're going to make money and recuperate the original investment' (Lampert, 2022).

Investment decisions can span many years. The investments and the outcomes from those investments are collectively referred to as **investment projects** or **investment programmes**. Poor long-term investment decisions can affect the future stability of an organisation because it is often difficult for firms to recover money tied up in bad investments. Sometimes, such investments can alter an enterprise's strategy, brand and even culture. Thus, there may be qualitative effects from long-term investment decisions which may indirectly influence financial performance and economic viability. Some managers desire a long-range planning tool or process to analyse and control investments with long-term consequences. This is the emphasis of this chapter.

Capital budgeting is the decision process relating to long-term capital investment programmes. Income determination and the planning and control of routine operations focus primarily on the current time period. Capital budgeting is a decision-making and control approach that focuses primarily on projects or programmes whose effects span multiple years.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Identify the five stages of capital budgeting for a project
- Understand the time value of money concept and opportunity costs
- Apply the net present value (NPV) method and the internal rate of return (IRR) method
- Understand the value of sensitivity analysis in capital budgeting
- Identify relevant cash flows used in discounting
- Apply the payback method and the accounting rate of return (ARR) method
- Assess capital budgeting project management issues
- Identify the impact of tax and inflation on investment cash flows
- Distinguish between the real rate of return and the nominal rate of return and recognise risk in investment decisions

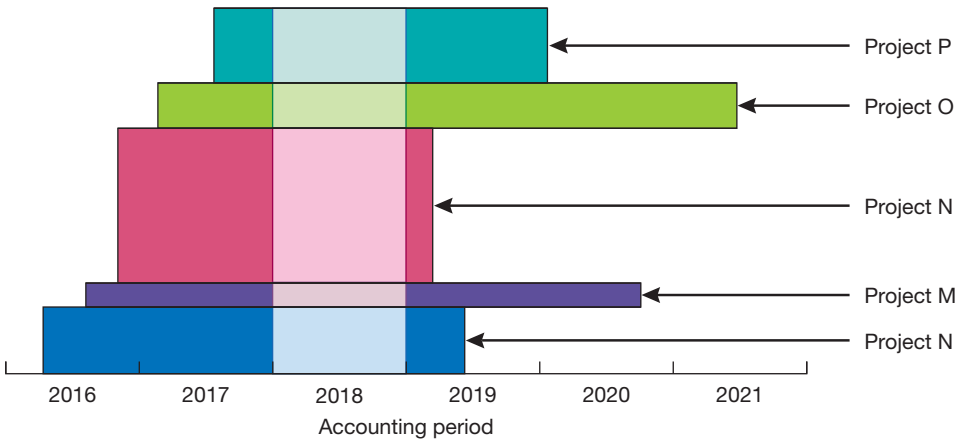
Stages of capital budgeting

Capital budgeting is the process of making long-run planning decisions for investments in projects. In much of accounting, income is calculated on a period-by-period basis. In choosing investments, however, managers make a selection from among multiple projects, each of which may span several periods. Exhibit 13.1 illustrates these two different yet intersecting dimensions of cost analysis: (1) horizontally across, as the *project dimension,* and (2) vertically upward, as the *accounting-period dimension*. Each project is represented as a horizontal rectangle, starting and ending at different times and stretching over time spans longer than one year. The vertical rectangle for the 2022 accounting period, for example, represents the dimensions of income determination and routine annual planning and control that cut across all projects that are ongoing that year. Accounting profit is of particular interest to the manager because bonuses are frequently based on reported profit. Profit reported in an accounting period is also important to a company because of its impact on the company's stock price. Excessive focus on short-run accounting profit, however, can cause a company to forgo long-term profitability. Many managers balance short-term accounting-period considerations with longer-term project considerations in their decision process. Capital-budgeting decisions ought to take into account an organisation's objectives as well as its strategies. By strategy, we refer to the manner in which an organisation attempts to match its own capabilities with the opportunities in the marketplace to accomplish its overall objectives (see Chapter 20).

To make capital budgeting decisions, managers have to decide on what to include in their analysis. Managers will usually opt to analyse each project by considering all the life-span cash flows from its initial investment through its termination. This process is analogous to life-cycle budgeting and costing (see Chapter 12). For example, when Honda considers producing a new model of automobile, it begins by estimating all potential revenues from the project as well as any costs that will be incurred during its life cycle, which may be as long as 10 years. Only after examining the potential costs and benefits across all of the business functions in the value chain, from research and development (R&D) to customer service, across the entire life span of the new-car project does Honda decide whether the new model is a wise investment.

Any system that focuses on the life span of a project ordinarily covers several years and thus might consider the time value of money. The *time value of money* takes into account the fact that a euro (or any other monetary unit) received today is worth more than a euro received tomorrow.

Exhibit 13.1 The project and time dimensions of capital budgeting



The reason is that €1 received today can be invested to start earning a return of 5% per year (say) so that it grows to €1.05 at the end of the year. The time value of money is the opportunity cost (the return of €0.05 forgone) from not having the money today. Capital budgeting focuses on projects that can be accounted for using life-cycle costing and that must be evaluated taking into consideration the time value of money.

Managers use capital budgeting as a decision-making and a control tool. Like the decision process that we have emphasised throughout this book, there are stages to the capital-budgeting process. We break down the process into five steps:

Stage 1: Identification stage To distinguish which types of capital expenditure projects are necessary to accomplish organisational objectives. Capital expenditure initiatives are closely tied to the strategies of an organisation or an organisational subunit. So an organisation's strategy could be to increase revenues by targeting new products, customers or markets. For example, Nike, makes significant investments in product innovation, engineering and design, hoping to develop the next generation of high-quality sportswear. Alternatively, a company might set out to reduce costs by improving productivity and efficiency and so, for example, Dell might choose to outsource certain components to lower-cost contract manufacturing facilities located overseas. Identifying which types of capital investment projects to invest in will be affected by corporate strategy and usually this is the responsibility of line management.

Stage 2: Information-acquisition stage To consider the predicted costs and predicted consequences of alternative capital investments. These consequences can be quantitative and qualitative. Information should be collected from all parts of the value chain to evaluate alternative projects. Returning to the new-car example at Honda, in this stage, the firm's top managers ask the company's marketing managers for potential revenue numbers, plant managers for assembly times, and suppliers for prices and the availability of key components. Lower-level managers are asked to validate the data provided and to explain the assumptions underlying them. The goal is to encourage open and honest communication that results in accurate estimates so that the best investment decisions are made. Some projects will be rejected at this stage. For example, suppose Honda learns that the car cannot be built using existing plants. It may then opt to cancel the project altogether.

Stage 3: Make predictions Forecast all potential cash flows attributable to the alternative projects at this stage. A new project generally requires a firm to make a substantial initial outlay of capital, which is recouped over time through annual cash inflows and the disposal value of the project's assets after it is terminated. Consequently, investing in a new project requires the firm to forecast its cash flows several years into the future. BMW, for example, estimates yearly cash flows and sets its investment budgets accordingly using a 12-year planning horizon. Because of the significant uncertainty associated with these predictions, firms typically analyse a wide range of alternate circumstances. In the case of BMW, the marketing group is asked to estimate a band of possible sales figures. Firms also attempt to ensure that estimates, especially for the later years of a project, are grounded in realistic scenarios. It may be tempting to some managers to introduce biases into these projections in order to drive the outcome of the capital-budgeting process to their preferred choice.

Stage 4: Choose among alternatives Here the managers determine which investment yields the greatest benefit and the least cost to the organisation. Using the quantitative information obtained in Stage 3, the firm uses any one of several capital-budgeting methodologies to determine which project best meets organisational goals. While capital-budgeting calculations are typically limited to financial information, managers use their judgement and intuition to factor in qualitative information and strategic considerations as well. For example, even if a proposed new line of cars meets its financial targets on a standalone basis, Honda might decide not to pursue the line if it is not aligned with the strategic imperatives of the company on matters such as brand positioning, industry leadership in safety and technology, and fuel consumption. Considerations of environmental sustainability might also favour certain projects that currently appear unprofitable. Managers may spend much time assessing the risks of a project, in terms of both the uncertainty

of the estimated cash flows as well as the potential downside risks of the project (including to the firm as a whole) if the worst-case scenario were to occur.

Stage 5: Implementation and control stage To put the project in motion and monitor performance. As the project is implemented, the company must evaluate whether capital investments are being made as scheduled and within the budget. As the project generates cash inflows, monitoring and control may include a post-investment audit, in which the predictions made at the time the project was selected are compared with the actual results. There are two elements. First there is a need to obtain funding and make the investments selected in Stage 4. The sources of funding include internally generated cash as well as equity and debt securities sold in capital markets. Making capital investments is often an arduous task. If Honda opts to build a new car, it must order steel, aluminium, paint, and so on. If some of the materials are unavailable, managers must determine the economic feasibility of using alternative inputs. Then there is a need to track realised cash flows, compare against estimated numbers, and revise plans if necessary. As the cash outflows and inflows begin to accumulate, managers can verify whether the predictions made in Stage 3 agree with the actual flows of cash from the project. It is equally important for a company to abandon projects that are performing poorly relative to expectations. A natural bias for managers is to escalate their commitment to a project they chose to implement for fear of revealing they made an incorrect capital-budgeting decision. It is in the firm's and the managers' long-term interest, however, to acknowledge a mistake when it is clear that the project is not financially sustainable. In practice, the capital-budgeting process in most organisations entails these formal stages but is also influenced by behavioural, organisational and political factors. Beyond the numbers, the ability of individual managers to 'sell' their own project to senior management is often pivotal in the acceptance or rejection of projects. Senior managers themselves highlight emerging concerns which affect investment strategies. Today, environmental and sustainability concerns are in particular, being prioritised by corporate leaders. Sustainability concerns play a key role in investment assessments by leading companies and institutions. For instance, the World Bank uses a well-developed environmental and social policy framework to guide projects it supports through its 'Investment Project Financing' platform. The policy reflects the World Bank's support of borrowers in the development and implementation of projects that are environmentally and socially sustainable, and to enhancing the capacity of borrowers' environmental and social frameworks to assess and manage the environmental and social risks and impacts of projects (World Bank, 2022). Enterprises that invest sustainably also attract investors who consider it important to incorporate their values and concerns (such as environmental concerns) into their selection of investments instead of simply considering the potential profitability, risks and outlay conditions that investment opportunities may present. Socially responsible investors are concerned with Environmental, Social, and (Corporate) Governance principles (often referred to as ESGs), encompassing the three broad areas of concern. Consumer ideals impact the payoffs from investments and with millennials and Generation Zers engaging with markets, ESG issues are rising in significance for all stakeholders. A Morgan Stanley survey indicated that almost 90% of millennial investors are interested in pursuing investments that more closely reflect the values they hold (CFI, 2022).

We use information from Hôpital-Nord to illustrate capital budgeting. Hôpital-Nord is a not-for-profit organisation that is not subject to taxes. Tax considerations in capital budgeting are introduced later in the chapter.

One of Hôpital-Nord's goals is to improve the productivity of its X-Ray Department. To achieve this goal, the manager of Hôpital-Nord *identifies* a need to purchase a new state-of-the-art X-ray machine to replace an existing machine. The *search* stage yields several alternative models, but the hospital's technical staff focuses on one machine, XCAM8, as being particularly suitable. They next begin to *acquire information* for a more detailed evaluation. Quantitative financial information for the formal analysis is as follows:

1 Regardless of whether the new X-ray machine is acquired or not, revenue will not change. Hôpital-Nord charges a fixed rate for a particular diagnosis, regardless of the number of X-rays taken. The only relevant financial benefit in evaluating Hôpital-Nord's decision to

purchase the X-ray machine is the cash savings in operating costs. The existing X-ray machine can operate for another five years and will have a disposal value of zero at the end of five years. The required net initial investment for the new machine is €379 100. The initial investment consists of the cost of the new machine – €372 890 – plus an additional cash investment in working capital (supplies and spare parts for the new machine) of €10 000 minus cash of €3790 obtained from the disposal of the existing machine (€372 890 + €10 000 − €3790 = €379 100).

2 The manager expects the new machine to have a five-year useful life and a disposal value of zero at the end of five years. The new machine is faster and easier to operate and has the ability to X-ray a larger area. This will decrease labour costs and will reduce the average number of X-rays taken per patient. The manager expects the investment to result in annual cash savings of €100 000. These cash flows will generally occur throughout the year; however, to simplify calculations, we assume that the cash flows occur at the end of each year. The cash inflows are expected to come from cash savings in operating costs of €100 000 for each of the first four years and €90 000 in year 5 plus recovery of working capital investment of €10 000 in year 5.

Managers at Hôpital-Nord also identify the following non-financial quantitative and qualitative benefits of investing in the new X-ray equipment:

1 *The quality of X-rays*. Higher-quality X-rays will lead to improved diagnoses and better patient treatment.

2 *The safety of technicians and patients*. The greater efficiency of the new machine would mean that X-ray technicians and patients are less exposed to the possibly harmful effects of X-rays.

These benefits are not considered in the formal financial analysis.

In the *selection* stage, managers must decide whether Hôpital-Nord should purchase the new X-ray machine. They start with financial information. This chapter discusses the following methods that they can use:

- discounted cash flow methods:
  - net present value (NPV) method
  - internal rate of return (IRR) method
- payback method
- accounting rate of return method.

Concepts in action

Capital budgeting for sustainability at Johnson & Johnson

Johnson and Johnson as the world's largest pharmaceuticals company, believes that 'When you're a global healthcare company, you have to think big when it comes to your sustainability efforts.' In mid-2021, it executed three separate virtual power purchase agreements in Europe to provide the equivalent of 100% renewable electricity for all J&J properties across its three business sectors – pharmaceuticals, medical devices and consumer health – in France, Germany, Spain, UK, Sweden, Switzerland, Greece and Italy.

Many large companies have established sustainability goals and targets, and it is becoming increasingly common for these goals to address significant environmental challenges such as climate change. Improved sustainability performance, however, is not always valued in internal capital-budgeting decisions. That's because it can be difficult to accurately value the 'extra-financial' benefits of reduced exposure to energy price volatility and water risk, for example.

Healthcare company Johnson & Johnson found a unique way to create business value through its capital projects while reducing its environmental impact. Johnson & Johnson established a special fund that increases its capital budget to allow for greenhouse-gas-reduction projects like chiller optimisation and solar photovoltaic installations that also reduce operating costs. The operating budget is then reduced to reflect expected savings. This helps the company to invest in projects that have higher initial costs but lower operating costs, resulting in a net benefit.

Each year, Johnson & Johnson's capital relief fund allocates at least $40 million to make capital investments in greenhouse-gas-reduction projects that otherwise would not be able to compete for limited capital budget dollars on traditional measures. These projects undergo an internal vetting process to ensure energy reductions, environmental benefits, and cost savings for the company. A committee of energy, engineering and finance managers reviews the technical, environmental and financial aspects of the proposed projects to ensure they are aligned with best practices and standards, as well as meet the required after-tax internal rate of return of 15%.

The company has set a long-term target of 2045 with investment analyses tying into this time frame with the following interim targets:

- By 2025, source 100% of electricity needs from renewable sources.
- By 2030, achieve carbon neutrality for operations, going beyond its Science-Based Target to reduce absolute Scope 1 and 2 emissions 60% from 2016 levels.

By 2030, reduce absolute upstream value chain (Scope 3) emissions 20% from 2016 levels.

Sources: Perera, A., Putt Del Pino, S. and Oliveria, B. (2013) 'Aligning profit and environmental sustainability: stories from industry', World Resources Institute working paper, February 2013 (https://www.wri.org/research/aligning-profit-and-environmental-sustainability); Sustain Case, 'How Johnson & Johnson promotes environmental and social responsibility throughout its supply chain' (https://sustaincase.com/case-study-how-johnson-johnson-promotes-environmental-and-social-responsibility-throughout-its-supply-chain/); Mazur, N. F. (2022) '6 super sustainable Johnson & Johnson sites around the world' (www.jnj.com/innovation/6-super-sustainable-johnson-johnson-sites-around-the-world) (accessed 4 May 2022). Asad, A. (2021) 'Johnson & Johnson Achieves 100% Renewable Electricity Across European Operations' (https://www.environmentalleader.com/2021/07/johnson-johnson-achieves-100-renewable-electricity-across-european-operations/)

Discounted cash flow methods

Discounted cash flow (DCF) measures the expected future cash inflows and outflows of a project as if they occurred now so that they can be compared in an appropriate way. The discounted cash flow methods recognise that the use of money has an opportunity cost – return forgone. The key feature of DCF methods is the **time value of money**, which means that a euro (or any other monetary unit) received today is worth more than a euro received at any future time. Because the DCF methods explicitly and routinely weight cash flows by the time value of money, they are often considered as better methods to use for long-run decisions.

DCF focuses on *cash* inflows and outflows rather than on *operating profit* as used in conventional accounting. Cash is invested now with the expectation of receiving a greater amount of cash in the future. Injecting accrual concepts of accounting into DCF analysis should be avoided, as it can create confusion. For example, depreciation is deducted as an accrual expense when calculating operating profit under accounting. Depreciation is not deducted in DCF analysis because depreciation expense entails no cash outflow.

There are two main DCF methods:

- net present value (NPV)
- internal rate of return (IRR).

NPV is calculated using the **required rate of return (RRR)**, which is the minimum acceptable rate of return on an investment. It is the return that the organisation could expect to receive elsewhere for an investment of comparable risk. This rate is also called the **discount rate**, **hurdle rate** or **opportunity cost of capital** because it typically must exceed the cost of funds as determined by the return expected by those who provide the funds. When working with IRR, the RRR is used as a point of comparison.

Assume that the required rate of return, or discount rate, for the Hôpital-Nord X-ray machine project is 8%.

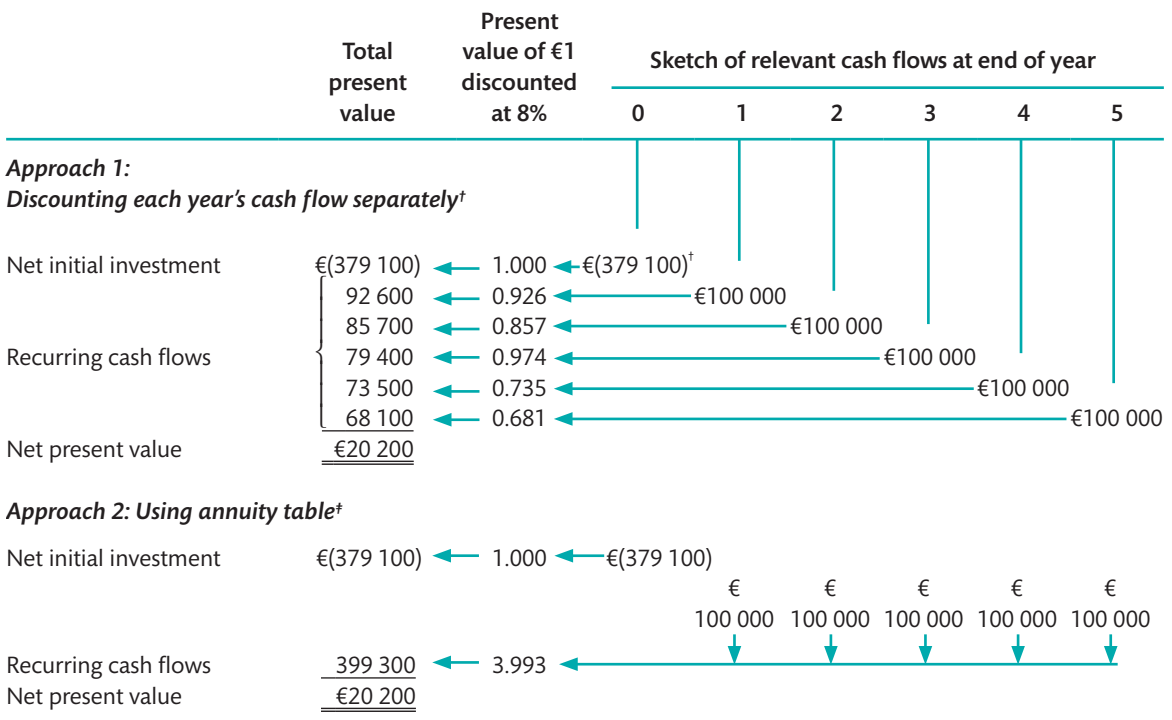
Net present value method

The **net present value (NPV) method** calculates the expected net monetary gain or loss from a project by discounting all expected future cash inflows and outflows to the present point in time, using the required rate of return. Only projects with a positive net present value are acceptable. Why? Because the return from these projects exceeds the cost of capital (the return available by investing the capital elsewhere). Managers prefer projects with higher NPVs to projects with lower NPVs, if all other things are equal. Using the NPV method entails the following steps:

Step 1: Sketch the relevant cash inflows and outflows The right-hand side of Exhibit 13.2 shows how these cash flows are portrayed. Outflows appear in parentheses. The sketch helps the decision maker to organise the data in a systematic way. Note that Exhibit 13.2 includes the outflow for the new machine at year 0, the time of the acquisition. The NPV method focuses only on cash flows. NPV analysis is indifferent to where the cash flows come from (operations, purchase or sale of equipment, or investment or recovery of working capital) and to the financial accounting treatments of individual cash-flow items (for example, depreciation costs on equipment purchases).

Exhibit 13.2 Net present value method: Hôpital-Nord

Net initial investment	€379 100
Useful life	5 years
Recurring cash flows	€100 000
Required rate of return	8%



† Parentheses denote relevant cash outflows throughout all exhibits in Chapter 13.

‡ The annuity-table value of 3.993 is the sum of the individual discount rates 0.926 + 0.857 + 0.794 + 0.735 + 0.681, subject to rounding error.

Step 2: Choose the correct compound interest table In our example, we can discount each year's cash flow separately using the present value table, or we can calculate the present value of an annuity using the annuity table. If we use the present value table, we find the discount factors for periods 1 to 5 under the 8% column. Approach 1 in Exhibit 13.2 presents the five discount factors. Because the investment produces an annuity, a series of equal cash flows at equal intervals, we may use the annuity table. We find the discount factor for five periods under the 8% column. Approach 2 in Exhibit 13.2 shows that this discount factor is 3.993 (3.993 is the sum of the five discount factors used in approach 1). To obtain the present-value figures, multiply the discount factors by the appropriate cash amounts in the sketch in Exhibit 13.2.

Step 3: Sum the present-value figures to determine the net present value If the sum is zero or positive, the NPV model indicates that the project should be accepted. That is, its expected rate of return equals or exceeds the required rate of return. If the total is negative, the project is undesirable. Its expected rate of return is below the required rate of return.

Exhibit 13.2 indicates an NPV of €20 200 at the required rate of return of 8%; the expected return from the project exceeds the 8% required rate of return. Therefore, the project is desirable. The cash flows from the project are adequate to (1) recover the net initial investment in the project, and (2) earn a return greater than 8% on the investment tied up in the project from period to period. Had the NPV been negative, the project would be undesirable on the basis of financial considerations.

Of course, the manager of the hospital must also weigh non-financial factors. Consider the reduction in the average number of individual X-rays taken per patient with the new machine. This reduction is a qualitative benefit of the new machine given the health risks to patients and technicians. Other qualitative benefits of the new machine are the better diagnoses and treatments that patients receive. Had the NPV been negative, the manager would need to judge whether the non-financial benefits outweigh the negative NPV.

It is important that you do not proceed until you thoroughly understand Exhibit 13.2. Compare approach 1 with approach 2 in Exhibit 13.2 to see how the annuity table merely aggregates the present-value factors of the present value table. That is, the fundamental table is the present value table; the annuity table reduces calculations when there is an annuity – a series of equal cash flows at equal intervals.

Internal rate of return method

The **internal rate of return (IRR)** is the discount rate at which the present value of expected cash inflows from a project equals the present value of expected cash outflows of the project. That is, the IRR is the discount rate that makes NPV = €0. IRR is sometimes called the **time-adjusted rate of return**. As in the NPV method, the sources of cash flows and the accounting treatment of individual cash flows are irrelevant to the IRR calculations. We illustrate the computation of the IRR using the X-ray machine project of Hôpital-Nord. Exhibit 13.3 presents the cash flows and shows the calculation of the NPV using a 10% discount rate. At a 10% discount rate, the NPV of the project is zero. Therefore, the IRR for the project is 10%.

How do we determine the 10% discount rate that yields NPV = €0? In most cases, analysts solving capital-budgeting problems have a calculator or computer programmed to provide the internal rate of return. Without a calculator or computer program, a trial-and-error approach can provide the answer.

Step 1 Try a discount rate and calculate the NPV of the project using that discount rate.

Step 2 If the NPV is less than zero, try a lower discount rate. (A lower discount rate will increase the NPV; remember, we are trying to find a discount rate for which NPV = €0. (If the NPV is greater than zero, try a higher discount rate to lower the NPV. Keep adjusting the discount rate until NPV = €0. In the Hôpital-Nord example, a discount rate of 8% yields NPV of + €20 200 (see Exhibit 13.2). A discount rate of 12% yields NPV of −€18 600 (3.605, the present-value annuity factor from the annuity table × €100 000 − €379 100). Therefore, the discount rate that makes NPV = €0 must lie between 8% and 12%. We happen to try 10% and get NPV = €0. Hence, the IRR is 10%.

Exhibit 13.3 Internal rate of return method: Hôpital-Nord

Net initial investment	€379 100
Useful life	5 years
Recurring cash flows	€100 000
Required rate of return	10%*

	Total present value		Present value of €1 discounted at 10%	Sketch of relevant cash flows at end of year 0	1	2	3	4	5
Approach 1: Discounting each year's cash flow separately†									
Net initial investment	€(379 100)	←	1.000	€(379 100)					
	90 900	←	0.909		€100 000				
	82 600	←	0.826			€100 000			
Recurring cash flows	75 100	←	0.751				€100 000		
	68 300	←	0.683					€100 000	
	62 100	←	0.621						€100 000
Net present value‡	€0§								
Approach 2: Using annuity table‖									
Net initial investment	€(379 100)	←	1.000	€(379 100)					
					€ 100 000	€ 100 000	€ 100 000	€ 100 000	€ 100 000
Recurring cash flows	379 100	←	3.791						
Net present value	€0								

* The internal rate of return is computed by methods explained in the text.
† Present values from present value table.
‡ The zero difference (subject to rounding error) proves that the internal rate of return is 10%.
§ Sum is €(100) due to rounding errors. We round to €0.
‖ Annuity present values from annuity table. The annuity-table value of 3.791 is the sum of the individual discount rates of 0.909 + 0.826 + 0.751 + 0.683 + 0.621, subject to rounding error.

The step-by-step computations of an internal rate of return are easier when the cash inflows are equal, as in our example. Information from Exhibit 13.3 can be expressed in the following equation:

$$€379\ 100 = \text{Present value of annuity of } €100\ 000 \text{ at } x\% \text{ for } 5 \text{ years}$$

Or, using the annuity table, what factor F will satisfy the following equation?

$$€379\ 100 = €100\ 000F$$
$$F = 3.791$$

On the five-period line of the annuity table, find the percentage column that is closest to 3.791. It is exactly 10%. If the factor F falls between the factors in two columns, straight-line interpolation is used to approximate the IRR. The formula for straight-line interpolation is:

$$\text{LR} + \frac{\text{LN}}{\text{LN} - \text{HN}}(\text{HR} - \text{LR})$$

where LR is the required rate of return of the low estimate, HR is the rate of return of the high estimate, LN is the NPV of cash inflow of the low estimate and HN is the NPV of cash inflow of the high estimate (see Exercises 13.18 and 13.22 for examples). The use of computer spreadsheets can facilitate this exercise.

A project is accepted only if the internal rate of return exceeds the required rate of return (the opportunity cost of capital). In the Hôpital-Nord example, the X-ray machine has an IRR of 10%, which is greater than the required rate of return of 8%. On the basis of financial factors, Hôpital-Nord should invest in the new machine. If the IRR exceeds the RRR, then the project has a positive NPV when project cash flows are discounted at the RRR. If the IRR equals the RRR, NPV = €0. If the IRR is less than the RRR, NPV is negative. Obviously, managers prefer projects with higher IRRs to projects with lower IRRs, if all other things are equal. The IRR of 10% means that the cash inflows from the project are adequate to (1) recover the net initial investment in the project, and (2) earn a return of exactly 10% on investment tied up in the project over its useful life.

Comparison of NPV and IRR methods

This text emphasises the NPV method, which has the important advantage that the end result of the computations is euros, not a percentage. We can therefore add the NPVs of individual independent projects to estimate the effect of accepting a combination of projects. In contrast, the IRRs of individual projects cannot be added or averaged to derive the IRR of the combination of projects.

A second advantage of the NPV method is that we can use it in situations where the required rate of return varies over the life of the project. For example, suppose in the X-ray machine example, Hôpital-Nord has a required rate of return of 8% in years 1, 2 and 3 and 12% in years 4 and 5. The total present value of the cash inflows is as follows:

Year	Cash inflows	Required rate of return	Present value of €1 discounted at required rate	Total present value of cash inflows
1	€100 000	8%	0.926	€92 600
2	100 000	8	0.857	85 700
3	100 000	8	0.794	79 400
4	100 000	12	0.636	63 600
5	100 000	12	0.567	56 700
				€378 000

Given the net initial investment of €379 100, NPV calculations indicate that the project is unattractive: it has a negative NPV of − €1100 (€378 000 − €379 100). However, it is not possible to use the IRR method to infer that the project should be rejected. The existence of different required rates of return in different years (8% for years 1, 2 and 3 versus 12% for years 4 and 5) means there is not a single RRR that the IRR (a single figure) must exceed for the project to be acceptable.

Finally, in some situations, the IRR method is prone to indicating erroneous decisions. This can occur when mutually exclusive projects with unequal lives or unequal levels of initial investment are being compared to one another. The reason is that the IRR method implicitly assumes that project cash flows can be reinvested at the *project's* rate of return. The NPV method, in contrast, accurately assumes that project cash flows can only be reinvested at the *company's* required rate of return. Despite its limitations, the IRR method is widely used. Why? Probably because managers find the percentage return computed under the IRR method easy to understand and compare.

Sensitivity analysis

To highlight the basic differences between the NPV and IRR methods, we have assumed that the anticipated values of cash flows will occur for certain. Obviously, managers know that their predictions are imperfect and thus uncertain. To examine how a result will change if the predicted financial outcomes are not achieved or if an underlying assumption changes, managers can use *sensitivity analysis*.

Sensitivity analysis can take various forms. For example, suppose Hôpital-Nord management believes forecast savings are uncertain and difficult to predict. Management could then ask: What is the minimum annual cash savings that will cause us to invest in the new X-ray machine (that is, for NPV = €0)? For the data in Exhibit 13.2, let ACI = annual cash inflows and let NPV = €0. The net initial investment is €379 100, and the present-value factor at the 8% required rate of return for a five-year annuity of €1 is 3.993. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{NPV} &= €0 \\ 3.993 \times \text{ACI} - €379\,100 &= €0 \\ 3.993 \times \text{ACI} &= €379\,100 \\ \text{ACI} &= €94\,941 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, at the discount rate of 8%, annual cash inflows can decrease to €94 941 (a decline of €100 000 − €94 941 = €5059) before NPV falls below zero. If management believes it can attain annual cash savings of at least €94 941, it could justify investing in the new X-ray machine on financial grounds alone.

Exhibit 13.4 shows how the net present value of the X-ray machine project is affected by variations in (1) the annual cash inflows, and (2) the required rate of return. NPVs can also vary with the useful life of a project. Sensitivity analysis helps a manager focus on those decisions that are most sensitive, and it eases the manager's mind about those decisions that are not so sensitive. For the X-ray machine project, Exhibit 13.4 shows that variations in either the annual cash inflows or the required rate of return have sizeable effects on NPV.

The use of probabilities for different possible cash-flow outcomes can readily be integrated within sensitivity analyses (see Chapter 8 appendix for a discussion of decision analysis under conditions of uncertainty and the calculation of expected values). A real options approach to investment analysis may also be adopted whereby cash flows are discounted after considering such options as waiting before investing, or abandoning the investment temporarily, depending on certain outcomes, or even integrating investment possibilities in the future that are contingent on different present-day investment options (Bhimani et al., 2007; see also Dixit and Pindyck, 1994).

Exhibit 13.4 Net present value calculations for Hôpital-Nord under different assumptions of annual cash inflows and required rates of return

	Annual cash inflows*				
Required rate of return	**€80 000**	**€90 000**	**€100 000**	**€110 000**	**€120 000**
6%	€(42 140)	€(22)	€42 100	€84 220	€126 340
8%	(59 660)	(19 730)	20 200	60 130	100 060
10%	(75 820)	(37 910)	0	37 910	75 820

* All entries in cells assume a useful project life of five years.

Relevant cash flows in discounted cash flow analysis

The key point of discounted cash flow (DCF) methods is to focus exclusively on differences in expected future cash flows that result from implementing a project. All cash flows are treated the same, whether they arise from operations, purchase or sale of equipment, or investment in or recovery of working capital. The opportunity cost and the time value of money are tied to the cash flowing in or out of the organisation, not to the source of the cash.

One of the biggest challenges in DCF analysis is determining those cash flows that are relevant to making the decision. Relevant cash flows are expected future cash flows that differ among the alternatives. At Hôpital-Nord, the alternatives are either to continue to use the old X-ray machine or to replace it with the new machine. The relevant cash flows are the *differences* in cash flows between continuing to use the old machine and purchasing the new one. When reading this section, focus on identifying future expected cash flows of each alternative and differences in cash flows between alternatives.

Capital investment projects (for example, purchasing a new machine) typically have five major categories of cash flows: (1) initial investment in machine and working capital, (2) cash flow from current disposal of the old machine, (3) cash flows from operations, (4) cash flow from terminal disposal of machine and recovery of working capital, and (5) income tax impacts on cash flows. We discuss the first four categories here, using Hôpital-Nord's purchase decision of the X-ray machine as an illustration. Income tax impacts are described later in the chapter.

1 **Initial investment.** Two components of investment cash flows are (a) the cash outflow to purchase the machine, and (b) the working-capital cash outflows.

   a *Initial machine investment*. These outflows, made for purchasing plant, equipment and machines, occur in the early periods of the project's life and include cash outflows for transporting and installing the item. In the Hôpital-Nord example, the €372 890 cost (including transportation and installation costs) of the X-ray machine is an outflow in year 0. These cash flows are relevant to the capital-budgeting decision because they will be incurred only if Hôpital-Nord decides to purchase the new machine.

   b *Initial working-capital investment*. Investments in plant, equipment and machines and in the sales promotions for product lines are invariably accompanied by incremental investments in working capital. These investments take the form of current assets, such as receivables and stocks (supplies and spare parts for the new machine in the Hôpital-Nord example), minus current liabilities, such as creditors. Working-capital investments are similar to machine investments. In each case, available cash is tied up.

      The Hôpital-Nord example assumes a €10 000 incremental investment in working capital (supplies and spare parts stock) if the new machine is acquired. The incremental working-capital investment is the difference between the working capital required to operate the new machine (say, €15 000) and the working capital required to operate the old machine (say, €5000). The €10 000 additional investment in working capital is a cash outflow in year 0.

2 **Current disposal price of old machine.** Any cash received from disposal of the old machine is a relevant cash inflow (in year 0) because it is an expected future cash flow that differs between the alternatives of investing and not investing in the new project. In some situations the terminal disposal value can be critical to projects. If Hôpital-Nord invests in the new X-ray machine, it will be able to dispose of its old machine for €3790. These proceeds are included as cash inflow in year 0.

   Recall from Chapter 10 that the book value (original cost minus total depreciation) of the old equipment is irrelevant. It is a past cost. Nothing can change what has already been spent or what has already happened.

   The net initial investment for the new X-ray machine, €379 100, is the initial machine investment plus the initial working-capital investment minus current disposal value of the old machine: €372 890 + €10 000 − €3790 = €379 100.

3 **Annual cash flow from operations.** This category includes the difference between each year's cash flow from operations under the alternatives. Organisations make capital investments to generate cash inflows in the future. These inflows may result from producing and selling additional goods or services, or, as in the Hôpital-Nord example, from savings in operating cash costs. Annual cash flow from operations can be net outflows in some periods. For example, oil production may require large expenditures every five years (say) to improve oil extraction rates. Focus on operating cash flows, not on accrued revenues and costs.

To underscore this point, consider the following additional facts about the Hôpital-Nord X-ray machine example:

- Total X-Ray Department overhead costs will not change whether the new machine is purchased or the old machine is kept. The X-Ray Department overhead costs are allocated to individual X-ray machines – Hôpital-Nord has several – on the basis of the labour costs for operating each machine. Because the new X-ray machine will have lower labour costs, overhead allocated to it will be €30 000 less than the amount allocated to the machine it is replacing.
- Depreciation on the new X-ray machine using the straight-line method is €74 578 [(original cost, €372 890 – expected terminal disposal value, €0) ÷ useful life, 5 years].

The savings in operating cash flows (labour and materials) of €100 000 in each of the first four years and €90 000 in the fifth year are clearly relevant because they are expected future cash flows that will differ between the alternatives of investing and not investing in the new machine. But what about the decrease in allocated overhead costs of €30 000? What about depreciation of €74 578?

a *Overhead costs.* The key question is: Do total overhead cash flows decrease as a result of acquiring the new machine? In our example, they do not. Total X-Ray Department overhead costs remain the same whether or not the new machine is acquired. Only the overhead allocated to individual machines changes. The overhead costs allocated to the new machine are €30 000 less. This €30 000 will be allocated to *other* machines in the department. No cash flow savings in total overhead occur. Therefore, the €30 000 should not be included as part of annual cash savings from operations.

b *Depreciation.* Ignoring possible income tax considerations (which differ from country to country), depreciation is irrelevant. It is a non-cash allocation of costs whereas DCF is based on inflows and outflows of cash. In DCF methods, the initial cost of equipment is regarded as a *lump-sum* outflow of cash at year 0. Deducting depreciation from operating cash inflows would be counting the *lump-sum* amount twice.

4 **Terminal disposal of investment.** The disposal of the investment at the date of termination of a project generally increases cash inflow in the year of disposal. Errors in forecasting the terminal disposal value are seldom critical on long-duration projects because the present value of amounts to be received in the distant future is usually small. Two components of the terminal disposal value of an investment are (a) the terminal disposal value of the machine, and (b) the recovery of working capital.

a *Terminal disposal value of machine.* At the end of the useful life of the project, the initial machine investment may not be recovered at all, or it may be only partially recovered in the amount of the terminal disposal value.

The relevant cash inflow is the difference in expected terminal disposal values at the end of five years under the two alternatives – the terminal disposal value of the new machine (zero in the case of Hôpital-Nord) minus the terminal disposal value of the old machine (also zero in the Hôpital-Nord example).

b *Recovery of working capital.* The initial investment in working capital is usually fully recouped when the project is terminated. At that time, stocks and receivables necessary to support the project are no longer needed. The relevant cash inflow is the difference in the expected working capital recovered under the two alternatives. If the new X-ray machine is

purchased, Hôpital-Nord will recover €15 000 of working capital in year 5. If the new machine is not acquired, Hôpital-Nord will recover €5000 of working capital in year 5, at the end of the useful life of the old machine. The relevant cash inflow in year 5 if Hôpital-Nord invests in the new machine is €10 000 (€15 000 − €5000).

Some capital investments *reduce* working capital. Assume that an Internet of Things (IoT) project with a seven-year life will reduce stocks and hence working capital by €20 million from, say, €50 million to €30 million. This reduction will be represented as a €20 million cash inflow for the project at year 0. At the end of seven years, the recovery of working capital will show a relevant cash *outflow* of €20 million. Why? Because the company recovers only €30 million of working capital with the IoT project rather than the €50 million of working capital it would have recovered had it not opted for IoT.

Exhibit 13.5 presents the relevant cash inflows and outflows for Hôpital-Nord's decision to purchase the new machine as described in items 1 to 4 in the above list. The total relevant cash flows for each year are the same as the relevant cash flows used in Exhibits 13.2 and 13.3 to illustrate the NPV and IRR methods.

Payback method

Uniform cash flows

We now consider a third method for analysing the financial aspects of projects. The **payback method** measures the time it will take to recoup, in the form of net cash inflows, the net initial investment in a project. Like NPV and IRR, the payback method does not distinguish the sources of cash inflows (operations, disposal of equipment or recovery of working capital). In the Hôpital-Nord example, the X-ray machine costs €379 100, has a five-year expected useful life, and generates a €100 000 uniform cash inflow each year. The payback calculations are as follows:

$$\text{Payback} = \frac{\text{Net initial investment}}{\text{Uniform increase in annual cash flows}}$$
$$= \frac{€379\,100}{€100\,000} = 3.791 \text{ years}$$

Exhibit 13.5 Relevant cash inflows and outflows for Hôpital-Nord

	Sketch of relevant cash flows at end of year					
	0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**
1 a Initial machine investment	€(372 890)					
b Initial working-capital investment	(10 000)					
2 Current disposal price of old machine	3790					
Net initial investment	(379 100)					
3 Recurring operating cash flows		€100 000	€100 000	€100 000	€100 000	€100 000
4 a Terminal disposal value of machine						0
b Recovery of working capital						10 000
Total relevant cash inflows and outflows as shown in Exhibits 13.2 and 13.3	€(379 100)	€100 000	€100 000	€100 000	€100 000	€100 000

Cash savings from the new X-ray machine occur *throughout* the year, but for simplicity in calculating NPV and IRR, we assume they occur at the *end* of each year. A literal interpretation of this assumption would imply a payback of four years because Hôpital-Nord will recover its investment only when cash inflows occur at the end of the fourth year. The calculations shown in this chapter, however, better approximate Hôpital-Nord's payback on the basis of uniform cash flows throughout the year.

Under the payback method, organisations often choose a cutoff period for a project. The greater the risks of a project, the smaller the cutoff period. Why? Because, faced with higher risks, managers would like to recover the investments they have made more quickly. For example, Hualtenbanken Hydro uses a payback period of 3–4 years for investment decisions at its Ormen Lange oil refinery. Projects with a payback period less than the cutoff period are acceptable. Those with a payback period greater than the cutoff period are rejected. If Hôpital-Nord's cutoff period under the payback method is three years, Hôpital-Nord will reject the new machine. If Hôpital-Nord uses a cutoff period of four years, Hôpital-Nord will consider the new machine to be acceptable.

The major strength of the payback method is that it is easy to understand. Like the DCF methods described previously, the payback method is not affected by accounting conventions such as depreciation. Advocates of the payback method argue that it is a handy measure when (1) estimates of profitability are not crucial and preliminary screening of many proposals is necessary, and (2) the predicted cash flows in later years of the project are highly uncertain.

Two major weaknesses of the payback method are (1) it neglects the time value of money, and (2) it neglects to consider project cash flows after the net initial investment is recovered. Consider an alternative to the €379 100 X-ray machine mentioned earlier. Assume that another X-ray machine, with a three-year useful life and zero terminal disposal value, requires only a €300 000 net initial investment and will also result in cash inflows of €100 000 per year. First, compare the two payback periods:

$$\text{Payback period for machine 1} = \frac{€379\,100}{€100\,000} = 3.8 \text{ years}$$

$$\text{Payback period for machine 2} = \frac{€300\,000}{€100\,000} = 3.0 \text{ years}$$

The payback criterion would favour buying the €300 000 machine, because it has a shorter payback. In fact, if the cutoff period is three years, then Hôpital-Nord would not acquire machine 1 because it fails to meet the payback criterion. Consider next the NPV of the two investment options using Hôpital-Nord's 8% required rate of return for the X-ray machine investment. At a discount rate of 8%, the NPV of machine 2 is −€42 300 (2.577, the present value annuity factor for 3 years at 8% from the annuity table €100 000 = €257 700 − the net initial investment of €300 000). Machine 1, as we know, has a positive NPV of €20 200 (from Exhibit 13.2). The NPV criterion suggests that Hôpital-Nord should acquire machine 1. Machine 2, with a negative NPV, would fail to meet the NPV criterion. The payback method gives a different answer from the NPV method because the payback method (1) does not consider cash flows after the payback period, and (2) does not discount cash flows.

There are situations where payback calculations suggest indifference between two projects. For instance, if Project A yields €10 000 in year 1 and €90 000 in year 6, and Project B yields €90 000 in year 1 and €10 000 in year 6, the two projects would have identical payback periods. The NPV rule would naturally point to Project B as the preferred option. An added problem with the payback method is that choosing too short a cutoff period for project acceptance may promote the selection of only short-lived projects. The organisation will tend to reject long-term, positive-NPV projects.

Non-uniform cash flows

The payback formula presented above is designed for uniform annual cash inflows. When annual cash inflows are not uniform, the payback computation takes a cumulative form. The years' net cash inflows are totalled until the amount of the net initial investment has been recovered. Assume that the solicitors' firm Slaughter and Ogilvy is considering the purchase of a €150 000 cloud video-conferencing facility that will enable its solicitors and clients to interact in a conference format without physically travelling. This facility is expected to produce a total cash saving of €380 000 over the next five years (primarily due to a reduction in travel costs and more effective use of senior staff time). The cash savings occur evenly throughout each year but non-uniformly across five years. Payback occurs during the third year:

Year	Cash savings	Cumulative cash savings	Net initial investment yet to be recovered at end of year
0	–	–	€150 000
1	€50 000	€50 000	100 000
2	60 000	110 000	40 000
3	80 000	190 000	–
4	90 000	280 000	–
5	100 000	380 000	–

Straight-line interpolation within the third year reveals that the final €40 000 needed to recover the €150 000 investment (that is, €150 000 − €110 000 recovered by the end of year 2) will be achieved halfway through year 3 (in which €80 000 of cash savings occur):

$$\text{Payback } 2 \text{ years} + \left(\frac{€40\,000}{€80\,000} \times 1 \text{ years}\right) = 2.5 \text{ years}$$

The cloud video-conferencing example has a single cash outflow of €150 000 at year 0. Where a project has multiple cash outflows occurring at different points in time, these outflows are added to derive a total cash outflow figure for the project. No adjustment is made for the time value of money when adding these cash outflows in computing the payback period.

Accounting rate of return method

We now consider a fourth method for analysing the financial aspects of capital-budgeting projects. The **accounting rate of return (ARR)** is an accounting measure of income (based on accrual income) divided by an accounting measure of investment. It is also called the *return on investment (ROI)*. We illustrate ARR for the Hôpital-Nord example using the project's net initial investment as the denominator.

$$\text{ARR} = \frac{\text{Increase in expected average annual operating profit}}{\text{Net initial investment}}$$

If Hôpital-Nord purchases the new X-ray machine, the increase in expected average annual savings in operating costs will be €98 000: this amount is the total operating savings of €490 000 (€100 000 for 4 years and €90 000 in year 5) ÷ 5. The new machine has a zero terminal disposal value. Straight-line depreciation on the new machine is €372 890 ÷ 5 = €74 578. The net initial investment is €379 100. The accounting rate of return is equal to:

$$\text{ARR} = \frac{€98\,000 - €74\,578}{€379\,100} = \frac{€23\,422}{€379\,100} = 6.18\%$$

The ARR of 6.18% indicates the rate at which a euro of investment generates operating profit. Projects whose ARR exceeds an accounting return required for the project are considered desirable.

Managers using this method prefer projects with higher, rather than lower, ARR, if all other things are equal.

The ARR method is similar in spirit to the IRR method – both methods calculate a rate-of-return percentage. Whereas the ARR computation calculates return using operating profit numbers after considering accruals, the IRR method calculates return on the basis of cash flows and the time value of money. For capital-budgeting decisions, the IRR method is conceptually superior to the ARR method in terms of financial theory and financial decision making.

The ARR computations are simple and easy to understand and use routinely maintained accounting numbers. Unlike the payback method, the ARR method considers profitability. Unlike the NPV and IRR methods, however, the ARR focuses on operating profit effects and hence considers accruals. It does not track cash flows and ignores the time value of money. Critics cite these arguments as major drawbacks of the ARR computations.

Managing the project

This section discusses stage 6 of capital budgeting, which deals with implementation and control. Two different aspects of management control are discussed: management control of the investment activity itself and management control of the project as a whole.

Management control of the investment activity

Some initial investments such as purchasing an X-ray or a video-conferencing facility are relatively easy to implement. Other initial investments such as building retail centres or new manufacturing plants are more complex and take more time. In the latter case, monitoring and controlling the investment schedules and budgets is critical to the success of the overall project.

Management control of the project: post-investment audit

A post-investment audit compares the predictions of investment costs and outcomes made at the time a project was selected to the actual results. It provides management with feedback about their performance. Suppose, for example, that actual outcomes (operating cash savings from the new X-ray machine in the Hôpital-Nord example) are much lower than predicted outcomes. Management must then investigate whether this occurred because the original estimates were too optimistic or because there were problems in implementing the project. Both types of problem are a concern.

Optimistic estimates are a concern because they may result in the acceptance of a project that would otherwise have been rejected. To discourage optimistic estimates, some companies in the West maintain records comparing actual performance to the estimates made by individual managers when seeking approval for capital investments. These companies believe that post-investment audits discourage managers from making unrealistic forecasts. Problems in implementing a project can be a concern because the returns from the project will not meet expectations. Post-investment audits can point to areas requiring corrective action.

Care should be exercised when performing a post-investment audit. It should be done only after project outcomes have stabilised. Doing the audit early may give a misleading picture. Obtaining actual data to compare against estimates is often not easy. For example, actual labour cost savings from the new X-ray machine may not be comparable to the estimated savings because the actual number and types of X-ray taken may be different from the quantities assumed during the capital-budgeting process. Other benefits, such as the impact on patient treatment, may be difficult to quantify.

We next examine how managers analyse income taxes and changing prices in capital budgeting.

Income tax factors

The importance of income taxes

Income taxes often have a large influence on investment decisions. For example, income taxes can sizably reduce the net cash inflows from individual projects and so change their relative desirability. Decisions to locate plants in certain countries such as Ireland or Jersey are often motivated by tax incentive reasons. The benefits of lower taxes sometimes outweigh lower project operating costs.

Treatment of depreciation for tax purposes

Tax rules regarding income measurement are sometimes the same as the generally accepted accounting principles used for preparing financial statements. But, in most countries, there are tax rules, such as those pertaining to depreciation, which differ from those suitable for preparing financial accounts. Income tax laws frequently allow taxpayers to use shorter useful lives for depreciation.

We emphasise income tax provisions affecting depreciation. Tax laws for depreciation deductions in many countries typically cover the amount allowable for depreciation, the time period over which the asset is to be depreciated, and the pattern of allowable depreciation.

Under such circumstances, tax can be an important consideration in assessing the financial value of capital investment projects. In computing tax it is necessary first to calculate taxable profit as distinct from the reported profit in external financial accounts. The amount of tax payable is based on this figure at the prevailing statutory level.

Under most tax regimes, the depreciation used by financial accountants in calculating the profit figure is not regarded as an allowable expense. Instead, an alternative schedule of tax allowances is used which provides a depreciation framework valid for tax calculation only. In the UK these tax allowances are referred to as capital allowances. For instance, most plant and equipment in the UK qualifies for 'writing-down allowances'. This means that each year, for example, 25% of the written-down value of an asset can be claimed as tax depreciation. Thus, for an asset costing €5000, we should have the following:

Year	Written-down value (opening)	25% allowance	Written-down value (closing)
0	5000.00	1250.00	3750.00
1	3750.00	937.50	2812.50
2	2812.50	703.13	2109.38
3	2109.38	527.34	1582.03
4	1582.03	395.51	1186.52

The allowance continues indefinitely. Sometimes, when an asset is disposed of, the remaining written-down value may be claimed as an allowance. Other less generous allowances apply to certain assets.

We now consider the tax paid by a company which uses the asset to generate net revenues (before depreciation) of €1500 per year. For simplicity, we assume a corporate tax rate of 40%. In year 0, instead of assessing tax on €1500, the taxable profit is €250 (= €1500 − €1250), i.e. the tax is €100 instead of €600. (Note that if the accountant applies 10% **straight-line depreciation (SL)**, in which an equal amount of depreciation is taken each year, then reported profits will be €1000.) Similar calculations apply in subsequent years. The timing of tax payments can also be a relevant factor. In most countries, tax payments generally take place one year after the end of a company's accounting year.

Capital budgeting and inflation

Inflation can be defined as the decline in the general purchasing power of the monetary unit (for example, the pound in the UK or the Swiss franc). An inflation rate of 10% in 1 year means that what could be bought with €100 (say) at the start of the year will cost €110 [€100 + (10% × €100)] at the end of the year. Some countries – for example, Argentina, Brazil, Israel, Mexico and Russia – have in the past experienced annual inflation rates of 15% to over 400%. Even an annual inflation rate of 5% over, say, a 5-year period can result in sizeable declines in the general purchasing power of the monetary unit over that time.

Why is it important to account for inflation in capital budgeting? Because declines in the general purchasing power of the monetary unit (pounds, say) will inflate future cash flows above what they would have been had there been no inflation. We now examine how inflation can be explicitly recognised in capital-budgeting analysis.

Real and nominal rates of return

When analysing inflation, distinguish between the real rate of return and the nominal (money) rate of return:

- **Real rate of return** is the rate of return required to cover return and investment risk.
- **Nominal rate of return** is the rate of return required to cover return, investment risk and the anticipated decline, due to inflation, in the general purchasing power of the cash that the investment generates. The rates of return (or interest) earned on the financial markets are nominal rates, because they compensate investors for both risk and inflation.

We next describe the relationship between real and nominal rates of return. Assume that the real rate of return for investments in high-risk cellular data-transmission equipment at Surrey Communications is 20% and that the expected inflation rate is 10%. The nominal rate of return is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Nominal rate} &= (1 + \text{Real rate})(1 + \text{Inflation rate}) - 1\\ &= (1 + 0.20)(1 + 0.10) - 1\\ &= [(1.20)(1.10)] - 1 = 1.32 - 1 = 0.32\end{aligned}$$

The nominal rate of return is also related to the real rate of return and the inflation rate as follows:

Real rate of return	0.20
Inflation rate	0.10
Combination (0.20 × 0.10)	0.02
Nominal rate of return	0.32

The real rate of return can be expressed in terms of the nominal rate of return as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Real} &= \frac{(1 + \text{Nominal rate})}{(1 + \text{Inflation rate})} - 1\\ &= \frac{(1 + 0.32)}{(1 + 0.10)} - 1\\ &= 0.20\end{aligned}$$

Note that the nominal rate is slightly higher than the real rate (0.20) plus the inflation rate (0.10). Why? Because the nominal rate recognises that inflation also decreases the purchasing power of the real rate of return earned during the year.

Net present value method and inflation

The watchwords when incorporating inflation into the net present value (NPV) method are internal consistency. There are two internally consistent approaches:

- *Nominal approach*. Predict cash inflows and outflows in nominal monetary units and use a nominal rate as the required rate of return.
- *Real approach*. Predict cash inflows and outflows in real monetary units and use a real rate as the required rate of return.

Consider an investment that is expected to generate sales of 100 units and a net cash inflow of €1000 (€10 per unit) each year for two years *without inflation*. If inflation of 10% is expected each year, net cash inflows from the sale of each unit would be €11 (€10 × 1.10) in year 1 and €12.10 [€11 × 1.10 or €10 × 1.10^2] in year 2, resulting in net cash inflows of €1100 in year 1 and €1210 in year 2. The net cash inflows of €1100 and €1210 are nominal cash inflows because they include the impact of inflation. *These are the cash flows recorded by the accounting system*. The cash inflows of €1000 each year are real cash flows because they exclude inflationary effects. Note that the real cash flows equal the nominal cash flows discounted for inflation, €1000 = €1100 ÷ 1.10 = €1210 ÷ $(1.10)^2$. Many managers find the nominal approach easier to understand and use because they observe nominal cash flows in their accounting systems and the nominal rates of return on financial markets.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Capital budgeting can be viewed as a five-stage process: (a) identification stage, (b) information-acquisition stage, (c) prediction stage, (e) alternatives assessment stage, and (f) implementation and control stage.

2 The time value of money takes into account this fact: a euro received today can be invested to start earning a return (for example, interest), so it is worth more than a euro received tomorrow. The time value of money is the opportunity cost (return forgone) from not having the money today.

3 Discounted cash flow (DCF) methods explicitly include all project cash flows and the time value of money in capital-budgeting decisions. Two DCF methods are the net present value (NPV) method and the internal rate of return (IRR) method. The NPV method calculates the expected net monetary gain or loss from a project by discounting all expected future cash inflows and outflows to the present point in time, using the required rate of return. A project is acceptable if it has a positive NPV. The IRR method calculates the rate of return (discount rate) at which the present value of expected cash inflows from a project equals the present value of expected cash outflows from a project. A project is acceptable if its IRR exceeds the required rate of return.

4 Non-financial and qualitative factors, such as the effects of investment decisions on employee learning and on the company's ability to respond faster to market changes, are often not explicitly considered in capital-budgeting decisions. However, non-financial and qualitative factors can be extremely important. In making decisions, managers must consider different possible scenarios by engaging in sensitivity analysis.

5 Relevant cash inflows and outflows are the expected future cash flows that differ among the alternatives. Only cash inflows and outflows matter. Accounting concepts such as accrued revenues and accrued expenses are irrelevant for the discounted cash flow methods.

6 The payback method measures the time it will take to recoup, in the form of cash inflows, the total amount invested in a project. The payback method neglects profitability and the time value of money. The accounting rate of return (ARR) is operating profit divided by a measure of investment. The ARR considers profitability but ignores the time value of money.

7 A variety of project management issues are important to consider including how estimates can become too optimistic and unrealistic and the value of carrying out post-investment audits.

8 Three factors influence the amount of depreciation claimed as a tax deduction: (a) the amount allowable for depreciation (called 'capital allowances' in the UK), (b) the time period over which the asset is to be depreciated, and (c) the pattern of allowable depreciation. The real rate of return is the rate of return required to cover investment risk and return.

9 The nominal rate of return is the rate of return required to cover return, investment risk and the anticipated decline, due to inflation, in the general purchasing power of the cash that the investment generates. Two internally consistent ways to account for inflation in capital budgeting are (a) to predict cash inflows and outflows in nominal terms and to use a nominal discount rate, and (b) to predict cash inflows and outflows in real terms and to use a real discount rate. The nominal and real approaches are equivalent: both yield the same net present value, but many managers find the nominal approach easier to work with.

References and further reading

Arab News (2022) 'Airbus to manufacture the world's first zero-emission aircraft by 2035', 10 May (https://arab.news/b5uyt)

Bhimani, A., Gosselin, M., Soonawalla, K. and Ncube, M. (2007) 'The value of accounting information in assessing investment risk', *Cost Management* 21(1), pp. 29–35.

CFI (2022) 'ESG (Environmental, Social and Governance): The framework for assessing the impact of the sustainability and ethical practices of a company' (https://corporatefinanceinstitute.com/resources/knowledge/other/esg-environmental-social-governance/)

Dixit, A. and Pindyck, R. (1994) *Investment under Uncertainty* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press).

Lampert, A. (2022) 'Airbus, Quebec reach $1.2 bln investment deal for A220 jet program', Reuters, 4 February (https://www.reuters.com/business/autos-transportation/airbus-quebec-reach-investment-deal-a220-jet-program-sources-2022-02-04/)

Northcott, D. and Alkaran, F. (2007) 'Strategic investment appraisal', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott, and R. Scapens (eds) Issues in Management Accounting (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall).

World Bank (2022) 'World Bank environmental and social policy for investment project financing' (https://thedocs.worldbank.org/en/doc/360141554756701078-0290022019/original/WorldBankEnvironmentalandSocialPolicyforInvestmentProjectFinancing.pdf).

CHAPTER 13

Assessment material

Review questions

13.1 What is the essence of the discounted cash flow method?

13.2 'Only quantitative outcomes are relevant in capital-budgeting analyses.' Do you agree? Explain.

13.3 What is the payback method? What are its main strengths and weaknesses?

13.4 Describe the accounting rate of return method. What are its main strengths and weaknesses?

13.5 How is the accounting rate of return method different from the payback method?

13.6 'Let's be more practical. DCF is not the gospel. Managers should not become so enchanted with DCF that strategic considerations are overlooked.' Do you agree? Explain.

13.7 What is a post-investment audit? Why is it important?

13.8 'Corporation tax only plays a role in capital budgeting because of capital allowances.' Do you agree? Explain.

13.9 Distinguish between the nominal rate of return and the real rate of return.

13.10 What approaches might be used to recognise risk in capital budgeting?

13.11 'Discounted cash flow techniques are relevant only to for-profit organisations.' Do you agree? Explain.

Exercises

Basic level

13.12 **Comparison of approaches to capital budgeting** (22–25 minutes)

Bayern-Bauwerk is thinking of buying, at a cost of €220 000, some new packaging equipment that is expected to save €50 000 in cash-operating costs per year. Its estimated useful life is 10 years, and it will have zero terminal disposal value. The required rate of return is 16%.

Required

1 Calculate the payback period.

2 Calculate the net present value.

3 Calculate the internal rate of return.

4 Calculate the accounting rate of return based on net initial investment. Assume straight-line depreciation.

13.13 Special order, relevant costs, capital budgeting (A. Spero, adapted) (30 minutes)

Euro-Jouets SNC sells neon-coated 'Feu-Follet' cars to several local toy stores. It has the capacity to make 250 000 of these units per year, but during the year ending 31 December 2022, it made and sold 130 000 cars to its existing customers. It makes these cars by dipping its highly unsuccessful 'Garou-Garou' model plastic toy cars into a vat of neon paint. It originally purchased 780 000 of the Garou-Garous but has been unable to sell them as Garou-Garous. These plastic cars originally cost €20 per unit, and 650 000 of them remain in stock.

Euro-Jouets' accountant has prepared the following cost sheet per Feu-Follet car:

Selling price per car			**€59**
Manufacturing costs per car			
Direct materials			
Plastic cars	€20		
Neon paint	6		
Boxes	3	29	
Direct manufacturing labour		8	
Depreciation of vat		10	
Allocated plant manager's salary		5	
Manufacturing costs per car			52
Gross margin per car			7
Marketing costs per car (€2 of which is variable)			6
Operating margin per car			€1

On 31 December 2022, the Mille-Fontaines chain asked Euro-Jouets to provide 100 000 Feu-Follet cars at a special price of €50 per car. Euro-Jouets will not need to incur any marketing cost for the Mille-Fontaines sale.

Euro-Jouets expected to sell the Feu-Follet cars to its existing customers for the next four years at the current level of demand of 130 000 units per year and none thereafter. At the end of four years, Euro-Jouets will dispose of the VAT and whatever cars remain at zero net disposal value. If Euro-Jouets accepts the Mille-Fontaines order, it is certain that its other customers will refuse to pay the current price of €59 and will demand a discount. Euro-Jouets estimates a required rate of return of 16%.

Required

1 Should Euro-Jouets accept the special order if it must also offer the same price of €50 to its existing customers for the next four years?

2 Suppose Euro-Jouets is uncertain about the discount the existing customers would demand. Determine the price that Euro-Jouets would have to offer its existing customers for the next four years to be indifferent between accepting and rejecting Mille-Fontaines' special order.

***13.14 Question from the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants, Pilot Paper 2.4, Financial Management and Control** (45 minutes)

Bread Products Ltd is considering the replacement policy for its industrial size ovens which are used as part of a production line that bakes bread. Given its heavy usage, each oven has to be replaced frequently. The choice is between replacing every two years or every three years. Only one type of oven is used, each of which costs £24 500.

Maintenance costs and resale values are as follows:

Year	Maintenance per annum	Resale value
1	£500	
2	£800	£15 600
3	£1 500	£11 200

Original cost, maintenance costs and resale values are expressed in current prices. That is, for example, maintenance for a two-year-old oven would cost £800 for maintenance undertaken now. It is expected that maintenance costs will increase at 10% per annum and oven replacement cost and resale values at 5% per annum. The money discount rate is 15%.

Required

1 Calculate the preferred replacement policy for the ovens in a choice between a two-year or three-year replacement cycle.

2 Identify the limitations of net present value techniques when applied generally to investment appraisal.

Intermediate level

13.15 Net present value, internal rate of return, sensitivity analysis (20–30 minutes)

Carmelo, SA, is planning to buy equipment costing €120 000 to improve its materials handling system. The equipment is expected to save €40 000 in cash-operating costs per year. Its estimated useful life is six years, and it will have zero terminal disposal value. The required rate of return is 14%.

Required

1 Calculate the net present value. Calculate the internal rate of return.

2 What is the minimum annual cash savings that will make the equipment desirable on a net present value basis?

3 When might a manager calculate the minimum annual cash savings described in requirement 2 rather than use the €40 000 savings in cash-operating costs per year to calculate the net present value or internal rate of return?

13.16 DCF, accounting rate of return, working capital, evaluation of performance (20–30 minutes)

Meer has been offered a special-purpose metal-cutting machine for €110 000. The machine is expected to have a useful life of eight years with a terminal disposal value of €30 000. Savings in cash-operating costs are expected to be €25 000 per year. However, additional working capital is needed to keep the machine running efficiently and without stoppages. Working capital includes such items as filters, lubricants, bearings, abrasives, flexible exhaust pipes and belts. These items must continually be replaced so that an investment of €8000 must be maintained in them at all times, but this investment is fully recoverable (will be 'cashed in') at the end of the useful life. Meer's required rate of return is 14%.

Required

1 **a** Calculate the net present value.
b Calculate the internal rate of return.

2 Calculate the accounting rate of return based on the net initial investment. Assume straight-line depreciation.

3 You have the authority to make the purchase decision. Why might you be reluctant to base your decision on the DCF model?

13.17 Sporting contract, net present value, payback (30 minutes)

Aalesund Fotballklubb is a Norwegian football team with a long tradition of winning. However, the last three years have been traumatic. The team has not won a major championship, and attendance at games has dropped considerably. Norsk Fiskevær AS is Aalesund Fotballklubb's major corporate sponsor. Sverre Aspelund, the president of Norsk Fiskevær, is also the president

of Aalesund Fotballklubb. Sverre proposes that the team purchase the services of Brazilian star, Monteiro. Monteiro would create great excitement for Aalesund Fotballklubb's fans and sponsors. Monteiro's agent notifies Aspelund that terms for the superstar's signing with Aalesund Fotballklubb are a bonus of NOK 3 million payable now (start of 2022) plus the following four-year contract (assume all amounts are in millions and are paid at the end of each year):

	2023	2024	2025	2026
Salary	NOK 4.5	NOK 5.0	NOK 6.0	NOK 6.5
Living and other costs	1.0	1.2	1.3	1.4

Aspelund's initial reaction is one of horror. As president of Norsk Fiskevær, he has never earned more than NOK 800 000 a year. However, he swallows his pride and decides to examine the expected additions to Aalesund Fotballklubb's cash inflows if Monteiro is signed for the four-year contract (assume all cash inflows are in millions and are received at the end of each year):

	2023	2024	2025	2026
Net gate receipts	NOK 2.0	NOK 3.0	NOK 3.0	NOK 3.0
Corporate sponsorship	3.0	3.5	4.0	4.0
Television royalties	0.0	1.2	1.4	2.0
Merchandise income (net of costs)	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7

Aspelund believes that a 12% required rate of return is appropriate for investments by Aalesund Fotballklubb.

Required

1 For Monteiro's proposed four-year contract, calculate (a) the net present value, and (b) the payback period.

2 What other factors should Aspelund consider when deciding whether to sign Monteiro the four-year contract?

13.18 Comparison of projects with unequal lives (20–30 minutes)

The manager of the Robin Hood Company is considering two investment projects that are mutually exclusive. The after-tax required rate of return of this company is 10%, and the anticipated cash flows are as follows:

		Cash inflows			
Project no.	Investment required now	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4
1	€10 000	€12 000	€0	€0	€0
2	10 000	0	0	0	17 500

Required

1 Calculate the internal rate of return of both projects. Which project is preferable?

2 Calculate the net present value of both projects. Which project is preferable?

3 Comment briefly on the results in requirements 1 and 2. Be specific in your comparisons.

Advanced level

13.19 Ranking projects (adapted from NAA Research Report No. 35, pp. 83–5) (40 minutes)

Assume that six projects, A–F in the table that follows, have been submitted for inclusion in the coming year's budget for capital expenditures:

		Project cash flows					
	Year	A	B	C	D	E	F
Investment	0	€(100 000)	€(100 000)	€(200 000)	€(200 000)	€(200 000)	€(50 000)
	1	0	20 000	70 000	0	5 000	23 000
	2	10 000	20 000	70 000	0	15 000	20 000
	3	20 000	20 000	70 000	0	30 000	10 000
	4	20 000	20 000	70 000	0	50 000	10 000
	5	20 000	20 000	70 000	0	50 000	
Per year	6–9	20 000	20 000		200 000	50 000	
	10	20 000	20 000			50 000	
Per year	11–15	20 000					
Internal rate of return		14%	?	?	?	12.6%	12.0%

Required

1. Calculate the internal rates of return (to the nearest half per cent) for projects B, C and D. Rank all projects in descending order in terms of the internal rate of return. Show your calculations.
2. Based on your answer in requirement 1, state which projects you would select, assuming a 10% required rate of return (a) if €500 000 is the limit to be spent, (b) if €550 000 is the limit, and (c) if €650 000 is the limit.
3. Assuming a 16% required rate of return and using the net present value method, calculate the net present values and rank all the projects. Which project is more desirable, C or D? Compare your answer with your ranking in requirement 1.
4. What factors other than those considered in requirements 1 to 3 would influence your project rankings? Be specific.

13.20 Equipment replacement, relevant costs, sensitivity analysis (30–40 minutes)

A toy manufacturer that specialises in making fad items has just developed a £50 000 moulding machine for producing a special toy. The machine has been used to produce only one unit so far. The company will depreciate the £50 000 initial machine investment evenly over four years, after which production of the toy will be stopped. The company's expected annual costs will be direct materials, £10 000; direct manufacturing labour, £20 000; and variable manufacturing overhead, £15 000. Variable manufacturing overhead varies with direct manufacturing labour costs. Fixed manufacturing overhead, exclusive of depreciation, is £7500 annually, and fixed marketing and administrative costs are £12 000 annually.

Suddenly a machine salesperson appears. He has a new machine that is ideally suited for producing this toy. His automatic machine is distinctly superior. It reduces the cost of direct materials by 10% and produces twice as many units per hour. It will cost £44 000 and will have a zero terminal disposal value at the end of four years.

Production and sales of 25 000 units per year (sales of £100 000) will be the same whether the company uses the old machine or the new machine. The current disposal value of the toy company's moulding machine is £5000. Its terminal disposal value in four years will be £2600.

Required

1. Assume that the required rate of return is 18%. Using the net present value method, show whether the new machine should be purchased. What is the role of the book value of the old machine in the analysis?

2 What is the payback period for the new machine?

3 As the manager who developed the £50 000 old moulding machine, you are trying to justify not buying the new £44 000 machine. You question the accuracy of the expected cash operating savings. By how much must these cash savings fall before the point of indifference – the point where the net present value of investing in the new machine – reaches zero?

13.21 Capital budgeting, computer-integrated manufacturing, sensitivity (25 minutes)

Dinamica Lda is planning to replace one of its production lines, which has a remaining useful life of 10 years, book value of €9 million, a current disposal value of €5 million, and a neglible terminal disposal value 10 years from now. The average investment in working capital is €6 million.

Dinamica plans to replace the production line with a computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) system at a cost of €45 million. Manuel Ericeira, the production manager, estimates the following annual cash-flow effects of implementing CIM:

a Cost of maintaining software programs and CIM equipment, €1.5 million.

b Reduction in lease payments due to reduced floor-space requirements, €1 million.

c Fewer product defects and reduced rework, €4.5 million.

In addition, Manuel estimates the average investment in working capital will decrease to €2 million. The estimated disposal value of the CIM equipment is €14 million at the end of 10 years. Dinamica uses a required rate of return of 14%.

Required

1 Calculate the net present value of the CIM proposal. On the basis of this criterion, should Dinamica adopt CIM?

2 Manuel argues that the higher quality and faster production resulting from CIM will also increase Dinamica's revenues. He estimates additional cash revenues net of cash-operating costs from CIM of €3 million per year. Calculate the net present value of the CIM proposal under this assumption.

3 Management is uncertain if the cash flows from additional revenues will occur. Calculate the minimum annual cash flow from additional revenues that will cause Dinamica to invest in CIM on the basis of the net present value criterion.

4 Discuss the effects of reducing the investment horizon for CIM to five years, Dinamica's usual time period for making investment decisions. Assume disposal values at the end of five years of CIM line, €20 million; and of old production line, €4 million. Also assume additional cash revenues net of cash-operating costs from CIM of €3 million per year.

*13.22 Question from CIMA 2010 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Specimen Examination Paper 1 (30 minutes)

The board of directors of a company is considering two mutually exclusive projects. Both projects necessitate buying new machinery, and both projects are expected to have a life of five years.

Project One

This project has already been evaluated. Details of the project are:

Initial investment needed £500 000

Net present value £41 000

Accounting rate of return 31%.

Project Two

Details of project two are:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Revenue (£000)	370	500	510	515	475
Operating costs (£000)	300	350	380	390	400
Depreciation (£000)	90	90	90	90	90

The figures for revenue and operating costs in the table above are cash-flow estimates, have been stated at current values and are assumed to occur at the year end. However, differential inflation is expected: 8% per annum for revenue and 6% per annum for operating costs. The machinery will cost £500 000 and will be sold for £50 000 cash at the end of year 5.

Additional information

- The company pays tax at 30%. Tax is paid and/or received one year in arrears.
- The machines qualify for tax depreciation at the rate of 25% per annum on a reducing balance basis.
- The company's cost of capital is 12% per annum. The current rate of return on investments in the money market is 7%.
- The project chosen will be funded by internal funds.
- The target accounting rate of return is 30%. The company defines 'Accounting rate of return' as the average profit before tax divided by the average investment.

Required

1 **a** Calculate the net present value and the accounting rate of return of Project Two.
b Prepare a report for the Board of Directors which:

(i) recommends which of the projects, if any, they should invest in
(ii) identifies two non-financial factors that are relevant to the decision
(iii) explains the strengths and weaknesses of net present value and accounting rate of return.

2 A government organisation has a fixed interest ten-year loan. The rate on the loan is 8% per annum. The loan is being repaid in equal annual instalments at the end of each year. The amount borrowed was £250 000. The loan has just over four years to run.

Ignore taxation.

Required

Calculate the present value of the amount outstanding on the loan.

13.23 Question from Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Financial Management, section B, June 2015 (45 minutes)

Hraxin Co is appraising an investment project which has an expected life of four years and which will not be repeated. The initial investment, payable at the start of the first year of operation, is £5 million. Scrap value of £500 000 is expected to arise at the end of four years. There is some uncertainty about what price can be charged for the units produced by the investment project, as this is expected to depend on the future state of the economy. The following forecast of selling prices and their probabilities has been prepared:

Future economic state	Weak	Medium	Strong
Probability of future economic state	35%	50%	15%
Selling price in current price terms	£25 per unit	£30 per unit	£35 per unit

These selling prices are expected to be subject to annual inflation of 4% per year, regardless of which economic state prevails in the future. Forecast sales and production volumes, and total nominal variable costs, have already been forecast, as follows:

Year	1	2	3	4
Sales and production (units)	150 000	250 000	400 000	300 000
Nominal variable cost (£000)	2 385	4 200	7 080	5 730

Incremental overheads of £400 000 per year in current price terms will arise as a result of undertaking the investment project. A large proportion of these overheads relate to energy costs which are expected to increase sharply in the future because of energy supply shortages, so overhead inflation of 10% per year is expected.

The initial investment will attract tax-allowable depreciation on a straight-line basis over the four-year project life. The rate of corporation tax t is 30% and tax liabilities are paid in the year in which they arise. Hraxin Co has traditionally used a nominal after-tax discount rate of 11% per year for investment appraisal.

Required

1 Calculate the expected net present value of the investment project and comment on its financial acceptability.

2 Critically discuss if sensitivity analysis will assist Hraxin Co in assessing the risk of the investment project.

13.24 Question from CIMA Performance Operations, section C, November 2014 (40 minutes)

ST operates in a highly competitive market and is considering introducing a new product to expand its current range. The new product will require the purchase of a specialised machine costing £825 000. The machine has a useful life of four years and is expected to have a scrap value at the end of Year 4 of £45 000. The company uses the straight line method of depreciation. The machine would be used exclusively for the new product.

Due to a shortage of space in the factory, investment in the new machine would necessitate the disposal, for £23 000, of an existing machine which has a net book value of £34 000. This machine, if retained for a further year, would have earned a contribution of £90 000 before being scrapped for nil value. The machine had a zero tax written-down value and therefore there will be no effect on tax depreciation arising from the disposal of the machine.

The company employed the services of a consultant, at a cost of £29 000, to determine the demand for the new product. The consultant's estimated demand is given below:

Year 1	18 000 units
Year 2	24 000 units
Year 3	26 000 units
Year 4	22 000 units

The new product is expected to earn a contribution of £30 per unit.

Fixed costs of £380 000 per annum, including depreciation of the new machine, will arise as a direct result of the manufacture of the new product.

Taxation

ST's Financial Director has provided the following taxation information:

- Tax depreciation: 25% per annum of the reducing balance, with a balancing adjustment in the year of disposal.
- Taxation rate: 30% of taxable profits. Half of the tax is payable in the year in which it arises; the balance is paid in the following year.

- ST has sufficient taxable profits from other parts of its business to enable the offset of any pre-tax losses on this project.

Other information

A cost of capital of 12% per annum is used to evaluate projects of this type. Ignore inflation.

Required

Evaluate whether ST should introduce the new product. You should use net present value (NPV) as the basis of your evaluation.

PART II

Case study problems

Case 201

Permaclean Products plc

David Otley, University of Lancaster

The central issue in this case concerns product pricing. The analysis requires the estimation of appropriate costs and assessing price-demand information using past sales data.

Permaclean Products is an old-established firm, located in Dunstable, manufacturing a comprehensive range of domestic cleaning materials. It has a sound reputation and a well-known brand name, which has made it a market leader in a wide range of products designed for home use. Although Permaclean has several competitors, the total sales of each are small in comparison with those of Permaclean, mainly because none offers such a complete product range.

In 2020 the price of one of Permaclean's major products, Permashine – a mini-bottled bath cleaner, was raised from 75p per bottle to 99p when the product was repackaged in a newly designed bottle, one dose; however, the contents were identical to the previous pack, both in formulation and quantity. During the following two years sales fell by 27%. At 75p per bottle Permashine had been competitively priced but when its price was increased manufacturers of similar products had not followed. In the period from 2018 to 2021 the price of competing products had been raised by only 5p.

Prices were fixed once a year, to come into force on 1 February, before the annual peak demand which occurred in the spring. In January 2022, John Williams, the marketing manager, met with Andrea Garcia, the chief accountant, to review the company's pricing policy for the coming year.

Permashine

Permashine is a proprietary cleaning product for bathrooms and in 2018 had accounted for over 10% of the company's sales. Although there are a variety of competing products that are mini-bottled on the market, Permashine has special properties which make it especially suitable for cleaning baths made of acrylic materials. Such baths are becoming increasingly common, but great care has to be taken to avoid scratching them when they are being cleaned. Permashine contains no abrasive materials yet is able to clean acrylic surfaces with great efficiency, giving a surface shine that is very durable. No competing product appears to have this combination of advantages.

Source: Adapted from Otley, D. (1988) 'Permaclean Products plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission.

The process used in the manufacture of Permashine involves a hazardous chemical reaction that has to be precisely controlled. Production therefore takes place in a separate building on the same site as the main factory where the other products are made but some distance from it. This production unit, which was constructed in 2014 for safety reasons, is not capable of being adapted for the manufacture of other Permaclean products without substantial expenditure. Although the manufacture of Permashine is potentially hazard ous, no serious accidents have occurred during the 15 years in which it has been produced and the final product is itself completely harmless.

In early 2019, Andrea Garcia had installed an improved cost accounting system which allowed product costs to be determined and product profitability to be reviewed. With regard to Permashine, this took into account the new packaging costs, as well as the overhead costs that were separately attributable to the production unit. Her analysis, shown in Exhibit 201.1, indicated that the total cost of Permashine was greater than the current selling price of 75p. As a result, at the annual pricing review in 2020 the selling price was increased to 99p.

Although total industry sales continued to rise during 2020 and 2021, Permashine suffered a reduction in both its market share and its total sales, as shown in Exhibit 201.2.

The 2022 pricing review

Both Mr Williams and Ms Garcia were concerned to improve the profitability of Permashine, as it was one of the company's major products. Mr Williams had joined the company in 2014 and had introduced a number of changes in the firm's marketing methods. One of his major successes had been his decision to replace wholesalers with a team of salaried sales representatives who

Exhibit 201.1 Estimated costs of Permashine at various production volumes

	Annual production ('000 bottles)						
Cost (p/bottle)	**250**	**300**	**400**	**500**	**600**	**700**	**800**
Direct labour	17.5	17.5	17.0	17.0	17.0	17.5	18.0
Materials	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0	8.0
Dept. overhead							
Variable	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0	9.0
Fixed	14.4	12.0	9.0	7.2	6.0	5.1	4.5
Factory overhead (20% of direct labour)	3.5	3.5	3.4	3.4	3.4	3.5	3.6
Factory cost	52.4	50.0	46.4	44.6	43.4	43.1	43.1
Selling and administration cost at 80% of factory cost	41.9	40.0	37.1	35.7	34.7	34.5	34.5
Total cost	94.3	90.0	82.7	80.3	78.1	77.6	77.6

Exhibit 201.2 Permashine: sales and price

	2015	**2016**	**2017**	**2018**	**2019**	**2020**	**2021**
Permashine sales ('000 bottles)	400	429	486	525	536	462	391
Total industry sales ('000 bottles)	2000	2050	2250	2200	2300	2650	2900
Permashine % of market	20	21	22	24	23	17.5	13.5
Permashine price (p)	60	70	70	75	75	99	99
Competitors' price range (p)	56–62	65–70	65–70	69–75	69–75	70–80	75–80

sold the company's full product range direct to retailers. Ms Garcia had been appointed in 2018, following the retirement of the previous chief accountant, and had been responsible for installing a modern computer-based accounting system.

Mr Williams pressed for a return to the previous price of 75p for Permashine; at this price he was confident that the market share of the product could be increased to 20% in 2022. He thought that total industry sales would continue to increase to at least 3 million bottles in 2022, and that Permashine was capable of regaining its previous position, provided that it was competitively priced. Because Permaclean had a modern production facility and a manufacturing output greater than any competitor, he was confident that factory production costs were the lowest in the industry. He therefore supported a policy of reducing the price so that other firms would find it uneconomic to continue to compete.

Mr Williams was convinced that sales would continue to fall if the price were to be maintained at 99p, although he believed that there would always be a premium market for Permashine because of its unique qualities. He thought that annual sales were unlikely to fall below 250 000 bottles even at the current price.

Ms Garcia replied that she was well aware of the problems being experienced in selling the higher-priced product. Nevertheless, her analysis showed that the 99p price covered the costs of the product, even at the lowest volume envisaged. If the price were reduced to 75p costs would fail to be covered, even if sales volume rose to the 800 000 bottles which represented the maximum practical capacity of the plant. She referred to her detailed costings (Exhibit 201.1) to support her argument. These figures, she stated, were based on actual data from past years; where data were not available, she had made what she regarded as realistic assumptions.

Question

What price would you recommend for Permashine? Support your recommendation with detailed calculations, making the underlying assumptions on which your analysis is based as clear as possible.

PART III

Planning and budgetary control systems

This part of the book focuses on what managers need to know about expected outcomes once decisions have been made and to build on such information in making further decisions. We look at ways in which management accounting approaches may assist in planning for the future and in learning from past activities. Chapter 14 looks at organisational and behavioural issues which affect the design of internal accounting systems and considers also the consequences of using the information output of such systems. Chapters 15, 16 and 17 stress calculative considerations in the formal planning and control process.

Chapter 14	Motivation, budgets and responsibility accounting	422
Chapter 15	Flexible budgets, variances and management control: I	459
Chapter 16	Flexible budgets, variances and management control: II	490
Chapter 17	Measuring yield, mix and quantity effects	524
Part III	Case study problems	549

CHAPTER 14

Motivation, budgets and responsibility accounting

Budgets are one of the most widely used tools for planning and controlling enterprises. Surveys show an almost universal use of budgets by medium and large companies in many parts of the globe. Budgeting systems turn managers' perspectives forward. A forward-looking perspective enables managers to be in a better position to exploit opportunities. It also enables them to anticipate problems and take steps to eliminate or reduce their severity. One belief is that: 'Few businesses plan to fail, but many of those that flop failed to plan.'

This chapter examines budgeting as a planning and coordinating tool. Topics covered in prior chapters feature in this discussion. Budgets give financial expression to many of themes we have covered in this book so far. For example, budgets can quantify the planned financial effects of activities aimed at continuous improvement and cost reduction. By understanding cost behaviour (covered in Chapters 2 and 9), managers can better predict how total budgeted costs are affected by different projected output levels. Familiarity with cost tracing and cost allocation (covered in Chapters 3, 4 and 5), allows managers to consider how different projected revenue and cost amounts will impact on the budgeted profit and loss statement and balance sheet.

The material covered in this chapter is also integral to subsequent chapters. For example, Chapters 15 and 16 examine how the numbers used in budgets assist in evaluating the performance of managers or the business areas for which they have responsibility.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Understand what a master budget is and explain its major benefits
- Describe major components of the master budget
- Prepare the budgeted profit statement and its supporting schedules
- Describe the uses of computer-based financial planning models
- Explain kaizen budgeting and its importance for cost management
- Illustrate an activity-based budgeting approach
- Describe responsibility centres and responsibility accounting
- Explain how controllability relates to responsibility accounting

Major features of budgets

Definition and role of budgets

A *budget* is a quantitative expression of a proposed plan of action by management for a future time period and is an aid to the coordination and implementation of the plan. It can cover both financial and non-financial aspects of these plans and acts as a blue-print for the company to follow in the forthcoming period.

James McKinsey is regarded as the father of business budgets. Just over a 100 years ago on 20 June 1922 he wrote his 26-chapter book titled *Budgetary Control* (McKinsey, 1923). He noted that 'mere study of past records is inadequate . . . The past is gone and cannot be changed. It is only future operations over which control can be exercised.' Budgets for most firms today heed this in covering financial aspects quantified on the basis of management's expectations regarding future income, cash flows and financial position. Just as individual financial statements are prepared covering past periods, so they can be prepared covering future periods – for example, a budgeted income statement, a budgeted cash-flow statement and a budgeted balance sheet. Underlying these financial budgets can be non-financial budgets for, say, units manufactured, number of new products introduced to the market, or head count. It is noteworthy that McKinsey later founded the consulting firm which bears his name. McKinsey & Co today employs over 30 000 workers, has revenues exceeding $10 billion making it the largest (and oldest) of the 'Big Three' management consultancies in the world.

Many organisations adopt the following budgeting cycle:

1. Before the start of the fiscal year, managers at all levels take into account the company's past performance, market feedback, and anticipated future changes to initiate plans for the next period. For example, an anticipated economic recovery from a recession may cause managers to plan for sales increases, higher production, and greater promotion expenses. Managers and management accountants work together to develop plans for the company as a whole and the performance of its subunits, such as departments or divisions.
2. At the beginning of the fiscal year, senior managers give subordinate managers a frame of reference, a set of specific financial or non-financial expectations against which they will compare actual results.
3. During the course of the year, management accountants help managers investigate any deviations from the plans, such as an unexpected decline in sales. If necessary, corrective action follows – changes in a product's features, a reduction in prices to boost sales, or cutting of costs to maintain profitability.

The **master budget** coordinates all the financial projections in the organisation's individual budgets in a single organisation-wide set of budgets for a given time period. It embraces the impact of both *operating* decisions and *financing* decisions. Operating decisions are about the acquisition and use of scarce resources. Financing decisions deal with how to obtain the funds to acquire resources. This chapter emphasises operating budgets. The terminology used to describe budgets varies among companies. For example, budgeted financial statements are sometimes called **pro forma statements**. Some companies, such as Hewlett-Packard, refer to budgeting as *targeting* whereas others, such as Nissan Motor Company refer to the budget as a *profit plan*. Microsoft refers to goals as *commitments* and distributes firm-level goals across the company, connecting them to organisational, team, and – ultimately – individual commitments.

The term *master* in 'master budget' refers to it being a comprehensive, organisation-wide set of budgets. Consider the Credit Suisse Group which owns the Credit Suisse Bank. It is one of the world's most profitable and important banks upon which international financial stability depends. It has four divisions, Investment Banking, Wealth Management, Swiss Bank and Asset Management. A Shared Services Group provides legal, IT, risk management, marketing and support to all areas. The four divisions each have a separate budgeted income statement, a

separate budgeted cash-flow statement, and so on. The master budgeted income statement for the Credit Suisse Group is a single income statement that combines information from all these individual budgeted income statements. Similarly, the master budgeted cash-flow statement is a single cash-flow statement that combines information from all these individual budgeted cash-flow statements.

Roles of budgets

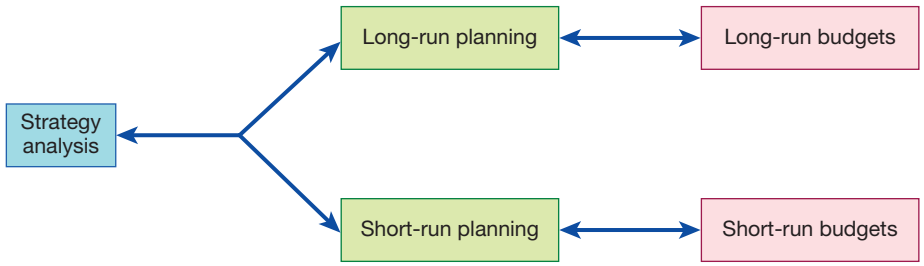
Budgets are a major feature of management control systems for many companies. Current thinking concerning budgetary control systems suggests two opposite views. On the one hand, there is the view that espouses incremental improvement to budgetary processes in terms of linking such processes more closely to operational requirements and planning systems and increasing the frequency of budget revisions and the deployment of rolling budgets. Conversely, an alternative view advocates the abandonment of budgetary control and its replacement with alternative techniques to enable firms to become more adaptive and agile. Some companies have extensively altered the manner in which budgetary control is exercised or even abandoned the practice. For instance, when Jan Wallander became the chief executive officer of Svenska Handelsbanken – one of the most profitable international banks in Europe – he abolished the budget process, viewing it as an 'unnecessary evil'. Control is now undertaken using alternative management approaches. Other companies, such as Ikea, Volvo, Ericsson, Boots and Diageo, have moved away from traditional department-focused budgetary control. Still most firms favour budgets and see the following useful functions.

Strategy and plans

Budgeting for most companies is especially useful when it is integrated with a company's longer-term strategy. We may think of strategy as what an organisation does to align its capabilities with the opportunities it identifies in the market environment it operates in (this is further discussed in Part 4 of the book). In considering strategic choices, organisational participants may question: What are our objectives? What set of integrated choices can we make along the value chain (for example, in product and service design, operations and marketing) to create value for our customers? How do we distinguish ourselves from our competitors? What organisational and financial structures serve us best? What are the risks and opportunities of alternative strategies, and what are our contingency plans if our preferred plan fails? A company, such as Carrefour, can have a strategy of providing quality products or services at a low price. Another company, such as Porsche or Kempinski Hotels, can have a strategy of providing a unique product or service that is priced higher than the products or services of competitors.

Consider the diagram in Exhibit 14.1. Strategic analysis underlies both long-run and short-run planning. In turn, these plans lead to the formulation of budgets. The arrows in the diagram are pointing in two directions. Why? Because strategy, plans and budgets are interrelated and affect one another. Budgets provide feedback to managers about the likely effects of their strategic plans. Managers then use this feedback to revise their strategic plans. In an increasingly competitive business climate, consumers shop around and demand greater returns for the prices they pay. The communications industry is no exception. BT Retail, for instance, places great reliance on 'top-down' and 'bottom-up' forecasts to ensure all customer requirements are taken into account. For its core telephony revenue, BT takes into account myriad factors, including the incorporation of new products, customer segmentation, external economic and social factors, in its budget forecasts. Start-ups in the digital space need to swiftly reformulate their business strategy on an ongoing basis. At times the hypothesis on which they are founded needs to be pivoted extensively in the light of new information. In such technology-based businesses assessing information via a 'tech start-up financial control loop' becomes useful (Bhimani, 2022).

Exhibit 14.1 Strategic analysis in the formulation of long-run and short-run budgets



A framework for judging performance

Budgeted performance measures can overcome two key limitations of using past performance as a basis for judging actual results. One limitation is that past results incorporate past miscues and substandard performance. Consider a mobile phone company (Mobile Communications) examining the 2023 performance of its salesforce. Suppose the past performance in 2022 incorporates the efforts of many departed salespeople who left because they did not have an understanding of the marketplace. Using the sales record of those departed employees would set the performance bar for new sales-people too low.

A second limitation of past performance is that the future may be expected to be very different from the past. Consider again our mobile phone company. Suppose that Mobile Communications had a 20% revenue increase in 2023 compared with a 10% increase in 2022. Does this indicate excellent sales performance? Before saying yes, consider two additional facts. Fact one is that in November 2022, an industry trade association forecast that the 2023 growth rate in industry revenues would be 40%. Fact two is that in 2023, the actual growth rate in industry revenues was 50%. The 20% actual revenue gain in 2023 takes on a negative connotation given these facts, even though it exceeds the 2022 actual growth rate of 10%. Use of the 40% figure as the budgeted rate provides a better way to evaluate the 2023 sales performance than does use of the 2022 actual rate of 10%. A cycling analogy is appropriate here. A budgeted industry growth rate of 40% is equivalent to the cyclist going downhill on a steep slope. Top management of Mobile Communications might expect that good performance will achieve above-average speed compared with other cyclists in similar conditions.

Some companies have evolved their budget practices as Marciano (2022) explains in his article 'The amazing history, present, and future of business budgets', in which he quotes Ivo de Brouwer, the Finance Director at the French food group, Danone stating: 'The old ways were still working in 1999. When I started in my career it really was possible for a company to predict the world and what would go on. Even in some circumstances, we could influence the future. In that world it really makes sense that you make a yearly budget and a few times a year you look and see where we are deviating from this budget and ask how do we cope with that?' But less than two decades later, Danone subscribed more closely to a world of high volatility, uncertainty, complexity and ambiguity (often referred to as VUCA). De Brouwer said: 'We introduced rolling forecasts which meant we are continuously looking one and half years in front of us at what we could expect could happen.'

Coordination and communication

Coordination is the meshing and balancing of all factors of production or service and of all the departments and business functions so that the company can meet its objectives. *Communication* is getting those objectives understood and accepted by all departments and functions.

Coordination forces executives to think of relationships among individual operations, departments, the company as a whole and across companies. Coordination implies, for example, that purchasing officers make material purchase plans based on production requirements. Also, production managers plan personnel and machinery needs to produce the number of products necessary to meet revenue forecasts. How does a budget lead to coordination? Consider budgeting at Pace, a United Kingdom-based manufacturer of electronic products. A key product is Pace's digital set-top box for decoding satellite broadcasts. The production manager can achieve more timely production by coordinating and communicating with the company's marketing team to understand when set-top boxes need to be shipped to customers. In turn, the marketing team can make better predictions of future demand for set-top boxes by coordinating and communicating with Pace's customers.

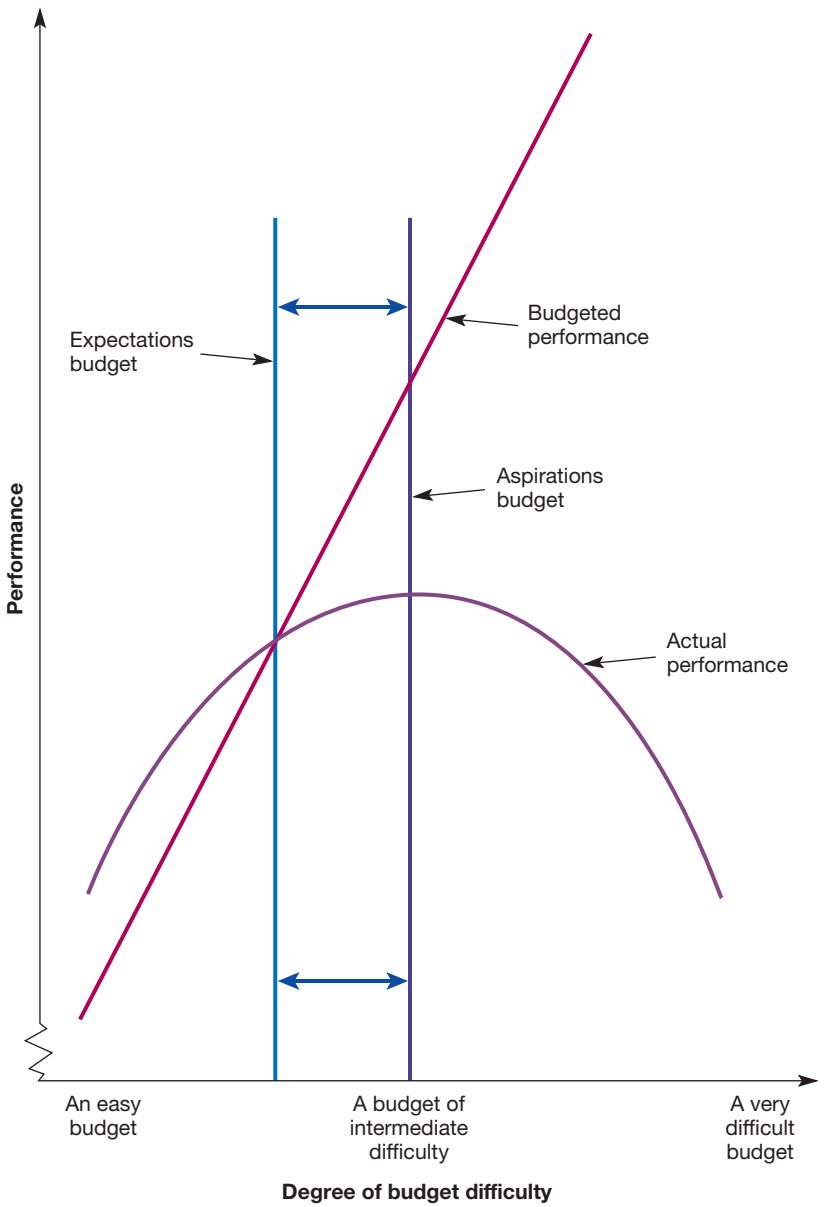
Suppose BSkyB, one of Pace's largest customers, is planning to launch a new high-definition personal video recorder service. If Pace's marketing group is able to obtain information about the launch date for the service, it can share this information with Pace's manufacturing group. The manufacturing group must then coordinate and communicate with Pace's materials-procurement group, and so on. The point to understand is that Pace is more likely to have personal video recorders in the quantities customers demand if Pace coordinates and communicates both within its business functions and with its customers and suppliers during the budgeting and production processes.

Motivation and related organisational pursuits

Budgets help managers, but budgets need help. Top management has the ultimate responsibility for the budgets of the organisation they manage. Management at all levels, however, should understand and support the budget and all aspects of the management control system. **Zero-based budgeting (ZBB)** is an approach to budgeting which forces managers to justify every item within their business units every year as part of the control process. ZBB was developed 60 years ago but recently the 'number of companies publicly referring to zero-base budgeting has exploded' (Fitzpatrick and Hawke, 2015). The approach is widely used as a motivational device by many large companies including WPP, Alcoa and Quicksilver. Unilever also is one company that is using ZBB to enable their managers to 'approach spending and manufacturing with fresh eyes'. Altering management behaviour can be achieved through budgetary control measures. At Unilever, this was seen as essential following a takeover attempt by Kraft Heinz's $115 billion bid for the company which failed. But the company was 'sufficiently rattled to raise margin targets and talk-up its enthusiasm for ZBB' (Guthrie, 2018).

The manner in which a budget is administered can adversely impact on the managers' behaviour. Budgets should not be administered rigidly. Managers sometimes use budgeted targets to effect changes in a forceful way. Budgetary control entails more than the simple application of rules and calculative procedures and the quantitative evaluation of performance. Budgeting activities achieve specific significance depending on the organisational processes through which budgetary pressures and demands arise. Having a formal document such as the budget is an effective way to communicate a consistent set of plans to the organisation as a whole. There are instances where budgets serve to send strategic messages. In practice, it is rarely possible to disentangle the organisational from the technical aspects of budgeting emphasised in this chapter. An enterprise can set a 'difficult to attain' budget in an attempt to motivate good performance. This is because, in practice, budgets that are set up to a certain degree of tightness often become stronger motivators, although motivation tends to decline after a certain point (see the aspirations budget in Exhibit 14.2). The expectation may be that the budget target set to motivate high performance from employees will not be attained. An alternative budget for financial planning purposes may therefore have to be established based on what is expected to be achieved. Such alternative uses of budgets sometimes require a 'write-down' to be determined. If such 'write-downs' become known in the organisation, relationships between managers and subordinates and across departments will possibly be adversely affected. Consequently, the motivational role of the aspirations budget is certain to suffer.

Exhibit 14.2 The conflicting purposes of budgeting



Source: Hopwood, A. (1974) *Accounting and Human Behaviour* (London: Haymarket). Reproduced with permission from Haymarket Business Publications Ltd.

Situations where decision makers agree about the aims of particular organisational actions or over the activities of particular organisational units sometimes coincide with certainty about what will ensue if certain actions are taken. In such instances, we can think of budgets as facilitating the coordination and integration of organisational activities through direct computation. For instance, expected budgeted cash-flow changes can readily be assessed and future overdraft requirements can be anticipated in advance. If, however, there exists uncertainty over what might happen as a consequence of taking some action, we can think of the budget as offering the possibility of helping managers to learn rather than to provide computational answers. In other

words, managers can simulate different budgeting and planning situations and can ponder over 'what-if' scenarios. It is clear, however, that often managers will not see eye to eye on the objectives that ought to be pursued. Even if the consequences of action are undisputed, a high level of bargaining and debate may underlie decisions as to the best course of action to be pursued. Often, top managers face situations with high ambiguity, high stakes and extreme uncertainty. Discord, contention, debate, disagreement and conflict are natural in such situations. Reasonable people are likely to perceive an ambiguous and uncertain world in different ways and to make differing assessments about what might happen in the future. They will show different preferences for alternatives. Moreover, senior executives in charge of large and important sectors of the organisation will receive information and pressure from their own unique constituencies within the firm and will form objectives that reflect different responsibilities. Executives will act as forceful advocates for 'truth' as they see it. Conflict is apt to ensue.

In such circumstances, budgetary controls may be deployed to further the ends of only some groups of managers by, for instance, highlighting, measuring and reporting only certain activities but omitting others. As such, budgets can become synonymous with 'ammunition' in that they determine what is regarded as relevant and worthwhile or problematic. There are even times when both what is to be aimed for and what consequences may follow from particular actions are uncertain. Budgets can in such circumstances help rationalise and justify courses of action over which there is already commitment. In other words, budgetary activities do not enhance the quality of decisions but simply provide legitimation for what has been decided beforehand. Although managers often prefer to acknowledge ways in which budgets are useful in providing answers or in helping them to probe and learn, it is clear that budgets also exist in organisations as ammunition and rationalisation means.

Types of budget

Time coverage

The purpose(s) for budgeting should guide the time period chosen for the budget. Consider budgeting for a new Harley-Davidson 500cc motorcycle. If the purpose is to budget for the total profitability of this new model, a five-year period (or more) may be appropriate (covering design, manufacture, sales and after-sales support). In contrast, consider budgeting for a Christmas play. If the purpose is to estimate all cash outlays, a 14-month period from the planning to staging of the play may be adequate.

The most frequently used budget period is one year. The annual budget is often subdivided by months for the first quarter and by quarters for the remainder of the year. The budgeted data for a year are frequently revised as the year unfolds. For example, at the end of the first quarter, the budget for the next three quarters is changed in light of new information.

Some businesses use *rolling budgets*. A **rolling budget** is a budget or plan that is always available for a specified future period by adding a month, quarter or year in the future as the month, quarter or year just ended is dropped. Thus, a 12-month rolling budget for the March 2022 to February 2023 period becomes a 12-month rolling budget for the April 2022 to March 2023 period the next month, and so on. There is always a 12-month budget in place. Rolling budgets constantly force management to think concretely about the forthcoming 12 months, regardless of the month at hand. Consider Electrolux, the global appliance company, which has a three- to five-year strategic plan and a one-year rolling budget. A one-year rolling budget for the April 2022 to March 2023 period is superseded by a one-year rolling budget for July 2022 to June 2023 and so on. Rolling budgets force Electrolux's management to constantly think about the forthcoming 12 months. Some companies, such as Borealis, Europe's leading polyolefin plastics manufacturer, and Nordea, the largest financial services group in the Nordic and Baltic Sea region, prepare rolling financial forecasts that look ahead five quarters.

An illustration of a master budget

A good way to explain the budgeting process is to walk through the development of an actual budget. We shall use a master budget because it provides a comprehensive picture of the entire budgeting process at Wessex Engineering, a manufacturer of aircraft replacement parts. Its job costing system for manufacturing costs has two direct-cost categories (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) and one indirect-cost pool (manufacturing overhead). Manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed) is allocated to products using direct manufacturing labour-hours as the allocation base.

Exhibit 14.3 shows a simplified diagram of the various parts of the master budget for Wessex Engineering. The master budget summarises the financial projections of all the organisation's individual budgets. The master budget results in a set of related financial statements for a set time period, usually a year. The bulk of Exhibit 14.3 presents a set of budgets that together is often called the **operating budget**, which is the budgeted profit statement and its supporting budget schedules. The supporting budget schedules cut across different categories of the value chain from R&D to customer service. The **financial budget** is that part of the master budget that comprises the capital budget, cash budget, budgeted balance sheet, and budgeted statement of cash flows. It focuses on the impact of operations and planned capital outlays on cash.

The final master budget is often the result of several iterations. Each of its drafts involves interaction across the various business functions of the value chain.

Basic data and requirements

Wessex Engineering is a machine shop that uses skilled labour and metal alloys to manufacture two types of aircraft replacement parts: Regular and Heavy-Duty. Wessex managers are ready to prepare a master budget for the year 2022. To keep our illustration manageable for clarifying basic relationships, we make the following assumptions:

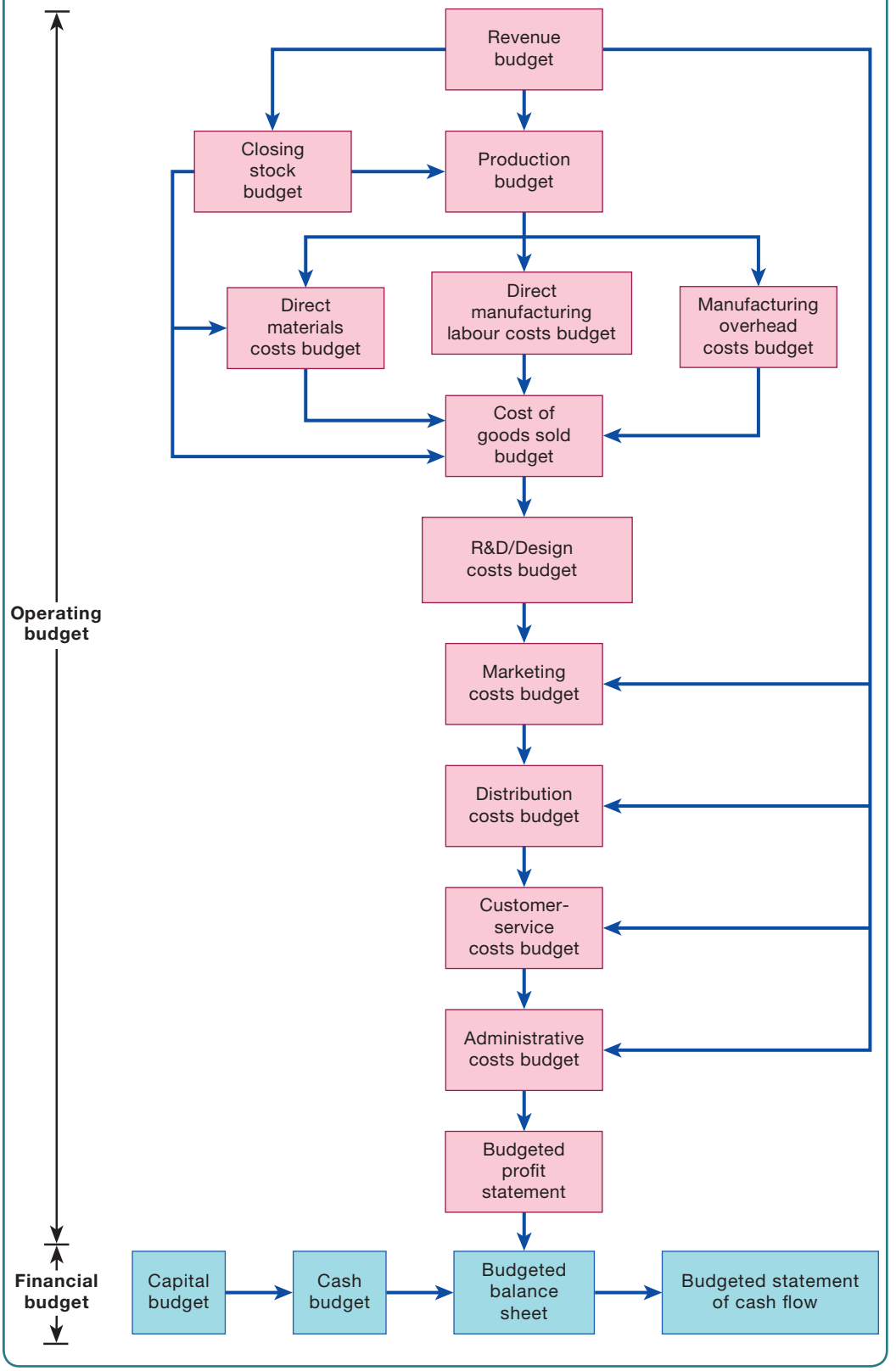
1. The only source of revenues is sales of the two parts. Non-sales-related revenue, such as interest income, is assumed to be zero.
2. Work-in-progress stock is negligible and is ignored.
3. Direct materials stock and finished goods stock are costed using the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method.
4. Unit costs of direct materials purchased and finished goods sold remain unchanged throughout the budget year (2022).
5. Variable production costs are variable with respect to direct manufacturing labour-hours. Variable non-production costs are variable with respect to revenues. Both assumptions are simplifying ones made to keep our example relatively straightforward.
6. For computing inventoriable costs, all manufacturing costs (fixed and variable) are allocated using a single allocation base – direct manufacturing labour-hours.

After carefully examining all relevant factors, the executives of Wessex Engineering forecast the following figures for 2022:

Direct materials	
Material 111 alloy	€7 per kilogram
Material 112 alloy	€10 per kilogram
Direct manufacturing labour	€20 per hour

	Product	
Content of each product unit	Regular aircraft part	Heavy-Duty aircraft part
Direct materials 111 alloy	12 kilograms	12 kilograms
Direct materials 112 alloy	6 kilograms	8 kilograms
Direct manufacturing labour	4 hours	6 hours

Exhibit 14.3 Overview of the master budget for Wessex Engineering



All direct manufacturing costs are variable with respect to the units of output produced. Additional information regarding the year 2022 is as follows:

	Product	
	Regular	**Heavy-Duty**
Expected sales in units	5 000	1 000
Selling price per unit	€600	€800
Target closing stock in units*	1 100	50
Opening stock in units	100	50
Opening stock in euros	€38 400	€26 200

	Direct materials	
	111 Alloy	**112 Alloy**
Opening stock in kilograms	7000	6000
Target closing stock in kilograms*	8000	2000

*Target stocks depend on expected sales, expected variation in demand for products, and management philosophies such as just-in-time stock management.

At the anticipated output levels for the Regular and Heavy-Duty aircraft parts, management believes the following manufacturing overhead costs will be incurred:

Variable: €26 per direct manufacturing labour-hour

Fixed: €420 000 manufacturing overhead cost for production within relevant range

Other (non-production) costs expected to be incurred:

Variable:	R&D/product design	€76 000	
	Marketing	133 000	
	Distribution	66 500	
	Customer service	47 500	
	Administrative	152 000	€475 000
Fixed:	R&D/product design	60 000	
	Marketing	67 000	
	Distribution	33 500	
	Customer service	12 500	
	Administrative	222 000	395 000
Total			€870 000

Our task at hand is to prepare a budgeted operating profit statement for the year 2022. As shown in Exhibit 14.3, this is one component of Wessex's master budget. Other components of the master budget – the budgeted balance sheet and the cash budget – are discussed in the appendix to this chapter.

The following supporting budget schedules will be prepared when developing Wessex's budgeted profit statement:

1. Revenue budget
2. Production budget (in units)
3. Direct materials usage budget and direct materials purchases budget
4. Direct manufacturing labour budget
5. Manufacturing overhead budget
6. Closing stock budget
7. Cost of goods sold budget
8. Other (non-production) costs budget.

Most organisations have a budget manual, which contains instructions and relevant information for preparing budgets. Although the details differ among organisations, the following basic steps are common for developing a budgeted profit statement. Beginning with the revenue budget, each budget follows step by step in logical fashion. In most cases, computer software speeds the budget computations.

Steps in preparing an operating budget

Step 1: Revenue budget The revenue budget (schedule 1) is the usual starting point for budgeting. Why? Because production (and hence costs) and stock levels generally depend on the forecast level of revenue.

Schedule 1: Revenue budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Units	Selling price	Total revenues
Regular	5 000	€600	€3 000 000
Heavy-Duty	1 000	800	800 000
Total			€3 800 000

The €3.8 million is the amount of revenues in the budgeted income statement. The revenue budget is often the outcome of elaborate information gathering and discussions among sales managers and field sales representatives.

Pressures can exist for budgeted revenues to be either over- or underestimates of the expected amounts. Pressure for employees to underestimate budgeted revenues can occur when a company uses the difference between actual and budget amounts to evaluate marketing managers. These managers may respond by giving highly conservative forecasts. **Padding** the budget or introducing **budgetary slack** refers to the practice of underestimating budgeted revenues (or overestimating budgeted costs) in order to make budgeted targets more easily achievable. Introducing budgetary slack makes it more likely that actual revenues will exceed budgeted amounts. From the marketing manager's standpoint, budgetary slack hedges against unexpected adverse circumstances.

Occasionally, revenues are limited by available production capacity. For example, unusually heavy market demand, shortages of personnel or materials, or strikes may cause a company to exhaust its finished goods stock completely. Additional sales cannot be made because no stock of the product is available. In such cases, the production capacity – the factor that limits revenue – is the starting point for preparing the revenue budget.

Step 2: Production budget (in units) After revenues are budgeted, the production budget (schedule 2) can be prepared. The total finished goods units to be produced depends on planned sales and expected changes in stock levels:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{production}\\ \text{(units)}\end{array} = \begin{array}{l}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{sales}\\ \text{(units)}\end{array} + \begin{array}{l}\text{Target closing}\\ \text{finished goods}\\ \text{stock (units)}\end{array} - \begin{array}{l}\text{Opening}\\ \text{finished goods}\\ \text{stock (units)}\end{array}$$

Schedule 2: Production budget (in units) for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Product	
	Regular	Heavy-Duty
Budgeted sales (schedule 1)	5000	1000
Add target closing finished goods stock	1100	50
Total requirements	6100	1050
Deduct opening finished goods stock	100	50
Units to be produced	6000	1000

When unit sales are not stable throughout the year, managers must decide whether (1) to adjust production levels periodically to minimise stock held, or (2) to maintain constant production levels and let stock rise and fall. Increasingly, managers are choosing to adjust production. Chapter 21 discusses just-in-time production systems whose objective is to keep extremely low levels of stock throughout the year.

Step 3: Direct materials usage budget and direct materials purchases budget The decision on the number of units to be produced (schedule 2) is the key to computing the usage of direct materials in quantities and in euros.

Schedule 3A: Direct materials usage budget in kilograms and euros for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Material		
	111 Alloy	**112 Alloy**	**Total**
Direct materials to be used in production of Regular parts (6000 units × 12 and 6 kg – see schedule 2)	72 000	36 000	
Direct materials to be used in production of Heavy-Duty parts (1000 units × 12 and 8 kg – see schedule 2)	12 000	8 000	
Total direct materials to be used (kg)	84 000	44 000	
Direct materials to be used from opening stock (under a FIFO cost-flow assumption)	7 000	6 000	
Multiply by cost per kilogram of opening stock	€7	€10	
Cost of direct materials to be used from opening stock: (a)	€49 000	€60 000	€109 000
Direct materials to be used from purchases (84 000 – 7000; 44 000 – 6000)	77 000	38 000	
Multiply by cost per kilogram of purchased materials	€7	€10	
Cost of direct materials to be used from purchases: (b)	€539 000	€380 000	€919 000
Total costs of direct materials to be used: (a) + (b)	€588 000	€440 000	€1 028 000

Schedule 3B calculates the budget for direct materials purchases, which depends on the budgeted direct materials to be used, the opening stock of direct materials, and the target closing stock of direct materials:

$$\text{Purchases of direct materials} = \text{Usage of direct materials} + \text{Target closing stock of direct stock of direct} - \text{Opening stock of direct materials}$$

Schedule 3B: Direct materials purchases budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Material		
	111 Alloy	**112 Alloy**	**Total**
Direct materials to be used in production from schedule 3A (kg)	84 000	44 000	
Add target closing direct materials stock (kg)	8 000	2 000	
Total requirements (kg)	92 000	46 000	
Deduct opening direct materials stock (kg)	7 000	6 000	
Direct materials to be purchased (kg)	85 000	40 000	
Multiply by cost per kilogram of purchased materials	€7	€10	
Total direct materials purchase costs	€595 000	€400 000	€995 000

Step 4: Direct manufacturing labour budget These costs depend on wage rates, production methods and hiring plans. The computations of budgeted direct manufacturing labour costs appear in schedule 4.

Schedule 4: Direct manufacturing labour budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Output units produced (schedule 2)	Direct manufacturing labour-hours per unit	Total hours	Hourly wage rate	Total
Regular	6 000	4	24 000	€20	€480 000
Heavy-Duty	1 000	6	6 000	20	120 000
Total			30 000		€600 000

Step 5: Manufacturing overhead budget The total of these costs depends on how individual overhead costs vary with the assumed cost driver, direct manufacturing labour-hours. The specific variable- and fixed-cost categories may be obtained, following discussions with company personnel in different areas. The calculations of budgeted manufacturing overhead costs appear in schedule 5.

Schedule 5: Manufacturing overhead budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

	At budgeted level of 30 000 direct manufacturing labour-hours	
Variable manufacturing overhead costs		
Supplies	€90 000	
Indirect manufacturing labour	210 000	
Direct and indirect manufacturing labour fringe costs	300 000	
Power	120 000	
Maintenance	60 000	€780 000
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs		
Depreciation	220 000	
Property taxes	50 000	
Property insurance	10 000	
Supervision	100 000	
Power	22 000	
Maintenance	18 000	420 000
Total manufacturing overhead costs		€1 200 000

Wessex treats both variable and fixed manufacturing overhead as inventoriable costs. This stock costing method is termed absorption costing; see Chapter 6 for further discussion. It stocks manufacturing overhead at the budgeted rate of €40 per direct manufacturing labour-hour (total manufacturing overhead, €1 200 000 ÷ 30 000 budgeted direct manufacturing labour-hours). It does not use separate variable and fixed manufacturing overhead rates.

Step 6: Closing stock budget Schedule 6A shows the computation of unit costs for the two products. These unit costs are used to calculate the costs of target closing stocks of direct materials and finished goods in schedule 6B.

Schedule 6A: Computation of unit costs of manufacturing finished goods in 2022

	Cost per unit of input*	Product			
		Regular		Heavy-Duty	
		Inputs*	Amount	Inputs*	Amount
Material 111 alloy	€7	12	€84	12	€84
Material 112 alloy	10	6	60	8	80
Direct manufacturing labour	20	4	80	6	120
Manufacturing overhead	40†	4	160	6	240
Total			€384		€524

*In kilograms or hours.
†Direct manufacturing labour-hours are the sole allocation base for manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed). The budgeted manufacturing overhead rate per direct manufacturing labour-hour of €40 was calculated in step 5.

Schedule 6B: Closing stock budget as at 31 December 2022

	Kilograms	Cost per kilogram		Total
Direct materials				
111 alloy	8 000	€7	€56 000	
112 alloy	2 000	10	20 000	€76 000
	Units	**Cost per unit**		
Finished goods				
Regular	1 100	€384*	€422 400	
Heavy-Duty	50	524*	26 200	448 600
Total closing stock				€524 600

*From schedule 6A, this is based on 2022 costs of manufacturing finished goods because under the FIFO costing method, the units in finished goods closing stock consist of units that are produced during 2022.

Step 7: Cost of goods sold budget The information from schedules 3 to 6 leads to schedule 7:

Schedule 7: Cost of goods sold budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

	From schedule		Total
Opening finished goods stock, 1 January 2022	Given*		€64 600
Direct materials used	3A	€1 028 000	
Direct manufacturing labour	4	600 000	
Manufacturing overhead	5	1 200 000	
Cost of goods manufactured			2 828 000
Cost of goods available for sale			2 892 600
Deduct closing finished goods stock, 31 December 2022	6B		448 600
Cost of goods sold			€2 444 000

*Given in the description of basic data and requirements (Regular €38 400, Heavy-Duty €26 200).

Note that the following holds:

$$\text{Cost of goods sold} = \text{Opening finished goods stock} + \text{Cost of goods manufactured} - \text{Closing finished goods stock}$$

Step 8: Other (non-production) costs budget Schedules 2 to 7 cover budgeting for Wessex's production area of the value chain. For brevity, other areas of the value chain are combined into a single schedule.

Schedule 8: Other (non-production) costs budget for the year ending 31 December 2022

Variable costs		
R&D/product design	€76 000	
Marketing	133 000	
Distribution	66 500	
Customer service	47 500	
Administrative	152 000	475 000*
Fixed costs		
R&D/product design	60 000	
Marketing	67 000	
Distribution	33 500	
Customer service	12 500	
Administrative	222 000	395 000
Total costs		€870 000

*Total variable cost for schedule 8 is €0.125 per revenue euro (€475 000 ÷ €3 800 000).

Step 9: Budgeted operating profit statement Schedules 1, 7 and 8 provide the necessary information to complete the budgeted operating profit statement, shown in Exhibit 14.4. Of course, more details could be included in the profit statement, and then fewer supporting schedules would be prepared.

Top management's strategies for achieving revenue and operating profit goals influence the costs planned for the different business functions of the value chain. As strategies change, the budget allocations for different elements of the value chain will also change. For example, a shift in strategy towards emphasising product development and customer service will result in increased resources being allocated to these parts of the master budget. The actual data resulting from this strategy will be compared with budgeted results. Management can then evaluate whether the focus on product development and customer service has been successful. This feedback is an important input in subsequent plans.

Exhibit 14.4 Budgeted operating profit for Wessex Engineering for the year ending 31 December 2022

Revenues	Schedule 1	€3 800 000	
Costs			
Cost of goods sold	Schedule 7	2 444 000	
Gross margin		1 356 000	
Operating costs			
R&D/product design costs	Schedule 8	€136 000	
Marketing costs	Schedule 8	200 000	
Distribution costs	Schedule 8	100 000	
Customer-service costs	Schedule 8	60 000	
Administration costs	Schedule 8	374 000	870 000
Operating profit			€486 000

Financial planning models

Exhibit 14.1 shows how strategic analysis, planning and budgeting are interrelated. The value of budgets to managers in their strategic analysis and planning is enhanced by conducting sensitivity analysis. Sensitivity analysis is a 'what-if' technique that examines how a result will change if the original predicted data are not achieved or if an underlying assumption changes. In its simplest form, it can be performed in the straightforward way shown in Chapter 8. Here a hand-held calculator would suffice to do the calculations. Commercial software packages are now available for more complex tasks, such as sensitivity analysis for the financial statements found in a master budget. These packages do the calculations for **financial planning models**, which are mathematical representations of the relationships across operating activities, financial activities and financial statements. Consider Wessex Engineering. Its financial planning model assumes the following:

- Direct materials and direct manufacturing labour costs vary proportionately with the quantities of Regular and Heavy-Duty parts produced.
- Variable manufacturing overhead costs vary with direct manufacturing labour-hours.
- Variable non-manufacturing costs vary with revenues.

Exhibit 14.5 presents the budgeted operating profit for three what-if scenarios for Wessex Engineering:

- *Scenario 1*. A 3% decrease in the selling price of the Regular part and a 3% decrease in the selling price of the Heavy-Duty part.
- *Scenario 2*. A 4% decrease in units sold of the Regular part and a 4% decrease in units sold of the Heavy-Duty part.
- *Scenario 3*. A 5% increase in the price per kilogram of 111 alloy and a 5% increase in the price per kilogram of 112 alloy.

Exhibit 14.5 indicates that, relative to the master budget, budgeted operating profit decreases by 21% under scenario 1, by 10% under scenario 2, and by 9% under scenario 3. Managers can use this information to plan actions that they may need to take if faced with these scenarios.

Exhibit 14.5 Effect of changes in budget assumptions on budgeted operating profit for Wessex Engineering

	Key assumptions							
	Units sold		Selling price		Direct materials cost*		Budgeted operating profit	
What-if scenario	Regular	Heavy-Duty	Regular	Heavy-Duty	111 Alloy	112 Alloy	€	Change from master budget
Master budget	5000	1000	€600	€800	€7.00	€10.00	€486 000	–
Scenario 1	5000	1000	582	776	7.00	10.00	386 250	21% decrease
Scenario 2	4800	960	600	800	7.00	10.00	438 273	10% decrease
Scenario 3	5000	1000	600	800	7.35	10.50	448 380	9% decrease

* Per kilogram.

Concepts in action — P.F. Chang's and internet-based budgeting

P.F. Chang's China Bistro is an Asian-themed casual dining restaurant chain, with more than 300 locations globally and approximately $900 million in annual revenues. The company uses Adaptive Insights Business Planning Cloud, an internet-based software platform, to manage its planning and budgeting process. P.F. Chang's develops a budget for revenue, food cost, labour cost, and overhead expenses for each location. The Adaptive software consolidates those budgets to quickly create a companywide budget. The system has reduced budget and forecasting cycle times by 80%. As one P.F. Chang's manager concluded, 'In the time it takes me to make a lettuce wrap, I'm able to put together a budget!'

Managers measure key performance indicators in real-time at each location to better understand costs, improve profit margins and fund growth. Restaurant managers can gauge the success of marketing campaigns and the impact of menu changes. Managers can work with each other and perform 'what if?' budget scenario analysis from anywhere in the world. Recently, chief financial officer Jim Bell examined how kitchen staff cuts at the company's Boston restaurants affected profitability while on a flight from Spokane, Washington, to Phoenix, Arizona.

Sources: 'Cooking up a modern FP&A environment for a global dining empire', Adaptive Insights customer case study, June 2017 (https://www.adaptiveinsights.com/customer-stories/p-f-changs); Shumsky, T. (2017) 'Corporate finance cuts back on Excel', *The Wall Street Journal*, 24 November (https://www.wsj.com/articles/stop-using-excel-finance-chiefs-tell-staffs-1511346601).

Kaizen budgeting

Chapter 1 noted how continuous improvement is one of the key issues facing management today. The Japanese use the term kaizen for continuous improvement. **Kaizen budgeting** is a budgetary approach that explicitly incorporates continuous improvement during the budget period into the resultant budget numbers.

Consider our Wessex Engineering example in schedule 4. The 2022 budget assumes that it will take 4.0 and 6.0 manufacturing labour-hours, respectively, for each Regular and Heavy-Duty aircraft part. A kaizen budgeting approach would incorporate continuous reduction in these manufacturing labour-hour requirements during 2022. Assume Wessex budgets the following labour-hour amounts:

	Budgeted amounts (labour-hours)	
	Regular	Heavy-Duty
January–March 2022	4.00	6.00
April–June 2022	3.90	5.85
July–September 2022	3.80	5.70
October–December 2022	3.70	5.55

Unless Wessex meets these continuous improvement goals, unfavourable variances will be reported. Note that in the Wessex budget, the implications of these direct labour-hour reductions would extend to reductions in variable manufacturing overhead costs, given that direct manufacturing labour-hours is the driver of these costs.

Activity-based budgeting

Chapter 11 explained how activity-based costing systems can lead to detailed reporting of past and current costs. Activity-based costing principles can also be extended in the budgeting of future costs. **Activity-based budgeting** focuses on the cost of activities necessary to produce and

sell products and services. It separates indirect costs into separate homogeneous activity cost pools. Management uses the cause-and-effect criterion to identify the cost drivers for each of these indirect-cost pools. Four key steps in activity-based budgeting are:

1 Determine the budgeted costs of performing each unit of activity at each activity area.
2 Determine the demand for each individual activity based on budgeted, production, new product development, and so on.
3 Calculate the costs of performing each activity.
4 Describe the budget as costs of performing various activities (rather than budgeted costs of functional or conventional value-chain spending categories).

Many UK managers have reported the following ranking of the benefits from activity-based budgeting: (1) ability to set more realistic budgets, (2) better identification of resource needs, (3) linking of costs to outputs, (4) clearer linking of costs with staff responsibilities, and (5) identification of budgetary slack.

Consider activity-based budgeting for the R&D/product design parts of the value chain at Ahamed Company. Five activity areas and their cost drivers have been identified. The budgeted 2022 rates for the costs at each activity area are as follows:

Activity	Cost driver/budgeted cost rate
• Computer-aided design (CAD) – using computer software to design aircraft parts	CAD hours, €80 per hour
• Manual design – manually designing aircraft parts	Manual design hours, €50 per hour
• Prototyping development – building actual versions of aircraft parts	Prototyping hours, €60 per hour
• Testing – examining how new aircraft parts 'perform' in different operating conditions	Testing hours, €40 per hour
• Procurement – purchasing supplies and component parts	Purchase orders, €25 per purchase order

Exhibit 14.6 presents the activity-based budget for January to December 2022. Ahamed Company budgets usage of the cost driver in each activity area based on budgeted production and new product development. This budgeted usage of the cost driver for each activity is multiplied by the respective budgeted costs rate per activity to obtain the budgeted activity costs. The budgeted total costs for R&D/product design is the sum of the budgeted costs of the individual activities in that part of the value chain.

The activity-based budget in Exhibit 14.6 is for one part of Ahamed's value chain. In many cases, the same activity will appear in more than one part of the value chain. For example, procurement activities such as purchase ordering and supplier payment are found in most areas of the value chain. Companies using activity-based budgeting may choose to present their budgets at either the individual value-chain level or at some more basic activity level such as procurement by combining budgeted procurement costs from different parts of the value chain.

Exhibit 14.6 Activity-based budget for R&D/product design costs of Ahamed Company: January to December 2022

Activity area	Budgeted usage of driver	Budgeted rate per cost driver	Budgeted costs
Computer-aided design	200 hours	€80	€16 000
Manual design	70 hours	50	3 500
Prototyping development	80 hours	60	4 800
Testing	280 hours	40	11 200
Procurement	120 purchase orders	25	3 000
Total			€38 500

Budgeting and responsibility accounting

Organisational structure and responsibility

Organisational structure is an arrangement of lines of responsibility within the entity. A company such as British Petroleum may be organised primarily by business function: exploration, refining and marketing. Diageo, a major consumer products company, structures itself by regions: North America, Europe and International. Another company, Norsk Hydro, is organised by product groups such as Agriculture, Oil and Gas, Light Metals and Petrochemicals. The managers of the individual groups each have decision-making authority concerning all the business functions (manufacturing, marketing, and so on) within that group. Some companies, such as Swiss pharmaceutical firm Novartis, combine functional and divisional structures, for example leaving marketing within divisions but having manufacturing organised as a business function to supply products to different divisions. There is no perfect organisation structure. Companies choose the structure that best meets their needs at that time, making the trade-off between efficiency and end-to-end business authority. Firm structures are sometimes a product of the past reflecting legacy decisions that may no longer follow a contemporary managerial logic.

To attain the goals described in the master budget, an organisation must coordinate the efforts of all its employees – from the top executive through all levels of management to every supervised worker. Coordinating the organisation's efforts means assigning responsibility to managers who are accountable for their actions in planning and controlling human and physical resources. Management is in essence a human activity. Budgets exist not for their own sake, but to help managers achieve their own pursuits and thereby contribute to meeting those of the organisation.

Managers in charge of organisational units are referred to as heading a responsibility centre. A **responsibility centre** is a part, segment or subunit of an organisation whose manager is accountable for a specified set of activities. The higher the manager's level, the broader the responsibility centre he or she manages and, generally, the larger the number of subordinates who report to him or her. **Responsibility accounting** is a system that measures the plans (by budgets) and actions (by actual results) of each responsibility centre. Four major types of responsibility centre are:

1. **Cost centre** – manager accountable for costs only.
2. **Revenue centre** – manager accountable for revenues only.
3. **Profit centre** – manager accountable for revenues and costs.
4. **Investment centre** – manager accountable for investments, revenues and costs.

Take for instance the Maintenance Department of Hôtel Ibis which would be a cost centre because the maintenance manager is responsible only for costs. Hence, the budget would emphasise costs. The Sales Department of the hotel would be a revenue centre because the sales manager is responsible only for revenues. Here the budget would emphasise revenues. The hotel manager would be in charge of a profit centre because the hotel manager is accountable for both revenues and costs. Here the budget would emphasise both revenues and costs. The regional manager responsible for investments in new hotel projects and for revenues and costs would be in charge of an investment centre. Revenue, costs and the investment base would be emphasised in the budget for this manager.

Responsibility accounting affects behaviour. Consider the following incident. The Sales Department requests a rush production run. The plant scheduler argues that it will disrupt his production and will cost a substantial, though not clearly determined, amount of money. The answer coming from sales is, 'Do you want to take the responsibility of losing the X Company as a customer?' Of course, the production scheduler does not want to take such a responsibility, and he gives up, but not before a heavy exchange of arguments and the accumulation of a substantial backlog of ill feeling. The accountant proposes an innovative solution. He analyses the payroll in the Assembly Department to determine the costs involved in getting out rush orders. This information eliminates the cause for argument. Henceforth, any rush order would be accepted by the production

scheduler, 'no questions asked'. The extra costs would be duly recorded and charged to the Sales Department. Within one company which experienced this change, the tension created by rush orders disappeared, and, somehow, the number of rush orders requested by the Sales Department was progressively reduced to an insignificant level.

The responsibility accounting approach traces costs to either (1) the individual who has the best knowledge about why the costs arose, or (2) the activity that caused the costs. In this incident, the cause was the sales activity, and the resulting costs were charged to the Sales Department. If rush orders occur regularly, the Sales Department might have a budget for such costs, and the department's actual performance would then be compared with the budget.

Feedback

Budgets coupled with responsibility accounting provide systematic help for managers, particularly if managers interpret the feedback carefully. Managers, accountants and students of management accounting sometimes use variances (the difference between the actual results and the budgeted results) appearing in the responsibility accounting system to pinpoint fault for operating problems. In looking at variances, managers should focus on whom they should ask and not on whom they should blame. Variances only suggest questions or direct attention to persons who should have the relevant information. Nevertheless, variances, properly used, can be helpful in three ways:

1 *Early warning.* Variances alert managers early to events not easily or immediately evident. Managers can then take corrective actions or exploit available opportunities.
2 *Performance valuation*. Variances inform managers about how well the company has performed in implementing its strategies.
3 *Evaluating strategy.* Variances sometimes signal to managers that their strategies are ineffective.

Responsibility and controllability

Definition of controllability

Controllability is the degree of influence that a specific manager has over costs, revenues or other items in question. A **controllable cost** is any cost that is primarily subject to the influence of a given manager of a given responsibility centre for a given time span. A responsibility accounting system could either exclude all uncontrollable costs from a manager's performance report or segregate such costs from the controllable costs. For example, a machining supervisor's performance report Summary might be confined to quantities (not costs) of direct materials, direct manufacturing labour, power and supplies. In practice, controllability is difficult to pinpoint:

1 Few costs are clearly under the sole influence of one manager. For example, costs of direct materials may be influenced by a purchasing manager, but such costs also depend on market conditions beyond the manager's control. Quantities used may be influenced by a production manager, but quantities used also depend on the quality of materials purchased. Moreover, managers often work in teams. How can individual responsibility be evaluated in a team decision?
2 With a long enough time span, all costs will come under somebody's control. However, most performance reports focus on periods of a year or less. A current manager may have inherited problems and inefficiencies from his or her predecessor. For example, present managers may have to work under undesirable contracts with suppliers or trade unions that were negotiated by their predecessors. How can we separate what the current manager actually controls from the results of decisions made by others? Exactly what is the current manager accountable for? Answers to such questions may not be clear cut.

Senior managers differ in how they embrace the controllability notion when evaluating those reporting to them. For example, a newly appointed company president took his management team on a cruise and commented, 'I expect everybody to meet their budget targets no matter what happens, and those who don't should stand a little closer to the railing.' Other presidents and managing directors believe that a more risk-sharing approach with managers is preferable where non-controllable factors are taken into account when making judgements about the performance of managers who miss their budget.

Emphasis on information and behaviour

Managers should avoid overemphasising controllability. Responsibility accounting is more far-reaching. It focuses on *information* and *knowledge,* not control. The key question is: Who is the best informed? Put another way: Who is the person who can tell us the most about the specific item in question, regardless of that person's ability to exert personal control? For instance, purchasing managers may be held accountable for total purchase costs, not because of their ability to affect market prices, but because of their ability to predict uncontrollable prices and explain uncontrollable price changes. Similarly, managers at a Pizza Hut unit may be held responsible for operating income of their units, even though they do not fully control selling prices or the costs for many food items, and have minimal flexibility as to items to sell or their ingredients. Why? Because unit managers are in the best position to explain variances between their actual operating profit and their budgeted operating profit. Some organisations change performance systems with well thought-out aims. Consider for instance the pay-for-performance scheme at the Hilti group, a family-owned company based in Lichtenstein but selling construction products and services in 120 countries. In early 2019, 190 Hilti salespeople in eastern Europe were switched from a salary that was 65 per cent fixed and 35 per cent dependent on meeting performance targets to an almost entirely fixed salary. As Clark (2022) explains, 'The results were impressive: the country group outperformed the market by a factor of 1.4 in 2019, double the rate of 2018. Staff turnover fell by more than 4 per cent and satisfaction with pay rose by 19 per cent, double the company-wide increase. Crucially, sales efforts did not drop off. The new system had obvious advantages over the older one, which was so complex it was hard to understand exactly how it worked and bred unhelpful habits: staff would rush to close sales deals to meet monthly targets, rather than nurture more valuable, long-term customer ties.' Management accountants need to understand that behavioural and financial structures affect outcomes of control changes.

Performance reports for responsibility centres may include uncontrollable items and this can change behaviour in the direction top management desires. For example, some companies have changed the accountability of a cost centre to a profit centre. Why? Because the manager will probably behave differently. A cost-centre manager may emphasise production efficiency and de-emphasise the pleas of sales personnel for faster service and rush orders. In a profit centre, the manager is responsible for both costs and revenues. Thus, even though the manager still has no control over sales personnel, the manager will now more likely weigh the impact of his or her decisions on costs and revenues, rather than solely on costs.

Managerial behaviour has to be reflective of what organisational stakeholders value. In response to pressures from consumers, investors, governments, and nongovernmental organisations, many companies proactively manage and report on environmental performance. Budgeting can be a highly effective tool to motivate managers to lessen carbon emissions. Several companies, such as British Telecom and Unilever, set science-based carbon reduction goals based on climate models. These science-based targets are stretched to spur innovation, prompt the development of new technologies and business models, and prepare companies for future regulatory and policy changes. What is the effect of stretched targets on actual emission reduction? There exists research which shows that companies that set more difficult targets (to be achieved over several years) complete a higher percentage of such targets. This is particularly true for carbon reduction projects in high-polluting industries that require more innovation (Ioannou et al., 2016).

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 The master budget summarises the financial projections of all the organisation's budgets and plans. It expresses management's comprehensive operating and financial plans – the formalised outline of the organisation's financial objectives and their means of attainment. Budgets are tools that by themselves are neither good nor bad. How managers administer budgets is the key to their value. When administered wisely, budgets compel management planning, provide definite expectations that are an appropriate framework for judging subsequent performance, and promote communication and coordination among the various subunits of the organisation. Budgetary control inevitably affects managerial behaviour and organisational processes.

2 Two major parts of the master budget are the operating budget, which is the budgeted operating profit statement and its supporting budget schedules, and the financial budget, which comprises the capital budget, cash budget, budgeted balance sheet and budgeted statement of cash flows.

3 The foundation for the operating budget is generally the revenue budget. The following supporting budget schedules are geared to the revenue budget: production budget, direct materials usage budget, direct materials purchases budget, direct manufacturing labour budget, manufacturing overhead costs budget, closing stock budget, cost of goods sold budget, R&D/design budget, marketing budget, distribution budget, and customer-service budget. The operating budget ends with the budgeted profit statement.

4 Financial planning models in the form of mathematical statements of the relationships among operating activities, financial activities and other factors that affect the budget, are of great significance to managers. These models allow management to conduct what-if (sensitivity) analyses of the effects on the master budget of changes in the original predicted data or changes in budget assumptions.

5 Kaizen budgeting captures the continuous improvement notion that is a key management concern. Costs in kaizen budgeting are based on future improvements that are yet to be implemented rather than on current practices or methods.

6 Activity-based budgeting focuses on the costs of activities necessary to produce and sell products and services. It is inherently linked to activity-based costing, but differs in its emphases on future costs and future usage of activity areas.

7 A responsibility centre is a part, segment or subunit of an organisation whose manager is accountable for a specified set of activities. Four major types of responsibility centres are cost centres, revenue centres, profit centres and investment centres. Responsibility accounting systems measure the plans (by budgets) and actions (by actual results) of each responsibility centre.

8 Controllable costs are costs that are primarily subject to the influence of a given manager of a given responsibility centre for a given time span. Performance reports of responsibility-centre managers, however, often include costs, revenues and investments that the managers cannot control. Responsibility accounting associates financial items with managers on the basis of which manager has the most knowledge and information about the specific items, regardless of the manager's ability to exercise full control. The important question is who should be asked, not who should be blamed. Naturally, budgets will affect human behaviour. Organisations can thus use budgets as a mechanism to achieve focused aims like reaching desired quarterly sales targets as well as wider aims such as reducing environmentally damaging emissions and investing in sustainability-conscious initiatives.

Appendix

The cash budget

The illustration in the chapter features the operating budget. The other major part of the master budget is the financial budget, which includes the capital budget, cash budget, budgeted balance sheet and budgeted statement of cash flows. This appendix focuses on the cash budget and the

budgeted balance sheet. Capital budgeting was discussed in Chapter 13; coverage of the budgeted statement of cash flows is not discussed here and may be found in books on financial accounting and corporate finance.

Suppose Wessex Engineering in our chapter illustration had the balance sheet for the year ended 31 December 2021 shown in Exhibit 14.7. The budgeted cash flows for 2022 are as follows:

	Quarters			
	1	2	3	4
Collections from customers	€913 700	€984 600	€976 500	€918 400
Disbursements				
Direct materials	314 360	283 700	227 880	213 800
Payroll	557 520	432 080	409 680	400 720
Income taxes	50 000	46 986	46 986	46 986
Other costs	184 000	156 000	151 000	149 000
Machinery purchase	–	–	–	35 080

The quarterly data are based on the cash effects of the operations formulated in schedules 1 to 8 in the chapter, but the details of that formulation are not shown here in order to keep the illustration relatively brief and focused.

The company wants to maintain a €35 000 minimum cash balance at the end of each quarter. The company can borrow or repay money in multiples of €1000 at an interest rate of 12% per year. Management does not want to borrow any more cash than is necessary and wants to repay as promptly as possible. By special arrangement, interest is calculated and paid when the principal is repaid. Assume that borrowing takes place at the beginning and repayment at the end of the quarters in question. Interest is calculated to the nearest euro.

Exhibit 14.7 Balance sheet for Wessex Engineering for the year ending 31 December 2021

Assets		
Current assets		
Cash	€30 000	
Debtors	400 000	
Direct materials	109 000	
Finished goods	64 600	€603 600
Property, plant and equipment		
Land	200 000	
Building and equipment	2 200 000	
Accumulated depreciation	(690 000)	1 710 000
Total		€2 313 600
Liabilities and stockholders' equity		
Current liabilities		
Creditors	€150 000	
Income taxes payable	50 000	€200 000
Stockholders' equity		
Common stock, no-par, 25 000 shares outstanding	350 000	
Retained earnings	1 763 600	2 113 600
Total		€2 313 600

Suppose an accountant at Wessex Engineering is given the preceding data and the other data contained in the budgets in the chapter. He is instructed as follows:

1 Prepare a cash budget. That is, prepare a statement of cash receipts and disbursements by quarters, including details of borrowing, repayment and interest expense.
2 Prepare a budgeted balance sheet.
3 Prepare a budgeted profit statement, including the effects of interest expense and income taxes. Assume that income taxes for 2022 (at a tax rate of 40%) are €187 944.

Preparation of budgets

1 **The cash budget** (Exhibit 14.8) is a schedule of expected cash receipts and disbursements. It predicts the effects on the cash position at the given level of operations. Exhibit 14.9 presents the cash budget by quarters to show the impact of cash-flow timing on bank loans and their repayment. In practice, monthly – and sometimes weekly – cash budgets are very helpful for cash planning and control. Cash budgets help avoid unnecessary idle cash and unexpected cash deficiencies. Cash balances are kept in line with needs. Ordinarily, the cash budget has the following main sections:

   a The opening cash balance plus cash receipts equals the total cash available before financing. Cash receipts depend on collections of debtors, cash sales, and miscellaneous recurring sources such as rental or royalty receipts. Information on the prospective collectibility of debtors is needed for accurate predictions. Key factors include bad-debt (uncollectable accounts) experience and average time lag between sales and collections.
   b Cash disbursements include the following items:
      (i) Direct materials purchases – depends on credit terms extended by suppliers and invoice-paying patterns of the buyer.
      (ii) Direct labour and other wage and salary outlays – depends on payroll dates.
      (iii) Other costs – depends on timing and credit terms. *Be sure to note that depreciation does not require a cash outlay.*
      (iv) Other disbursements – outlays for property, plant and equipment, and for long-term investments.
   c Financing requirements depend on how the total cash available for needs, keyed as (a) in Exhibit 14.9, compares with the total cash needed, keyed as (c). Total cash needed includes total disbursements, keyed as (b), plus the minimum closing cash balance desired. The financing plans will depend on the relationship between total cash available for needs and total cash needed. If there is excess cash, loans may be repaid or temporary investments made. The outlays for interest expense are usually shown in this section of the cash budget.
   d The closing cash balance. The total effect of the financing decisions on the cash budget, keyed as (d) in Exhibit 14.9, may be positive (borrowing) or negative (repayment), and the closing cash balance is (a) − (b) + (d).

   The cash budget in Exhibit 14.9 shows the pattern of short-term 'self-liquidating cash loans'. Seasonal peaks of production or sales often result in heavy cash disbursements for purchases, payroll and other operating outlays as the products are produced and sold. Cash receipts from customers typically lag behind sales. The loan is self-liquidating in the sense that the borrowed money is used to acquire resources that are combined for sale, and the proceeds from sales are used to repay the loan. This **self-liquidating cycle** – sometimes called the **working-capital cycle**, **cash cycle** or **operating cycle** – is the movement from cash to stock to debtors and back to cash.

2 The budgeted balance sheet is presented in Exhibit 14.9. Each item is projected in light of the details of the business plan as expressed in all the previous budget schedules. For example, the closing balance of debtors of €406 800 is calculated by adding the budgeted revenues of

€3 800 000 (from schedule 1) to the opening balance of €400 000 (given) and subtracting cash receipts of €3 793 200 (given in Exhibit 14.10).

3 The budgeted operating profit statement is presented in Exhibit 14.10. It is merely the budgeted operating profit statement in Exhibit 14.4 expanded to include interest expense and income taxes.

For simplicity, the cash receipts and disbursements were given explicitly in this illustration. Frequently, there are lags between the items reported on the accrual basis of accounting in an income statement and their related cash receipts and disbursements. In the Wessex Engineering example, collections from customers are derived under two assumptions: (1) in any month, 10% of sales are cash sales and 90% of sales are on credit, and (2) half the total credit sales are collected in each of the two months subsequent to the sale, as Exhibit 14.11 shows. Of course, such schedules of cash collections depend on credit terms, collection histories and expected bad debts. Similar schedules can be prepared for operating costs and their related cash disbursements.

Exhibit 14.8 Cash budget for Wessex Engineering for the year ending 31 December 2022

	Quarters				Year as a whole
	1	2	3	4	
Cash balance, opening	€30 000	€35 820	€35 934	€35 188	€30 000
Add receipts					
Collections from customers	913 700	984 600	976 500	918 400	3 793 200
Total cash available for needs (a)	943 700	1 020 420	1 012 434	953 588	3 823 200
Deduct disbursements					
Direct materials	314 360	283 700	227 880	213 800	1 039 740
Payroll	557 520	432 080	409 680	400 720	1 800 000
Income taxes	50 000	46 986	46 986	46 986	190 958
Other costs	184 000	156 000	151 000	149 000	640 000
Machinery purchase	0	0	0	35 080	35 080
Total disbursements (b)	1 105 880	918 766	835 546	845 586	3 705 778
Minimum cash balance desired	35 000	35 000	35 000	35 000	35 000
Total cash needed (c)	1 140 880	953 766	870 546	880 586	3 740 778
Cash excess (deficiency) (a) − (c)*	€(197 180)	€66 654	€141 888	€73 002	€82 422
Financing					
Borrowing (at beginning)	€198 000	€0	€0	€0	€198 000
Repayment (at end)	–	(62 000)	(130 000)	(6 000)	(198 000)
Interest (at 12% per year)†	–	(3 720)	(11 700)	(720)	(16 140)
Total effects of financing (d)	€198 000	€(65 720)	€(141 700)	€(6 720)	€(16 140)
Cash balance, closing (a) − (c) + (d)	€35 820	€35 934	€35 188	€101 282	€101 282

* Excess of total cash available over total cash needed before current financing.

† Note that the interest payments pertain only to the amount of principal being repaid at the end of a given quarter. The specific computations regarding interest are €62 000 × 0.12 × $\frac{2}{4}$ = €3720; €130 000 × 0.12 × $\frac{3}{4}$ = €11 700; and €6000 × 0.12 × $\frac{4}{4}$ = €720. Also note that *depreciation does not require a cash outlay.*

Exhibit 14.9 Wessex Engineering: budgeted balance sheet for the year ending 31 December 2022

Assets			
Current assets			
Cash (from Exhibit 14.8)		€101 282	
Debtors*		406 800	
Direct materials†		76 000	
Finished goods†		448 600	€1 032 682
Property, plant and equipment			
Land‡		200 000	
Building and equipment§	€2 235 080		
Accumulated depreciation‖	(920 000)	1 315 080	1 515 080
Total			€2 547 762
Liabilities and stockholders' equity			
Current liabilities			
Creditors#		€105 260	
Income taxes payable**		46 986	€152 246
Stockholders' equity			
Common stock, no-par, 25 000 shares outstanding††		350 000	
Retained earnings‡‡		2 045 516	2 395 516
Total			€2 547 762

Opening balances are used as the starting point for most of the following computations:

* €400 000 + €3 800 000 revenues – €3 793 200 receipts (Exhibit 14.9) = €406 800.

† From schedule 6B.

‡ From opening balance sheet.

§ €2 200 000 + €35 080 purchases = €2 235 080.

‖ €690 000 + €230 000 depreciation from schedule 5.

€150 000 + €995 000 (schedule 3B) – €1 039 740 (Exhibit 14.9) €105 260.
There are no wages payable. The detailed payroll consists of €600 000 direct manufacturing labour (schedule 4) + €620 000 manufacturing overhead salaries (€200 000 indirect manufacturing labour + €320 000 direct and indirect manufacturing labour fringe cost + €100 000 supervision from schedule 5) + R & D/design salaries €105 000 (schedule 8) + marketing salaries €130 000 (schedule 8) + distribution salaries and wages €60 000 (schedule 8) + customer-service salaries €40 000 (schedule 8) + administration salaries and clerical wages €245 000 (schedule 8) = €1 800 000, all of which was disbursed per Exhibit 14.8.

** €50 000 + €187 944 current year – €190 958 payment = €46 986.

†† From opening balance sheet.

‡‡ €1 763 600 + €281 916 net income per Exhibit 14.11 = €2 045 516.

Exhibit 14.10 Budgeted profit statement for Wessex Engineering for the year ending 31 December 2022

Revenues	Schedule 1		€3 800 000
Costs			
Cost of goods sold	Schedule 7		2 444 000
Gross margin			1 356 000
Operating costs			
R&D/product design costs	Schedule 8	€136 000	
Marketing costs	Schedule 8	200 000	
Distribution costs	Schedule 8	100 000	
Customer-service costs	Schedule 8	60 000	
Administration costs	Schedule 8	374 000	870 000
Operating profit			486 000
Interest expense	Exhibit 14.9		16 140
Profit before income taxes			469 860
Income taxes	Given		187 944
Net profit			€281 916

Exhibit 14.11 Wessex Engineering's collections from customers

	May	June	July	August	September	Cash collections in Q3 as a whole
Monthly revenue budget for Wessex (given)						
Credit sales, 90%	€307 800	€307 800	€280 800	€280 800	€280 800	
Cash sales, 10%	34 200	34 200	31 200	31 200	31 200	
Total revenues	€342 000	€342 000	€312 000	€312 000	€312 000	
Cash collections from:						
Cash sales this month			€31 200	€31 200	€31 200	
Credit sales last month			153 900*	140 400‡	140 400§	
Credit sales two months ago			153 900†	153 900*	140 400‡	
Total Collections			€339 000	€325 500	€312 000	€976 500

* 0.50 × €307 800 (June sales) = €153 900.
† 0.50 × €307 800 (May sales) = €153 900.
‡ 0.50 × €280 800 (July sales) = €140 400.
§ 0.50 × €280 800 (August sales) = €140 400.

References and further reading

Bhimani, A. (2022) *Financial Management for Technology Start-ups* (London: Kogan Page).

Clark, P. (2022) 'Bonuses are outdated in the age of knowledge work', *Financial Times,* 15 May, (https://www.ft.com/content/1f397fb4-da63-4ccd-bac1-343828540bf2)

Fitzpatrick, M. and Hawke, K. (2015) 'The return of zero based budgeting', *McKinsey Quarterly,* August (www.mckinsey.com/business-functions/strategy-and-corporate-finance/our-insights/the-return-of-zero-base-budgeting).

Guthrie, J. (2018) 'How and when zero-based budgeting boosts corporate productivity', *Financial Times,* 21 February (https://www.ft.com/content/cdfa64b8-fc7f-11e7-9bfc-052cbba03425)

Hope, J. and Fraser, R. (2003) 'New ways of setting rewards: the beyond budgeting model', *California Management Review,* 45, 104–119.

Hopwood, A.G. (1980) 'Organisational and behavioural aspects of budgeting and control', in J. Arnold, B. Carsberg and R. Scapens (eds) *Topics in Management Accounting* (London: Philip Allan).

Ioannou, I., Xin Li, S. and Serafeim, G. (2016) 'The effect of target difficulty on target completion: The case of reducing carbon emissions', *The Accounting Review,* 91(5), pp.1467–92.

Marciano, J. (2022) 'The amazing history, present, and future of business budgets', 13 May (https://www.datarails.com/then-and-now-business-budgets/)

McKinsey, J.O. (1923) *Budgetary Control* (Ronald Press)

CHAPTER 14

Assessment material

Review questions

14.1 Define master budget.

14.2 What are the elements of the budgeting cycle?

14.3 'Strategy, plans and budgets are unrelated to one another.' Do you agree? Explain.

14.4 'Budgeted performance is a better criterion than past performance for judging managers.' Do you agree? Explain.

14.5 'Budgets are wonderful vehicles for communication.' Comment.

14.6 Define kaizen budgeting.

14.7 Cite three benefits companies report from using an activity-based budgeting approach.

14.8 Define responsibility accounting.

14.9 Explain how the choice of the responsibility centre type (cost, revenue, profit or investment) affects budgeting.

14.10 Outline three criticisms of traditional budgeting and a related proposal for change.

Exercises

Basic level

14.11 **Cost of goods sold budget, fill in the missing numbers** (20 minutes)

Embutidos Vallina SA has two direct-cost categories: direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. Its single indirect-cost category (manufacturing overhead) is allocated on the basis of machine-hours. Numbers taken from the monthly budgets for June 2022 and November 2022 are as follows:

	June 2022	November 2022
Direct materials used	€?	€847 000
Opening finished goods stock	87 000	?
Closing finished goods stock	?	94 000
Direct manufacturing labour	481 000	389 000
Manufacturing overhead	772 000	?
Cost of goods manufactured	2 215 000	1 878 000
Cost of goods sold	2 189 000	?
Cost of goods available for sale	?	1 949 000

Required

Fill in the missing numbers.

***14.12 Sales and production budget** (5 minutes)

Lux-Ernster expects 2022 sales of 100 000 units of serving trays. Lux-Ernster's opening stock for 2022 is 7000 trays; target closing stock, 11 000 trays.

Required

Calculate the number of trays budgeted for production in 2022.

14.13 Sales and production budget (5 minutes)

Sarandrea Srl had a target closing stock of 70 000 four-litre bottles of burgundy wine. Sarandrea's opening stock was 60 000 bottles, and its budgeted production was 900 000 bottles.

Required

Calculate the budgeted sales in number of bottles.

14.14 Direct materials purchases budget (5 minutes)

Europa-Dyonisos SA produces wine. The company expects to produce 1.5 million two-litre bottles of Chablis in 2022. Europa-Dyonisos purchases empty glass bottles from an outside supplier. Its target closing stock of such bottles is 50 000; its opening stock is 20 000. For simplicity, ignore breakage.

Required

Calculate the number of bottles to be purchased in 2022.

14.15 Budgeting material purchases (10 minutes)

Tiilikainen Oy has prepared a sales budget of 42 000 finished units for a three-month period. The company has a stock of 22 000 units of finished goods on hand at 31 December and has a target finished goods stock of 24 000 units at the end of the succeeding quarter.

It takes 3 litres of direct materials to make 1 unit of finished product. The company has a stock of 90 000 litres of direct materials at 31 December and has a target closing stock of 110 000 litres.

Required

How many litres of direct materials should be purchased during the three months ending 31 March?

14.16 Budgetary slack and ethics (CMA, adapted) (15 minutes)

Jacek Zielinski, the budget manager at Jelenia-Silesia, a manufacturer of child furniture and carriages, is working on the 2022 annual budget. In discussions with Sylwester Czereszewski, the sales manager, Jacek discovers that Sylwester's sales projections are lower than what Sylwester believes are actually achievable. When Jacek asked Sylwester about this, Sylwester said, 'Well, we don't want to fall short of the sales projections, so we generally give ourselves a little breathing room by lowering the sales projections anywhere from 5 to 10%.' Jacek also finds that Andrzej Sazanowicz, the production manager, makes similar adjustments. He pads budgeted costs, adding 10% to estimated costs.

Required

As a management accountant, should Jacek take the position that the behaviour described by Sylwester and Andrzej is unethical?

Intermediate level

14.17 Revenue, production and purchases budget (15–20 minutes)

The Suzuki Company in Japan has a division that manufactures two-wheel motorcycles. Its budgeted sales for Model G in 2016 is 800 000 units. Suzuki's target closing stock is 100 000 units, and its opening stock is 120 000 units. The company's budgeted selling price to its distributors and dealers is 400 000 yen per motorcycle.

Suzuki buys all its wheels from an outside supplier. No defective wheels are accepted. (Suzuki's needs for extra wheels for replacement parts are ordered by a separate division of the company.) The company's target closing stock is 30 000 wheels, and its opening stock is 20 000 wheels. The budgeted purchase price is 16 000 yen per wheel.

Required

1 Calculate the budgeted revenue in yen.
2 Calculate the number of motorcycles to be produced.
3 Calculate the budgeted purchases of wheels in units and in yen.

14.18 Budgeted profit and loss account (CMA, adapted) (30 minutes)

Castelo Branco Lda is a manufacturer of video-conferencing products. Regular units are manufactured to meet marketing projections, and specialised units are made after an order is received. Maintaining the video-conferencing equipment is an important area of customer satisfaction. With the recent downturn in the computer industry, the video-conferencing equipment segment has suffered, leading to a decline in Castelo Branco's financial performance. The following profit and loss account shows results for the year 2022:

Profit and loss account for Castelo Branco for the year ending 31 December 2022 (in thousands)

Sales		
Equipment	€6000	
Maintenance contracts	1800	
Total income		€7800
Cost of goods sold		4600
Gross profit		3200
Operating costs		
Marketing	600	
Distribution	150	
Customer maintenance	1000	
Administration	900	
Total operating costs		2650
Operating profit		€550

Castelo Branco's management team is in the process of preparing the 2016 budget and is studying the following information:

a Selling prices of equipment are expected to increase by 10% as the economic recovery begins. The selling price of each maintenance contract is unchanged from 2022.
b Equipment sales in units are expected to increase by 6%, with a corresponding 6% growth in units of maintenance contracts.
c The cost of each unit sold is expected to increase by 3% to pay for the necessary technology and quality improvements.
d Marketing costs are expected to increase by €250 000, but administration costs are expected to be held at 2022 levels.

e Distribution costs vary in proportion to the number of units of equipment sold.

f Two maintenance technicians are to be added at a total cost of €130 000, which covers wages and related travel costs. The objective is to improve customer service and shorten response time.

g There is no opening or closing stock of equipment.

Required

Prepare a budgeted profit and loss account for 2023.

14.19 Responsibility of purchasing agent (Adapted from a description by R. Villers) (15 minutes)

Ágúst Karlsson is the purchasing agent for the Akureyri Manufacturing Company. Bjarni Jóhannesson is head of the Production Planning and Control Department. Every six months, Bjarni gives Ágúst a general purchasing programme. Ágúst gets specifications from the Engineering Department. He then selects suppliers and negotiates prices. When he took this job, Ágúst was informed very clearly that he bore responsibility for meeting the general purchasing programme once he accepted it from Bjarni. During week 24, Ágúst was advised that Part No. 1234 – a critical part – would be needed for assembly on Tuesday morning of week 32. He found that the regular supplier could not deliver. He called everywhere and finally found a supplier in Selfoss, and accepted the commitment. He followed up by post. Yes, the supplier assured him, the part would be ready. The matter was so important that on Thursday of week 31, Bjarni checked by phone. Yes, the shipment had left in time. Bjarni was reassured and did not check further. But on Tuesday of week 32, the part had not arrived. Enquiry revealed that the shipment had been misdirected and was still in Reykjavik.

Required

What department should bear the costs of time lost in the plant? Why? As purchasing agent, do you think it fair that such costs be charged to your department?

***14.20 Cash budgeting** (40–50 minutes)

On 1 December 2022, Tire-Lire, SNC, is attempting to project cash receipts and disbursements to 31 January 2023. On this latter date, a note will be payable in the amount of €100 000. This amount was borrowed in September to carry the company through the seasonal peak in November and December.

The trial balance on 1 December shows in part the following information:

Cash	€10 000	
Debtors	280 000	
Allowance for bad debts		€15 800
Stock	87 500	
Creditors		92 000

Sales terms call for a 2% discount if payment is made within the first 10 days of the month after purchase, with the balance due by the end of the month after purchase. Experience has shown that 70% of the billings will be collected within the discount period, 20% by the end of the month after purchase, 8% in the following month, and that 2% will be uncollectable. There are no cash sales.

The average selling price of the company's products is €100 per unit. Actual and projected sales are

October actual	€180 000
November actual	250 000
December estimated	300 000
January estimated	150 000
February estimated	120 000
Total estimated for year ending 30 June 2023	1 500 000

All purchases are payable within 15 days. Thus approximately 50% of the purchases in a month are due and payable in the next month. The average unit purchase cost is €70. Target closing stocks are 500 units plus 25% of the next month's unit sales.

Total budgeted marketing, distribution and customer-service costs for the year are €400 000. Of this amount, €150 000 is considered fixed (and includes depreciation of €30 000). The remainder varies with sales. Both fixed and variable marketing, distribution and customer-service costs are paid as incurred.

Required

Prepare a cash budget for December and January. Supply supporting schedules for collections of receivables for raw materials, and marketing, distribution and customer-service costs.

14.21 Budgetary control issues (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, May 2001) (40 minutes)

M plc designs, manufactures and assembles furniture. The furniture is for home use and therefore varies considerably in size, complexity and value. One of the departments in the company is the Assembly Department. This department is labour intensive; the workers travel to various locations to assemble and fit the furniture using the packs of finished timbers that have been sent to them.

Budgets are set centrally and they are then given to the managers of the various departments who then have the responsibility of achieving their respective targets. Actual costs are compared against the budgets and the managers are then asked to comment on the budgetary control statement. The statement for April for the Assembly Department is shown below.

	Budget	Actual	Variance	
Assembly labour-hours	6 400	7 140		
	$	$	$	
Assembly labour	51 970	58 227	6 257	Adverse
Furniture packs	224 000	205 000	19 000	Favourable
Other materials	23 040	24 100	1 060	Adverse
Overheads	62 060	112 340	50 280	Adverse
Total	361 070	399 667	38 597	Adverse

Note: the costs shown are for assembling and fitting the furniture (they do not include time spent travelling to jobs and the related costs). The hours worked by the manager are not included in the figure given for the assembly labour-hours.

The Manager of the Assembly Department is new to the job and has very little previous experience of working with budgets but he does have many years' experience as a supervisor in assembly departments. Based on that experience he was sure that the department had performed well. He has asked for your help in replying to a memo he has just received asking him to 'explain the serious overspending in his department'. He has sent you some additional information about the budget:

1. The budgeted and actual assembly labour costs include the fixed salary of $2050 for the Manager of the Assembly Department. All of the other labour is paid for the hours they work.
2. The cost of furniture packs and other materials is assumed by the central finance office of M plc to vary in proportion to the number of assembly labour-hours worked.
3. The budgeted overhead costs are made up of three elements: a fixed cost of $9000 for services from central headquarters, a stepped fixed cost which changes when the assembly hours exceed 7000 hours, and some variable overheads. The variable overheads are assumed to vary in proportion to the number of assembly labour-hours. Working papers for the budget showed the impact on the overhead costs of differing amounts of assembly labour-hours:

Assembly labour-hours	5 000	7 500	10 000
Overhead costs	$54 500	$76 500	$90 000

The actual fixed costs for April were as budgeted.

Required

1 Prepare, using the additional information that the Manager of the Assembly Department has given you, a budgetary control statement that would be more helpful to him.

2 a Discuss the differences between the *format of the statement* that you have produced and that supplied by M plc;

b Discuss the assumption made by the central office of M plc that costs vary in proportion to assembly labour-hours.

3 Discuss whether M plc should change to a system of participative budgeting.

Advanced level

***14.22 Activity-based budgeting** (20–30 minutes)

Nyborg Supermarkets AS is preparing its activity-based budget for January 2022 for its operating costs (that is, its non-cost of goods purchased for resale costs). Its current concern is with its four activity areas (which are also indirect-cost categories in its product profitability reporting system):

a *Ordering* – covers purchasing activities. The cost driver is the number of purchase orders

b *Delivery* – covers the physical delivery and receipt of merchandise. The cost driver is the number of deliveries

c *Shelf-stacking* – covers the stacking of merchandise on store shelves and the ongoing restacking before sale

d *Customer support* – covers assistance provided to customers, including check-out and bagging.

Assume Nyborg Supermarkets has only three product areas: soft drinks, fresh produce and packaged food. The budgeted usage of each cost driver in these three areas of the store and the January 2022 budgeted cost driver rates are as follows:

	Cost driver rates		January 2022 budgeted amount of driver used		
Activity area and driver	2021 actual rate	January 2022 budgeted rate	Soft drinks	Fresh produce	Packaged food
Ordering (per purchase order)	DKK 1000	DKK 900	14	24	14
Delivery (per delivery)	DKK 800	DKK 820	12	62	19
Shelf-stacking (per hour)	DKK 200	DKK 210	16	172	94
Customer support (per item sold)	DKK 2.0	DKK 1.8	4 600	34 200	10 750

Required

1 What is the total budgeted cost for each activity area in January 2022?

2 What advantages might Nyborg Supermarkets gain by using an activity-based budgeting approach over (say) an approach for budgeting operating costs based on a budgeted percentage of cost of goods sold times the budgeted cost of goods sold?

14.23 Kaizen approach to activity-based budgeting (continuation of Exercise 14.22) (20–30 minutes)

Nyborg Supermarkets has a kaizen (continuous improvement) approach to budgeting monthly activity area costs for each month of 2022. February's budgeted cost driver rate is 0.998 times the budgeted January 2022 rate. March's budgeted cost driver rate is 0.998 times the budgeted February 2022 rate, and so on. Assume that March 2022 has the same budgeted amount of cost drivers used as did January 2022.

Required

1 What is the total budgeted cost for each activity area in March 2022?

2 What are the benefits of Nyborg Supermarkets adopting a kaizen budgeting approach? What are the limitations?

14.24 From CIMA Performance Operations, section B, November 2014 (25 minutes)

FG is preparing its cash budgets for January, February and March.

Budgeted data are as follows:

	November	December	January	February	March
Sales (units)	750	800	800	850	900
Production (units)	800	800	850	900	950
Direct labour and variable overheads incurred	£48 000	£48, 000	£51 000	£54 000	£56 000
Fixed overheads incurred (excluding depreciation)	£20 000	£20 000	£20 000	£20 000	£20 000

The selling price per unit is £200. The purchase price per kg of raw material is £25. Each unit of finished product requires 2 kg of raw materials which are purchased on credit in the month before they are used in production. Suppliers of raw materials are paid one month after purchase.

All sales are on credit. 80% of customers, by sales value, pay one month after sale and the remainder pay two months after sale.

The direct labour cost, variable overheads and fixed overheads are paid in the month in which they are incurred.

Machinery costing £100 000 will be delivered in February and paid for in March.

Depreciation, including that on the new machinery, is as follows:

Machinery and equipment	£3500 per month
Motor vehicles	£800 per month

The opening cash balance at 1 January is estimated to be £15 000.

Required

Prepare a cash budget for each of the three months, January, February and March.

14.25 From CIMA Performance Management, section A, March 2014 (15 minutes)

PB is a car production company. PB uses a system of standard costing to set its budgets. Budgets are set annually by the Finance Department and approved by the Board of Directors of PB. The Finance Department prepares variance reports each month for review at the Board of Directors' meeting, where actual performance is monitored by comparison to budgeted figures.

A new Finance Director has recently joined PB from a competitor organisation where there was a Total Quality Management culture. The new Finance Director of PB is keen to discuss the implementation of kaizen costing at the next meeting of the Board of Directors. The new Finance Director would like to review the current planning and control system at PB with a view to making changes so that it could support kaizen costing concepts.

Required

Explain THREE changes required to PB's planning and control system to support the adoption of kaizen costing concepts.

14.26 **Comprehensive review of budgeting** (50–60 minutes)

British Beverages bottles two soft drinks under licence to Cadbury Schweppes at its Manchester plant. Bottling at this plant is a highly repetitive, automated process. Empty bottles are removed from their carton, placed on a conveyor, and cleaned, rinsed, dried, filled, capped and heated (to reduce condensation). The only stock held is either direct materials or else finished goods. There is no work in progress.

The two soft drinks bottled by British Beverages are lemonade and diet lemonade. The syrup for both soft drinks is purchased from Cadbury Schweppes. Syrup for the regular brand contains a higher sugar content than the syrup for the diet brand.

British Beverages uses a lot size of 1000 cases as the unit of analysis in its budgeting. (Each case contains 24 bottles.) Direct materials are expressed in terms of lots, where one lot of direct materials is the input necessary to yield one lot (1000 cases) of beverage. In 2022, the following purchase prices are forecast for direct materials:

	Lemonade	Diet lemonade
Syrup	£1200 per lot	£1100 per lot
Containers (bottles, caps, etc.)	£1000 per lot	£1000 per lot
Packaging	£800 per lot	£800 per lot

The two soft drinks are bottled using the same equipment. The equipment is cleaned daily, but it is only rinsed when a switch is made during the day between diet lemonade and lemonade. Diet lemonade is always bottled first each day to reduce the risk of sugar contamination. The only difference in the bottling process for the two soft drinks is the syrup.

Summary data used in developing budgets for 2022 are as follows:

a Sales:

- Lemonade, 1080 lots at £9000 selling price per lot.
- Diet lemonade, 540 lots at £8500 selling price per lot.

b Opening (1 January 2022) stock of direct materials:

- Syrup for lemonade, 80 lots at £1100 purchase price per lot.
- Syrup for diet lemonade, 70 lots at £1000 purchase price per lot.
- Containers, 200 lots at £950 purchase price per lot.
- Packaging, 400 lots at £900 purchase price per lot.

c Opening (1 January 2022) stock of finished goods:

- Lemonade, 100 lots at £5300 per lot.
- Diet lemonade, 50 lots at £5200 per lot.

d Target closing (31 December 2022) stock of direct materials:

- Syrup for lemonade, 30 lots.
- Syrup for diet lemonade, 20 lots.
- Containers, 100 lots.
- Packaging, 200 lots.

e Target closing (31 December 2022) stock of finished goods:

- Lemonade, 20 lots.
- Diet lemonade, 10 lots.

f Each lot requires 20 direct manufacturing labour-hours at the 2022 budgeted rate of £25 per hour. Indirect manufacturing labour costs are included in the manufacturing overhead forecast.

g Variable manufacturing overhead is forecast to be £600 per hour of bottling time; bottling time is the time the filling equipment is in operation. It takes two hours to bottle one lot of lemonade and two hours to bottle one lot of diet lemonade. Fixed manufacturing overhead is forecast to be £1 200 000 for 2022.

h Hours of budgeted bottling time is the sole allocation base for all fixed manufacturing overhead.

i Administration costs are forecast to be 10% of the cost of goods manufactured for 2022. Marketing costs are forecast to be 12% of sales for 2022. Distribution costs are forecast to be 8% of sales for 2022.

Required

Assume British Beverages uses the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method for costing all stock. On the basis of the preceding data, prepare the following budgets for 2022:

1. Revenue budget (in £)
2. Production budget (in units)
3. Direct materials usage budget (in units and £)
4. Direct materials purchases budget (in units and £)
5. Direct manufacturing labour budget
6. Manufacturing overhead costs budget
7. Closing finished goods stock budget
8. Cost of goods sold budget
9. Marketing costs budget
10. Distribution costs budget
11. Administration costs budget
12. Budgeted profit and loss account.

CHAPTER 15

Flexible budgets, variances and management control: I

Managers often quantify their plans in the form of budgets. A survey of UK firm finance professionals indicated that 72% believe that the ability to plan ahead is their most important quality. But few managers believe budgeting should be an activity that is exclusively carried out just by accountants. Still, the Gartner 2021 CFO survey revealed that 18% of finance leaders believe they should have full leadership over planning, budgeting and forecasting processes. 'The Future of Planning Budgeting and Forecasting Global Survey 2017', with responses from 850 senior finance professionals from across the globe, indicated that more than half of CFOs and their senior finance executives agree or strongly agree that we will become more dependent on machine learning to drive more accurate forecasts. While the application of artificial intelligence and machine learning which use behavioural algorithms that enables 'self-learning' and rapidly increases forecast accuracy is presently low among respondents (14%), this is expected to grow very quickly across planning, budgeting and forecasting activities. A clear advantage of using machine learning in analytics is that it allows computers to find hidden insights in vast data stores (FSN, 2017).

This chapter focuses on how flexible budgets and variances can play a key role in management planning and control. Flexible budgets and variances help managers gain insights into why the actual results differ from the planned performance. Each variance we calculate is the difference between an actual result and a budgeted amount. Organisations differ widely in how they calculate and label the budgeted amounts they report in their own accounting system. Some organisations rely heavily on past results; others conduct detailed engineering or time-and-motion studies. The term **standard** is frequently used when such studies underlie the budgeted amounts. A standard is a carefully predetermined amount; it is usually expressed on a per unit basis. In practice, there is not a precise dividing line between a *budgeted amount* and a *standard amount*. We use *budgeted amount* as the more general term because some budgeted amounts may not be carefully predetermined amounts. However, all of the variances we discuss can be calculated using standard amounts or budgeted amounts. Variances assist managers in their planning and control decisions. **Management by exception** is the practice of concentrating on areas not operating as anticipated and giving less attention to areas operating as expected.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe the difference between a static budget and a flexible budget
- Illustrate how a flexible budget can be developed and calculate flexible-budget and sales-volume variances
- Interpret the price and efficiency variances for direct-cost input categories
- Explain why purchasing-performance measures should focus on more factors than just price variances for inputs
- Describe how the continuous improvement theme can be integrated into variance analysis
- Perform variance analysis in activity-based costing systems
- Describe benchmarking and how it can be used by managers in variance analysis

Static budgets and flexible budgets

This chapter illustrates both static budgets and flexible budgets. A **static budget** is a budget that is based on one level of output; it is not adjusted or altered after it is set, regardless of ensuing changes in actual output (or actual revenue and cost drivers). A **flexible budget** is adjusted in accordance with ensuing changes in actual output (or actual revenue and cost drivers). A flexible budget is calculated at the end of the period when the actual output is known. A static budget is developed at the start of the budget period based on the planned output level for the period. As we shall see, a flexible budget enables managers to calculate a richer set of variances than does a static budget. The budgeted amount is a **benchmark**; that is, it is a point of reference from which comparisons may be made. Benchmarks include:

1. Financial variables reported in a company's own accounting system (such as Nissan's manufacturing cost for a Juke model). This is the focus of this chapter.
2. Financial variables not reported in a company's own accounting system (such as when Nissan uses the estimated cost Mazda incurs to manufacture a CX-3 as the benchmark for evaluating the cost competitiveness of its Juke product line).
3. Non-financial variables (such as Nissan's assembly-line defect rate).

A **favourable variance** – denoted F – is a variance that increases operating income relative to the budgeted amount. An **unfavourable variance** – denoted U – is a variance that decreases operating income relative to the budgeted amount.

Budgets, both static and flexible, can differ in their level of detail. Many organisations present budgets with broad summary figures that can be broken down into more detailed figures via computer software programs. In this book, the term *level* followed by a number denotes the amount of detail indicated by the variance(s) isolated. Level 0 reports the least detail, Level 1 offers more information, and so on.

The example of the Sofiya Company illustrates static budgets and flexible budgets. Sofiya manufactures and sells a single product, a distinctive jacket that requires many materials, tailoring and hand operations. Sales are made to independent clothing stores and retail chains. Sofiya sets budgeted revenues (budgeted selling price times budgeted units sold) based on input from its marketing personnel and on an analysis of general and industry economic conditions.

The costing system at Sofiya includes both manufacturing costs and marketing costs. There are direct and indirect costs in each category:

	Direct costs	Indirect costs
Manufacturing	Direct materials	Variable manufacturing overhead
	Direct manufacturing labour	Fixed manufacturing overhead
Marketing	Direct marketing labour	Variable marketing overhead
	Fixed marketing overhead	

Sofiya's manufacturing costs include direct materials (all variable), direct manufacturing labour (all variable) and manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed). Its marketing costs (which include distribution and customer service costs as well as advertising costs) are made up of direct marketing labour (primarily distribution personnel, which are all variable) and marketing overhead (both variable and fixed). The cost driver for direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and variable manufacturing overhead is the *number of units manufactured*. The cost driver for direct marketing labour and variable marketing overhead is the *number of units sold*. The revenue driver is the *number of units sold*. The relevant range for the €180 selling price per jacket and for the cost drivers in both manufacturing and marketing is from 8000 to 16 000 units. All costs at Sofiya are either driven by output units or are fixed. We make this simplifying assumption to highlight the basic approach to flexible budgeting.

In order to focus on the key concepts, we assume Sofiya has no opening or closing stocks. Chapter 7 discussed some of the complexities that occur when opening or closing stocks exist.

Static-budget variances

The actual results and the static-budget amounts of Sofiya for April 2022 are as follows:

	Actual results	Static-budget amounts
Units sold	10 000	12 000
Revenues	€1 850 000	€2 160 000
Variable costs	1 120 000	1 188 000
Fixed costs	705 000	710 000
Operating profit	25 000	262 000

Exhibit 15.1 presents the Level 0 and Level 1 variance analyses for April 2022. Level 0 gives the least-detailed comparison of the actual and budgeted operating profit. The unfavourable variance of €237 000 is simply the result of subtracting the budgeted operating profit of €262 000 from the actual operating profit of €25 000:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Static-budget variance} &= \text{Actual results} - \text{Static-budget amount of operating profit}\\ &= €25\,000 - €262\,000\\ &= €237\,000\ \text{U}^*\end{aligned}$$

*U = unfavourable effort on operating profit.

This variance is often called a static-budget variance because the number used for the budgeted amount (€262 000) is taken from a static budget.

Level 1 analysis in Exhibit 15.1 provides managers with more detailed information on the static-budget variance of operating profit of €237 000 U. The additional information added in

Exhibit 15.1 Static-budget-based variance analysis for Sofiya for April 2022

Level 0 analysis

Actual operating profit	€25 000
Budgeted operating profit	262 000
Static-budget variance of operating profit	237 000 U*

Level 1 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Static-budget variances (2) = (1) − (3)	Static budget (3)
Units sold	10 000	2 000 U	12 000
Revenues	€1 850 000	€310 000 U	€2 160 000
Variable costs	1 120 000	68 000 F	1 188 000
Contribution margin	730 000	242 000 U	972 000
Fixed costs	705 000	5 000 F	710 000
Operating profit	€25 000	€237 000 U	€262 000
		€237 000 U	

Total static-budget variance

*F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Level 1 pertains to revenues, variable costs and fixed costs. The budgeted contribution margin percentage of 45.0% (€972 000 ÷ €2 160 000) decreases to 39.5% (€730 000 ÷ €1 850 000) for the actual results.

While Level 1 contains more information than Level 0, additional insights into the causes of variances can be gained by incorporating a flexible budget into the computation of variances.

Steps in developing a flexible budget

Sofiya's five-step approach to developing a flexible budget is relatively straightforward given the assumption that all costs are either variable with respect to output units or fixed. The five steps are as follows.

Step 1: Determine the budgeted selling price per unit, the budgeted variable costs per unit, and the budgeted fixed costs Each output unit (a jacket) has a budgeted selling price of €180. The budgeted variable cost is €99 per jacket. Column 2 of Exhibit 15.2 has a breakdown of this €99 amount. The budgeted fixed costs total €710 000 (€276 000 manufacturing and €434 000 marketing).

Step 2: Determine the actual quantity of the revenue driver Sofiya's revenue driver is the number of units sold. In April 2022, Sofiya sold 10 000 jackets.

Step 3: Determine the flexible budget for revenue based on the budgeted unit revenue and the actual quantity of the revenue driver

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Flexible-budget revenues} &= €180 \times 10\,000\\ &= €1\,800\,000\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 15.2 Flexible-budget data for Sofiya for April 2022

Line item (1)	Bugeted cost amount per unit (2)	Flexible budget amount 10 000 (3)	Actual results for 10 000 units (4)
Revenue	€180	€1 800 000	€1 850 000
Variable costs			
Direct materials	60	600 000	688 200
Direct manufacturing labour	16	160 000	198 000
Direct marketing labour	6	60 000	57 600
Variable manufacturing overhead	12	120 000	130 500
Variable marketing overhead	5	50 000	45 700
Total variable costs	99	990 000	1 120 000
Contribution margin	€81	810 000	730 000
Fixed costs			
Manufacturing overhead		276 000	285 000
Marketing overhead	–	434 000	420 000
Total fixed costs	–	710 000	705 000
Total costs	–	1 700 000	1 825 000
Operating profit		€100 000	€25 000

Step 4: Determine the actual quantity of the cost driver(s) Sofiya's cost driver for manufacturing costs is units produced. The cost driver for marketing costs is units sold. In April 2022, Sofiya produced and sold 10 000 jackets.

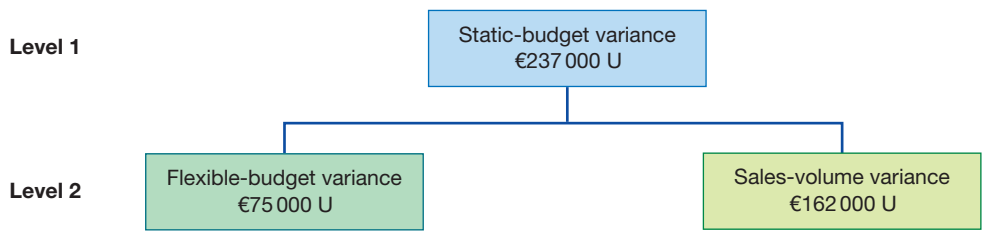
Step 5: Determine the flexible budget for costs based on the budgeted unit variable costs and fixed costs and the actual quantity of the cost driver(s)

Flexible-budget variable costs		
Manufacturing	= €88 × 10 000 =	€880 000
Marketing	= €11 × 10 000 =	110 000
		€990 000
Flexible-budget fixed costs		
Manufacturing	=	€276 000
Marketing	=	434 000
	=	€710 000

These five steps enable Sofiya to move to a Level 2 variance analysis, which helps them better explore reasons for the €237 000 unfavourable static-budget variance of operating profit. Exhibit 15.2 shows the flexible budget for 10 000 units (column 3) as well as the actual results for 10 000 units (column 4).

Flexible-budget variances and sales-volume variances

Exhibit 15.3 presents the Level 2 flexible-budget-based variance analysis for Sofiya. Note that the €237 000 unfavourable static-budget variance of operating profit is now split into two categories: a flexible-budget variance and a sales-volume variance.



The **flexible-budget variance** is the difference between the actual results and the flexible-budget amount for the actual levels of the revenue and cost drivers. The **sales-volume variance** is the difference between the flexible-budget amount and the static-budget amount; unit selling prices, unit variable costs and fixed costs are held constant. Knowing these variances helps managers better explain the static-budget variance of €237 000 U.

Sales-volume variances

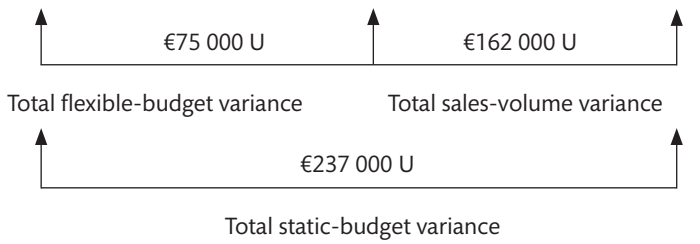
The flexible-budget amounts in column 3 of Exhibit 15.3 and the static-budget amount in column 5 are both calculated using the budgeted selling prices and budgeted costs. This variance is labelled the 'sales-volume variance' because in many contexts the number of units sold is both the revenue driver and the cost driver. For the operating profit line item:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sales-volume variance} &= \text{Flexible-budget amount} - \text{Static-budget amount}\\ &= €100\,000 - €262\,000\\ &= €162\,000\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 15.3 Flexible-budget-based variance analysis for Sofiya for April 2022

Level 2 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Flexible-budget variances (2) = (1) − (3)	Flexible budget (3)	Sales-volume variances (4) = (3) − (5)	Static budget (5)
Units sold	10 000	0	10 000	2 000 U	12 000
Revenues	€1 850 000	€50 000 F*	€1 800 000	€360 000 U	€2 160 000
Variable costs	1 120 000	130 000 U	990 000	198 000 F	1 188 000
Contribution margin	730 000	80 000 U	810 000	162 000 U	972 000
Fixed costs	705 000	5 000 F	710 000	0	710 000
Operating profit	€25 000	€75 000 U	€100 000	€162 000 U	€262 000



*F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

In our Sofiya example, this sales-volume variance in operating profit arises solely because it sold 10 000 units, which was 2000 less than the budgeted 12 000 units.

Flexible-budget variances

The first three columns of Exhibit 15.3 compare the actual results with the flexible-budget amounts. Flexible-budget variances are reported in column 2 for four line items in the income statement:

$$\text{Flexible-budget variance} = \text{Actual results} - \text{Flexible-budget amount}$$

For the operating profit line item, the flexible-budget variance is €75 000 U (€25 000 – €100 000). This variance arises because the actual selling price, unit variable costs and fixed costs differ from the budgeted amounts. The actual and budgeted unit amounts for the selling price and variable costs are as follows:

	Actual unit amount	Budgeted unit amount
Selling price	€185	€180
Variable cost	112	99

The actual fixed cost of €705 000 is €5000 less than the budgeted €710 000 amount.

The flexible-budget variance pertaining to revenues is often called a **selling-price variance** because it arises solely from differences between the actual selling price and the budgeted selling price:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Selling-price variance} &= (\text{Actual selling price} - \text{Budgeted selling price}) \times \text{Actual units sold}\\ &= (€185 - €180) \times 10\,000\\ &= €50\,000\,\text{F}\end{aligned}$$

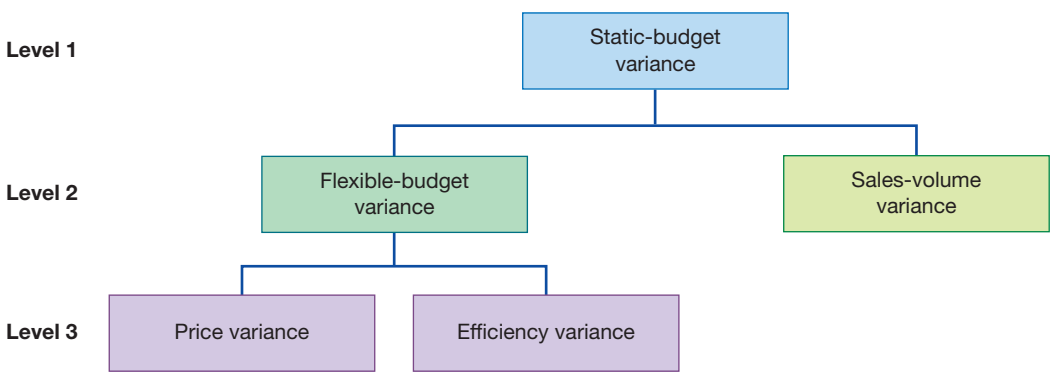
Sofiya has a favourable selling-price variance because the actual selling price exceeds the budgeted amount (by €5). Marketing managers typically are best informed as to why this selling price difference arose.

Price variances and efficiency variances for inputs

The flexible-budget variance (Level 2) captures the difference between the actual results and the flexible budget. The sources of this variance (as regards costs) are the individual differences between actual and budgeted prices or quantities for inputs. The next two variances we discuss – price variances and efficiency variances for inputs – analyse such differences. This information helps managers to better understand past performance and to plan for future performance. We call this a Level 3 analysis as it takes a more detailed analysis of the Level 2 variances.

A **price variance** is the difference between the actual price and the budgeted price multiplied by the actual quantity of input in question (such as direct materials purchased or used). Price variances are sometimes called **input-price variances** or **rate variances** (especially when those variances are for direct labour). An **efficiency variance** is the difference between the actual quantity of input used (such as metres of cloth of direct materials) and the budgeted quantity of input that should have been used, multiplied by the budgeted price. Efficiency variances are sometimes called **input-efficiency variances** or **usage variances**.

The relationship of these two variances to those we have already discussed for Sofiya is as follows:



Obtaining budgeted input prices and input quantities

Sofiya's two main sources of information about budgeted input prices and budgeted input quantities are:

1. *Actual input data from past periods.* Most companies have past data on actual input prices and actual input quantities. These past amounts could be used for the budgeted amounts in a flexible budget. Past data are typically available at a relatively low cost. The limitations of using this source are: (a) past data include past inefficiencies, and (b) past data do not incorporate any expected changes planned to occur in the budget period.
2. *Standards developed by Sofiya.* A standard is a carefully predetermined amount; it is usually expressed on a per unit basis. Sofiya uses time-and-motion and engineering studies to determine its standard amounts. For example, it conducts a detailed breakdown of the

steps in making a jacket. Each step is then assigned a standard time based on work by a skilled operator using equipment operating in an efficient manner. The advantages of using standard amounts are that: (a) they can exclude past inefficiencies, and (b) they can take into account expected changes in the budget period. An example of (a) is a supplier making dramatic improvements in its ability to consistently meet Sofiya's demanding quality requirements for the cloth material used to make jackets. An example of (b) is the acquisition of new looms that operate at a faster speed and that enable work to be done with lower reject rates.

Sofiya has developed standard inputs and standard costs for each of its variable-cost items. A **standard input** is a carefully predetermined quantity of input (such as kilograms of materials or hours of labour time) required for one unit of output. A **standard cost** is a carefully predetermined cost. Standard costs can relate to units of inputs or units of outputs. Sofiya's budgeted cost for each variable-cost item is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Standard inputs allowed for 1 output unit} \times \text{Standard cost per input unit}$$

The variable-cost items are:

- *Direct materials*: 2.00 square metres of cloth input allowed per output unit (jacket) manufactured, at €30 standard cost per square metre.

$$\text{Standard cost} = 2.00 \times €30 = €60.00 \text{ per output unit manufactured}$$

- *Direct manufacturing labour*: 0.80 manufacturing labour-hours of input allowed per output unit manufactured, at €20 standard cost per hour.

$$\text{Standard cost} = 0.80 \times €20 = €16.00 \text{ per output unit manufactured}$$

- *Direct marketing labour*: 0.25 marketing labour-hours of input allowed per output unit sold, at €24 standard cost per hour.

$$\text{Standard cost} = 0.25 \times €24 = €6.00 \text{ per output unit sold}$$

- *Variable manufacturing overhead*: allocated on the basis of 1.20 machine-hours per output unit manufactured, at €10 standard cost per machine-hour.

$$\text{Standard cost} = 1.20 \times €10 = €12.00 \text{ per output unit manufactured}$$

- *Variable marketing overhead*: allocated on the basis of 0.125 direct marketing labour-hours per output unit sold, at €40 standard cost per hour.

$$\text{Standard cost} = 0.125 \times €40 = €5.00 \text{ per output unit sold}$$

These standard cost computations explain how Sofiya developed the numbers in column 2 of Exhibit 15.2.

The breakdown of the flexible-budget variance into its price and efficiency components is important when evaluating individual managers. At Sofiya, the production manager is responsible for the efficiency variance, while the purchasing manager is responsible for the price variance. This separate computation of the price variance enables the efficiency variance to be calculated using budgeted input prices. Thus, judgements about efficiency (the quantity of inputs used to produce a given level of output) are not affected by whether actual input prices differ from budgeted input prices. A word of caution, however, is appropriate. As will be discussed in following text, the causes of price and efficiency variances can be interrelated. For this reason, do not interpret these variances in isolation from each other.

An illustration of price and efficiency variances for inputs

Consider Sofiya's three direct-cost categories. The actual cost for each of these three categories is:

Direct materials purchased and used	
Direct materials costs	€688 200
Square metres of cloth input purchased and used	22 200
Actual price per metre	€31
Direct manufacturing labour	
Direct manufacturing labour costs	€198 000
Manufacturing labour-hours of input	9 000
Actual price per hour	€22
Direct marketing labour	
Direct marketing labour costs	€57 600
Marketing labour-hours of input	2 304
Actual price per hour	€25

For simplicity, we assume here that direct materials used is equal to direct materials purchased.

The actual results and the flexible-budget amounts for each category of direct costs for the 10 000 actual output units in April 2022 are:

	Actual results	Flexible budget		Flexible-budget variances
Direct materials	€688 200	€600 000	(10 000 × €60)	€88 200 U
Direct manufacturing labour	198 000	160 000	(10 000 × €16)	38 000 U
Direct marketing labour	57 600	60 000	(10 000 × €6)	2 400 F
Total	€943 800	€820 000		€123 800 U

We now use these Sofiya Company data to illustrate the input-price and input-efficiency variances. Consider first the input-price variances.

Price variances

The formula for calculating a price variance is:

$$\text{Price variance} = (\text{Actual price of input} - \text{Budgeted price of input}) \times \text{Actual quantity of input}$$

Price variances for each of Sofiya's three direct-cost categories are:

Direct-cost category	(Actual price of input − Budgeted price of input)	×	Actual quantity of input	=	Input-price variance
Direct materials	(€31 − €30)	×	22 200	=	€22 200 U
Direct manufacturing labour	(€22 − €2)	×	9 000	=	18 000 U
Direct marketing labour	(€25 − €24)	×	2 304	=	2 304 U

All three price variances are unfavourable (they reduce operating profit) because the actual price of each direct-cost input exceeds the budgeted price; that is, Sofiya incurred more cost per input unit than was budgeted.

Always consider a broad range of possible causes for price variances. For example, Sofiya's unfavourable direct materials-price variance could be due to one or more of the following reasons:

- Sofiya's purchasing manager negotiated less skilfully than was assumed in the budget.
- Sofiya's purchasing manager bought in smaller lot sizes than budgeted even though quantity discounts were available for the larger lot sizes.
- Materials prices unexpectedly increased because of disruptive weather conditions.
- Budgeted purchase prices for Sofiya's materials were set without careful analysis of the market.

Sofiya's response to a materials-price variance will be vitally affected by the presumed cause of the variance. Assume it decides an unfavourable variance is due to poor negotiating by its purchasing officer. Sofiya may decide to invest more in training this officer in negotiations, or it may decide to employ a more skilful purchasing officer.

When interpreting materials-price variances, Sofiya's managers should consider any change in the relationship with the company's suppliers. For example, assume that Sofiya moves to a long-term relationship with a single supplier of material. Sofiya and the supplier agree to a single purchase price per unit for all material purchases in the next six months. It is likely that price variances will be minimal for this material because all purchases will be made from this supplier.

Efficiency variances

Consider now the efficiency variance. Computation of efficiency variances requires measurement of inputs for a given level of output. For any actual level of output, the efficiency variance is the difference between the input that was actually used and the input that should have been used to achieve that actual output, holding input price constant:

$$\text{Efficiency variance} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual quantity}\\ \text{of input used}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted quantity}\\ \text{of input allowed}\\ \text{for actual output}\\ \text{units achieved}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted price}\\ \text{of input}\end{array}$$

The idea here is that an organisation is inefficient if it uses more inputs than budgeted for the actual output units achieved, and it is efficient if it uses less inputs than budgeted for the actual output units achieved.

The efficiency variances for each of Sofiya's direct-cost categories are:

Direct-cost category	(Actual input used − Budgeted input allowed for actual output units)	×	Budgeted price of input	=	Efficiency variance
Direct materials	[22 200 metres − (10 000 units × 2.00 metres)]	×	€30		
	(22 200 metres − 20 000 metres)	×	€30	=	€66 000 U
Direct manufacturing labour	[9000 hours − (10 000 units × 0.80 hours)]	×	€20		
	(9000 hours − 8000 hours)	×	€20	=	€20 000 U
Direct marketing labour	[2304 hours − (10 000 units × 0.25 hours)]	×	€24		
	(2304 hours − 2500 hours)	×	€24	=	€4 704 F

The two manufacturing efficiency variances (direct materials and direct manufacturing labour) are both unfavourable because more input was used than was budgeted, resulting in a decrease in operating profit. The marketing efficiency variance is favourable because less input was used than was budgeted, resulting in an increase in operating profit.

As with price variances, Sofiya's managers need to consider a broad range of possible reasons for efficiency variances arising. For example, Sofiya's unfavourable direct manufacturing labour variance could be due to one or more of the following reasons:

- Sofiya's personnel manager took on underskilled workers.
- Sofiya's production scheduler inefficiently scheduled work, resulting in more direct manufacturing labour time per jacket.
- Sofiya's maintenance department did not properly maintain machines, resulting in more direct manufacturing labour time per jacket.
- Budgeted time standards were set without careful analysis of the operating conditions and the employees' skills.

Suppose Sofiya determines that the unfavourable variance is due to poor machine maintenance. It may decide to set up a team consisting of plant machine engineers and machine operators to develop a maintenance schedule so that in the future, jackets can be sewn in shorter times.

Presentation of price and efficiency variances for inputs

Note how the sum of the price variance and the efficiency variance equals the flexible-budget variance:

	Price variance	+	Efficiency variance	=	Flexible-budget variance
Direct materials	€22 200 U		€66 000 U		€88 200 U
Direct manufacturing labour	18 000 U		20 000 U		38 000 U
Direct marketing labour	2 304 U		4 704 F		2 400 F

Exhibit 15.4 illustrates a convenient way to integrate the actual and budgeted input information used to calculate the price and efficiency variances for direct materials. This exhibit assumes that materials purchased equals materials used.

Overview of variance analysis

Exhibit 15.5 presents a comprehensive road map of where we have been. The Level 0 and Level 1 analyses are reproductions of Exhibit 15.1. Level 2 is a reproduction of Exhibit 15.3. We have just discussed price and efficiency variances, which are Level 3.

Exhibit 15.4 Columnar presentation of variance analysis: direct material costs for Sofiya for April 2022

Level 3 analysis

Actual costs incurred (Actual input × Actual price) (1)	Actual input × Budgeted price (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted input allowed for actual output achieved × Budgeted price) (3)
(22 200 × €31) €688 200	(22 200 × €30) €666 000	(22 200 × €30) €600 000
	€22 200 U* Price variance	€66 000 U Efficiency variance
	€88 200 U Flexible-budget variance	

*F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Exhibit 15.5 Overview of variance analysis for Sofiya for April 2022

Level 0 analysis

Actual operating profit	€25 000
Budgeted operating profit	262 000
Static-budget variance of operating profit	€237 000 U*

Level 1 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Static-budget variances (2) = (1) − (3)	Static budget (3)
Units sold	10 000	2 000 U	12 000
Revenues (sales)	€1 850 000	€310 000 U	€2 160 000
Variable costs	1 120 000	68 000 F	1 188 000
Contribution margin	730 000	242 000 U	972 000
Fixed costs	705 000	5 000 F	710 000
Operating profit	€25 000	€237 000 U	€262 000
		€237 000 U	

Static-budget variance

Level 2 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Flexible-budget variances (2) = (1) − (3)	Flexible budget (3)	Sales-volume variances (4) = (3) − (5)	Static budget (5)
Units sold	10 000	0	10 000	2 000 U	12 000
Revenues (sales)	€1 850 000	€50 000 F	€1 800 000	€360 000 U	€2 160 000
Variable costs	1 120 000	130 000 U	990 000	198 000 F	1 188 000
Contribution margin	730 000	80 000 U	810 000	162 000 U	972 000
Fixed costs	705 000	5 000 F	710 000	0	710 000
Operating profit	€25 000	€75 000 U	€100 000	€162 000 U	€262 000
		€75 000 U		€162 000 U	

Total flexible-budget variance — Total sales-volume variance

€237 000 U

Static-budget variance

Level 3 analysis

Revenue variance by customers		Cost variances†			Sales-volume variances‡
Retail chains	€0 F		**Price variance**	**Efficiency variance**	Sales-quantity variances
Independent stores	50 000 F				
Sales-price variances	50 000 F	Direct materials	€22 200 U	€66 000 U	Sales-mix variances
		Direct manufacturing labour	18 000 U	20 000 U	
		Direct marketing labour	2 304 U	4 704 F	

*F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.
† Chapter 16 contains further discussion of Level 3 cost-variance analysis.
‡ These variances are covered in Chapter 17.

Some managers refer to proceeding through successively more detailed data as 'drilling-down' (or 'peeling the onion'). The growing use of online data collection is increasing the number of databases that have this drill-down capability.

Impact of stocks

Our Sofiya Company illustration assumed the following:

1 All units are manufactured and sold in the same accounting period. There are no work-in-progress or finished-goods stocks at either the start or the end of the accounting period.
2 All direct materials are purchased and used in the same accounting period. There are no direct materials stocks at either the start or the end of the period.

Both assumptions can be relaxed without changing the key concepts introduced in this chapter. However, changes in the computation or interpretation of variances would be required when opening or closing stocks exist.

Suppose direct materials are purchased sometime prior to their use and that direct materials stocks exist at the start or end of the accounting period. Managers typically want to pinpoint variances at the earliest possible time so that their decisions can be best informed by the variances.

For direct materials price variances, the purchase date will almost always be the earliest possible time to isolate them. As a result, many organisations calculate direct materials price variances using the quantities purchased in an accounting period. At the end of this chapter we illustrate how to use two different times (purchase time and use time) to pinpoint direct materials variances.

Concepts in action

Starbucks maintains a focus on direct-cost variances

Starbucks is the largest coffeehouse company in the world, with over 33 000 plus stores across 84 countries and a workforce exceeding 380 000. The company reported net earnings of $4.2 billion in 2021 on revenues of $29.02 billion. Starbucks recognises that macro-economic conditions affect customer purchases that are discretionary: 'Our customers may have less money for discretionary purchases and may stop or reduce their purchases of our products or trade-down to Starbucks or competitors' lower-priced products as a result of job losses, foreclosures, bankruptcies, increased fuel and energy costs, higher interest rates, higher taxes, reduced access to credit and economic uncertainty.' COVID-19 lockdowns caused Starbucks to suffer a general 10% sales decrease, and a 50% decrease in China where quarantine measures were especially strict.

For Starbucks, profitability depends on making each high-quality beverage at the lowest possible costs. As a result, an intricate understanding of direct costs is critical. Variance analysis helps managers assess and maintain profitability at desired levels. In each Starbucks store, the two key direct costs are materials and labour. Materials costs at Starbucks include coffee beans, milk, flavouring syrups, pastries, paper cups and lids. To reduce budgeted costs for materials, Starbucks focused on two key inputs: coffee and milk. For coffee, Starbucks avoids waste and spoilage by no longer brewing decaffeinated and darker coffee blends in the afternoon and evening, when store traffic is slower. Instead, baristas have been instructed to brew a pot only when a customer ordered it. With milk prices rising (and making up around 10% of Starbucks' cost of sales), the company has switched to 2% milk, which is healthier and costs less, and redoubled efforts to reduce milk-related spoilage.

Labour costs at Starbucks, which make up in costs almost a quarter of company revenue annually, have been another area of variance focus. Many stores employ fewer baristas and, in some stores, Starbucks has adopted many 'lean' production techniques. With 30% of baristas' time involved in walking around behind the counter, reaching for items, and blending drinks, Starbucks tries to make its drink-making processes more efficient. But, while Starbucks closely monitors costs, it is also embarking on other strategies to elevate its brand. For instance in China, each Starbucks store is to have a unique page on Meituan platforms, where customers can access Starbucks Delivers and Starbucks Now services to order food and beverages online, use the '1971 Salon' booking service, and check local events on a digital community board. The company is also having more 'drive-thru' units recognising that the Covid pandemic has altered the way consumers shop. Still, continued focus on both direct-cost variances remains critical to the company's future success particularly during periods of economic uncertainty.

Sources: Kline, D. (2018) 'Starbucks puts its high-end strategy to the test' (www.fool.com/investing/2017/09/11/starbucks-puts-its-high-end-strategy-to-the-test.aspx); www.statista.com/statistics/219502/starbucks-net-income/; https://investor.starbucks.com/financial-data/annual-reports/default.aspx; Sherman, N. (April 28, 2020) 'Cars out, snacks in as virus impacts US profits', BBC News; 'Starbucks pioneers innovations bridging physical and digital experiences', 17 January 2022 (https://stories.starbucks.com/asia/stories/2022/starbucks-pioneers-innovations-bridging-physical-and-digital-experiences/).

Management uses of variances

Performance measurement using variances

A survey of 154 finance executives from Fortune 500 companies revealed that all respondents use variance analysis where current-year budget are compared to current-year actual results at year-end and 80% look at prior-year actual and current-year actual variances at year-end (Conine and McDonald 2022). The companies analysing volume, price and product mix variances (discussed in Chapter 19) were high in proportion (94%, 87% and 81% respectively).

A key use of variance analysis is in performance evaluation. Two attributes of performance are commonly measured:

- **Effectiveness** – the degree to which a predetermined objective or target is met.
- **Efficiency** – the relative amount of inputs used to achieve a given level of output.

Be careful to understand the cause(s) of a variance before using it as a performance measure. Assume that a Sofiya purchasing manager has just negotiated a deal that results in a favourable price variance for materials. The deal could have achieved a favourable variance for any or all of three reasons:

1. The purchasing manager bargained effectively with suppliers.
2. The purchasing manager accepted lower-quality materials at a lower price.
3. The purchasing manager secured a discount for buying in bulk. However, she bought higher quantities than necessary for the short run, which resulted in excessive levels of stock.

If the purchasing manager's performance is evaluated solely on materials-price variances, then only reason 1 would be considered acceptable, and the evaluation will be positive. Reasons 2 and 3 would be considered unacceptable, and will probably cause the company to incur additional costs, such as higher materials scrap costs and higher storage costs, respectively.

Performance measures increasingly focus on reducing the total costs of the company as a whole. In the purchasing manager example, the company may ultimately lose more money because of reasons 2 and 3 than it gains from reason 1. Conversely, manufacturing costs may be deliberately increased (for example, because higher costs are paid for better materials or more direct manufacturing labour time) in order to obtain better product quality. In turn, the costs of the better product quality may be more than offset by reductions in customer service costs.

If any single performance measure (for example, a labour efficiency cost variance or a consumer rating report) receives excessive emphasis, managers tend to make decisions that maximise their own reported performance in terms of that single performance measure. Such actions

may conflict with the organisation's overall goals. This faulty perspective on performance arises because top management has designed a performance measurement and reward system that does not adequately emphasise total organisational objectives.

Continuous improvement

Variances and flexible budgets can be used to measure specific types of performance goal such as continuous improvement. For example, continuous improvement can be readily incorporated into budgets and thus into variances by the use of a **continuous improvement budgeted cost**. This is a budgeted cost that is successively reduced over succeeding time periods. The budgeted direct materials cost for each jacket that Sofiya Company manufactured in April 2022 is €60 per unit. The budgeted cost used in variance analysis for subsequent periods could be based on a targeted 1% reduction each period:

Month	Prior month's budgeted amount	Reduction in budgeted amount	Revised budgeted amount
April 2022	–	–	€60.00
May 2022	€60.00	€0.600 (0.01 × €60.00)	59.40
June 2022	59.40	0.594 (0.01 × €59.40)	58.81
July 2022	58.81	0.588 (0.01 × €58.81)	58.22

The source of the 1% reduction in budgeted direct materials costs could be efficiency improvements or price reductions. By using continuous improvement budgeted costs, an organisation signals the importance of constantly seeking ways to reduce total costs. For example, managers could avoid unfavourable materials-efficiency variances by continuously reducing materials waste.

Products in the initial months of their production may have higher budgeted improvement rates than those that have been in production for, say, three years. Improvement opportunities may be much easier to identify when products have just started in production. Once the easy opportunities have been identified ('the low-hanging fruit picked'), much more ingenuity may be required to identify successive improvement opportunities.

Variance analysis and organisational learning

Organisations adopting a total value-chain approach to analysing variances are recognising the diversity of the possible sources of variances. Consider an unfavourable materials-efficiency variance in the production area of an organisation. Possible causes of this variance include:

- poor design of products or processes
- poor quality or inadequate availability of materials from suppliers
- poor work in the manufacturing area
- inadequate training of the workforce
- inappropriate assignment of labour or machines to specific jobs
- congestion due to scheduling a large number of rush orders.

This list is far from exhaustive. However, it does indicate that the cause of a variance in one part of the value chain (production in our example) can be actions taken in other parts of the value chain (such as product design or marketing). Note how improvements in early stages of the value chain (such as in product design) can sizably reduce the magnitude of variances in subsequent stages of the value chain.

The most important task in variance analysis is to understand why variances arise and then to use that knowledge to promote learning and improve performance. For instance, in the preceding list of examples, we may seek improvements in product design, in the timeliness of supplier deliveries, in the commitment of the manufacturing workforce to do the job right the first time, and so on. Variance analysis should not be a tool to play the blame game. Rather, it should be an essential ingredient that promotes learning in the organisation.

When to investigate variances

When should the causes of variances be investigated? Frequently, managers base their answer on subjective judgements, or rules of thumb. For critical items, a small variance may prompt a swift follow-up. For other items, a minimum euro variance or a certain percentage of variance from budget may be necessary to prompt an in-depth investigation. Of course, a 4% variance in direct materials costs of €1 million may deserve more attention than a 20% variance in repair costs of €10 000. Therefore, rules such as 'investigate all variances exceeding €5000 or 25% of budgeted cost, whichever is lower' are common. Variance analysis is subject to the same cost–benefit-context test as all other phases of a management control system. For instance, a change in management style can have an impact on reported variances and their repercussions.

Management accounting systems have traditionally implied that a budgeted amount is a single acceptable measure. Practically, managers realise that the budget is a band or range of possible acceptable outcomes and they consequently expect variances to fluctuate randomly within certain normal limits. By definition, a random variance *per se* is within this band or range and thus calls for no corrective action by managers. Random variances are attributable to chance rather than to management's implementation decisions.

Financial and non-financial performance measures

Almost all organisations use a combination of financial and non-financial performance measures rather than relying exclusively on either type. Consider our Sofiya Company illustration. In its cutting room, fabric is laid out and cut into pieces, which are then matched together and assembled. Control is often exercised at the cutting room level by focusing on non-financial measures such as the number of square metres of cloth used to produce 1000 jackets or the percentage of jackets started and completed without requiring any rework. Production managers at Sofiya are also likely to use financial measures to evaluate the overall cost efficiency with which operations are being run and to help guide decisions about, say, changing the mix of inputs used in manufacturing jackets. Financial measures are often critical in an organisation because they summarise the economic impact of diverse physical activities in a way managers readily understand. Moreover, managers are often evaluated on results measured against financial measures.

Concepts in action — Chipotle's required focus on material cost variances

Chipotle is a fast-casual-restaurant chain that has served burritos for nearly 30 years. The company reported a net income of $176 million in 2017, up from $22.9 million in 2016 but far below 2015's reported income of $475 million. The company acknowledged in 2017 of the risk that 'Our average restaurant sales and profitability will continue to fall short of our past results unless we can significantly increase comparable restaurant sales, and there are material risks to our ability to do so.' For Chipotle, profitability depends on making each burrito at the lowest possible cost. In each Chipotle store, the two key direct costs are labour and materials costs. Labour costs include wages for restaurant managers and staff, along with benefits such as health insurance. Materials costs include the 'critical seven' expensive food ingredients – steak, carnitas, barbacoa, chicken, cheese, guacamole and sour cream – and items such as foil, paper bags and plastic silverware. The company recognised that these input prices have been going up: 'Increased labour costs due to factors such as competition for workers and labour market pressures, increased minimum wage requirements. . . may continue to adversely impact our operating costs.' In addition: 'The cost of many basic foods for humans and animals, including corn, wheat, rice and cooking oils, has increased markedly in some years, resulting

in upward pricing pressures on almost all of our raw ingredients including chicken, beef, tortillas and rice. In 2017, a significant rise in avocado prices adversely impacted our food costs for most of the year.'

To reduce labour costs, Chipotle often makes subtle recipe shifts to find the right balance between taste and cost. For example, it uses pre-chopped tomatoes shipped in plastic bags to make salsa because chopping tomatoes by hand takes too much labour. In the past, tweaks like that lowered Chipotle's labour costs from 24.7% of revenue to 22.0%. At the same time, however, materials costs rose from 30.5% of revenue to 34.6% due to the company's focus on naturally raised ingredients. Responsibly raised meat and fresh local produce cost Chipotle more than conventional ingredients, which reduces profitability. As a result, each Chipotle store aggressively manages portion control. While employees gladly oblige customers asking for extra rice, beans or salsa, they are trained to be stingy with the 'critical seven' food ingredients. These measures have lowered adverse materials-cost variances. Cheese and some vegetables arrive in stores pre-cut and shredded, while pork and barbacoa beef are now pre-cooked and delivered in sealed bags. With future profitability dependent on lowering its materials-cost variances, Chipotle's 'food with integrity' will need to be managed very closely going forward.

Source: Nassauer, S. (2015) 'Inside Chipotle's kitchen: what's really handmade', *The Wall Street Journal*, 24 February; https://seekingalpha.com/filings/pdf/12529300.pd.

Flexible budgeting and activity-based costing

Activity-based costing (ABC) systems focus on individual activities as the fundamental cost objects. ABC systems classify the costs of various activities into a cost hierarchy: output-unit level, batch level, product sustaining and facility sustaining. The two direct-cost categories in the Sofiya Company example discussed earlier in this chapter are examples of output-unit-level costs. In this section, we show how the basic principles and concepts of flexible budgets and variance analysis presented earlier in the chapter can be applied to other levels of the cost hierarchy. We focus on batch-level costs. Batch-level costs are resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a group of units of product(s) or service(s) rather than to each individual unit of product or service.

Relating batch costs to product output

Consider Lyco Brass Works, a manufacturer of decorative brass taps. Lyco specialises in manufacturing a tap called Jacutap used in jacuzzis. Lyco produces Jacutaps in batches. For each product line, Lyco dedicates materials-handling labour to bring materials to the manufacturing area, transport work in progress from one work centre to the next, and take the finished product to the shipping area. Hence materials-handling labour costs for Jacutaps are direct costs of Jacutaps. Because the materials for a batch are moved together, materials-handling labour costs vary with the number of batches rather than the number of units in a batch. Materials-handling labour costs are direct and variable batch-level costs.

Information regarding Jacutaps for 2022 follows:

		Static-budget amounts	Actual amounts
1	Units of Jacutaps produced and sold	180 000	151 200
2	Batch size (units per batch)	150	140
3	Number of batches (Line 1 ÷ Line 2)	1 200	1 080
4	Materials-handling labour-hours per batch	5	5.25
5	Total materials-handling labour-hours (Line 3 × Line 4)	6 000	5 670
6	Cost per materials-handling labour-hour	€14	€14.50
7	Total materials-handling labour cost (Line 5 × Line 6)	€84 000	€82 215

To prepare the flexible budget for materials-handling labour costs, Lyco starts with the actual units of output produced, 151 200 units, and proceeds in the following steps:

Step 1: Using the budgeted batch size, calculate the number of batches in which the actual output units should have been produced At the budgeted batch size of 150 units per batch, Lyco should have produced the 151 200 units of output in 1008 batches (151 200 ÷ 150).

Step 2: Using the budgeted materials-handling labour-hours per batch, calculate the number of materials-handling labour-hours that should have been used At the budgeted quantity of 5 hours per batch, 1008 batches should have required 5040 materials-handling labour-hours (1008 × 5).

Step 3: Using the budgeted cost per materials-handling labour-hour, calculate the flexible- budget amount for materials-handling labour-hours The flexible-budget amount is 5040 materials-handling labour-hours × €14, the budgeted cost per materials-handling labour-hour = €70 560.

Note how the flexible-budget calculations for materials-handling costs focus on batch-level quantities (materials-handling labour-hours) rather than on output-unit-level amounts (such as materials-handling labour-hours per unit of output). The flexible-budget variance can then be calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Flexible-budget variance} &= \text{Actual costs} - \text{Flexible-budget costs}\\ &= 5670 \times €14.50 - 5040 \times €14\\ &= €82\,215 - €70\,560\\ &= €11\,655\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable variance indicates that materials-handling labour costs were €11 655 higher than the flexible-budget target.

Price and efficiency variances

Insight into the possible reasons for this €11 655 unfavourable variance can be gained by examining the price and efficiency components of the flexible-budget variance.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Price variance} &= (\text{Actual price of input} - \text{Budgeted price of input}) \times \text{Actual quantity of input}\\ &= (€14.50 - €14) \times 5670 = €0.50 \times 5670 = €2835\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable price variance for materials-handling labour indicates that the actual cost per materials-handling labour-hour (€14.50) exceeds the budgeted cost per materials-handling labour-hour (€14). This variance could be due to (1) Lyco's human resources manager negotiating less skilfully than was planned in the budget, or (2) wage rates increasing unexpectedly due to scarcity of labour.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Efficiency variance} &= \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual}\\ \text{quantity of}\\ \text{input used}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted quantity}\\ \text{of input allowed}\\ \text{for actual output}\end{array}\right) \times \text{Budgeted price of input}\\ &= (5670 - 5040) \times €14\\ &= 630 \times €14\\ &= €8820\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable efficiency variance indicates that the actual number of materials-handling labour-hours (5670) exceeded the number of materials-handling labour-hours that Lyco should

have used (5040) for the number of units it produced. Two reasons for the unfavourable efficiency variance are (1) smaller actual batch sizes of 140 units instead of the budgeted batch sizes of 150 units; this results in Lyco producing the 151 200 units in 1080 batches instead of in 1008 (151 200 ÷ 150) batches; and (2) higher actual materials-handling labour-hours per batch of 5.25 hours instead of budgeted materials-handling labour-hours per batch of 5 hours.

Reasons for smaller-than-budgeted batch sizes could include (1) quality problems if batch sizes exceed 140 taps, or (2) high costs of carrying inventory.

Reasons for longer actual materials-handling labour-hours per batch could include (1) inefficient layout of the Jacutap product line relative to the plan, (2) materials-handling labour having to wait at work centres before picking up or delivering materials, (3) unmotivated or inexperienced employees, or (4) inappropriate materials-handling time standards.

Identifying the reasons for the efficiency variance helps Lyco's managers to develop a plan for improving materials-handling labour efficiency.

Focus on hierarchy

The key idea is to focus the flexible-budget quantity computations at the appropriate level of the cost hierarchy. Because materials handling is a batch-level cost, the flexible-budget quantity calculations focused at the batch level – the quantity of materials-handling labour-hours that Lyco should have used based on the number of batches it should have taken to produce the actual quantity of 151 200 units. If a cost had been a product-sustaining cost, the flexible-budget quantity computations would focus at the product-sustaining level.

An illustration of journal entries using standard costs

Control feature of standard costs

We now show journal entries when standard costs are used. For illustrative purposes, we focus on direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

We will continue with the data in the Sofiya Company illustration with one exception. Assume that during April 2022, Sofiya purchases 25 000 square metres of materials. Recall that the actual quantity used is 22 200 metres and that the standard quantity allowed for the actual output achieved is 20 000 metres. The actual purchase price was €31 per square metre, while the standard price was €30.

Note that in each of the following entries, unfavourable variances are always debits and favourable variances are always credits.

Entry 1a Isolate the direct materials-price variance at the time of purchase by debiting Materials Control at standard prices. This is the earliest date possible to isolate this variance.

1a	Materials control (25 000 metres × €30)	€750 000	
	Direct materials-price variance (25 000 metres × €1)	25 000	
	Creditors control (25 000 metres × €31)		775 000
	To record direct materials purchased.		

Entry 1b Isolate the direct materials-efficiency variance at the time of usage by debiting Work-in-Progress Control at standard input quantities allowed for actual output units achieved at standard input prices.

1b	Work-in-progress control		
	(20 000 metres × €30)	€600 000	
	Direct materials-efficiency variance		
	(2200 metres × €30)	66 000	
	Materials control		€666 000
	(22 200 metres × €30)		
	To record direct materials used.		

Entry 2 Isolate the direct manufacturing labour price and efficiency variances at the time this labour is used by debiting Work-in-Progress Control at standard quantities allowed for actual output units achieved at standard input prices. Note that Wages Payable Control measures the payroll liability and hence is always at actual wage rates.

2	Work-in-progress control		
	(8000 hours × €20)	€160 000	
	Direct manufacturing labour price variance		
	(9000 hours × €2)	18 000	
	Direct manufacturing labour efficiency variance (1000 hours × €20)	20 000	
	Wages payable control		
	(9000 hours × €22)		€198 000
	To record liability for direct manufacturing labour costs.		

A major advantage of this standard costing system is its emphasis on the control feature of standard costs. All variances are isolated at the earliest possible time, when managers can make informed decisions based on those variances.

End-of-period adjustments

Chapter 3 discussed two main approaches to recognising the under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead at the end of a period:

- the adjusted allocation-rate approach, which adjusts every job cost record for the difference between the allocated and actual indirect cost amounts;
- the proration approach, which makes adjustments to one or more of the following end-of-period account balances: materials, work in progress, finished goods and cost of goods sold.

Price and efficiency variances can also be disposed of using these same two approaches.

Benchmarking and variance analysis

The budgeted amounts in the variance formulas discussed in this chapter are *benchmarks* (points of reference from which comparisons may be made). The term **benchmarking** is often used to refer to the continuous process of measuring products, services and activities against the best levels of performance. These best levels of performance may be found in the organisation using internal benchmarking information or by using external benchmarks from competing organisations or from other organisations having similar processes. Consider Gillette, which is well

known for its razor-blade products. Gillette sells five times as many blades as its nearest competitor. Given that the profit margin on razor blades is approximately 40% – the most profitable consumer product in the world – this category is clearly an important contributor to Gillette's overall corporate profits. The high profit margins are in part sustained by Gillette learning about the cost structure of its competitors. Gillette operates on a 'zero overhead growth' policy. This requires every Gillette division head to compare their division's costs with a top industry competitor. Each division must decide how to align itself with industry benchmarks. As a result, Human Resource costs have been found to exceed competitors' costs by 20% and its finance division costs are 30–40% higher. This has spurred Gillette divisions to seek ways of bringing down their overhead costs and to further heighten their profit margins as a result. Many consulting firms now also offer benchmarking services. Here we discuss information provided by one such service and then note how the variance computations discussed in this chapter can incorporate this information.

Market Insights (MI), based in Copenhagen, analyses cost information submitted by hospitals to various Danish regulatory bodies. MI develops benchmark reports that show how the cost level at one hospital compares with that at numerous other Danish hospitals. Reports can be prepared at the total hospital level (for example, cost per patient-day) or at a specific diagnostic-group level (for example, cardiology, orthopaedics or gynaecology cost per patient).

Exhibit 15.6 illustrates an MI report for a client hospital. Panel A shows that the client hospital's costs per case is 10% above the average for comparable hospitals. Panel B shows an extract of an MI report at the diagnostic-group level. This report shows that the client hospital has a cost per stroke patient of €33 700 compared with a market average among all hospitals of €31 300. The cost level at this client hospital is well above many hospitals. Cost benchmark reports are attention directing in nature. An individual hospital administrator may well be able to justify an above-average cost level by documenting above-average quality levels or revenue levels. However, in many cases, hospitals with above-average costs have no documentable superiority in their service quality levels, success in surgery operations or revenue per patient-day.

Exhibit 15.6 highlights how hospitals can differ sizably on costs. An administrator of a hospital with above-average costs potentially has much to learn from administrators at hospitals with below-average costs. Be cautious, however, in using benchmark reports such as Exhibit 15.6. The reliability of individual hospital cost data used in benchmark reports varies widely. Many hospitals have not invested heavily in refining their cost accounting systems. In addition, cost figures for individual diagnostic groups require numerous cost allocations, which also vary widely in reliability.

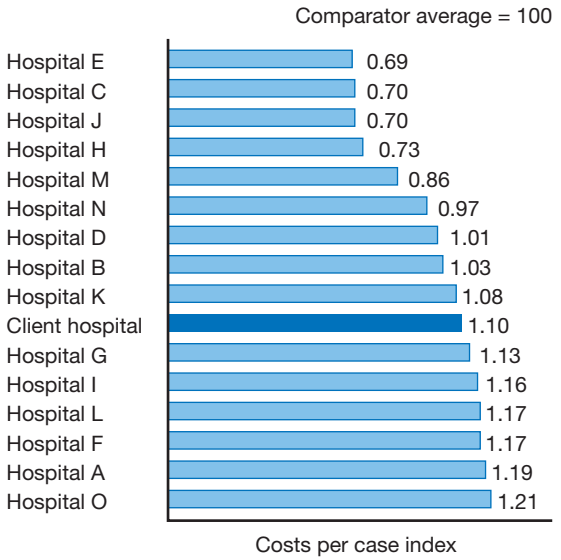
Cost reports like Exhibit 15.6 provide an external benchmark that forces the administrator to ask *why* cost levels differ among hospitals and *how* best practices can be transferred from the more efficient to the less efficient hospitals.

Evaluating the overall performance of a hospital or its personnel requires analysing other factors in addition to costs. These factors include the perceived quality of service to patients; the success rate of operations (for example, how many patients who have undergone surgery as a result of a stroke survive?); and the morale of the doctors, nurses and other staff. In many cases, however, cost factors have been given too little weighting in the past, in part because of the lack of reliable information on cost relationships in this sector of the economy.

Benchmark reports based on the costs of other companies can be developed for many activities and products. For example, the Sofiya Company could estimate (possibly with the aid of consultants) the materials cost of the jackets manufactured by its competitors. The materials-cost estimate of the lowest-cost competitor could be used as the budgeted amounts in its variance computations. An unfavourable materials-efficiency variance would signal that Sofiya has a higher materials cost than 'best cost practice' in its industry. The magnitude of the cost difference would be of great interest to Sofiya. It could prompt Sofiya to do an extensive search into how to bring its own cost structure in line with that of the lowest in the industry.

Exhibit 15.6 Cost benchmark reports for client hospital by Market Insights

Panel A: Cost comparisons at hospital level



How to read this chart:

This chart shows the client hospital's relative-case costs performance versus comparator hospitals. The client hospital is benchmarked with the average-case costs of its peers at the DRG level.

Example:

On an overall costs per case basis, after adjusting for case mix, the client hospital's cost is 10% higher than the comparator group average. There are nine hospitals that have lower overall case costs than the client hospital.

Panel B: Cost comparisons at diagnostic-group level*

Diagnostic group	Client hospital	Market average	25th percentile	Average of lowest-cost quartile (0–25th)
Stroke	€33 700	€31 300	€21 900	€20 500
Respiratory disorders	66 800	53 700	44 400	38 400
Simple pneumonia	37 100	29 500	23 300	22 000
Heart catheterisation	24 800	21 200	20 100	17 100

* The cost amounts refer to the insurance premium per month that an insuree would have to pay to the client hospital.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. A static budget is a budget that is based on one level of output; when variances are calculated at the end of the accounting period, no adjustments are made to the amounts in the static budget. A flexible budget is a budget that is developed using budgeted revenue or cost amounts; when variances are calculated, the budgeted amounts are adjusted (flexed) to recognise the actual level of output and the actual quantities of the revenue and cost drivers. Flexible budgets help managers gain more insight into the causes of variances than do static budgets.
2. A five-step procedure can be used to develop a flexible budget. Where all costs are either variable with respect to output units or fixed, these five steps require only information about budgeted selling price, budgeted variable cost per output unit, budgeted fixed costs, and the actual quantity of output units achieved. The static-budget variance can be broken into a flexible-budget variance (the difference between the actual result and the flexible-budget amount) and a sales-volume variance. The sales-volume variance arises because the actual output units differ from the budgeted output units.

3 Budgeted input prices and input quantities can be developed from past data (with or without adjustments) or by developing standards based on time-and-motion studies, engineering studies, and so on. The computation of price variances and efficiency variances helps managers gain insight into two different (but not independent) aspects of performance. Price variances focus on the difference between actual and budgeted input prices. Efficiency variances focus on the difference between actual inputs used and the budgeted inputs allowed for the actual output achieved.

4 Price variances capture only one aspect of a manager's performance. Other aspects include the quality of the inputs the manager purchases and his or her ability to get suppliers to deliver on time.

5 Managers can use continuous improvement budgeted costs in their accounting system to highlight to all employees the importance of continuously seeking ways to reduce total costs and learning from variance investigations to improve organisational performance.

6 The Level 1, 2 and 3 framework can be applied to variance analysis of activity costs (such as set-up costs) to gain insight into why actual activity costs differ from those in the static budget or flexible budget. Interpreting cost variances for different activities requires an understanding of whether the costs are output-unit-driven or are of a batch-level, product-sustaining or facility-sustaining kind.

7 Benchmarking is the continuous process of measuring products, services and activities against the best levels of performance. Benchmarking enables companies to use the best levels of performance within their organisation or by competitors or other external companies to gauge the performance of their own managers.

References and further reading

Conine, T. E. Jr and McDonald IV, M. B. (2022) 'Usage of variance analysis is, well, variable' (ww2.cfo.com/budgeting/2022/04/usage-of-variance-analysis-is-well-variable/).

FSN (2017) *The Future of Planning Budgeting and Forecasting. Global Survey 2017* (Borehamwood, UK: FSN Publishing Limited) (www.board.com/sites/default/files/learn/pdf/fsn_future_of_budgeting_planning_and_forecasting_board_en_1712.pdf).

CHAPTER 15

Assessment material

Review questions

15.1 What is a benchmark? Give an example of three types of benchmark of interest to managers.

15.2 What is the key question in deciding which variances should be calculated and analysed?

15.3 Why might managers find a Level 2 flexible-budget analysis more informative than a Level 1 static-budget analysis?

15.4 'Performance may be both effective and efficient, but either condition can occur without the other.' Do you agree? Give an example of effectiveness. Give an example of efficiency.

15.5 List four reasons for using standard costs.

15.6 Describe why direct materials price and direct materials efficiency variances may be calculated with reference to different points in time.

15.7 'There are many costs associated with acquiring and using materials over and above materials purchase costs.' Give three examples.

15.8 How might the continuous improvement theme be incorporated into the process of setting budgeted costs?

15.9 Why might an analyst examining variances in the production area look beyond that business function for explanations of those variances?

15.10 Comment on the following statement made by a plant supervisor: 'Meetings with my plant accountant are frustrating. All he wants to do is pin the blame for the many variances he reports.'

Exercises

Basic level

15.11 **Flexible budget** (20–30 minutes)

Abulafia Srl manufactures tyres for the Formula 1 motor racing circuit. For August 2022 Abulafia budgeted to manufacture and sell 3000 tyres at a variable cost of €74 per tyre and a total fixed cost of €54 000. The budgeted selling price was €110 per tyre. Actual results in August 2022 were 2800 tyres manufactured and sold at a selling price of €112 per tyre. The actual total variable costs were €229 600, and the actual total fixed costs were €50 000.

Required

1 Prepare a performance report (akin to Exhibit 15.3) that uses a flexible budget and a static budget.

2 Comment on the results in requirement 1.

***15.12 Materials and manufacturing labour variances** (15 minutes)

Consider the following data collected for Helsingør:

	Direct materials	Direct manufacturing labour
Cost incurred: Actual inputs × actual prices	DKK 200 000	DKK 90 000
Actual inputs × standard prices	214 000	86 000
Standard inputs allowed for actual outputs × standard prices	225 000	80 000

Required

Calculate the price, efficiency and flexible-budget variances for direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

15.13 Professional labour variances, efficiency comparisons (25–30 minutes)

Sharmila Khan is manager of TaxExperts.co.uk, a firm that provides assistance in the preparation of individual tax returns via the internet. Because of the highly seasonal nature of her business, Sharmila employs staff on a monthly basis from two accounting placement firms – Professional Assist (PA) and Office Support (OS). In July 2022, TaxExperts.co.uk took on 12 staff members from PA and 10 from OS. PA is the prestige firm in its area. OS is a recently formed firm.

Sharmila budgets the following for July 2022:

	PA staff	OS staff
Budgeted hourly rate	£45	£40
Budgeted time per tax return in hours	0.40	0.50

Actual results for July 2022 were as follows:

	PA staff	OS staff
Actual hourly rate	£48	£42
Actual time per tax return in hours	0.42	0.46
Number of tax returns completed	4608	3600

Required

1. Calculate professional labour price and efficiency variances for (a) the 12 PA staff, and (b) the 10 OS staff employed in July 2022.
2. Comment on the efficiency of the PA and OS staff TaxExperts.co.uk employed.
3. What factors other than efficiency might Khan consider in deciding whether to employ staff from PA or OS?

15.14 Comprehensive variance analysis (30–40 minutes)

AKEI is an elite desk manufacturer. At the start of May 2022, the following budgeted unit amounts (based on a standard costing system) related to its manufacture of executive desks (made out of oak):

Direct materials: 16 square metres of oak per desk at €20 per square metre

Direct manufacturing labour: 3 hours per desk at €30 per direct manufacturing labour-hour

Budgeted production for May 2022 was 700 executive desks. There were no opening stocks of direct materials or finished goods on 1 May 2022. Work in progress is minimal.

Actual results for May 2022 are as follows:

Direct materials purchased (12 640 square metres)	€259 120
Direct materials used (11 850 square metres)	?
Direct manufacturing labour (2325 hours at €31 per hour)	?

Actual production in May 2022 is 750 executive desk units. The purchase price for oak wood remained unchanged throughout May 2022.

Required

1 Prepare a detailed flexible-budget variance analysis for May 2022 covering direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

2 Give two explanations for each of the variances you calculate in requirement 1.

Intermediate level

15.15 Flexible budget (15 minutes)

The budgeted prices for direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and direct marketing (distribution) labour per attaché case are €40, €8 and €12, respectively. The chairman is pleased with the following performance report:

	Actual costs	Static budget	Variance
Direct materials	€364 000	€400 000	€36 000 F
Direct manufacturing labour	78 000	80 000	2 000 F
Direct marketing (distribution) labour	110 000	120 000	10 000 F

Required

Actual output was 8800 attaché cases. Is the chairman's pleasure justified? Prepare a revised performance report that uses a flexible budget and a static budget. Assume all three direct costs items are variable costs.

15.16 Price and efficiency variances (20–30 minutes)

Ched Ltd manufactures Cheddar cheese pies. For January 2022, it budgeted to purchase and use 15 000 kg of Cheddar cheese at £0.89 per kg; budgeted output was 60 000 pies. Actual purchase and use for January 2022 was 16 000 kg at £0.82 per kg; actual output was 60 800 pies.

Required

1 Calculate the flexible-budget variance.

2 Calculate the price and efficiency variances.

3 Comment on the results in requirements 1 and 2.

15.17 Flexible budget preparation and analysis (25–30 minutes)

Norland-Norge AS produces corporate notebooks. Each notebook is designed for an individual customer. The company's operating budget for September 2022 included these data:

Number of notebooks	15 000
Selling price per book	NKR 20
Variable costs per book	NKR 8
Total fixed costs for the month	NKR 145 000

The actual results for September 2022 were:

Number of notebooks produced and sold	12 000
Average selling price per book	NKR 21
Variable costs per book	NKR 7
Total fixed costs for the month	NKR 150 000

The managing director of the company observed that the operating profit for September was much less than anticipated, despite a higher-than-budgeted selling price and a lower-than-budgeted variable cost per unit. You have been asked to provide explanations for the disappointing September results.

Norland-Norge develops its flexible budget on the basis of budgeted revenue per output unit and variable costs per output without a detailed analysis of budgeted inputs.

Required

1. Prepare a Level 1 analysis of the September performance.
2. Prepare a Level 2 analysis of the September performance.
3. Why might Norland-Norge find the Level 2 analysis more informative than the Level 1 analysis? Explain your answer.

15.18 Price and efficiency variances, journal entries (30 minutes)

Drogheda Chemical Ltd has set-up the following standards per finished output unit for direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

Direct materials: 10 kg at €3.00 per kg	€30.00
Direct manufacturing labour: 0.5 hour at €20.00 per hour	€10.00

The number of finished output units budgeted for March 2022 was 10 000; 9810 units were actually produced.

Actual results in March 2022 were:

Direct materials: 98 073 kg used	
Direct manufacturing labour: 4900 hours	€102 900

Assume that there were no opening stocks of either direct materials or finished units.

During the month, materials purchases amounted to 100 000 kg, at a total cost of €310 000. Price variances are isolated upon purchase. Efficiency variances are isolated at the time of usage.

Required

1. Calculate the March 2022 price and efficiency variances of direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. Comment on these variances.
2. Prepare journal entries to record the variances in requirement 1.
3. Why might Drogheda Chemical Ltd calculate materials price variances and materials efficiency variances with reference to different points in time?

15.19 Continuous improvement (continuation of Exercise 15.18) (20 minutes)

Drogheda Chemical adopts a continuous improvement approach to setting monthly standards' costs. Assume the direct materials standard quantity input of 10 kg per output unit and the direct manufacturing labour quantity input of 0.5 hours per output unit pertain to January 2022. The standard amounts for February 2022 are 0.997 of the January standard amount. The standard amounts for March 2022 are 0.997 of the February standard amount. Assume the same information for March 2022 as in Exercise 15.18 except for these revised standard amounts.

Required

1 Calculate the March 2022 standard quantity input amounts per output unit for direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

2 Calculate the March 2022 price and efficiency variances of direct materials and direct manufacturing labour.

*15.20 Flexible-budget preparation (20–30 minutes)

The managing partner of Hoofdorp Music Box Fabricators has become aware of the disadvantages of static budgets. She asks you to prepare a flexible budget for October 2022 for the main style of music box. The following partial data are available for the actual operations in August 2022 (a recent typical month):

Boxes produced and sold	4 500
Direct material costs	€90 000
Direct manufacturing labour costs	€67 500
Depreciation and other fixed manufacturing costs	€50 700
Average selling price per box	€70
Fixed marketing costs	€81 350

Assume no opening or closing stocks of music boxes.

A 10% increase in the selling price is expected in October. The only variable marketing cost is a commission of €5.50 per unit paid to the manufacturers' representatives, who bear all their own costs of travelling, entertaining customers, and so on. A patent royalty of €2 per box manufactured is paid to an independent design firm. Salary increases that will become effective in October are €12 000 per year for the production supervisor and €15 000 per year for the sales manager. A 10% increase in direct materials prices is expected to become effective in October. No changes are expected in direct manufacturing labour wage rates or in the productivity of the direct manufacturing labour personnel. Hoofdorp uses a normal costing system and does not have standard costs for any of its inputs.

Required

1 Prepare a flexible budget for October 2022, showing budgeted amounts at each of three output levels of music boxes: 4000, 5000 and 6000 units. (Use the flexible-budget approach of developing budgeted revenue and variable costs on a budgeted per output unit basis.)

2 Why might Hoofdorp Music Box Fabricators find a flexible budget more useful than a static budget? Explain.

15.21 Flexible-budget variances for finance function activities (30 minutes)

Sam Chase is the Finance Director of Flowers.co.ke, an internet company that enables customers to order home deliveries of flowers by accessing its website. Flowers.co.ke has a network of florists ('strategic partners') who do the physical delivery of flowers. Flowers.co.ke has a group of representatives that continually visit florists and nurseries. This group monitors product and service quality and explores new products or new partners.

Chase is concerned with the efficiency and effectiveness of the finance function at Flowers.co.ke. He collects the following information for three finance activities in 2022:

Finance activity	Activity measure	Budgeted total cost of activity	Budgeted total volume of activity	Actual cost of process	Actual total volume of activity
Creditors	Number of invoices	KSh580 000	200 000	KSh594 020	212 150
Debtors	Number of remittances	639 000	1 000 000	711 000	948 000
Travel and expenses	Number of expense reports	15 200	2 000	13 986	1 890

The budgeted amounts are based on an analysis of costs in past periods at Flowers.co.ke. The output measure is the number of deliveries, which is assumed to be the same as the number of remittances. Debtors is an output-unit-level-driven cost, whereas creditors and travel and expense are batch-driven costs.

Required

1. Prepare a flexible-budget-based report explaining difference between budgeted and actual costs for each of the three finance activities in 2022. Comment on the results.
2. Why might the variances computed in requirement 1 pertain to efficiency but not effectiveness?
3. How might Chase monitor the effectiveness of the three finance processes in this exercise?

15.22 **Finance function activities, benchmarking** (continuation of Exercise 15.21) (20 minutes)

Sam Chase of Flowers.co.ke receives a brochure from the Hackett Group, a consulting firm specialising in benchmarking. He asks the Hackett Group to provide benchmark data from its recent study of the finance function at over 100 retail companies (both traditional retail and Internet-based retail). Hackett's 'world-class' cost benchmarks for Flowers.co.ke's three finance activities are:

Finance activity	World-class cost performance
Creditors	KSh0.71 per invoice
Debtors	KSh0.10 per remittance
Travel and expenses	KSh1.58 per expense report

Required

1. What new insights might arise with the Hackett benchmark data using the budgeted amounts in Exercise 15.21?
2. Assume you are in charge of travel and expense report processing. What concerns might you have with Sam Chase using the Hackett benchmark of KSh1.58 per expense report as the key to evaluate your performance next period?

15.23 **Price and efficiency variances, problems in standard setting, benchmarking** (30–40 minutes)

Poitou-Chemises SARL manufactures shirts for retail chains. Armand Plessis, the accountant, is becoming increasingly disenchanted with Poitou-Chemises' six-month-old standard costing system. The budgeted amounts for both its direct materials and direct manufacturing labour are drawn from its standard costing system. The budgeted and actual amounts for July 2022 were:

	Budgeted	Actual
Shirts manufactured	4 000	4 488
Direct materials cost	€20 000	€20 196
Direct materials units used (rolls of cloth)	400	408
Direct manufacturing labour costs	€18 000	€18 462
Direct manufacturing labour-hours	1 000	1 020

There were no opening or closing stocks of materials.

Armand observes that in the past six months he has rarely seen an unfavourable variance of any magnitude. The standard costing system is based on a study of the operations conducted by an independent consultant. He decides to play detective and makes some unobtrusive observations of the workforce at the plant. He notes that even at their current output levels, the workers seem to have a lot of time to discuss football, sitcoms and cooking recipes.

At a recent industry conference on 'Benchmarking and Competitiveness', Françoise Daubigné, the accountant of Textiles-Georges-Grassens, told Armand that Textiles-Georges-Grassens had employed the same independent consultant to design a standard costing system. However, the

company dismissed him after two weeks because Textiles-Georges-Grassens employees quickly became aware of the consultant observing their work.

At the industry conference, Armand participated in seminars on 'benchmarking for the fabric industry'. A consultant for France-Solutions SA showed how she could develop six-month benchmark reports on the estimated costs of Poitou-Chemises' major competitors. She indicated that she was already examining the estimated cost of shirts manufactured by the four largest importers into Europe. These importers had taken much business from Poitou-Chemises in recent years. This information would soon be available by subscribing to the France-Solutions monthly service.

Required

1 Calculate the price and efficiency variances of Poitou-Chemises for direct materials and direct manufacturing labour in July 2022.

2 Describe the types of action the employees at Textiles-Georges-Grassens may have taken to reduce the accuracy of the standards set by the independent consultant. Why would employees take those actions? Is this behaviour ethical?

3 Describe how Poitou-Chemises might use information from France-Solutions when computing the variances in requirement 1.

4 Discuss the pros and cons of Poitou-Chemises using the France-Solutions information to increase its cost competitiveness.

Advanced level

***15.24 Flexible budget preparation, service sector** (45 minutes)

Münzel GmbH helps prospective homeowners of substantial means to find low-cost financing and assists existing homeowners in refinancing their current loans at lower interest rates. Münzel works only for customers with excellent borrowing potential. Hence, Münzel is able to obtain a loan for every customer with whom it decides to work.

Münzel charges clients 0.5% of the loan amount it arranges. In 2016, the average loan amount per customer was €199 000. In 2017, the average loan amount was €200 210. In its 2022 flexible budgeting system, Münzel assumes the average loan amount will be €200 000.

Budgeted cost data per loan application for 2022 are:

- Professional labour: 6 budgeted hours at a budgeted rate of €40 per hour
- Loan filing fees: budgeted at €100 per loan application
- Credit checks: budgeted at €120 per loan application
- Courier mailings: budgeted at €50 per loan application.

Office support (the costs of leases, secretarial workers and others) is budgeted to be €31 000 per month. Münzel GmbH views this amount as a fixed cost.

Required

1 Prepare a static budget for November 2022 assuming 90 loan applications.

2 Actual loan applications in November 2022 were 120. Other actual data for November 2022 were:

   - Professional labour: 7.2 hours per loan application at €42 per hour
   - Loan filing fees: €100 per loan application
   - Credit checks: €125 per loan application
   - Courier mailings: €54 per loan application.

Office support costs for November 2022 were €33 500. The average loan amount for November 2022 was €224 000. Münzel received its 0.5% fee on all loans. Prepare a Level 2 variance analysis of Münzel GmbH for November 2022. Münzel's output measure in its flexible budgeting system is the number of loan applications.

3 Calculate professional labour price and efficiency variances for November 2022. (Calculate labour price on a per-hour basis.)

4 What factors would you consider in evaluating the effectiveness of professional labour in November 2022?

15.25 CIMA Performance Operations, section C, November 2014 (40 minutes)

A company manufactures and sells a single product. The company operates a standard marginal costing system that enables the reporting of planning and operational variances.

The original standard contribution per unit of the product for October, which was used to establish the budgeted contribution for the month, was as follows:

		£
Selling price		60
Direct material	1.5 kg @ £10 per kg	(15)
Direct labour	2 hours @ £15 per hour	(30)
Contribution		15

Other information for October

Sales and production quantities:

Budgeted sales and production	40 000 units
Actual sales and production	42 000 units

A change in the product specification was implemented at the start of October which required 20% additional material for each unit. The standard cost shown above was not revised to reflect this change.

1 Actual direct material purchased and used was 78 000 kg at £9.90 per kg.

2 The labour rate shown in the standard cost above was overestimated. The correct standard labour rate for the grade of labour required was £14.60 per hour. The actual rate paid was £15.20 per hour and actual hours worked were 86 000 hours.

The actual selling price per unit was £62.

There was no opening inventory of raw materials or finished goods.

Required

1 Prepare a statement for October that reconciles the budgeted contribution with the actual contribution. Your statement should show the variances in as much detail as possible.

2 Discuss the performance of the company for October. Your discussion should give one possible reason for each of the operational variances calculated in part (a).

3 Explain why separating variances into their planning and operational elements should improve performance management.

CHAPTER 16

Flexible budgets, variances and management control: II

Overhead or indirect costs are a major area of concern for many organisations. Chemical, paper, steel and telecommunications companies, for example, incur sizeable costs to construct and maintain their physical plant and equipment and other aspects of their infrastructure. Such costs are included in the indirect costs of the individual products or services they produce and sell. Companies like Leboncoin.fr, Sapo.pt and Daraz.pk invest large amounts in software that enable them to provide a broad range of services to their customers. These costs are part of their overhead costs. This chapter covers methods of planning and controlling overhead costs, allocating these costs to products, and analysing overhead variances.

The previous chapter emphasised the direct-cost categories of direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. Here, the overhead categories of variable and fixed manufacturing overhead are stressed. Please proceed slowly as you study this chapter. Trace the data to the analysis in a systematic way. In particular, note how fixed manufacturing overhead is accounted for in one way for the planning and control purpose and in a different way for the stock costing purpose.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Explain differences in the planning of variable-overhead costs and the planning of fixed-overhead costs
- Compute spending and efficiency variances for variable-overhead costs
- Illustrate how to calculate the budgeted fixed-overhead rate
- Understand why we measure the production-volume variance
- Explain how a 4-variance analysis can provide an integrated overview of overhead cost variances
- Explain the differing roles of cost-allocation bases for fixed manufacturing overhead when (a) planning and controlling, and (b) valuing stock
- Prepare journal entries for variable- and fixed-overhead variances
- Explain how flexible-budget variances can be used in activity-based costing

Planning of variable- and fixed-overhead costs

Variances bring together the planning and control functions of management and facilitate 'management by exception'. Management by exception is a practice whereby managers focus more closely on areas that are not operating as expected and less closely on areas that are. Let's say actual costs are much higher than originally budgeted for an activity in an organisation, variances can be presented to managers to find out why and correct the problem to reduce future scrap and rework. If a positive variance occurs, such as lower-than-planned costs, managers try to understand the reasons for the decrease and see if altered practices can be continued and implemented by other units. Variances are also used for evaluating performance and to motivate managers. Sometimes variances suggest that the company should consider a change in strategy. For example, large negative variances caused by excessive defect rates for a new product may cause managers to investigate and modify the product design. Variances also help managers make more informed predictions about the future and thereby improve the quality of decision-making. A survey by the United Kingdom's Chartered Institute of Management Accountants found that it was easily the most popular costing tool used by organisations of all sizes.

We continue the Chapter 15 analysis of the Sofiya Company. Chapter 15 illustrated how a static-budget variance can be divided into a flexible-budget variance and a sales-volume variance. This chapter focuses on understanding flexible-budget variances for overhead costs and their causes.

Sofiya's cost structure illustrates why it views the planning of overhead costs as important. The following percentages of total static-budget costs (see column 4 of Exhibit 15.2) are based on Sofiya's budget for 12 000 output units for April 2022:

	Variable-overhead costs	Fixed overhead costs	Total overhead costs
Manufacturing	7.59%	14.54%	22.13%
Marketing	3.16	22.87	26.03
Total	10.75%	37.41%	48.16%

Total overhead costs amount to almost half (48.16%) of Sofiya's total budgeted costs at 12 000 output units for April 2022. Clearly, Sofiya can greatly improve its profitability by effective planning of its overhead costs, both variable and fixed.

Planning variable-overhead costs

Among Sofiya's variable manufacturing overhead costs are energy, engineering support, indirect materials and indirect manufacturing labour. Effective planning of variable-overhead costs involves undertaking only value-added variable-overhead activities and then managing the cost drivers of those activities in the most efficient way. A **value-added cost** is one that, if eliminated, would reduce the value customers obtain from using the product or service. A **non-value-added cost** is one that, if eliminated, would not reduce the value customers obtain from using the product or service. Consider the cost of sewing needles used in the sewing of jackets manufactured by Sofiya. Sewing is an essential element of manufacturing a jacket. Hence, costs associated with sewing (for example, sewing needles) would be classified as adding value. In contrast, consider the cost of a warehouse that stores rolls of cloth to be used in case of an emergency (if, say, a supplier fails to meet the delivery schedule). A jacket sewn from cloth stored in a warehouse is no different from a jacket sewn from cloth delivered by a supplier directly to the production floor. Hence, costs associated with warehousing are likely to be viewed as 'non-value-adding'. There is a continuum between value-added costs and non-value-added costs. Many overhead cost items are in a grey, uncertain area between value-adding and non-value-adding costs.

Planning fixed-overhead costs

Effective planning of fixed-overhead costs includes undertaking only value-added fixed-overhead activities and then determining the appropriate level for those activities. For Sofiya, examples in manufacturing include depreciation or leasing costs on plant and equipment, some administrative costs (for example, the plant manager's salary), and property taxes. Frequently, the most critical issue is how much plant and equipment to acquire. Consider Sofiya's leasing of weaving machines, each of which has a fixed cost per year. Failure to lease sufficient machine capacity will result in an inability to meet demand and thus in lost sales of jackets. In contrast, if Sofiya greatly overestimates demand, it will incur additional fixed leasing costs on machines that are not fully utilised during the year.

At the start of an accounting period, management will probably have made most of the key decisions that determine the level of fixed-overhead costs to be incurred. In contrast, day-to-day, ongoing management decisions play a larger role in determining the level of variable-overhead costs incurred in that period.

Sofiya company data

The Sofiya Company summary information for April 2022 that we use in this chapter is as follows:

Overhead category	Actual results	Flexible-budget amount (for 10 000 output units)	Static-budget amount (for 12 000 output units)
Variable manufacturing overhead	€130 500	€120 000	€144 000
Fixed manufacturing overhead	285 000	276 000	276 000
Variable marketing overhead	45 700	50 000	60 000
Fixed marketing overhead	420 000	434 000	434 000

Developing budgeted variable-overhead rates

Sofiya uses a three-step approach when developing its variable-overhead rate:

Step 1: Identify the costs to include in the variable-overhead cost pool(s) Sofiya groups all of its variable manufacturing overhead costs in a single cost pool. Costs in this pool include energy, engineering support, indirect materials and indirect manufacturing labour.

Step 2: Select the cost-allocation base(s) Sofiya's operating managers believe that machine-hours are an important driver of variable manufacturing overhead costs and decided to use this measure as the cost-allocation base.

Step 3: Estimate the budgeted variable-overhead rate(s) Several approaches can be used in this step. One approach is to adjust the past actual variable-overhead cost rate per unit of the allocation base – for example, an adjustment to take into account expected inflation. A second approach is to use standard costing.

Sofiya uses the standard costing approach to develop its April 2022 budgeted variable overhead cost rate of €30 per machine-hour and also its budgeted machine-hour rate of 0.40 hours per actual output unit. These input amounts are used to calculate the budgeted variable manufacturing overhead rate per unit:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Budgeted inputs allowed per output unit} \times \text{Budgeted costs per input unit} &= 0.40 \times €30\\ &= €12 \text{ per output unit}\end{aligned}$$

Variable-overhead cost variances

We now illustrate how the budgeted variable manufacturing overhead rate is used in computing Sofiya's variable manufacturing overhead cost variances. The following data are for April 2022:

Cost item/allocation base	Actual results	Flexible-budget amount (for 10 000 output units)	Static-budget amount (for 12 000 output units)
1 Variable manufacturing overhead costs	€130 500	€120 000	€144 000
2 Variable manufacturing overhead costs per machine-hour [(1) ÷ (5)]	29	30	30
3 Variable manufacturing overhead costs per output unit [(1) ÷ (4)]	13.05	12	12
4 Output units (jackets)	10 000	10 000	12 000
5 Machine-hours	4 500	4 000	4 800

Static-budget and flexible-budget analyses

The Level 1 static-budget variance for variable manufacturing overhead cost is shown in Exhibit 16.1:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable-overhead static-budget variance} &= \text{Actual results} - \text{Static-budget amount} \\ &= €130\,500 - €144\,000 \\ &= €130\,500\,\text{F}\end{aligned}$$

Additional insight into the ability of Sofiya's managers to control variable manufacturing overhead can be gained by moving to the Level 2 flexible-budget analysis also shown in Exhibit 16.1. The budgeted amounts in Level 2 recognise that 10 000 output units were produced instead of the budgeted 12 000 output units. The April 2022 flexible budget for variable manufacturing overhead is €120 000 ($0.4 \times 10\,000 \times €30$).

The variable manufacturing overhead sales-volume variance arises solely because the actual number of output units sold by Sofiya differs from the budgeted number of output units sold:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable-overhead sales-volume variance} &= \text{Flexible-budget amount} - \text{Static-budget amount} \\ &= €120\,000 - €144\,000 \\ &= €24\,000\,\text{F}\end{aligned}$$

The variable manufacturing overhead flexible-budget variance arises because Sofiya's actual variable manufacturing overhead cost differs from that budgeted for the actual output units sold:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable-overhead flexible-budget variance} &= \text{Actual results} - \text{Flexible-budget amount} \\ &= €130\,500 - €144\,000 \\ &= €13\,500\,\text{U}\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 16.1 Static- and flexible-budget analysis of variable manufacturing overhead costs for the Sofiya Company for April 2022

Level 1 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Static-budget variance (2) = (1) – (3)	Static budget (3)
Cost driver: Number of units manufactured	10 000	2000 U*	12 000
Variable manufacturing overhead	€130 500		(0.40 × 12 000 × €30) €144 000

€13 500 F

Static-budget variance

Level 2 analysis

	Actual results (1)	Flexible-budget variance (2) = (1) – (3)	Flexible budget (3)	Sales-volume variance (4) = (3) – (5)	Static budget (5)
Cost driver: Number of units manufactured	10 000	–	10 000	2000 U	12 000
Variable manufacturing overhead	€130 500		(0.40 × 10 000 × €30) €120 000		(0.40 × 12 000 × €30) €144 000

€10 500 U — Flexible-budget variance

€24 000 F — Sales-volume variance

€13 500 F

Static-budget variance

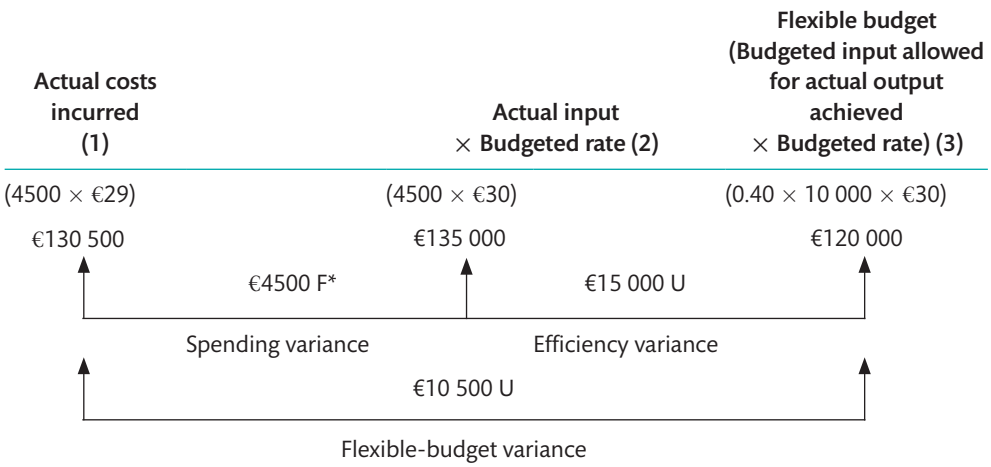
* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

This €10 500 unfavourable flexible-budget variance shows that Sofiya's actual variable manufacturing overhead exceeded the flexible-budget amount by €10 500 for the 10 000 jackets actually produced in April 2022.

We now discuss how managers can gain additional insight by splitting the Level 2 variable manufacturing overhead flexible-budget variance into its Level 3 efficiency and price (labelled *spending* when dealing with overhead) variances. Exhibit 16.2 is the columnar presentation of these Level 3 efficiency and spending variances.

Exhibit 16.2 Columnar presentation of variance analysis: variable manufacturing overhead for the Sofiya Company

Level 3 analysis



* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Variable-overhead efficiency variance

The **variable-overhead efficiency variance** measures the efficiency with which the cost-allocation base is used. The formula is:

$$\text{Variable overhead effciency variance} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual units of variable-overhead cost allocation base used for actual output units achieved}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted units of variable-overhead cost allocation base allowed for actual output units achieved}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted variable-overhead cost allocation rate}\end{array}$$

$$= [4500 - (10\,000 \times 0.40)] \times €30$$
$$= (4500 - 4000) \times €30 = 500 \times €30$$
$$= €15\,000\ \text{U}$$

The variable-overhead efficiency variance is calculated similarly to the efficiency variance described in Chapter 15 for direct-cost items. But the interpretation of the Chapter 15 and 16 efficiency variances differs. In Chapter 15, input-efficiency variances for direct-cost items are based on differences between actual inputs used and the budgeted inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved. In Chapter 16 efficiency variances for variable-overhead costs are based on the efficiency with which the *cost-allocation base* is used. Sofiya's unfavourable variable-overhead efficiency variance of €15 000 means that actual machine-hours (the cost-allocation base) were higher than the budgeted machine-hours allowed to manufacture 10 000 jackets. Possible causes of this higher-than-budgeted machine-hour usage include the following:

- Sofiya's workers were less skilful in the use of machines than budgeted.
- Sofiya's production scheduler inefficiently scheduled jobs, resulting in higher-than-budgeted machine usage.

- Sofiya's machines were not maintained in good operating condition.
- Budgeted machine time standards were set without careful analysis of the operating conditions.
- Sofiya promised a distributor a rushed delivery, which resulted in higher machine usage than budgeted.

Management's response to this €15 000 unfavourable variance would be guided by which cause(s) best describes the April 2022 results.

The use of cotton thread for sewing jackets illustrates the difference between the efficiency variance for direct-cost inputs and the efficiency variance for variable-overhead cost categories. If Sofiya classifies cotton thread as a direct-cost item, the direct materials efficiency variance will indicate whether more or less cotton thread per jacket is used than was budgeted for the actual output achieved. In contrast, if Sofiya classifies cotton thread as an indirect-cost item, the variable manufacturing overhead efficiency variance will indicate whether Sofiya used more or fewer machine-hours (the cost-allocation base for variable manufacturing overhead) than were budgeted for the actual output achieved. Any variation in cotton thread usage other than that budgeted to vary with respect to machine-hours will be shown in the variable manufacturing overhead spending variance.

Variable-overhead spending variance

The **variable-overhead spending variance** is the difference between the actual amount of variable overhead incurred and the budgeted amount allowed for the actual quantity of the variable-over-head allocation base used for the actual output units achieved. The formula for the variable-over-head spending variance is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable overhead spending variance} &= \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual variable-overhead cost per unit of cost allocation base}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted variable-overhead cost per unit of cost base}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Actual quantity of variable-overhead cost allocation base used for actual output units achieved}\end{array} \\ &= (€29 - €30) \times 4500 \\ &= -€1 \times 4500 = €4500\text{ F}\end{aligned}$$

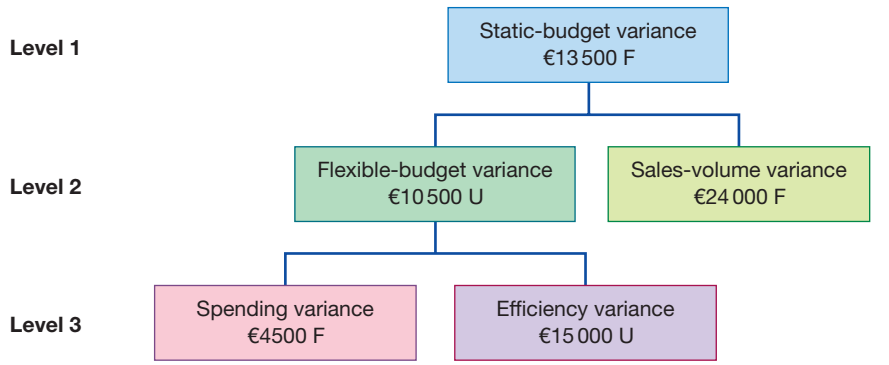
Sofiya operated in April 2022 with a lower-than-budgeted variable-overhead cost per machine-hour. Hence, there is a favourable variable-overhead spending variance.

The variable-overhead spending variance is calculated similarly to the price variance described in Chapter 15 for direct-cost items such as direct materials. Do not assume, however, that the causes of these two variances are the same. Two main causes could explain a variable-overhead spending variance of €4500 F at Sofiya:

- **Cause A.** The actual prices of individual items included in variable overhead differ from their budgeted prices – for example, the April 2022 purchase price of energy, indirect materials or indirect manufacturing labour was less than budgeted prices.
- **Cause B.** The actual usage of individual items included in variable overhead differs from the budgeted usage – for example, the budgeted usage of energy, indirect materials or indirect manufacturing labour was less than the usage assumed in setting the €30 budgeted variable manufacturing overhead rate per machine-hour.

Cause A has implications for the purchasing area of Sofiya. Cause B has implications for the production area of Sofiya. Distinguishing between these two causes for a variable-overhead spending variance requires detailed information about the budgeted prices and the budgeted quantities of the individual line items in the variable-overhead cost pool.

The following is a summary of the variable manufacturing overhead variances calculated in this section.



The key cause of Sofiya's unfavourable flexible-budget variance is that the actual use of machine-hours is higher than budgeted.

Developing budgeted fixed-overhead rates

Fixed-overhead costs are, by definition, a lump sum that does not change in total despite changes in a cost driver. While total fixed costs are frequently included in flexible budgets, they remain the same total amount within the relevant range regardless of the output level chosen to 'flex' the variable costs and revenues. The three steps in developing Sofiya Company's budgeted fixed-overhead rate are as follows.

Step 1: Identify the costs in the fixed-overhead cost pool(s) This is the numerator of the budgeted rate computation. For Sofiya, fixed manufacturing overhead costs include depreciation, plant-leasing costs, property taxes, plant manager's salary and some administrative costs, all of which are included in a single cost pool. Sofiya's budget is €276 000 for April 2022.

Step 2: Estimate the budgeted quantity of the allocation base(s) This is the denominator of the budgeted rate computation. It is termed the **denominator level**. Sofiya uses machine-hours as its allocation base. It budgets to manufacture 12 000 jackets in April 2022. The budgeted number of machine-hours to manufacture 12 000 jackets is 4800 (12 000 × 0.40) budgeted machine-hours per output unit).

Step 3: Calculate the budgeted fixed-overhead rate(s)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Budgeted fixed-overhead rate per unit of allocation base} &= \frac{\text{Budgeted fixed-overhead costs}}{\text{Budgeted quantity of allocation base units}} = \frac{€276\,000}{4800 \text{ machine-hours}} \\ &= €57.50 \text{ per machine-hours}\end{aligned}$$

In manufacturing settings, the denominator level is commonly termed the **production denominator level** or the **production denominator volume**.

Fixed-overhead cost variances

The Level 1 static-budget variance for Sofiya's fixed manufacturing overhead is €9000 U:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Fixed-overhead static-budget variance} &= \text{Actual results} - \text{Static-budget amount}\\ &= €285\,000 - €76\,000\\ &= €9000\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

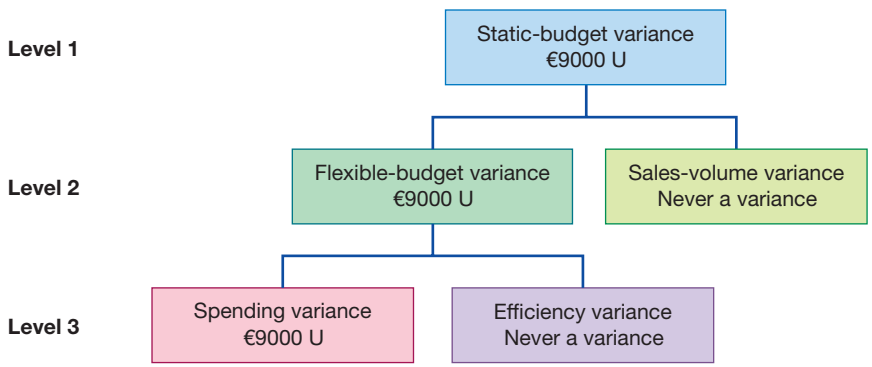
The actual results for fixed manufacturing overhead are in Exhibit 15.2. The static-budget amount for fixed manufacturing overhead is based on 12 000 output units. Given that it is for a fixed cost, this same €276 000 would be the budgeted amount for all output levels in the relevant range. There is no 'flexing' of fixed costs.

The formula for the fixed manufacturing overhead flexible-budget variance is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Fixed-overhead flexible-budget variance} &= \text{Actual results} - \text{Flexible-budget amount}\\ &= €285\,000 - €276\,000\\ &= €9000\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

The fixed-overhead flexible-budget variance is the same as the fixed-overhead static-budget variance. Why? Because there is no 'flexing' of fixed costs. For Level 3 analysis (decomposing the flexible-budget variance into its efficiency and spending components), all of the flexible-budget variance is attributed to the spending variance because this is precisely why this variance arises for fixed costs.

The €9000 unfavourable variance simply means that Sofiya spent more on fixed manufacturing overhead in April 2022 than it budgeted.



A summary of the Levels 1, 2 and 3 variance analyses for Sofiya's fixed manufacturing overhead in April 2022 is as follows:

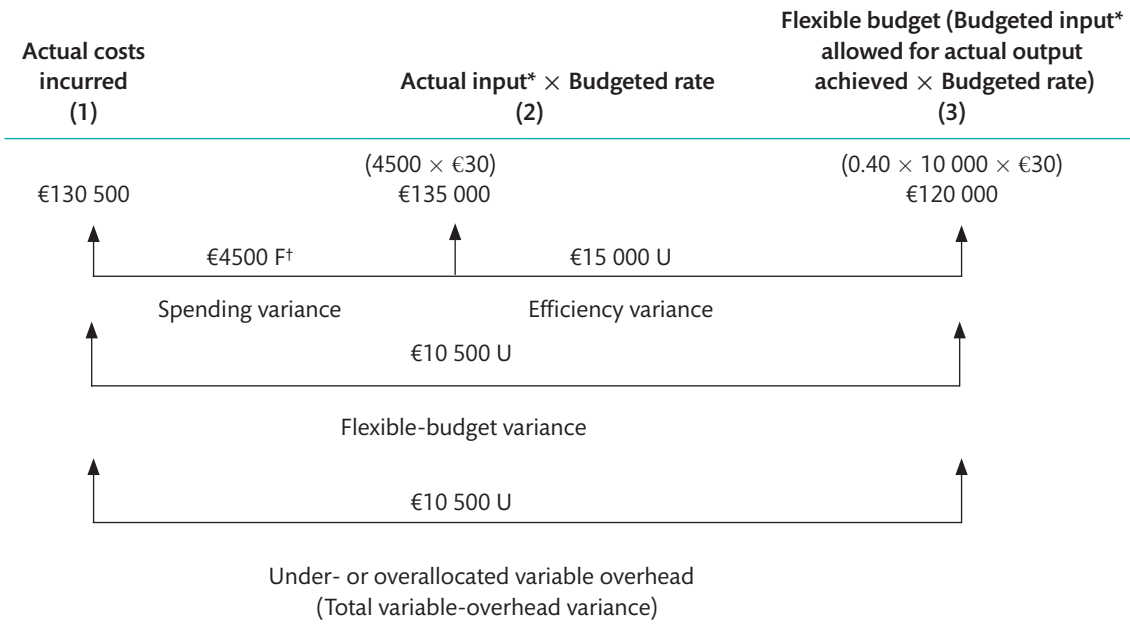
There is never a sales-volume variance in Level 2 for fixed-overhead costs. Why? Because budgeted fixed costs are, by definition, unaffected by sales-volume changes. Similarly, there is never an efficiency variance in Level 3 for fixed-overhead costs. After all, a manager cannot be more or less efficient in dealing with a given amount of fixed costs.

Production-volume variance

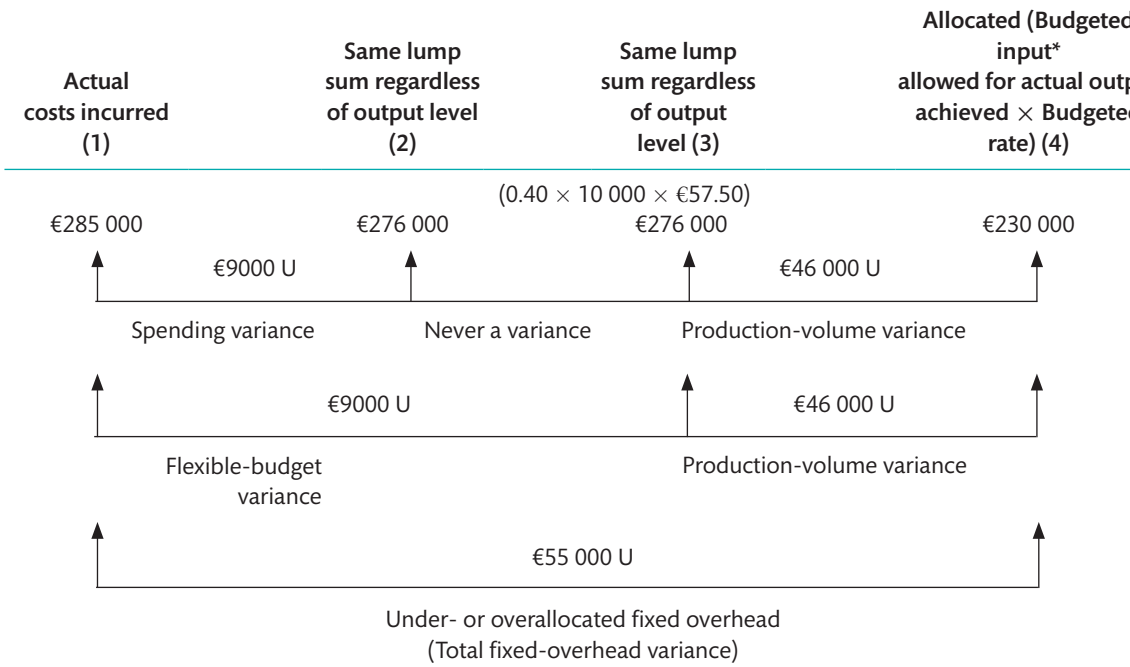
The variances discussed so far in this chapter are presented in Exhibit 16.3 – Panel A for variable costs and the first three columns of Panel B for fixed costs. We now discuss a new variance for fixed-overhead costs (shown on the right-hand side of Exhibit 16.3, Panel B).

Exhibit 16.3 Variance analysis: variable and fixed manufacturing overhead for the Sofiya Company

Panel A: Variable manufacturing overhead



Panel B: Fixed manufacturing overhead



* For overhead costs, input refers to units of cost-allocation base.
† F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

The **production-volume variance** is the difference between budgeted fixed overhead and the fixed overhead allocated. Fixed overhead is allocated based on the budgeted fixed overhead rate times the budgeted quantity of the fixed-overhead allocation base for the actual output units achieved. Other terms for this variance include **denominator-level variance** and **output-level overhead variance**.

The formula for the production-volume variance, expressed in terms of allocation base units (machine-hours for Sofiya), is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Production-volume variance} &= \text{Budgeted fixed overhead} - \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Fixed overhead allocated using budgeted input allowed for actual output units achieved}\end{array} - \text{Budgeted fixed overhead rate}\right)\\ &= €276\,000 - (10.40 \times 10\,000 \times €57.50)\\ &= €276\,000 - (4000 \times €57.50)\\ &= €276\,000 - €230\,000\\ &= €46\,000\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

The amount used for budgeted fixed overhead will be the same lump sum shown in the static budget and also in any flexible budget within the relevant range. Fixed-overhead costs allocated is the sum of the individual fixed-overhead costs allocated to each of the products manufactured during the accounting period.

Panel A of Exhibit 16.3 does not have the column 4 shown for Panel B. Why? Because column 4 does not apply to variable-overhead costs. The amount of variable overhead allocated is always the same as the flexible-budget amount.

Interpreting the production-volume variance

The production-volume variance arises whenever actual production differs from the denominator level used to calculate the budgeted fixed-overhead rate. We calculate this rate because stock costing and some types of contract require fixed-overhead costs to be expressed on a unit-of-output basis. The production-volume variance results from 'unitising' fixed costs. Be careful not to attribute much economic significance to this variance. The most common misinterpretation is to assume this variance measures the economic cost of producing and selling 10 000 units rather than the 12 000 budgeted for April. This assumption does not consider why Sofiya sold only 10 000 units. Assume that a new competitor had gained market share by pricing below what Sofiya charged its customers. To sell the budgeted 12 000 units, Sofiya may have had to reduce its own selling price on all 12 000 units. Suppose it decided that selling 10 000 units at a higher price yielded higher operating profit than selling 12 000 units at a lower price. The production-volume variance does not take into account such information. Hence, it would be misleading to interpret the €46 000 unfavourable amount as Sofiya's economic cost of selling 2000 units less than the budgeted quantity of 12 000 units for April.

Integrated analysis of overhead cost variances

Exhibit 16.3 illustrates the four variances explained in this chapter. When all four variances are presented, it is called a *4-variance analysis*.

4-variance analysis

	Spending variance	Efficiency variance	Production-volume variance
Variable manufacturing overhead	€4500 F	€15 000 U	Never a variance
Fixed manufacturing overhead	€9000 U	Never a variance	€46 000 U

The four variances in this presentation are the two variable manufacturing overhead variances and the two fixed manufacturing overhead variances. Note also that there are two instances of 'Never

a variance'. Why? The efficiency variance pertains only to variable manufacturing overhead. There can be no efficiency for fixed manufacturing overhead because this amount is a lump sum regardless of the output level. The production-volume variance pertains only to fixed manufacturing overhead. It arises because the lump sum is required to be allocated to individual output units for stock costing (and, in some cases, for contract reimbursement).

3-variance analysis

	Spending variance	Efficiency variance	Production-volume variance
Total manufacturing overhead	€4500 U	€15 000 U	€46 000 U

The two spending variances from the 4-variance analysis have been combined in the 3-variance analysis. The only loss of information in the 3-variance analysis is the overhead spending variance area – only one spending variance is reported instead of separate variable- and fixed-overhead spending variances. 3-Variance analysis is sometimes called **combined variance analysis**, because it combines variable- and fixed-cost variances when reporting overhead cost variances.

2-variance analysis

	Flexible-budget variance	Production-volume variance
Total manufacturing overhead	€19 500 U	€46 000 U

The spending and efficiency variances from the 3-variance analysis have been combined under the 2-variance analysis.

1-variance analysis

	Total overhead variance
Total manufacturing overhead	€65 500 U

The single variance of €65 500 U in 1-variance analysis is the sum of the flexible-budget variance and the production-volume variance under 2-variance analyses. Using figures from Exhibit 16.3, the total overhead variance is the difference between the total actual manufacturing overhead incurred (€130 500 + €285 000 = €415 500) and the manufacturing overhead allocated (€120 000 + €230 000 = €350 000) to the actual output units produced. The €65 500 unfavourable total manufacturing overhead variance for the Sofiya Company in April 2022 is largely the result of the €46 000 unfavourable production-volume variance. Using the 4-variance analysis presentation, the next largest amount (after the €46 000) is the €15 000 unfavourable variable-overhead efficiency variance. This variance arises from the additional 500 machine-hours used in April 2022 above the 4000 machine-hours allowed to manufacture the 10 000 jackets. The two spending variances (€4500 F and €9000 U) partially offset each other.

The variances in Sofiya's 4-variance analysis are not necessarily independent of each other. For example, Sofiya may purchase lower-quality machine fluids (giving rise to a favourable spending variance); this results in the machines taking longer to operate than budgeted (giving rise to an unfavourable efficiency variance).

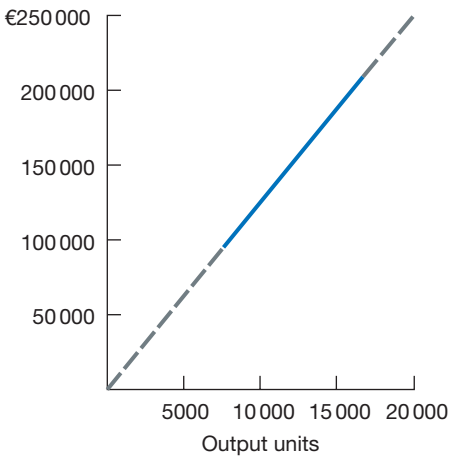
Different purposes of manufacturing overhead cost analysis

Different types of cost analysis may be appropriate for different purposes. Consider the planning and control purpose and the stock costing for financial reporting purpose. Panel A of Exhibit 16.4 depicts variable manufacturing overhead for each purpose; Panel B depicts fixed manufacturing overhead for each purpose.

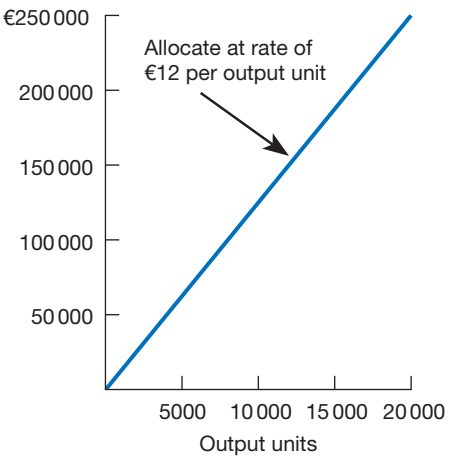
Exhibit 16.4 Behaviour of variable and fixed manufacturing overhead costs for planning and control and for stock costing

Panel A: Variable manufacturing overhead costs

Graph 1: Planning and control purpose

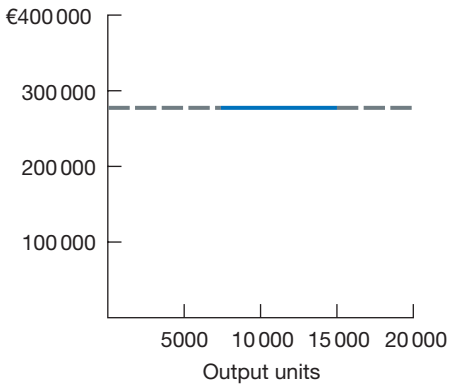


Graph 2: Stock costing purpose

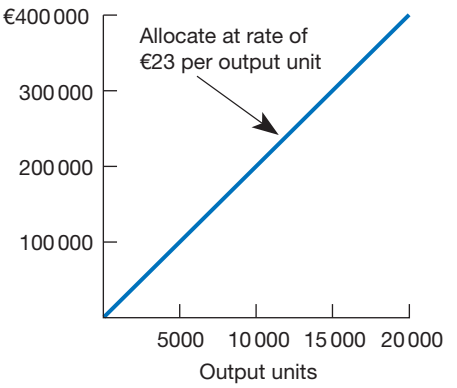


Panel B: Fixed manufacturing overhead costs

Graph 3: Planning and control purpose



Graph 4: Stock costing purpose



Variable manufacturing overhead costs

Sofiya's variable manufacturing overhead is shown in Panel A of Exhibit 16.4 as being variable with respect to output units (jackets) produced for both the planning and control purpose (graph 1) and the stock costing purpose (graph 2). The greater the number of output units manufactured, the higher the budgeted total variable manufacturing overhead costs and the higher the total variable manufacturing overhead costs allocated to output units.

Graph 1 of Exhibit 16.4 presents an overall picture of how total variable overhead might behave. Of course, variable overhead consists of many items, including energy costs, repairs, indirect labour, and so on. Managers help control variable-overhead costs by budgeting each line item and then investigating possible causes for any significant variances.

Fixed manufacturing overhead costs

Panel B of Exhibit 16.4 (graph 3) shows that for the planning and control purpose, fixed overhead costs do not change in the 8000-unit to 16 000-unit output range. Consider a monthly leasing cost of €20 000 for a building under a three-year leasing agreement. Managers control this fixed leasing

cost at the time the lease is signed. During any month in the leasing period, management can do little to change this €20 000 lump-sum payment. Contrast this description of fixed overhead with how these costs are depicted for the stock costing purpose, graph 4 of Panel B. Under generally accepted accounting principles, fixed manufacturing costs are capitalised as part of stock on a unit-of-output basis. Every output unit that Sofiya manufactures will increase the fixed overhead allocated to products by €23 (€57.50 per machine-hour × 0.40 machine-hours per output unit). Managers should not use this unitisation of fixed manufacturing overhead costs for their planning and control.

The denominator level in each graph in Exhibit 16.4 is expressed in output units produced. Alternatively, we could also have expressed this denominator in terms of input units. For Sofiya, machine-hours would be the chosen denominator, as this is the allocation base for both variable and fixed manufacturing overhead costs.

Journal entries for overhead costs and variances

Recording overhead costs

The Wallace Company job-costing example (Chapter 3) used a single manufacturing overhead control account. This chapter illustrates separate variable and fixed manufacturing overhead control accounts. Each overhead control account requires its own overhead allocated account.

Consider the following journal entries for the Sofiya Company. Recall that for April 2022:

	Actual results	Flexible-budget amount (10 000 units)	Allocated amount
Variable manufacturing overhead	€130 500	€120 000*	€120 000*
Fixed manufacturing overhead	285 000	276 000†	230 000‡

* 0.40 × 10 000 × €30 × €120 000.
† €276 000 is the budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead.
‡ 0.40 × 10 000 × €57.50 × €230 000.

The budgeted variable-overhead rate is €30 per machine-hour. The denominator level for fixed manufacturing overhead is 4800 machine-hours of input with a budgeted rate of €57.50 per machine-hour. Sofiya uses 4-variance analysis.

During the accounting period, actual variable-overhead and actual fixed-overhead costs are accumulated in separate control accounts. As each unit is manufactured, the budgeted variable- and fixed-overhead rates are used to record the amounts in the respective overhead allocated accounts.

Entries for variable manufacturing overhead for April 2022 are:

1	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Control	130 500	
	Creditors Control and other accounts		130 500
	To record actual variable manufacturing overhead costs incurred.		
2	Work-in-Progress Control	120 000	
	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Allocated		120 000
	To record variable manufacturing overhead cost allocated (0.40 × 10 000 × €30).		
3	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	120 000	
	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Efficiency Variance	15 000	
	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Control		130 500
	Variable Manufacturing Overhead Spending Variance		4 500
	To isolate variances for the accounting period.		

Entries for fixed manufacturing overhead are:

1	Fixed Manufacturing Overhead Control	285 000	
	Wages Payable, Accumulated Depreciation, etc.		285 000
	To record actual fixed-overhead costs incurred.		
2	Work-in-Progress Control	230 000	
	Fixed Manufacturing Overhead Allocated		230 000
	To record fixed manufacturing overhead costs allocated (0.40 × 10 000 × €57.50).		
3	Fixed Manufacturing Overhead Allocated	230 000	
	Fixed Manufacturing Overhead Spending Variance	9 000	
	Fixed Manufacturing Production-Volume Variance	46 000	
	Fixed Manufacturing Overhead Control		285 000
	To isolate variances for the accounting period.		

The end-of-period adjustments for these variances are now discussed.

Overhead variances and end-of-period adjustments

Chapter 5 outlined the adjusted allocation rate approach and the proration approach to handling the end-of-period difference between manufacturing overhead incurred and manufacturing overhead allocated. Consider Sofiya's variable manufacturing overhead. The budgeted rate was €30 per machine-hour. The actual rate is €29 per machine-hour.

Under the adjusted allocation rate approach, Sofiya would adjust the job record of every job worked on during the year. This adjustment, in effect, would entail using the actual rate per machine-hour of €29 instead of the budgeted rate of €30. Then, Sofiya would accordingly recalculate the closing stock and cost of goods sold for the accounting period. This approach has several benefits. Individual job records are restated to show actual costs accurately. Also, closing stock and cost of goods sold would accurately show actual variable overhead incurred. A similar approach could be used to restate the fixed manufacturing overhead in job records. Provided all accounting records are on compatible computer systems, the adjusted allocation rate approach can often be done in a low-cost and timely manner.

The proration approach is used where managers view the adjusted allocation rate approach as not being cost-effective. The three main options for disposing of variances under this approach are:

- proration based on the allocated overhead amount (before proration) in the closing balances of Stock and Cost of Goods Sold;
- proration based on total closing balances (before proration) in Stock and Cost of Goods Sold;
- immediate write-off to Cost of Goods Sold.

Sofiya could use any one of these options when prorating the €10 500 of underallocated variable manufacturing overhead (and the €55 000 of underallocated fixed manufacturing overhead).

Concepts in action

Variance analysis and standard costing: helping Sandoz manage overhead costs

Sandoz, the $9.7 billion generics division of Swiss-based Novartis AG, is the world's third largest generic drug manufacturer. The company serves the needs of 520 million patients worldwide Market pricing pressure means that Sandoz operates on razor-thin margins. As a result, the company must ensure that managers have a full and accurate understanding of its costs, including accounting for overhead costs. Sandoz uses standard costing and variance analysis to manage its overhead costs.

Sandoz prepares a yearly overhead budget based on a detailed production plan, planned overhead spending, and other factors. Sandoz then uses activity-based costing to assign budgeted overhead costs to different work centres (for example, mixing, blending, tableting, testing and packaging). Finally, overhead costs are assigned to products based on the activity levels required by each product at each work centre. The resulting standard product cost is used in product profitability analysis and as a basis for making pricing decisions. The two main focal points in Sandoz's performance analyses are overhead absorption analysis and manufacturing overhead variance analysis.

Each month, Sandoz uses absorption analysis to compare actual production and actual costs to the standard costs of processed inventory. The monthly analysis evaluates two key trends:

1 Are costs in line with the budget? If not, the reasons are examined and the accountable managers are notified.
2 Are production volume and product mix conforming to plan? If not, Sandoz reviews and adjusts machine capacities and the absorption trend is deemed to be permanent.

Manufacturing overhead variances are examined at the work centre level. These variances help to determine when equipment is not running as expected so it can be repaired or replaced. Variances also help in identifying inefficiencies in processing and set-up and cleaning times, which leads to more efficient ways to use equipment. In spite of its tight cost controls, Sandoz faces heavy price competition and the parent company's CEO Vas Narasimhan has sought to shift the company toward lower volume but higher priced medicines for several years. Following low profit growth figures and strategic re-thinking, Novartis has been considering 'de-integrating' Sandoz CEO and possibly being sold following a $25 billion bid from investment groups in 2022.

Sources: Novartis AG (2015) Form 20-F (Basel, Switzerland: Novartis AG); IMS Institute for Healthcare Informatics/Generic Pharmaceutical Association, Generic Drug Savings in the United States, November 2015; Conversations with, and documents prepared by, Tobias Hestler and Chris Lewis of Sandoz 2016; Kansteiner, F. (2022) 'Novartis' Sandoz reportedly the target of $25B buyout bid from Carlyle and Blackstone, 1 February (https://www.fiercepharma.com/pharma/novartis-sandoz-reportedly-target-26b-buyout-bid-from-carlyle-and-blackstone); Burger, L. (2021) 'Novartis may divest generic unit Sandoz as price pressures mount', 26 October (https://www.reuters.com/business/novartis-more-bullish-cosentyx-entresto-sales-q3-profit-rises-2021-10-26/).

Engineered, discretionary and infrastructure costs

From a planning and control standpoint, managers often find it useful to classify costs in general, and overhead costs in particular, into three main categories: engineered, discretionary and infrastructure.

- **Engineered costs** result specifically from a clear cause-and-effect relationship between costs and output. In the Sofiya Company example, direct materials and direct manufacturing labour are examples of engineered direct costs, while energy, indirect materials and indirect support labour are examples of engineered overhead costs. Each of these costs increases in a specific way as the units manufactured (jackets) increase. Consider, in particular, the costs of leasing machines. This is a fixed cost in the short run, but it is also an example of an engineered cost. Why? Because, over time, there is a clear cause-and-effect relationship between output, machine-hours of capacity required, and machine leasing costs. Thus, engineered costs can be variable or fixed costs.

Exhibit 16.5 Differences between engineered and discretionary costs

	Engineered costs	Discretionary costs
1 Process or activity	a Detailed and physically observable	a Black box (knowledge of process is sketchy or unavailable)
	b Repetitive	b Non-repetitive or non-routine
2 Level of uncertainty	Moderate or small (shipping or manufacturing settings)	Great (R&D or advertising settings)

Source: This exhibit is a modification of one suggested by H. Itami.

- **Discretionary costs** have two important features: (1) they arise from periodic (usually yearly) decisions regarding the maximum outlay to be incurred, and (2) they have no clearly measurable cause-and-effect relationship between costs and outputs. There is often a delay between the acquisition of a resource and its eventual use. Examples of discretionary costs include advertising, executive training, R&D, health care and management consulting, and corporate staff department costs such as legal, human resources and public relations. The most noteworthy aspect of discretionary costs is that managers are seldom confident that the 'correct' amounts are being spent. The founder of Lever Brothers, an international consumer-products company, once noted, 'Half the money I spend on advertising is wasted; the trouble is, I don't know which half.' Exhibit 16.5 sets out the differences between engineered and discretionary costs.
- **Infrastructure costs** arise from having property, plant and equipment, and a functioning organisation. Examples are depreciation, long-run lease rental and the acquisition of long-run technical capabilities. The period between when infrastructure costs are committed to and acquired and when they are eventually used is very long. Careful long-range planning, rather than day-to-day monitoring, is the key to managing infrastructure costs. Frequently, there is also a high level of uncertainty about the outputs (cash inflows) resulting from the capital-expenditure decisions.

Financial and non-financial performance measures

The overhead variances discussed in this chapter are examples of financial performance measures. Managers also find that non-financial measures provide useful information. Examples of measures that Sofiya would find useful in planning and controlling its overhead costs are:

1. Actual indirect materials usage in metres per machine-hour, compared with budgeted indirect materials usage in metres per machine-hour
2. Actual energy usage per machine-hour, compared with budgeted energy usage per machine-hour
3. Actual machining time per job, compared with budgeted machining time per job.

These performance measures, like the variances discussed in this chapter, are best viewed as attention directors, not problem solvers. These performance measures would probably be reported on the manufacturing floor on a daily, or even hourly, basis. The manufacturing overhead variances we discussed in this chapter capture the financial effects of items such as 1, 2 and 3 above, which in many cases first appear as non-financial performance measures.

Both financial and non-financial performance measures are key inputs when evaluating the performance of managers. Exclusive reliance one or the other usually fails to provide a broader

picture for managerial action. At times, qualitative input complements quantitative information that is financial and non-financial. And there are situations where qualitative anecdotal information informs whether the quantitative indicators represent reality sufficiently well. For example, Jeff Bezos, CEO of Amazon and the world's first centi-billionaire, says: 'We have so many metrics . . . and the thing I have noticed is that when the anecdotes and the data disagree, the anecdotes are usually right. There's something wrong with the way you're measuring.' (Gapper 9 May 2018)

Actual, normal and standard costing

Chapter 3 presented two possible combinations of actual and budgeted direct-cost rates and actual and budgeted indirect-cost rates. Exhibit 16.6 presents these two costing systems along with a third system – **standard costing** – discussed in Chapters 15 and 16. Standard costing is a costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by multiplying the standard price(s) or rate(s) times the standard inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved, and allocates indirect costs on the basis of the standard indirect rate(s) times the standard inputs allowed for the actual outputs achieved.

With a standard costing system, the costs of every product or service planned to be worked on during that period can be calculated at the start of that period. This feature enables a simplified recording system to be used. No record need be kept of the actual costs of items used or of the actual quantity of the cost-allocation base used on individual products or services worked on during the period. Once standards have been set, the costs of operating a standard costing system can be low relative to an actual or normal costing system.

Suppose the Sofiya Company is analysing its marketing overhead costs. It uses a 4-variance analysis of its marketing overhead costs. The following information was collected for April 2022.

1 Variable marketing overhead is allocated to products using budgeted direct marketing labour-hours per jacket. Fixed marketing overhead is allocated to products on a per-jacket basis.

2 Budgeted amounts for April 2022 are:
   - **a** Direct marketing labour-hours: 0.25 hours per jacket
   - **b** Variable marketing overhead rate: €20 per direct marketing labour-hour
   - **c** Fixed marketing overhead: €434 000
   - **d** Output, which is used as the denominator level of output: 12 000 jackets.

3 Actual results for April 2022 are:
   - **a** Variable marketing overhead: €45 700
   - **b** Fixed marketing overhead: €420 000
   - **c** Direct marketing labour-hours: 2304
   - **d** Actual output: 10 000 jackets.

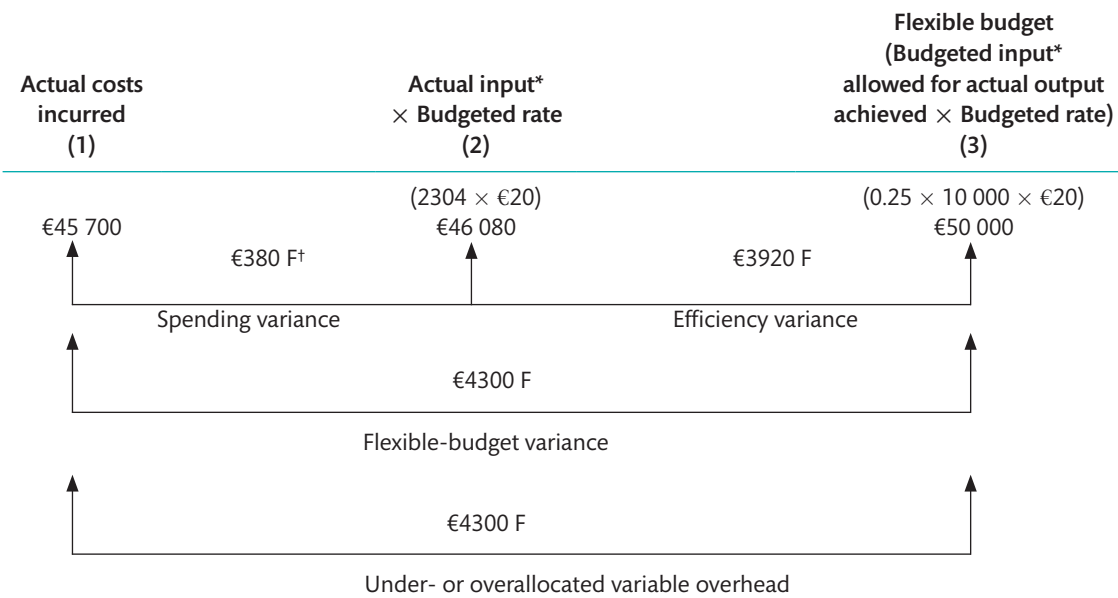
Exhibit 16.6 Actual, normal and standard costing methods

	Actual costing	Normal costing	Standard costing
Direct costs	Actual direct price/rate × Actual quantity of direct-cost input	Actual direct price/rate × Actual quantity of direct-cost input	Standard direct price/rate × Standard inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved
Overhead (indirect) costs	Actual indirect rate × Actual quantity of cost-allocation base	Budgeted indirect rate × quantity of cost-allocation base	Standard indirect price rate × Standard inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved

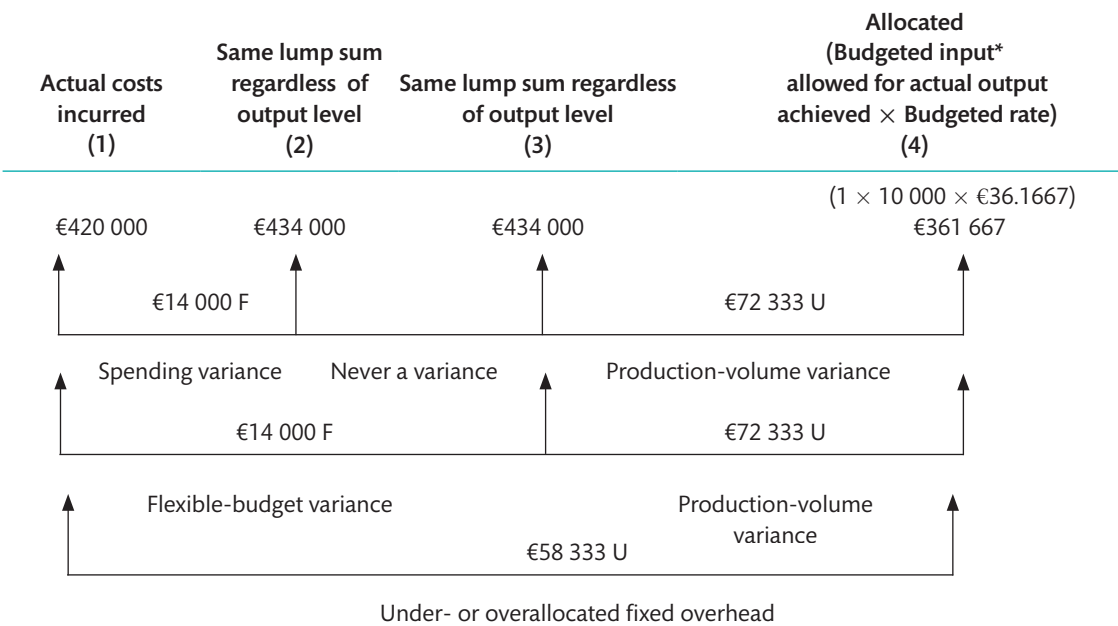
Suppose we wish to present an analysis of the April 2022 marketing overhead costs using the format shown in both panels of Exhibit 16.3. Exhibit 16.7 is the columnar presentation of variances.

Exhibit 16.7 Variance analysis: variable and fixed marketing overhead for the Sofiya Company

Panel A: Variable marketing overhead



Panel B: Fixed marketing overhead



* For overhead costs, input refers to units of cost-allocation base.
† F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

The budgeted fixed marketing overhead rate is €36.1667 (rounded) per jacket. These variances can be summarised as follows:

	Spending variance	Efficiency variance	Production-volume variance
Variable marketing overhead	€380 F	€3920 F	Never a variance
Fixed marketing overhead	€14 000 F	Never a variance	€58 333 U

We would also like to determine why variances occurred in marketing overhead costs.

- *Variable marketing overhead spending variance* (€380 F). The reasons for this variance include:
  - Lower-than-expected prices for line items in the variable marketing overhead budget, such as lower wage rates for marketing support staff, lower prices for long-distance telephone calls and lower prices for petrol used by salespeople.
  - Lower-than-expected usage of line items in the variable marketing overhead budget, such as fewer marketing support staff, fewer long-distance telephone calls and fewer litres of petrol per direct marketing labour-hour.
- *Variable marketing overhead efficiency variance* (€3920 F). The reason for this variance is more productive use of the cost-allocation base (direct marketing labour-hours); 2304 direct marketing labour-hours were used, compared with a budgeted 2500 hours. Perhaps marketing personnel classified as direct labour were more efficient, maybe because of a new incentive plan, a better training programme, or greater-than-expected continuous improvement.
- *Fixed marketing overhead spending variance* (€14 000 F). The possible reasons for this variance include:
  - Lower-than-expected prices for line items in the fixed marketing overhead budget. Perhaps a marketing department supervisor resigned and was replaced by a lower-paid supervisor, or maybe a building lease was renegotiated at a lower-than-budgeted amount.
  - Lower-than-expected usage of line items in the fixed marketing overhead budget, such as the marketing salesforce renting five rather than six cars and thus reducing the fixed monthly car rental payment.
- *Production-volume variance* (€72 333 U). This variance arises because the output level (sales) was 10 000 jackets rather than 12 000 jackets. One explanation is that marketing sales personnel were much less effective than budgeted. Other explanations include a downturn in the economy, poor-quality work at Sofiya's manufacturing plant, a new competitor entering the market, and a reduction in tariffs, resulting in the import of lower-cost jackets.

How might Sofiya plan and control its marketing overhead costs? The main approaches to planning and controlling are: variable and fixed.

- Working creatively at the design stage to avoid non-value-added activities (for example, double-checking marketing mailings).
- Working on reducing the rate per cost driver or the number of cost driver units per output. For example, marketing managers could exert tighter control over the price of department purchases.
- Monitoring variances on an ongoing basis.
- Assigning responsibilities for the marketing variance to managers who will promote the productivity of the marketing staff.

The main approaches to planning and controlling fixed marketing overhead costs are:

- Planning capacity needs in detail, including providing incentives for managers to estimate their budgeted usage in an unbiased way.
- Having marketing managers make careful, cost-conscious planning decisions on individual line items.

Day-to-day monitoring of variances is likely to play only a minor role in the control of fixed marketing overhead costs.

Activity-based costing and variance analysis

ABC systems classify costs of various activities into a cost hierarchy – output-unit level, batch level, product sustaining, and facility sustaining. The basic principles and concepts for variable and fixed manufacturing overhead costs presented earlier in the chapter can be extended to ABC systems. In this section, we illustrate variance analysis for variable and fixed batch-level set-up overhead costs. Batch-level costs are resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a group of units of product(s) or service(s) rather than to each individual unit of product or service.

We continue the Chapter 15 example of Lyco Brass Works, which manufactures Jacutaps, a line of decorative brass taps for jacuzzis. Lyco manufactures Jacutaps in batches. To manufacture a batch of Jacutaps, Lyco must set-up the machines and moulds. Set-up costs are batch-level costs because they are associated with batches rather than individual units of products. Doing set-ups is a skilled activity. Hence, a separate Set-up Department is responsible for setting up machines and moulds for different types of Jacutap. Lyco regards set-up costs as overhead costs of products.

Set-up costs consist of some costs that are variable and some costs that are fixed with respect to the number of set-up-hours. Variable costs of set-ups consist of wages paid to hourly set-up labour and indirect support labour, costs of maintenance of set-up equipment, and costs of indirect materials and energy used during set-ups. Fixed set-up costs consist of costs of engineers, supervisors and set-up equipment leases.

Information regarding Jacutaps for 2022 follows:

		Static-budget amounts	Actual amounts
1	Units of Jacutaps produced and sold	180 000	151 200
2	Batch size (units/batch)	150	140
3	Number of batches (Line 1 ÷ Line 2)	1 200	1 080
4	Set-up-hours per batch	6	6.25
5	Total set-up-hours (Line 3 × Line 4)	7 200	6 750
6	Variable overhead cost per set-up-hour	€20	€21
7	Variable set-up overhead costs (Line 5 × Line 6)	€144 000	€141 750
8	Total fixed set-up overhead costs	€216 000	€220 000

Flexible budget and variance analysis for variable set-up overhead wcosts

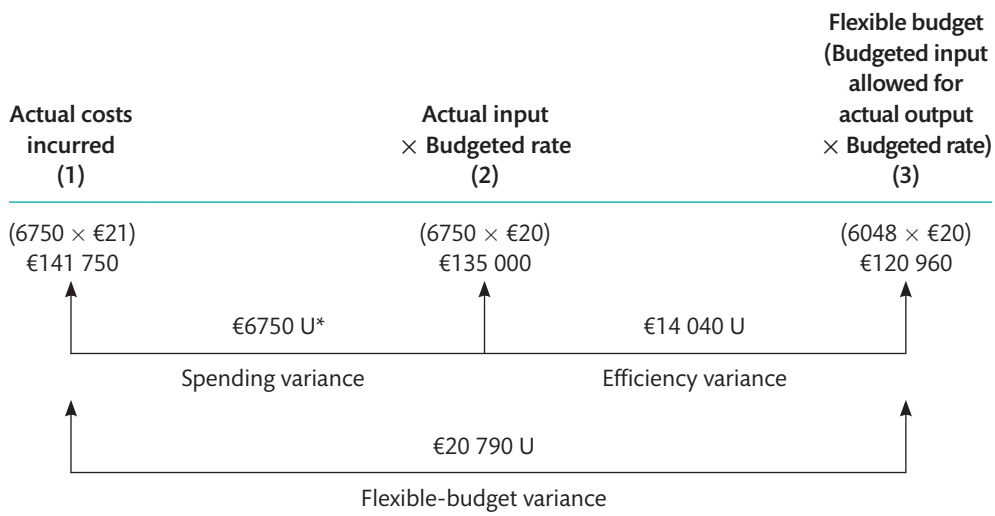
To prepare the flexible budget for variable set-up overhead costs, Lyco starts with the actual units of output produced, 151 200 units, and proceeds in the following steps.

Step 1: Using the budgeted batch size, calculate the number of batches that should have been used to produce the actual output Lyco should have manufactured the 151 200 units of output in 1008 batches (151 200 ÷ 150).

Step 2: Using budgeted set-up-hours per batch, calculate the number of set-up-hours that should have been used At the budgeted quantity of 6 set-up-hours per batch, 1008 batches should have required 6048 set-up-hours (1008 × 6).

Step 3: Using the budgeted variable cost per set-up-hour, calculate the flexible budget for variable set-up overhead costs The flexible-budget amount is 6048 set-up-hours × €20 per setup-hour = €120 960.

Exhibit 16.8 Variable set-up overhead variance analysis for Lyci Brass Works 2022



* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Exhibit 16.8 presents the variances for variable set-up overhead costs in columnar form.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Flexible-budget variance for variable set-up overhead coasts} &= \text{Actual costs} - \text{Flexible-budget costs}\\ &= 6750 \times €21 - 6048 \times €20\\ &= €141\,750 - €120\,960\\ &= €20\,790\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

The flexible-budget variance for variable set-up overhead costs can be subdivided into efficiency and spending variances.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable overhead effciency variance} &= \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual units of variable-overhead cost-allocation base used for actual output}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted units of variable-overhead cost allocation base allowed for actual output}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted variable overhead rate}\end{array}\\ &= (6750 - 6048) \times €20\\ &= 702 \times €20\\ &= €14040\ \text{U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable variable set-up overhead efficiency variance of €14 040 arises because the actual number of set-up-hours (6750) exceeds the number of set-up-hours that Lyco should have used (6048) for the number of units it produced. Two reasons for the unfavourable efficiency variance are (1) smaller actual batch sizes of 140 units instead of budgeted batch sizes of 150 units, which results in Lyco producing the 151 200 units in 1080 batches instead of 1008 batches, and (2) higher actual set-up-hours per batch of 6.25 hours instead of the budgeted set-up-hours per batch of 6 hours.

Explanations for smaller-than-budgeted batch sizes could include (1) quality problems if batch sizes exceed 140 taps, or (2) high costs of carrying inventory. Explanations for longer actual set-up-hours per batch could include: (1) problems with equipment, (2) demotivated or inexperienced employees, or (3) inappropriate set-up-time standards.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Variable overhead spending variance} &= \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual variable overhead cost per unit of cost-allocation base}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted variable overhead cost per unit of cost-allocation base}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Actual quantity of variable overhead cost-allocation base used for actual output}\end{array}\\ &= (€21 - €20) \times 6750\\ &= €1 \times 6750\\ &= €6750\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable spending variance indicates that Lyco operated in 2022 with a higher-than-budgeted variable overhead cost per set-up-hour. Two main reasons that could contribute to the unfavourable spending variance are (1) the actual prices of individual items included in variable overhead, such as set-up labour, indirect support labour, or energy, are higher than the budgeted prices, and (2) the actual quantity usage of individual items such as indirect support labour and energy increase more than the increase in set-up-hours, due perhaps to set-ups becoming more complex because of equipment problems. Thus, equipment problems could lead to an unfavourable efficiency variance because set-up-hours increase, but it could also lead to an unfavourable spending variance because each set-up-hour requires more resources from the set-up cost pool than the budgeted amounts.

Identifying the reasons for the variances is important because it helps managers plan for corrective action. We now consider fixed set-up overhead costs.

Flexible budget and variance analysis for fixed set-up overhead costs

For fixed set-up overhead costs, the flexible-budget amount equals the static-budget amount of €216 000. Why? Because there is no 'flexing' of fixed costs.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Fixed set-up overhead flexible-budget variance} &= \text{Actual costs} - \text{Flexible-budget costs}\\ &= €220\,000 - €216\,000\\ &= €4000\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

The fixed set-up overhead spending variance is the same amount as the fixed overhead flexible-budget variance (because fixed overhead costs have no efficiency variance).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Fixed set-up overhead spending variance} &= \text{Actual costs} - \text{Flexible-budget costs}\\ &= €220\,000 - €216\,000\\ &= €4000\text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

The unfavourable fixed set-up overhead spending variance could be due to lease costs of new set-up equipment, or higher salaries paid to engineers and supervisors. Lyco may have incurred these costs to alleviate some of the difficulties it was having in setting up machines.

To calculate the production-volume variance, Lyco first computes the budgeted cost-allocation rate for fixed set-up overhead costs using the four-step approach described below.

Step 1: Choose the time period used to calculate the budget Lyco uses a period of 12 months (the year 2022).

Step 2: Select the cost-allocation base to use in allocating fixed overhead costs to the cost object(s) Lyco uses budgeted set-up-hours as the cost-allocation base for fixed set-up overhead costs. Budgeted set-up-hours for 2022 per the static budget are 7200 hours.

Step 3: Identify the fixed overhead costs associated with the cost-allocation bas Lyco's fixed set-up overhead cost budget for 2022 is €216 000.

Step 4: Calculate the rate per unit of the cost-allocation base used to allocate fixed overhead costs to the cost object(s) Dividing the €216 000 from step 3 by the 7200 set-up-hours from step 2, Lyco estimates a fixed set-up overhead cost rate of €30 per set-up-hour:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Budgeted fixed set-up overhead cost rate} &= \frac{\text{Budgeted total costs in overhead cost pool}}{\text{Budgeted total quantity of cost-allocation base}}\\ &= \frac{€216\,000}{7200 \text{ set-up-hours}}\\ &= €30 \text{ per set-up-hours}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Production-volume variance for fixed set-up overhead costs} &= \text{Budgeted fixed set-up overhead costs} - \text{Fixed set-up overhead allocated using budgeted input allowed for actual output units produced}\\ &= €216\,000 - (1008 \text{ batches} \times 6 \text{ hours per batch}) \times €30\\ &= €216\,000 - (6048 \times €30) = €216\,000 - €181\,440\\ &= €34\,560 \text{ U}\end{aligned}$$

Exhibit 16.9 presents the variances for fixed set-up overhead costs in columnar form.

During 2022 Lyco planned to produce 180 000 units of Jacutaps but actually produced only 151 200 units. The unfavourable production-volume variance measures the amount of extra fixed set-up costs that Lyco incurred for set-up capacity it planned to use but did not. One interpretation is that the unfavourable €34 560 production-volume variance represents inefficient utilisation of set-up capacity. However, Lyco may have earned higher operating income by selling 151 200 units at a higher price than what it would have earned by selling 180 000 units at a lower price. The production-volume variance should be interpreted cautiously because it does not consider such information.

Exhibit 16.9 Fixed set-up overhead variance analysis: Lyco Brass Works for 2018

Actual costs incurred (1)	Flexible budget: same lump sum (as in static budget) regardless of budgeted output level (2)	Allocated (Budgeted input allowed for actual output × Budgeted rate) (3)
		(1008† batches × 6 hours/batch × €30)
		(6048 × €30)
€220 000	€216 000	€181 440
	€4000 U*	€34 560 U
	Spending variance	Production-volume variance
	€4000 U	
	Flexible-budget variance	

*U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

†1008 batches = 151 200 units ÷ 150 units per batch.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. Planning of variable-overhead costs involves undertaking only value-added variable-cost activities and then efficiently managing the cost drivers of those activities. Planning of fixed-overhead costs includes undertaking only value-added fixed-cost activities and then determining the appropriate level of those activities, given the expected demand and the level of uncertainty pertaining to that demand.
2. When the flexible budget for variable overhead is developed, a spending overhead variance and an efficiency variance can be calculated. The variable-overhead spending variance is the difference between the actual amount of variable overhead incurred and the budgeted amount that is allowed for the actual quantity of the variable-overhead allocation base used for the actual output units achieved. The variable overhead efficiency variance measures the efficiency with which the cost-allocation base is used; this is a different type of efficiency variance from that calculated in Chapter 15 for direct-cost items, such as direct materials.
3. The budgeted fixed-overhead rate is calculated by dividing the budgeted fixed-overhead costs by the budgeted quantity of allocation base units.
4. The production-volume variance measures the difference between the budgeted fixed overhead and the fixed overhead allocated on the basis of actual output produced. Usually, production-volume variances are not a good measure of the opportunity cost of unused capacity. For example, the plant capacity level may exceed the budgeted level, hence some unused capacity may not be included in the denominator. Moreover, the production-volume variance focuses only on costs. It does not take into account any price changes necessary to spur extra demand that would in turn make use of any idle capacity.

5 A 4-variance analysis presents spending and efficiency variances for variable-overhead costs and spending and production-volume variances for fixed-overhead costs. By analysing these four variances together, managers can consider possible interrelationships among them. These variances collectively measure differences between actual and budgeted amounts for output level, selling prices, variable costs and fixed costs.

6 For planning and control, fixed manufacturing overhead is a lump sum that is unaffected by the budgeted quantity of the fixed-overhead allocation base. In contrast, for stock costing the unitised fixed manufacturing overhead rate will be affected by the budgeted quantity of the fixed-overhead allocation base.

7 The separate analysis of variable- and fixed-overhead costs requires the use of separate variable- and fixed-overhead control accounts and separate variable- and fixed-overhead allocated accounts. At the end of each accounting period, any variances for variable- or fixed-overhead costs can be disposed as illustrated in Chapter 5.

8 Flexible budgeting in activity-based costing systems enables insight into why activity costs differ from those budgeted.

Reference and further reading

Gapper, J. (9 May 2018) Memo from Amazon: tell a good story (https://www.ft.com/content/386e57b2-52a9-11e8-b3ee-41e0209208ec)

CHAPTER 16

Assessment material

Review questions

16.1 What are the steps in planning variable-overhead costs?

16.2 How does the planning of fixed-overhead costs differ from the planning of variable-overhead costs?

16.3 What are the steps in developing a budgeted variable-overhead cost rate?

16.4 Budgeting for variable manufacturing overhead requires a knowledge of cost drivers. Name three possible cost drivers.

16.5 Both financial and non-financial measures are used to control variable manufacturing overhead. Give two examples of each type of measure.

16.6 Assume variable manufacturing overhead is allocated using machine-hours. Give three possible reasons for a €25 000 favourable variable-overhead efficiency variance.

16.7 Describe the difference between a direct materials efficiency variance and a variable manufacturing overhead efficiency variance.

16.8 Why is the flexible-budget variance the same amount as the spending variance for fixed manufacturing overhead?

16.9 Explain how 4-variance analysis differs from 1-, 2- and 3-variance analyses.

16.10 The 4-variance analysis format shows 'never a variance' for two areas. Which two areas? Why?

Exercises

Basic level

***16.11 Variable manufacturing overhead, variance analysis** (20 minutes)

Lavertezzo Srl is a manufacturer of designer suits. The cost of each suit is the sum of three variable costs (direct material costs, direct manufacturing labour costs and manufacturing overhead costs) and one fixed-cost category (manufacturing overhead costs). Variable manufacturing overhead cost is allocated to each suit on the basis of budgeted direct manufacturing labour-hours per suit. For June 2022, each suit is budgeted to take 4 labour-hours. Budgeted variable manufacturing overhead cost per labour-hour is SFr 12. The budgeted number of suits to be manufactured in June 2022 is 1040.

Actual variable manufacturing overhead costs in June 2022 were SFr 52 164 for 1080 suits started and completed. There was no opening or closing stock of suits. Actual direct manufacturing labour-hours for June were 4536.

Required

1 Calculate the static-budget variance, the flexible-budget variance and the sales-volume variance for variable manufacturing overhead.

2 Comment on the results.

Intermediate level

16.12 Fixed manufacturing overhead, variance analysis (continuation of Exercise 16.11) (20 minutes)

Lavertezzo allocates fixed manufacturing overhead to each suit using budgeted direct manufacturing labour-hours per suit. Data pertaining to fixed manufacturing overhead costs for June 2022 are budgeted, SFr 62 400, and actual, SFr 63 916.

Required

1 Calculate the spending variance and the flexible-budget variance for fixed manufacturing overhead. Comment on these results.

2 Calculate the production-volume variance for June 2022. What inferences can Lavertezzo draw from this variance?

16.13 Comprehensive review of Chapters 15 and 16, static budget (15 minutes)

L'Evénement du Dimanche budgets to produce 300 000 copies of its monthly newspaper for August 2022. It is budgeted to run 15 000 000 print pages in August with 50 print pages per newspaper. Actual production in August 2022 was 320 000 copies with 17 280 000 print pages run. Each paper was only 50 print pages, but quality problems with paper led to many pages being unusable.

Variable costs comprise direct materials, direct labour, and variable indirect costs. Variable and fixed indirect costs are allocated to each copy on the basis of print pages. The driver for all variable costs is the number of print pages. Data pertaining to August 2022 are:

	Budgeted	Actual
Direct materials	SFr 180 000	SFr 224 640
Direct labour costs	45 000	50 112
Variable indirect costs	60 000	63 936
Fixed indirect costs	90 000	97 000

Data pertaining to revenues for *L'Evénement du Dimanche* in August 2022 are:

	Budgeted	Actual
Circulation revenue	SFr 140 000	SFr 154 000
Advertising revenue	360 000	394 600

L'Evénement du Dimanche sells for SFr 0.50 per copy in 2022. No change from this budgeted price of SFr 0.50 per copy occurred in August 2022. The actual direct labour rate in August 2022 was SFr 29.00 per hour. Actual and budgeted pages produced per direct labour-hour in August 2022 were 10 000 print pages. Copies produced but not sold have no value. Advertising revenue covers payments from all advertising sources.

Required

1 Present a static-budget variance (Level 1) report for *L'Evénement du Dimanche*.

2 Comment on the results in requirement 1.

16.14 Engineered and discretionary overhead costs (20 minutes)

Willem Nijmegen manages the warehouse of Stientje NV, a mail-order firm. Nijmegen is concerned about controlling the fixed costs of the 20 workers who collect merchandise in the warehouse and bring it to the area where orders are assembled for shipment. Each employee works 180 hours per month at a budgeted cost of €15 per hour. Studies show that it takes an average of 12 minutes for a worker to locate an article of merchandise and move it to the order assembly area, and that the average order is for two different articles. In August, Stientje processed 8500 orders. Actual costs were €56 000.

Required

1 Calculate the spending and production-volume variances for Stientje using an engineered overhead cost approach.

2 Calculate the spending and production-volume variances for Stientje using a discretionary overhead cost approach.

3 Comment on the differences in the approaches to controlling costs under requirements 1 and 2.

16.15 Standard Costing (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005) (40 minutes)

Murgatroyd Ltd, which manufactures a single product, uses standard absorption costing. A summary of the standard product cost is as follows:

	£ per unit
Direct materials	15
Direct labour	20
Fixed overheads	12

Budgeted and actual production for last month were 10 000 units and 9000 units respectively. The actual costs incurred were:

	£
Direct materials	138 000
Direct labour	178 000
Fixed overheads	103 000

Required

1 Prepare a statement that reconciles the standard cost of actual production with its actual cost for last month and highlights the total variance for each of the three elements of cost.

2 Last month 24 000 litres of direct material were purchased and used by the company. The standard allows for 2.5 litres of the material, at £6 per litre, to be used in each unit of product. Provide an appropriate breakdown of the total direct materials cost variance included in your statement in 1.

3 Explain who in the company should be involved in setting:

a the standard price; and
b the standard quantity for direct materials.

16.16 Variance calculations (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004) (25 minutes)

Coledale Ltd manufactures and sells product CC. The company operates a standard marginal costing system. The standard cost card for CC includes the following:

	£ per unit
Direct material	20
Direct labour (6 hours at £7.50 per hour)	45
Variable production overheads	27
	92

The budgeted and actual activity levels for the last quarter were as follows:

	Budget units	Actual units
Sales	20 000	19 000
Production	20 000	21 000

The actual costs incurred last quarter were:

	£
Direct material	417 900
Direct labour (124 950 hours)	949 620
Variable production overheads	565 740

Required

1 Calculate the *total* variances for direct material, direct labour and variable production overheads.

2 Provide an appropriate breakdown of the total variance for direct labour calculated in 1.

3 Suggest TWO possible causes for EACH variance calculated in 2.

16.17 Cost behaviour issues (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004) (25 minutes)

Braithwaite Ltd manufactures and sells a single product. The following data have been extracted from the current year's budget:

Contribution per unit	£8
Total weekly fixed costs	£10 000
Weekly profit	£22 000
Contribution to sales ratio	40%

The company's production capacity is not being fully utilised in the current year and three possible strategies are under consideration. Each strategy involves reducing the unit selling price on all units sold with a consequential effect on the budgeted volume of sales. Details of each strategy are as follows:

Strategy	Reduction in unit weekly selling price %	Expected increase in sales volume over budget %
A	2	10
B	5	18
C	7	25

The company does not hold stocks of finished goods.

Required

1 Calculate for the current year:

a the selling price per unit for the product; and
b the weekly sales (in units).

2 Determine, with supporting calculations, which one of the three strategies should be adopted by the company in order to maximise weekly profits.

3 Briefly explain the practical problems that a management accountant might encounter in separating costs into their fixed and variable components.

16.18 Variance calculation (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006) (20 minutes)

PP Ltd operates a standard absorption costing system. The following information has been extracted from the standard cost card for one of its products:

Budgeted production	1500 units	
Direct material cost:	7 kg × £4.10	£28.70 per unit

Actual results for the period were as follows:

Production	1600 units
Direct material (purchased and used):	12 000 kg × £52 200

It has subsequently been noted that due to a change in economic conditions the best price that the material could have been purchased for was £4.50 per kg during the period.

Required

1 Calculate the material price planning variance.

2 Calculate the operational material usage variance.

Advanced level

16.19 Manufacturing overhead, variance analysis (30–40 minutes)

Mondragon SA assembles its CardioX product at its Toledo plant. Manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed) is allocated to each CardioX unit using budgeted assembly-time hours. Budgeted assembly time per CardioX product is 2 hours. The budgeted variable manufacturing overhead cost per assembly-time hour is €40. The budgeted number of CardioX units to be assembled in March 2022 is 8000. Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead costs are €480 000.

Actual variable manufacturing overhead costs for March 2022 were €610 500 for 7400 units actually assembled. Actual assembly-time hours were 16 280. Actual fixed manufacturing overhead costs were €503 420.

Required

1 Conduct a 4-variance analysis (Exhibit 16.3) for Mondragon's Toledo plant.

2 Comment on the results in requirement 1.

3 How does the planning and control of variable manufacturing overhead costs differ from that of fixed manufacturing overhead costs?

16.20 Spending and efficiency overhead variances, service sector (20–25 minutes)

Danskmat AS operates a home meal delivery service. It has agreements with 20 restaurants to pick up and deliver meals to customers who phone or fax in orders. Danskmat is currently examining its overhead costs for May 2022.

Variable-overhead costs for May 2022 were budgeted at DKK 20 per hour of home delivery time. Fixed-overhead costs were budgeted at DKK 240 000. The budgeted number of home deliveries in May 2022 was 8000. Delivery time, the allocation base for variable- and fixed-overhead costs, is budgeted to be 0.80 hour per delivery.

Actual results for May 2022 were:

Variable overhead	DKK 141 740
Fixed overhead	DKK 276 000
Number of home deliveries	7 460
Hours of delivery time	5 595

Customers are charged DKK 120 per delivery. The delivery driver is paid DKK 70 per delivery. Danskmat receives a 10% commission on the meal costs that the restaurants charge the customers who use Danskmat.

Required

1. Calculate spending and efficiency variances for Danskmat's variable and fixed overhead in May 2022. Comment on the results.
2. How might Danskmat manage its variable-overhead costs differently from the way it manages its fixed-overhead costs?

16.21 Total overhead, 3-variance analysis (35–50 minutes)

The Olsson-Langkilde Air Force Base has an extensive repair facility for jet engines. It developed standard costing and flexible budgets to account for this activity. Budgeted variable overhead at a level of 8000 standard monthly direct labour-hours was SEK 64 000; budgeted total overhead at 10 000 standard direct labour-hours was SEK 197 600. The standard cost allocated to repair output included a total overhead rate of 120% of standard direct labour cost.

Total overhead incurred for October was SEK 249 000. Direct labour costs incurred were SEK 202 440. The direct labour price variance was SEK 9640 U. The direct labour flexible-budget variance was SEK 14 440 U. The standard labour price was SEK 16 per hour. The production-volume variance was SEK 14 000 F.

Required

1. Calculate the direct labour efficiency variance and the spending, efficiency and production-volume variances for overhead. Also, calculate the denominator level.
2. Describe how individual variable manufacturing overhead items are controlled from day to day. Also, describe how individual fixed manufacturing overhead items are controlled.

16.22 Comprehensive review of Chapters 15 and 16, flexible budget (continuation of Exercise 16.13) (40 minutes)

Required

1. Prepare a comprehensive set of variances for each of the four categories of cost of *L'Evénement du Dimanche*.
2. Comment on the results in requirement 1. What extra insights are available with a flexible-budget analysis over that of a static-budget analysis?

16.23 Flexible budgets, 4-variance analysis (CMA, adapted) (15–25 minutes)

Nolton-Ragnvald AS uses a standard costing system. It allocates manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed) to products on the basis of standard direct manufacturing labour-hours (DLH). Nolton develops its manufacturing overhead rate from the current annual budget. The manufacturing overhead budget for 2022 is based on budgeted output of 720 000 units requiring 3 600 000 direct manufacturing labour-hours. The company is able to schedule production uniformly throughout the year.

A total of 66 000 output units requiring 315 000 direct labour-hours was produced during May 2022. Manufacturing overhead (MOH) costs incurred for May amounted to NOK 375 000. The actual costs as compared with the annual budget and 1/12 of the annual budget are shown below.

Annual manufacturing overhead budget 2022

	Total amount	Per output unit	Per DLH input unit	Monthly MOH budget, May 2022	Actual MOH costs for May 2022
Variable MOH					
Indirect mfg labour	NOK 900 000	NOK 1.25	NOK 0.25	NOK 75 000	NOK 75 000
Supplies	1 224 000	1.70	0.34	102 000	111 000
Fixed MOH					
Supervision	648 000	0.90	0.18	54 000	51 000
Utilities	540 000	0.75	0.15	45 000	54 000
Depreciation	1 008 000	1.40	0.28	84 000	84 000
Total	NOK 4 320 000	NOK 6.00	NOK 1.20	NOK 360 000	NOK 375 000

Required

Calculate the following amounts for Nolton-Ragnvald for May 2022:

1 Total manufacturing overhead costs allocated.
2 Variable manufacturing overhead spending variance.
3 Fixed manufacturing overhead spending variance.
4 Variable manufacturing overhead efficiency variance.
5 Production-volume variance.

Be sure to identify each variance as favourable (F) or unfavourable (U).

16.24 Review of Chapters 15 and 16, 3-variance analysis (CPA, adapted) (30–50 minutes)

Madetoja Oy's job-costing system has two direct-cost categories: direct materials and direct manufacturing labour. Manufacturing overhead (both variable and fixed) is allocated to products on the basis of standard direct manufacturing labour-hours (DLH). At the beginning of 2022, Madetoja adopted the following standards for its manufacturing costs:

	Input	Cost per output unit
Direct materials	3 kg at €5.00 per kg	€15.00
Direct manufacturing labour	5 hours at €15.00 per hour	75.00
Manufacturing overhead		
Variable	€6.00 per DLH	30.00
Fixed	€8.00 per DLH	40.00
Standard manufacturing cost per output unit		€160.00

The denominator level for total manufacturing overhead per month in 2022 is 40 000 direct manufacturing labour-hours. Madetoja's flexible budget for January 2022 was based on this denominator level. The records for January indicate the following:

Direct materials purchased	25 000 kg at €5.20 per kg
Direct materials used	23 100 kg
Direct manufacturing labour	40 100 hours at €14.60 per hour
Total actual manufacturing overhead (variable and fixed)	€600 000
Actual production	7800 output units

Required

1 Prepare a schedule of total standard manufacturing costs for the 7800 output units in January 2022.

2 For the month of January 2022, calculate the following variances, indicating whether each is favourable (F) or unfavourable (U):

- **a** Direct materials price variance, based on purchases
- **b** Direct materials efficiency variance
- **c** Direct manufacturing labour price variance
- **d** Direct manufacturing labour efficiency variance
- **e** Total manufacturing overhead spending variance
- **f** Variable manufacturing overhead efficiency variance
- **g** Production-volume variance. Level 2 analysis

	Actual results (1)	**Flexible-budget variance** (2) = (1) − (3)	**Flexible budget** (3)	**Sales-volume variance** (4) = (3) − (5)	**Static budget** (5)
Cost driver: Number of units manufactured	10 000	–	10 000	2000 U	12 000
Variable manufacturing overhead	€130 500		(0.40 × 10 000 × €30) €120 000		(0.40 × 12 000 × €30) €144 000
		€10 500 U		€24 000 F	
		Flexible-budget variance		Sales-volume variance	
			€13 500 F		
			Static-budget variance		

* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

CHAPTER 17

Measuring yield, mix and quantity effects

Comparing actual results with budgets can help managers evaluate operations and focus on areas that deserve more attention. Chapters 15 and 16 illustrated various uses of variance information relating to direct materials, direct manufacturing labour, direct marketing labour, manufacturing overhead and marketing overhead. While Chapters 15 and 16 focused on a single input in each cost category (for example, only one direct material), this chapter considers multiple inputs in each cost category (for example, many types of direct materials). Also, we discuss revenue and sales mix and quantity analysis for companies with multiple products.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Distinguish between variance analysis procedures where inputs cannot be substituted for one another and those where inputs can be so substituted
- Understand how direct materials yield and mix variances highlight trade-offs among material inputs
- Explain direct manufacturing labour yield and mix variances
- Describe the insight gained from dividing the sales-volume variance into the sales-mix and sales-quantity variances
- Explain how market-size and market-share variances provide different explanations for a sales-quantity variance

Input variances

Here we focus on variance analysis for inputs in manufacturing organisations. Manufacturing processes often require that a number of different direct materials and different direct manufacturing labour skills be combined to obtain a unit of finished product. In the case of some materials and labour skills, this combination must be exact. For example, the manager of an HP plant that assembles laptop computers prespecifies the make of chip to be used in each computer. Substituting an Intel chip for a TSMC chip will alter the final product. We refer to these materials as *non-substitutable* materials. In the case of other materials, a manufacturer has some leeway in combining the materials. For example, to manufacture fertilisers, Chambal Fertilisers can combine materials (for example, elemental phosphorus and acids) in varying proportions. Elemental phosphorus and acids are *substitutable* materials.

When inputs are substitutable, *mix* refers to the relative proportion or combination of the different inputs used within an input category such as direct materials or direct manufacturing labour to produce a quantity of finished output. *Yield* refers to the quantity of finished output units produced from a budgeted or standard mix of inputs within an input category. Yield and mix variances are useful when examining direct materials and direct-labour inputs. Consider, for example, the production of ice-cream. Ice-creams contain multiple material ingredients. Nut 'n Crunch ice-cream, for example, has milk, cream, cocoa, chocolate, caramel and different kinds of nuts. Managing the total quantity and mix of ingredients is essential to making high-quality ice-cream at a competitive cost. Direct materials yield and mix variances help managers to achieve these goals. Recall from Chapter 15 that a *variance* is the difference between an actual result and a budgeted amount, when that budgeted amount is a financial variable reported by the accounting system. Budgeted figures discussed in this chapter can be obtained from:

- internally generated actual costs from the most recent accounting period, sometimes adjusted for expected improvement;
- internally generated *standard* costs based on best performance standards or *currently attainable standards*;
- externally generated *target* cost numbers based on an analysis of the cost structures of the leading competitors in an industry.

Direct materials yield and mix variances

When we initially examined materials and labour variances in Chapter 15, we saw that managers sometimes make trade-offs between price and efficiency variances. For example, an orange-juice bottler may use oranges whose juice content is lower than budgeted if their price is significantly lower than the price of oranges with the budgeted juice content. The yield and mix variances calculated in this section provide additional insight into the effect that yield and mix factors have on operating income. Yield and mix variances divide the efficiency variance calculated in Chapter 15; hence, we start by reviewing efficiency and price variances.

Direct materials efficiency and price variances

Consider a specific example of multiple direct materials inputs and a single product output. Lia Ltd makes cider. To produce cider of the desired consistency, colour and taste, Lia mixes three types of apples grown in three different regions: Golden Delicious from Brittany, British Coxes from Kent, and Jonagold from Italy. Lia's production standards require 1.6 tonnes of apples to produce 1 tonne of cider, with 50% of the apples being Golden Delicious, 30%

British Coxes, and 20% Jonagold. The direct materials input standards to produce 1 tonne of cider are:

0.80 (50% of 1.6) tonne of Golden Delicious at €70 per tonne	€56.00
0.48 (30% of 1.6) tonne of British Coxes at €80 per tonne	38.40
0.32 (20% of 1.6) tonne of Jonagold at €90 per tonne	28.80
Total standard cost of 1.6 tonnes of apples	€123.20

Budgeted cost per tonne of apples is €123.20 ÷ 1.6 tonnes = €77.

Because Lia uses fresh apples to make cider, no stocks of apples are kept. Purchases are made as needed, so all price variances relate to apples purchased and used. Actual results for June 2022 show that a total of 6500 tonnes of apples were used to produce 4000 tonnes of cider:

3250 tonnes of Golden Delicious at actual cost of €70 per tonne	€227 500
2275 tonnes of British Coxes at actual cost of €82 per tonne	186 550
975 tonnes of Jonagold at actual cost of €96 per tonne	93 600
6500 tonnes of apples	507 650
Standard cost of 4000 tonnes of cider at €123.20 per tonne	492 800
Total variance to be explained	€14 850 U

Given the standard ratio of 1.6 tonnes of apples to 1 tonne of cider, 6400 tonnes of apples should be used to produce 4000 tonnes of cider. At the standard mix, the quantities of each type of apple required are:

Golden Delicious	0.50 × 6400 = 3200 tonnes
British Coxes	0.30 × 6400 = 1920 tonnes
Jonagold	0.20 × 6400 = 1280 tonnes

Exhibit 17.1 presents the familiar approach to analysing the flexible-budget direct materials variance discussed in Chapter 15. The direct materials price and efficiency variances are calculated separately for each input material and then added together. The variance analysis prompts Lia to investigate the unfavourable price and efficiency variances – why did they pay more for the apples and use greater quantities than they should have? Were the market prices of apples higher, in

Exhibit 17.1 Direct materials price and efficiency variances for Lia Ltd for June 2022

	Actual costs incurred (Actual inputs × Actual prices) (1)	**Actual inputs × Budgeted prices (2)**	**Flexible budget (Budgeted inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved × Budgeted prices) (3)**
Golden Delicious	3250 × 70 = 227 500	3250 × 70 = 227 500	3200 × 70 = 224 000
British Coxes	2275 × 82 = 186 550	2275 × 80 = 182 000	1920 × 80 = 153 600
Jonagold	975 × 96 = 93 600	975 × 96 = 87 750	1280 × 90 = 115 200
	€507 650	€497 250	€492 800
		€10 400 U*	€4450 U
		Total price variance	Total efficiency variance
		€14 850 U	
		Total flexible-budget variance	

* U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

general, or could the Purchasing Department have negotiated lower prices? Did the inefficiencies result from inferior apples or from problems in processing?

The analysis in Exhibit 17.1 may suffice when the three direct materials used are not substitutes. Managers control each individual input, and no discretion is permitted regarding the substitution of materials inputs. For example, there is often a specified mix of parts needed for the assembly of cars, radios and washing machines. A car needs both an engine and a gear box – one cannot be substituted for the other. In these cases, all deviations from the input–output relationships are due to efficient or inefficient usage of individual direct materials. Thus, the price and efficiency variances individually calculated for each material typically provide the information necessary for decisions.

The role of direct materials yield and direct materials mix variances

Managers sometimes do have discretion to substitute one material for another. For example, the manager of Lia's cider plant has some leeway in combining Golden Delicious, British Coxes and Jonagold without affecting quality. We will assume that to maintain quality, the mix percentages of each type of apple can vary only up to 5% in the standard mix. For example, the percentage of British Coxes in the mix can vary between 25% and 35% (30% ± 5%). When inputs are substitutable, direct materials efficiency improvement relative to budgeted costs can come from two sources: (1) using less input to achieve a given output, and (2) using a cheaper mix to produce a given output. The direct materials yield and mix variances divide the efficiency variance into two variances: the yield variance focusing on total inputs used and the mix variance focusing on how the inputs are combined.

Given that the budgeted input mix is unchanged, the **total direct materials yield variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted cost of direct materials based on the actual total quantity of all direct materials inputs used, and (2) the flexible-budget cost of direct materials based on the budgeted total quantity of direct materials inputs for the actual output achieved. Given that the actual total quantity of all direct materials inputs used is unchanged, the **total direct materials mix variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted cost for the actual direct materials input mix, and (2) the budgeted cost if the budgeted direct materials input mix had been unchanged.

Exhibit 17.2 presents the total direct materials yield and mix variances for Lia Ltd. We start with column 3 and work our way to column 1.

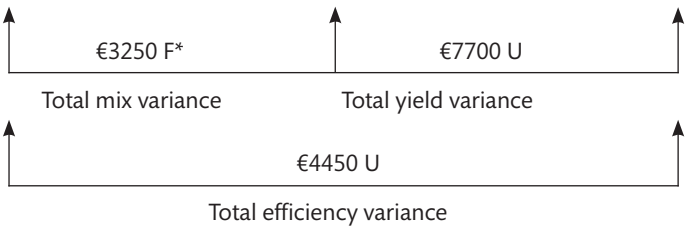
Total direct materials yield variance

Compare columns 3 and 2 of Exhibit 17.2. Column 3 calculates the flexible-budget cost based on the budgeted cost of the budgeted total quantity of all inputs used (6400 tonnes of apples) for the actual output achieved (4000 tonnes of cider) times the budgeted input mix (Golden Delicious, 50%; British Coxes, 30%; Jonagold, 20%). Column 2 also calculates costs using the budgeted input mix and the budgeted prices. The *only* difference in the two columns is that column 3 uses the *budgeted total quantity of all inputs used* (6400 tonnes), while column 2 uses the *actual total quantity of all inputs used* (6500 tonnes). Hence, the difference in costs between the two columns is the total direct materials yield variance, due solely to differences in actual and budgeted total input quantity used. The total direct materials yield variance is the sum of the direct materials yield variances for each input.

$$\text{Direct materials yield variance for each input} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual total quantity of all direct materials inputs used}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted total quantity of all direct materials inputs allowed for actual output achieved}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted direct materials input mix percentage}\end{array} \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted price of direct materials input}\end{array}$$

Exhibit 17.2 Total direct materials yield and mix variances for Lia Ltd for June 2022

	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Actual input mix) × Budgeted prices (1)	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted total quantity of all inputs allowed for actual output achieved × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (3)
Golden Delicious	6500 × 0.50 × 70 = 227 500	6500 × 0.50 × 70 = 227 500	6400 × 0.50 × 70 = 224 000
British Coxes	6500 × 0.35 × 80 = 182 000	6500 × 0.30 × 80 = 156 000	6400 × 0.30 × 80 = 153 600
Jonagold	6500 × 0.15 × 90 = 87 750	6500 × 0.20 × 90 = 117 000	6400 × 0.20 × 90 = 115 200
	€497 250	€500 500	€492 800



The direct materials yield variances are:

Golden Delicious	(6500 − 6400) × 0.50 × €70 = 100 × 0.50 × €70 =	€3500 U
British Coxes	(6500 − 6400) × 0.30 × €80 = 100 × 0.30 × €80 =	2400 U
Jonagold	(6500 − 6400) × 0.20 × €90 = 100 × 0.20 × €90 =	1800 U
Total direct materials yield variance		€7700 U

The total direct materials yield variance is unfavourable because Lia uses 6500 tonnes of apples rather than the 6400 tonnes that it should have used to produce 4000 tonnes of cider. Holding constant the budgeted mix and budgeted prices of apples, the budgeted cost per tonne of apples in the budgeted mix is €77 per tonne. The unfavourable yield variance represents the budgeted cost of using 100 more tonnes of apples (6500 − 6400) × €77 = €7700 U.

Total direct materials mix variance

Compare columns 2 and 1 in Exhibit 17.2. Both columns calculate cost using the actual total quantity of all inputs used (6500 tonnes) and budgeted input prices (Golden Delicious, €70; British Coxes, €80; and Jonagold, €90). The only difference is that column 2 uses *budgeted input mix* (Golden Delicious, 50%; British Coxes, 30%; and Jonagold, 20%), and column 1 uses *actual input mix* (Golden Delicious, 50%; British Coxes, 35%; Jonagold, 15%). The difference in costs between the two columns is the total direct materials mix variance, attributable solely to differences in the mix of inputs used. The total direct materials mix variance is the sum of the direct materials mix variances for each input.

$$\text{Direct materials mix variance for each input} = \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Actual direct materials input mix percentage} \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{Budgeted direct materials input mix percentage} \end{array} \right) \times \begin{array}{c} \text{Actual total quantity of all direct materials inputs used} \end{array} \times \begin{array}{c} \text{Budgeted price of direct materials input} \end{array}$$

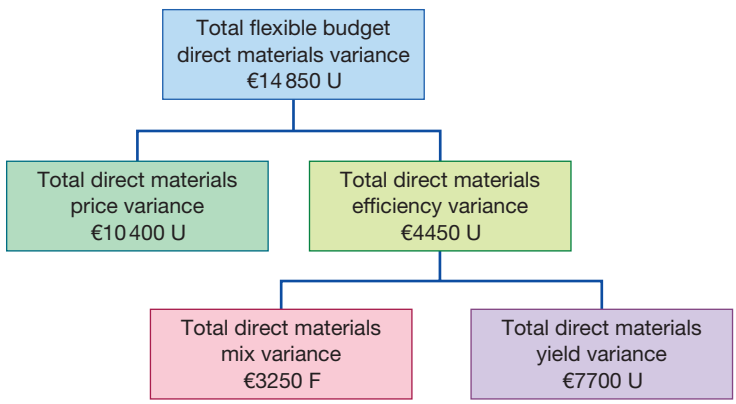
The direct materials mix variances are:

Golden Delicious	$(0.50 - 0.50) \times 6500 \times €70 = 0 \times 6500 \times €70$	= €0
British Coxes	$(0.35 - 0.30) \times 6500 \times €80 = 0.05 \times 6500 \times €80$	= 26 000 U
Jonagold	$(0.15 - 0.20) \times 6500 \times €90 = (-0.05) \times 6500 \times €90$	= 29 250 F
Total direct materials mix variance		= €3 250 F

The favourable total direct materials mix variance (3250 F) occurs because the average budgeted cost per tonne of apples in the actual mix [€497 250 (Exhibit 17.2, column 1) ÷ 6500 = €76.50] is less than the average budgeted cost per tonne of apples in the budgeted mix [€500 500 (Exhibit 17.2, column 2) ÷ 6500 = €77]. The favourable mix variance represents the difference in cost of the budgeted mix and the actual mix for the 6500 tonnes of apples used (€76.50 − €77) × 6500 = €3250F. The total direct materials mix variance helps managers understand how total budgeted costs change as the actual direct materials mix varies from the budgeted mix. The mix variance of an individual input is favourable (unfavourable) if Lia uses a smaller (greater) percentage of that input in its actual mix relative to the budgeted mix. The individual variances help managers identify the reasons why the total mix variance is favourable – substituting some lower (budgeted) priced British Coxes (€80 per tonne) in place of the more costly Jonagold (€90 per tonne) while using the budgeted mix of Golden Delicious reduces costs.

How should we interpret the analysis in Exhibit 17.2? The total direct materials yield variance is €7700 U, and the total direct materials mix variance is €3250 F. There was a trade-off among ingredients (perhaps because of the high cost or lack of availability of Jonagold) that reduced the (budgeted) cost of the mix of inputs used but hurt yield. That is, the benefit of the cheaper mix was more than offset by the lower yield. This analysis helps Lia's managers to understand that using the cheaper mix of inputs in the future will only be worthwhile if they can improve yield. Managers would need to understand the reasons for the poor yield – for example, did the poor yield result from inadequate testing of the apples received, from lax quality control during processing, or simply from using a cheaper mix? Identifying these reasons enables managers to find ways to overcome these problems and improve performance.

The direct materials variances calculated in Exhibits 17.1 and 17.2 can be summarised as follows:



Direct manufacturing labour yield and mix variances

Direct manufacturing labour variances are calculated in much the same way as direct materials variances. We again use the Lia Ltd example to illustrate direct manufacturing labour price, efficiency, yield and mix variances. Lia has three grades of direct manufacturing labour: Grade 1, Grade 2 and Grade 3. Budgeted costs for June 2022 follow:

3000	hours of Grade 3 labour at €24 per hour	€72 000
2100	hours of Grade 2 labour at €16 per hour	33 600
900	hours of Grade 1 labour at €12 per hour	10 800
6000	total hours	€116 400

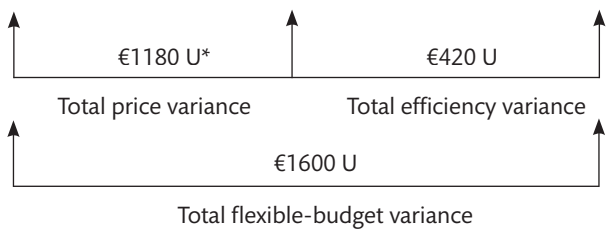
Actual results for June 2022 show that the work was completed in 5900 hours:

3245	hours of Grade 3 labour at €23 per hour	€74 635
1770	hours of Grade 2 labour at €18 per hour	31 860
885	hours of Grade 1 labour at €13 per hour	11 505
5900	total hours	118 000
Budgeted costs		116 400
Total direct manufacturing labour variance to be explained		€1600 U

Exhibit 17.3 presents the direct manufacturing labour price and efficiency variances for each employee category and in total. The total price variance is unfavourable (€1180 U) because of the higher wage rates paid to Grade 1 and Grade 2 labour. Managers would want to understand why the wage rates were higher – for example, did the higher rate result from a general shortage of Grade 2

Exhibit 17.3 Direct manufacturing labour price and efficiency variances for Lia Ltd for June 2022

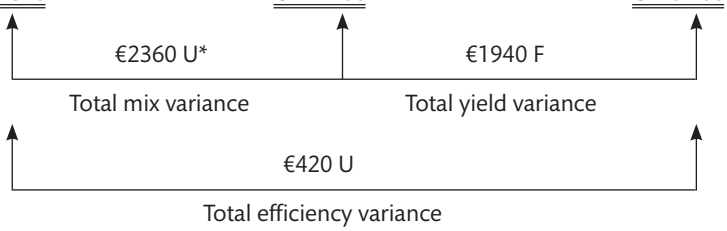
	Actual costs incurred (Actual inputs × Actual prices) (1)	Actual inputs × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved × Budgeted prices) (3)
Grade 3 labour	3245 × 23 = 74 635	3245 × 24 = 77 880	3000 × 24 = 72 000
Grade 2 labour	1770 × 18 = 31 860	1770 × 16 = 28 320	2100 × 16 = 33 600
Grade 1 labour	885 × 13 = 11 505	885 × 12 = 10 620	900 × 12 = 10 800
	€118 000	€116 820	€116 400



* U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Exhibit 17.4 Direct manufacturing labour yield and mix variances for Lia Ltd for June 2022

	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Actual input mix) × Budgeted prices (1)	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted total quantity of all inputs allowed for actual output achieved × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (3)
Grade 3 labour	5900 * 0.55 * €24 = €77 880	5900 * 0.50 * €24 = €70 800	6000 * 0.50 * €24 = €72 000
Grade 2 labour	5900 * 0.30 * €16 = 28 320	5900 * 0.35 * €16 = 33 040	6000 * 0.35 * €16 = 33 600
Grade 1 labour	5900 * 0.15 * €12 = 10 620	5900 * 0.15 * €12 = 10 620	6000 * 0.15 * €12 = 10 800
	€116 820	€114 460	€116 400



* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

labour or from factors specific to Lia? The total efficiency variance is unfavourable (€420 U), primarily because of the greater number of hours worked by Grade 3 labour. The budgeted costs of these hours were only partially offset by the fewer hours worked by Grade 1 and Grade 2 labour and the fewer total hours worked. Lia's managers would want to explore the reasons for the unfavourable efficiency variance – for example, was it caused by absenteeism, labour turnover, processing problems or the change in the mix of workers? To further understand this last issue, the unfavourable total direct manufacturing labour efficiency variance of €420 may be divided into yield and mix variances in the same way that we divided the direct materials efficiency variance in the preceding section.

Keeping the budgeted input mix unchanged, the **total direct manufacturing labour yield variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted cost of direct manufacturing labour based on the actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour used, and (2) the flexible-budget cost of direct manufacturing labour based on the budgeted total quantity of direct manufacturing labour for the actual output achieved. Taking the actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour used as given, **the total direct manufacturing labour mix variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted cost of inputs in the actual mix of direct manufacturing labour, and (2) the budgeted cost of inputs in the budgeted mix of direct manufacturing labour.

Exhibit 17.4 presents the computations for the *total direct manufacturing labour yield* and *mix variances* for Lia Ltd in columnar format. These variances can also be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Direct manufacturing labour yield vairance for each input} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour inputs used}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted quantity of all direct manufacturing labour inputs allowed for actual output achieved}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted direct manufacturing labour input mix percentage}\end{array} \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted price of direct manufacturing labour input}\end{array}$$

The direct manufacturing labour yield variances are:

Grade 3 labour	$(5900 - 6000) \times 0.50 \times €24 = (-100) \times 0.50 \times €24$	€1200 F
Grade 2 labour	$(5900 - 6000) \times 0.35 \times €16 = (-100) \times 0.35 \times €16$	560 F
Grade 1 labour	$(5900 - 6000) \times 0.15 \times €12 = (-100) \times 0.15 \times €12$	180 F
Total direct manufacturing labour yield variance		€1940 F

$$\text{Direct manufacturing labour mix vairance for each input} = \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Actual manufacturing labour input mix percentage} \\ - \\ \text{Budgeted direct manufacturing labour input mix percentage} \end{array} \right) \times \text{Actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour inputs used} \times \text{Budgeted price of direct manufacturing labour input}$$

The direct manufacturing labour mix variances are:

Grade 3 labour	$(0.55 - 0.50) \times 5900 \times €24 = 0.05 \times 5900 \times €24$	= €7080 U
Grade 2 labour	$(0.30 - 0.35) \times 5900 \times €16 = (-0.05) \times 5900 \times €16$	= 4720 F
Grade 1 labour	$(0.15 - 0.15) \times 5900 \times €12 = 0 \times 5900 \times €12$	= 0
Total direct manufacturing labour mix variance		€2360 U

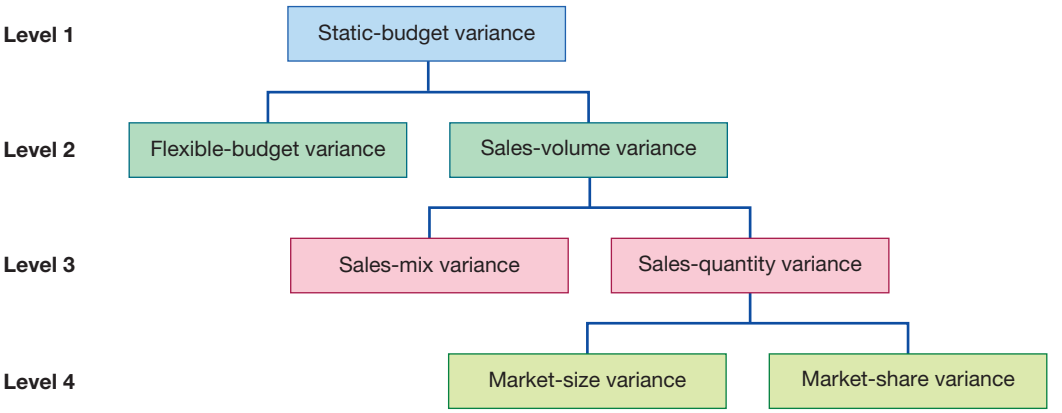
The unfavourable mix variance occurs because a greater proportion of work was done by the more costly Grade 3 labour. Grade 3 labour accounted for 55% of the total actual direct manufacturing labour-hours but had been budgeted to handle only 50%. Grade 2 labour did a smaller proportion of the work. Lia may have altered the mix of workers for reasons of availability or to achieve greater efficiency despite the higher costs. As a result of the change in mix, the average budgeted cost per direct manufacturing labour-hour in the actual mix [€116 820 (Exhibit 17.4, column 1) ÷ 5900 = €19.80] was higher than the average budgeted cost per direct manufacturing labour-hour in the budgeted mix [€114 460 (Exhibit 17.4, column 2) ÷ 5900 = €19.40]. The mix variance helps managers understand how budgeted costs change as the actual mix varies from the budgeted mix. The favourable yield variance indicates that the work was completed faster – in 5900 actual total hours compared with 6000 budgeted total hours. Perhaps this result is due to the extra time spent by Grade 3 labour. But did the mix-versus-yield trade-off reduce cost? No, because the overall direct manufacturing labour efficiency variance is unfavourable. The analysis helps managers understand that shifting to a higher skills mix will only be worthwhile if the total time taken can be further reduced. Managers would then have to consider ways to achieve this goal.

Revenue and sales variances

We now examine how variances that use revenue information as a key output can be calculated. Special attention is paid to companies with multiple products or services.

The revenue variances we discuss are most frequently called sales variances, in large part because sales are the single largest component of revenue for many companies. For example, sales of new or used vehicles in a motorcar dealership are typically a larger source of revenues than are after-sales revenue items such as servicing and repairs.

The levels approach introduced in Chapter 15 shows how the variances we now discuss are linked to each other:



We discuss how each variance can be calculated for the revenues of Global Air, which has multiple classes of air service on its flights. The variances in this section could be calculated for any line item in the income statement. For exposition purposes, we calculate variances for the revenue line item of Global Air. Airlines face many challenges in increasing their revenues, such as the level of price discounting and the special airline club promotions to use. The variances discussed in the next section help managers to evaluate how well budgeted revenue targets are met. A second reason for Global Air's emphasis on revenues (as opposed to, say, contribution margin per passenger) is that variable costs per passenger are minimal. A third reason is that many marketing or sales divisions are run as revenue centres.

Variance analysis for multiple products

Global Air operates flights between New York and London. It has three classes of service: first class, business class and economy class. It is currently examining results for August 2022. Unit volume is measured in terms of a round-trip ticket (one-way tickets are converted into equivalent round-trip tickets). Budgeted and actual results for August 2022 are as follows:

	Budget for August 2022				Actual for August 2022			
	Selling price per unit	Unit volume	Sales mix	Revenue	Selling price per unit	Unit volume	Sales mix	Revenue
First class	€3200	1 000	5%	€3 200 000	€2600	2 400	10%	€6 240 000
Business class	2400	3 000	15%	7 200 000	1600	6 000	25%	9 600 000
Economy class	900	16 000	80%	14 400 000	700	15 600	65%	10 920 000
Total		20 000	100%	€24 800 000		24 000	100%	€26 760 000

In July 2022, Pan Air, a major competitor of Global, went bankrupt. It was acquired by Easy Travel, a low-cost economy travel operator. Pan Air had a sizeable presence in the first- and business-class markets. Easy Travel immediately offered deep price discounts for all classes of travel. Its reputation among first-class and business-class travellers, however, was poor. Global Air dropped all its fares in late July (after its budget was prepared) to meet the new competition.

Static-budget variance

The *static-budget variance* for revenues is the difference between the actual revenues and the budgeted revenues from the static budget.

$$\text{Static-budget variance of revenues} = \text{Actual results} - \text{Static-budget amount}$$

First class	=	€6 240 000	−	€3 200 000	=	€3 040 000 F
Business class	=	€9 600 000	−	€7 200 000	=	€2 400 000 F
Economy class	=	€10 920 000	−	€14 400 000	=	€3 480 000 U
Total						€1 960 000 F

Global Air has favourable variances for first class and business class and an unfavourable variance for economy class. More information about the €1 960 000 favourable total variance can be gained by examining the flexible-budget variance and the sales-volume variance.

Flexible-budget and sales-volume variances

The *flexible-budget variance* for revenues is the difference between the actual revenues and the flexible-budget amount for the actual unit volume of sales.

$$\text{Flexible-budget variance of revenues} = \text{Actual results} - \text{Flexible-budget amount}$$

First class	=	€6 240 000	−	(€3200 × 2400)			
	=	€6 240 000	−	€7 680 000	=	€1 440 000	U
Business class	=	€9 600 000	−	(€2400 × 6000)			
	=	€9 600 000	−	€14 400 000	=	€4 800 000	U
Economy class	=	€10 920 000	−	(€900 × 15 600)			
	=	€10 920 000	−	€14 040 000	=	€3 120 000	U
Total						€9 360 000	U

The €9 360 000 unfavourable total variance arises because Global Air sizably reduced the price for each class of travel relative to the budgeted price.

The *sales-volume variance* shows the effect of the difference between the actual and budgeted quantity of the variable used to 'flex' the flexible budget. For the revenues of Global Air, this variable is units sold. This variance can be calculated for each class of service of Global Air:

$$\text{Sales-volume variance of revenues} = \left(\text{Actual sales quantity in units} - \text{Budgeted sales quantity in units}\right) \times \text{Budgeted selling price per unit}$$

First class	=	(2400 − 1000)	×	€3200	=	€4 480 000	F
Business class	=	(6000 − 3000)	×	€2400	=	€7 200 000	F
Economy class	=	(15 600 − 16 000)	×	€900	=	€360 000	U
Total						€11 320 000	F

While the total sales-volume variance for revenues is €11 320 000 favourable, there is a combination of favourable variances for first class and business class and an unfavourable variance for economy class. Managers can gain additional insight into sales-volume changes by separating the sales-volume variance into a sales-quantity variance and a sales-mix variance.

Sales-quantity variance

The **sales-quantity variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted amount based on actual quantities sold of all products and the budgeted mix, and (2) the amount in the static budget (which is based on the budgeted quantities to be sold of all products and the budgeted mix). The formula for computing the sales-quantity variance in terms of revenues and the amounts for Global Air is:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Sales-quantity}\\ \text{variance of}\\ \text{revenues}\end{array} = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual units}\\ \text{of all products}\\ \text{sold}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted units}\\ \text{of all products}\\ \text{sold}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{sales-mix}\\ \text{percentage}\end{array} \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{selling price}\\ \text{per unit}\end{array}$$

First class	=	(24 000 − 20 000)	×	0.05 × €3200	=	€640 000 F
Business class	=	(24 000 − 20 000)	×	0.15 × €2400	=	€1 440 000 F
Economy class	=	(24 000 − 20 000)	×	0.80 × €900	=	€2 880 000 F
Total						€4 960 000 F

This variance is favourable when the actual units of product sold exceed the budgeted units of product sold. Global Air sold 4000 more round-trip tickets than was budgeted. Hence, its sales-quantity variance for revenues is favourable.

Sales-mix variance

The **sales-mix variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted amount for the actual sales mix, and (2) the budgeted amount if the budgeted sales mix had been unchanged.

The formula for computing the sales-mix variance in terms of revenue and the amounts for Global Air is:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Sales-mix}\\ \text{variance of}\\ \text{revenues}\end{array} = \begin{array}{c}\text{Actual units}\\ \text{of all}\\ \text{products sold}\end{array} \times \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual}\\ \text{sales-mix}\\ \text{percentage}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{sales-mix}\\ \text{percentage}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted}\\ \text{selling price}\\ \text{per unit}\end{array}$$

First class	=	24 000 × (0.10 − 0.05) × €3200	=	€3 840 000 F
Business class	=	24 000 × (0.25 − 0.15) × €2400	=	€5 760 000 F
Economy class	=	24 000 × (0.65 − 0.80) × €900	=	€3 240 000 U
Total				€6 360 000 F

A favourable sales-mix variance arises at the individual product level when the actual sales-mix percentage exceeds the budgeted sales-mix percentage. This situation applies to both first class (10% actual versus 5% budgeted) and business class (25% actual versus 15% budgeted). In contrast, economy class has an unfavourable variance because the actual sales-mix percentage (65%) is less than the budgeted sales-mix percentage (80%).

The concept behind the sales-mix variance for revenues of €6 360 000 F is best explained in terms of the budgeted selling prices per composite unit of the sales mix. A **composite product unit** is a hypothetical unit with weights related to the individual products of the company. The

weights for the revenue-based variances are calculated as follows in column 3 for the actual mix and column 5 for the budgeted mix:

	Budgeted selling price per unit (1)	Actual sales-mix percentage (2)	Budgeted selling price per composite unit for actual mix (3) = (1) × (2)	Budgeted sales-mix percentage (4)	Budgeted selling price per composite unit for budgeted mix (5) = (1) × (4)
First class	€3200	0.10	€320	0.05	€160
Business class	2400	0.25	600	0.15	360
Economy class	900	0.65	585	0.80	720
Total			€1505		€1240

The actual sales mix has a budgeted selling price per composite unit of €1505 (where the composite unit comprises 0.10 of first class, 0.25 of business class and 0.65 of economy class). The budgeted sales mix had a budgeted selling price per composite unit of €1240 (where the composite unit comprises 0.05 of first, 0.15 of business and 0.80 of economy). Thus, the effect of the 2022 sales-mix shift for Global Air is to increase the budgeted selling price per composite unit by €265 (€1505 − €1240). For the 24 000 units actually sold, this increase translates to a favourable sales-mix variance of €6 million.

Exhibit 17.5 shows how both the sales-mix and sales-quantity variances can be calculated using the columnar approach introduced in Chapter 15. Exhibit 17.5 highlights the revenue effect of the shift towards a mix with higher revenue generating units (first class and business class) and the revenue effect of the 20% increase in total units sold (actual of 24 000 round-trips versus 20 000 budgeted).

Market-size and market-share variances

Sales depend on overall market demand as well as the company's ability to maintain its share of the market. Assume that the budgeted unit sales of 20 000 units (round-trip tickets) came from a management estimate of a 50% market share on the New York to London route in August 2022 and an industry sales forecast by the Travel Information Group (TIG) of 40 000 round-trip tickets for the route. In September, TIG reported the following:

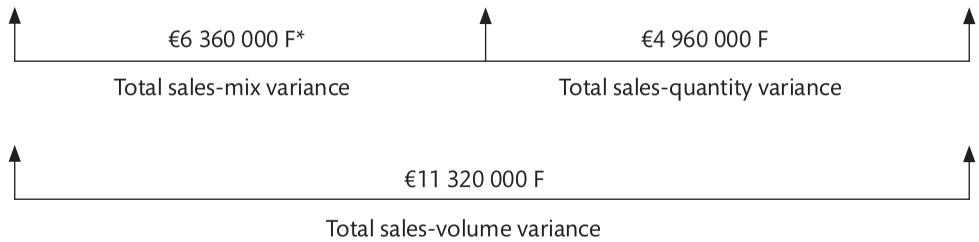
	Budgeted industry volume for August 2022	Actual industry volume for August 2022
First class	1 500	3 000
Business class	6 000	9 000
Economy class	32 500	38 000
Total	40 000	50 000

Global Air's actual market share was 48% of unit volume (24 000 ÷ 50 000) in contrast to its budgeted share of 50%. TIG noted that Easy Travel was highly successful in generating economy travel but had been unsuccessful in attracting first- and business-class travellers. In contrast, it noted Global Air's great success in expanding its first- and business-class presence.

Global Air can use this industry information from TIG to get further insight into the sales-quantity variance by dividing it into a market-size variance and a market-share variance. The **market-size variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted amount based

Exhibit 17.5 Sales-mix and sales-quantity variance analysis for revenues of Global Air on New York to London route for August 2022

	Flexible budget (Actual units of all products sold × Actual sales mix × Budgeted selling price per unit)	Actual units of all products sold × Budgeted sales mix × Budgeted selling price per unit	Static budget (Budgeted units of all products sold × Budgeted sales mix × Budgeted selling price per unit)
First class	24 000 × 0.10 × €3200 = €7 680 000	(24 000 × 0.05 × €3200) = €3 840 000	(20 000 × 0.05 × €3200) = €3 200 000
Business class	24 000 × 0.25 × €2400 = €14 400 000	(24 000 × 0.15 × €2400) = €8 640 000	(20 000 × 0.15 × €2400) = €7 200 000
Economy class	24 000 × 0.65 × €900 = €14 040 000	(24 000 × 0.80 × €900) = €17 280 000	(20 000 × 0.80 × €900) = €14 400 000
	€36 120 000	€29 760 000	€24 800 000



* F = favourable effect on revenue.

on the *actual market size in units* and the budgeted market share, and (2) the static-budget amount based on the *budgeted market size in units* and the budgeted market share. The formula and the 2022 amount for Global Air for revenues are:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Market-size variance of revenues} &= \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual market size in units}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted market size in units}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted market share}\end{array} \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted average selling price per unit}\end{array}\\ &= (50\,000 - 40\,000) \times 0.50 \times €1240\\ &= €6\,200\,000\,\text{F}\end{aligned}$$

The budgeted average selling price per (composite) unit is calculated by dividing the total budgeted revenues of €24 800 000 by the total budgeted units of 20 000. The €6 200 000 market-size variance for revenues is favourable because it is the additional revenue expected as a result of the 25% increase in market size (50 000 ÷ 40 000 = 125%), provided Global Air maintains both its budgeted market share of 50% and its budgeted average selling price of €1240.

The **market-share variance** is the difference between two amounts: (1) the budgeted amount at budgeted mix based on the actual market size in units and the actual market share, and (2) the budgeted amount at budgeted mix based on actual market size in units and the *budgeted market share*. The formula and the 2022 amounts for Global Air for revenues are:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Market-share variance for revenues} &= \begin{array}{c}\text{Actual market size in units}\end{array} \times \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Actual market share}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted market share}\end{array}\right) \times \begin{array}{c}\text{Budgeted average selling price per unit}\end{array}\\ &= 50\,000 \times (0.48 - 0.50) \times €1240\\ &= €1\,240\,000\,\text{U}\end{aligned}$$

Global Air lost total market share from that budgeted – from the 50% budgeted to the actual of 48%. The €1 240 000 unfavourable variance highlights the revenue impact of this 2 percentage-point decline in market share.

Exhibit 17.6 shows both the market-share and market-size variances using the columnar approach introduced in Chapter 15. Exhibit 17.7 presents an overview of the Level 1 to Level 4 variances calculated for Global Air. Note how offsetting variances occur in both Levels 2 and 4. In some cases, these offsetting variances may be causally related. The €9 360 000 unfavourable flexible-budget variance arises because of the decline in actual ticket prices from that budgeted. The €11 320 000 favourable sales-volume variance reflects the unit-volume increase stimulated by this decrease in selling prices.

The phrase 'drilling down' or 'peeling the onion' is sometimes used to describe starting at the most aggregate level (Level 1) and then progressively seeking more detail on the factors underlying specific variance amounts. Managers are increasingly able to access software programs that start at Level 1 and then proceed to Levels 2, 3 and 4.

Is dividing the sales-quantity variance into the market-size and market-share variances useful for evaluating the marketing manager's performance? Suppose market size and the demand for an industry's products are largely influenced by factors such as growth and interest rates in the economy. Then the market-size variance does not tell us much about the marketing manager's performance because it is largely determined by factors outside the manager's control. Senior management may therefore put greater weight on the market-share variance in their evaluation of the marketing manager.

Exhibit 17.6 Market-share and market-size variance analysis for revenues of Global Air on New York to London route for August 2022

Actual market size × Actual market share × Budgeted average selling price per unit	Actual market size × Budgeted market share × Budgeted average selling price per unit	Static budget (Budgeted market size × Budgeted market share × Budgeted average selling price per unit)
50 000 × 0.48* × €1240†	50 000 × 0.50‡ × €1240†	40 000 × 0.50 × €1240†
€29 760 000	€31 000 000	€24 800 000

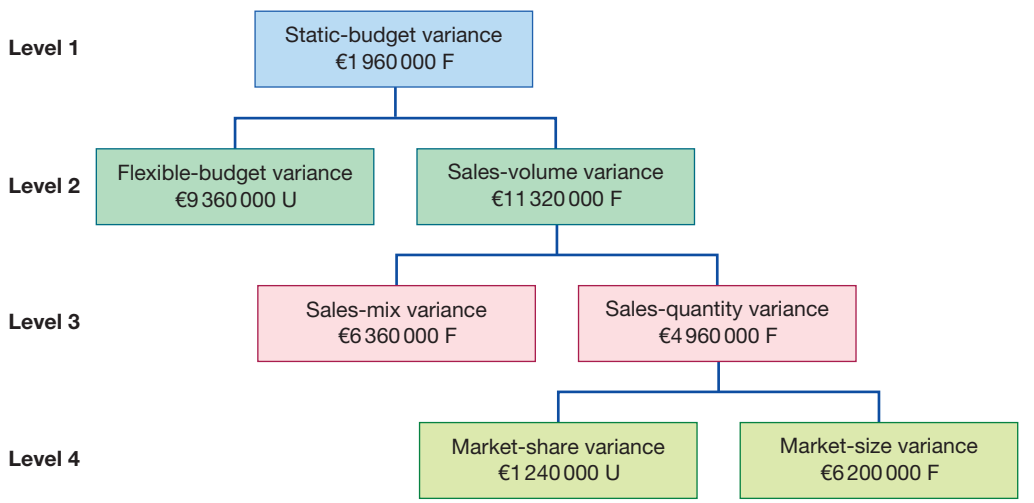
€1 240 000 U§ — Market-share variance

€6 200 000 F — Market-size variance

€4 960 000 F — Total sales-quantity variance

* Actual market share: 24 000 ÷ 50 000 = 0.48.
† Budgeted average selling price per unit = €24 800 000 ÷ 20 000 units = €1240.
‡ Budgeted market share: 20 000 ÷ 40 000 = 0.50.
§ F = favourable effect on revenue; U = unfavourable effect on revenue.

Exhibit 17.7 Overview of revenue variances for Global Air on New York to London route for August 2022



F = favourable effect on revenue; U = unfavourable effect on revenue.

A caution when computing market-size and market-share variances is appropriate. Reliable information on market size and market share is available for some, but not all, industries. For example, the soft-drinks and television industries are ones where market size and share statistics are widely available. In other industries such as management consulting, information about market size and market share is far less reliable and is usually not published on a regular basis.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. When inputs, such as three direct materials, are not substitutes, price and efficiency variances individually calculated for each material typically provide the information necessary for decisions. In the case of substitutable inputs, however, various combinations of inputs can be used to produce the same output. Further splitting the efficiency variance into yield and mix variances provides additional information.
2. Many products use multiple direct materials that can be substituted for one another. In these cases, direct materials efficiency can come from two sources: (1) using fewer inputs of one or more of the materials, and (2) using a cheaper mix of materials to produce output. The total direct materials yield and mix variances divide the total direct materials efficiency variance into two components, with the yield variance focusing on the total inputs used and the mix variance evaluating how the inputs are combined.
3. Multiple direct-labour inputs that are substitutes for one another are often used to manufacture a product or provide a service. The total direct manufacturing labour yield and mix variances indicate the sources of direct manufacturing labour efficiency. A favourable total direct manufacturing labour yield variance results when fewer total direct manufacturing labour-hours are used to produce a given quantity of product. A favourable total direct manufacturing labour mix variance results when a cheaper mix of direct manufacturing labour inputs is used to produce the actual quantity of product.
4. A sales-volume variance can occur because of (a) a change in the actual unit sales from the budgeted unit sales (a sales-quantity variance), and (b) a change in the actual sales mix from the budgeted sales mix (a sales-mix variance). Sales-quantity and sales-mix variances can be calculated for companies selling multiple products or services or the same product or service in multiple markets.
5. The sales-quantity variance can occur because of (a) a change in the actual market size in units from that budgeted (the market-size variance), and (b) a change in the actual share of the market compared to its budgeted share (the market-share variance).

CHAPTER 17

Assessment material

Review questions

17.1 Distinguish between total direct materials yield and mix variances.

17.2 'Direct materials yield and mix variances are particularly useful when materials are substitutable.' Do you agree? Explain.

17.3 Name three sources of the standards used in the total direct materials yield and mix variances.

17.4 'Changes in the mix of direct materials used from the budgeted mix always hurt yield.' Do you agree? Explain.

17.5 How might managers use information about direct-labour yield and mix variances in improving the performance of a business?

17.6 Give an example of an input other than direct materials and direct labour where calculating yield and mix variances might be useful. Explain your reasoning briefly.

17.7 The manager of a highly automated plant that assembles desktop computers commented, 'Yield and mix variance information is irrelevant to my cost management decisions.' Give two possible reasons for the manager's statement.

17.8 Explain why a favourable sales-quantity variance occurs.

17.9 Distinguish between a market-size variance and a market-share variance.

17.10 Why might some companies not calculate market-size and market-share variances?

Exercises

Intermediate level

***17.11** **Direct materials efficiency, yield and mix variance**s (CMA, adapted) (20–25 minutes)

Paix-Trolls SARL produces a petrol additive, Elysium, which increases engine efficiency and reduces petrol consumption. The actual and budgeted quantities (in litres) of materials required to produce Elysium and the budgeted prices of materials in August 2022 are as follows:

Chemical	Actual quantity	Budgeted quantity	Budgeted price
Echol	24 080	25 200	€0.20
Protex	15 480	16 800	0.45
Benz	36 120	33 600	0.15
CT-40	10 320	8 400	0.30

Required

1 Calculate the total direct materials efficiency variance for August 2022.

2 Calculate the total direct materials yield and mix variances for August 2022.

3 What conclusions would you draw from the variance analysis?

17.12 Direct nursing labour efficiency, yield and mix variances (25 minutes)

Les Cliniques du Parc reports the following information for July 2022 regarding its nursing staff consisting of nurses, nursing assistants and orderlies.

	Actual hours	Budgeted hours	Budgeted rate per hour
Nurses	8750	8100	SFr 25
Nursing assistants	4900	5400	17
Orderlies	3850	4500	12

Required

1 Calculate the total direct nursing labour efficiency variance for July 2022.

2 Calculate the total direct nursing labour yield and mix variances for July 2022.

3 Briefly describe the conclusions you would draw from the variance analysis.

17.13 Variance analysis of revenues, multiple products (30–40 minutes)

The Antwerp Lions play in the Flemish Football League. The Lions play in the Antwerp Stadium (owned and managed by the City of Antwerp), which has a capacity of 30 000 seats (10 000 lower- tier seats and 20 000 upper-tier seats). The Antwerp Stadium charges the Lions a per-ticket charge for use of their facility. All tickets are sold by the Reservation Network, which charges the Lions a reservation fee per ticket. The Lions budgeted net revenue for each type of ticket in 2022 is calculated as follows:

	Lower-tier tickets	Upper-tier tickets
Selling price	€35	€14
Antwerp Stadium fee	10	6
Reservation Network fee	5	3
Net revenue per ticket	20	5

The budgeted and actual average attendance figures per game in the 2022 season are:

	Budgeted seats sold	Actual seats sold
Lower tier	8 000	6 600
Upper tier	12 000	15 400
Total	20 000	22 000

There was no difference between the budgeted and actual net revenue for lower-tier or upper-tier seats.

The manager of the Lions was delighted that actual attendance was 10% above budgeted attendance per game, especially given the depressed state of the local economy in the past six months.

Required

1 Calculate the sales-volume variance for individual 'product' net revenues and total net revenues for the Antwerp Lions in 2022.

2 Calculate the sales-quantity and sales-mix variances for individual 'product' net revenues and total net revenues in 2022.

3 Present a summary of the variances in requirements 1 and 2. Comment on the results.

17.14 Standard costing (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2006) (40 minutes)

Deadeye Ltd operates a standard costing system in which all stocks are valued at standard cost. The standard direct material cost of one unit of product MS is £36, made up of 4.8 kg of material H at £7.50 per kg. Material H is used only in the manufacture of product MS. The following information relates to last month:

Material H:	
Purchased 40 000 kg for	£294 000
Issued into production	36 500 kg
Finished output of MS	7200 units

Required

1 Calculate the direct material price and usage variances for last month.

2 Prepare a statement that reconciles the actual cost of material H purchased with the standard material cost of actual production of MS for last month. The statement should incorporate the variances calculated in 1.

3 **a** Suggest ONE possible cause for EACH of the variances calculated in 1.

b Who should the direct material price variance be reported to, and why?

17.15 Variance calculations (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006) (40 minutes)

X Ltd uses an automated manufacturing process to produce an industrial chemical, Product P. X Ltd operates a standard marginal costing system. The standard cost data for Product P is as follows:

Standard cost per unit of Product P	
Materials	
A 10 kg @ £15 per kilo	£150
B 8 kg @ £8 per kilo	£64
C 5 kg @ £4 per kilo	£20
23 kg	
Total standard marginal cost	£234
Budgeted fixed production overheads	£350 000

In order to arrive at the budgeted selling price for Product P the company adds 80% mark-up to the standard marginal cost. The company budgeted to produce and sell 5000 units of Product P in the period. There were no budgeted inventories of Product P. The actual results for the period were as follows:

Actual production and sales	5450 units
Actual sales price	£445 per unit
Material usage and cost	
A 43 000 kg	£688 000
B 37 000 kg	£277 500
C 23 500 kg	£99 875
103 500 kg	
Fixed production overheads	£385 000

Required

1 Prepare an operating statement which reconciles the budgeted profit to the actual profit for the period. The statement should include the material mix and material yield variances.

2 The Production Manager of X Ltd is new to the job and has very little experience of management information. Write a brief report to the Production Manager of X Ltd that:
   a interprets the material price, mix and yield variances;
   b discusses the merits, or otherwise, of calculating the materials mix and yield variances for X Ltd.

Advanced level

*17.16 Direct materials price, efficiency, yield and mix variances (35 minutes)

Granoline SA manufactures cereal products such as multi-grain porridge and breakfastcereals. It makes multi-grain porridge by blending barley, wheat and rye. Budgeted costs to produce 100 000 kg of multi-grain porridge in November 2022 are as follows:

45 000 kg of barley at €0.30 per kg	€13 500
180 000 kg of wheat at €0.26 per kg	46 800
75 000 kg of rye at €0.22 per kg	16 500

Actual costs in November 2022 are:

62 000 kg of barley at €0.28 per kg	€17 360
155 000 kg of wheat at €0.26 per kg	40 300
93 000 kg of rye at €0.20 per kg	18 600

Required

1 Calculate the total direct materials price and efficiency variances for November 2022.
2 Calculate the total direct materials mix and yield variances for November 2022.
3 Comment on your results in requirements 1 and 2.

17.17 Direct materials price and efficiency variances, direct materials yield and mix variances, perfume manufacturing (SMA, adapted) (40 minutes)

Markku Antero Oy produces perfume. To make this perfume, Markku Antero uses three different types of fluid. Tartarus, Erebus and Uranus are used in standard proportions of 4/10, 3/10 and 3/10 , and their standard costs are €6.00, €3.50 and €2.50 per litre, respectively. The chief engineer reported that in the past few months the standard yield has been at 80% on 100 litres of mix. The company maintains a policy of not carrying any direct materials, as stock storage space is costly.

Last week, the company produced 75 000 litres of perfume at a total direct materials cost of €449 500. The actual number of litres used and costs per litre for the three fluids are as follows:

Direct materials	Actual litres	Costs per litre
Tartarus	45 000	€5.50
Erebus	35 000	4.20
Uranus	20 000	2.75

Required

1 Calculate the total direct materials price and efficiency variances for perfume made in the last week.
2 Calculate the total direct materials yield and mix variances for the last week.
3 Explain the significance of the price, yield and mix variances from management's perspective.

17.18 Direct materials price and efficiency variances, direct materials yield and mix variances, food processing (50 minutes)

Tropica AB processes tropical fruit into fruit salad mix, which it sells to a food-service company. Tropica has in its budget the following standards for the direct materials inputs to produce 80 kg of tropical fruit salad:

50 kg of pineapple at SFr 1.00 per kg	SFr 50
30 kg of watermelon at SFr 0.50 per kg	15
20 kg of mango at SFr 0.75 per kg	15
100	SFr 80

Note that 100 kg of input quantities are required to produce 80 kg of fruit salad. No stocks of direct materials are kept. Purchases are made as needed, so all price variances are related to direct materials used. The actual direct materials inputs used to produce 54 000 kg of tropical fruit salad for the month of October were:

36 400 kg of pineapple at SFr 0.90 per kg	SFr 32 760
18 200 kg of watermelon at SFr 0.60 per kg	10 920
15 400 kg of mango at SFr 0.70 per kg	10 780
70 000	SFr 54 460

Required

1. Calculate the total direct materials price and efficiency variances in October.
2. Calculate the total direct materials yield and mix variances for October.
3. Comment on your results in requirements 1 and 2.
4. How might the management of Tropica use information about the direct materials yield and mix variances?

17.19 Direct materials efficiency variance, mix and yield variances; working backwards (30–40 minutes)

Calypso SA manufactures and sells fertilisers. Calypso uses the following standard direct materials costs to produce 1 tonne of fertiliser:

75% of the input materials is Alpha at €400 per tonne	€360
25% of the input materials is Gamma at €200 per tonne	60
Total standard cost of 1.2 tonnes of inputs	€420

Note that 1.2 tonnes of input quantities are required to produce 1 tonne of fertiliser. No stocks of direct materials are kept. Purchases are made as needed, so all price variances are related to direct materials used. Calypso produced 2000 tonnes of fertiliser in a particular period. The total direct materials yield variance for the period was €35 000 U. The actual input mix for the period was 50% of Alpha and 50% of Gamma.

Required

1. Calculate the individual direct materials yield variances for the period.
2. Calculate the individual and total direct materials mix variances for the period.
3. Calculate the individual and total direct materials efficiency variances for the period.
4. Briefly describe the conclusions you would draw from the variance analyses.

17.20 Direct service labour price, efficiency, yield and mix variances (40 minutes)

O'Connell & Associates, a firm of architects, has three levels of professional staff: principals (managers), who manage all aspects of the architectural job; senior architects, who are responsible for the main designs; and junior architects, who provide technical support. Budgeted costs for five architectural jobs done over a recent period are as follows:

600 principal-hours at €105 per hour	€63 000
1800 senior-hours at €75 per hour	135 000
3600 junior-hours at €25 per hour	90 000

Actual hours worked and the actual rates per hour to complete the five jobs are:

295 principal-hours at €108 per hour	€31 860
2360 senior-hours at €70 per hour	165 200
3245 junior-hours at €30 per hour	97 350

Required

1. Calculate the total direct labour price and efficiency variances for the five jobs.
2. Calculate the total direct labour mix and yield variances for the five jobs.
3. Comment on your results in requirements 1 and 2.
4. How might managers use information about the direct labour yield and mix variances?

*17.21 Variance analysis of contribution margin, multiple products; working backwards (30 minutes)

Rusti-Verres SNC sells two brands of wine glasses – Choc and Chic. Rusti-Verres provides the following information for sales in the month of June 2022:

Static-budget total contribution margin	SFr 5600
Budgeted units to be sold of all glasses in June 2022	2000 units
Budgeted contribution margin per unit of Choc	SFr 2 per unit
Budgeted contribution margin per unit of Chic	SFr 6 per unit
Total sales-quantity variance	SFr 1400 U
Actual sales-mix percentage of Choc	60%

All variances are to be calculated in contribution-margin terms.

Required

1. Calculate the sales-quantity variances for each product for June 2022.
2. Calculate the individual product and total sales-mix variances for June 2022. Calculate the individual product and total sales-volume variances for June 2022.
3. Briefly describe the conclusions you would draw from the variances.

17.22 From ACCA Performance Management, section B, December 2014 (45 minutes)

The Safe Soap Co. makes environmentally-friendly soap using three basic ingredients. The standard cost card for one batch of soap for the month of September was as follows:

Material	Kilograms	Price per kilogram (£)
Lye	0.25	10
Coconut oil	0.6	4
Shea butter	0.5	3

The budget for production and sales in September was 120 000 batches. Actual production and sales were 136 000 batches. The actual ingredients used were as follows:

Material	Kilograms
Lye	34 080
Coconut oil	83 232
Shea butter	64 200

Required

1 Calculate the total material mix variance and the total material yield variance for September.

2 In October the materials mix and yield variances were as follows:

Mix: £6 000 unfavourable

Yield: £10 000 favourable

The production manager is pleased with the results overall, stating: 'At the beginning of September I made some changes to the mix of ingredients used for the soaps. As I expected, the mix variance is unfavourable in both months because we haven't yet updated our standard cost card but, in both months, the favourable yield variance more than makes up for this. Overall, I think we can be satisfied that the changes made to the product mix are producing good results and now we are able to produce more batches and meet the growing demand for our product.'

The sales manager, however, holds a different view and says:

'I'm not happy with this change in the ingredients mix. I've had to explain to the board why the sales-volume variance for October was £22 000 unfavourable. I've tried to explain that the quality of the soap has declined slightly and some of my customers have realised this and simply aren't happy but no one seems to be listening. Some customers are even demanding that the price of the soap be reduced and threatening to go elsewhere if the problem isn't sorted out.'

a Briefly explain what the unfavourable materials mix and favourable materials yield variances indicate about production at Safe Soap Co. in October.

Note: You are NOT required to discuss revision of standards or operational and planning variances.

b Discuss whether the sales manager could be justified in claiming that the change in the materials mix has caused an unfavourable sales-volume variance in October.

17.23 From CIMA Performance Management, section A, November 2014 (20 minutes)

A company sells three products: D, E and F. The market for the products dictates that the numbers of products sold are always in the ratio of 3D:4E:5F.

Budgeted sales volumes and prices, and cost details for the previous period were as follows:

	D	E	F
Sales units	300	400	500
Selling price per unit	£80	£55	£70
Contribution to sales ratio	70%	65%	50%

The budgeted total fixed costs for that period were £31 200.

The budget for the previous period was based on the company having a 20% share of the total market of 6000 units.

It has now been realised that the size of the market had been underestimated. The actual total market size for that period was 7500 units.

During that period the company actually sold 1740 units for a total of £109 500. Unit variable costs were as expected but total fixed costs were 10% higher than budgeted.

The company reports variances using a standard marginal costing system.

Required

Calculate for the company for the previous period:

a the market-size variance.

b the market-share variance.

PART III

Case study problems

Case 301

Zeros plc

Falconer Mitchell, University of Edinburgh

This case is concerned with the use of ROI to measure divisional performance. It also addresses the use of an integrated standard costing system to produce meaningful profit statements where standard setting is problematic.

The board of Zeros plc assesses divisional performance within the company primarily on the basis of a return-on-investment ratio. This is computed as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Operating Profit}}{\text{Book value of total assets}} \times 100 = \text{ROI}$$

The figure of operating profit is obtained from a standard-costing-based profit statement (see Exhibit 301.1 for the two most recent such statements).

The Blank Division

In terms of turnover the Blank Division is the second largest division within the company. The divisional manager is Joseph Olsen who has worked in the division for over 30 years, initially as a management accountant and then as manager over the past decade. He is 63 years old and will retire in 18 months' time. In accordance with a board policy introduced to improve motivation at divisional level, his current remuneration contains a substantial bonus element based on divisional operating profit. In addition, his retirement pension will be based upon his average total earnings in his last three working years.

The Blank Division was resituated in a town-centre freehold site which was purchased 20 years ago. A custom-built factory was erected on the site with considerable financial aid from the government, and was equipped with what were, at the time, the most modern machines available. It is a matter of considerable pride to Joseph that much of this equipment has been conscientiously maintained and is still in use today. In the accounting records the freehold site and factory building are still valued at historic cost.

Source: Mitchell, F. (1988) 'Zeros plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission.

Exhibit 301.1 Annual profit statement

	2022 (£000)	2023 (£000)
Budgeted sale	8000	10 940
Selling price variance	–	–
Sales-volume variance	(1600) U	(2 735) U
Actual sales	6400	8 205
Standard cost of sales	4800	6 150
Standard operating profit	1600	2 055
Cost variances		
Direct material price	(100) U	(80) U
Direct material usage	(220) U	(280) U
Labour rate	(150) U	(130) U
Labour efficiency	(200) U	(300) U
Variable overhead spending	(180) U	(300) U
Variable overhead efficiency	(250) U	(275) U
Fixed overhead spending	(120) U	(150) U
Fixed overhead volume	–	–
Operating profit	380	540

Exhibit 301.2 Unit standard costs and selling price

	2022	2023
Unit standard cost		
Direct material	0.50	0.60
Direct labour	0.75	0.90
Variable overheads	0.50	0.60
Fixed overheads	1.25	2.00
	3.00	4.10
Actual unit selling prices	4.00	5.47

The Blank Division produces a wide range of sizes of surgical needles, although all are sold at a standard price (see Exhibit 301.2). Although the market is growing the competition is intense, being based on both price and, particularly, product quality.

Standard costs are revised at the start of each financial year (see Exhibit 301.2) and are based on the middle-range size of surgical needle produced in the division.

It is frequently pointed out at board meetings by Joseph Olsen that the Blank Division can still achieve a 33% mark-up on its standard unit cost, and that no competing firm can approach this level of margin.

In recent years the Blank Division has produced highly satisfactory return-on-investment figures and a reasonable profit growth. The board has, however, been concerned by the large unfavourable variances which have been consistently reported. The normal retort of the Blank Division manager to queries on the size of variances has been to state unequivocally that 'it is the bottom line that matters; if that's OK you can forget the rest'. He has also consistently

Exhibit 301.3 Records of production and sales

	2022 ('000 units)	2023 ('000 units)
Opening stock	200	600
Production	2000	2000
Sales	(1600)	(1500)
Closing stock	600	1100

promoted the performance of his division during 2022 and 2023 to the board as 'excellent' and rebuffed any judgements to the contrary. Results for the last two years are given in Exhibits 301.1 and 301.3.

Questions

1 What criticism would you make of the approach to divisional-performance assessment employed by the board of Zeros plc?

2 Would you agree with Jospeh Olsen's assessment that his division's performance was 'excellent' during 2022 and 2023?

3 What suggestions would you make for improving the divisional-performance measurement in Zeros plc?

Case 302

Instrumental Ltd

Vijay Govindarajan and John Shank

This case requires the analysis of budgeted versus actual performance for different organisational functions and considers strategic versus operational issues.

David Jones, president and principal shareholder of Instrumental Ltd, sat at his desk reflecting on the 2022 results (Exhibit 302.1). For the second year in succession the company had exceeded its profit target. David was obviously happy with the year's results. All the same, he wanted to get a better feel for the relative contributions of the R&D, manufacturing and marketing departments in this overall success. With this in mind, he called his colleague, Jennifer Lee, a recent MBA graduate of the London Business School, into his office.

'Jennifer,' he started, 'as you can see from our recent financial results, we have exceeded our profit target by £622 000. Could you please prepare an analysis showing how much R&D, manufacturing and marketing contributed to this?'

Source: Adapted from a case written by Govindarajan, V. and Shank, J. (1989) 'Profit variance analysis: a strategic focus', *Issues in Accounting Education*, Fall, pp. 396–410. Reproduced with permission from the American Accounting Association.

Exhibit 302.1 Profit and loss account for year ending 2022

		Budget (£000)		Actual (£000)
Sales		16 872		17 061
Cost of goods sold		9 668		9 865
Gross margin		7 204		7 196
Less:				
Operating expenses				
Marketing	1856		1440	
R&D	1480		932	
Administration	1340	4 676	1674	4 046
Profit before taxes		2 528		3 150

Jennifer, elated with all the fervour and enthusiasm of a total convert to professional management, got down to work immediately. She collected all the data in Exhibit 302.2 and then wondered somewhat disconsolately what her next step should be.

Exhibit 302.2 Instrumental Ltd: additional information

	Electric motors (EM)	Electronic instruments (EI)
Selling prices per unit		
Average standard price	£40.00	£180.00
Average actual prices, 2022	30.00	206.00
Variable product costs per unit		
Average standard manufacturing cost	20.00	50.00
Average actual manufacturing cost	21.00	54.00
Volume information		
Units produced and sold – actual	141 770	62 172
Units produced and sold – planned	124 800	66 000
Total industry sales, 2022 – actual	£44 million	£76 million
Total industry variable product costs, 2022 – actual	£16 million	£32 million
Instrumental's share of the market (% of physical units)		
Planned	10%	15%
Actual	16%	9%

	Planned	Actual
Firm-wide fixed expenses (£000)		
Fixed manufacturing expenses	£3872	3530
Fixed marketing expenses	1856	1440
Fixed administrative expenses	1340	1674
Fixed R&D expenses (exclusively for EI)	1480	932

Instrumental's products can be grouped into two main lines of business: electric motors (EM) and electronic instruments (EI). Both EM and EI are industrial measuring instruments and perform almost identical functions. However, EM is based on mechanical and electrical technology, whereas EI is based on the microchip.

Instrumental Ltd uses a variable costing system for internal reporting purposes.

Question

You are required to put yourself in Jennifer Lee's position and state what you would do in your analysis of Instrumental's performance across its different departments and what you would recommend to the president.

PART IV

Management control systems and performance issues

Part III emphasised planning and control considerations in management and cost accounting. Part IV builds on costing system design and implementation issues we have discussed by looking at other ways in which managerial action is influenced by internal accounting information. In particular, we consider how the structure of organisations influences accounting practices and performance assessment in this chapter and the next.

Chapter 18	Control systems and transfer pricing	556
Chapter 19	Control systems and performance measurement	585
Part IV	Case study problems	615

CHAPTER 18

Control systems and transfer pricing

Aside from studying the technical aspects of management control systems, it is essential to consider how the system will influence the behaviour of the people who use it. What role can accounting information play in management control activities? We could for example, ask how does cost and budget information help in planning and coordinating the actions of multiple divisions within companies such as Philips and Ericsson? This chapter explores some links between strategy, organisation structure, management control systems and accounting information. It examines the benefits and costs of centralised and decentralised organisational structures and looks at the pricing of products or services transferred between subunits of the same organisation. Over half of international transactions are intercompany transactions. With exponential advances in technology, transportation and communication that are part of the modern global economy, many multinational companies have opted for location choices based on after-profit returns and conducted their activities judiciously. They do this as when firms engage in cross-border intercompany transactions, a variety of direct and indirect implications, including an impact on shareholder wealth, tax liabilities and corporate after-tax cash flow ensue. The mechanisms used to establish the pricing of intercompany transactions (transfer prices) can be complex. Relevant transfer-pricing issues are considered in this chapter.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe a management control system
- Understand important elements of effective management control systems
- Describe the benefits and costs of decentralisation
- Identify three general methods for determining transfer prices
- Illustrate how market-based transfer prices promote goal congruence in perfectly competitive markets
- Recognise when a transfer price may lead to suboptimal decisions
- Understand the range over which two divisions generally negotiate the transfer price when there is unused capacity
- Present a general guideline for determining a minimum transfer price in transfer-pricing situations
- Be aware of income tax considerations in multinational transfer pricing

Management control systems

A **management control system** is a means of gathering and using information to aid and coordinate the process of making planning and control decisions throughout the organisation and to guide employee behaviour. The goal of the system is to improve the collective decisions within an organisation.

Consider part of the management control system at Siemens, the German electrical and electronics company. Information for management control is gathered and reported at various levels:

1. *Total-organisation level* – for example, stock price, net income, return on investment, cash flow from operations, total employment, pollution control, and contributions to the community.
2. *Customer/market level* – for example, customer satisfaction, time taken to respond to customer requests for products, and cost of competitors' products.
3. *Individual-facility level* – for example, materials costs, labour costs, absenteeism and accidents in various divisions or business functions (such as R&D, manufacturing and distribution).
4. *Individual-activity level* – for example, the time taken and costs incurred for receiving, storing, assembling and dispatching goods in a warehouse; scrap rates, defects and units reworked on a manufacturing line; the number of sales transactions and sales euros per salesperson; and the number of shipments per employee at distribution centres.

As the preceding examples indicate, formal elements of management control systems collect both financial data (for example, net income, materials costs and storage costs) and non-financial data (for example, the time taken to respond to customer requests for products, absenteeism and accidents). Some of the information is obtained from within the company (such as net profit and number of shipments per employee); other information is obtained from outside the company (such as stock price and cost of competitors' products). Some companies present financial and non-financial information in a single report called the balanced scorecard (see Chapter 22).

The levels indicate the different kinds of information that are needed by managers performing different tasks. For example, stock price information is important at the total-organisation level but not at the individual-activity level in the warehouse, where information about the time taken for receiving and storing is more relevant. At the individual-activity level, management control reports focus on internal financial and non-financial data. At higher levels, management control reports also emphasise external financial and non-financial data.

Management control systems have both formal and informal components. The formal management control system of an organisation includes those explicit rules, procedures, performance measures and incentive plans that guide the behaviour of its managers and employees. The formal control system itself consists of several systems. The management accounting system is a formal accounting system that provides information on costs, revenues and income. Examples of other formal control systems are human resource systems (providing information on recruiting, training, absenteeism and accidents) and quality systems (providing information on scrap, defects, rework and late deliveries to customers).

The informal part of the management control system includes such aspects as shared values, loyalties and mutual commitments among members of the organisation and the unwritten norms about acceptable behaviour for promotion that also influence employee behaviour.

Evaluating management control systems

To be effective, management control systems should be closely aligned to an organisation's strategies and goals. Examples of strategies are doubling net profit in four years, increasing market share by 50% in two years, or maximising short-run profit. Suppose management decides, wisely or unwisely,

to emphasise maximising short-run profit as a strategy. Then the management control system must attempt to reinforce this strategy. It should aim to provide managers with information that will help them make short-run decisions – for example, contribution margins on individual products. It should tie managers' incentives to short-run net profit figures in contexts where such remuneration is desirable.

A second important feature of formal management control systems is that they should be designed to fit the organisation's structure and the decision-making responsibility of individual managers. For example, management control should align with accountability and decision-making authority. Consider Uniliver's move away from its current matrix structure and reorganisation around five distinct Business Groups: Beauty & Wellbeing, Personal Care, Home Care, Nutrition, and Ice Cream. Unilever wants each Business Group to be fully responsible and accountable for their strategy, growth, and profit delivery globally. Alan Jope, CEO Unilever, explains, 'Our new organisational model has been developed over the last year and is designed to continue the step-up we are seeing in the performance of our business. Moving to five category-focused Business Groups will enable us to be more responsive to consumer and channel trends, with crystal-clear accountability for delivery. Growth remains our top priority and these changes will underpin our pursuit of this' (Unilever, 2022).

The way in which an enterprise is organised needs to be considered in light of the management control priorities pursued and changes must be made which correspond with altering conditions and strategies.

Finally, effective management control systems motivate managers and employees. **Motivation** is the desire to attain a selected goal (the goal-congruence aspect) combined with the resulting drive towards that goal (the effort aspect). **Goal congruence** exists when individuals and groups work towards the organisational goals that top management desires – that is, managers working in their own best interest take actions that further the overall goals of top management. Goal-congruence issues have arisen in earlier chapters. For example, in capital-budgeting decisions, making decisions by discounting long-run cash flows at the required rate of return best achieves organisational goals. But if the management control system evaluates managers on the basis of short-run accrual accounting income, managers will be tempted to make decisions to maximise accrual accounting income that may not be in the best interests of the organisation.

Effort is defined as exertion towards a goal. Effort goes beyond physical exertion, such as a worker producing at a faster rate, to include all conscientious actions (physical and mental). Management control systems usually aim to motivate employees to exert effort towards attaining organisational goals through a variety of incentives tied to the achievement of those goals. These incentives can be monetary (cash, stock, use of a company car and membership of a club) or non-monetary (power, self-esteem, and pride in working for a successful company).

One criterion for evaluating the effectiveness of a management control system is to see how far the attainment of top management's goals are promoted in a cost-effective way.

Organisational structure and decentralisation

Given that organisations are in a constant state of flux in terms of their markets, customers, workers, technology, and so on, it is in practice difficult ever to attain a 'fit' which might be deemed desirable between, for instance, strategy, structure and motivation of individuals. What is clear is that any such attempts need to be continuous since organisational processes are never static.

Top management makes decisions about decentralisation that affect day-to-day operations at all levels of the organisation. The essence of **decentralisation** is the freedom for managers at lower levels of the organisation to make decisions.

As we discuss the issues of decentralisation, we use the term *subunit* to refer to any part of an organisation. In practice, a subunit may be a large division (the Premier Banking subunit of

Barclays plc – a UK-based financial services group) or a small group (the two-person advertising department of a local clothing boutique).

Total decentralisation means *minimum constraints and maximum freedom* for managers at the lowest levels of an organisation to make decisions. Total centralisation means *maximum constraints and minimum freedom* for managers at the lowest levels. Most companies' structures fall somewhere between these two extremes.

Benefits of decentralisation

How should top managers decide how far to decentralise? Conceptually, they might try to choose the degree of decentralisation that maximises the excess of benefits over costs, bearing in mind organisational context factors. From a practical standpoint, top managers can seldom quantify either the benefits or the costs. But thought can be given to the advantages and drawbacks of decentralisation.

Advocates of decentralising decision making and granting responsibilities to managers of subunits claim the following benefits:

1. *Creates greater responsiveness to local needs.* Information is the key to intelligent decisions. Compared with top managers, subunit managers are better informed about their customers, competitors, suppliers and employees, as well as about factors that affect the performance of their jobs such as ways to decrease costs and improve quality.
2. *Leads to quicker decision making.* An organisation that gives lower-level managers the responsibility for making decisions can make decisions quickly, creating a competitive advantage over organisations that are slower because they send the decision-making responsibility upwards through layer after layer of management.
3. *Increases motivation.* Subunit managers are usually more highly motivated when they can exercise greater individual initiative.
4. *Aids management development and learning.* Giving managers more responsibility promotes the development of an experienced pool of management talent – a pool that the organisation can draw from to fill higher-level management positions. The organisation also learns which people are not management material. Consider Jeffrey Immelt who served as General Electric's CEO for 16 years from 2001.The company became the world's most valuable company when he took over from the prior celebrated CEO Jack Welch. General Electric (GE) was revered for its scientific approaches to efficient manufacturing, developing managers and producing highly reliable profits. By 2017, Immelt had been forced to break the group up, cut its dividend and axe thousands of jobs. GE also paid $200 million to resolve claims from the Securities and Exchange Commission that it misled investors while he was in charge. In relation to succession, the perceived failure at GE was explained by Immelt that this had been due to too few executives being given the profit and loss responsibility that could shape them to be CEOs (Edgecliffe-Johnson and Indap, 2021). Decentralisation if done right can shape the next generation of executives.
5. *Sharpens the focus of managers.* In a decentralised setting, the manager of a small subunit has a concentrated focus. A small subunit is more flexible and nimbler than a larger subunit and better able to adapt itself quickly to a fast-developing market opportunity. Also, top management, relieved of the burden of day-to-day operating decisions, can spend more time and energy on strategic planning for the entire organisation.

Costs of decentralisation

Advocates of more centralised decision making point out the following costs of decentralising decision making:

1. *Leads* to **suboptimal decision making** (also called **incongruent decision making**), which arises when a decision's benefit to one subunit is more than offset by the costs or loss of benefits

to the organisation as a whole. This cost arises because top management has given up some control over decision making. Suboptimal decision making may occur (1) when there is a lack of harmony or congruence among the overall organisational goals, the subunit goals and the individual goals of decision makers, or (2) when no guidance is given to subunit managers concerning the effects of their decisions on other parts of the organisation. Suboptimal decision making is most likely to occur when the subunits in the organisation are highly interdependent, such as when the end-product of one subunit is the direct material of another subunit.

2 *Results in duplication of activities*. Several individual subunits of the organisation may undertake the same activity separately. For example, there may be a duplication of staff functions (accounting, employee relations and legal) if an organisation is highly decentralised. Centralising these functions helps to consolidate, streamline and downsize these activities. Consider, for instance, the Coke Group which initiated in 2021 the global restructuring of its organisation. The two previous regions of Western and Central and Eastern Europe merged to create a new business unit Europe. The new unit covers more than 40 countries, from the United Kingdom to Russia. This re-structure is accompanied by numerous changes in management to 'emerge stronger from the pandemic' whereby the structure becomes streamlined. The change was regarded as a reaction to the revenues of the company falling 11% to $33 billion, yielding earnings of $7.7 billion – a fall of 13% from the previous year (Chwallek and Hebben, 2021).

3 *Focuses managers' attention on the subunit rather than the organisation as a whole*. Individual subunit managers may regard the managers of other subunits in the same organisation as external parties or competitors. Consequently, managers may be unwilling to share significant information or to assist when another subunit faces an emergency. They may also use information they have about local conditions to further their own self-interest rather than the organisation's goals. For instance, they may ask for more resources than they need from the organisation in order to reduce the effort they need to exert. If subunits provide similar products or services, their internal competition could lead to failure in the external markets. The reason is that divisions may find it easier to steal market share from one another, by mimicking each other's successful products, rather than those of competing firms. Eventually, this leads to confusion in the minds of customers and the loss of each division's distinctive strengths.

4 *Increases costs of gathering information*. Managers may spend too much time negotiating the prices for internal products or services transferred among subunits.

To choose an appropriate organisation structure, top managers need to consider the benefits and costs of decentralisation, often on a function-by-function basis. For example, the chief accountant's function may be highly decentralised for many attention-directing and problem-solving purposes (such as preparing operating budgets and performance reports) but highly centralised for other purposes (such as processing creditors and developing income tax strategies). Decentralising budgeting and cost reporting enables the marketing manager of a subunit, for example, to influence the design of product-line profitability reports for the subunit. Tailoring the report to the specific information that the manager may need helps the manager make more informed decisions. Centralising income tax strategies, on the other hand, allows the organisation to trade-off profits in some subunit with losses in others to evaluate the impact on the organisation as a whole.

Multinational corporations are often decentralised. Language, customs, cultures, business practices, rules, laws and regulations vary significantly across countries. Decentralisation enables country managers to make decisions that exploit their knowledge of local business and political conditions and to deal with uncertainties in their individual environments. Philips, the Dutch electronics conglomerate, delegates marketing and pricing decisions for its television business in the Indian and Singaporean markets to its respective country managers. Multinational corporations often rotate managers between foreign locations and the home office. Job rotation combined with decentralisation helps develop managers' abilities to operate in global environments.

Choices about responsibility centres

To measure the performance of subunits in centralised or decentralised organisations, the management control system uses one or a mix of the four types of responsibility centre presented in Chapter 14:

- *Cost centre* – manager accountable for costs only.
- *Revenue centre* – manager accountable for revenues only.
- *Profit centre* – manager accountable for revenues and costs.
- *Investment centre* – manager accountable for investments, revenues and costs.

Centralisation or decentralisation is not mentioned in these descriptions. This is because each of these responsibility units can be found in either of the extremes of centralised and decentralised organisations.

A common misconception is that the term *profit centre* (and, in some cases, *investment centre*) is a synonym for a decentralised subunit, and that *cost centre* is a synonym for a centralised subunit. But profit centres can also be coupled with a highly centralised organisation, and cost centres can exist within a highly decentralised organisation. For example, managers in a division organised as a profit centre may have little leeway in making decisions. They may need to obtain approval from corporate headquarters for every expenditure over, say, €10 000 and may be forced to accept central-staff 'advice'. In another company, divisions may be organised as cost centres, but their managers may have great latitude on capital expenditures and on where to purchase materials and services. In short, the labels 'profit centre' and 'cost centre' are independent of the degree of decentralisation in an organisation.

Transfer pricing

In decentralised organisations, individual subunits of an organisation act as separate units. In these settings, the management control system often uses transfer prices to coordinate actions and to evaluate performance of the subunits.

An **intermediate product** is a product transferred from one subunit to another subunit of the same organisation. This product may be processed further and sold to an external customer. A **transfer price** is the price one subunit (segment, department, division, and so on) of an organisation charges for a product or service supplied to another subunit of the same organisation. The transfer price creates revenue for the selling subunit and a purchase cost for the buying subunit, affecting operating profit for both subunits. The operating profits can be used to evaluate the performance of each subunit and to motivate managers.

Alternative transfer-pricing methods

There are three general methods for determining transfer prices:

1. *Market-based transfer prices.* Upper management may choose to use the price of a similar product or service publicly listed in, say, a trade association website. Also, upper management may select, for the internal price, the external price that a subunit charges to outside customers.
2. *Cost-based transfer prices.* Upper management may choose a transfer price based on the costs of producing the product in question. Examples include variable manufacturing costs, manufacturing (absorption) costs and full product costs. 'Full product costs' include all production costs as well as costs from other business functions (R&D, design, marketing, distribution and customer service). The costs used in cost-based transfer prices can be actual costs or budgeted costs.
3. *Negotiated transfer prices.* In some cases, the subunits of a company are free to negotiate the transfer price between themselves and then to decide whether to buy and sell internally

or deal with outside parties. Subunits may use information about costs and market prices in these negotiations, but there is no requirement that the chosen transfer price bear any specific relationship to either cost or market-price data. Negotiated transfer prices are often employed when market prices are volatile and change occurs constantly. The negotiated transfer price is the outcome of a bargaining process between the selling and the buying subunits.

Ideally, the chosen transfer-pricing method should lead each subunit manager to make optimal decisions for the organisation as a whole. As in all management control systems, transfer pricing should help achieve an organisation's strategies and goals, and fit its structure. In particular, it should promote *goal congruence* and a sustained high level of *management effort*. Sellers should be motivated to hold down costs of supplying a product or service, and buyers should be motivated to acquire and use inputs efficiently. If top management favours a high degree of decentralisation, transfer pricing should also promote a high level of *subunit autonomy* in decision making. **Autonomy** is the degree of freedom to make decisions.

In effect, to help a company achieve its goals, transfer prices should meet four key criteria:

1. Promote goal congruence, so that division managers acting in their own interest will take actions that are aligned with the objectives of top management.
2. Induce managers to exert a high level of effort. Subunits selling a product or service should be motivated to hold down their costs; subunits buying the product or service should be motivated to acquire and use inputs efficiently.
3. Help top managers evaluate the performance of individual subunits.
4. Preserve autonomy of subunits if top managers favour a high degree of decentralisation. A subunit manager seeking to maximise the operating income of the subunit should have the freedom to transact with other subunits of the company (on the basis of transfer prices) or to transact with external parties.

An illustration of transfer pricing

Stavanger-Oil AS has three divisions. Each operates as a profit centre. The Production Division manages the production of crude oil from a petroleum field near Heimberg. The Transportation Division manages the operation of a pipeline that transports crude oil from the Heimberg area to Nordstad. The Refining Division manages a refinery at Nordstad that processes crude oil into petrol. (For simplicity, assume that petrol is the only saleable product the refinery makes and that it takes two barrels of crude oil to yield one barrel of petrol.)

Variable costs in each division are assumed to be variable with respect to a single cost driver in each division: barrels of crude oil produced by the Production Division, barrels of crude oil transported by the Transportation Division, and barrels of petrol produced by the Refining Division. The fixed costs per unit are based on the budgeted annual output of crude oil to be produced and transported and the amount of petrol to be produced. Stavanger-Oil reports all costs and revenues of its non-European operations in euros using the prevailing exchange rate.

- The Production Division can sell crude oil to outside parties in the Heimberg area at €13 per barrel.
- The Transportation Division 'buys' crude oil from the Production Division, transports it to Nordstad, and then 'sells' it to the Refining Division. The pipeline from Heimberg to Nordstad has the capacity to carry 40 000 barrels of crude oil per day.
- The Refining Division has been operating at capacity, 30 000 barrels of crude oil a day, using oil from Stavanger-Oil's Production Division (an average of 10 000 barrels per day) and oil bought from other producers and delivered to the Nordstad Refinery (an average of 20 000 barrels per day, at €18 per barrel).
- The Refining Division sells the petrol it produces at €52 per barrel.

Exhibit 18.1 Operating data for Stavanger-Oil

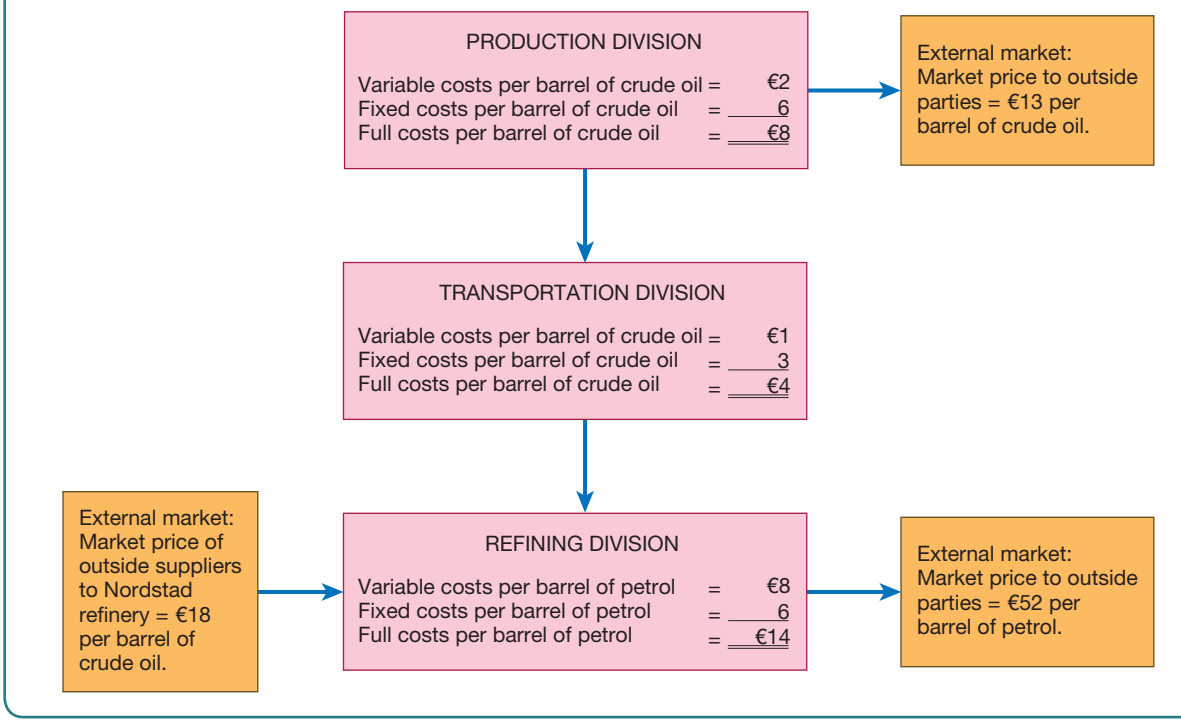


Exhibit 18.1 summarises Stavanger-Oil's variable and fixed costs per unit of the cost driver in each division, the external market prices of buying and selling crude oil, and the external market prices of selling petrol. Consider the divisional operating profits resulting from three transfer-pricing methods applied to a series of transactions involving 100 barrels of crude oil produced by Stavanger-Oil's Production Division.

- Method A: Market-based transfer prices.
- Method B: Cost-based transfer prices at 110% of full costs, where full costs are the cost of the transferred-in product plus the division's own variable and fixed costs.
- Method C: Negotiated transfer prices.

The transfer prices per barrel of crude oil under each method are as follows. The transferred-in cost component in method B is denoted by an asterisk (*).

- *Method A: Market-based transfer prices:*

  From Production Division to Transportation Division = €13

  From Transportation Division to Refining Division = €18
- *Method B: Cost-based transfer prices at 110% of full costs:*

  From Production Division to Transportation Division = 1.10 × (€2 + €6) = €8.80

  From Transportation Division to Refining Division = 1.10 × (€8.80* + €1 + €3) = €14.08
- *Method C: Transfer prices negotiated by divisions to be between market-based and cost-based transfer prices:*

  From Production Division to Transportation Division = €10

  From Transportation Division to Refining Division = €16.75

Exhibit 18.2 presents divisional operating profits per 100 barrels of crude oil reported under each transfer-pricing method. Transfer prices create income for the 'selling' division and corresponding costs for the 'buying' division that cancel out when divisional results are consolidated. The exhibit assumes that the different transfer-pricing methods have no effect on the decisions and actions taken by the Production, Transportation and Refining Division managers. Stavanger-Oil's total operating profit from producing, transporting and refining the 100 barrels of crude oil is therefore the same, €700 (revenues of €2600 minus costs of €800 in production, €400 in transportation and €700 in refining), regardless of internal transfer prices used. Keeping total operating profit the same focuses attention on the effects of different transfer-pricing methods on divisional operating profits. These profits differ under the three methods. The operating profit amounts span a €420 range (€80 to €500) in the Production Division, a €175 range (€100 to €275) in the Transportation Division, and a €392 range (€100 to €492) in the Refining Division. Note that each division would choose a different transfer-pricing method if its sole criterion were to maximise its own divisional operating profit: the Production Division would choose market prices, the Transportation Division would favour negotiated prices, and the Refining Division would choose 110% of full costs. Little wonder that divisional managers take considerable interest in the setting of transfer prices, especially those managers whose compensation or promotion directly depends on their division's operating profit.

Exhibit 18.2 Divisional operating profit of Stavanger-Oil for 100 barrels of crude oil under alternative transfer-pricing methods

	Method A: Internal transfers at market prices	Method B: Internal transfers at 110% of full costs	Method C: Internal transfers at negotiated prices
1 Production Division			
Revenues:			
€13, €8.80, €10, × 100 barrels crude oil	€1300	€880	€1000
Less:			
Division variable costs, €2 × 100 barrels crude oil	200	200	200
Division fixed costs, €6 × 100 barrels crude oil	600	600	600
Division operating profit	€500	€80	€200
2 Transportation Division			
Revenues:			
€18, €14.08, €16.75, × 100 barrels crude oil	€1800	€1408	€1675
Less:			
Transferred-in costs, €13, €8.80, €10, × 100 barrels crude oil	1300	880	1000
Division variable costs, €1 × 100 barrels crude oil	100	100	100
Division fixed costs, €3 × 100 barrels crude oil	300	300	300
Division operating profit	€100	€128	€275
3 Refining Division			
Revenues:			
€52 × 50 barrels petrol	€2600	€2600	€2600
Less:			
Transferred-in costs, €18, €14.08, €16.75, × 100 barrels crude oil	1800	1408	1675
Division variable costs, €8 × 50 barrels petrol	400	400	400
Division fixed costs, €6 × 50 barrels petrol	300	300	300
Division operating profit	€100	€492	€225

Exhibit 18.2 maintains company-wide operating profit at €700 and illustrates how the choice of a transfer-pricing method divides the company-wide operating profit pie among individual divisions. Subsequent sections of this chapter illustrate that the choice of a transfer-pricing method can also affect the decisions that individual division managers make and hence the size of the operating profit pie itself. We consider this effect as we expand our discussion of market-based, cost-based and negotiated transfer prices.

Market-based transfer prices

Perfectly competitive market case

Transferring products or services at market prices generally leads to optimal decisions when three conditions are satisfied: (1) the intermediate market is perfectly competitive, (2) interdependencies of subunits are minimal, and (3) there are no additional costs or benefits to the corporation as a whole in using the market instead of transacting internally. A **perfectly competitive market** exists when there is a homogeneous product with equivalent buying and selling prices and no individual buyers or sellers can affect those prices by their own actions. By using market-based transfer prices in perfectly competitive markets, a company can meet the criteria of goal congruence, management effort and (if desired) subunit autonomy.

Reconsider the Stavanger-Oil example, assuming that there is a perfectly competitive market for crude oil in the Heimberg area. As a result, the Production Division can sell and the Transportation Division can buy as much crude oil as each wants at €13 per barrel. Stavanger-Oil would like its managers to buy or sell crude oil internally. Think about the decisions that Stavanger-Oil's division managers would make if each had the option to sell or buy crude oil externally. If the transfer price between Stavanger-Oil's Production Division and Transportation Division is set below €13, the manager of the Production Division will be motivated to sell all production to outside buyers at €13 per barrel. If the transfer price is set above €13, the manager of the Transportation Division will be motivated to purchase all its crude oil requirements from outside suppliers. A transfer price of €13 will motivate the Production Division and the Transportation Division to buy and sell internally.

Suppose each division manager is motivated to maximise his or her own divisional operating profit. The Production Division will sell (either internally or externally) as much crude oil as it can profitably sell, and the Transportation Division will buy (either internally or externally) as much crude oil as it can profitably transport. At a transfer price of €13, the actions that maximise divisional operating profit are also the actions that maximise operating profit of Stavanger-Oil as a whole. Market prices also serve to evaluate the economic performance and profitability of each division individually.

Distress prices

When supply outstrips demand, market prices may drop well below their historical average. If the drop in prices is expected to be temporary, these low market prices are sometimes called 'distress prices'. Deciding whether a current market price is a distress price is often difficult. The market prices of several agricultural commodities, such as wheat and oats, have stayed for many years at what observers initially believed were temporary distress levels.

Which transfer-pricing method should be used for judging performance if distress prices prevail? Some companies use the distress prices themselves, but others use long-run average prices, or 'normal' market prices. In the short run, the manager of the supplier division should meet the distress price as long as it exceeds the incremental costs of supplying the product or service; if not, the supplying division should stop producing and the buying division should buy the product or service from an outside supplier. These actions would increase overall company-wide operating

income. If the long-run average market price is used, forcing the manager to buy internally at a price above the current market price will hurt the buying division's short-run performance and understate its profitability. If, however, prices remain low in the long run, the manager of the supplying division must decide whether to dispose of some manufacturing facilities or shut down and get the buying division to purchase the product from outside.

Cost-based transfer prices

Cost-based transfer prices are helpful when market prices are unavailable, inappropriate, or too costly to obtain. For example, the product may be specialised or unique, price lists may not be widely available, or the internal product may be different from the products available externally in terms of quality and service.

Full-cost bases

In practice, many companies use transfer prices based on full costs. These prices, however, can lead to suboptimal decisions. Assume that Stavanger-Oil makes internal transfers at 110% of full cost. The Nordstad Refining Division purchases, on average, 20 000 barrels of crude oil per day from a local Nordstad supplier, who delivers the crude oil to the refinery. Purchase and delivery cost €18 per barrel. To reduce crude oil costs, the Refining Division has located an independent producer in Heimberg who is willing to sell 20 000 barrels of crude oil per day at €13 per barrel, delivered to Stavanger-Oil's pipeline in Heimberg. Given Stavanger-Oil's organisation structure, the Transportation Division would purchase the 20 000 barrels of crude oil in Heimberg, transport it to Nordstad and then sell it to the Refining Division. The pipeline has excess capacity and can ship the 20 000 barrels at its variable costs of €1 per barrel without affecting the shipment of crude oil from Stavanger-Oil's own Production Division. Will Stavanger-Oil incur lower costs by purchasing crude oil from the independent producer in Heimberg or by purchasing crude oil from the Nordstad supplier? Will the Refining Division show lower crude oil purchasing costs by using oil from the Heimberg producer or by using its current Nordstad supplier?

The following analysis shows that operating profit of Stavanger-Oil as a whole would be maximised by purchasing oil from the independent Heimberg producer. The analysis compares the incremental costs in all divisions under the two alternatives.

- *Alternative 1* Buy 20 000 barrels from Nordstad supplier at €18 per barrel.

  Total costs to Stavanger-Oil = 20 000 × €18 = €360 000

- *Alternative 2* Buy 20 000 barrels in Heimberg at €13 per barrel and transport it to Nordstad at €1 per barrel variable costs.

  Total costs to Stavanger-Oil = 20 000 × (€13 + €1) = €280 000

There is a reduction in total costs to Stavanger-Oil of €80 000 by using the independent producer in Heimberg.

In turn, suppose the Transportation Division's transfer price to the Refining Division is 110% of full cost. The Refining Division will see its reported division costs increase if the crude oil is purchased from the independent producer in Heimberg:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Transfer price} &= 1.10 \times \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Purchase price}\\ \text{from Heimberg}\\ \text{producer}\end{array} = \begin{array}{c}\text{Unit variable cost}\\ \text{of Transportation}\\ \text{Division}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Unit fixed cost}\\ \text{of Transportation}\\ \text{Division}\end{array}\right)\\ &= 1.10 \times (€13 + €1 + €3) = 1.10 \times €17 = €18.70\end{aligned}$$

- *Alternative 1* Buy 20 000 barrels from Nordstad supplier at €18 per barrel.

  Total costs to Refining Division = 20 000 × €18 = €360 000

- *Alternative 2* Buy 20 000 barrels from the Transportation Division of Stavanger-Oil that are purchased from the independent producer in Heimberg.

  Total costs to Refining Division = 20 000 × €18.70 = €374 000

As a profit centre, the Refining Division can maximise its short-run divisional operating profit by purchasing from the Nordstad supplier (€360 000 versus €374 000).

The transfer-pricing method has led the Refining Division to regard the fixed cost (and the 10% mark-up) of the Transportation Division as a variable cost. Why? Because the Refining Division looks at each barrel that it obtains from the Transportation Division as a variable cost of €18.70 – if 10 barrels are transferred, it costs the Refining Division €187; if 100 barrels are transferred, it costs €1870. From the point of view of Stavanger-Oil as a whole, its variable costs per barrel are €14 (€13 to purchase the oil from the independent producer and €1 to transport it to Nordstad). The remaining €4.70 (€18.70 − €14) per barrel are fixed costs and mark-ups of the Transportation Division. Buying crude oil in Nordstad costs Stavanger-Oil an additional €18 per barrel. For the company, it is cheaper to buy from Heimberg. But the Refining Division sees the problem differently. From its standpoint, it prefers buying from the Nordstad supplier at a cost of €360 000 (20 000 barrels × €18 per barrel) because buying from Heimberg costs the division €374 000 (20 000 barrels × €18.70). Goal incongruence is induced by the transfer price based on full cost plus a mark-up.

What transfer price will promote goal congruence for both the Transportation Division and the Refining Division? The minimum transfer price is €14 per barrel; a transfer price below €14 does not provide the Transportation Division with an incentive to purchase crude oil from the independent producer in Heimberg, while a transfer price above €14 generates contribution margin to cover fixed costs. The maximum transfer price is €18 per barrel; a transfer price above €18 will cause the Refining Division to purchase crude oil from the external market rather than from the Transportation Division. A transfer price between the minimum and maximum transfer prices of €14 and €18, respectively, will promote goal congruence – both divisions will increase their own reported divisional operating profit by purchasing crude oil from the independent producer in Heimberg. In particular, a transfer price based on the full costs of €17 without a mark-up will achieve goal congruence. The Transportation Division will show no operating profit and will be evaluated as a cost centre. Surveys indicate that managers prefer to use full-cost transfer pricing because it yields relevant costs for long-run decisions and because it facilitates pricing on the basis of full product costs.

Using full-cost transfer prices that include an allocation of fixed overhead costs raises other issues. How are indirect costs allocated to products? Have the correct activities, cost pools and cost drivers been identified? Are the chosen overhead rates actual or budgeted rates? The issues here are similar to the issues that arise in allocating fixed costs (Chapter 5). Full-cost-based transfer prices calculated using activity-based cost drivers can provide more refined allocation bases for allocating costs to products. Using budgeted costs and budgeted rates lets both divisions know the transfer price in advance. Also variations in the quantity of units produced by the selling division do not affect the transfer price.

Prorating the difference between minimum and maximum transfer prices

An alternative cost-based approach is for Stavanger-Oil to choose a transfer price that splits the €4 difference between the maximum transfer price the Refining Division is willing to pay and the minimum transfer price the Transportation Division wants on some equitable basis. Suppose Stavanger-Oil allocates the €4 difference on the basis of the budgeted variable costs incurred by

the Transportation Division and the Refining Division for a given quantity of crude oil. Using the data in Exhibit 18.2, the variable costs are as follows:

Transportation Division to transport 100 barrels of crude oil	€100
Refining Division to refine 100 barrels of crude oil	400
	€500

The Transportation Division gets to keep (€100/€500) × €4.00 = €0.80, and the Refining Division gets to keep (€400/€500) × €4.00 = €3.20 of the €4 difference. That is, the transfer price between the Transportation Division and the Refining Division would be €14.80 per barrel of crude oil (€13 purchase cost + €1 variable costs + €0.80 that the Transportation Division gets to keep). In essence, this approach is a budgeted variable cost plus transfer price; the 'plus' indicates the setting of a transfer price above variable costs.

To decide on the €0.80 and €3.20 allocation of the €4.00 contribution to total corporate operating profit per barrel, the divisions must share information about their variable costs. In effect, each division does not operate (at least for this transaction) in a totally decentralised manner. Because most organisations are hybrids of centralisation and decentralisation anyway, this approach deserves serious consideration when transfers are significant. Note, however, that each division has an incentive to overstate its variable costs in order to receive a more favourable transfer price.

Dual pricing

There is seldom a *single* transfer price that simultaneously meets the criteria of goal congruence, management effort and subunit autonomy. Some companies turn to **dual pricing**, using two separate transfer-pricing methods to price each interdivisional transaction. An example of dual pricing arises when the selling division receives a full cost plus mark-up-based price and the buying division pays the market price for the internally transferred products. Assume that Stavanger-Oil purchases crude oil from the independent producer in Heimberg at €13 per barrel. One way of recording the journal entry for the transfer between the Transportation Division and the Refining Division is as follows:

1. Credit the Transportation Division (the selling division) with the 110%-of-full-cost transfer price of €18.70 per barrel of crude oil.
2. Debit the Refining Division (the buying division) with the market-based transfer price of €18 per barrel of crude oil.
3. Debit a corporate cost account for the €0.70 (€18.70 − €18.00) difference between the two transfer prices for the cost of crude oil borne by corporate rather than the Refining Division.

The dual-price method promotes goal congruence because it makes the Refining Division no worse off if it purchases the crude oil from the Transportation Division rather than from the outside supplier. In either case, the Refining Division's cost is €18 per barrel of crude oil. This dual-price system in essence gives the Transportation Division a corporate subsidy. The results of dual pricing? The operating profit for Stavanger-Oil as a whole is less than the sum of the operating profit of the divisions.

Dual pricing is not widely used in practice even though it reduces the goal-congruence problems associated with a pure cost-plus-based transfer-pricing method. One concern of top management is that the manager of the supplying division does not have sufficient incentive to control costs with a dual-price system. A second concern is that the dual-price system confuses division managers about the level of decentralisation top management seeks. Above all, dual pricing tends to insulate managers from the frictions of the marketplace. Managers should know as much as possible about their subunit's buying and selling markets, and dual pricing reduces the incentive to gain this knowledge.

Negotiated transfer prices

Negotiated transfer prices arise as the outcome of a bargaining process between selling and buying divisions. Consider again the choice of a transfer price between the Transportation and Refining Divisions of Stavanger-Oil. The Transportation Division has excess capacity that it can use to transport oil from Heimberg to Nordstad. The Transportation Division will only be willing to 'sell' oil to the Refining Division if the transfer price equals or exceeds €14 per barrel of crude oil (its variable costs). The Refining Division will only be willing to 'buy' crude oil from the Transportation Division if the cost equals or is below €18 per barrel (the price at which the Refining Division can buy crude oil in Nordstad).

From the viewpoint of Stavanger-Oil as a whole, operating profit would be maximised if the Refining Division purchased from the Transportation Division rather than from the Nordstad market (incremental costs of €14 per barrel versus incremental costs of €18 per barrel). Both divisions would be interested in transacting with each other if the transfer price is set between €14 and €18. For example, a transfer price of €16.75 per barrel will increase the Transportation Division's operating profit by €16.75 − €14 = €2.75 per barrel. It will increase the Refining Division's operating profit by €18 − €16.75 = €1.25 per barrel because Refining can now 'buy' the oil for €16.75 inside rather than for €18 outside.

The key question is where between the €14 and €18 will the transfer price be? The answer depends on the bargaining strengths of the two divisions. Negotiations become particularly sensitive if Stavanger-Oil evaluates each division's performance on the basis of divisional operating profit. The price negotiated by the two divisions will, in general, have no specific relationship to either costs or market price. But cost and price information are often useful starting points in the negotiation process.

A general guideline for transfer-pricing situations

Is there an all-pervasive rule for transfer pricing that leads towards optimal decisions for the organisation as a whole? No. Why? Because the three criteria of goal congruence, management effort and subunit autonomy must all be considered simultaneously. The following general guideline, however, has proved to be a helpful first step in setting a minimum transfer price in many specific situations:

$$\begin{array}{c}\text{Minimum}\\ \text{transfer price}\end{array} = \begin{array}{c}\text{Additional } \textit{incremental} \text{ or } \textit{outlay} \text{ costs per}\\ \text{unit incurred up to the point of transfer}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\textit{Opportunity costs} \text{ per unit}\\ \text{to the supplying division}\end{array}$$

The term *incremental* or *outlay costs* in this context represents the additional costs that are directly associated with the production and transfer of the products or services. *Opportunity costs* are defined here as the maximum contribution forgone by the supplying division if the products or services are transferred internally. For example, if the supplying division is operating at capacity, the opportunity cost of transferring a unit internally rather than selling it externally is equal to the market price minus variable costs. We distinguish incremental costs from opportunity costs because the accounting system typically records incremental costs but not opportunity costs. We illustrate the general guideline in some specific situations using data from the Production and Transportation Divisions of Stavanger-Oil.

1 A perfectly competitive market for the intermediate product exists, and the supplying division has no idle capacity. If the market for crude oil is perfectly competitive, the Production Division can sell all the crude oil it produces to the external market at €13 per barrel, and it will have no idle capacity. The Production Division's incremental costs (see Exhibit 18.1) are €2 per barrel of crude oil. The Production Division's opportunity cost per barrel of transferring the

oil internally is the contribution margin per barrel of €11 (market price, €13 – variable cost, €2) forgone by not selling the crude oil in the external market. In this case,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Minimum transfer price per barrel} &= \text{Incremental costs per barrel} + \text{Opportunity costs per barrel}\\ &= €2 + €11\\ &= €13 = \text{Market price per barrel}\end{aligned}$$

Market-based transfer prices are ideal in perfectly competitive markets when there is no idle capacity.

2 An intermediate market exists that is not perfectly competitive, and the supplying division has idle capacity. In markets that are not perfectly competitive, capacity utilisation can be increased only by cutting prices. Idle capacity exists because cutting prices is often not worthwhile – it decreases operating profit.

If the Production Division has idle capacity, its opportunity cost of transferring the oil internally is zero because the division does not forgo any external sales and hence does not forgo any contribution margin from internal transfers. In this case,

$$\text{Minimum transfer price per barrel} = \text{Incremental costs per barrel} = €2 \text{ per barrel}$$

Note that any transfer price between €2 and €13 (the price at which the Transportation Division can buy crude oil in Heimberg) motivates the Production Division to produce and sell crude oil to the Transportation Division and the Transportation Division to buy crude oil from the Production Division. In this situation, the company could either use a cost-based transfer price or allow the two divisions to negotiate a transfer price between themselves.

In general, though, in markets that are not perfectly competitive, the potential to influence demand and operating profit through prices makes measuring opportunity costs more complicated. The transfer price depends on constantly changing levels of supply and demand. There is not just one transfer price; rather, a transfer-pricing schedule yields the transfer price for various quantities supplied and demanded, depending on the incremental costs and opportunity costs of the units transferred.

3 No market exists for the intermediate product. This would occur, for example, in the Stavanger-Oil case if oil from the production well flows directly into the pipeline and cannot be sold to outside parties. Here, the opportunity cost of supplying crude oil internally is zero because the inability to sell crude oil externally means no contribution margin is forgone. At the Production Division of Stavanger-Oil, the minimum transfer price under the general guideline would be the incremental costs per barrel of €2. As in the previous case, any transfer price between €2 and €13 will achieve goal congruence. If the transfer price is set at €2, of course, the Production Division would never record positive operating profit and would show poor performance. One approach to overcoming this problem is to oblige the Transportation Division to make a lump-sum payment to cover fixed costs and generate some operating profit for the Production Division while the Production Division continues to make transfers at incremental costs of €2 per barrel.

Transfer pricing and tax considerations

Transfer prices often have tax implications. Tax factors include not only income taxes, but also payroll taxes, customs duties, tariffs, sales taxes, value added taxes, environment-related taxes and other government levies on organisations. Full consideration of tax aspects of transfer-pricing decisions is beyond the scope of this book. Our aim here is to highlight tax factors and, in particular, income taxes as an important consideration in transfer-pricing decisions. Multinational firms often consider ways of charging artificially low or high prices for sales between related parties in high-tax and low-tax jurisdictions, in order to shift income and reduce overall tax incursion.

Consider the Stavanger-Oil data in Exhibit 18.2. Assume that the Production Division based in the Heimberg area pays income taxes at 30% of operating profit and that both the Transportation and Refining Divisions based in Nordstad pay profit taxes at 20% of operating profit. Stavanger-Oil would minimise its total profit tax payments with the 110%-of-full-costs transfer-pricing method, as shown in the following table:

	Operating profit for 100 barrels of crude oil			Income tax on 100 barrels of crude oil		
Transfer-pricing method	Production Division (1)	Transportation and Refining Divisions (2)	Total (3) = (1) + (2)	Production Division (4) = 0.30 × (1)	Transportation and Refining Divisions (5) = 0.20 × (2)	Total (6) = (4) + (5)
A Market price	€500	€200	€700	€150	€40	€190
B 110% of full costs	80	620	700	24	124	148
C Negotiated price	200	500	700	60	100	160

What needs to be borne in mind is that tax considerations raise issues that may conflict with other objectives of transfer pricing. Suppose that the market for crude oil in Heimberg is perfectly competitive. In this case, the market-based transfer price achieves goal congruence and provides effort incentives. It also helps Stavanger-Oil to evaluate the economic profitability of the Production Division. But it is costly from an income tax standpoint.

Stavanger-Oil would favour using 110% of full costs for tax reporting. Tax laws in the Nordstad area and the Heimberg area constrain this option. In particular, the Heimberg tax authorities are fully aware of Stavanger-Oil's incentives to minimise income taxes by reducing the profits reported in Heimberg. They would challenge any attempts to shift profits to the Transportation and Refining Divisions through a low transfer price.

The perfectly competitive market for crude oil in Heimberg would probably force Stavanger-Oil to use the market price for transfers from the Production Division to the Transportation Division. Stavanger-Oil might successfully argue that the transfer price should be set below the market price because the Production Division incurs no marketing and distribution costs when 'selling' crude oil to the Transportation Division.

To meet multiple transfer-pricing objectives, a company may choose to keep one set of accounting records for tax reporting and a second set for internal management reporting. The difficulty here is that tax authorities may interpret two sets of books as suggestive of the company manipulating its reported taxable profits to avoid tax payments.

Additional factors that arise in multinational transfer pricing include tariffs and customs duties levied on imports of products into a country. The issues here are similar to the income tax considerations discussed earlier – companies will have incentives to lower transfer prices for products imported into a country to reduce the tariffs and customs duties that those products will attract.

In addition to the various motivations for choosing transfer prices described so far, multinational transfer prices are sometimes influenced by restrictions that some countries place on the payment of income or dividends to parties outside their national borders. By increasing the prices of goods or services transferred into divisions in these countries, companies can increase the funds paid out of these countries without appearing to violate income or dividend restrictions. Such practices have become widespread and this leads to differences between the profitability of firms with only domestic operations versus others which have activities across multiple countries. For instance, it has been reported that German affiliates of multinational firms save on average more than a quarter in taxes relative to comparable domestic German firms. In the UK, taxable income as a proportion of total assets reported by subsidiaries of foreign multinationals are more than 12 percent lower than those of comparable domestic standalone companies (De Mooj and Liu, 2020).

Transfer pricing has long been an important issue for tax directors and some government authorities. It is now firmly on the agenda of world leaders. The number of countries that have

Concepts in action

The European Commission thinks Apple's transfer price arrangements are unfair

The Irish government put together a low tax model during the 1980s to attract foreign direct investment. The country welcomed companies such as Apple and Google to operate some activities on its shores. But there has been pressure for the low-tax jurisdiction to dismantle the 'double Irish structure'. In the case of Apple, the European Commission (EC) indicated in 2016 that Apple had been granted illegal state aid in Ireland and owed €13 billion in taxes. But in 2020, the General Court ruled against the EC finding that Apple's transfer pricing arrangements in Ireland were not illegal state aid. The EC has appealed the decision claiming that the General Court relied on 'inadmissible evidence'. If the Court of Justice of the European Union (CJEU) ends up seeing the General Court's judgment was made in 'error', then Apple will have to pay the taxes owed.

The contentious 'Double Irish' is viewed as a base erosion and profit-shifting corporate tax tool, used in the past mostly by many US multinationals to avoid corporate taxation on most non-US profits. For instance, suppose $3 000 000 was sent by Meta from Spain to Ireland, and then subsequently sent on to a 'tax haven' such as Bermuda. Irish taxation would therefore be by-passed. Google has made very extensive use of the double Irish loophole to funnel billions in global profits through Ireland and on to Bermuda, effectively putting them beyond the reach of US tax authorities. Google shifted more than $75.4 billion (€63 billion) in profits out of the Republic using the controversial double-Irish tax arrangement in 2019, which was the last year in which it used the loophole.

The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) has run a project on base erosion and profit shifting, which produced a 15-point action plan. In the United States, the Internal Revenue Service (IRS) has made a substantial investment in transfer-pricing resources. As a consequence, the IRS has delivered a 'notice of deficiency' to Facebook for $3 billion to $5 billion, plus interest and penalties, following an audit of the value at which Facebook transferred its intellectual property to its Irish entity. Another transfer-pricing dispute occurred with GlaxoSmithKline, a UK-based pharmaceutical and health care company, which then had to pay $3.4 billion to cover back taxes and interest.

Sources: Taylor, C. (2021) 'Google used "double-Irish" to shift $75.4bn in profits out of Ireland', *The Irish Times*, 17 April (https://www.irishtimes.com/business/technology/google-used-double-irish-to-shift-75-4bn-in-profits-out-of-ireland-1.4540519); De Mooj, R. and Liu, L (2018) 'At a cost: the real effects of transfer pricing regulations' (www.ntanet.org/wp-content/uploads/proceedings/2017/NTA2017-132.pdf).

imposed transfer-pricing regulations has grown rapidly in the past decade. Countries such as Canada, Greece, India and Turkey have focused on intellectual-property values, the costs of back-office functions, and losses of any type. Countries rich in minerals and natural resources, including Australia, Chile and Indonesia, have introduced new tax policies and transfer-pricing guidelines aimed at increasing the local tax base, especially in the area of outbound commodities. There is much coordinated action by governments.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1. A management control system is a means of gathering and using information to aid and coordinate the process of making planning and control decisions throughout the organisation, and to guide employee behaviour.
2. Effective management control systems are closely aligned to the organisation's strategy, fit the organisation's structure, and motivate managers and employees to give effort to achieve the organisation's goals.
3. The benefits of decentralisation include (a) greater responsiveness to local needs, (b) gains from quicker decision making, (c) increased motivation of subunit managers, (d) greater management development and learning, and (e) sharper management focus. The costs of decentralisation include (a) dysfunctional decision making (control loss), (b) duplication of activities, (c) decreased loyalty towards the organisation, and (d) increased costs of information gathering.

4 Transfer prices can be (a) market-based, (b) cost-based, or (c) negotiated. Different transfer-pricing methods produce different revenues and costs for individual subunits, and hence different operating profits for them.

5 In perfectly competitive markets, there is no idle capacity, and division managers can buy and sell as much as they want at the market price. Setting the transfer price at the market price motivates division managers to deal internally and to take exactly the same actions as they would if they were dealing in the external market.

6 A transfer price based on full cost plus a mark-up may lead to suboptimal decisions because it leads the 'buying' division to regard the fixed costs and the mark-up of the selling division as variable costs.

7 When there is excess capacity, the transfer price range for negotiations generally lies between the minimum price at which the selling division is willing to sell (its variable costs) and the maximum price the buying division is willing to pay (the price at which the product is available from outside suppliers).

8 The general guideline for transfer pricing states that the minimum transfer price equals the incremental costs per unit incurred up to the point of transfer plus the opportunity costs per unit to the supplying division resulting from transferring products or services internally.

9 Transfer prices can reduce income tax payments by recognising higher profits in low-tax-rate countries and lower profits in high-tax-rate countries.

References and further reading

Chwallek, A. and Hebben, M. (2021) 'Coca-Cola reorganizes its European business', Food Service (https://www.food-service.de/international/int-news/coca-cola--corporate-restructuring-coca-cola-reorganizes-its-european-business-47948).

Mooij, R. and Liu, L. 2020. 'At a cost: The real effects of transfer pricing regulations', *IMF Economic Review*, Palgrave Macmillan; International Monetary Fund, vol. 68(1), pp. 268–306, March.

Edgecliffe-Johnson, A. and Indap, S. (2021) 'Jeff Immelt shares out blame for GE's decline', *Financial Times*, 26 February (https://www.ft.com/content/a64c4356-a42e-4883-acdb-13ced2bdcaea).

Unilever (2022) 'Unilever simplifies organisation' (https://www.unilever.com/news/press-and-media/press-releases/2022/unilever-simplifies-organisation/)

CHAPTER 18

Assessment material

Review questions

18.1 What is a management control system?

18.2 Describe three criteria you would use to evaluate whether a management control system is effective.

18.3 What is the relationship among motivation, goal congruence and effort?

18.4 Name three benefits and two costs of decentralisation.

18.5 'Organisations typically adopt a consistent decentralisation or centralisation philosophy across all their business functions.' Do you agree? Explain.

18.6 'Transfer pricing is confined to profit centres.' Do you agree? Why?

18.7 Under what conditions is a market-based transfer price optimal?

18.8 Give two reasons why a dual-price approach to transfer pricing is not widely used.

18.9 'Under the general transfer-pricing guideline, the minimum transfer price will vary depending on whether the supplying division has idle capacity or not.' Do you agree? Explain.

18.10 Why should managers consider income tax issues when choosing a transfer-pricing method?

Exercises

Basic level

18.11 **Goals of public accounting firms** (10 minutes)

All personnel, including partners, of public accounting firms must usually turn in biweekly time reports, showing how many hours were devoted to their various duties. These firms have traditionally looked unfavourably on idle or unassigned staff time. They have looked favourably on heavy percentages of chargeable time because this maximises revenue.

Required

What effect is such a policy likely to have on the behaviour of the firm's personnel? Can you relate this practice to the problem of goal congruence that was discussed in this chapter? How?

18.12 **Decentralisation, goal congruence, responsibility centres** (15 minutes)

Montaigne-Chimie SA consists of seven operating divisions, each of which operates independently. The operating divisions are supported by a number of support divisions such as R&D, labour

relations and environmental management. The environmental management group consists of 20 environmental engineers. These engineers must seek out business from the operating divisions – that is, the projects they work on must be mutually agreed to and paid for by one of the operating divisions. Under Montaigne-Chimie's rules, the environmental group is required to charge the operating divisions for environmental services at cost.

Required

1 Is the environmental management organisation centralised or decentralised?

2 What type of responsibility centre is the environmental management group?

3 What benefits and problems do you see in structuring the environmental management group the way Montaigne-Chimie has? Does it lead to goal congruence and motivation?

18.13 **Transfer-pricing dispute** (20 minutes)

Gustavsson AB, manufacturer of tractors and other heavy farm equipment, is organised along decentralised lines, with each manufacturing division operating as a separate profit centre. Each divisional manager has been delegated full authority on all decisions involving the sale of that division's output both to outsiders and to other divisions of Gustavsson. Division C has in the past always purchased its requirement of a particular tractor-engine component from Division A. However, when informed that Division A is increasing its selling price to €150, Division C's manager decides to purchase the engine component from outside suppliers.

Division C can purchase the component for €135 on the open market. Division A insists that, because of the recent installation of some highly specialised equipment and the resulting high depreciation charges, it will not be able to earn an adequate return on its investment unless it raises its price. Division A's manager appeals to top management of Gustavsson for support in the dispute with Division C and supplies the following operating data:

C's annual purchases of tractor-engine component	1000 units
A's variable costs per unit of tractor-engine component	€120
A's fixed costs per unit of tractor-engine component	€20

Required

1 Assume that there are no alternative uses for internal facilities. Determine whether the company as a whole will benefit if Division C purchases the component from outside suppliers for €135 per unit.

2 Assume that internal facilities of Division A would not otherwise be idle. By not producing the 1000 units for Division C, Division A's equipment and other facilities would be used for other production operations that would result in annual cash-operating savings of €18 000. Should Division C purchase from outside suppliers?

3 Assume that there are no alternative uses for Division A's internal facilities and that the price from outsiders drops €20. Should Division C purchase from outside suppliers?

18.14 **Transfer-pricing problem** (continuation of Exercise 18.13) (5 minutes)

Refer to Exercise 18.13. Assume that Division A can sell the 1000 units to other customers at €155 per unit with variable marketing costs of €5 per unit.

Required

Determine whether Gustavsson will benefit if Division C purchases the 1000 components from outside suppliers at €135 per unit.

*18.15 Ethics, transfer pricing (20 minutes)

The Leipzig Division of Bohemia Industries makes two component parts, X23 and Y99. It supplies X23 to the Hanover Division to be used in the manufacture of car engines and supplies Y99 to the Bremen Division to be used in the manufacture of car gearboxes. The Leipzig Division is the only supplier of these specialised components. When transfers are made in-house, Bohemia Industries transfers products at full cost (calculated using an activity-based cost system) plus 10%. The unit cost information for X23 and Y99 is as follows:

	X23	Y99
Variable costs per unit	€11	€8
Allocated fixed costs per unit	€14	€7

The Hanover Division feels that the price for X23 is too high and has told Leipzig that it is trying to locate an outside vendor to supply the part at a lower price. Wilhelm von Kalkstein, Leipzig Division's management accountant, calls Eberhard Dunkelmann, his assistant, into his office. 'We can't afford to lose the Hanover Division business. Our fixed costs won't go away even if we stop supplying Hanover, and this means that the costs of supplying Y99 to Bremen will increase. Then they'll start wanting to buy from outside. We're seriously looking at possibly shutting down the entire division if we lose the Hanover business. See if you can find a different method of allocating fixed costs that will decrease X23's transfer price to €23.65. I think Bremen will be willing to pay a somewhat higher price for Y99.'

Eberhard is uncomfortable making any changes because he knows that any other allocation method would violate corporate guidelines on overhead cost allocation. Still, he believes that changing the fixed-cost allocations is in the best interest of Bohemia Industries. Eberhard is confused about what he should do.

Required

1. Calculate the transfer prices for X23 and Y99.
2. Calculate the fixed cost per unit that Eberhard would have to allocate to X23 to enable Leipzig to transfer X23 at €23.65 per unit.
3. Evaluate whether Wilhelm von Kalkstein's suggestion to Eberhard to change the fixed-cost allocations is ethical. Would it be ethical for Eberhard to revise the fixed-cost allocations at his boss's urging? What steps should he take to resolve this situation?

Intermediate level

18.16 Transfer-pricing methods, goal congruence (30 minutes)

Ilmajoki-Lumber Oy has a Raw Lumber Division and Finished Lumber Division. The variable costs are:

- Raw Lumber Division: €100 per 100 board-metres of raw lumber.
- Finished Lumber Division: €125 per 100 board-metres of finished lumber.

Assume that there is no waste incurred in processing raw lumber into finished lumber. Raw lumber can be sold at €200 per 100 board-metres. Finished lumber can be sold at €275 per 100 board-metres.

Required

1. Should Ilmajoki-Lumber process raw lumber into its finished form?
2. Assume that internal transfers are made at 110% of variable costs. Will each division maximise its contribution to divisional operating profit by adopting the action that is in the best interests of Ilmajoki-Lumber?

3 Assume that internal transfers are made at market prices. Will each division maximise its contribution to divisional operating profit by adopting the action that is in the best interests of Ilmajoki-Lumber?

18.17 Effect of alternative transfer-pricing methods on divisional operating profit (CMA, adapted) (30 minutes)

Escuelas SA has two divisions. The Mining Division makes toldine, which is then transferred to the Metals Division. The toldine is further processed by the Metals Division and is sold to customers at a price of €150 per unit. The Mining Division is currently required by Escuelas to transfer its total yearly output of 400 000 units of toldine to the Metals Division at 110% of full manufacturing cost. Unlimited quantities of toldine can be purchased and sold on the outside market at €90 per unit. To sell the toldine it produces at €90 per unit on the outside market, the Mining Division would have to incur variable marketing and distribution costs of €5 per unit. Similarly, if the Metals Division purchased toldine from the outside market, it would have to incur variable purchasing costs of €3 per unit.

The following table gives the manufacturing costs per unit in the Mining and Metals Divisions for the year:

	Mining Division	Metals Division
Direct materials	€12	€6
Direct manufacturing labour costs	16	20
Manufacturing overhead costs	32*	25†
Manufacturing costs per unit	€60	€51

* Manufacturing overhead costs in the Mining Division are 25% fixed and 75% variable.
† Manufacturing overhead costs in the Metals Division are 60% fixed and 40% variable.

Required

1 Calculate the operating profits for the Mining and Metals Divisions for the 400 000 units of toldine transferred under each of the following transfer-pricing methods: (a) market price, and (b) 110% of full manufacturing costs.

2 Suppose Escuelas rewards each division manager with a bonus, calculated as 1% of divisional operating profit (if positive). What is the amount of bonus that will be paid to each division manager under each of the transfer-pricing methods in requirement 1? Which transfer-pricing method will each division manager prefer to use?

3 What arguments would Arturo Tuzón, manager of the Mining Division, make to support the transfer-pricing method that he prefers?

18.18 Goal congruence, negotiated transfer prices (continuation of Exercise 18.17) (20 minutes)

Refer to the information in Exercise 18.17. Suppose that the Mining Division is not required to transfer its yearly output of 400 000 units of toldine to the Metals Division.

Required

1 From the standpoint of Escuelas, SA, as a whole, what quantity of toldine should the Mining Division transfer to the Metals Division?

2 Now suppose each division manager acts autonomously to maximise the division's operating profit. What range of transfer prices will result in managers of the Metals and Mining Divisions achieving the actions determined to be optimal in requirement 1? Explain your answer.

3 Would you recommend that Escuelas allow the divisions to buy and sell toldine in the open market, and to negotiate the transfer price between themselves? Explain your answer.

*18.19 Pertinent transfer price (20–30 minutes)

Liberaki SA has two divisions, A and B, which manufacture bicycles. Division A produces the bicycle frame, and Division B assembles the bicycle components onto the frame. There is a market for both the subassembly and the final product. Each division has been designated as a profit centre. The transfer price for the subassembly has been set at the long-run average market price. The following data are available to each division:

Estimated selling price for final product	€300
Long-run average selling price for intermediate product	200
Incremental costs for completion in Division B	150
Incremental costs in Division A	120

The manager of Division B has made the following calculation:

Selling price for final product		€300
Transferred-in costs (market)	€200	
Incremental costs for completion	150	350
Contribution (loss) on product		€(50)

Required

1 Should transfers be made to Division B if there is no excess capacity in Division A? Is the market price the correct transfer price?

2 Assume that Division A's maximum capacity for this product is 1000 units per month and sales to the intermediate market are now 800 units. Should 200 units be transferred to Division B? At what transfer price? Assume that for a variety of reasons, A will maintain the €200 selling price indefinitely; that is, A is not considering lowering the price to outsiders even if idle capacity exists.

3 Suppose Division A quoted a transfer price of €150 for up to 200 units. What would be the contribution to the company as a whole if the transfer were made? As manager of Division B, would you be inclined to buy at €150?

18.20 Transfer-pricing issues (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006) (25 minutes)

ZP Plc operates two subsidiaries, X and Y. X is a component manufacturing subsidiary and Y is an assembly and final product subsidiary. Both subsidiaries produce one type of output only. Subsidiary Y needs one component from Subsidiary X for every unit of Product W produced. Subsidiary X transfers to Subsidiary Y all of the components needed to produce Product W. Subsidiary X also sells components on the external market. The following budgeted information is available for each subsidiary:

	X	Y
Market price per component	$800	
Market price per unit of W	$1 200	
Production costs per component	$600	
Assembly costs per unit of W	$400	
Non-production fixed costs	$1.5m	$1.3m
External demand	10 000 units	12 000 units
Capacity	22 000 units	
Taxation rates	25%	30%

The production cost per component is 60% variable. The fixed production costs are absorbed based on budgeted output. X sets a transfer price at marginal cost plus 70%.

Required

Calculate the post-tax profit generated by each subsidiary.

18.21 Transfer-pricing issues (From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper) (40 minutes)

The ZZ Group has two divisions, X and Y. Each division produces only one type of product: X produces a component, C and Y produces a finished product, FP. Each FP needs one C. It is the current policy of the group for C to be transferred to Division Y at the marginal cost of £10 per component and that Y must buy all the components it needs from X. The markets for the component and the finished product are competitive and price sensitive. Component C is produced by many other companies but it is thought that the external demand for the next year could increase to 1000 units more than the sales volume shown in the current budget for Division X. Budgeted data, taken from the ZZ Group internal information system, for the divisions for the next year is as follows:

Division X		
Income statement		
Sales	£70 000	
Cost of sales		
Variable costs	£50 000	
Contribution	£20 000	
Fixed costs (controllable)	£15 000	
Profit	£5 000	
Production/Sales (units)	5000	(3000 of which are transferred to Division Y)
External demand (units)	3000	(Only 2000 of which can be currently satisfied)
Capacity (units)	5000	
External market price per unit	£20	
Balance sheet extract		
Capital employed	£60 000	
Other information		
Cost of capital charge	10%	
Division Y		
Income statement		
Sales	£270 000	
Cost of sales		
Variable costs	£114 000	
Contribution	£156 000	
Fixed costs (controllable)	£100 000	
Profit	£56 000	
Production/Sales (units)	3000	
Capacity (units)	7000	
Market price per unit	£90	
Balance sheet extract		
Capital employed	£110 000	
Other information		
Cost of capital charge	10%	

Four measures are used to evaluate the performance of the divisional managers. Based on the data above, the budgeted performance measures for the two divisions are as follows:

	Division X	Division Y
Residual income	(£1 000)	£45 000
Return on capital employed	8.33%	50.91%
Operating profit margin	7.14%	20.74%
Asset turnover	1.17	2.46

Proposed policy

ZZ Group is thinking of giving the divisional managers the freedom to set their own transfer price and to buy the components from external suppliers but there are concerns about problems that could arise by granting such autonomy.

Required

1 If the transfer price of the component is set by the manager of Division X at the current market price (£20 per component), recalculate the budgeted performance measures for each division.

2 Discuss the changes to the performance measures of the divisions that would arise as a result of altering the transfer price to £20 per component.

3 **a** Explain the problems that could arise for each of the divisional managers and for ZZ Group as a whole as a result of giving full autonomy to the divisional managers.

b Discuss how the problems you have explained could be resolved without resorting to a policy of imposed transfer prices.

Advanced level

***18.22 Pricing in imperfect markets** (continuation of Exercise 18.19) (30–40 minutes)

Refer to Exercise 18.19.

Required

1 Suppose the manager of Division A has the option of (a) cutting the external price to €195 with the certainty that sales will rise to 1000 units, or (b) maintaining the outside price of €200 for the 800 units and transferring the 200 units to Division B at some price that would produce the same operating profit for Division A. What transfer price would produce the same operating profit for Division A? Does that price coincide with that produced by the general guideline in the chapter so that the desirable decision for the company as a whole would result?

2 Suppose that if the selling price for the intermediate product is dropped to €195, outside sales can be increased to 900 units. Division B wants to acquire as many as 200 units if the transfer price is acceptable. For simplicity, assume that there is no outside market for the final 100 units of Division A's capacity.

a Using the general guideline, what is (are) the minimum transfer price(s) that should lead to the correct economic decision? Ignore performance-evaluation considerations.

b Compare the total contributions under the alternatives to show why the transfer price(s) recommended lead(s) to the optimal economic decision.

18.23 From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Intermediate Level, Management Accounting – Decision Making, November 2003 (45 minutes)

P Ltd has two divisions, Q and R that operate as profit centres. Division Q has recently been set up to provide a component (Comp1) which division R uses to produce its product (ProdX). Prior to division Q being established, division R purchased the component on the external market at a price of £160 per unit. Division Q has an external market for Comp1 and also transfers to division R. Division R uses one unit of Comp1 to produce ProdX which is sold externally. There are no other products produced and sold by the divisions.

Costs associated with the production of Comp1 and ProdX are as follows:

	Comp1	ProdX
Fixed costs	£50 000 per annum	£100 000 per annum
Variable costs		£250 per unit*
Direct labour	£15 per hour	
Materials	£25 per unit	
Variable overheads	£3 per labour-hour	

* The variable cost for ProdX excludes the cost of the component.

The first unit of Comp1 will take 20 labour-hours to produce. However, it is known that the work of direct labour is subject to a 90% learning curve.

The forecast external annual sales and capacity levels for the divisions are as follows:

External sales		
Division Q	Comp1	5000 units at a price of £150 per unit
Division R	ProdX	10 000 units at a price of £500 per unit
Production capacity		
Division Q	Comp1	13 000 units
Division R	ProdX	15 000 units

Required

1 State, with reasons, the volume of Comp1 which division Q would choose to produce in the first year and calculate the marginal cost per unit of Comp1 at this volume.

2 **a** Explain the criteria an effective system of transfer pricing should satisfy.

b Discuss one context in which a transfer price based on marginal cost would be appropriate and describe any issues that may arise from such a transfer-pricing policy.

c Identify the minimum transfer price that division Q would wish to charge and the maximum transfer price which division R would want to pay for the Comp1. Discuss the implications for the divisions and for the group as a whole of the transfer prices that you have identified.

18.24 From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Operations, section B, November 2014 (15 minutes)

A company, which operates from a number of different locations, uses a system of centralised purchasing. The directors of the company are considering whether to change to a system of decentralised purchasing.

Required

Explain the benefits that may result from the company using a decentralised purchasing system.

18.25 From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Management, Section B, November 2014 (50 minutes)

AA and BB are two divisions of the ZZ Group. The AA division manufactures electrical components, which it sells to other divisions and external customers.

The BB division has designed a new product, Product B, and has asked AA to supply the electrical component, Component A, that is needed in the new product. This will be a completely new style of component. Each unit of Product B will require one Component A. This component will not be sold by AA to external customers. AA has quoted a transfer price to BB of £45 for each unit of Component A.

It is the policy of the ZZ Group to reward managers based on their individual division's return on capital employed.

Details of the monthly production for each division are as follows:

AA division

Output	Component A will be produced in batches of 1000 units. The maximum capacity is 6000 components per month.
Variable cost	£15 per component
Fixed costs	£50 000 (these are incurred specifically to produce Component A)

BB division

Output	Product B will be produced in batches of 1000 units. The maximum customer demand is 6000 units of Product B per month.
Variable cost	£9 per unit plus the cost of Component A
Fixed costs	£75 000 (these are incurred specifically to produce Product B)

The relationship between monthly customer demand and the selling price of Product B is shown below:

Demand	Selling price per unit
1000 units	£120
2000 units	£110
3000 units	£100
4000 units	£90
5000 units	£80
6000 units	£67

Required

1 Calculate, based on a transfer price of £45 per Component A, the monthly profit that would be earned as a result of selling Product B by:
   - **a** BB division
   - **b** AA division
   - **c** ZZ Group.

2 Calculate the maximum monthly profit from the sale of Product B for the ZZ Group.

3 Calculate, using the marginal cost of Component A as the transfer price, the monthly profit that would be earned as a result of selling Product B by:
   - **a** BB division
   - **b** AA division
   - **c** ZZ Group.

4 Discuss, using the above scenario, the problems of setting a transfer price and suggest a transfer-pricing policy that would help the ZZ Group to overcome the transfer-pricing problems that it faces.

18.26 From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Management, Section B, March 2014 (50 minutes)

SBA is a company that produces televisions and components for televisions. The company has two divisions, Division S and Division B.

Division S manufactures components for televisions. Division S sells components to division B and to external customers. Division B uses five of the components in each of the televisions that it manufactures, and sells televisions directly to external customers.

Division S	
Budgeted variable manufacturing cost per component:	£
Direct material	14
Direct labour	18
Variable overhead	12

The following information relating to next year is also available:

Fixed costs	£560 000
Production capacity	175 000 components
External demand	150 000 components
Potential demand from Division B	80 000 components

Division B	£
Sales price	450
Budgeted variable manufacturing cost per television	
Direct material	40
Direct labour	62
Variable overhead	16

In addition to the variable costs above, each television produced needs five components

Fixed costs are budgeted to be £1 460 000 for next year. Annual sales of televisions are expected to be 16 000 units.

Transfer pricing policy

Transfer prices are set at opportunity cost.

Division S must satisfy the demand of Division B before selling components externally.

Division B is allowed to purchase components from Division S or from external suppliers.

Required

1 Assuming that Division B buys all the components it requires from Division S.

Produce a profit statement for each division detailing sales and costs, showing external sales and internal company transfers separately where appropriate.

2 A specialist external supplier has approached Division B and offered to supply 80 000 components at a price of £42 each. The components fulfil the same function as those manufactured by Division S. The manager of Division B has accepted the offer and has agreed to buy all the components it requires from this supplier.

a Produce a revised profit statement for each division **and** for the total SBA Company.

Division S has just received an enquiry from a new customer for the production of 25 000 components. The manager of Division S requires a total profit for the year for the division of £450 000.

b Calculate the minimum price per component to sell the 25 000 components to the new customer that would enable the manager of Division S to meet the profit target.

Note: this order will have no effect on the divisional fixed costs and no impact on the 150 000 components Division S sells to its existing external customers at £50 per component. Division B will continue to purchase the 80 000 components it requires from the specialist external supplier.

3 Discuss the potential implications for SBA of outsourcing the production of one type of component that it manufactures.

CHAPTER 19

Control systems and performance measurement

We have discussed performance measurement in many of the earlier chapters, each time within a specific accounting context. We have, for example, described situations where the correct decision based on a relevant-cost analysis (buying new equipment, say) may not be implemented because the performance-measurement system induced the manager to act differently. This chapter discusses the design, implementation and uses of performance measures more generally.

Performance measures are a central component of a management-control system. Planning and control decisions requires information about how different subunits of the organisation have performed. To be effective, management-control systems must also motivate managers and employees to strive to achieve organisation goals. Performance evaluation and rewards are key elements for motivating employees.

Performance measurement of an organisation's subunits should be a prerequisite for allocating resources within that organisation. When a subunit undertakes new activities, it forecasts revenues, costs and investments. Periodic comparisons of the actual revenues, costs and investments with the budgeted amounts can help guide top management's decisions about future allocations.

Performance measurement of managers is used in decisions about their salaries, bonuses, future assignments and career advancement. Moreover, the very act of measuring their performance can motivate managers to strive for the goals used in their evaluation. But lack of clarity between pay and performance can prove problematic for investors. For instance, Norway's sovereign wealth fund – the world's biggest – which exceeds $1.4 trillion in value, desires companies it invests in to curb excessive and opaque top-management pay. The wealth fund owns about 1.5% of all listed stocks in the world and invests in over 9000 companies. The fund seeks to focus on companies where a 'substantial proportion' of annual pay be provided as shares that are locked in for at least five years, though preferably ten. Pay practices are also to be kept simple with total remuneration being transparent (Holter, 2017). In 2022, the sovereign wealth fund opposed Apple's executive compensation plan whereby CEO Tim Cook's pay package was $99 million (Treloar, 2022). The fund adopts a highly responsible investment strategy, not just in terms of seeking moderation in top management pay packets but also pursues an 'overall long-term goal of net zero emissions from the companies in which the fund is invested' (Eccles, 2022). Rebellions by shareholders over excessive executive pay are common. The boss of JD Sports, Peter Cowgill, was

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Provide examples of financial and non-financial measures of performance
- Understand the return on investment (ROI) method of profitability analysis
- Describe the residual-income (RI) measure
- Understand the economic value added (EVA®) method
- Distinguish between current-cost and historical-cost asset measurement methods
- Recognise the role of salaries and incentives in compensation arrangements
- Be aware of the management accountant's role in designing incentive systems
- Describe the incentive problems arising when employees perform multiple tasks
- Understand the four levers of control and their effects

paid almost £6 million in bonuses despite the firm accepting £100 million in COVID support in 2021 which caused a revolt. Consider also, General Electric (GE) which was once the most valuable company in the United States. After famed CEO Jack Welch retired in 2001, the company began a long, steep decline resulting in a smaller company today worth around one-tenth what it was back in 2000. While GE's performance significantly declined over the years, compensation for then CEOs Jeff Immelt and John Flannery did not. During his 16-year run as CEO, Immelt earned nearly $211 million in salary and incentive compensation. When Immelt retired under shareholder pressure in 2017, he left with at least another $112 million. His replacement, John Flannery, earned $5.8 million during his 14-month tenure as CEO. During his short time at the helm, GE's stock price fell nearly 50%. There is usually an expectation that rewards should be connected to sustained performance, and managers should not increase their compensation without supporting the company's objectives. But the outcomes do not always match desires!

This chapter examines issues in designing performance measures for different levels of an organisation and for managers at these different levels. We discuss both financial and non-financial performance measures.

Financial and non-financial performance measures

Chapter 18 noted how the information used in a management-control system can be financial or non-financial. Many common performance measures such as operating profit rely on internal financial and accounting information. Increasingly, companies are supplementing internal financial measures with measures based on external financial information (for example, stock prices), internal non-financial information (such as manufacturing lead time) and external non-financial information (such as customer satisfaction). In addition, companies are benchmarking their financial and non-financial measures against other companies that are regarded as the 'best performers'. To compete effectively in the global market, companies need to perform at or near the 'best of the breed'.

Some companies present financial and non-financial performance measures for various organisation subunits in a single report called the *balanced scorecard* (see Chapter 22). Different companies stress various elements in their scorecards, but most scorecards include (1) profitability measures; (2) customer-satisfaction measures; (3) internal measures of efficiency, quality and time; and (4) innovation measures (see Kaplan and Norton, 2001; 2004).

The balanced scorecard highlights trade-offs that the manager may have made. For example, it indicates whether improvements in financial performance resulted from sacrificing investments in new products or from on-time delivery. The specific non-financial measures chosen signal to employees the areas that top management views as critical to the company's success.

Some performance measures, such as the number of new patents developed, have a long-run time horizon. Other measures, such as direct materials efficiency variances, overhead spending variances and yield, have a short-run time horizon. We focus on the most widely used performance measures covering an intermediate to long-run time horizon. These are internal financial measures based on accounting numbers routinely maintained by organisations.

Non-financial performance measures offer some distinct benefits. Ittner and Larcker (2000) suggest that they:

- provide a closer link to long-term organisational strategies
- provide indirect quantitative information on a company's intangible assets
- can be good indicators of future financial performance
- can improve managers' performance by providing more transparent evaluation of their actions.

However, these researchers also note that non-financial performance measures:

- can be time consuming and costly to implement
- do not have a common denominator and entail different denominators such as time, percentages, quantities, etc.

- sometimes lack verifying links to accounting profits or stock prices and may have weak statistical reliability
- may be too numerous to translate into main drivers of success.

Different performance measures

Enterprises try to align reporting structures to performance-measurement systems to obtain the best information for monitoring activities. This section elaborates on step 1 noted above by describing four measures commonly used to evaluate the economic performance of organisation subunits. Good performance measures promote goal congruence with the organisation's objectives and facilitate comparisons across different subunits. We illustrate these measures using the example of Hôtels Desfleurs.

Hôtels Desfleurs owns and operates three hotels, located in Vaison-la-Romaine, Perpignan and La Rochelle. Exhibit 19.1 summarises data for each of the three hotels for the most recent year (2022). At present, Hôtels Desfleurs does not allocate to the three separate hotels the total long-term debt of the company. Exhibit 19.1 indicates that the La Rochelle hotel generates the highest operating profit, €510 000. The Perpignan hotel generates €300 000; the Vaison hotel, €240 000. But is this comparison appropriate? Is the La Rochelle hotel the most 'successful'? Actually, the comparison of operating profit ignores potential differences in the *size* of the investments in the different hotels. **Investment** refers to the resources or assets used to generate profits. The question then is not how large operating profit is *per se*, but how large it is given the resources that were used to earn it.

Three approaches include investment in performance measures: return on investment (ROI), residual income (RI) and economic value added (EVA®). A fourth approach measures return on sales (ROS).

Exhibit 19.1 Annual financial data for Hôtels Desfleurs for 2022

	Vaison hotel (1)	Perpignan hotel (2)	La Rochelle hotel (3)	Total (4) = (1) + (2) + (3)
Hotel revenues (sales)	€1 200 000	€1 400 000	€3 185 000	€5 785 000
Hotel variable costs	310 000	375 000	995 000	1 680 000
Hotel fixed costs	650 000	725 000	1 680 000	3 055 000
Hotel operating profit	€240 000	€300 000	€510 000	1 050 000
Interest costs on long-term debt at 10%	–	–	–	450 000
Profit before income taxes	–	–	–	600 000
Income taxes at 30%	–	–	–	180 000
Net profit	–	–	–	€420 000
Average book values for 2022				
Current assets	€400 000	€500 000	€600 000	€1 500 000
Long-term assets	600 000	1 500 000	2 400 000	4 500 000
Total assets	€1 000 000	€2 000 000	€3 000 000	€6 000 000
Current liabilities	€50 000	€150 000	€300 000	€500 000
Long-term debt	–	–	–	4 500 000
Stockholders' equity	–	–	–	1 000 000
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity				€6 000 000

Return on investment

Return on investment (ROI) is an accounting measure of income divided by an accounting measure of investment.

$$\text{Return on investment (ROI)} = \frac{\text{Income}}{\text{Investment}}$$

ROI is the most popular approach to incorporating the investment base into a performance measure. ROI appeals conceptually because it blends all the major ingredients of profitability (revenues, costs and investment) into a single number. ROI can be compared with the rate of return on opportunities elsewhere, inside or outside the company. Like any single performance measure, however, ROI should be used cautiously and in conjunction with other performance measures.

ROI is also called the accounting rate of return. Managers usually use the term ROI in the context of evaluating the performance of a division or subunit and accrual accounting rate of return when evaluating a project. Companies vary in the way they define both the numerator and the denominator of the ROI. For example, some firms use operating profit for the numerator. Other firms use net profit. Some firms use total assets in the denominator. Others use total assets minus current liabilities.

Hôtels Desfleurs can increase ROI by increasing revenues or decreasing costs (both these actions increase the numerator), or by decreasing investments (decreases the denominator). ROI can often provide more insight into performance when it is divided into the following components:

$$\frac{\text{Revenues}}{\text{Investment}} \times \frac{\text{Income}}{\text{Revenues}} = \frac{\text{Income}}{\text{Investment}}$$

This approach is widely known as the *DuPont method of profitability analysis*. The DuPont approach recognises that there are two basic ingredients in profit making: using assets to generate more revenue, and increasing income per euro of revenue. An improvement in either ingredient without changing the other increases return on investment.

Consider the ROI of each of the three Hôtels Desfleurs in Exhibit 19.1. For our calculations, we are using the operating profit of each hotel for the numerator and total assets of each hotel for the denominator.

Hotel	Operating profit	÷	Total assets	=	ROI
Vaison	€240 000	÷	€1 000 000	=	24%
Perpignan	€300 000	÷	€2 000 000	=	15%
La Rochelle	€510 000	÷	€3 000 000	=	17%

Using these ROI figures, the Vaison hotel appears to make the best use of its total assets.

Assume that the top management at Hôtels Desfleurs adopts a 30% target ROI for the Vaison hotel. How can this return be attained? The DuPont method (Exhibit 19.2) illustrates the present situation and three alternatives. Other alternatives such as increasing the selling price per room could increase both the revenue per euro of total assets and the operating profit per euro of revenue.

Exhibit 19.2 The DuPont method applied to the present situation and three alternatives for Hôtels Desfleurs

	$\frac{\text{Revenues}}{\text{Revenues}}$	×	$\frac{\text{Operating profit}}{\text{Total asses}}$		$\frac{\text{Operating profit}}{\text{Total asses}}$
Present situation	$\frac{€1200\,000}{€1000\,000}$	×	$\frac{€240\,000}{€1200\,000}$	$= 1.20 \times 0.20 =$	0.24 or 24%
Alternatives					
A. Decrease assets (for example, debtors) keeping revenues and operating profit per euro of revenue constant	$\frac{€1200\,000}{€800\,000}$	×	$\frac{€240\,000}{€1200\,000}$	$= 1.50 \times 0.20 =$	0.30 or 30%
B. Increase revenues (by selling more rooms) keeping assets and operating profit per euro of revenue constant	$\frac{€1500\,000}{€1000\,000}$	×	$\frac{€300\,000}{€1500\,000}$	$= 1.50 \times 0.20 =$	0.30 or 30%
C. Decrease costs (for example, via efficient maintenance) to increase operating profit per euro of revenue, keeping revenues and assets constant	$\frac{€1200\,000}{€1000\,000}$	×	$\frac{€300\,000}{€1200\,000}$	$= 1.50 \times 0.25 =$	0.30 or 30%

ROI highlights the benefits that managers can obtain by reducing their investments in current or fixed assets. Some managers are conscious of the need to boost revenues or to control costs but pay less attention to reducing their investment base. Reducing investments means decreasing idle cash, managing credit judiciously, determining proper stock levels and spending carefully on fixed assets.

Residual income

Residual income is income minus a required euro return on the investment:

$$\text{Residual income} = \text{Income} - (\text{Required rate of return} \times \text{Investment})$$

The required rate of return multiplied by investment is also called the **imputed cost** of the investment. Imputed costs are costs recognised in particular situations that are not regularly recognised by accrual accounting procedures. An imputed cost is not recognised in accounting records because it is not an incremental cost but instead represents the return forgone by Hôtels Desfleurs as a result of tying up cash in various investments of similar risk. Assume that each hotel faces similar risks. Hôtels Desfleurs defines residual income for each hotel as hotel operating profit minus a required rate of return of 12% of the total assets of the hotel:

Hotel	Operating profit	−	Required rate of return × Investment	=	Income
Vaison	€240 000	−	€120 000 (12% × €1 000 000)	=	€120 000
Perpignan	€300 000	−	€240 000 (12% × €2 000 000)	=	€60 000
La Rochelle	€510 000	−	€360 000 (12% × €3 000 000)	=	€150 000

Given the 12% required rate of return, the La Rochelle hotel is performing best in terms of residual income.

Some firms favour the residual-income approach because managers will concentrate on maximising an absolute amount (euros of residual income) rather than a percentage (return on investment). The objective of maximising residual income assumes that as long as a division earns a rate in excess of the required return for investments, that division should expand.

The objective of maximising ROI may induce managers of highly profitable divisions to reject projects that, from the viewpoint of the organisation as a whole, should be accepted. To illustrate, assume that Hôtels Desfleurs' required rate of return on investment is 12%. Assume also that an expansion of the Vaison hotel will increase its operating profit by €160 000 and increase its total assets by €800 000. The ROI for the expansion is 20% (€160 000 ÷ €800 000), which makes it attractive to Hôtels Desfleurs as a whole. By making this expansion, however, the Vaison manager will see the hotel's ROI decrease:

$$\text{Pre-expansion ROI} = \frac{€240\,000}{1000\,000} = 24\%$$

$$\text{Pre-expansion ROI} = \frac{€240\,000 + €160\,000}{1000\,000 + €1800\,000} = \frac{€400\,000}{€1800\,000} = 22.2\%$$

The annual bonus paid to the Vaison manager may decrease if ROI is a key component in the bonus calculation and the expansion option is selected. In contrast, if the annual bonus is a function of residual income, the Vaison manager will view the expansion favourably:

$$\text{Pre-expansion residual income} = €240\,000 - (12\% \times €1000\,000) = €120\,000$$
$$\text{Pre-expansion residual income} = €400\,000 - (12\% \times €1800\,000) = €184\,000$$

Goal congruence is more likely to be promoted by using residual income rather than ROI as a measure of the division manager's performance.

Both ROI and residual income represent the results for a single time period (such as a year). Managers could take actions that cause short-run increases in ROI or residual income but are in conflict with the long-run interests of the organisation. For example, managers may curtail R&D and plant maintenance in the last three months of a fiscal year to achieve a target level of annual operating profit. For this reason, some companies evaluate subunits on the basis of ROI and residual income over multiple years.

Economic value added (EVA®)

Economic value added (EVA®) is a specific type of residual-income calculation that has attracted considerable attention for the past two decades (Bouwens and Speklé, 2007; Stewart, 1994; Young and O'Byrne, 2001). Joel Stern, a partner at consultants Stern Stewart, which developed and markets EVA®, argues that EVA® is a superior measure for certain management decisions and performance tracking. Many companies have adopted this measure, including Boots, Burton Group, Coca-Cola, Siemens, Pirelli, Lucas, Nestlé and Telecom Italia Group. Economic value added equals after-tax operating profit *minus* the (after-tax) weighted-average cost of capital *multiplied by* total assets minus current liabilities.

$$\begin{pmatrix}\text{Economic value}\\ \text{added (EVA®)}\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}\text{After-tax}\\ \text{operating profit}\end{pmatrix} - \left[\begin{pmatrix}\text{Weighted-average}\\ \text{cost of capital}\end{pmatrix} \times \left(\begin{pmatrix}\text{Total}\\ \text{assets}\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}\text{Current}\\ \text{liabilities}\end{pmatrix}\right)\right]$$

EVA® substitutes the following numbers in the residual-income calculations: (1) income equal to after-tax operating profit, (2) a required rate of return equal to the weighted-average cost of capital and (3) investment equal to total assets minus current liabilities. We use the Hôtels Desfleurs data in Exhibit 19.1 to illustrate EVA®.

The key calculation is the weighted-average cost of capital (WACC), which equals after-tax average cost of all the long-term funds used by Hôtels Desfleurs. The company has two sources of long-term funds: long-term debt with a market and book value of €4.5 million issued at an interest rate of 10% and equity capital that has a market value of €3 million (and a book value of €1 million). (The market value of Hôtels Desfleurs' equity exceeds book value because book values, based on historical costs, do not reflect the current values of the company's assets and because various intangible assets, such as the company's brand name, are not shown at current value on the balance sheet.) Since interest costs are tax deductible, the after-tax cost of debt financing equals $0.10 \times (1 - \text{tax rate}) = 0.10 \times (1 - 0.30) = 0.10 \times 0.70 = 0.07$, or 7%. The cost of equity capital is the opportunity cost to investors of not investing their capital in another investment that is similar in risk to Hôtels Desfleurs. Suppose that Hôtels Desfleurs' cost of equity capital is 15%. The WACC computation, which uses market values of debt and equity, is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{WACC} &= \frac{(0.07 \times €4\,500\,000)(0.15 \times €3\,000\,000)}{€4\,500\,00 + €3\,000\,000} \\ &= \frac{€315\,000 + €450\,000}{€7\,500\,000} = \frac{€765\,000}{€7\,500\,000} \\ &= 0.102 \text{ or } 10.2\%\end{aligned}$$

The company applies the same WACC to all its hotels since each hotel faces similar risks.

Long-term assets minus current liabilities (see Exhibit 19.1) can also be calculated as:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total assets} - \text{Current liabilities} &= \text{Long-term assets} + \text{Current assets} - \text{Current liabilities} \\ &= \text{Long-term assets} + \text{Working capital}\end{aligned}$$

where working capital = current assets − current liabilities. After-tax hotel operating profit is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Hotel operating profit} \times (1 - \text{Tax rate}) &= \text{Hotel operating profit} \times (1 - 0.30) \\ &= \text{Hotel operating profit} \times 0.70\end{aligned}$$

EVA® calculations for Hôtels Desfleurs are as follows:

Hotel	After-tax operating profit	−	[Weighted-average cost of capital	×	(Total assets	−	Current liabilities)]	=	Economic value added (EVA®)
Vaison	€240 000 × 0.7	−	[10.2%	× (€1 000 000 − €50 000)]					
				= €168 000 − €96 900				=	€71 100
Perpignan	€300 000 × 0.7	−	[10.2%	× (€2 000 000 − €150 000)]					
		−		= €210 000 − €188 700				=	€21 300
La Rochelle	€510 000 × 0.7	−	[10.2%	× (€3 000 000 − €300 000)]					
				= €357 000 − €275 400				=	€81 600

The La Rochelle hotel has the highest EVA®. EVA®, like residual income, charges managers for the cost of their investments in long-term assets and working capital. Value is created only if after-tax operating profit exceeds the cost of investing the capital. To improve EVA®, managers must earn more operating profit with the same capital, use less capital, or invest capital in high-return projects.

Return on sales

The income-to-revenue (sales) ratio, often called *return on sales* (ROS), is a frequently used financial performance measure. ROS is one component of ROI in the DuPont method of profitability analysis. To calculate the ROS of each of the Desfleurs hotels, we use operating profit divided by revenues. The ROS for each hotel is:

Hotel	Operating profit	÷	Revenues (sales)	=	ROS
Vaison	€240 000	÷	€1 200 000	=	20.0%
Perpignan	€300 000	÷	€1 400 000	=	21.4%
La Rochelle	€510 000	÷	€3 185 000	=	16.0%

The following table summarises the performance and ranking of each hotel under each of the four performance measures:

Hotel	ROI (rank)	Residual income (rank)	EVA® (rank)	ROS (rank)
Vaison	24% (1)	€120 000 (2)	€71 100 (2)	20.0% (2)
Perpignan	15% (3)	€60 000 (3)	€21 300 (3)	21.4% (1)
La Rochelle	17% (2)	€150 000 (1)	€81 600 (1)	16.0% (3)

The residual-income and EVA® rankings differ from the ROI and ROS rankings. Consider the ROI and residual-income rankings for the Vaison and Perpignan hotels. The La Rochelle hotel has a smaller ROI. Although its operating profit is only slightly more than twice that of the Vaison hotel (€510 000 versus €240 000), its total assets are three times as large (€3 million versus €1 million). The return on assets invested in the La Rochelle hotel is not as high as the return on assets invested in the Vaison hotel. The La Rochelle hotel has a higher residual income because it earns a higher operating income after covering the 12% required return on investment. The Perpignan hotel has the highest ROS but the lowest ROI. Why? Because although it earns very high profit per euro of revenue, it generates very low revenues per euro of assets invested. Is any method superior to the others? No, because each evaluates a slightly different aspect of performance. For example, in markets where revenue growth is limited, return on sales is the most meaningful indicator of a subunit's performance. To evaluate overall aggregate performance, ROI or residual-income-based measures are more appropriate since they consider both income earned and investments made. Residual-income and EVA® measures overcome some of the goal-congruence problems that ROI measures might introduce. Some managers favour EVA® because it explicitly considers tax effects while pre-tax residual-income measures do not. Other managers favour pre-tax residual-income because it is easier to calculate and because it often leads to the same conclusions as EVA®.

Exhibit 19.3 presents the key financial performance measures used by seven companies. Note the diversity in the use of income-based measures, ROS, ROI and EVA®.

Exhibit 19.3 Company examples of key financial performance measures

Company name	Country headquarters	Product/ business	Key financial performance measures
Quaker Oats	USA	Food products	EVA®
Guinness	Ireland	Consumer products	Profit and ROS
Krones	Germany	Machinery/equipment	Sales and income
Mayne Nickless	Australia	Security/transportation	ROI and ROS
Mitsui	Japan	Trading	Sales and income
Pirelli	Italy	Tires/manufacturing	Income and cash flow
Swedish Match	Sweden	Consumer products	ROI

Source: Business International (1989, 1992); Stewart (1994).

Concepts in action

Running pharmas can prove challenging and CEO compensation can fall!

CEOs are evaluated on a number of dimensions mirroring their firms' priorities. Good financial performance is often not enough. Bristol Myers Squibb (BMS) awarded its CEO Giovanni Caforio $19.78 million in 2021 pay, down from $20.15 million the prior year, BMS met or exceeded several targets that it has set to evaluate its executives' pay. The company's revenues came above the company's billion target and its pipeline development also exceeded expectations. The board of directors also thought that he 'exceeded all customer service metrics and supply chain reliability targets'. But aside from the business metrics, the company's performance fell short in the 'human capital' category, leading to a 73% payout against that goal. This dimension focuses on employee engagement and retention by taking account of quarterly employee surveys and voluntary attrition rate.

Consider another pharmaceutical company Sanofi. Its CEO Paul Hudson saw his pay dropping 3.7% to €10.98 million in 2021. As Liu (2022b) explains, of the many targets that Sanofi had set for Mr Hudson, only 'growth in key assets' as part of the financial objectives was marked as below target because of vaccines. In that dimension, the company witnessed underperformance of the U.S. influenza vaccine and the vaccine business in China.

Source: Liu, A. (2022a) 'Bristol Myers CEO Giovanni Caforio takes pay cut as 'human capital' metric drags down bonus', 1 April (https://www.fiercepharma.com/pharma/bristol-myers-ceo-caforio-takes-pay-cut-employee-metric-drags-down-bonus); Liu, A. (2022b) 'Sanofi CEO Paul Hudson's 2021 pay dips no thanks to lagging vaccine sales in US, China' 30 March (https://www.fiercepharma.com/pharma/sanofi-ceo-paul-hudsons-2021-pay-dips-amid-lagging-vaccine-efforts).

Alternative definitions of investment

We use the different definitions of investment that companies use to illustrate step 2 when designing accounting-based performance measures. Definitions include the following:

1. *Total assets available* – includes all business assets, regardless of their particular purpose.
2. *Total assets employed* – defined as total assets available minus idle assets and minus assets purchased for future expansion. For example, if the La Rochelle hotel in Exhibit 19.1 has unused land set aside for potential expansion, the total assets employed by the hotel would exclude the cost of that land.
3. *Working capital (current assets minus current liabilities) plus long-term assets* – this definition excludes that portion of current assets financed by short-term creditors.
4. *Shareholders' equity* – use of this definition for each individual hotel in Exhibit 19.1 requires allocation of the long-term liabilities of Hôtels Desfleurs to the three hotels, which would then be deducted from the total assets of each hotel.

Most companies that employ ROI, residual income or EVA® for performance measurement use either total assets available or working capital plus long-term assets as the definition of investment. However, when top management directs a division manager to carry extra assets, total assets employed can be more informative than total assets available. The most common rationale for using working capital plus long-term assets is that the division manager often influences decisions on the short-term debt of the division.

Alternative performance measures

To illustrate step 3 in the design of accounting-based performance measures, consider different ways to measure assets included in the investment calculations. Should they be measured at historical cost or at current cost? Should gross book value or net book value be used for depreciable assets? We now examine these issues.

Current cost

Current cost is the cost of purchasing an asset today identical to the one currently held. It is the cost of purchasing the services provided by that asset if an identical asset cannot currently be purchased. Of course, measuring assets at current costs will result in different ROIs compared with the ROIs calculated based on historical costs.

We illustrate the current-cost ROI calculations using the Hôtels Desfleurs example (see Exhibit 19.1) and then compare ROIs based on current and historical costs. Assume the following information about the long-term assets of each hotel:

	Vaison	Perpignan	La Rochelle
Age of facility (at end of 2023)	8 years	4 years	2 years
Gross book value	€1 400 000	€2 100 000	€2 800 000
Total depreciation	€800 000	€600 000	€400 000
Net book value (at end of 2023)	€600 000	€1 500 000	€2 400 000
Depreciation for 2023	€100 000	€150 000	€200 000

Hôtels Desfleurs assumes a 14-year estimated useful life, assumes no terminal disposal price for the physical facilities and calculates depreciation on a straight-line basis.

An index of construction costs for the eight-year period that Hôtels Desfleurs has been operating is as follows:

Year	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023
Construction cost index	110	122	136	144	152	160	174	180

Earlier in this chapter, we calculated an ROI of 24% for Vaison, 15% for Perpignan and 17% for La Rochelle. One possible explanation of the high ROI for Vaison is that this hotel's long-term assets are expressed in terms of 2014 construction price levels, and that the long-term assets for the Perpignan and La Rochelle hotels are expressed in terms of the higher, more recent construction price levels, which depress ROIs for these hotels.

Exhibit 19.4 illustrates a step-by-step approach for incorporating current-cost estimates for long-term assets and depreciation into the ROI calculation. The aim is to approximate what it would cost today to obtain assets that would produce the same expected operating profit that the subunits currently earn. (Similar adjustments to represent current costs of capital employed and depreciation can also be made in the residual income and EVA® calculations.) The current-cost adjustment dramatically reduces the ROI of the Vaison hotel.

	Historical-cost ROI	Current-cost ROI
Vaison	24%	10.81%
Perpignan	15%	11.05%
La Rochelle	17%	14.70%

Adjusting for current costs negates differences in the investment base caused solely by differences in construction price levels. Consequently, compared to historical-cost ROI, current-cost ROI is a better measure of the current economic returns from the investment. For example, current-cost

ROI indicates that taking into account current construction price levels, investing in a new hotel in Vaison will result in an ROI closer to 10.81% than to 24%. If Hôtels Desfleurs were to invest in a new hotel today, investing in one like the La Rochelle hotel offers the best ROI.

A drawback of the current-cost method is that obtaining current-cost estimates for some assets can be difficult. Why? Because the estimate requires a company to consider technological advances when determining the current cost of assets needed to earn today's operating profit. (When a specific cost index, such as the construction-cost index, is not available, companies use a general index, such as the consumer price index, to approximate current costs.)

Exhibit 19.4 ROI for Hôtels Desfleurs computed using current-cost estimates as of the end of 2023 for depreciation and long-term assets

Step 1: Restate long-term assets from gross book value at historical cost to gross book value at current cost as of the end of 2023.

$$\text{Gross book value of long-term assets at current cost at the end of 2023} = \text{Gross book value of long-term assets at historical cost} \times \frac{\text{Construction cost index in 2023}}{\text{Construction cost index in year of construction}}$$

Vaison	€1 400 000 × (180 ÷ 100) = €2 520 000
Perpignan	€2 100 000 × (180 ÷ 144) = €2 625 000
La Rochelle	€2 800 000 × (180 ÷ 160) = €3 150 000

Step 2: Derive the net book value of long-term assets at current cost as of the end of 2023. (The estimated useful life of each hotel is 14 years.)

$$\text{Net book value of long-term assets at current cost at the end of 2023} = \text{Gross book value of long-term assets at current cost at the end of 2023} \times \frac{\text{Estimated useful life remaining}}{\text{Estimated total useful life}}$$

Vaison	€2 520 000 × (6 ÷ 14) = €1080 000
Perpignan	€2 625 000 × (10 ÷ 14) = €1875 000
La Rochelle	€3 150 000 × (12 ÷ 14) = €2 700 000

Step 3: Compute the current cost of total assets at the end of 2023. (Assume that the current assets of each hotel are expressed in 2023 euros.)

$$\text{Current cost of total assets at the end of 2023} = \text{Current assets at the end of 2023 (from Exhibit 19.1)} + \text{Net book value of long-term assets at current cost at the end of 2023 (from step 2)}$$

Vaison	€400 000 + €1 080 000 = €1 480 000
Perpignan	€500 000 + €1 875 000 = €2 375 000
La Rochelle	€600 000 + €2 700 000 = €3 300 000

Exhibit 19.4 continued

Step 4: Compute the current-cost depreciation expense in 2023 euros.

$$\text{Current-cost depreciation expense in 2023 euros} = \text{Gross book value of long-term assets at current cost at the end of 2023 (from step 1)} \times \frac{1}{\text{Estimated total useful life}}$$

Vaison	€2 520 000 × (1 ÷ 14) = €180 000
Perpignan	€2 625 000 × (1 ÷ 14) = €187 500
La Rochelle	€3 150 000 × (1 ÷ 14) = €225 000

Step 5: Compute 2023 operating profit using 2023 current-cost depreciation.

$$\text{Operating profit for 2023 using 2023 current-cost depreciation} = \text{Historical-cost operating profit} \times \left(\text{Current-cost depreciation expense in 2023 euros (from step 4)} - \text{Historical-cost depreciation} \right)$$

Vaison	€240 000 − (€180 000 − €100 000) = €160 000
Perpignan	€300 000 − (€187 500 − €150 000) = €262 500
La Rochelle	€510 000 − (€225 000 − €200 000) = €485 000

Step 6: Compute the ROI using current-cost estimates for long-term assets and depreciation.

$$\text{ROI using current-cost estimates} = \frac{\text{Operating profit for 2023 using 2023 current cost depreciation (from step 5)}}{\text{Current cost of total assets at the end of 2023 (from step 3)}}$$

Vaison	€160 000 ÷ €1 480 000 = 10.81%
Perpignan	€262 500 ÷ €2 375 000 = 11.05%
La Rochelle	€485 000 ÷ €3 300 000 = 14.70%

Long-term assets: gross or net book value?

Because historical-cost investment measures are used often in practice, there has been much discussion about the relative merits of using gross book value (original cost) or net book value (original cost minus depreciation). Using the data in Exhibit 19.1 and the accompanying text, the ROI calculations using net book values and gross book values of plant and equipment are as follows:

	Vaison	Perpignan	La Rochelle
ROI for 2023 using net book value of total assets given in Exhibit 19.1 and calculated earlier	$\frac{€240\,000}{€1\,000\,000} = 24\%$	$\frac{€300\,000}{€2\,000\,000} = 15\%$	$\frac{€510\,000}{€3\,000\,000} = 17\%$
ROI for 2023 using gross book value of total assets obtained by adding depreciation under 'Current cost' above to net book value of total assets in Exhibit 19.1	$\frac{€240\,000}{€1\,800\,000} = 13.33\%$	$\frac{€300\,000}{€2\,600\,000} = 11.54\%$	$\frac{€510\,000}{€3\,400\,000} = 15\%$

Using the gross book value, the ROI of the older Vaison hotel (13.33%) is lower than that of the newer La Rochelle hotel (15%). Those who favour using gross book value claim that it enables more accurate comparisons across subunits. For example, using gross book value calculations, the return on the original plant and equipment investment is higher for the newer La Rochelle hotel than for the older Vaison hotel. This probably reflects the decline in earning power of the Vaison hotel. In contrast, using the net book value masks this decline in earning power because the constantly decreasing base results in a higher ROI (24%); this higher rate may mislead decision makers into thinking that the earning power of the Vaison hotel has not decreased.

The proponents of using net book value as a base maintain that it is less confusing because (1) it is consistent with the total assets shown on the conventional balance sheet, and (2) it is consistent with net profit computations that include deductions for depreciation. Surveys of company practice report net book value to be the dominant asset measure used by companies in their internal performance evaluations.

Choosing targeted levels of performance and timing of feedback

Choosing targets to compare performance

We next consider step 4 and the setting of targets to compare actual performance against. Recall that historical-cost-based accounting measures are often inadequate for evaluating economic returns on new investments and sometimes create disincentives for new expansion. Despite these problems, historical-cost ROIs can be used to evaluate current performance by adjusting target ROIs. Consider our Hôtels Desfleurs example. The key is to recognise that the hotels were built at different times, which in turn means they were built at different levels of the construction-cost index. Top management could adjust the target historical cost ROIs accordingly, perhaps setting Vaison's ROI at 26%, Perpignan's at 18% and La Rochelle's at 19%.

Nevertheless, the alternative of comparing actual with target performance is frequently overlooked in the literature. Critics of historical cost have indicated how high rates of return on old assets may erroneously induce a manager not to replace assets. Regardless, the manager's mandate is often 'Go forth and attain the budgeted results'. The budget, then, should be carefully negotiated with full knowledge of historical-cost accounting pitfalls. *The desirability of tailoring a budget to a particular subunit and a particular accounting system cannot be overemphasised*. For example, many problems of asset valuation and profit measurement (whether based on historical cost or current cost) can be satisfactorily solved if top management gets everybody to focus on what is attainable in the forthcoming budget period – regardless of whether the financial measures are based on historical costs or some other measure, such as current costs.

Top management often sets continuous improvement targets. Consider companies implementing EVA®. These companies have generally found it cost-effective to use historical-cost net assets rather than estimates of market or replacement values. Why? Because top management evaluates operations on year-to-year changes in EVA®, not on absolute measures of EVA®. Evaluating performance on the basis of *improvements* in EVA® makes the initial method of calculating EVA® less important.

Timing of feedback

The fifth and final step in designing accounting-based performance measures is the timing of feedback. Timing of feedback depends largely on how critical the information is for the success of the organisation, the specific level of management that is receiving the feedback, and the sophistication of the organisation's information technology. For example, hotel managers responsible for room sales will want information on the number of rooms sold each day on a daily or, at most, weekly basis. Why? Because a large percentage of hotel costs are fixed costs, so that achieving high

room sales and taking quick action to reverse any declining sales trends are critical to the financial success of each hotel. Supplying managers with daily information about room sales would be much easier if Hôtels Desfleurs had a computerised room reservation and check-in system. Senior management, on the other hand, in their overseeing role may look at information about daily room sales only on a monthly basis. In some instances, for example, because of concern about the low sales to total assets ratio of the Perpignan hotel, they may want the information weekly.

Distinction between managers and organisational units[1]

As noted before in this and several earlier chapters, the performance evaluation of a manager should be distinguished from the performance evaluation of an organisation subunit, such as a division of a company. For example, historical-cost-based ROIs for a particular division can be used to evaluate a manager's performance relative to a budget or over time, even though historical-cost ROIs may be unsatisfactory for evaluating economic returns earned by the subunit. But using historical-cost ROIs to compare the performance of managers of different subunits can be misleading. Why? Because among other factors, one subunit's ROI may have been adversely affected relative to another's because of legal, political and government regulations as well as economic conditions over which certain subunit managers have no control.

Likewise, companies often put the most skilful division manager in charge of the weakest division in an attempt to change its fortunes. Such an effort may take years to bear fruit. Furthermore, the manager's efforts may result merely in bringing the division up to a minimum acceptable ROI. The division may continue to be a poor profit performer in comparison with other divisions, but it would be a mistake to conclude from the poor performance of the division that the manager is necessarily performing poorly.

This section focuses on developing basic principles for evaluating the performance of a division manager of an individual subunit. The concepts we discuss apply, however, to all organisation levels. Later sections consider specific examples at the individual-activity level and the total-organisation level. For specificity, we use the residual-income (RI) performance measure throughout.

The basic trade-off: creating incentives versus imposing risk

The performance evaluation of managers and employees often affects their compensation. Compensation arrangements run the range from a flat salary with no direct performance-based bonus (as in the case of some government officials) to rewards based only on performance (as in the case of door-to-door salespeople). Most often, however, a manager's total compensation includes some combination of salary and a performance-based bonus. An important consideration in designing compensation arrangements is the trade-off between creating incentives and imposing risk. We illustrate this trade-off in the context of our Hôtels Desfleurs example.

Antoinette Kessel owns the Hôtels Desfleurs chain of hotels. Joseph Saint-Exupéry manages the Hôtels Desfleurs Vaison (HDV) hotel. Assume that Antoinette uses RI to measure performance. To achieve good results as measured by RI, Antoinette would like Joseph to control costs, provide prompt and courteous service and reduce receivables. But even if he did all those things, good results are by no means guaranteed. HDV's RI is affected by many factors outside their control, such as a recession in the Vaison economy, or recent floods that might negatively affect HDV. Alternatively, non-controllable factors might have a positive influence on HDV's RI. Non-controllable factors make HDV's profitability uncertain and risky.

Antoinette is an entrepreneur and does not mind bearing risk, but Joseph does not like being subject to risk. One way of insuring Joseph against risk is to pay him a flat salary, regardless of the actual amount of residual income attained. All the risk would then be borne by Antoinette.

[1]The presentations here draw (in part) from teaching notes prepared by S. Huddart, N. Melumad and S. Reichelstein.

There is a problem here, however, because the effort that Joseph puts in is difficult to monitor and the absence of performance-based compensation will provide him with no incentive to work harder or undertake extra physical and mental effort beyond what is necessary to retain his job or to uphold his own personal values.

Moral hazard describes contexts in which an employee prefers to exert less effort (or report distorted information) than the effort (or information) desired by the owner because the employee's effort (or information) cannot be accurately monitored and enforced. In some repetitive jobs – for example, in electronic assembly – a supervisor can monitor the workers' actions and the moral hazard problem may not arise. However, the manager's job is often to gather information and exercise judgement on the basis of the information obtained and monitoring a manager's effort is thus considerably more difficult.

The term *moral hazard* originated in insurance contracts to represent situations where insurance coverage caused insured parties to take less care of their properties than they might otherwise. One response to moral hazard in insurance contracts is the system of deductibles (that is, the insured pays for damages below a specified amount). For a fuller discussion of principal–agent contract issues, see Baiman (2006).

Paying no salary and rewarding Joseph *only* on the basis of some performance measure – RI, in our example – raises different concerns. He would now be motivated to strive to increase RI because his rewards would increase with increases in RI. But compensating Joseph on RI also subjects him to risk. Why? Because HDV's RI depends not only on Joseph's effort, but also on random factors such as the local economy over which he has no control.

To compensate Joseph (who does not like being subject to risk) for taking on uncontrollable risk, Antoinette must pay him some extra compensation within the structure of the RI-based arrangement. Thus, using performance-based incentives will cost Antoinette more money, *on average,* than paying Joseph a flat salary. Why 'on average'? Because her compensation payment to Joseph will vary with RI outcomes. When averaged over these outcomes, the RI-based compensation will cost Antoinette more than would paying Joseph a flat salary. The motivation for having some salary and some performance-based bonus in compensation arrangements is to balance the benefits of incentives against the extra costs of imposing uncontrollable risk on the manager.

Intensity of incentives and financial and non-financial measurements

What dictates the intensity of the incentives? That is, how large should the incentive component be relative to salary? A key question is: How well does the performance measure capture the manager's ability to influence the desired results?

Measures of performance that are preferred change significantly with the manager's performance and not very much with changes in factors that are beyond the manager's control. Consequently, superior performance measures motivate the manager but limit the manager's exposure to uncontrollable risk and hence reduce the cost of providing incentives to get the manager to accept the incentive programme. On the other hand, measures of performance are inferior if they fail to capture the manager's performance and fail to induce managers to improve. When owners have superior performance measures available to them, they place greater reliance on incentive compensation.

Suppose Joseph has no authority to determine investments. Further suppose revenue is determined largely by external factors such as the local economy. His actions influence only costs. Using RI as a performance measure in these circumstances subjects Joseph's bonus to excessive risk because two components of the performance measure (investments and revenues) are unrelated to his actions. The management accountant might suggest that, to create stronger incentives, Antoinette should consider using a different performance measure for Joseph – perhaps HDV's costs – that more closely captures his effort. Note that, in this case, RI may be a perfectly good measure of the economic viability of HDV, but it is not a good measure of Joseph's performance.

The benefits of tying performance measures more closely to a manager's efforts encourage the use of non-financial measures. Consider two possible measures for evaluating the manager of the Housekeeping Department at one of Desfleurs' hotels – the costs of the Housekeeping Department and the average time taken by the housekeeping staff to clean a room. Suppose housekeeping costs are affected by factors such as wage rates, which the housekeeping manager does not determine. In this case, the average time taken to clean a room may more precisely capture the manager's performance.

The salary component of compensation dominates in the absence of good measures of performance (as in the case of some corporate staff and government officials). This is not to say, however, that incentives are completely absent; promotions and salary increases do depend on some overall measure of performance, but the incentives are less direct. Employers give stronger incentives when superior measures of performance are available to them and when monitoring the employee's effort is very difficult (estate agencies, for example, reward employees mainly on commissions on houses sold).

Benchmarks and relative performance evaluation

Owners can use *benchmarks* to evaluate performance. Benchmarks representing best practice may be available inside or outside the overall organisation. In our Hôtels Desfleurs example, benchmarks could be other similar hotels, either within or outside the Hôtels Desfleurs chain. Suppose Joseph has authority over revenues, costs and investments. In evaluating his performance, Antoinette would want to use, as a benchmark, a hotel of a similar size that is influenced by the same uncontrollable factors – for example, location, demographic trends and economic conditions – that affect HDV. *Differences* in performances of the two hotels occur only because of differences in the two managers' performances, not because of random factors. Thus, benchmarking, also called *relative performance evaluation*, 'filters out' the effects of the common non-controllable factors.

Concepts in action — Performance measurement at Unilever

Managers and boards of directors are often pushed to focus intently on a single measure of success, such as shareholder value or profit, and then do everything they can to maximise it. As a result, they can overlook other important measures, which can do long-term damage to a company. Unilever, the Anglo-Dutch manufacturer of Axe body spray and Lipton tea, has taken a different approach under chief executive officer Paul Polman. On Polman's first day as CEO, Unilever did away with earnings guidance and quarterly reporting in order to refocus the company's metrics on the long-term needs of a full range of stakeholders. And in 2012, Unilever launched an ambitious plan to double revenue by 2020 while halving the company's environmental impact. Dubbed the Unilever Sustainable Living Plan, the company is working to decouple financial growth from its impact on the environment and global health. Unilever's ambitious goals include improving financial performance while slashing its environmental footprint by 50%, sourcing 100% of its raw materials sustainably, and helping more than a billion people improve their health and well-being. Assessing the impact of its commitment means Unilever not only measures success based on its financial performance – including annual revenue, year-over-year revenue growth, and operating margin – but also how many calories it cuts from its ice cream products and how much of its energy use is derived from renewable sources. Initially, investors took a dim view of Unilever's shift in perspective, punishing the stock price. But it quickly rebounded, after analysts and shareholders accepted Polman's wider lens. When Polman retired at the end of 2018, the company had more than 160,000 employees worldwide, had annual revenue of €51 billion, and delivered a total shareholder return of 290% during his tenure.

Source: Kenny, G (2015) 'The false promise of the single metric', *Harvard Business Review,* 26 August, (https://hbr.org/2015/08/the-false-promise-of-the-single-metric); Ignatius, A. (2012) 'Captain Planet', *Harvard Business Review,* June (https://hbr.org/2012/06/captain-planet); Ruddick, G. (2016) 'Unilever CEO Paul Polman – the optimistic pessimist,' *The Guardian,* 25 January (https://www.theguardian.com/business/2016/jan/25/unilever-ceo-paul-polman-the-optimistic-pessimist); Boynton A. and Barchan, M. (2015) 'Unilever's Paul Polman: CEOs can't be 'slaves' to shareholders', Forbes, 20 July (https://www.forbes.com/sites/andyboynton/2015/07/20/unilevers-paul-polman-ceos-cant-be-slaves-to-shareholders/#33e41372561e); Unilever PLC press release (2018) 'Unilever CEO Announcement: Paul Polman to Retire; Alan Jope Appointed as Successor', London, United Kingdom/Rotterdam, Netherlands, 29 November (https://www.unilever.com/news/press-releases/2018/unilever-ceo-announcement.html).

Benchmarking is important in this light, but the element of surprise has recently been found to motivate people at work. Consider the experiment run by Professor Hayagreeva Rao at Stanford University. In one study he provides three groups of people with puzzles to solve. The first group received $1 immediately after solving a puzzle. The second knew they would get $1 for solving each puzzle but did not know when. The third group knew only that its members would be randomly rewarded – they completed most of the puzzles. Rao reports: 'It's the element of surprise, not the size of the award that really moves people.'

Can the performance of two managers responsible for running similar operations within a company be benchmarked against one another? Yes, but one problem is that the use of these benchmarks may reduce incentives for these managers to help one another. That is, a manager's performance evaluation measure improves either by doing a better job or by making the other manager look bad. Not working together as a team is not in the best interests of the organisation as a whole. In this case, using benchmarks for performance evaluation can lead to *goal incongruence*.

Performance measures at the individual activity level

This section focuses on incentive issues that arise in the context of individual activities. The principles described here, however, can be applied at all levels of the organisation.

Performing multiple tasks

Most employees perform more than one task as part of their job. Marketing representatives sell products, provide customer support and gather market information. Other jobs have multiple aspects to them. Manufacturing workers, for example, are responsible for both the quantity and quality of their products. Employers want employees to allocate their time and effort intelligently among various tasks or aspects of their jobs.

Consider, for example, garage mechanics. Their jobs have at least two distinct and important aspects. The first aspect is the repair work. Performing more repair work would generate more revenues for the workshop. The second aspect is customer satisfaction. The higher the quality of the job, the more likely the customer will be pleased. If the employer wants an employee to focus on both these aspects, then the employer must measure and compensate performance on both.

Suppose the employer can easily measure the quantity of repairs but not their quality. If the employer rewards workers on a piece-rate system – which pays workers only on the basis of the number of repairs performed – mechanics will probably increase the number of repairs they make at the expense of quality. Some companies experience this problem when they introduce by-the-job rates for their mechanics. The following steps might be taken to motivate workers to balance both quantity and quality:

1. Management can drop the piece-rate system and pay mechanics an hourly wage, a step that de-emphasises the quantity of repair. Mechanics' promotions and pay increases can be determined on the basis of management's assessment of each mechanic's overall performance regarding quantity and quality of repairs.
2. Management can evaluate employees, in part, using data such as customer-satisfaction surveys, the number of dissatisfied customers or the number of customer complaints.
3. Management can also employ independent staff to randomly monitor whether the repairs performed are of high quality.

Note that non-financial measures (such as customer-satisfaction measures) can play a central role in motivating the mechanics to emphasise both quantity and quality. The goal is to measure both aspects of the mechanics' jobs and to balance incentives so that both aspects are properly emphasised.

Environmental and ethical responsibilities

Managers in all organisations shoulder environmental and ethical responsibilities. Environmental violations (such as water and air pollution) and unethical and illegal practices (such as bribery and corruption) carry heavy fines and are prison offences under the laws of many European countries. But environmental responsibilities and ethical conduct extend beyond legal requirements.

Socially responsible companies set stringent environmental targets and measure and report their performance against them. German, Swiss, Dutch and Scandinavian companies report on environmental performance as part of a larger set of social responsibility disclosures (which include employee welfare and community development information). Some companies make environmental performance a line item on every employee's salary appraisal sheet.

The UN Secretary General António Guterres noted in August 2021 that the climate projections from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) point to 'a code red for humanity.' The report was published as climate crises were more and more evident including floods, uncontrollable fires and extreme heat being experienced in different parts of the world. The projections suggest that environmental disasters will soon be far more common – and far more severe. The concern with climate change is of paramount importance to organisations. Socially responsible companies will stress not just shareholder returns but refocus their business premise on positive social change and community impact. Many companies are embracing a wider corporate agenda such that organisational activities embed actions that have wider outcomes than just increasing profit.

There is a recognition that corporates must address pressing environmental issues and social concerns. They go beyond treating corporate social responsibility initiatives as a side activity and instead, integrate these into the way in which they seek to create value. Socially responsible activities will always be contextual and look different for different organisations. Initiatives can include a mix of charitable funding, workplace condition improvements, more extensive social benefits such as health care, diversity of workforce, consumer and community wellbeing and certainly environmental damage reduction.

More and more firms are seeking to become more sustainable in their practices which is a subset of the adoption of ESGs – or Environmental, Social, and Governance standards. ESG is sometimes misinterpreted as being of principal concern to investors. But in fact, it concerns stakeholders like customers, suppliers, employees among others. It can be viewed as enabling the organisation to manage risks and opportunities related to environmental, social and governance criteria but ESG priorities cannot be the sole domain of shareholders or investors (Peterdy, 2022). The Deloitte 2022 CxO Sustainability Report indicated that of the over 2000 corporate leaders from across 21 countries who were surveyed, two thirds stated that their organisations are using more sustainable materials and increasing the efficiency of energy use. More than 50% have adopted energy-efficient or climate-friendly machinery, technologies, and equipment.

The celebrated economist Milton Friedman had vehemently argued against spending shareholder's money for anything that does not relate to increasing shareholder wealth. He won the Nobel prize for his theorising but many today believe he was wrong to think that the idea of corporate social responsibility was a 'fundamentally subversive doctrine in a free society' (Otten, 2017). The rationale is that 'in doing business responsibly, companies can do good while also reaping positive financial externalities' (Li, 2020).

Ethical behaviour on the part of managers is paramount. In particular, the numbers that subunit managers report should not be tainted by 'cooking the books' – they should be uncontaminated by, for example, padded assets, understated liabilities, fictitious sales and understated costs.

It is clear that 'Not one single country, anywhere in the world, is corruption-free; 68% of the countries worldwide have a serious corruption problem', according to the global corruption watchdog Transparency International (www.transparency.org/). Many of the world's largest organisations have had to face charges of engaging in corrupt business practices. Such companies include Samsung, VW, Daimler, Uber, Johnson and Johnson and Alcatel-Lucent, among many others. Penalties can be steep. Daimler faced a fine of $185 billion in a bribery scandal; Siemens had to pay fines of $1.6 billion to the American and German governments. Volkswagen's fines to the US relating

to illegal emission-controlling software in vehicles exceeded $20 billion and amounted to $1.18 billion payable to German authorities. Many companies have an excellent anti-corruption reputation, including Reebok, Novo Nordisk, Tata and Ikea among others. Companies adopting explicit codes of conduct on corruption recognise that 'grease' is not an efficient way of doing business.

Codes of business conduct are circulated in some organisations to signal appropriate and inappropriate individual behaviour. Division managers often cite enormous top-management pressures 'to make the budget' as excuses or rationalisations for not adhering to ethical accounting policies and procedures. A healthy amount of motivational pressure is not bad – as long as the 'tone from the top' simultaneously communicates the absolute need for all managers to behave ethically at all times. Management should promptly and severely reprimand unethical conduct irrespective of the benefits that accrue to the company from such actions. Some companies emphasise ethical behaviour by routinely evaluating employees against a business code of ethics.

Strategy and levers of control

Given the management accounting focus of this book, this chapter has emphasised the role of quantitative financial and non-financial performance – evaluation measures that companies use to implement their strategies. These measures – such as ROI, RI, EVA, customer satisfaction and employee satisfaction – monitor critical performance variables that help managers track progress towards achieving a company's strategic goals. Because these measures help diagnose whether a company is performing to expectations, they are collectively called **diagnostic control systems**. Companies motivate managers to achieve these goals by holding managers accountable for, and by rewarding them for, meeting these goals. The concern, however, is that the pressure to perform may cause managers to cut corners and misreport numbers to make their performance look better than it is, as happened at companies such as Enron, UBS, Satyam, Valient Pharmaceuticals, Toshiba, Autonomy, Panasonic and Satyam among others. Some companies fall foul of other regulatory measures. For instance, the **General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR)** represents a determination of the European Union legislators to unify data protection policies and laws throughout the European economic zone and enforce it with **heavy penalties**. Still in 2021, there was a 113% increase in both the number of GDPR fines issued so far and the individual amount of fines. Amazon was fined €746 million, WhatsApp €225 million, British Airways €26.5 million (GDPR Blog, 1 February 2022). To avoid unethical behaviour, companies need to balance the push for performance resulting from diagnostic control systems, the first of four levers of control, with three other levers: *boundary systems, belief systems* and *interactive control systems*.

Boundary systems describe standards of behaviour and codes of conduct expected of all employees, especially action that are off-limits. Ethical behaviour on the part of managers is paramount. In particular, numbers that subunit managers' report should not be tainted by 'cooking the books'. They should be free of, for example, overstated assets, understated liabilities, fictitious revenues and understated costs.

Codes of practice conduct signal appropriate and inappropriate individual behaviours. The following is from Daimler's Integrity Code:

'The foundation of our work at Daimler is built on our four corporate values: respect, passion, discipline and integrity. We show respect for our employees, customers and business partners. Our passion enables us to do our best every day; it is the basis of our success. For us, discipline means taking on challenges and achieving our goals while taking various interests into account. Our integrity makes us successful over the long term and contributes to a functioning society. These values lay the foundation for the corporate values at all our Group companies' (Mercedes-Benz Group AG, 2022).

Division managers often cite enormous pressure from top management 'to make the budget' as excuses or rationalisations for not adhering to ethical accounting policies and procedures. A healthy amount of motivational pressure is desirable, as long as the 'tone from the top' and the

code of conduct simultaneously communicate the absolute need for all managers to behave ethically at all times. Managers should train employees to behave ethically. They should promptly and severely reprimand unethical conduct, regardless of the benefits that might accrue to the company from unethical actions. Many organisations set explicit boundaries precluding actions that harm the environment. Environmental violations (such as water and air pollution) carry heavy fines and are prison offences under the laws of many nations. In many companies, environmental responsibilities extend beyond legal requirements.

Socially responsible companies, such as BP and Unilever, set aggressive environmental goals and measure and report their performance against them. German, Swiss, Dutch and Scandanavian companies report on environmental performance as part of a larger set of social responsibility disclosures (such as employee welfare and community development activities). Some companies, such as Dutch financial services giant ING incorporates social, ethical, and environmental objectives as part of its top management's pay structure. Other firms in the Netherlands – including chemical company Akzo Nobel, life sciences group DSM and mail operator TNT – also tie executive compensation to environmental improvement. HSBC in its 'Ethical and Environmental Code of Conduct for Suppliers of Goods and Services' (HSBC, 2020) states that 'At all times, our goal is to work collaboratively with our supply chain partners on sustainability. In those cases where a supplier or one of its subcontractors is found to not be in compliance with this Code, HSBC will work with the supplier on an improvement plan. If the supplier continues to be not in compliance with this Code, HSBC will take steps to review the terms of the contract, including reduction in the order and exiting of the relationship'.

Belief systems articulate the mission, purpose and core values of a company. They describe the accepted norms and patterns of behaviour expected of all managers and employees with respect to each other, shareholders, customers and communities. Volkswagen's code of ethics does help the company in meeting the company's social responsibility. 'It's about making life better for everyone, not just a few.' From individuals to communities, environment to enterprise, Volkswagen's credo is intended to inspire all managers and other employees to do their best. Belief systems play to employees' intrinsic motivations.

Intrinsic motivation is the desire to achieve self-satisfaction from good performance regardless of external rewards such as bonuses or promotion. Intrinsic motivation comes from being given greater responsibility, doing interesting and creative work, having pride in doing that work, establishing commitment to the organisation, and developing personal bonds with co-workers. High intrinsic motivation enhances performance because managers and worker have a sense of achievement in doing something important, feel satisfied with their jobs, and see opportunities for personal growth.

Interactive control systems are formal information systems that managers use to focus organisation attention and learning on key strategic issues. An excessive focus on diagnostic control systems and critical performance variables can cause an organisation to ignore emerging threats and opportunities – changes in technology, customer preferences, regulations and industry competition that can undercut a business.

Interactive control systems track strategic uncertainties that businesses face, such as the emergence of digital imaging in the case of Kodak and Fujifilm, cryptocurrencies in the case of fiat money and, and the shift in customer preferences towards the metaverse and in the case of Teams and Zoom. The result is ongoing discussion and debate about assumptions and action plans. New strategies emerge from the dialogue and debate surrounding the interactive process. Interactive control systems force busy managers to step back from the actions needed to manage the business today and to shift their focus forward to positioning the organisation for the opportunities and threats of tomorrow.

Measuring and rewarding managers for achieving critical performance variables is an important driver of corporate performance. But these diagnostic control systems must be counterbalanced by the other levers of control – boundary systems, belief systems and interactive control systems – to ensure that proper business ethics, inspirational values and attention to future threats and opportunities are not sacrificed while achieving business results.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Financial measures such as return on investment and residual income can capture important aspects of both manager performance and organisation-subunit performance. In many cases, however, financial measures are supplemented with non-financial measures of performance, such as those relating to customer-service time, number of defects and productivity.

2 The DuPont method describes return on investment (ROI) as the product of two components: revenues divided by investment and income divided by revenues. ROI can be increased in three ways: increase revenues, decrease costs and decrease investment.

3 Residual income is income minus a required monetary return on the investment. Residual income was designed to overcome some of the limitations of ROI. For example, residual income is more likely than ROI to promote goal congruence. That is, actions that are in the best interests of the organisation maximise residual income. The objective of maximising ROI, conversely, may induce managers of highly profitable divisions to reject projects that, from the viewpoint of the organisation as a whole, should be accepted.

4 Economic value added (EVA®) is a variation of the residual-income calculation. It equals the after-tax operating profit minus the after-tax weighted-average cost of capital multiplied by total assets minus current liabilities.

5 The current cost of an asset is the cost now of purchasing an identical asset to the one currently held. Historical-cost asset measurement methods consider the original cost of the asset net of total depreciation.

6 Organisations create incentives by rewarding managers on the basis of performance. But managers may face risks because random factors beyond their control may also affect performance. Owners choose a mix of salary and incentive compensation to trade-off the incentive benefit against the cost of imposing risk.

7 Obtaining measures of employee performance that are superior is critical for implementing strong incentives. Many management accounting practices, such as the design of responsibility centres and the establishment of financial and non-financial measures, have as their goal better performance evaluation.

8 Most employees perform multiple tasks as part of their jobs. In some situations, one aspect of a job is easily measured (for example, the quantity of work done), while another aspect is not (for example, the quality of work done). Creating incentives to promote the aspect of the job that is easily measured (quantity) may cause workers to ignore an aspect of their job that is more difficult to measure (quality).

9 Implementing the four levers of control can assist a company to achieve its pursued performance, engage in ethical behaviour, inspire its employees and to act proactively in the face of strategic threats and opportunities.

References and further reading

Baiman, S. (2006) 'Contract theory analysis of managerial accounting issues', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), Chapter 2.

Bouwens, J. and Speklé, R. (2007) 'Does EVA add value?', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall).

Deloitte (2022) 'Deloitte 2022 CxO Sustapinability Report' (https://www2.deloitte.com/content/dam/Deloitte/global/Documents/2022-deloitte-global-cxo-sustainability-report.pdf)

Eccles, R. (2022) 'Active ownership vs. active returns: The Norway sovereign wealth fund dilemma', Forbes, 29 January (https://www.forbes.com/sites/bobeccles/2022/01/29/active-ownership-vs-active-returns-the-norway-sovereign-wealth-fund-dilemma/?sh=674fe26d25eb).

GDPR Blog (2022) '20 biggest GDPR fines so far [2019, 2020, 2021 & 2022]', Data Privacy Manager, 1 February (https://dataprivacymanager.net/5-biggest-gdpr-fines-so-far-2020/)

Holter, M. (2017) 'Norway's $1 trillion sovereign wealth fund steps up "no" votes on CEO pay', *Independent*, 27 November (www.independent.co.uk/news/business/news/norway-wealth-fund-ceo-pay-curb-bonuses-incomes-a8077731.html).

HSBC (2020) 'HSBC Ethical and Environmental Code of Conduct for Suppliers of Goods and Services' Version 10, 1 August (hsbc-code-of-conduct-english.pdf)

Ittner, C. and Larcker, D. (2000) 'A bigger yardstick for company performance', *FT Mastering Management*, 20 November, pp. 8–11.

Kaplan, R.S. and Norton, D. (2001) *The Strategy Focused Organization: How Balanced Scorecard Companies Thrive in the New Business Environment* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press).

Kaplan, R.S. and Norton, D. (2004) *Strategy Maps: Converting Intangible Assets into Tangible Outcomes* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press).

Li, S. (2020) 'The business case for ESGs: Why companies adopt environmental values beyond social responsibility', Forbes, 6 April (https://www.forbes.com/sites/stevenli1/2020/04/06/esg-environmental-values-business-case/?sh=5418f043708f)

Mercedes-Benz Group (2022) 'Our integrity code' (https://group.mercedes-benz.com/documents/company/compliance/daimler-integritycode.pdf).

Otten, L. (2017) '2022 Global workforce trends', *Philadelphia Business Journal*, 20 December (https://www.bizjournals.com/philadelphia/news/2017/12/20/why-milton-friedman-was-wrong-about.html)

Peterdy, K. (2022) 'ESG (Environmental Social and Governance)', CFI, 30 August (https://corporatefinanceinstitute.com/resources/knowledge/other/esg-environmental-social-governance/)

Population Matters (2021) '"Code red for humanity": UN climate report' (https://populationmatters.org/news/2021/08/code-red-humanity-un-climate-report#:~:text=With%20the%20UN%20Secretary-General%20calling%20it%20a%20%E2%80%9Ccode,the%20UN%20body%20that%20provides%20governments%20and%20)

Simons, R. (1995) 'Control in an age of empowerment', *Harvard Business Review*, 73(2) (March–April) pp. 8–88.

Stewart, G.B., III (1994) 'EVA®: fact and fantasy', *Journal of Applied Corporate Finance* (Summer).

Treloar, S. (2022). 'Norway's Wealth Fund to Vote Against Apple Executive Pay Package', Bloomberg, 28 February (https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2022-02-28/norway-s-wealth-fund-to-vote-against-apple-executive-pay-package#:~:text=Norway%E2%80%99s%20%241.3%20trillion%20sovereign%20wealth%20fund%20opposes%20Apple,last%20year%20to%20Chief%20Executive%20Officer%20Tim%20Cook).

Young, S.D. and O'Byrne, S.F. (2001) *EVA® and Value-based Management: A Practical Guide to Implementation* (New York: McGraw-Hill).

CHAPTER 19

Assessment material

Review questions

19.1 What factors affecting ROI does the DuPont method highlight?

19.2 'Residual income is not identical to ROI although both measures incorporate profit and investment into their computations.' Do you agree? Explain.

19.3 Describe economic value added (EVA®).

19.4 Give three definitions of investment used in practice when computing ROI.

19.5 Distinguish between measuring assets based on current cost and historical cost.

19.6 Why is it important to distinguish between the performance of a manager and the performance of the organisation subunit for which the manager is responsible? Give examples.

19.7 Describe moral hazard.

19.8 'Managers should be rewarded only on the basis of their performance measures. They should be paid no salary.' Do you agree? Explain.

19.9 Explain the management accountant's role in helping organisations design stronger incentive systems for their employees.

19.10 Explain the role of benchmarking in evaluating managers.

Exercises

Basic level

19.11 **ROI and residual profit** (10–15 minutes)

Récré-Gaules SARL produces and distributes a wide variety of recreational products. One of its divisions, the Idefix Division, manufactures and sells 'menhirs', which are very popular with cross-country skiers. The demand for these menhirs is relatively insensitive to price changes. The Idefix Division is considered to be an investment centre and in recent years has averaged a return on investment of 20%. The following data are available for the Idefix Division and its product:

Total annual fixed costs	€1 000 000
Variable costs per menhir	€300
Average number of menhirs sold each year	10 000
Average operating assets invested in the division	€1 600 000

Required

1 What is the minimum selling price per unit that the Idefix Division could charge in order for Marie-Aimée Obelix, the division manager, to get a favourable performance rating? Management considers an ROI below 20% to be unfavourable.

2 Assume that Récré-Gaules judges the performance of its investment centre managers on the basis of residual income rather than ROI, as was assumed in requirement 1. The company's required rate of return is considered to be 15%. What is the minimum selling price per unit that the Idefix Division should charge for Obelix to receive a favourable performance rating?

19.12 Pricing and return on investment (30 minutes)

Salvador SA assembles motorcycles and uses long-run (defined as 3–5 years) average demand to set the budgeted production level and costs for pricing. Prices are then adjusted only for large changes in assembly wage rates or direct materials prices. You are given the following data:

Direct materials, assembly wages and other variable costs	€1320 per unit
Fixed costs	€300 000 000 per year
Target return on investment	20%
Normal utilisation of capacity (average output)	1 000 000 units
Investment (total assets)	€900 000 000

Required

1 What operating profit percentage on revenues is needed to attain the target return on investment of 20%? What is the selling price per unit?

2 Using the selling price per unit calculated in requirement 1, what rate of return on investment will be earned if Salvador assembles and sells 1 500 000 units? 500 000 units?

3 The company has a management bonus plan based on yearly division performance. Assume that Salvador assembled and sold 1 000 000 units, 1 500 000 units and 500 000 units in three successive years. Each of three people served as divisional manager for one year before being killed in a car accident. As the principal heir of the third manager, comment on the bonus plan.

*19.13 Residual income, economic value added (EVA®) (25 minutes)

Intervilles SA operates two divisions, a Lorry Rental Division that rents to individuals and a Transportation Division that transports goods from one city to another. Results reported for the last year are as follows:

	Lorry Rental Division	Transportation Division
Total assets	€650 000	€950 000
Current liabilities	120 000	200 000
Operating profit before tax	75 000	160 000

Required

1 Calculate the residual income for each division using operating profit before tax and investment equal to total assets minus current liabilities. The required rate of return on investments is 12%.

2 The company has two sources of funds: long-term debt with a market value of €900 000 at an interest rate of 10% and equity capital with a market value of €600 000 at a cost of equity of 15%. Intervilles' income tax rate is 40%. Intervilles applies the same weighted-average cost of capital to both divisions, since each division faces similar risks. Calculate the economic value added (EVA®) for each division.

3 Using your answers to requirements 1 and 2, what would you conclude about the performance of each division? Explain briefly.

19.14 Ethics, manager's performance evaluation (25 minutes)

Serra-Mica Srl is a maker of ceramic coffee cups. It imprints company logos and other sayings on the cups for both commercial and wholesale markets. The firm has the capacity to produce 3 000 000 cups per year, but the recession has cut production and sales last year to 1 500 000 cups. The summary operating statement for 2022 was as follows:

Sales (1 500 000 × €2)	€3 000 000
Cost of goods sold	2 700 000
Gross profit	300 000
Marketing, distribution and administration costs (fixed)	400 000
Operating profit	€(100 000)

Cost of goods sold consists of variable costs of €750 000 (or €0.50 per cup) and fixed costs of €1 950 000 (or €1.30 per cup). There was no opening and no closing stock of finished goods in 2022.

Concerned about the loss, the board of directors hired a new CEO, Antonio Pirelli, and offered him an incentive-based compensation contract rather than the fixed-salary contract of the previous CEO. Pirelli's contract paid €50 000 per year in salary plus a 15% bonus on the firm's operating profits (if any) before deducting the bonus. Operating profits are calculated using full absorption costing – that is, fixed manufacturing costs per unit manufactured are inventoried and expensed only when the goods are sold.

Pirelli took the following actions for 2023:

a Increased production to 2 500 000 cups.

b Increased sales to 1 800 000 cups.

c Increased marketing, distribution and administration costs to €650 000. (Pirelli's salary of €50 000 is included in these costs.)

The selling price per cup in 2023 of €2, the variable manufacturing costs per cup of €0.50 and total fixed manufacturing costs of €1 950 000 were all unchanged from 2022.

At the end of 2023, Pirelli met with the board of directors and announced that he had accepted another job. He noted that he had put Serra-Mica successfully on track and thanked the board for the opportunity. His new job was to turn around another struggling company.

Required

1 Calculate Pirelli's bonus for 2023.

2 Evaluate Pirelli's performance. Did he do as good a job as the numbers in requirement 1 suggest? Explain.

3 Did Pirelli behave ethically? Explain your answer.

Intermediate level

***19.15 Return on investment; comparisons of three companies** (CMA, adapted) (30 minutes)

Return on investment is often expressed as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Income}}{\text{Investment}} = \frac{\text{Revenues}}{\text{Investment}} \times \frac{\text{Income}}{\text{Revenues}}$$

Required

1 What advantages are there in the breakdown of the computation into two separate components?

2 Fill in the following blanks:

	Companies in same industry		
	A	B	C
Revenue	€1 000 000	€500 000	?
Profit	€100 000	€50 000	?
Investment	€500 000	?	€5 000 000
Profit as % of revenue	?	?	0.5%
Investment turnover	?	?	2
Return on investment	?	1%	?

After filling in the blanks, comment on the relative performance of these companies as thoroughly as the data permit.

19.16 Financial and non-financial performance measures, goal congruence (CMA, adapted) (25 minutes)

Thor-Equip AS specialises in the manufacture of medical equipment, a field that has become increasingly competitive. Approximately two years ago, Knut Solbær, president of Thor-Equip, decided to revise the bonus plan (based, at the time, entirely on operating profit) to encourage divisional managers to focus on areas that were important to customers and that added value without increasing cost. In addition to a profitability incentive, the revised plan also includes incentives for reduced rework costs, reduced sales returns and on-time deliveries. Bonuses are calculated and awarded semi-annually on the following basis. A base bonus is calculated at 2% of operating profit. The bonus amount is then adjusted by the following amounts:

a (i) Reduced by excess of rework costs over 2% of operating profit.
(ii) No adjustment if rework costs are less than or equal to 2% of operating profit.

b Increased by €5000 if over 98% of deliveries are on time, by €2000 if 96–98% of deliveries are on time and by €0 if on-time deliveries are below 96%.

c (i) Increased by €3000 if sales returns are less than or equal to 1.5% of sales.
(ii) Decreased by 50% of excess of sales returns over 1.5% of sales.

Note: If the calculation of the bonus results in a negative amount for a particular period, the manager simply receives no bonus and the negative amount is not carried forward to the next period.

Results for Thor-Equip's Kari and Siri Divisions for the year 2022 , the first year under the new bonus plan, follow. In the previous year, 2017, under the old bonus plan, the Kari Division manager earned a bonus of €27 060 and the Siri Division manager a bonus of €22 440.

	Kari Division		Siri Division	
	1 January 2022 to 30 June 2022	1 July 2022 to 31 December 2022	1 January 2022 to 30 June 2022	1 July 2022 to 31 December 2022
Sales	€4 200 000	€4 400 000	€2 850 000	€2 900 000
Operating profit	€462 000	€440 000	€342 000	€406 000
On-time delivery	95.4%	97.3%	98.2%	94.6%
Rework costs	€11 500	€11 000	€6000	€8000
Sales returns	€84 000	€70 000	€44 750	€42 500

Required

1 Why did Knut need to introduce these new performance measures? That is, why does he need to use these performance measures over and above the operating profit numbers for the period?

2 Calculate the bonus earned by each manager for each six-month period and for the year 2022.

3 What effect did the change in the bonus plan have on each manager's behaviour? Did the new bonus plan achieve what he desired? What changes, if any, would you make to the new bonus plan?

Advanced level

19.17 Risk sharing, incentives, benchmarking, multiple tasks (20–30 minutes)

The Portimão Division of Amica Lda sells car batteries. Amica's corporate management gives Portimão management considerable operating and investment autonomy in running the division. Amica is considering how it should compensate Manuel Belem, the general manager of the Portimão Division. Proposal 1 calls for paying him a fixed salary. Proposal 2 calls for paying him no salary and compensating him only on the basis of the division's ROI (calculated based on operating profit before any bonus payments). Proposal 3 calls for paying him some salary and some bonus based on ROI. Assume that Manuel does not like bearing risk.

Required

1 **a** Evaluate each of the three proposals, specifying the advantages and disadvantages of each.
b Suppose that Amica competes against Tiara-Iberica SA in the car battery business. Tiara is roughly the same size and operates in a business environment that is very similar to Portimão's. The senior management of Amica is considering evaluating Manuel on the basis of Portimão's ROI minus Tiara's ROI. He complains that this approach is unfair because the performance of another firm, over which he has no control, is included in his performance evaluation measure. Is his complaint valid? Why or why not?

2 Now suppose that Manuel has no authority for making capital investment decisions. Corporate management makes these decisions. Is return on investment a good performance measure to use to evaluate him? Is return on investment a good measure to evaluate the economic viability of the Portimão Division? Explain.

3 Portimão's salespersons are responsible for selling and providing customer service and support. Sales are easy to measure. Although customer service is very important to Portimão in the long run, it has not yet implemented customer-service measures. Manuel wants to compensate his salesforce only on the basis of sales commissions paid for each unit of product sold. He cites two advantages to this plan: (a) it creates very strong incentives for the salesforce to work hard, and (b) the company pays salespersons only when the company itself is earning revenues and has cash. Do you like his plan? Why or why not?

19.18 Relevant costs, performance evaluation, goal congruence (30 minutes)

Mikkeli Oy has three operating divisions. The managers of these divisions are evaluated on their divisional operating profit, a figure that includes an allocation of corporate overhead *proportional to the revenues of each division*. The operating profit statement (in thousands) for the first quarter of 2023 is as follows:

	Tampere Division	Oulu Division	Kotka Division	Total
Revenues	€2000	€1200	€1600	€4800
Cost of goods sold	1050	540	640	2230
Gross profit	950	660	960	2570
Division overhead	250	125	160	535
Corporate overhead	400	240	320	960
Divisional operating profit	€300	€295	€480	€1075

The manager of the Tampere Division is unhappy that his profitability is about the same as the Oulu Division's and is much less than the Kotka Division's, even though his revenues are much higher than either of these other two divisions'. The manager knows that he is carrying one line of products with very low profitability. He was going to replace this line of business as soon as more profitable product opportunities became available, but he has kept it because the line is marginally profitable and uses facilities that would otherwise be idle. That manager now realises, however, that the sales from this product line are attracting a fair amount of corporate overhead because of the allocation procedure and maybe the line is already unprofitable for him. This low- margin line of products had the following characteristics for the most recent quarter (in thousands):

Revenues	€800
Cost of goods sold	600
Avoidable division overhead	100

Required

1 Prepare the operating profit statement for Mikkeli Oy for the second quarter of 2023. Assume that revenues and operating results are identical to the first quarter except that the manager of the Tampere Division has dropped the low-margin product line from his product group.

2 Is Mikkeli Oy better off from this action?

3 Is the Tampere Division manager better off from this action?

4 Suggest changes for Mikkeli's system of division reporting and evaluation that will motivate division managers to make decisions that are in the best interest of Mikkeli Oy as a whole. Discuss any potential disadvantages of your proposal.

*19.19 Evaluating managers, ROI, value-chain analysis of cost structure (40–50 minutes)

User Friendly Computer is one of the largest personal computer companies in the world. The board of directors was recently (March 2023) informed that User Friendly's president, Felix Lechat, was resigning to 'pursue other interests'. An executive search firm recommends that the board consider appointing Peter Diamond (current CEO of Computer Power) or Rachida Kamel (current CEO of Plum Computer). You collect the following financial information on Computer Power and Plum Computer for 2021 and 2022 (in millions):

	Computer Power		Plum Computer	
	2021	2022	2021	2022
Total assets	€360.0	€340.0	€160.0	€240.0
Revenues	€400.0	€320.0	€200.0	€350.0
Costs				
R&D	36.0	16.8	18.0	43.5
Design	15.0	8.4	3.6	11.6
Production	102.0	112.0	82.8	98.6
Marketing	75.0	92.4	36.0	66.7
Distribution	27.0	22.4	18.0	23.2
Customer service	45.0	28.0	21.6	46.4
Total costs	300.0	280.0	180.0	290.0
Operating profit	€100.0	€40.0	€20.0	€60.0

In early 2023, a computer magazine gave Plum Computer's main product five stars (its highest rating on a five-point scale). Computer Power's main product was given three stars, down from five stars a year ago because of customer-service problems. The computer magazine also ran an article on new-product introductions in the personal computer industry. Plum Computer received high marks for new products in 2018. Computer Power's performance was called 'mediocre'. One 'unnamed insider' of Computer Power commented: 'Our new-product cupboard is empty.'

Required

1. Use the DuPont method to analyse the ROI of Computer Power and Plum Computer in 2021 and 2022. Comment on the results.
2. Calculate the percentage of costs in each of the six business-function cost categories for Computer Power and Plum Computer in 2021 and 2022. Comment on the results.
3. Rank Diamond and Kamel as potential candidates for CEO of User Friendly Computer.

19.20 ROI, residual income, investment decisions, division manager's compensation (CMA, adapted) (50 minutes)

Faulkenheim GmbH is a manufacturer of tool and die machinery. Faulkenheim is a vertically integrated company that is organised into two divisions. The Frankfurt Steel Division manufactures alloy steel plates. The Tool and Die Machinery Division uses the alloy steel plates to make machines. Faulkenheim operates each of its divisions as an investment centre.

Faulkenheim monitors its divisions on the basis of return on investment (ROI) with investment defined as average operating assets employed. Faulkenheim uses ROI to determine management bonuses. All investments in operating assets are expected to earn a minimum return of 11% before income taxes. For many years, Frankfurt's ROI has ranged from 11.8% to 14.7%. During the fiscal year ending 31 December 2022, Frankfurt contemplated a capital acquisition with an estimated ROI of 11.5%; division management, however, decided against the investment because it believed that the investment would decrease Frankfurt's overall ROI.

Frankfurt's 2022 operating income statement follows. The division's operating assets employed were €15 750 000 at 31 December 2022, a 5% increase over the previous year-end balance.

Frankfurt Steel Division operating profit statement for the year ending 31 December 2022

Revenue		€25 000 000
Cost of goods sold		16 500 000
Gross profit		8 500 000
Operating costs		
Administrative	€3 955 000	
Marketing	2 700 000	
Total operating costs		6 655 000
Operating profit		€1 845 000

Required

1. Calculate the return on investment in average operating assets employed (ROI) for 2022 for the Frankfurt Steel Division.
2. Calculate Frankfurt Steel Division's residual income on the basis of average operating assets employed.
3. Would the management of Frankfurt Steel Division have been more likely to accept the investment opportunity it had in 2022 if residual income were used as a performance measure instead of ROI? Explain.
4. Frank Weissmann, the Chairman of Faulkenheim GmbH is considering one of four alternative ways to compensate division managers.
   - a Pay each division manager only a flat salary and no bonus.
   - b Make all of each division manager's compensation depend on division residual income.
   - c Make all of each division manager's compensation depend on company-wide (Faulkenheim GmbH) residual income rather than divisional residual income.

d Use benchmarking and compensate each division manager on the basis of his or her own division's residual income minus the residual profit of the other division. Assume the two divisions have comparable levels of investment and required rates of return.

Assume that division managers do not like bearing risk. Evaluate each of the four alternatives Weissmann is considering, in the context of the structure and businesses of Faulkenheim GmbH. Indicate the positive and negative features of each proposal.

5 What compensation arrangement would you recommend? Explain your answer briefly.

PART IV

Case study problems

Case 401

BBR plc

Clive Emmanuel, University of Glasgow

This case highlights a transfer-pricing problem where divisional interests are pitted against total corporate profitability. The case requires some analysis of the potential costs and benefits of a transfer-pricing procedure based on divisional management negotiation.

'BBR prides itself on being a growing, prosperous company, its success being partly due to a good management team which fully participates in its development via a decentralised control system.' This statement was questioned at the meeting which took place between John North, group finance director of BBR and Paul Giddings, divisional general manager of the Shrewsbury plant. The surprise came when Paul revealed that he did not believe he was responsible for his division's profitability. This, he claimed, was due to the company's transfer-pricing policy.

Historically, Paul's division bought over 50% of its total input of rubber hose from a sister division located in Preston. This trade annually accounted for about 25–35% of the Preston division's total output. Paul felt that the transfer price was unfair, and hence his division's reported profit was not a true reflection of his operational effectiveness. In the ensuing conversation both men agreed in principle that divisional general managers are delegated discretionary control over short-term strategy development, day-to-day operating decisions and capital expenditure decisions up to a prescribed limit. However, Paul claimed that in practice other factors intervened to reduce the divisional manager's degree of control and took, as an example, the inter-divisional trade in rubber hose.

The rubber hose trade

Fundamentally, the Preston division produces rubber hose which is then sold to, among others, Paul's Shrewsbury division where it is 'tailored' for hydraulic uses in pit props, aircraft undercarriages and heavy plant and equipment.

Before the annual budgets are compiled, the divisional general managers enter into negotiations about fixing the transfer price. Three months' notice is required before any mutually agreed price can be revised. The managers themselves spend one or two days negotiating the transfer price for the forthcoming months. At this meeting, information provided by their respective management

Source: Emmanuel, C.R. (1988) 'BBR plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission.

accountants and annual cost variances provided by the central purchasing officer of BBR are available. The Preston division provides cost data relating to standard variable and fixed costs traceable to the division, plus an apportionment for selling, administrative and distribution costs. Normally, these data provide a platform price for the negotiations. The forecasts given by the central purchasing officer are included in these cost estimates. The Preston subsidiary is unaware of the assumptions on which the purchasing forecasts are based, but nevertheless accepts them as relevant to the fixing of the transfer price.

The Shrewsbury division also compiles standard cost data, and in addition presents price list information with the likely allowable discounts it can hope to receive from alternative suppliers. On some occasions these latter estimates form the ceiling price for the negotiations on the transfer price. One of the difficulties that has been experienced is that the range between the cost estimates at Preston and the competitor list prices at Shrewsbury can be vast. So much so that the platform price exceeds the ceiling price. This may occur when excess supply is expected to characterise the external market. Hard-nosed negotiations can result in the ultimate transfer price being less than satisfactory to both parties and there is always the possibility for unrelated disputes to interfere with the unstructured negotiations on the transfer price.

When a transfer price has been negotiated, this is incorporated in the annual budgets of the divisions resulting in separate profit targets. The Preston division requires large volume production in order to obtain economies of scale and to maintain its competitive position in the external market. Manufacturing set-up costs are high, and hence there are real cost savings in having long production runs. The Shrewsbury division, on the other hand, is committed to increasing its share of the final product market which is price-sensitive. The end-users are mainly multinational companies and have access to worldwide suppliers. The differing orientations are perhaps best illustrated by the responses to a question put to the respective divisional managers about the degree of autonomy which they exercise.

Does the authority to use external markets freely, to develop and innovate products, and to plan the division's future:

		Preston division	Shrewsbury division
(a)	reduce the interdependence between the companies of the group?	Agree	Disagree
(b)	make compliance with corporate plans more difficult?	Agree	Disagree
(c)	allow your division's performance to be a more realistic reflection of your worth or effort?	Agree	Agree
(d)	motivate you to use more your ingenuity, imagination, and creativity?	Agree	Agree
(e)	cause corporate/group objectives to give ground to the division's goals?	Agree	Disagree
(f)	enhance the competitive effectiveness of the group as a whole?	Disagree	Agree

Paul Giddings feels that at the transfer-price negotiating stage, he is always in a weak position. There are only two other domestic suppliers and three overseas who could supply the rubber hose in the volume he requires. Even then it is unlikely that any one of these five external suppliers would be willing to handle more than 20% of his division's total needs. His input to the negotiations is based on volume discounts likely to be available from the external suppliers and he argues that the Preston division should give a substantially better discount when he is buying internally because Preston avoids the problems of the settlement and payments, advertising and some transportation costs. In fact, he argues that the economies of scale Preston enjoys from the internal trade are being passed on in disproportionately lower prices to potential competitors of the Shrewsbury division. The Preston division counters that the savings obtained by the large volume of internal sales enables it to be cost-efficient and innovative in developing new production techniques.

Exhibit 401.1 provides cost data which the managers are using in their current negotiations. The transfer price proposed by the Preston division is £12.50 per metre of rubber hose.

Exhibit 401.1 Cost data available for the transfer-pricing negotiations

Preston Division

Output ('000 metres of rubber hose)	Average material cost (£ per metre)	Average direct labour cost (£ per metre)
100	8.00	5.00
200	7.70	4.80
300	7.50	4.70
400	7.20	4.50
500	7.00	4.10
600	6.50	4.00
700	6.00	3.80
800	5.50	3.60
900	5.00	3.40
1000	4.50	3.20

Annual budgeted divisional fixed costs	£160 000
Annual budgeted allocation of selling, administration and transportation costs	£40 000
Proposed transfer price	£12.50 per metre

Shrewsbury Division

Buy-in order size ('000 metres of rubber hose)	Average external suppliers list price (£ per metre)	Average discount (% per metre)
100	14	nil
200	14	3.57
300	14	7.15
400	14	11.6
500	14	15.0

Overlaying all of this is the difficulty both parties have in trying to forecast whether the future market will exhibit excess demand or excess supply. It is this problem which had led to the regular revision of the transfer price during the budget year in which it has been set.

Questions

1. Using the data provided, explain Paul Giddings' misgivings about a transfer price of £12.50. Indicate the actions he may take to source his rubber hose requirements and identify those which are in BBR's best interests.
2. Analyse the transfer-pricing procedure of BBR within the management-control system (Exhibit 401.2). Outline clearly all the hidden costs associated with the existing procedure.
3. Suggest and examine alternative transfer-pricing procedures and transfer prices which may lead to an improvement.

Exhibit 401.2 Procedures governing transfer-price setting

A Policy

1. The transfer price between operating units of the *same* operating company is purely a matter for the Chief Executive of the operating company concerned, for he is responsible for the total profitability of the organisation under his management. However, where supply/demand is between operating units of the *same* operating company it is important that a check is maintained on the market, or 'going' price for the products/services in question to enable the efficiency of the supplier to be reviewed.
2. Transfer prices, where applicable, will be between operating companies/units who are organisationally separate, i.e. those who are an independent operating unit not within an operating company or who are within a different operating company to the unit with whom they are dealing.
3. Operating companies/units will *normally* draw their requirements from within Group resources except where:
   - **a** fiscal/political constraints make this impossible
   - **b** added cost (e.g. freight, transport, duty, etc.) make the price wholly uncompetitive
   - **c** the supplying operating unit requires a transfer price in excess of that *actually paid* by the purchasing operating unit to third parties for 25% of their annual consumption for comparable quality, delivery and quantities of the product in question.

B Guidelines

4. Transfer prices agreed between supplying operating units and purchasing operating units will have reference to the market price on the willing buyer/willing seller basis for the comparable qualities and deliveries.
5. The agreed quantities and prices of products to be transferred between operating companies to be clearly and separately shown in the documentation submitted by each operating company.
6. It is not in the interests of the Group for the purchasing operating units to play off a Group supplier against a third party; such action serves to debase the whole market price where significant quantities are involved.

C Reference

7. If the purchasing operating unit is unable to arrive at an agreed transfer price with the supplying operating unit and where the quantities of products involved are in excess of £10 000 p.a., the matter will be referred to the Headquarters Office, in which event the Chief Executive (or the executive concerned) of the purchasing operating unit will be expected to show that:
   - **a** he can buy on a regular basis (NOT spot lots) at significantly lower prices than his colleague is offering
   - **b** he is unable to maintain the gross margins that he has heretofore achieved, or, if selling retail, his standard mark-up inclusive of quantity or special discounts
   - **c** his operations are seriously prejudiced by his having to accept an inflated transfer price from Group resources.

8 It will be important that (a) a firm supply/demand plan is established and (b) the buying operating unit can rely on the same quality and service which is available to them from third parties. Thus the provision contained in para. 5 (i.e. that the *planned* Inter-Group Transfer Price is shown in the documentation, working programme section and represents the basis on which *both* parties are operating) will establish a quasi-contractual situation between the parties concerned.

9 If operating unit A erects a plant for the purpose of supplying operating unit B then clearly B is committed to accepting the planned transfer price over the planned time scale, while A is responsible for ensuring that its output costs are in accordance with the original plan submitted in the sanction documents.

D Conclusion

10 Nothing in the foregoing will be interpreted as an intention that one operating unit should subsidise inefficient (in quality) or uneconomic (in cost) production of another; it is intended that the policy set out in paras 2 and 3 above shall be complied with in order that maximum throughput at transfer prices which will optimise the total Group profitability can be achieved.

PART V

Strategy, quality, time and emerging issues

The first four parts of the book provided an overview of management and cost accounting concepts and practices. As suggested in previous chapters, not only are many organisations concerned with the cost issues within a narrow focus, but they also take into account how cost management is linked to quality, time, strategy and economic challenges. This last part aims to discuss how such concerns are addressed by management accountants. Specifically, Chapters 20, 21 and 22 discuss strategy, quality, time, sustainability concerns, digitalisation and other emerging issues affecting modern enterprises today.

Chapter 20	Strategy, the balanced scorecard and quality	622
Chapter 21	Accounting, time and efficiency	660
Chapter 22	Emerging issues: digitalisation and sustainability	702
Part V	Case study problems	725

CHAPTER 20

Strategy, the balanced scorecard and quality

Many enterprises want to see their management accounting systems more closely aligned with their strategies. This requires management accountants to understand strategy and to devise ways in which a more strategic management accounting (SMA) orientation can be adopted in practice. We have already discussed in previous chapters the cost management implications of customer profitability analysis, life-cycle issues, activity-based management and target costing practices which may be viewed as SMA approaches. We consider here the balanced scorecard as an approach to performance measurement and management control. Additionally, as we stated in Chapter 1, global competition and demanding customers have forced managers to improve the quality of their products. Many firms compete in their markets by focusing on quality characteristics of their product offerings. We examine therefore also how management accounting can assist managers in accounting for and managing quality.

We start by discussing what strategy is and consider ways in which organisations attempt to integrate strategic concepts into management accounting practices. We then consider quality issues that relate to management accounting.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Recognise that different perspectives of strategy exist and identify key aspects of SMA practices
- Consider how some organisations adopt generic strategies such as product differentiation and cost leadership
- Understand the objectives of balanced scorecards as systems of performance measurement
- Explain four cost categories in a cost of quality programme
- Describe financial and non-financial measures and identify three methods that companies use to track quality
- Identify the relevant costs and benefits of quality improvements
- Understand why companies use both financial and non-financial measures of quality

Strategy and strategic management accounting

There is no single, universally accepted definition of strategy. The origins of the term strategy go back to ancient Greece whereby *strategos* signified the role of a general in command of an army. By 450 BC, the term was associated with skills in administration, leadership and oration. The term has since evolved. For instance, we can view strategy that is *deliberate* and formal and strategy as being *emergent,* sometimes arising by accident, and often from some level of bottom-up input from the lower reaches of the enterprise (a view espoused by Mintzberg). For our purposes, it is sufficient to recognise that some managers and consultants see strategy in terms of how it should be according to them (the 'prescriptive' or 'deliberate' approach) while others regard strategy as arising partially from informal processes (the 'descriptive' or 'emergent' approach). While the prescriptive approach has tended to dominate thinking on the design of strategic management accounting systems and techniques, the descriptive perspective has been useful in explaining the process by which strategies emerge and affect firms. It is important to keep in mind both views. As Martin (2014) notes: 'Mintzberg's thinking was informed by his observation that managers overestimate their ability to predict the future and to plan for it in a precise and technocratic way. By drawing a distinction between deliberate and emergent strategy, he wanted to encourage managers to watch carefully for changes in their environment and make course corrections in their deliberate strategy accordingly.'

The Chartered Institute of Management Accountants in the UK defines **strategic management accounting** as being a form of management accounting which places emphasis on information which relates to factors external to the firm, as well as non-financial information and internally generated information. While conventional management accounting generally adopts a historical orientation that focuses on single decisions, single periods and single entities, SMA is oriented towards the future and the enterprise's position relative to that of its competitors. Many factors may be relevant to SMA including financial and non-financial elements, competitor activities, product characteristics, market share data and other value-chain-related information. Some businesses have used conventional approaches which take account of internal organisational concerns in the face of external changes. These include benchmarking, total quality management, just-in-time methods, SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) analysis as well as the Boston Consulting Group's growth–share matrix and balanced scorecards. We discuss some of these in this last part of the book in relation to management accounting.

The term 'strategic management accounting' is not used extensively in organisations, but many firms engage in collecting and using information about competitors, matching accounting metrics and qualitative data with the strategic intents of the firm, pursuing cost-reduction opportunities manifested by the value chain, undertaking cost driver and competitive advantage analyses and using customer/marketing information. We have discussed in earlier chapters how external factors relating to the consumer, the market and technological advances have given rise to management accounting innovations such as activity-based management (Chapter 11), target costing (Chapter 12), product life-cycle costing (Chapter 12), and customer profitability analysis (Chapter 12). These can be viewed as facets of SMA and we could add the balanced scorecard discussed in this chapter, which has been adopted by many enterprises around the world in an attempt to explicitly link an organisation's operational activities to its strategic objectives. We also consider the balanced scorecard and its French precursor – the *tableau de bord* – in more detail below.

Some business commentators think of strategy in terms of militaristic moves which is a view that captures aspects of SMA (see Porter, 1980, 1996; Quinn, 1980; Shank, 2006; Simmonds, 1981; Simmonds et al., 1997). Under this view, we might describe strategy in terms of how an organisation uses its resources to accomplish specific market objectives. So, in formulating its strategy, an organisation would want to assess the industry in which it operates. This is often performed through the lens of Porter's five forces: (a) competitors, (b) potential entrants into the market, (c) equivalent products, (d) bargaining power of customers, and (e) bargaining power of input suppliers. These forces shape an organisation's profits where usually greater competition, stronger potential entrants, products that are similar, and tougher customers and suppliers constrain

profits. This type of visualisation can be useful for traditional industrial organisations to do but as we will see in Chapter 22, digitally advanced companies often operate on a different premise.

We illustrate an analysis of the five forces using the example of Chipset Ltd, a maker of linear integrated circuit devices (LICDs) used in amplifiers and communication networks. We will then look at the construction of a balanced scorecard. Chipset produces a single specialised product, CX1. This standard, high-performance microchip can be used in numerous applications that require instant processing of real-time data. CX1 was designed with extensive inputs from key customers. Porter's five forces can be evaluated as follows for Chipset:

- *Competitors.* Chipset has many growth opportunities, but it also faces significant competition from many small competitors. Companies in the industry have high fixed costs. There is steady pressure to utilise capacity fully; in turn, there is ceaseless pressure on selling prices. Reducing prices of products is critical for industry growth because it allows LICDs to be incorporated into mass-market modems. CX1 enjoys a reputation of having slightly superior product features relative to competitive products, but competition is severe along the dimensions of price, timely delivery and quality. Quality is important because LICD failure disrupts the communication network.
- *Potential entrants into the market.* This is not an attractive industry for new entrants. Competition keeps profit margins small, and significant capital is needed to set-up a new manufacturing facility. Companies that have been making LICDs are further down the learning curve and hence are likely to have lower costs. Existing companies also have the advantage of close relationships with customers.
- *Equivalent products.* Chipset uses a technology that allows its customers to use CX1 flexibly to best meet their needs. The flexible design of CX1, and the fact that it is closely integrated into end-products made by Chipset's customers, reduces the potential for equivalent products or new technologies to replace CX1 during the next few years. This risk is reduced even further if Chipset continuously improves CX1's design and processes to decrease costs.
- *Bargaining power of customers.* Customers have bargaining power because each buys large quantities of product. Customers can also obtain microchips from other potential suppliers. Signing a contract to deliver microchips is very important to Chipset. Recognising this fact, customers negotiate hard to keep prices down.
- *Bargaining power of input suppliers.* Chipset purchases high-quality materials such as silicon wafers, pins for connectivity, and plastic or ceramic packaging from its suppliers. Chipset also requires skilled engineers, technicians and manufacturing labour. Materials suppliers and employees have some bargaining power to demand higher prices and higher wages.

In summary, strong competition and the bargaining powers of customers and suppliers put significant pressure on prices. Chipset is considering responding to these challenges by adopting one of two basic strategies: *differentiating its product* or *achieving cost leadership.*

Product differentiation is an organisation's ability to offer products or services that are perceived by its customers to be superior and unique relative to those of its competitors. For example, Samsung has successfully differentiated its products in the mobile telephony industry, as have Cross with pens, Rolex with watches and Coca-Cola with soft drinks. Through innovative product R&D, and by developing processes that bring products to market rapidly, each of these companies has been able to provide enhanced and differentiated products. This differentiation increases brand loyalty and the prices that customers are willing to pay.

Cost leadership is an organisation's ability to achieve lower costs relative to competitors through productivity and efficiency improvements, elimination of waste, and tight cost control. Some cost leaders in their respective industries are Citroën (cars), Staedtler (stationary), Dell (PCs) and Aldi (consumer retailing). These companies all provide products and services that are similar to, not differentiated from, those of their competitors, but generally at a lower cost to the customer. Lower selling prices – rather than unique products or services – provide a competitive advantage for these cost leaders.

To evaluate the success of its strategy, a company must be able to trace the sources of its profitability to its strategy of product differentiation or cost leadership. For example, Porsche's source

of profitability is closely tied to successfully differentiating its cars from those of its competitors. Product differentiation enables Porsche to increase its profit margins and grow sales. Aldi's profitability roots lie in the company's successful implementation of its cost-leadership strategy through in-store layout and no-frills branding.

What strategy should Chipset follow? CX1 is already somewhat differentiated from competing products. Differentiating CX1 further will be costly but it may allow Chipset to charge a higher price. Conversely, reducing the cost of manufacturing and selling CX1 will allow Chipset to reduce the price of CX1 and spur growth. The CX1 technology allows Chipset's customers to achieve different performance levels by simply altering the number of CX1 units in their products. This solution is more cost effective than designing new, customised microchips for different applications. Customers want Chipset to keep the current design of CX1 but to lower its price. Chipset's current engineering staff is also more oriented towards making product and process improvements than towards creatively designing brand new products and technologies. Chipset concludes that it should pursue a cost-leadership strategy. Of course, successful cost leadership would generally increase Chipset's market share and help the company to grow.

Concepts in action

Strategic renewal at Puma

In 1948, Rudolf Dassler had an argument with his brother, Adi, in the German town of Herzogenaurach where they had founded a sports-shoe company. Adi set up the company Adidas and, across the road, Rudolf founded Puma. Like Adidas, Puma grew swiftly until 1986, when Rudolf's son Armin took the company public and retired. The company faced numerous problems, not least the lack of a focused strategy given the rapid succession of chief executives appointed to the helm. In 1993, Puma asked Jochen Zeitz, the company's marketing director, to become chief executive of what was, in his own words, 'probably the most undesirable sports name around'. Zeitz tackled three related problems head-on: Puma's centralised corporate structure, the high-cost German production base and the company's inability to keep pace with global trends. Strategic management accounting recognises that organisational structure, market intelligence and cost management are intimately intertwined. Zeitz's strategy, based on such information, worked. In 2013, Bjørn Gulden, Puma's then new CEO, introduced a new strategy for the company: 'To be the fastest sports brand in the world'. The objective for Puma was 'to be fast in reacting to new trends, fast in bringing new innovations, fast in decision making and fast in problem solving for our partners'. Today, Gulden continues efforts to ensure growth is echoed in regional markets through sponsoring of top athlete stars and partnering with celebrities such as singer Rihanna and Davido, one of Africa's most successful music artists.

Speed as well as strategic renewal is of the essence for Puma's global operations. In 2021, the company had LaMelo Ball debut its PUMS MB.01 basketball shoes. Its creative director launched a new 'Women's basketball clothing collection' and it advanced RE:SUEDE to test biodegradable footwear. Puma also reaffirmed its commitment to fight against climate change at the UN Climate Conference COP26. Across 16 countries, Puma was named a top employer and 2021 saw Puma's sales grow 32% to € 6,805 million with an earnings growth of 166% to € 557 million. Gulden noted that: 'Despite all the issues and obstacles related to COVID-19 and political tensions around the world, we had the best year in PUMA's history,' adding that, 'Our strategy of working closely together with our suppliers and retail partners to manoeuvre through all the short-term issues and obstacles without hindering our mid-term momentum paid off.'

Sources: 'The cat that came back', *Fortune* (European edition), 2 March, pp. 60–4; puma.com; Smith, K. (2014) 'In the money: forever faster strategy to drive Puma turnaround' (www.just-style.com), 21 February; Puma Group Management Report 2013; https://about.puma.com/en/newsroom/corporate-news/2022/02-23-2022-q4-results.

The balanced scorecard

Consistent with the scorekeeping function, the management accountant has an important role to play in the implementation of strategy. This role takes the form of designing reports to help managers track progress in implementing strategy. Many organisations including Bank of Montreal, British Petroleum, Dow Chemical and Siemens have introduced a balanced scorecard or a French precursor – the tableau de bord – of the approach to manage the implementation of their strategies.

The **balanced scorecard** translates an organisation's mission and strategy into a comprehensive set of performance measures that provides the framework for implementing its strategy. The balanced scorecard advanced almost three decades ago by Kaplan and Norton (1996) does not focus solely on achieving financial objectives. It also highlights the non-financial objectives that an organisation must achieve in order to meet its financial objectives. The balanced scorecard measures an organisation's performance from four key perspectives: (1) financial, (2) customer, (3) internal business process, and (4) learning and growth. A company's strategy influences the measures used in each of these perspectives.

The balanced scorecard gets its name from the attempt to balance financial and non-financial performance measures to evaluate both short-run and long-run performance in a single report. Consequently, the balanced scorecard reduces managers' emphasis on short-run financial performance, such as quarterly earnings. Why? Because the non-financial and operational indicators measure fundamental changes that a company is making. The financial benefits of these changes may not be captured in short-run earnings, but strong improvements in non-financial measures signal the prospect of creating economic value in the future. For example, an increase in customer satisfaction signals higher sales and income in the future. By balancing the mix of financial and non-financial measures, the balanced scorecard focuses management's attention on both short-run and long-run performance.

We illustrate the four perspectives of the balanced scorecard using the Chipset example. To understand the measures Chipset uses to monitor progress under each perspective, it is important to recognise the chief elements of Chipset's cost-leadership strategy: improve quality and reengineer processes. As a result of these initiatives, Chipset plans to reduce costs and downsize and eliminate capacity in excess of that needed to support future growth. However, it does not want to make deep cuts in personnel that would adversely affect employee morale and hinder future growth.

Quality improvement and reengineering at Chipset

One key element of Chipset's strategy to reduce costs is improving quality – that is, reducing defects and improving yields in its manufacturing process. To improve quality, Chipset needs to obtain real-time data about manufacturing process parameters and to implement advanced process control methods. The goal is to ensure that process parameters such as temperature and pressure are maintained within tight ranges. Chipset must also train its frontline workers in quality management techniques to help them identify and resolve defects and problems. Following this training, Chipset desires to give its workforce greater ability both to make timely decisions and continuously improve the process.

Another key element of Chipset's strategy to reduce costs is reengineering its order delivery process. **Reengineering** is the fundamental rethinking and redesign of business processes in seeking to achieve improvements in critical measures of performance such as cost, quality, service, speed and customer satisfaction. To illustrate the concept of reengineering, we examine the order delivery system at Chipset in 2022. Chipset's salespeople work with customers to identify and plan

customer needs. A copy of each purchase order received from a customer is sent to Manufacturing where a production scheduler begins the planning for manufacturing the order. Frequently, there is a long waiting time before production begins. After manufacturing is complete, the CX1 chips are sent to the Shipping Department, which matches the quantities of CX1 to be shipped against customer purchase orders. Often, the completed CX1 chips are held in inventory until a vehicle is available for shipment to the customer. If the quantity shipped does not match the number of chips requested by the customer, a special shipment is scheduled. The shipping documents are sent to the Invoicing Department for issuing of invoices. Credit controllers in the Accounting Department follow up customer payments.

Chipset discovered that the many transfers across departments (Sales, Manufacturing, Shipping, Invoicing and Accounting) to satisfy a customer order slowed down the process and created delays. A multifunction team from the various departments has reengineered the order delivery process for 2023. Its goal is to make the entire organisation more customer-focused and reduce delays by eliminating the number of interdepartmental transfers. Under the new system, a customer relationship manager will be responsible for the entire customer relationship. Chipset will enter into long-term contracts with customers that specify quantities and prices. The customer relationship manager will work closely with the customer and with manufacturing to specify delivery schedules for CX1 one month in advance. The schedule of customer orders will be sent electronically to Manufacturing. Completed chips will be shipped directly from Manufacturing to customer sites. Each shipment will automatically trigger an invoice that will be sent electronically to the customer.

The experiences of many companies, such as British Telecom, British American Tobacco, Banca di America e di Italia, Hewlett-Packard and Siemens, indicate that the benefits from reengineering are most significant when reengineering cuts across functional lines to focus on an entire business process (as in the Chipset example). Reengineering only the shipping or invoicing activity at Chipset rather than the entire order delivery process would not be particularly beneficial. Successful reengineering efforts involve changing roles and responsibilities, eliminating unnecessary activities and tasks, using information technology, and developing employee skills. Chipset's balanced scorecard for 2023 must track Chipset's progress in reengineering the order delivery process from both a non-financial and a financial perspective.

The four perspectives of the balanced scorecard

Exhibit 20.1 presents Chipset's balanced scorecard. It highlights the four key perspectives of performance: financial, customer, internal business process, and learning and growth. At the beginning of the year 2023, Chipset specifies the objectives, measures, initiatives to achieve the objectives, and target performance (the first four columns of Exhibit 20.1). The target performance levels for non-financial measures are based on competitor benchmarks. They indicate the performance levels necessary to meet customer needs, compete effectively and achieve financial goals. The fifth column, which describes actual performance, is completed at the end of the year 2023. This column shows how well Chipset has performed relative to its target performance.

1 *Financial perspective*. This perspective evaluates the profitability of the strategy. Because cost reduction relative to competitors and growth are Chipset's key strategic initiatives, the financial perspective focuses on how much of operating income and return on capital employed results from reducing costs and selling more units of CX1.

2 *Customer perspective*. This perspective identifies the targeted market segments and measures the company's success in these segments. To monitor its growth objectives, Chipset uses measures such as market share in the communication networks segment, number of new customers and customer satisfaction.

3 *Internal business process perspective*. This perspective focuses on internal operations that further both the customer perspective by creating value for customers and the financial perspective by increasing shareholder wealth. Chipset determines internal business process improvement targets after benchmarking against key competitors. There are different sources of competitor cost analysis: published financial statements, prevailing prices, customers, suppliers, former employees, industry experts and financial analysts. Chipset also physically takes apart competitors' products to compare them with its own designs. This activity also helps Chipset to estimate competitors' costs. The internal business process perspective comprises three principal subprocesses:
   - a *The innovation process* – creating products, services and processes that will meet the needs of customers. At Chipset, the key to lowering costs and promoting growth is improving the technology of manufacturing.
   - b *The operations process* – producing and delivering existing products and services to customers. Chipset's key strategic initiatives are (a) improving manufacturing quality, (b) reducing delivery time to customers, and (c) meeting specified delivery dates.
   - c *After-sales service* – providing service and support to the customer after the sale or delivery of a product or service. Chipset's sales staff work closely with customers to monitor and understand how well product features of CX1 match customer needs.
4 *Learning and growth perspective*. This perspective identifies the capabilities in which the organisation must excel in order to achieve superior internal processes that create value for customers and shareholders. Chipset's learning and growth perspective emphasises three capabilities: (1) employee capabilities measured using employee education and skill levels, surveys of employee satisfaction, employee turnover (proportion of employees who have left the company annually) and employee productivity; (2) information system capabilities measured by percentage of frontline employees that have online access to customer information, and percentage of business processes with real-time feedback; and (3) motivation and empowerment measured by number of suggestions per employee, percentage of suggestions implemented, and percentage of compensation based on individual and team incentives.

The arrows in Exhibit 20.1 indicate how gains in the learning and growth perspective lead to improvements in internal business processes, which in turn lead to higher customer satisfaction and market share, and finally to superior financial performance. Note how key elements of Chipset's strategy implementation – empowering workers, training, information systems, quality and process improvements, reengineering and customer focus – filter through the scorecard. These initiatives have been successful from a financial perspective in 2023. Chipset has earned significant operating income from its cost-leadership strategy that has also translated into growth.

Aligning the balanced scorecard to strategy

Different strategies call for different scorecards. Suppose that Visilog, another company in the microchip industry, follows a product differentiation strategy by designing custom chips for the communication networks business. Visilog designs its balanced scorecard to fit its strategy. For example, in the financial perspective, Visilog evaluates how much of its operating income comes from charging premium prices for its products. In the customer perspective, Visilog measures the percentage of its revenues from new products (and new customers). In the internal business process perspective, Visilog measures the development of advanced manufacturing capabilities to produce custom chips. In the learning and growth perspective, Visilog measures new product development time. Of course, Visilog uses some of the measures described in the balanced scorecard in Exhibit 20.1. For example, revenue growth, customer satisfaction ratings, order delivery time, on-time delivery, percentage of frontline workers empowered to manage processes, and employee satisfaction ratings, are important measures under the new strategy. The key point,

Exhibit 20.1 The balanced scorecard for Chipset Ltd for the year 2023

Objectives	Measures	Initiatives	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective				
Increase shareholder value	Operating profit from productivity gain	Manage costs and unused capacity	£2 000 000	£2 100 000
	Operating profit from growth	Build strong customer relationships	£3 000 000	£3 420 000
	Revenue growth	Build strong customer relationships	6%	6.48%*
Customer perspective				
Increase market share	Market share in communication networks segment	Identify future needs of customers	6%	7%
	New customers	Identify new target customer segments	5	66†
Increase customer satisfaction	Customer satisfaction survey	Increase customer focus of sales organisation	90% of customers give top two ratings	87% of customers give top two ratings
Internal business process perspective				
Improve manufacturing capability	Percentage of processes with advanced controls	Organise R&D/ manufacturing teams to implement advanced controls	75%	75%
Improve manufacturing quality and productivity	Yield	Identify root causes of problems and improve quality	78%	79.3%‡
Reduce delivery time to customers	Order delivery time	Reengineer order delivery process	30 days	30 days
Meet specified delivery dates	On-time delivery	Reengineer order delivery process	92%	90%
Learning and growth perspective				
Develop process skill	Percentage of employees trained in process and quality management	Employee training programmes	90%	92%
Empower workforce	Percentage of front-line workers empowered to manage processes	Have supervisors act as coaches rather than decision makers	85%	90%
Align employee and organisation goals	Employee satisfaction survey	Employee participation and suggestions programme to build teamwork	80% of employees give top two ratings	88% of employees give top two ratings
Enhance information system capabilities	Percentage of manufacturing processes with real-time feedback	Improve offline data gathering	80%	80%
Improve manufacturing processes	Number of major improvements in process controls	Organise R&D/ manufacturing teams to modify processes	5	5

*(Revenues in 2023 − Revenues in 2018) ÷ Revenues in 2018 = (£28 750 000 − £27 000 000) ÷ £27 000 000 = 6.48%.

† Customers increased from 40 to 46 in the year 2023.

‡ Yield = Units of CX1 produced ÷ Units of CX1 started × 100 = 1 150 000 ÷ 1 450 000 × 100 = 79.3%.

Exhibit 20.2 Frequently cited balanced scorecard measures

Financial perspective

- Operating profit, revenue growth, revenues from new products, gross margin percentage, cost reductions in key areas, economic value added (EVA®)*, return on investment*.

Customer perspective

- Market share, customer satisfaction, customer retention percentage, time taken to fulfil customer's requests.

Internal business process perspective

- *Innovation process* – manufacturing capabilities, number of new products or services, new product development times, number of new patents.
- *Operations process* – yield, defect rates, time taken to deliver product to customers, percentage of on-time deliveries, average time taken to manufacture orders, set-up time, manufacturing downtime.
- *After-sales service* – time taken to replace or repair defective products, hours of customer training for using the product.

Learning and growth perspective

- Employee education and skill levels, employee satisfaction scores, employee turnover rates, information system availability, percentage of processes with advanced controls, percentage of employee suggestions implemented, percentage of compensation based on individual and team incentives.

* These measures are described in Chapter 19.

though, is to align the balanced scorecard to company strategy. For simplicity, we have presented the balanced scorecard in the context of companies that have followed either a cost-leadership or a product differentiation strategy. Of course, a company may have some products for which cost leadership is critical and other products for which product differentiation is important. The company will then develop separate scorecards to implement the different product strategies. In still other contexts, product differentiation may be of primary importance, but some cost leadership must also be achieved. The balanced scorecard measures would then link to this strategy. Exhibit 20.2 presents some common balanced scorecard measures that companies have used.

Features of a good balanced scorecard

A good balanced scorecard design has several features:

1 It tells the story of a company's strategy by articulating a sequence of cause-and-effect relationships. For example, because Chipset's goal is to be a low-cost producer and to emphasise growth, the balanced scorecard describes the specific objectives and measures in the learning and growth perspective that lead to improvements in internal business processes. These, in turn, lead to increased customer satisfaction and market share, as well as higher operating profit and shareholder wealth. Each measure in the scorecard is part of a cause-and-effect chain, a linkage from strategy formulation to financial outcomes.

2 It helps to communicate the strategy to all members of the organisation by translating the strategy into a coherent and linked set of understandable and measurable operational targets. Guided by the scorecard, managers and employees take actions and make decisions that aim to achieve the company's strategy. To focus these actions, some companies, such as Halifax and Barclays, have pushed down and developed scorecards at the division and department levels.

3 In for-profit companies, the balanced scorecard places strong emphasis on financial objectives and measures. Managers sometimes tend to focus too much on innovation, quality and customer satisfaction as ends in themselves even if they do not lead to tangible pay-offs. A balanced scorecard emphasises non-financial measures as a part of a programme to achieve future financial performance. When financial and non-financial performance measures are properly linked, many of the non-financial measures serve as leading indicators of future financial performance. In the Chipset example, the improvements in non-financial factors have, in fact, led to improvements in financial factors.

4 The balanced scorecard limits the number of measures used by identifying only the most critical ones. Avoiding a proliferation of measures focuses management's attention on those that are key to the implementation of strategy.

5 The scorecard highlights suboptimal trade-offs that managers may make when they fail to consider operational and financial measures together. For example, a company for which innovation is key could achieve superior short-run financial performance by reducing spending on R&D. A good balanced scorecard would signal that the short-run financial performance may have been achieved by taking actions that hurt future financial performance because a leading indicator of that performance, R&D spending and R&D output, has declined.

Many unintended forces can shape the way in which a balanced scorecard is ultimately implemented. If there is incorrect implementation then, 'the organisation may actually go faster in the wrong direction' (Rousseau and Rousseau, 2000, p. 25; Kloot and Martin, 2000). There is some evidence that successful balanced scorecard implementation depends on managers' understanding of the linkages between performance measures, business units' strategy and firm decisions (Ding and Beaulieu, 2011; Hasan and Chyi, 2017; Nielsen et al., 2017). Experience with the balanced scorecard suggests that correct implementation and the presence of common objectives for using a balanced scorecard within an organisation whether public sector, industrial or service or large or small are both key to achieving satisfaction (Bergeron, 2017; Malagueño et al., 2018).

Pitfalls to avoid when implementing a balanced scorecard

Points to note when implementing a balanced scorecard include the following:

1 Do not assume the cause-and-effect linkages to be precise. A critical challenge is to identify the strength and speed of the causal linkages among the non-financial and financial measures. Hence, a firm must gather evidence of these linkages over time. With experience, enterprises should alter their scorecards to include those non-financial objectives and measures that are the best leading indicators of subsequent financial performance (a lagging indicator). Committing to evolve the scorecard over time avoids the paralysis associated with trying to design the perfect scorecard at the outset.

2 Do not seek improvements across all of the measures all of the time. This approach may be inappropriate because trade-offs may need to be made across various strategic goals. For example, emphasising quality and on-time performance beyond a point may not be worthwhile – further improvement in these objectives may be inconsistent with profit maximisation.

3 Do not use only objective measures in the scorecard. Chipset's scorecard includes both objective measures (such as operating income from cost leadership, market share and manufacturing yield), as well as subjective measures (such as customer and employee satisfaction ratings). When using subjective measures, though, management must be careful to trade off the benefits of the richer information these measures provide against the imprecision and potential for manipulation.

4 Do not fail to consider both costs and benefits of initiatives such as spending on information technology and R&D before including these objectives in the scorecard. Otherwise, management may focus the organisation on measures that will not result in overall long-run financial benefits.

5 Do not ignore non-financial measures when evaluating managers and employees. Managers tend to focus on what their performance is measured by. Excluding non-financial measures when evaluating performance will reduce the significance and importance that managers give to non-financial scorecard measures.

In reviewing the evidence available on the balanced scorecard, Mitchell and NØrreklit (2014, p. 426) noted that 'BSC (balanced scorecards) implementation can vary among organisations due to different interpretations of the BSC' and 'few organisations seem to follow the instructions of linking compensation to all areas of measurements'. Hoque (2014, p. 56) notes that 'Until another improved innovation appears, the balanced scorecard will continue to provide organisations with a valuable option as a strategy map, an enabler of policy implementation, and an organisational control and accountability tool'.

Evaluating the success of a strategy

To evaluate how successful it has been in implementing its strategy, Chipset compares the target and actual performance columns of its balanced scorecard in Exhibit 20.1. This comparison indicates that Chipset met most of the targets it had set on the basis of competitor benchmarks. Meeting the targets suggests that the strategic initiatives that Chipset had identified and measured for learning and growth resulted in improvements in internal business processes, customer measures and financial performance. The financial measures show that Chipset achieved targeted cost savings and growth. The key question is: How does Chipset isolate operating profit from specific sources such as cost savings and growth instead of emphasising only the aggregate change in operating profit?

Concepts in action — Barclays turns to the balanced scorecard

A series of scandals from 2008 to 2012 tarnished the reputation of Barclays, the British multinational bank. From fraudulently selling mortgage-backed securities in the run-up to the financial crisis to rigging a key interest rate called LIBOR, a benchmark rate that helps set global borrowing costs, Barclays' image and financial performance took a beating. When new leadership was tasked with turning Barclays around, the company turned to the balanced scorecard to change the company's performance goals and incentive structure. Introduced in 2014, Barclays' balanced scorecard set out specific goals and metrics across each of the company's '5Cs': customer and client, colleague, citizenship, conduct, and company. With the goal of becoming the world's 'go to' bank, the balanced scorecard became the instrument to ensuring Barclays was 'helping people achieve their ambitions – in the right way' and balancing 'stakeholders' needs across the short and long term'. Rather than focusing solely on short-term

financial results, Barclays' balanced scorecard aligned the company's 5Cs with the broader perspectives of the balanced scorecard. Most notably, the learning and growth perspective incorporated Barclays' conduct and citizenship goals, which included new purpose and value statements for the company. The company even took the extraordinary step of tying the performance bonuses of managers to Barclays' corporate ethics and citizenship goals, rather than just quarterly profits and stock price gains. The company evolved its balanced scorecard performance measurement in 2016 to identify new key performance indicators (KPIs) that continued to prioritise customer and client, colleague, and citizenship metrics, underpinned by conduct and culture (renamed from company) firmwide. By 2018, Barclays was making significant progress toward its new KPIs. The company's recent annual report noted, 'By incorporating a broad range of financial and non-financial measures, our framework is focused on achieving positive and sustainable outcomes for our diverse group of stakeholders, and influences incentive outcomes for Barclays' employees.'

Sources: Horowitz, J. (2012) 'New Barclays' chief ties executive compensation to societal goals', Reuters, 24 September (http://www.reuters.com/article/us-barclays-jenkins-idUSBRE88N0YY20120924); Brownsell, A. (2014) 'Barclays reveals '5Cs' values scorecard in drive for brand transformation', *Marketing*, 2 November (http://www.marketingmagazine.co.uk/article/1230626/barclaysreveals-5cs-values-scorecard-drive-brand-transformation); Shubber, K. (2018) 'Barclays to pay $2bn to settle US mortgage mis-selling probe', *Financial Times*, 29 March (https://www.ft.com/content/9ff69988-3352-11e8-ac48-10c6fdc22f03); Barclays PLC (2018) 'Barclays' balanced scorecard' (https://www.home.barclays/about-barclays/balanced-scorecard.html); Barclays PLC, 2017 Annual Report (London: Barclays PLC, 2018)

Some companies might be tempted to gauge the success of their strategies by measuring the change in their operating profits from one year to the next, but this approach is inadequate. For example, operating profit can increase simply because entire markets are expanding, not because a specific strategy has been successful. Also, changes in operating profit might be caused by factors outside the strategy. For example, a company such as Chipset that has chosen a cost-leadership strategy may find that operating profit increases have instead been caused incidentally by some degree of product differentiation. Managers and accountants need to evaluate the success of a strategy on the basis of whether the sources of operating profit increases are the result of implementing the chosen strategy.

To use operating profit numbers for evaluating the success of a strategy, a company needs to isolate the operating profit due to cost leadership from the operating profit due to product differentiation. Of course, successful cost leadership or product differentiation generally increases market share and helps a company to grow. To evaluate the success of a company's strategy, one can subdivide changes in operating profit into components that can be identified with growth, product differentiation and cost leadership. Subdividing the change in operating profit to evaluate the success of a company's strategy is similar to variance analysis, discussed in Chapters 15 and 16. The focus is on comparing actual operating performance over two different time periods and explicitly linking it to strategic choices. A company is considered to be successful in implementing its strategy when the amounts of the product differentiation, cost leadership and growth components align closely with its strategy.

Although organisations differ in the way that they use the balanced scorecard, there is some evidence that there are country-specific ways in which it is implemented and deployed. Thus, the notion of a specifically 'Scandinavian balanced scorecard' has been reported (Ax and Bjornenak, 2007). In France, the **tableau de bord** (effectively a 'dashboard') has been used as a performance measurement and control approach by many enterprises for over five decades. Possibly there may be socio-economic reasons for this (Mendoza and Zrihen, 1999). The French reaction to the balanced scorecard may be rooted in the nature of the 'French ideology' (Nørreklit, 2003). Broadly, there is growing evidence that managers place different values on different aspects of management accounting systems including balanced scorecards. While organisational values are an important element in the implementation of balanced scorecards, broader-level factors, including nation-specificity can also influence their nature and use (Bhimani, 2005; 2006).

The tableau de bord (TdB) is a management tool bearing similarities to the balanced scorecard (see Exhibit 20.3) which is used by many French enterprises, including Air France, Lafarge, Pechiney, Saint-Gobain and IBM (France). TdBs are founded on multicriteria models of control

Exhibit 20.3 The distinctive features of French and American societies and related differences in performance management systems

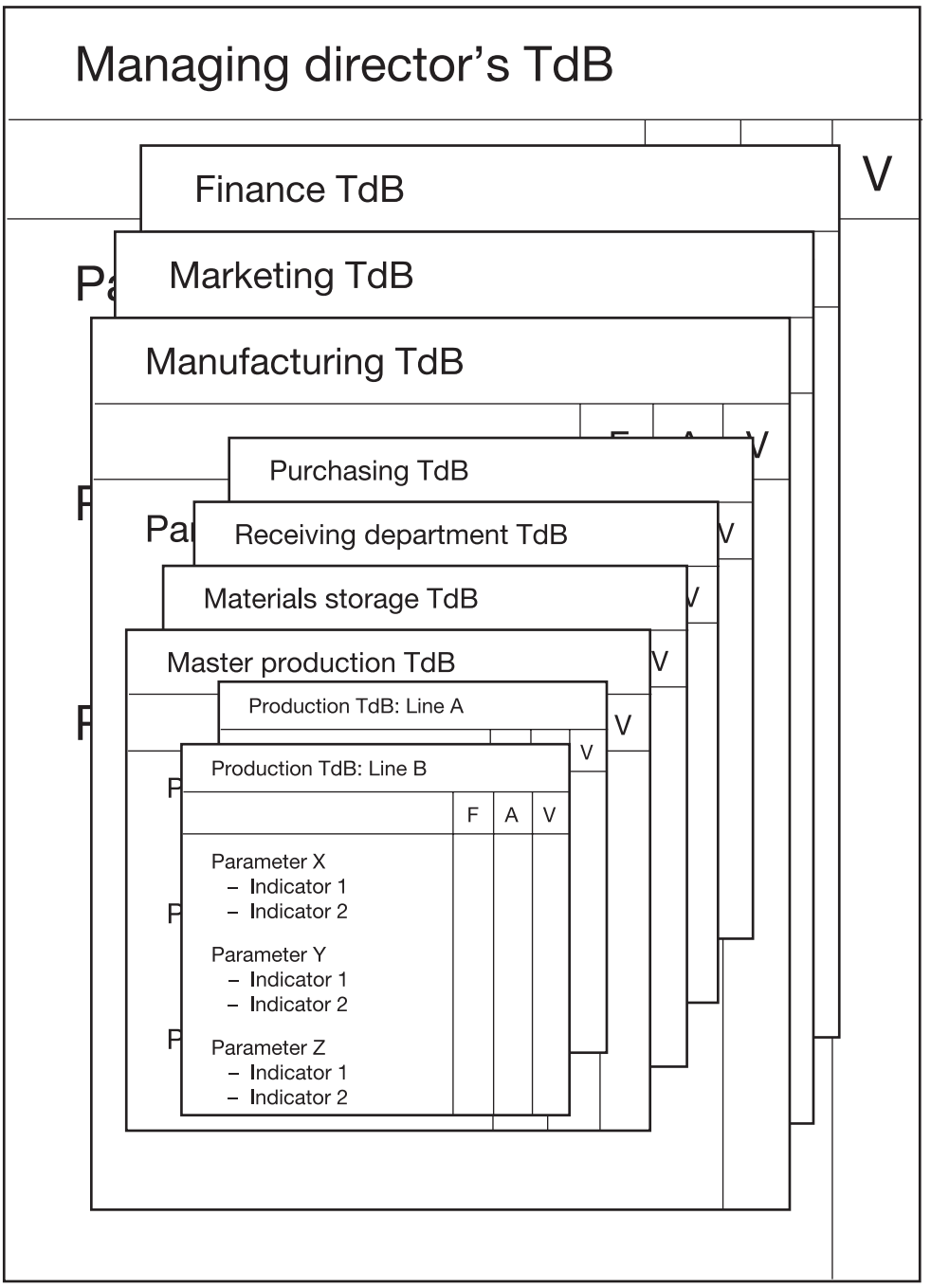
Name	France	USA
Performance measurement system	**Tableau de bord**	**Balanced scorecard**
Underlying strategic concept	Managers' subjective perception	External (objective)
Focus	Process of construction (conceptual)	Ready-to-use indicators
Deployment	Open to local initiative	Strictly top-down
Main emphasis	Learning	Rewards
Basic elements of society		
Individualism	Lower	Higher
Hierarchy in society	Omnipresent	No hierarchy
Centralisation	Higher	Lower
Basic social demand	Respect of honour	Respect of contract and fairness
Demand for objectivity	Lower	Higher
Social ascension	Perceived as limited	Perceived as unlimited
Perception of performance-based rewards	Threat	Opportunity
Social control	Self-control	External control
Attitude towards external control	Negative	Positive
Employee dismissal	Almost taboo	Legitimate
Dominating professional culture	Engineer	Manager
Top management	Practically no management education	Extensive management education
Perception regarding manager's qualities	Given by birth	Given by education
Social status of management	Lower	Higher
Belief in management tools	Lower	Higher
Future orientation	Lower	Higher
Political past	Absolutist monarchy and revolution	Contractual agreement
Philosophical tradition	Intellectualism and idealism	Pragmatism
Grammatical structure of language	Clear, with many exceptions	Less clear

Source: Adapted from NØrreklit (2003).

that use financial as well as non-financial means to identify and measure objectives, key variables and indicators. French companies use a series of TdBs carved to overlay their organisational structure. Localised responsibilities are assigned and hierarchical lines of authority are respected.

At the apex of the pyramid, the managing director has a TdB detailing overall company objectives and attainments. The managing director's TdB aggregates data from subordinate TdBs such as those of divisional heads, functional heads, geographical heads or product group heads as the case may be. For instance, there might be TdBs for manufacturing, finance and marketing. The manufacturing TdB itself would aggregate those of its departments: production, purchases, receiving and storage. Production in turn would have TdBs for line A, line B and so on down to the nadir of the pyramid. Exhibit 20.4 provides an illustration of a network of tableaux de bord nesting one inside the other. TdBs consist of a range of diverse information. TdBs report forecasts, actual results and variances in the conventional manner, but this information relates to non-financial data as well as financial data. Thus, a TdB might report number of units produced, consumption of different materials, production hours, reject rates, returns and unsold products, in addition to financial information such as contribution margins. Beyond financial and non-financial informational differences, TdBs include externally sourced information and general information on the business environment.

Exhibit 20.4 Illustration of a network of tableaux de bord nesting one inside the other



Costs of quality under the balanced scorecard

Many companies throughout the world – for example, BMW in Germany, British Telecom in the UK, Renault in France, Fujitsu in Japan, Crysel in Mexico, and Samsung in Korea – view total quality management as providing an important competitive edge. This is because a quality focus

can reduce costs and increase customer satisfaction. Several prestigious, high-profile awards – for example, the European Quality Award, the UK Quality Award, the Malcolm Baldrige Quality Award (USA) and the Deming Prize (Japan) – have been instituted to recognise exceptional quality.

International quality standards have emerged. For example, ISO 9000, developed by the International Organisation for Standardisation, is a set of five international standards for quality management adopted by more than 85 countries with over one million organisations worldwide being independently certified. ISO 9000 was created to enable companies to document and certify their quality system elements effectively. Some companies, such as BT and General Electric, require their suppliers to obtain ISO 9000 certification. Why? To reduce their own costs by evaluating, assessing and working to improve the quality of their suppliers' products. Thus, certification and an emphasis on quality are rapidly becoming conditions for competing in the global market.

Why this emphasis on quality? Because quality costs can be as much as 20% of sales revenue for many organisations. Quality-improvement programmes can result in substantial savings and higher revenues. Consider a general effect that quality has on revenues. If competitors are improving quality, then a company that does not invest in quality improvement will probably suffer a decline in its market share and revenues. In this case, the benefit of better quality is in preventing lower revenues, not in generating higher revenues.

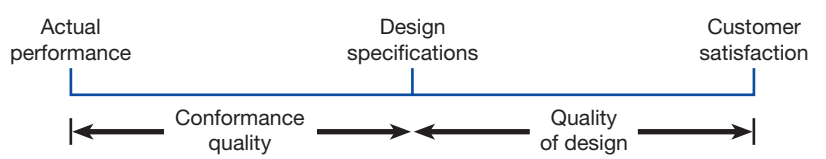
Quality improvement also has non-financial and qualitative effects that improve a company's long-term performance. For example, managers and workers focusing on quality gain expertise about product and process. This knowledge may lead to lower costs in the future. Manufacturing a product of high quality can enhance a company's reputation and increase customer goodwill, which may lead to higher future revenues.

Quality has been defined in many different ways as it can mean different things to different people. Generally, the term *quality* refers to a wide variety of factors: fitness for use, the degree to which a product satisfies the needs of a customer and the degree to which a product conforms to design specification and engineering requirements. We discuss two basic aspects of quality: *quality of design* and *conformance quality* (see Oakland et al., 2018; Sharma, 2018 for detailed discussions).

Quality of design measures how closely the characteristics of products or services match the needs and wants of customers. Suppose customers of photocopying machines want copiers that combine copying, faxing, scanning and electronic printing. Photocopying machines that fail to meet these customers' needs fail in the quality of their design. Similarly, if customers of a bank want an online banking system, then not providing this facility would be a quality of design failure.

Conformance quality is the performance of a product or service according to design and production specifications. For example, if a photocopying machine mishandles paper or breaks down, it will have failed to satisfy conformance quality. Products not conforming to specifications must be repaired, reworked or scrapped at an additional cost to the organisation. If non-conformance errors are not corrected within the plant and the product breaks down at the customer site, even greater repair costs as well as the loss of customer goodwill – often the highest quality cost of all – may result. In the banking industry, depositing a customer's cheque into the wrong bank account is an example of conformance quality failure.

The following diagram illustrates our framework:



To travel the road from actual performance to customer satisfaction, companies must meet design specifications through conformance quality, but they must also design products to satisfy customers through quality of design.

Quality has both financial and non-financial components relating to customer satisfaction, improving internal quality processes, reducing defects, and the training and empowering of workers. To provide some structure, we discuss quality from the four perspectives of the balanced scorecard: financial in the next section and customer, internal-business-process, and learning-and-growth in the following section.

The financial perspective: costs of quality

The **costs of quality (COQ)** are costs incurred to prevent, or costs arising as a result of, the production of a low-quality product. These costs focus on conformance quality and are incurred in all business functions of the value chain. Costs of quality are classified into four categories:

1. **Prevention costs** – costs incurred in precluding the production of products that do not conform to specifications.
2. **Appraisal costs** – costs incurred in detecting which of the individual units of products do not conform to specifications.
3. **Internal failure costs** – costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected before it is shipped to customers.
4. **External failure costs** – costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected after it is shipped to customers.

Exhibit 20.5 presents examples of individual cost of quality items in each of these four categories reported on COQ reports. Note that the items included in Exhibit 20.5 come from all value-chain business functions and are broader than the internal failure costs of spoilage, rework and scrap in manufacturing.

We illustrate the various issues in managing quality – from computing the costs of quality, to identifying quality problems, to taking actions to improve quality – using Braganza Lda as our example. Braganza makes many products. Our presentation focuses on Braganza's photocopying machines, which earned an operating profit of €24 million on sales of €300 million (20 000 copiers) in 2018. Braganza determines its costs of quality using an activity-based approach with five steps.

Exhibit 20.5 Items pertaining to costs of quality reports

Prevention costs	Appraisal costs	Internal failure costs	External failure costs
Design engineering	Inspection	Spoilage	Customer support
Process engineering	Online product manufacturing and process inspection	Rework	Transportation costs
Quality engineering	Product testing	Scrap	Manufacturing/process engineering
Supplier evaluations		Breakdown maintenance	Warranty repair costs
Preventive equipment maintenance		Manufacturing/process engineering on internal failure	Liability claims
Quality training			
New materials used to manufacture Products			

- **Step 1.** Identify all quality-related activities and activity cost pools. Column 1 of Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, classifies costs into prevention, appraisal, internal failure and external failure categories and indicates the value-chain functions in which the costs occur. One such activity is inspecting (including testing) the photocopying machines.
- **Step 2.** Determine the quantity of the cost-allocation base for each quality-related activity (see Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, column 2). For example, Braganza identifies inspection hours, the primary cost driver, as the cost-allocation base of the inspection activity. Assume that photocopying machines use 240 000 hours (12 hours per copier × 20 000 copiers) of the cost-allocation base.
- **Step 3.** Calculate the rate per unit of each cost-allocation base (see Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, column 3). Owing to space considerations, we do not provide details of the calculations. Allocation rates are calculated using methods described in Chapters 3 and 11. In the Braganza example, the total (fixed and variable) costs of inspection are €40 per hour.
- **Step 4.** Calculate the costs of each quality-related activity for photocopying machines by multiplying the quantity of the cost-allocation base determined in step 2 by the rate per unit of the cost-allocation base calculated in step 3 (see Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, column 4). In our example, quality-related inspection costs are €9 600 000 (240 000 hours × €40 per hour).
- **Step 5.** Obtain the total costs of quality by adding the costs of all quality-related activities for photocopying machines in all value-chain business functions. Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, shows Braganza's total costs of quality reported on the COQ report for photocopying machines at €40.02 million, of which the largest categories are €14.52 million in total external failure costs and €10 million in total internal failure costs – a sum of €24.52 million. Total reported costs of quality are 13.34% of current sales.

Do not assume, however, that costs reported on COQ reports represent the total costs of quality for a company. COQ reports typically exclude opportunity costs, such as forgone contribution margins and profit from lost sales, lost production or lower prices that result from poor quality. Why? Because opportunity costs are difficult to estimate and generally not recorded in accounting systems. Nevertheless, opportunity costs can be substantial and important driving forces in quality-improvement programmes. Exhibit 20.6, Panel B, presents the analysis of the opportunity costs of poor quality at Braganza. Braganza Corporation's Market Research Department estimates lost sales of 2000 photocopying machines because of external failures. The forgone contribution and operating profit of €12 million measures the financial costs from dissatisfied customers who have returned machines to Braganza and from sales lost because of quality problems. Total costs of quality (including opportunity costs) equal €52.02 million (Panel A, €40.02 million + Panel B, €12 million), or 17.34% of current sales. Opportunity costs account for 23% (€12 million ÷ €52.02 million) of Braganza's total costs of quality.

The COQ report and the opportunity cost analysis highlight Braganza's high internal and external failure costs. To reduce costs of quality, Braganza must identify and reduce failures caused by quality problems.

The customer perspective: non-financial measures of customer satisfaction

Braganza's managers track the following measures of customer satisfaction:

- market research information on customer preferences for and customer satisfaction with specific product features (as measures of design quality)
- market share
- percentage of highly satisfied customers
- number of defective units shipped to customers as a percentage of total units shipped

Exhibit 20.6 Activity-based cost of quality analysis for Braganza

Panel A: Cost of quality report

Costs of quality and value-'chain category (1)	Allocation base or cost driver: Quantity (2)	Rate (number assumed) (3)	Total costs (4) = (2) × (3)	Percentage of sales (5) = (4) ÷ €300 000 000
Prevention costs				
Design engineering (R&D/Design)	40 000* hours	€80 per hour	€3 200 000	1.07%
Process engineering (R&D/Design)	45 000* hours	€60 per hour	2 700 000	0.90
Total prevention costs			5 900 000	1.97
Appraisal costs				
Inspection (Manufacturing)	240 000† hours	€40 per hour	9 600 000	3.20
Total appraisal costs			9 600 000	3.20
Internal failure costs				
Rework (Manufacturing)	2500‡ copiers reworked	€4000 per copier reworked	10 000 000	3.33
Total internal failure costs			10 000 000	3.33
External failure costs				
Customer support (Marketing)	3000§ copiers repaired	€200 per copier repaired	600 000	0.20
Transportation costs (Distribution)	3000 copiers repaired	€240 per copier repaired	720 000	0.24
Warranty repair (Customer service)	3000 copiers repaired	€4400 per copier repaired	13 200 000	4.40
Total external failure costs			14 520 000	4.84
Total costs of quality			€40 020 000	13.34%

Panel B: Opportunity cost analysis

Costs of quality category (1)	Quantity of lost sales (2)	Contribution margin per copier (number assumed) (3)	Total estimated contribution margin lost (4) = (2) × (3)	Percentage of sales (5) = (4) ÷ €300 000 000
External failure costs				
Estimated forgone contribution margin and income on lost sales	2000# copiers	€6000	€12 000 000	4.00%
Total costs of quality			€12 000 000	4.00%

* Based on special studies.
† 12 hours per copier × 20 000 copiers.
‡ 12.5% of 20 000 copiers manufactured required rework.
§ 15% of 20 000 copiers manufactured required warranty repair service.
# Estimated by Braganza's Market Research Department.

- number of customer complaints (Companies estimate that for every customer who actually complains, there are 10 to 20 others who have had bad experiences with the product or service but did not complain.)
- percentage of products that fail soon after they have been delivered to customers
- average delivery delays (difference between the scheduled delivery date and the date requested by the customer)
- on-time delivery rate (percentage of shipments delivered on or before the scheduled delivery date).

Braganza's managers monitor these numbers over time. Higher customer satisfaction should lead to lower external failure costs, lower costs of quality, and higher future revenues due to greater customer retention, loyalty, and positive word-of-mouth advertising. Lower customer satisfaction is indicative of higher future external failure costs and costs of quality. We next discuss internal business processes to identify and analyse quality problems that help to improve quality and increase customer satisfaction.

The internal-business-process perspective: analysing quality problems

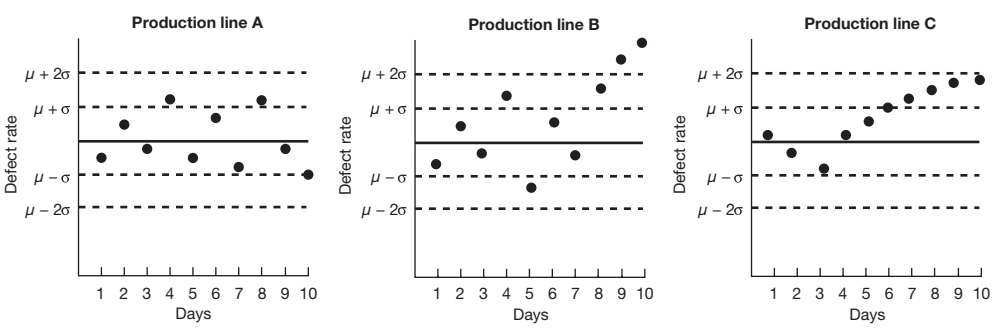
We present three techniques for identifying and analysing quality problems: control charts, Pareto diagrams and cause-and-effect diagrams.

Control charts

Statistical quality control (SQC) or statistical process control (SPC) is a formal means of distinguishing between random variation and non-random variation in an operating process. A key tool in SQC is a control chart. A **control chart** is a graph of a series of successive observations of a particular step, procedure or operation taken at regular intervals of time. Each observation is plotted relative to specified ranges that represent the expected distribution. Only those observations outside the specified limits are ordinarily regarded as non-random and worth investigating.

Exhibit 20.7 presents control charts for the daily defect rates observed at Braganza's three production lines. Defect rates in the prior 60 days for each plant were assumed to provide a good basis from which to calculate the distribution of daily defect rates. The arithmetic mean (μ, read mu) and standard deviation (σ, read sigma) are the two parameters of the distribution that are used in the control charts in Exhibit 20.7. On the basis of experience, the company decides that any observation outside the $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ range should be investigated.

Exhibit 20.7 Statistical quality-control charts: daily defect rate at Braganza



For production line A in Exhibit 20.7, all observations are within the range of $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ from the mean. Management, then, believes no investigation is necessary. For production line B, the last two observations signal that an out-of-control occurrence is highly likely. Given the $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ rule, both observations would lead to an investigation. Production line C illustrates a process that would not prompt an investigation under the $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ rule but may well be out of control. Note that the last eight observations show a clear direction and that the direction by day 5 (the third point in the last eight) is away from the mean. Statistical procedures have been developed using the trend as well as the level of the variable in question to evaluate whether a process is out of control.

Pareto diagrams

Observations outside control limits serve as inputs to *Pareto diagrams*. A **Pareto diagram** indicates how frequently each type of failure (defect) occurs. Exhibit 20.8 presents a Pareto diagram for Braganza's quality problems. Fuzzy and unclear copies are the most frequently recurring problem.

The fuzzy copy problem results in high rework costs because, in many cases, Braganza discovers the fuzzy image problem only after the copier has been built. Sometimes fuzzy images occur at customer sites, resulting in high warranty and repair costs.

Cause-and-effect diagrams

The most frequently occurring problems identified by the Pareto diagram are analysed using *cause-and-effect diagrams*. A **cause-and-effect diagram** identifies potential causes of failures or defects. As a first step, Braganza analyses the causes of the most frequently occurring failure, fuzzy and unclear copies. Exhibit 20.9 presents the cause-and-effect diagram for this problem. The exhibit identifies four major categories of potential causes of failure: human factors, methods and design factors, machine-related factors, and materials and components factors. As additional arrows are added for each cause, the general appearance of the diagram begins to resemble a fishbone (hence, cause-and-effect diagrams are also called *fishbone diagrams*).

Exhibit 20.8 Pareto diagram for Braganza

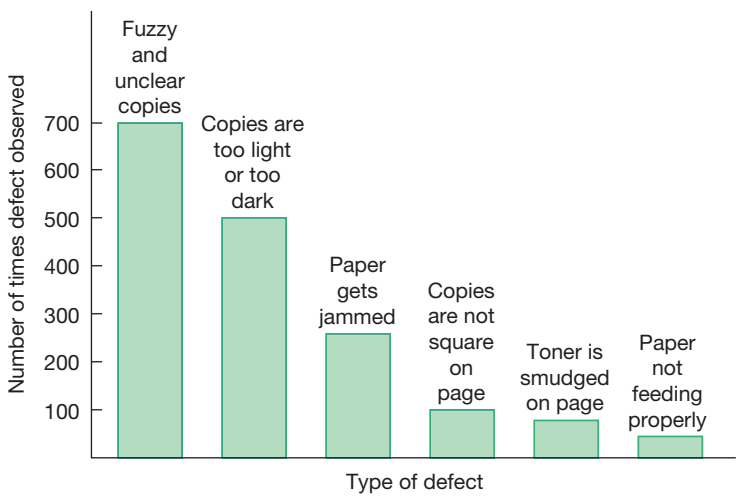
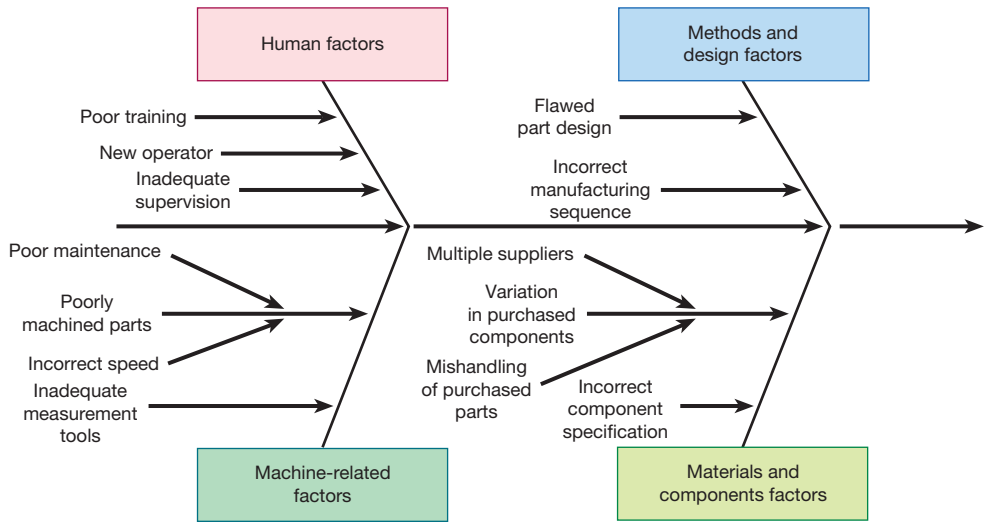


Exhibit 20.9 Cause-and-effect diagram for fuzzy and unclear copies at Braganza



Non-financial measures of internal-business-process quality

Companies routinely use non-financial measures to track the quality improvements they are making. Braganza's managers use the following non-financial measures of internal-business process quality:

- percentage of defective products manufactured
- percentage of reworked products
- number of different types of defects analysed using control charts, Pareto diagrams and cause-and-effect diagrams
- number of design and process changes made to improve design quality or reduce the costs of quality.

Braganza's managers believe that improving these measures will lead to greater customer satisfaction, lower costs of quality, and better financial performance.

The learning-and-growth perspective: quality improvements

What are the learning-and-growth drivers that improve internal-business-process quality?

Braganza's managers identify the following drivers: recruiting outstanding design engineers, training employees in quality management techniques, lowering employee turnover, and increasing employee empowerment and satisfaction and creating a quality-first culture of identifying and eliminating the root causes of defects. Braganza measures the following factors in the learning and growth perspective in the balanced scorecard:

- experience and qualifications of design engineers
- employee training (percentage of employees trained in different quality-enhancing methods)
- employee turnover (ratio of number of employees who leave the company to the average total number of employees)

- employee empowerment (ratio of the number of processes in which employees have the authority to make decisions without consulting supervisors to the total number of processes)
- employee satisfaction (ratio of employees indicating high satisfaction ratings to the total number of employees surveyed).

Careful analysis of the cause-and-effect diagram reveals that the steel frame (or chassis) of the copier is often mishandled as it travels from the suppliers' warehouses to Braganza's plant. The frame must satisfy very precise specifications and tolerances; otherwise, various copier components (such as drums, mirrors and lenses) attached to the frame will be improperly aligned. Mishandling causes the dimensions of the frame to vary from specifications, resulting in fuzzy images.

Suppose the team of engineers working to solve the fuzzy image problem offers two alternative solutions: (1) to improve the inspection of the frame immediately upon delivery, or (2) to redesign and strengthen the frame and the containers used to transport them to better withstand mishandling during transportation.

Should Braganza inspect incoming frames more carefully or redesign them and their containers? Exhibit 20.10 shows the costs and benefits of each choice. Management estimates that additional inspection will cost €400 000 (€40 per hour × 10 000 hours). Redesign will cost

Exhibit 20.10 Estimated effect of quality-improvement actions on costs of quality

	Incremental costs and benefits of:	
Description	**Further inspecting incoming frame (1)**	**Redesigning frame (2)**
Costs of quality items		
Additional design engineering costs		
€80 × 2 000 hours	–	€160 000
Additional process engineering costs		
€60 × 5 000 hours	–	300 000
Additional inspection and testing costs		
€40 × 10 000 hours	€400 000	–
Savings in rework costs		
€1 600 × 600 fewer copiers reworked	(960 000)	
€1 600 × 800 fewer copiers reworked		(1 280 000)
Savings in customer-support costs		
€80 × 500 fewer copiers repaired	(40 000)	
€80 × 700 fewer copiers repaire		(56 000)
Savings in transportation costs for repair parts		
€180 × 500 fewer copiers repaired	(90 000)	
€180 × 700 fewer copiers repaired		(126 000)
Savings in warranty repair costs		
€1800 × 500 fewer copiers repaired	(900 000)	
€1800 × 700 fewer copiers repaired		(1 260 000)
Opportunity costs		
Contribution margin from increased sales		
€6 000 × 250 additional copiers sold	(1 500 000)	
€6 000 × 300 additional copiers sold	–	(1 800 000)
Net cost savings and additional contribution margin	€(3 090 000)	€(4 062 000)
Difference in favour of redesigning frame	€972 000	

an additional €460 000 (design engineering, €80 per hour × 2000 hours; process engineering, €60 per hour × 5000 hours). The potential benefits of incurring these costs are lower internal and external failure costs. The key question here is: What are the relevant cost savings and other relevant benefits? Braganza considers only a one-year time horizon for analysing this decision because Braganza plans to introduce a completely new line of copiers at the end of the year. Braganza believes that even as it improves quality, it will not be able to save any of the fixed costs of internal and external failure. To identify the relevant cost savings, Braganza divides each category of failure costs into its fixed and variable components.

Consider first the internal failure costs of rework. Fixed and variable costs for each reworked copier are:

Variable costs (including direct materials, direct rework labour and supplies)	€1600
Allocated fixed costs (equipment, space and allocated overhead)	2400
Total costs (Exhibit 20.6, Panel A, column 3)	€4000

If Braganza chooses to inspect the frame more carefully, it expects to eliminate rework on 600 copiers and save variable costs of €960 000 (€1600 × 600) in rework: see Exhibit 20.10, column 1. Braganza believes that fixed rework costs will be unaffected. If Braganza chooses the redesign alternative, it expects to eliminate rework on 800 copiers, saving €1280 000 (€1600 × 800): see Exhibit 20.10, column 2.

Next consider external failure costs. Braganza currently repairs 3000 copiers at customer sites. If incoming frames are inspected more carefully, Braganza estimates that 500 fewer copiers will require warranty repair and that it will be able to sell 250 additional copiers. If the frame is redesigned, Braganza estimates that 700 fewer copiers will require warranty repair and that it will be able to sell 300 additional copiers.

Variable and fixed costs per copier repaired of individual external failure COQ items described in Exhibit 20.6 (Panel A, column 4) are as follows:

	Variable costs	Fixed costs	Total costs
Customer-support costs	€80	€120	€200
Transportation costs	180	60	240
Warranty repair costs	1800	2600	4400

As Braganza eliminates repair work on copiers, it expects to save only the variable costs of customer support, transportation and warranty repair.

Note that the savings per copier in cost of rework, customer-support, transportation and warranty repair in Exhibit 20.10 differ from the costs per copier for each of these items in Exhibit 20.6. Why? Because Exhibit 20.10 shows only the variable costs that Braganza expects to save. Exhibit 20.6 shows the total (fixed and variable) costs of each of these items. Also note that Exhibit 20.10 includes the incremental contribution margin from the estimated increases in sales due to the improved quality and performance of Braganza's copiers.

Braganza's management chooses to redesign the frame since Exhibit 20.10 indicates that the net estimated cost savings are €972 000 greater under this alternative. The costs of a poorly designed frame appear in the form of higher manufacturing, marketing, distribution and customer-service costs as internal and external failures begin to mount. But these costs are locked in when the frame is designed. Thus, it is not surprising that redesign will yield significant savings.

In the Braganza example, lost contribution margin occurs because Braganza's repeated external failures damage its reputation for quality, resulting in lost sales. Lost contribution margin can also occur as a result of internal failures. Suppose Braganza's manufacturing capacity is fully used. In this case, rework uses up valuable manufacturing capacity and causes the company to forgo contribution margin from producing and selling additional copiers. Suppose Braganza could produce (and subsequently) sell an additional 600 copiers by improving quality and reducing rework. The costs of internal failure would then include lost contribution margin of €3 600 000 (€6000 contribution margin per copier × 600 copiers). This €3 600 000 is the opportunity cost of poor quality.

Concepts in action

Does Mercedes really stand for quality? What about Toyota?

Mercedes buyers across the world have voiced their concerns over quality problems during the past three decades. Complaints have included faulty key fobs, leaky sunroofs, faulty electronics, airbags that failed to inflate in accidents, malfunctioning navigation systems, electric window problems, automatic gearbox issues and many others. One customer who faced more than 60 mechanical problems with his C-class car, parked it in front of his dealership with a sign that read: 'Mercedes is unfair to consumers'. Web forums such as lemonmb.com, mercedesproblems.com and troublebenz.com became vocal, with customers complaining about Mercedes quality.

The Reliability Index report by Which? takes into account the number of problems car owners experienced over the 12 months prior to the report. In 2019, Mercedes was placed 30 out of 40 manufacturers in the listings. Even following a focused drive to improve its quality, Mercedes-Benz ranked 19th out of 24 car brands by J.D. Power and Associates in 2019 with 136 problems per 100 vehicles versus an industry average of 119. The number of problems reported went up steeply from 2014.

Another car maker with a long established reputation for building high-quality cars found its reputation severely damaged from mid-2009. As part of an aggressive growth strategy, Toyota surpassed General Motors as the world's largest carmaker in 2008. But the company's focus on rapid growth came at a cost to its reputation for quality. Toyota issued a dozen recalls covering defects from faulty accelerator pedals to rusted spare-tyre carriers. The company appointed a Chief Quality Officer and restructured its reporting system to communicate defect issues in a timelier manner. However, again in April 2014 Toyota recalled 6.5 million cars worldwide to fix a variety of problems including faulty steering wheels and seats. The company established a quality committee, added a brake override system, expanded quality training, and increased testing. By 2012, Toyota reclaimed the title of world's largest automaker. In 2016, Toyota confronted new quality problems but this time quickly announced the voluntary recall of 3.37 million vehicles for possibly defective fuel tanks and air bags. Its J.D. Power and Associates rating in 2019 placed it 18th with 134 problems per 100 vehicles, faring better than Mercedes. Quality defects can lead to huge costs of non-conformance. Following the loss of a class action suit, Toyota in 2022 faced having to compensate buyers for a 17.5% reduction in value of 264,170 cars sold with a defective diesel exhaust after-treatment system. This would cost the company $2 billion.

Regaining lost reputation for quality can prove expensive for an auto company in paying fines, dealing with pay-outs in class-action lawsuits and spending on marketing incentives. The reputational costs are difficult to quantify but always prove to be high. The car in front is not always a Toyota – for 2019, it was Peugeot!

Sources: Taylor, A. (2010) 'How Toyota lost its way', *Fortune*, 26 July, pp. 84–90; https://europe.jdpower.com/press-releases/2019-uk-vehicle-dependability-study; www.wolterskluwer.com/en-au/expert-insights/toyota-faces-2-billion-compensation-bill-for-defective-cars

Braganza can use its COQ report to examine interdependencies across the four categories of quality-related costs. In our example, redesigning the frame increases costs of prevention activities (design and process engineering), decreases costs of internal failure (rework) and decreases costs of external failure (warranty repairs). Costs of quality give more insight when managers compare trends over time. In successful quality programmes, the costs of quality as a percentage of sales and the costs of internal and external failure as a percentage of total costs of quality should decrease over time. Many companies believe they should eliminate all failure costs and have zero defects.

Evaluating quality performance

Measuring the financial costs of quality and the non-financial aspects of quality have distinctly different advantages. Those of costs of quality (COQ) measures are as follows:

1 COQ focuses attention on how costly poor quality can be.
2 Financial COQ measures are a useful way of comparing different quality-improvement programmes and setting priorities for achieving maximum cost reduction.
3 Financial COQ measures serve as a common denominator for evaluating trade-offs among prevention and failure costs. COQ provides a single, summary measure of quality performance.

The advantages of non-financial measures of quality are:

1 Non-financial measures of quality are often easy to quantify and easy to understand.
2 Non-financial measures direct attention to physical processes and hence focus attention on the precise problem areas that need improvement.
3 Non-financial measures provide immediate short-run feedback on whether quality improvement efforts have, in fact, succeeded in improving quality.

The advantages cited for COQ are disadvantages of non-financial measures and vice versa. Most organisations use both financial and non-financial quality measures to measure quality performance.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Many perspectives of what strategy is exist. Strategic management accounting (SMA) places particular emphasis on blending external with internal organisational information. SMA encompasses both financial and non-financial information.
2 Two formal strategies organisations pursue are product differentiation and cost leadership. Product differentiation refers to offering products and services that are perceived by customers as being superior and unique. Cost leadership refers to the pursuit of low costs relative to those of competitors.
3 The balanced scorecard tries to view an organisation's strategy in terms of a set of performance measures that enable strategic performance management and measurement. It provides measure dimensions from four key perspectives: (1) financial, (2) customer, (3) internal business process, and (4) learning and growth.
4 Four cost categories in a costs of quality programme are *prevention costs* (costs incurred in precluding the manufacture of products that do not conform to specifications), *appraisal costs* (costs incurred in detecting which of the individual products produced do not conform to specifications), *internal failure costs* (costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected before its shipment to customers) and *external failure costs* (costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected after its shipment to customers).
5 Non-financial quality measures managers can use include customer satisfaction measures such as the number of customer complaints and percentage of defective units shipped to customers; internal business-process measures such as the percentage of defective and reworked products; and learning-and-growth measures such as the percentage of employees trained in and empowered to use quality principles. Three methods that companies use to improve quality are *control charts*, to distinguish random variations from other sources of variation in an operating process; *Pareto diagrams*, which indicate how frequently each type of failure occurs; and *cause-and-effect diagrams*, which identify potential factors or causes of failure.
6 The relevant costs of quality improvement are the incremental costs incurred to implement the quality programme. The relevant benefits are the savings in total costs and the estimated increase in contribution margin from the higher sales that will result from the quality improvements.
7 Financial measures help managers evaluate the trade-offs among prevention costs, appraisal costs, and failure costs. Non-financial measures identify problem areas that need improvement and serve as indicators of future financial performance.

References and further reading

Albertsen, O. and Lueg, R. (2014) 'The balanced scorecard's missing link to compensation: a literature review and an agenda for future research', *Journal of Accounting and Organizational Change,* 10(4), pp. 431–55.

Ax, C. and Bjornenak, T. (2007) 'Management accounting innovations: origins and diffusion', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds.) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall).

Bergeron, B. (2017) *Performance Management in Healthcare: From Key Performance Indicators to Balanced Scorecard* (New York: Productivity Press).

Bhimani, A. (2005) 'Strategy and activity-based costing: A cross-national study of process and outcomes', *International Journal of Accounting and Auditing and Performance Evaluation* (with M. Gosselin and M. Ncube) 2(3), pp. 187–205).

Bhimani, A. (2006) 'Comparative management accounting research: Past forays and emerging frontiers' in C. Chapman, A. Hopwood and M. Shields (eds.) (2006) *Handbook of Management Accounting Research* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 34–64.

Bhimani, A. and Langfield-Smith, K. (2007) 'The use of financial and non-financial information in strategy development and implementation', *Management Accounting Research,* 18(1), pp. 3–31.

Chiapello, E. and Lebas, M. (1996) 'The tableau de bord, a French approach to management information', paper presented at the 19th Annual Congress of the European Accounting Association, Bergen, Norway, 2–4 May.

Cooper, R. and Slagmulder, R. (2007) 'Integrated cost management', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 117–45.

Ding, S. and Beaulieu, P. (2011) 'The role of financial incentives in balanced scorecard-based performance evaluations: correcting mood congruency biases', *Journal of Accounting Research,* 49(5), pp. 1223–47.

Epstein, M. and Manzoni, J. (1997) 'The balanced scorecard and tableau de bord: translating strategy to action', *Management Accounting* (US), August, pp. 28–36.

Hasan, R.U. and Chyi, T.M (2017) 'Practical application of balanced scorecard – a literature review,' *Journal of Strategy and Performance Management,* 5(3), 87–103.

Hoque, Z. (2014) '20 years of studies on the balanced scorecard: trends, accomplishments, gaps and opportunities for future research', *British Accounting Review,* 46(1), pp. 33–59.

Hoskin, K., Macve, R. and Stone, J. (2006) 'Accounting and strategy: towards understanding the historical genesis of modern business and military strategy', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 166–97.

Kaplan, R.S. and Norton, D.P. (1996) *The Balanced Scorecard* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press).

Kloot, L. and Martin, J. (2000) 'Strategic performance measurement: a balanced approach to performance management issues in local government', *Management Accounting Research,* pp. 169–279.

Langfield-Smith, K. (2006) 'Understanding management control systems and strategy', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press) pp. 243–65.

Larker, D.F. (2004) 'Performance measures: insights and challenges', plenary speech made at the LSE Management Accounting Research Group Conference, 25 March.

Lebas, M. (1996) 'Management accounting practice in France', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Management Accounting: European Perspectives* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 74–99.

Malagueño, R. Lopez-Valeiras, E and Gomez-Conde, J. (2018) 'Balanced scorecard in SMEs: effects on innovation and financial performance', *Small Business Economics,* 51, pp. 221–44.

Malmi, T. (2001) 'Balanced scorecard in Finnish companies: a research note', *Management Accounting Research,* 12, pp. 207–20.

Martin, R. (2014) 'The big lie of strategic planning', *Harvard Business Review* (Jan/Feb).

Mendoza, C. and Zrihen, R. (1999) 'Le tableau de bord, une version Américaine?' *Revue Française de Comptabilité,* pp. 60–66.

Mintzberg, H. (1985) 'Of strategies, deliberate and emergent', *Strategic Management Journal,* pp. 257–72.

Mintzberg, H., Ahlstrand, B. and Lampel, J. (1998) *Strategy Safari* (New York: Free Press).

Mitchell, F. and Nørreklit, H. (2014) 'Guest Editorial: Contemporary issues on the balanced scorecard', *Journal of Accounting and Organizational Change,* 10(4), pp. 426–29.

Nørreklit, H. (2003) 'The balanced scorecard: what is the score? A rhetorical analysis of the balanced scorecard', *Accounting Organizations and Society,* 28, pp. 591–619.

Nørreklit, H. and Mitchell, F. (2007) 'The balanced scorecard', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall) pp. 175–198.

Nielsen, C., Lund, M. and Thomsen, P. (2017) 'Killing the balanced scorecard to improve internal disclosure', *Journal of Intellectual Capital,* 18, pp. 45–62.

Oakland, J., Turner, M. and Oakland, R. (2018) *Total Quality Management and Operational Excellence* (London: Routledge).

Pezet, A. (2009) 'The history of the French *tableau de bord* (1885–1975): evidence from the archives', *Accounting, Business and Financial History,* 19(2), pp. 103–125.

Porter, M. (1980) *Competitive Strategy* (New York: Free Press).

Porter, M. (1985) *Competitive Advantage* (New York: Free Press).

Porter, M. (1996) 'What is strategy?' *Harvard Business Review,* November–December.

Porter, M. (2001) 'Strategy and the Internet', *Harvard Business Review,* March, pp. 63–98.

Quinn, B. (1980) *Strategies for Change: Logical Incrementalism* (New York: Irwin).

Roslender, R. and Hart, S.J. (2003) 'In search of strategic management accounting: theoretical and field study perspectives', *Management Accounting Research,* pp. 255–281.

Rousseau, Y. and Rousseau, P. (2000) 'Turning strategy into action in financial services', *CMA Management,* December–January, pp. 25–29.

Shank, J.K. (2006) 'Strategic cost management: upsizing, downsizing and rightsizing', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 355–379.

Sharma, S. (2018) *Total Quality Management Essentials* (London: Sage).

Simmonds, K. (1981) 'Strategic management accounting', *Management Accounting* (UK), pp. 26–29.

Simmonds, K., Bonshor, R. and Fisher, L. (1997) *Strategic Management Accounting in Practice* (London: CIMA).

Taylor, A. (2010) 'How Toyota lost its way', *Fortune,* 26 July, pp. 84–90.

CHAPTER 20

Assessment material

Review questions

20.1 Define strategy.

20.2 Describe two generic strategies.

20.3 What are the four key perspectives in the balanced scorecard?

20.4 What is strategic management accounting?

20.5 Describe three features of a good balanced scorecard.

20.6 Describe some of the benefits of improving quality.

20.7 Name two items classified as prevention costs.

20.8 Distinguish between internal failure costs and external failure costs.

20.9 'Companies should focus on financial measures of quality because these are the only measures of quality that can be linked to bottom-line performance.' Do you agree? Explain.

20.10 Give examples of non-financial measures of customer satisfaction.

Exercises

Basic level

***20.11 Balanced scorecard** (20 minutes)

La Quinta Ltd manufactures corrugated cardboard boxes. It competes and plans to grow by producing high-quality boxes at a low cost that are delivered to customers in a timely manner. There are many other manufacturers who produce similar boxes. La Quinta believes that continuously improving its manufacturing processes and having satisfied employees are critical to implementing its strategy in 2023.

Required

1 Is La Quinta's 2023 strategy one of product differentiation or cost leadership? Explain briefly.

2 Indicate two measures you would expect to see under each perspective in La Quinta's balanced scorecard for 2023. Explain your answer briefly.

20.12 Strategy, balanced scorecard (30 minutes)

Meredith Ltd makes a special-purpose machine D4H used in the textile industry. Meredith has designed the D4H machine for 2022 to be distinct from its competitors. It has been generally regarded as a superior machine. Meredith presents the following data for the years 2021 and 2022.

		2021	2022
1	Units of D4H produced and sold	200	210
2	Selling price	£40 000	£42 000
3	Direct materials (kilograms)	300 000	310 000
4	Direct materials cost per kilogram	£8	£8.50
5	Manufacturing capacity in units of D4H	250	250
6	Total conversion costs	£2 000 000	£2 025 000
7	Conversion costs per unit of capacity	£8 000	£8 100
8	Selling and customer-service capacity	100 customers	95 customers
9	Total selling and customer-service costs	£1 000 000	£940 500
10	Selling and customer-service capacity cost per customer	£10 000	£9 900
11	Design staff	12	12
12	Total design costs	£1 200 000	£1 212 000
13	Design costs per employee	£100 000	£101 000

Meredith produces no defective machines, but it wants to reduce direct materials usage per D4H machine in 2022. Conversion costs in each year depend on production capacity defined in terms of D4H units that can be produced, not the actual units of D4H produced. Selling and customer-service costs depend on the number of customers that Meredith can support, not the actual number of customers Meredith serves. Meredith has 75 customers in 2021 and 80 customers in 2022. At the start of each year, management uses its discretion to determine the number of design staff for the year. The design staff and costs have no direct relationship with the quantity of D4H produced or the number of customers to whom D4H is sold.

Required

1 Is Meredith's strategy one of product differentiation or cost leadership? Explain briefly.

2 Describe briefly key elements that you would include in Meredith's balanced scorecard and the reasons for doing so.

*20.13 Strategy, balanced scorecard, service company (30 minutes)

Snyder & Partners is a small information systems consulting firm that specialises in helping companies implement sales management software. The market for Snyder's products is very competitive. To compete, Snyder must deliver quality service at a low cost. Snyder invoices clients in terms of units of work performed, which depends on the size and complexity of the sales management system. Snyder presents the following data for the years 2021 and 2022.

		2021	2022
1	Units of work performed	60	70
2	Selling price	£50 000	£48 000
3	Software implementation labour-hours	30 000	32 000
4	Cost per software implementation labour-hour	£60	£63
5	Software implementation support capacity (in units of work)	90	90
6	Total cost of software implementation support	£360 000	£369 000
7	Software implementation support capacity cost per unit of work	£4 000	£4 100
8	Number of employees doing software development	3	3
9	Total software development costs	£375 000	£390 000
10	Software development costs per employee	£125 000	£130 000

Software implementation labour-hour costs are variable costs. Software implementation support costs for each year depend on the software implementation support capacity (defined in terms of units of work) that Snyder chooses to maintain each year. It does not vary with the actual units of

work performed that year. At the start of each year, management uses its discretion to determine the number of software development employees. The software development staff and costs have no direct relationship with the number of units of work performed.

Required

1 Is Snyder's strategy one of product differentiation or cost leadership? Explain briefly.

2 Describe briefly key elements that you would include in Snyder's balanced scorecard and your reasons for doing so.

*20.14 Balanced scorecard (R. Kaplan, adapted) (40 minutes)

Caltex GmbH refines petrol and sells it through its own Caltex petrol stations.On the basis of market research, Caltex determines that 60% of the overall petrol market consists of 'service-oriented customers', medium- to high-income individuals who are willing to pay a higher price for petrol if the petrol stations can provide excellent customer service such as a clean facility, a convenience store, friendly employees, a quick turnround, the ability to pay by credit card, and high-octane premium fuel. The remaining 40% of the overall market are 'price shoppers' who look to buy the cheapest petrol available. Caltex's strategy is to focus on the 60% of service-oriented customers. Caltex's balanced scorecard for the year 2021 is given below. For brevity, the initiatives taken under each objective are omitted.

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective			
Increase shareholder value	Operating profit changes from price recovery	€90 000 000	€95 000 000
	Operating profit changes from growth	€65 000 000	€67 000 000
Customer perspective			
Increase market share	Market share of overall petrol market	10%	9.8%
Internal business process perspective			
Improve petrol quality	Quality index	94 points	95 points
Improve refinery performance	Refinery reliability index (%)	91%	91%
Ensure petrol availability	Product availability index (%)	99%	100%
Learning and growth perspective			
Increase refinery process capability	Percentage of refinery processes with advanced controls	88%	90%

Required

1 Was Caltex successful in implementing its strategy in 2021? Explain your answer.

2 Would you have included some measure of employee satisfaction and employee training in the learning and growth perspective? Are these objectives critical to Caltex for implementing its strategy? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

3 Explain how Caltex did not achieve its target market share in the total petrol market but still exceeded its financial targets. Is 'market share of overall petrol market' the correct measure of market share? Explain briefly.

4 Is there a cause-and-effect linkage between improvements in the measures in the internal business process perspective and the measures in the customer perspective? That is, would you add other measures to the internal business process perspective or the customer perspective? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

5 Do you agree with Caltex's decision not to include measures of changes in operating profit from productivity improvements under the financial perspective of the balanced scorecard? Explain briefly.

20.15 Cost of quality programme, non-financial quality measures (15 minutes)

Zaccaria Srl manufactures automotive parts. A major customer has just given Zaccaria an edict: 'Improve quality or no more business.' Lorenzo Da Ponte, the controller of Zaccaria, is given the task of developing a COQ programme. He seeks your advice on classifying each of items (a) to (g) as (i) a prevention cost, (ii) an appraisal cost, (iii) an internal failure cost, or (iv) an external failure cost.

a Cost of inspecting products on the production line by Zaccaria quality inspectors.

b Payment of travel costs for a Zaccaria customer representative to meet a customer who detected defective products.

c Costs of reworking defective parts detected by Zaccaria's quality-assurance group.

d Labour cost of the product designer at Zaccaria whose task is to design components that will not break under extreme temperature variations.

e Cost of automotive parts returned by customers.

f Seminar costs for 'Supplier Day', a programme aimed at communicating to suppliers the new quality requirements for purchased components.

g Costs of spoiled parts.

Required

1 Classify the seven individual cost items into one of the four categories of prevention, appraisal, internal failure or external failure.

2 Give two examples of non-financial performance measures Zaccaria could monitor as part of a total-quality-control effort.

20.16 Quality improvement, relevant costs and revenues, service (25 minutes)

Colombe-Déménagements SA is a removals company that transports household goods from one Belgian city to another. It measures service quality in terms of (a) time required to transport goods, (b) on-time delivery (within two days of agreed-upon delivery date) and (c) lost or damaged shipments. Colombe-Déménagements is considering investing in a new scheduling and tracking system costing €160 000 per year that should help it improve performance with respect to items (b) and (c). The following information describes Colombe-Déménagements' current performance and the expected performance if the new system is implemented:

	Current performance	Future expected performance
On-time delivery performance	85%	95%
Variable costs per carton lost or damaged	€60	€60
Number of cartons lost or damaged per year	3000 cartons	1000 cartons

Colombe-Déménagements expects that each percentage point increase in on-time performance will result in sales increases of €20 000 per year. Colombe-Déménagements' contribution margin percentage is 45%.

Required

1 What are the annual additional costs to Colombe-Déménagements of choosing the new scheduling and tracking system?

2 What are the annual additional benefits of the new system?

3 Should Colombe-Déménagements acquire the new system?

Intermediate level

20.17 **Balanced scorecard** (40 minutes)

Lee SA manufactures various types of colour laser printer in a highly automated facility with high fixed costs. The market for laser printers is competitive. The various colour laser printers on the market are comparable in terms of features and price. Lee believes that satisfying customers with products of high quality at low costs is key to achieving its target profitability. For 2023, Lee plans to achieve higher quality and lower costs by improving yields and reducing defects in its manufacturing operations. Lee will train workers and encourage and empower them to take the necessary actions. Currently, a significant amount of Lee's capacity is used to produce products that are defective and cannot be sold. Lee expects that higher yields will reduce the capacity that Lee needs to use to manufacture products. Lee does not anticipate that improving manufacturing will automatically lead to lower costs because Lee has high fixed costs. To reduce fixed costs per unit, Lee could lay off employees and sell equipment or use the capacity to produce and sell more of its current products or improved models of its current products.

Lee's balanced scorecard for the just-completed financial year 2022 is shown below. For brevity, the initiatives taken under each objective are omitted.

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective			
Increase shareholder value	Operating profit changes from productivity	€1 000 000	€400 000
	Operating profit changes from growth	€1 500 000	€600 000
Customer perspective			
Increase market share	Market share in colour laser printers	5%	4.6%
Internal business process perspective			
Improve manufacturing quality	Yield	82%	85%
Reduce delivery time to customers	Order delivery time	25 days	22 days
Learning and growth perspective			
Develop process skills	Percentage of employees trained in process and quality management	90%	92%
Enhance information system capabilities	Percentage of manufacturing processes with real-time feedback	85%	87%

Required

1. Was Lee successful in implementing its strategy in 2022? Explain.
2. Is Lee's balanced scorecard useful in helping Lee understand why it did not reach its target market share in 2022? If it is, explain why. If it is not, explain what other measures you might want to add under the customer perspective and why.
3. Would you have included some measure of employee satisfaction in the learning and growth perspective and new product development in the internal business process perspective? That is, do you think employee satisfaction and development of new products are critical to Lee for implementing its strategy? Why or why not? Explain briefly.
4. What problems, if any, do you see in Lee's improving quality and significantly downsizing to eliminate unused capacity?

20.18 Balanced scorecard, ethics (40 minutes)

John Emburey, division manager of the Household Products Division, a maker of kitchen dishwashers, has just seen the balanced scorecard for his division for the year. He immediately calls Patricia Conley, the management accountant for the division into his office for a meeting. 'I think the employee satisfaction and customer satisfaction numbers are way too low. These numbers are based on a random sample of subjective assessments made by individual managers and customer representatives. My own experience indicates that we are doing well on both these dimensions. Until we do a formal survey of employees and customers sometime next year, I think we are doing a disservice to ourselves and this company by reporting such low scores for employee and customer satisfaction. These scores will be an embarrassment for us at the division managers' meeting next month. We need to get these numbers up.'

Patricia knows that the employee and customer satisfaction scores are subjective, but the procedure she used is identical to the procedures she has used in the past. She knows from the comments she had asked for that the scores represent the unhappiness of employees with the latest work rules and the unhappiness of customers with missed delivery dates. She also knows that these problems will be corrected in time.

Required

1 Do you think that the Household Products Division should include subjective measures of employee satisfaction and customer satisfaction in its balanced scorecard? Explain.

2 What should Patricia do?

20.19 Costs of quality analysis, non-financial quality measures (20 minutes)

Alcazarquivir Lda manufactures and sells industrial grinders. The following table presents financial information pertaining to quality in 2021 and 2022 (in €000):

	2022	2021
Sales	€12 500	€10 000
Line inspection	85	110
Scrap	200	250
Design engineering	240	100
Cost of returned goods	145	60
Product-testing equipment	50	50
Customer support	30	40
Rework costs	135	160
Preventive equipment maintenance	90	35
Product liability claims	100	200
Incoming materials inspection	40	20
Breakdown maintenance	40	90
Product-testing labour	75	220
Training	120	45
Warranty repair	200	300
Supplier evaluation	50	20

Required

1 Classify the cost items in the table into prevention, appraisal, internal failure or external failure categories.

2 Calculate the ratio of each COQ category to sales in 2021 and 2022. Comment on the trends in costs of quality between 2021 and 2022.

3 Give two examples of non-financial quality measures that Alcazarquivir could monitor as part of a total-quality-control effort.

20.20 Quality improvement, relevant costs and relevant revenues (25 minutes)

Braganza manufactures and sells 20 000 copiers each year. The variable and fixed costs of reworking and repairing copiers are as follows:

	Variable costs	Fixed costs	Total costs
Rework costs per copier	€1600	€2400	€4000
Repair costs per copier			
Customer-support costs	80	120	200
Transportation costs for repair parts	180	60	240
Warranty repair costs	1800	2600	4400

Braganza's engineers are currently working to solve the problem of copies being too light or too dark. They propose changing the lens of the copier. The new lens will cost €50 more than the old lens. Each copier uses one lens. Braganza uses a one-year time horizon for this decision, since it plans to introduce a new copier at the end of the year. Braganza believes that even as it improves quality, it will not be able to save any of the fixed costs of rework or repair.

By changing the lens, Braganza expects that it will (1) rework 300 fewer copiers, (2) repair 200 fewer copiers and (3) sell 100 additional copiers. Braganza's unit contribution margin on its existing copier is €6000.

Required

1. What are the additional costs of choosing the new lens?
2. What are the additional benefits of choosing the new lens?
3. Should Braganza use the new lens?

20.21 Quality improvement, relevant costs and relevant revenues (30 minutes)

Carmody Ltd sells 300 000 V262 valves to the car and truck industry. Carmody has a capacity of 110 000 machine-hours and can produce three valves per machine-hour. V262's contribution margin per unit is €8. Carmody sells only 300 000 valves because 30 000 valves (10% of the good valves) need to be reworked. It takes one machine-hour to rework three valves so that 10 000 hours of capacity are lost in the rework process. Carmody's rework costs are €210 000. Rework costs consist of:

Direct materials and direct rework labour (variable costs)	€3 per unit
Fixed costs of equipment, rent and overhead allocation	€4 per unit

Carmody's process designers have come up with a modification that would maintain the speed of the process and would ensure 100% quality and no rework. The new process would cost €315 000 per year. The following additional information is available:

- The demand for Carmody's V262 valves is 370 000 per year.
- Clohisey has asked Carmody to supply 22 000 T971 valves if Carmody implements the new design. The contribution margin per T971 valve is €10. Carmody can make two T971 valves per machine-hour on the existing machine with 100% quality and no rework.

Required

1. Suppose Carmody's designers implemented the new design. Should Carmody accept Clohisey's order for 22 000 T971 valves? Explain.
2. Should Carmody implement the new design?
3. What non-financial and qualitative factors should Carmody consider in deciding whether to implement the new design?

20.22 Ethics and quality (30–35 minutes)

Anna-Greta Lantto, the assistant controller of Kiruna AB had recently prepared the following quality report comparing 2022 and 2021 quality performances.

	2022	2021
Sales	€90 000 000	€80 000 000
Online inspection	€700 000	€600 000
Warranty liability	€2 250 000	€3 600 000
Product testing	€2 000 000	€1 000 000
Scrap	€2 700 000	€2 000 000
Design engineering	€1 800 000	€800 000
Percentage of customers complaining about quality	3%	4%

Just two days after preparing the report, Lars Törnman, the controller, had called Lantto into his office. 'Our plant manager, Sven Töyr, is quite upset with the recent costs of quality and non-financial measures of quality reports that you prepared. He feels his workers have made significant progress in improving quality at the plant but that our reports are just not showing this. He wants to apply for various quality awards that would bring a lot of prestige to Kiruna, but he obviously cannot do so on the basis of the numbers we are reporting. Can you look over these quality numbers and see what you can do? I think Sven has a point. Nobody wants Kiruna to miss out on all the wonderful press we'd get if we won one of these quality awards.' Lantto is quite certain that her numbers are correct. Yet she would very much like Kiruna to win these prestigious quality awards. She is confused about how to handle Törnman's request.

Required

1 Calculate the ratio of each costs of quality category (prevention, appraisal, internal failure and external failure) to sales in 2021 and 2022.

2 What do the reports indicate about the plant's quality performance?

3 Is Lars Törnman's suggestion to Lantto to recalculate her quality numbers unethical? Would it be unethical for Lantto to modify her analysis? What steps should Lantto take to resolve this situation?

Advanced level

*20.23 Statistical quality control, airline operations (30–40 minutes)

Air Gascogne operates daily round-trip flights on the Toulouse–Stockholm route using a fleet of three 747s, the Eclair des Cévennes, the Eclair des Vosges and the Eclair des Alpilles. The budgeted quantity of fuel for each round-trip flight is the mean (average) fuel usage. Over the last 12 months, the average fuel usage per round-trip is 1000 litre-units with a standard deviation of 100 litre-units. A litre-unit is 1000 litres.

Gervaise Plassans, the operations manager of Air Gascogne, uses a statistical quality control (SQC) approach in deciding whether to investigate fuel usage per round-trip flight. She investigates those flights with fuel usage greater than two standard deviations from the mean.

In October, Plassans receives the following report for round-trip fuel usage by the three planes operating on the Toulouse–Stockholm route:

Flight	Eclair des Cévennes (litre-units)	Eclair des Vosges (litre-units)	Eclair des Alpilles (litre-units)
1	1040	1030	970
2	940	940	1040
3	970	960	1110
4	1010	1070	1040
5	1050	920	1220
6	1070	1130	1180
7	1110	990	1260
8	1120	1060	1140
9	1150	1010	1170
10	1190	930	1230

Required

1 Using the $\pm 2\sigma$ rule, what variance investigation decisions would be made?

2 Present SQC charts for round-trip fuel usage for each of the three 747s in October. What inferences can you draw from them?

3 Some managers propose that Air Gascogne present its SQC charts in monetary terms rather than in physical quantity terms (litre-units). What are the advantages and disadvantages of using euro fuel costs rather than litre-units in the SQC charts?

20.24 Question from ACCA Performance Management, Section B, December 2014 *(40 minutes)*

Jamair was founded in September 2007 and is one of a growing number of low-cost airlines in the country of Shania. Jamair's strategy is to operate as a low-cost, high-efficiency airline, and it does this by:

- Operating mostly in secondary cities to reduce landing costs.
- Using only one type of aircraft in order to reduce maintenance and operational costs. These planes are leased rather than bought outright.
- Having only one category of seat class.
- Having no pre-allocated seats or in-flight entertainment.
- Focusing on e-commerce with customers both booking tickets and checking in for flights online.

The airline was given an 'on-time arrival' ranking of seventh best by the country's aviation authority, who rank all 50 of the country's airlines based on the number of flights which arrive on-time at their destinations. 48 Jamair flights were cancelled in 2013 compared to 35 in 2012. This increase was due to an increase in the staff absentee rate at Jamair from 3 days per staff member per year to 4–5 days.

The average 'ground turnaround time' for airlines in Shania is 50 minutes, meaning that, on average, planes are on the ground for cleaning, refuelling, etc. for 50 minutes before departing again. Customer satisfaction surveys have shown that 85% of customers are happy with the standard of cleanliness on Jamair's planes.

The number of passengers carried by the airline has grown from 300 000 passengers on a total of 3428 flights in 2007 to 920 000 passengers on 7650 flights in 2013. The overall growth of the airline has been helped by the limited route licensing policy of the Shanian government, which has given Jamair almost monopoly status on some of its routes. However, the government is now set to change this policy with almost immediate effect, and it has become more important than ever to monitor performance effectively.

Required

1 Describe each of the four perspectives of the balanced scorecard.

2 For each perspective of the balanced scorecard, identify one goal together with a corresponding performance measure which could be used by Jamair to measure the company's performance. The goals and measures should be specifically relevant to Jamair. For each pair of goals and measures, explain why you have chosen them.

20.25 Question from CIMA Performance Management, section A, November 2014 (20 minutes)

YY is a large banking organisation. It has a branch in most of the towns in the country in which it operates. The bank's business is mainly concerned with private individuals. It is a very 'traditional' bank that offers only 'over the counter' services during limited opening hours.

At a recent board meeting, the directors of the bank stated that they were worried that the bank was losing customers to the new style banks that offer a much more friendly service, longer opening hours, internet banking and a diverse range of banking services.

It has now been decided that the bank will pursue strategies to achieve the goal of being 'The bank that people choose' and will use a balanced scorecard to monitor progress towards that goal.

Required

Produce, for each of the three non-financial perspectives of a balanced scorecard, an objective and a performance measure that the bank could use. (In your answer you must state each perspective, and the objective and performance measure for that perspective and explain why they support the goal of YY becoming 'The bank that people choose'.)

20.26 Question from CIMA Performance Management, section A, September 2014 *(20 minutes)*

TSH provides courses for students who are studying for accountancy examinations. The accountancy education sector is extremely competitive; it is dominated by a small number of national organisations but there is also a large number of smaller regional training providers.

The majority of TSH students are part-time students and fit their studies around their employment. TSH has developed a reputation for understanding its students' needs and delivering a high-quality service that meets their requirements.

TSH has grown in recent years from a small regional company to a position where it now has colleges in several of the country's large cities. The company directors now wish TSH to grow further and have implemented a strategy to achieve the objective of becoming 'the largest accountancy study provider in the country'.

TSH's Board of Directors currently uses financial reports to monitor the company's performance but are thinking about implementing a balanced scorecard approach to performance management.

Required

1 Explain the disadvantages of using financial performance indicators alone to assess performance.

2 Explain TWO non-financial performance measures, each from a different perspective of the balanced scorecard, which TSH could use to measure the performance of the business against the new strategy. (You must state the perspectives that your measures relate to and explain why the measures would be effective.)

20.27 Question from CIMA Performance Management, section A, May 2014 *(20 minutes)*

AST is a grocery and general merchandise retail group. AST has supermarkets located in most towns and cities in its home country. Over the last few years, profits have fallen and AST has recognised that it has paid insufficient attention to customer care.

AST has now realised the importance of the customer experience at its supermarkets. In an attempt to earn the loyalty of its customers, AST has introduced a loyalty card scheme that rewards customers with discount vouchers based on their spend and buying patterns at supermarkets.

The management of AST is considering the introduction of a balanced scorecard approach to manage the performance of its stores.

Required

Recommend an objective and a suitable performance measure for each of three non-financial perspectives of a balanced scorecard that AST could use to support its new strategy of improving the customer experience.

Note: in your answer you should state three perspectives and then recommend with reasons an objective and a performance measure for each one of your three perspectives.

20.28 Questions from CIMA Performance Management, section A, March 2014 (20 minutes)

PB is a car production company. PB uses a system of standard costing to set its budgets. Budgets are set annually by the Finance department and approved by the Board of Directors of PB. The Finance department prepares variance reports each month for review at the Board of Directors meeting, where actual performance is monitored by comparison to budgeted figures.

A new Finance Director has recently joined PB from a competitor organisation where there was a Total Quality Management culture. The new Finance Director of PB is keen to discuss the implementation of Kaizen costing at the next meeting of the Board of Directors. The new Finance Director would like to review the current planning and control system at PB with a view to making changes so that it could support Kaizen costing concepts.

Required

1 Explain TWO basic principles of Total Quality Management.

2 Explain THREE changes required to PB's planning and control system to support the adoption of Kaizen costing concepts.

CHAPTER 21

Accounting, time and efficiency

Enterprises have to manage costs in the context of a variety of constraints. Time has always been of the essence for organisations and so this extends to management accounting. When is the best time for materials or merchandise to be purchased? How should purchasing arrangements with suppliers be structured? What is the best way to handle materials or merchandise once received? Are there essential trade-offs between ordering and carrying and storage costs? Stock management is a major part of profit planning for manufacturing and merchandising companies. Material costs often account for more than 40% of total costs of manufacturing companies and over 70% of total costs in merchandising companies. In this chapter, we look at just-in-time production and purchasing issues and we consider how some firms manage efficiency issues and profit pursuits when faced with different constraints.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Describe a just-in-time (JIT) production system
- Identify the major features of a JIT production system
- Describe journal entries for backflush-costing systems
- Explain the economic order quantity (EOQ) decision model and how it balances ordering costs and carrying costs
- Explain the reorder point and safety stocks
- Compare EOQ and JIT purchasing models
- Determine the relevant benefits and relevant costs in JIT purchasing and JIT production
- Define the three main measurements in the theory of constraints
- Explain how to manage bottlenecks
- Explore time-based measures using the balanced scorecard framework

Just-in-time systems

Just-in-time (JIT) refers to a system in which materials arrive exactly as they are needed. Demand drives the procurement or production of any needed materials and immediate delivery eliminates waiting times and the need for stock. Managers in such companies as Renault in France, AT&T in the USA, Honda Motors in Japan, Siemens in Germany, Cummins Engines in the UK and DAF Trucks in Holland, which have implemented just-in-time systems, believe stock is waste that should be minimised and even eliminated through careful planning. A key element of a just-in-time system is *just-in-time production*.

Just-in-time production is a mechanism in which each component on a production line is produced immediately as needed by the next step in the production line. In a JIT production line, manufacturing activity at any particular workstation is prompted by the need for that station's output at the following station. Demand triggers each step of the production process, starting with customer demand for a finished product at one end of the process and working all the way back to the demand for direct materials at the other end of the process. In this way, demand pulls a product through the production line. The demand-pull feature of JIT production systems achieves close coordination among work centres. It smooths the flow of goods, despite low quantities of stock.

There are many ways to implement the demand-pull feature of JIT production, but perhaps the most common is a kanban system. *Kanban* is the Japanese term for a visual record or card. In the simplest kanban system, workers at one operation use a kanban card to signal those at another operation to produce a specified quantity of a particular part. For example, suppose the assembly department of a silencer manufacturer receives an order for ten silencers. The assembly department triggers production of the ten metal pipes it needs to make the ten silencers by sending a kanban card to the machining department. Only after receiving the kanban card does the machining department begin production of the pipes. When production is complete, the machining department attaches the kanban card to the box containing the metal pipes and ships the package downstream to the assembly department. The assembly department starts the cycle over again when it receives the next customer order.

Major features of JIT production systems

There are five main features in a JIT production system:

1. Production is organised in **manufacturing cells**, a grouping of all the different types of equipment used to manufacture a given product.
2. Workers are trained to be multiskilled so that they are capable of performing a variety of operations and tasks.
3. Total quality management is aggressively pursued to eliminate defects.
4. Emphasis is placed on reducing *set-up time*, which is the time required to get equipment, tools and materials ready to start the production of a component or product, and *manufacturing lead time*, which is the time from when an order is ready to start on the production line to when it becomes a finished good.
5. Suppliers are carefully selected to obtain delivery of quality-tested parts in a timely manner.

Organising manufacturing cells

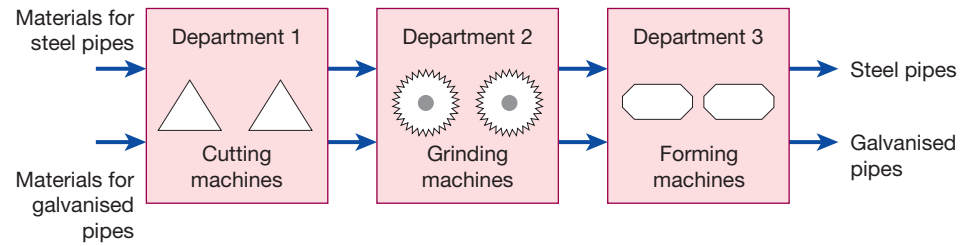
Conventional manufacturing plants generally have a *functional layout*, in which machines that perform the same function are located in the same area or department. JIT plants, however, organise machines in cells designed around products. Different types of machines that perform

different functions needed to manufacture a product, or a family of products, are placed close to each other. Materials move from one machine to another where various operations are performed in sequence. Incoming and outgoing material stock points for individual cells are located near the cell rather than at a central location. Cells reduce materials handling costs. Forklifts and forklift operators are no longer needed to transport materials between central storerooms and between departments as in conventional manufacturing. Instead, workers or small conveyor belts carry materials from one cell station to the next.

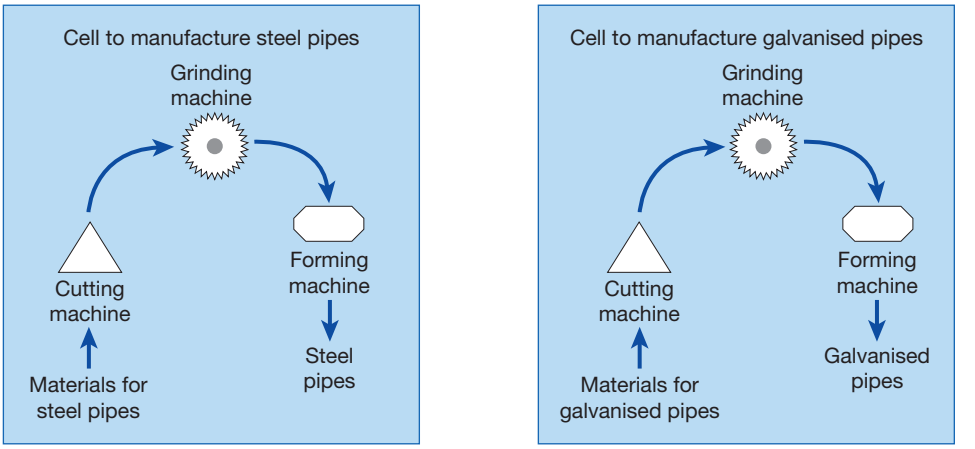
Consider the manufacture of metal pipes for silencer assembly described earlier. Exhibit 21.1 contrasts the functional layout in conventional manufacturing with the cell layout in JIT plants in this case. Note the U-shaped layout of the cell. This layout ensures that all machines and workers are located near each other. Multiskilled workers may then be able to operate more than one machine.

Exhibit 21.1 Comparing layouts of conventional manufacturing and JIT plants for the manufacture of metal pipes

Functional layout in a conventional manufacturing plant



Product-oriented layout in a JIT plant



Multiskilled workers

Workers in a cell are trained to perform all operations within the cell. Workers can then be assigned to different machines as needed to achieve smooth production flow. Workers are also trained and expected to perform minor repairs and do routine maintenance. Quality testing and inspection are also the responsibility of the workers in a cell rather than of a quality assurance department.

Total quality management

If a worker at any cell discovers a defect, he or she must set off an alarm to alert others of the problem and that operation is shut down. Because of the dynamics of the demand-pull system, when one operation shuts down, all production shuts down until the problem is solved. JIT creates an urgency for solving problems immediately and eliminating the root causes of defects as quickly as possible. Therefore, total quality management is an essential component of any JIT production system.

In contrast, in many traditional production systems, extra parts and sub-assemblies are held at workstations in anticipation of shortages or production breakdowns. These stocks can service a downstream operation even if a defect occurs. Consequently, there is less need for and emphasis on preventing rework and spoilage relative to JIT systems.

Reducing manufacturing lead time and set-up time

Reducing manufacturing lead time enables a company to respond better to changes in customer demand. For example, a short manufacturing lead time enables Siemens to rapidly restock those models of mobile phones that, at any given time, are the most popular with consumers. An important aspect of reducing manufacturing lead time is reducing set-up time. When set-up time is long, plant managers tend to manufacture many units of a product because they want to spread the costs of the set-up over as many units as possible. The higher production causes stock to build up until such time as the units are sold.

Reducing set-up time makes production in smaller batches economical and worthwhile, which in turn reduces stock levels. Companies use multiple approaches to reduce set-up time. One way is to use manufacturing cells dedicated to the manufacture of a product or product family

Concepts in action — Just-in-time live-concert recordings

Each year, millions of music fans flock to see concerts from artists ranging from Billie Eilish to Bruce Springsteen. When fans stop by the merchandise stand to pick up a T-shirt or poster after the show ends, they often have another option: buying a processional recording of the concert they just saw! Just-in-time production, enabled by advances in technology, now allows fans to relive the live-concert experience just a few minutes after the final chord is played.

During the album and CD era, live-concert recordings were hampered by production and distribution difficulties. Live albums typically sold few copies, and retail outlets that profited from volume-driven merchandise turnover, like Best Buy, were reluctant to carry them. In today's digital music environment, however, instant live recordings are highly valued by fans.

Several companies, including Aderra, Nugs.net and Set.fm, use microphones, state-of-the-art recording and audio mixing hardware and software, and an army of high-speed computers to produce concert recordings during the show. As soon as each song is complete, engineers burn that track onto hundreds of flash drives and Micro SD cards. At the end of the show, they only have to burn one last song. Once completed, the recordings are packaged and rushed to merchandise stands throughout the venue for instant sale. Many artists also sell the recordings via online download, creating another revenue stream from fans who were not at the show. With artists and music publishers starting to crack down on unauthorised concert bootlegs posted on YouTube and elsewhere, just-in-time recordings allow musicians to provide fans with high-quality memories of their concerts while creating another revenue stream in today's music business.

Sources: 'On the concert circuit, rock is king' (2018) *The Wall Street Journal*, 4 October (https://www.wsj.com/articles/rap-is-huge-but-on-the-concert-circuit-rock-is-king-1538575751); Knopper, S. (2012) 'Nine ways musicians actually make money yoday', *Rolling Stone*, 28 August (www.rollingstone.com/music/lists/9-ways-musicians-actually-make-money-today-20120828/instant-concert-recordings-19691231); Stilwell, R. and Cox, M. (2017) 'Phone recordings of concerts are more than just annoying, they're potentially illegal: guest post', *Billboard*, 17 March (https://www.billboard.com/pro/vnue-acquires-set-fm-from-pledge-music/); Hu, C. (2017) 'VNUE acquires live music distribution platform Set.fm from PledgeMusic', *Billboard*, 17 October (https://www.billboard.com/articles/business/8005727/vnueacquires-set-fm-from-pledge-music); Iahn, B. (2018) 'Rob Thomas offering instant live recordings via VNUE', The Music Universe.com, 3 January (https://themusicuniverse.com/rob-thomas-offering-instant-live-recordings-via-vnue/); http://aderra.net/.

rather than multiple products. Another way is to improve set-up processes and train workers to do set-ups more quickly. By far the most important way, however, is to automate the set-up and production process by investing in *computer-integrated manufacturing* (CIM) (see Bhimani and Bromwich, 2010). In CIM plants, computers give instructions that automatically set-up and run equipment.

Strong supplier relationships

Many companies implementing JIT production also implement *JIT purchasing*. **Just-in-time purchasing** is the purchase of goods or materials such that delivery immediately precedes demand or use. JIT plants expect JIT suppliers to provide high-quality goods and make frequent deliveries of the exact quantities specified on a timely basis. Suppliers often deliver materials directly to the plant floor to be immediately placed into production. Consequently, JIT plants require suppliers to inspect their own goods and guarantee their quality. These procedures completely eliminate the non-value-adding costs of incoming inspection, storage, stock and materials handling and this saves the JIT purchaser money.

Strong relationships with suppliers are a critical component of JIT purchasing because production stops if a supplier fails to deliver materials on time. Building partnerships with suppliers is time consuming and costly. It entails the negotiation of long-run contracts so that minimal paperwork is involved in each individual transaction. A single telephone call or computer entry via an electronic link triggers the delivery of material. Hence, JIT companies choose to work with only a few reliable and dependable suppliers. Since JIT purchasing demands a lot from supplier companies, many suppliers are unable to provide the needed service levels.

Financial benefits of JIT

JIT tends to focus broadly on the control of *total manufacturing costs* instead of individual costs such as direct manufacturing labour. For example, idle time may rise because production lines are starved of materials more frequently than before. Nevertheless, many manufacturing costs will decline. JIT can provide many financial benefits, including:

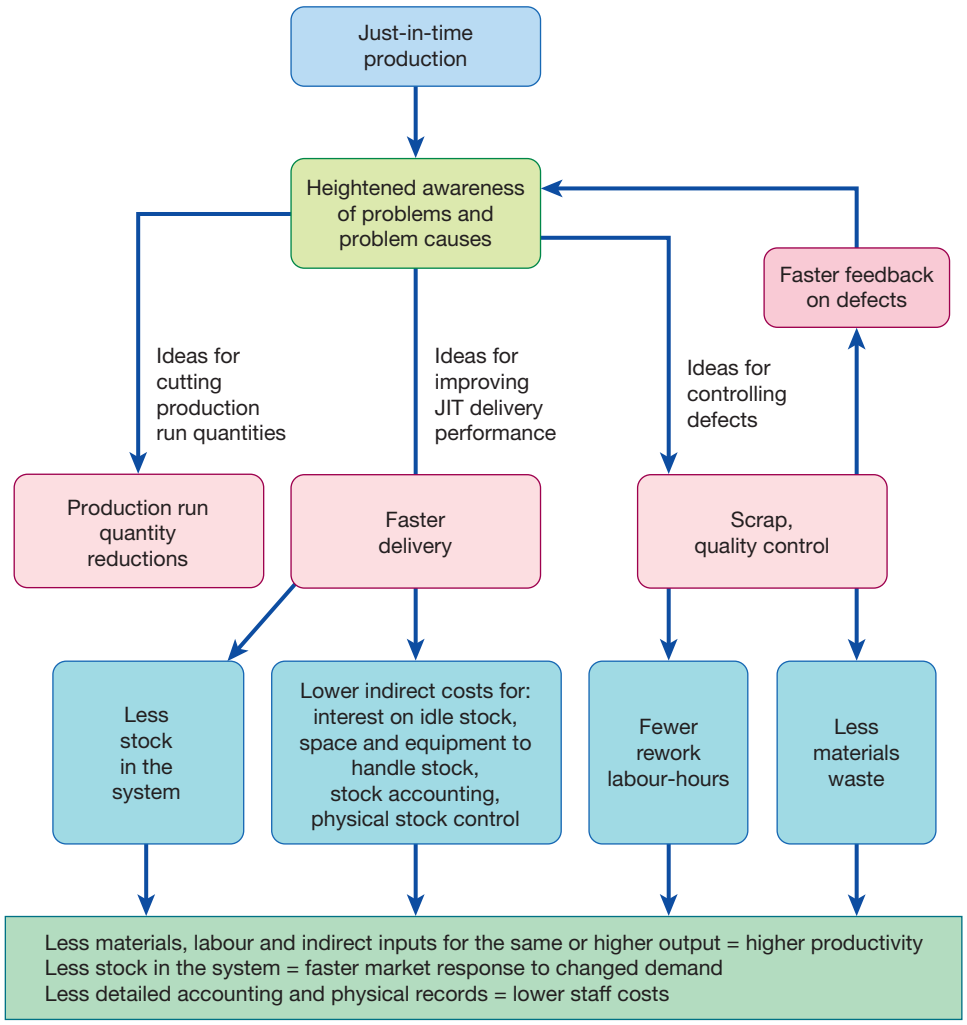
- lower investment in stocks
- reductions in carrying and handling costs of stocks
- reductions in risk of obsolescence of stocks
- lower investment in plant space for stocks and production
- reductions in set-up costs and total manufacturing costs
- reduction in costs of waste and spoilage as a result of improved quality
- higher revenues as a result of responding faster to customers
- reductions in paperwork.

Exhibit 21.2 summarises the effects Hewlett-Packard reported after adopting JIT at several of its production plants.

Product-costing benefits of JIT

In reducing the need for materials handling, warehousing, inspection of supplies and other activities, JIT systems reduce overhead costs. JIT systems also facilitate the direct tracing of some costs that were formerly classified as overhead. For example, the use of manufacturing cells makes it easy to trace materials handling and machine operating costs to specific products or product families made in specific cells. These costs then become direct costs of those products. Also, the use of multiskilled workers in these cells allows the costs of set-up, minor maintenance and quality inspection to become easily traced, direct costs.

Exhibit 21.2 The effects of JIT production at Hewlett-Packard



Enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems

The success of a JIT system hinges on the speed of information flows from customers to manufacturers to suppliers. Information flows is a problem for large companies that have fragmented information systems (for sales, manufacturing and purchasing) spread over dozens of unlinked computer systems. The enterprise resources planning (ERP) system comprises a single database that collects data and feeds it into applications supporting all of a company's business activities. For example, using an ERP system, a salesperson can generate a contract for a customer in Germany, verify the customer's credit limits and place a production order. The system schedules manufacturing in, say, Brazil; requisitions materials from inventory, orders components from suppliers; and schedules shipment. It also credits sales commissions to the salesperson and records all the costing and financial accounting information.

ERP systems give low-level managers, workers, customers and suppliers access to operating information. This benefit, coupled with tight coordination across business function, enables ERP systems to rapidly shift manufacturing and distribution plans in response to changes in supply and

demand. Companies believe that an ERP system is essential to support JIT initiatives because of the effect it has on lead times. Using an ERP system, Autodesk, a maker of computer-aided design software, reduced order lead times from 2 weeks to 1 day; Fujitsu reduced lead times from 18 to 1.5 days. ERP systems also help in demand forecasting and materials requirements planning as part of their operations and logistics modules.

Although the tight coupling of systems throughout a business streamlines administrative and financial processes and saves costs, it can also make the system large and unwieldly. Because of its complexity, suppliers of ERP systems such as SAP, Sage, Microsoft dynamics and Oracle provide software packages that are standard, but that can be customised, although at some cost. In recent years, providers of ERP systems have increasingly been offering cloud-based products and providing the software as a service. Cloud-based products require less upfront investment and can be adapted more easily than previous generations of ERP systems, which required customers to purchase licences and to make hardware investments.

Concepts in action — How big data and machine learning helps with stock management

Big data and machine learning help firms increase profit through enhanced stock management. Companies analyse huge amounts of data in real time to identify patterns, correlations, and relationships that affect important stock decisions, such as when to order stock, how many items of stock to order, where to ship stock, and so on. Walmart, the globe's biggest retailer with sales in 2022 of $572.8 billion has one of the world's largest and most complex supply chains. Walmart CEO, Doug McMillon believes that: 'The internet of things, drones, delivery robots, 3D-printing and self-driving cars will allow retailers to further automate and optimize supply chains.'

The company uses drones in its massive warehouses to improve inventory management. Walmart has also created a standard way for suppliers to share data to create a rich database to improve customer experience, hone product selection, and offer more competitive pricing, especially online. For example, Walmart analyses information on about 1000 types of mint toothpaste to determine which three or four tubes to sell. Similar, high-quality data leads to more targeted customer recommendations. Data on previous films watched, lists of awards won, and other details about each film helps Walmart make accurate predictions and recommend a curated list of films a customer will enjoy. Big data also helps Walmart with online pricing decisions. If a competitor, for example, offers a pair of red running shoes for $199 while Walmart is selling a similar item for $239, Walmart mines detailed product descriptions of the two pairs of shoes within its big data ecosystem to match attributes, features, and quality to help decide whether to reprice the shoes. Walmart also is able to achieve sales through suggesting products to customers. The company leverages deep learning AI to explore hundreds of variables – size, type, brand, price, aggregate shopper data, individual customer preference, current inventory and more. Its substitution tool can deliver a product recommendation for substitution within seconds. The result is that customer acceptance of substitutions is over 95%.

IBM's Watson enables companies to harness the power of artificial intelligence and turn data into new ways of doing business. Walmart recognises that weather is a major determinant to what consumers buy, as well as where and when they do their shopping. Walmart uses data from Wilson on weather predictions to help determine supply chain availability and demand. Watson not only accesses weather data from disparate stations, but also uses news feeds and social media to create a picture of likely conditions.

Source: Praveen, K.B, Prateek, J., Kumar, P. Pragathi, G. (2020) Inventory Management Using Machine Learning, *International Journal of Engineering Research & Technology*, 9(6) (https://www.ijert.org/research/inventory-management-using-machine-learning-IJERTV9IS060661.pdf); Mixon, E. (2021) 'Walmart's new weapon in its fight against Amazon: Artificial Intelligence', AI Data & Analytics Network, 11 February (https://www.aidataanalytics.network/data-science-ai/articles/walmarts-new-weapon-in-its-fight-against-amazon-artificial-intelligence-ai).

Backflush costing

A unique production system such as JIT leads to its own unique costing system. Organising manufacturing in cells, reducing defects and manufacturing lead time and ensuring timely delivery of materials enables purchasing, production and sales to occur in quick succession with minimal

stocks. The absence of stocks makes choices about cost-flow assumptions (such as weighted-average or first-in, first-out) or stock costing methods (such as absorption or variable costing) unimportant – all manufacturing costs of a period flow directly into cost of goods sold. The rapid conversion of direct materials to finished goods that are immediately sold simplifies job costing.

Simplified normal or standard job costing

Traditional normal and standard costing systems (discussed in Chapters 3, 15 and 16) use **sequential tracking** (also called **synchronous tracking**), which is any product-costing method in which the accounting system entries occur in the same order as actual purchases and production. These traditional systems track costs sequentially as products pass from direct materials, to work in progress, to finished goods and finally to sales. Sequential tracking is often expensive, especially if management tries to track direct materials requisitions and labour time tickets to individual operations and products.

An alternative to the sequential tracking approach in many costing systems is to delay the recording of journal entries until after the physical sequences have occurred. The term **backflush costing** (also called **delayed costing**, **endpoint costing** or **post-deduct costing**) describes a costing system that delays recording changes in the status of a product being produced until good finished units appear; it then uses budgeted or standard costs to work backwards to flush out manufacturing costs for the units produced. An extreme form of such delay is to wait until sale of finished units has occurred. Typically, no record of work in progress appears in backflush costing.

In companies that adopt backflush costing, the following occurs:

1. Management wants a simple accounting system. Detailed tracking of direct costs through each step of the production system to the point of completion is deemed unnecessary.
2. Each product has a set of budgeted or standard costs.
3. Backflush-costing reports approximately the same financial results as sequential tracking would generate.

If stocks are low, managers may not believe it worthwhile to spend resources tracking costs through Work in Progress, Finished Goods and Cost of Goods Sold. Backflush costing, therefore, is especially attractive in companies that have low stocks resulting from JIT. Backflush costing and sequential tracking will also produce approximately the same results, however, when stock is present, provided stocks maintain stable values. Constant amounts of costs will be deferred in stock each period.

The following examples illustrate backflush costing. To underscore basic concepts, we assume no direct materials variances in any of the examples. (We do, however, discuss variances in a separate section following Example 21.1.) These examples differ in the number and placement of points at which journal entries are made in the accounting system to accumulate production costs of units (also called trigger points):

	Number of journal entry trigger points	Location of journal entry trigger points
Example 21.1	2	1 Purchase of direct materials (also called raw materials) 2 Completion of good finished units of product
Example 21.2	2	1 Purchase of raw materials 2 Sale of good finished units of product
Example 21.3	1	1 Completion of good finished units of product

Example 21.1

Trigger points are materials purchases and finished goods completion

This example uses two trigger points to illustrate how backflushing can eliminate the need for a separate Work in Progress account. A hypothetical company, Henley-on-Thames Computer (HTC), produces keyboards for personal computers. For April, there were no opening stocks of raw materials. Moreover, there is zero opening and closing work in progress.

HTC has only one direct manufacturing cost category (direct or raw materials) and one indirect manufacturing cost category (conversion costs). All labour costs at the manufacturing facility are included in conversion costs. From its bill of materials (description of the types and quantities of materials) and an operations list (description of operations to be undergone), HTC determines the April standard direct materials costs per keyboard unit of €19 and the standard conversion costs of €12. HTC has two stock accounts:

Type	Account title
Combined direct materials and any direct materials in work in progress	Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control
Finished goods	Finished Goods Control

Trigger point 1 occurs when materials are purchased. These costs are charged to Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control.

Actual conversion costs are recorded as incurred under backflush costing, just as in other costing systems and charged to Conversion Costs Control. Conversion costs are allocated to products at trigger point 2 – the transfer of units to Finished Goods. This example assumes that under- or overallocated conversion costs are written off to cost of goods sold monthly.

HTC takes the following steps when assigning costs to units sold and to stocks.

Step 1: Record the direct materials purchased during the accounting period

Assume April purchases of €1 950 000:

Entry (a) Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control	1 950 000	
Creditors Control		1 950 000

Step 2: Record the incurrence of conversion costs during the accounting period

Assume that conversion costs are €1 260 000:

Entry (b) Conversion Costs Control	1 260 000	
Various accounts (such as, Creditors Control and Wages Payable)		1 260 000

Step 3: Determine the number of finished units manufactured during the accounting period

Assume that 100 000 keyboard units were manufactured in April.

Step 4: Calculate the budgeted or standard costs of each finished unit

The standard cost is per unit.

Step 5: Record the cost of finished goods completed during the accounting period

In this case, 100 000 units 100 000 unit $\times$ €31 $=$ €3 100 000. This step gives backflush costing its name. Up to this point in the operations, the costs have not been recorded sequentially with the flow of product along its production route. Instead, the output trigger reaches back and pulls the standard costs of direct materials from Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control and the standard conversion costs for manufacturing the finished goods.

Entry (c) Finished Goods Control	3 100 000	
Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control		1 900 000
Conversion Costs Allocated		1 200 000

Step 6: Record the cost of goods sold during the accounting period

Assume that 99 000 units were sold in April (99 000 units × €31 = €3 069 000).

Entry (d) Cost of Goods Sold	3 069 000	
Finished Goods Control		3 069 000

Step 7: Record under- or overallocated conversion costs

Actual conversion costs may be under- or overallocated in any given accounting period. Chapter 11 discussed various ways to account for under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead costs. Many companies write-off underallocations or overallocations to cost of goods sold only at year-end; other companies, like HTC, do so monthly. Companies that use backflush costing typically have low stocks, so proration of under- or overallocated costs between finished goods and cost of goods sold is less often necessary. The journal entry for the €60 000 difference between actual conversion costs incurred and standard conversion costs allocated would be:

Entry (e) Conversion Costs Allocated	1 200 000	
Cost of Goods Sold	60 000	
Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000

The April closing stock balances are:

Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control	€50 000
Finished Goods, 1000 units × €31	31 000
Total stocks	€81 000

Exhibit 21.3, Panel A, summarises the journal entries for this example. Exhibit 21.4 provides an overview of this version of backflush costing. The elimination of the typical Work in Progress account reduces the amount of detail in the accounting system. Units on the production line may still be tracked in physical terms, but there is 'no attaching of costs' to specific work orders as they flow along the production cycle. In fact, there are no work orders or labour time tickets in the accounting system.

Exhibit 21.3 Journal entries in backflush costing (€)

Panel A: Example 21.1. Two trigger points – purchases of raw materials and finished units produced

Transactions

a	Purchases of raw materials	Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control	1 950 000	
		Creditors Control		1 950 000
b	Incur conversion costs	Conversion Costs Control	1 260 000	
		Various Accounts		1 260 000
c	Finished units produced	Finished Goods Control	3 100 000	
		Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control		1 900 000
		Conversion Costs Allocated		1 200 000
d	Finished units sold	Cost of Goods Sold	3 069 000	
		Finished Goods Control		3 069 000
e	Under- or overallocated conversion costs	Conversion Costs Allocated	1 200 000	
		Cost of Goods Sold	60 000	
		Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000

Exhibit 21.3 continued

Panel B: Example 22.2. Two trigger points – in purchases of raw materials and finished units sold

Transactions

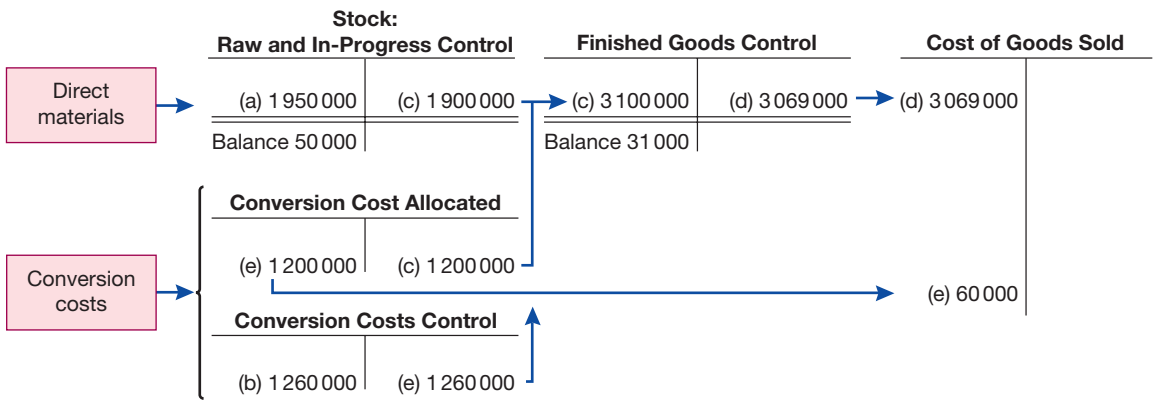
a	Purchases of raw materials	Stock Control	1 950 000	
		Creditors Control		1 950 000
b	Incur conversion costs	Conversion Costs Control	1 260 000	
		Various Accounts		1 260 000
c	Finished units produced		No entry	
d	Finished units sold	Cost of Goods Sold	3 069 000	
		Stock Control		1 881 000
		Conversion Costs Allocated		1 188 000
e	Under- or overallocated conversion costs	Conversion Costs Allocated	1 188 000	
		Cost of Goods Sold	72 000	
		Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000

Panel C: Example 21.3. One trigger point – finished units produced

Transactions

a	Purchases of raw materials		No entry	
b	Incur conversion costs	Conversion Costs Control	1 260 000	
		Various Account		1 260 000
c	Finished units produced	Finished Goods Control	3 100 000	
		Creditors Control		1 900 000
		Conversion Costs Allocated		1 200 000
d	Finished units sold	Cost of Goods Sold	3 069 000	
		Finished Goods Control		3 069 000
e	Under- or overallocated conversion costs	Conversion Costs Allocated	1 200 000	
		Cost of Goods Sold	60 000	
		Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000

Exhibit 21.4 Overview of backflush costing, Example 21.1



Accounting for variances

The accounting for variances between actual costs incurred and standard costs allowed and the disposition of variances is basically the same under all standard costing systems. The procedures are described in Chapters 15 and 16. In Example 21.1, suppose the direct materials purchased had an unfavourable price variance of €42 000. Entry (a) would then be:

Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control	1 950 000	
Raw Materials Price Variance	42 000	
Creditors Control		1 992 000

Example 21.2

Trigger points are materials purchases and finished goods sales

This example, also based on HTC and using the same data, presents a backflush-costing system that, relative to Example 21.1, is a more dramatic departure from a sequential tracking stock costing system. The first trigger point in this example is the same as the first trigger point in Example 21.1 (the purchase of direct materials), but the second trigger point is the sale – not the completed manufacture – of finished units. Toyota's cost accounting at its Burnaston (UK) plant is similar to this type of costing system. There are two justifications for this accounting system:

1. To remove the incentive for managers to produce for stock. If the value of finished goods stock includes conversion costs, managers can bolster operating profit by producing more units than are sold. Having trigger point 2 as the sale instead of the completion of production, however, reduces the attractiveness of producing for stock by recording conversion costs as period costs instead of capitalising them as inventoriable costs.
2. To increase managers' focus on selling units.

The stock account in this example is confined solely to direct materials (whether they are in storerooms, in process or in finished goods). There is only one stock account:

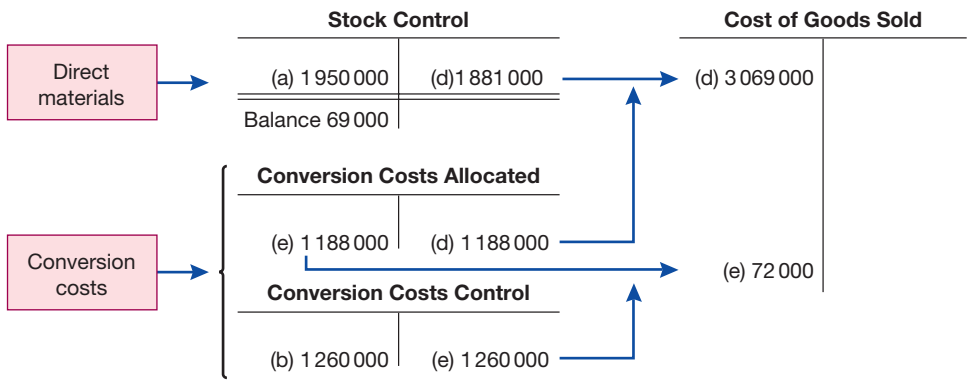
Type	Account title
Combined direct materials stock and any direct materials in work in progress and finished goods	Stock Control

Exhibit 21.3, Panel B, presents the journal entries in this case. Entry (a) is prompted by the same trigger point 1 as in Example 21.1, the purchase of direct materials. Entry (b) for the conversion costs incurred is recorded in an identical manner as in Example 21.1. Trigger point 2 is the sale of good finished units (not their production, as in Example 21.1), so there is no entry corresponding to entry (c) of Example 21.1. The cost of finished units is calculated only when finished units are sold (which corresponds to entry (d) of Example 21.1): 99 000 units sold × €31 = €3 069 000, consisting of direct materials (99 000 × €19 = €1 881 000) and conversion costs allocated (99 000 × €12 = €1 188 000).

No conversion costs are inventoried. That is, compared with Example 21.1, Example 21.2 does not attach €12 000 (€12 per unit × 1000 units) of conversion costs to finished goods stock. Hence, Example 21.2 allocates €12 000 less in conversion costs relative to Example 21.1. Of the €1 260 000 in conversion costs, €1 188 000 is allocated at standard cost to the units sold. The remaining €72 000 (€1 260 000 − €1 188 000) of conversion costs is underallocated. Entry (e) in Exhibit 21.3, Panel B, presents the journal entry if HTC, like many companies, writes off these underallocated costs monthly as additions to cost of goods sold.

The April ending balance of Stock Control is €69 000 (€50 000 direct materials still on hand + €19 000 direct materials embodied in the 1000 units manufactured but not sold during the period). Exhibit 21.5 provides an overview of this version of backflush costing. Entries are keyed to Exhibit 21.3, Panel B. The approach described in Example 21.2 closely approximates the costs calculated using sequential tracking when a company holds minimal work in progress and finished goods stocks because the approach in Example 21.2 does not maintain these stock accounts.

Exhibit 21.5 Overview of backflash costing, Example 21.2



Direct materials are often a large proportion of total manufacturing costs, sometimes over 60%. Consequently, many companies will at least measure the direct materials efficiency variance in total by physically comparing what remains in direct materials stock against what should be remaining, given the output of finished goods for the accounting period. In our example, suppose that such a comparison showed an unfavourable materials efficiency variance of €90 000. The journal entry would be:

Raw Materials Efficiency Variance	90 000	
Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control		90 000

The under- or overallocated manufacturing overhead costs may be split into various overhead variances (spending variance, efficiency variance and production-volume variance) as explained in Chapters 15 and 16.

Extending Example 21.3, backflush-costing systems could also use the sale of finished goods (instead of the production of finished goods) as the only trigger point. This version of backflush costing would be most suitable for a JIT production system with minimal direct materials, work-in-progress and finished goods stocks. Why? Because this backflush-costing system would maintain no stock accounts.

Special considerations in backflush costing

The accounting illustrated in Examples 21.1, 21.2 and 21.3 does not strictly adhere to generally accepted accounting principles of external reporting. For example, work in progress (an asset) exists but is not recognised in the accounting system. Advocates of backflush costing, however, cite the materiality concept in support of these versions of backflushing. They claim that if stocks are low or their total costs are not subject to significant change from one accounting period to the next, operating profit and stock costs developed in a backflush-costing system will not differ materially from the results generated by a system that adheres to generally accepted accounting principles.

Suppose material differences in operating profit and stocks do exist between the results of a backflush-costing system and those of a conventional standard costing system. An adjustment can be recorded to make the backflush numbers satisfy external reporting requirements. For example, the backflush entries in Example 21.2 would result in regarding all conversion costs as a part of Cost of Goods Sold (€1 188 000 at standard costs + €72 000 write-off of underallocated conversion costs = €1 260 000). But suppose conversion costs were regarded as sufficiently material in amount to be included in Stock Control. Then entry (d), closing the Conversion Costs accounts, would change as shown below.

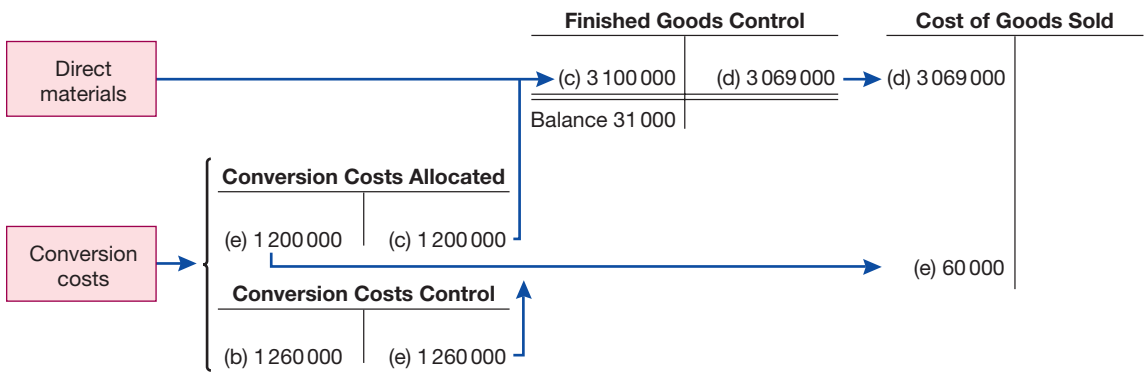
Example 21.3

Trigger point is finished goods completion

This example presents an extreme and simpler version of backflush costing. It has only one trigger point for making journal entries to stock. The trigger point is HTC's completion of finished units. Exhibit 21.3, Panel C, presents the journal entries in this case, using the same data as in Examples 21.1 and 21.2. Note that since the purchase of direct materials is not a trigger point, there is no entry corresponding to entry (a), purchases of direct materials. Exhibit 21.6 provides an overview of this version of backflush costing. Entries are keyed to Exhibit 21.3, Panel C.

Compare entry (c) in Exhibit 21.3, Panel C, with entries (a) and (c) in Exhibit 21.3, Panel A. The simpler version in Example 21.3 ignores the €1 950 000 purchases of direct materials (entry (a) of Example 21.1). At the end of April, €50 000 of direct materials purchased has not yet been placed into production (€1 950 000 − €1 900 000 = €50 000), nor has it been entered into the stock costing system. The Example 21.3 version of backflush costing is suitable for a JIT production system with virtually no direct materials stock and minimal work-in-progress stocks because Example 21.3 does not maintain these stock accounts. It is less feasible otherwise.

Exhibit 21.6 Overview of backflush costing, Example 21.3



Original entry (d) Conversion Costs Allocated	1 188 000	
Cost of Goods Sold	72 000	
Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000
Revised entry (d) Conversion Costs Allocated	1 188 000	
Stock Control (1000 units × €12)	12 000	
Cost of Goods Sold	60 000	
Conversion Costs Control		1 260 000

Criticisms of backflush-costing focus mainly on the absence of audit trails – the ability of the accounting system to pinpoint the uses of resources at each step of the production process. The absence of large amounts of materials and work-in-progress stock means that managers can keep track of operations by personal observations, computer monitoring and non-financial measures.

What are the implications of JIT and backflush-costing systems for activity-based costing (ABC) systems? Simplifying the production process, as in a JIT system, makes more of the costs direct and so reduces the extent of overhead cost allocations. Simplified ABC systems are often adequate for companies implementing JIT. But even these simpler ABC systems can enhance

backflush costing. Costs from ABC systems give more accurate budgeted conversion costs per unit for different products, which are then used in the backflush-costing system. The activity-based cost data are also useful for product costing, decision making and cost management.

Managing goods for sale in retail organisations

Accounting information can play a key role in **stock management**. This section illustrates the importance of accounting information in two areas:

1 the management of goods for sale in retail organisations;
2 the management of materials, work in progress and finished goods in organisations with manufacturing operations.

Stock management is of little concern in service companies since these companies hold minimal materials and stock.

Cost of goods sold measures the costs of stock sold, including the costs of purchasing and managing stock. Cost of goods sold constitutes the largest single cost item for most retailers.

Sales		100.0%
Less costs:		
Cost of goods sold	75.8%	
Selling, general and administration costs	19.7	
Other costs, interest and taxes	3.3	
Total costs		98.8
Net profit		1.2%

This means that better decisions regarding the purchasing and managing of goods for sale can cause dramatic percentage increases in net income.

Costs associated with goods for sale

The following cost categories are important when managing stocks and goods for sale.

1 **Purchasing costs** consist of the costs of goods acquired from suppliers including incoming freight or transportation costs. These costs usually make up the largest single cost category of goods for sale. Discounts for different purchase-order sizes and supplier credit terms affect purchasing costs.
2 **Ordering costs** consist of the costs of preparing and issuing a purchase order. Related to the number of purchase orders processed are special processing, receiving, inspection and payment costs.
3 **Carrying costs** arise when a business holds stocks of goods for sale. These costs include the opportunity cost of the investment tied up in stock (see Chapter 10) and the costs associated with storage, such as storage-space rental and insurance, obsolescence and spoilage.
4 **Stockout costs**. A stockout occurs when a company runs out of a particular item for which there is customer demand. A company may respond to the shortfall or stockout by expediting an order from a supplier. Expediting costs of a stockout include the additional ordering costs plus any associated transportation costs. Alternatively, the company may lose a sale owing to the stockout. In this case, stockout costs include the lost contribution margin on the sale plus any contribution margin lost on future sales hurt by customer ill-will caused by the stockout.
5 **Quality costs**. The quality of a product or service is its conformance with a pre-announced or pre-specified standard. As described in Chapter 20, four categories of costs of quality are often distinguished: (a) prevention costs, (b) appraisal costs, (c) internal failure costs and (d) external failure costs.

6 **Shrinkage costs** result from theft by outsiders, embezzlement by employees, and misclassification or misplacement of inventory. Shrinkage is measured by the difference between (a) the cost of stock recorded on the books (after correcting errors) and (b) the cost of stock when physically counted. Shrinkage can often be an important measure of management performance. Consider, for example, a grocery business, where operating income hovers around 2% of sales. With such small margins, it is easy to see why one of a store manager's prime responsibilities is controlling stock shrinkage. A £1000 increase in shrinkage will erase the operating income from sales of £50 000 (2% * £50 000 = £1000). Because shrinkage costs generally increase when a firm's stock increases, most firms try not to hold more stock than necessary.

The descriptions of the cost categories indicate that some of the relevant costs for making stock decisions and managing goods for sale are not available in existing accounting systems. Opportunity costs, which are not typically recorded in accounting systems, are an important component in several of these cost categories.

The inclusion of costs from all six categories makes cost of goods sold substantial. Advances in information-gathering technology, however, are attempting to increase the reliability and timeliness of stock data and reduce costs in these five categories. For example, electronic data interchange (EDI) links a company to its suppliers via computers. An order is often initiated by a single keystroke, increasing timeliness and reducing costs of ordering. Similarly, barcoding technology allows a scanner to capture purchases and sales of individual units. This creates an instantaneous record of stock movements and helps in the management of purchasing, carrying and stockout costs.

Economic order quantity decision model

The first major decision in managing goods for sale is deciding how much of a given product to order. The **economic order quantity (EOQ)** decision model calculates the optimal quantity of stock to order. The simplest version of this model incorporates only ordering costs and carrying costs into the calculation. It assumes the following:

1 The same fixed quantity is ordered at each reorder point.

2 Demand, ordering costs and carrying costs are certain. The **purchase-order lead time** – the time between the placement of an order and its delivery – is also certain.

3 Purchasing costs per unit are unaffected by the quantity ordered. This assumption makes purchasing costs irrelevant to determining EOQ, because purchasing costs of all units acquired will be the same, whatever the order size in which the units are ordered.

4 No stockouts occur. One justification for this assumption is that the costs of a stockout are prohibitively high. We assume that to avoid these potential costs, management always maintains adequate stock so that no stockout can occur.

5 In deciding the size of the purchase order, management considers the costs of quality only to the extent that these costs affect ordering costs or carrying costs.

Given these assumptions, EOQ analysis ignores purchasing costs, stockout costs and quality costs. To determine EOQ, we minimise the relevant ordering and carrying costs (those ordering and carrying costs that are affected by the quantity of stock ordered):

$$\text{Total relevant costs} = \text{Total relevant ordering costs} + \text{Total relevant carrying costs}$$

Exhibit 21.7 shows a graph analysis of the total annual relevant costs of ordering (DP/Q) and carrying stock ($QC/2$) under various order sizes (Q) and illustrates the trade-off between the two types of costs. The larger the order quantity, the higher the annual relevant carrying costs, but the lower the annual relevant ordering costs. *The total annual relevant costs are at a minimum where total relevant ordering costs and total relevant carrying costs are equal* (in the Headphone Galore example, each equals €2 600).

Example 21.4

Headphone Galore sells soundproof headphones to its customers; it also rents out premium headphones. It purchases each package of soundproof headphones from Sontek at €14 a package. Sontek pays all incoming freight. No incoming inspection is necessary, as Sontek has a superb reputation for delivering quality merchandise. Annual demand is 13 000 soundproof headphones at a rate of 250 per week. Headphone Galore requires a 15% annual return on investment. The purchase-order lead time is two weeks. The following cost data are available:

Relevant ordering costs per purchase order		€200.00
Relevant carrying costs per package per year:		
Required annual return on investment, 15% × €14	€2.10	
Relevant insurance, materials handling, breakage, etc., per year	3.10	
		5.20

What is the economic order quantity of soundproof headphones?

The formula underlying the EOQ model is:

$$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{\frac{2DP}{C}}$$

where:

EOQ = Economic order quantity
D = Demand in units for a specified time period (1 year in this example)
P = Relevant ordering costs per purchase order
C = Relevant carrying costs of 1 unit in stock for the time period used for D (1 year in this example).

The formula indicates that EOQ increases with demand and ordering costs and decreases with carrying costs.

We can use this formula to determine the EOQ for Headphone Galore as follows:

$$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 13\,000 \times €200}{€5.20}} = \sqrt{1000\,000} = 1\,000 \text{ packages}$$

Therefore, Headphone Galore should order 1000 tape packages each time to minimise total ordering and carrying costs.

The total annual relevant costs (TRC) for any order quantity Q can be calculated using the following formula:

$$TRC = \text{Total annual relevant ordering costs} + \text{Total annual relevant carrying costs}$$

$$= \begin{matrix}\text{Number of}\\ \text{purchase orders}\\ \text{per year}\end{matrix} \times \begin{matrix}\text{Relevant}\\ \text{ordering costs per}\\ \text{purchase order}\end{matrix} + \begin{matrix}\text{Average}\\ \text{stock}\\ \text{in units}\end{matrix} \times \begin{matrix}\text{Annual relevant}\\ \text{carrying costs of}\\ \text{1 unit for a year}\end{matrix}$$

$$= \frac{D}{Q} \times P + \frac{Q}{2} \times C$$

$$= \frac{DP}{Q} + \frac{QC}{2}$$

(Note that in this formula, Q can be any order quantity, not just the EOQ.)

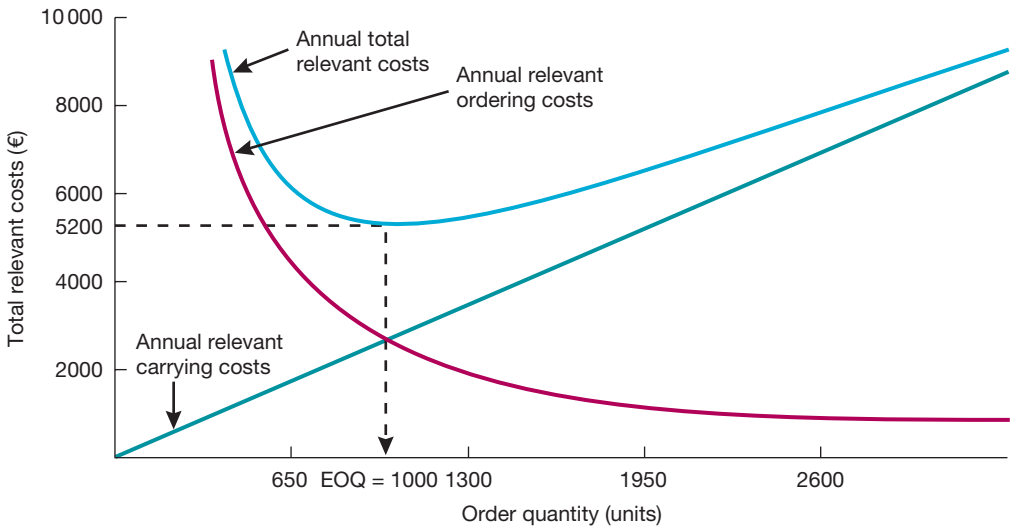
When Q 1000 units,

$$TRC = \frac{13\,000 \times €200}{1000} + \frac{1000 \times 5.20}{2} = €2600 + €2600 = €5200$$

The number of deliveries each time period (in our example, 1 year) is:

$$\frac{D}{\text{EOQ}} + \frac{13\,000}{1000} = 13 \text{ deliveries}$$

Exhibit 21.7 Ordering costs and carrying costs for Headphone Galore



When to order, assuming certainty

The second major decision in dealing with cost of goods for sale is when to order. The **reorder point** is the quantity level of the stock on hand that triggers a new order. The reorder point is simplest to calculate when both demand and lead time are certain:

$$\text{Reorder point} = \text{Number of units sold per unit of time} \times \text{Purchase-order lead time}$$

Consider our Headphone Galore example. We choose a week as the unit of time:

Economic order quantity	1000 packages
Number of units sold per week	250 packages
Purchase-order lead time	2 weeks

Thus,

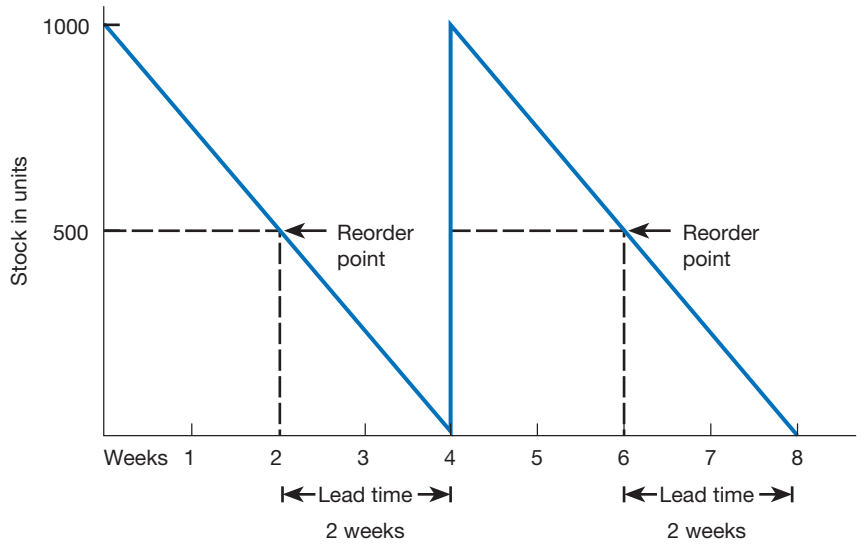
$$\begin{aligned}\text{Reorder point} &= \text{Number of units sold per unit of time} \times \text{Purchase-order lead time}\\ &= 250 \times 2\\ &= 500 \text{ packages}\end{aligned}$$

So, Headphone Galore will order 1000 packages of tapes each time its stock falls to 500 packages.

The graph in Exhibit 21.8 presents the behaviour of the stock level of headphone packages, assuming demand occurs uniformly throughout each week. If the purchase-order lead time is two weeks, a new order will be placed when the stock level reaches 500 packages so that the 1000 packages ordered are received at the time stock reaches zero.

This handy formula does not apply when the receipt of the order fails to increase stock to the reorder-point quantity (for example, when the lead time is three weeks and the order is a one-week supply). In these cases, orders will overlap.

Exhibit 21.8 Stock level of tape packages for Headphone Galore



Note: This exhibit assumes that demand and purchase-order lead time are certain:
Demand = 250 tape packages per week
Purchase-order lead time = 2 weeks

Safety stock

So far, we have assumed that demand and purchase-order lead time are certain. When retailers are uncertain about the demand, the lead time or the quantity that suppliers can provide, they often hold safety stock. **Safety stock** is stock held at all times regardless of stock ordered using EOQ. It is used as a buffer against unexpected increases in demand or lead time and unavailability of stock from suppliers. In our Headphone Galore example, expected demand is 250 packages per week, but the company's managers feel that a maximum demand of 400 packages per week may occur. If Headphone Galore's managers decide that the costs of stockout are prohibitive, they may decide to hold safety stock of 300 packages. This amount is the maximum excess demand of 150 packages per week for the two weeks of purchase-order lead time. The computation of safety stock hinges on demand forecasts. Managers will have some notion – usually based on experience – of the range of weekly demand.

A frequency distribution based on prior daily or weekly levels of demand provides data for computing the associated costs of maintaining safety stock. Assume that one of seven different levels of demand will occur over the two-week purchase-order lead time at Headphone Galore:

	Units						
Total demand for 2 weeks	200	300	400	500	600	700	800
Probability (sums to 1.00)	0.06	0.09	0.20	0.30	0.20	0.09	0.06

We see that 500 is the most likely level of demand for two weeks because it is assigned the highest probability of occurrence. We also see that there is a 0.35 probability that demand will be either 600, 700 or 800 packages ($0.20 + 0.09 + 0.06 = 0.35$).

If a customer calls Headphone Galore to buy headphones and the store has none in stock, it can 'rush' them to the customer at a cost to Headphone Galore of €4 per package. The relevant stockout costs in this case are €4 per package. The optimal safety stock level is the quantity of

safety stock that minimises the sum of the relevant annual stockout and carrying costs. Recall that the relevant carrying costs for Headphone Galore are €5.20 per unit per year.

Exhibit 21.9 presents the total annual relevant stockout and carrying costs when the reorder point is 500 units. We need only consider safety stock levels of 0, 100, 200 and 300 units, since demand will exceed the 500 units of stock available at reordering by 0 if demand is 500, by 100 if demand is 600, by 200 if demand is 700 and by 300 if demand is 800. The total annual relevant stockout and carrying costs would be minimised at €1352, when a safety stock of 200 packages is maintained. Think of the 200 units of safety stock as extra stock that Headphone Galore maintains. For example, Headphone Galore 's total stock of earphones at the time of reordering its EOQ of 1000 units would be 700 units (the reorder point of 500 units plus the safety stock of 200 units).

Exhibit 21.9 Computation of safety stock for Headphone Galore when reorder point is 500 units

Safety stock level in units (1)	Demand realisations resulting in stockouts (2)	Stockout in units* (3) = (2) − 500 − (1)	Probability of stockout (4)	Relevant stockout costs† (5) = (3) × €4	No. of orders per year‡ (6)	Expected stockout costs§ (7) = (4) × (5) × (6)	Relevant carrying costs# (8) = (12) × €5.20	Total relevant costs (9) = (72) + (8)
0	600	100	0.20	€400	13	€1040		
	700	200	0.09	800	13	936		
	800	300	0.06	1200	13	936		
						€2912	€0	€2912
100	700	100	0.09	400	13	€468		
	800	200	0.06	800	13	624		
						€1092	€520	€1612
200	800	100	0.06	400	13	€312	€1040	€1352
300	–	–	–	–	–	€0‖	€1560	€1560

* Realised demand – stock available during lead time (excluding safety stock), 500 units – safety stock.
† Stockout units × relevant stockout costs of €4.00 per unit.
‡ Annual demand 13 000 ÷ 1000 EOQ = 13 orders per year.
§ Probability of stockout × relevant stockout costs × number of orders per year.
# Safety stock × annual relevant carrying costs of €5.20 per unit (assumes that safety stock is on hand at all times and that there is no overstocking caused by decreases in expected usage).
‖ At a safety stock level of 300 units, no stockouts will occur and hence expected stockout costs = €0.

Challenges in estimating stock-related costs and their effects

Considerations in obtaining estimates of relevant costs

Obtaining accurate estimates of the cost parameters used in the EOQ decision model is a challenging task. For example, the relevant annual carrying costs of stock consist of *incremental or outlay costs* plus the *opportunity cost of capital*.

What are the relevant incremental costs of carrying stock? Only those costs that vary with the quantity of stock held – for example, insurance, property taxes, costs of obsolescence and costs of breakage. Consider the salaries paid to clerks, storekeepers and materials handlers. These costs are irrelevant if they are unaffected by changes in stock levels. Suppose, however, that as stocks decrease, these salary costs also decrease as the clerks, storekeepers and materials handlers are transferred to other activities or laid off. In this case, the salaries paid to these persons are relevant

incremental costs of carrying stock. Similarly, the costs of storage space owned that cannot be used for other profitable purposes as stocks decrease are irrelevant. But if the space has other profitable uses, or if rental cost is tied to the amount of space occupied, storage costs are relevant incremental costs of carrying stock.

What is the relevant opportunity cost of capital? It is the return forgone by investing capital in stock rather than elsewhere. It is calculated as the required rate of return multiplied by those costs per unit that vary with the number of units purchased and that are incurred at the time the units are received. (Examples of these costs per unit are purchase price, incoming freight and incoming inspection.) Opportunity costs are not calculated on investments, say, in buildings, if these investments are unaffected by changes in stock levels. In the case of stockouts, calculating the relevant opportunity costs requires an estimate of the lost contribution margin on that sale as well as on future sales hurt by customer ill-will resulting from the stockout.

Our discussion suggests that predicting relevant costs requires care and is difficult. Managers understand that their projections will seldom be flawless. This leads to the question: What is the cost of an incorrect prediction when actual relevant costs are different from the relevant predicted costs used for decision making?

Cost of a prediction error

Continuing our example, suppose Headphone Galore 's relevant ordering costs per purchase order are €242 instead of the predicted €200. We can calculate the cost of this prediction error with a three-step approach.

Step 1: Calculate the monetary outcome from the best action that could have been taken, given the actual amount of the cost input The appropriate inputs are $D = 13\,000$ units, $P = €242$ and $C = €5.20$. The economic order quantity size is:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2DP}{C}}$$

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 13\,000 \times €242}{€5.20}} = \sqrt{1\,210\,000}$$

$$= 1\,100 \text{ packages}$$

The total annual relevant costs when $EOQ = 1100$ is:

$$TRC = \frac{DP}{Q} + \frac{QC}{2}$$

$$= \frac{13\,000 \times €242}{1000} + \frac{11000 \times €5.20}{2}$$

$$= €286 + €2860$$

$$= €3146$$

Step 2: Calculate the monetary outcome from the best action based on the incorrect amount of the predicted cost input The planned action when the relevant ordering costs per purchase order are predicted to be €200 is to purchase 1000 packages in each order. The total annual relevant costs using this order quantity when $D = 13\,000$ units, $P = €242$ and $C = €5.20$ are:

$$TRC = \frac{13\,000 \times €242}{1000} + \frac{1000 \times €5.20}{2}$$

$$= €314.60 + €2600$$

$$= €2914.60$$

Step 3: Calculate the difference between the monetary outcomes from steps 1 and 2

	Monetary outcome
Step 1	€3146
Step 2	2914.60
Difference	(€231.40)

The cost of the prediction error is €231.40. Note that the total annual relevant costs curve in Exhibit 21.8 is relatively flat over the range of order quantities from 650 to 1300. An important feature of the EOQ model is that the *total relevant costs are rarely sensitive to minor variations in cost predictions*. The square root in the EOQ model reduces the sensitivity of the decision to errors in predicting its inputs.

Just-in-time purchasing

As described earlier in the chapter, organisations are giving increased attention to *just-in-time (JIT) purchasing* – the purchase of goods or materials such that a delivery immediately precedes demand or use. JIT purchasing requires organisations to restructure their relationship with suppliers and place smaller and more frequent purchase orders. We next explore the relationship between EOQ decision models and JIT purchasing.

Companies moving towards JIT purchasing argue that the full costs of carrying stocks (including stock storage space, spoilage and opportunity costs not recorded in the accounting system) have been dramatically underestimated in the past. At the same time, building close partnerships with suppliers and using electronic commerce systems for order-related activities significantly reduce ordering costs.

EOQ implications of JIT purchasing

Exhibit 21.10 analyses the sensitivity of Headphone Galore 's EOQ to illustrate the economics of smaller and more frequent purchase orders. The analysis presented in Exhibit 21.10 supports JIT purchasing – that is, having a smaller EOQ and placing orders more frequently – as relevant carrying costs increase and relevant ordering costs per purchase order decrease. One factor driving down ordering costs is the use of electronic links, such as the Internet, to place purchase orders. The cost of placing some orders on the Internet is estimated to be less than one-tenth – sometimes less than one-hundredth – of the cost of placing those orders by telephone, facsimile or post.

Exhibit 21.10 Sensitivity of EOQ to variations in relevant ordering and carrying costs for Headphone Galore*

Relevant carrying costs per package per year	Relevant ordering costs per purchase order			
	€200	€150	€100	€30
€5.20	EOQ = 1000	EOQ = 866	EOQ = 707	EOQ = 387
€7.00	862	746	609	334
€10.00	721	624	510	279
€15.00	589	510	416	228

* Assuming annual demand is always 13 000 packages.

Relevant benefits and relevant costs of JIT purchasing

The JIT purchasing model is not guided solely by the EOQ model. As discussed earlier, the EOQ model is designed to emphasise only the trade-off between carrying and ordering costs. Stock management extends beyond ordering and carrying costs to include purchasing costs, stockout costs and quality costs. The quality of materials and goods and timely deliveries are important motivations for using JIT purchasing and stockout costs are an important concern. We add these features as we move from the EOQ decision model to the JIT purchasing model.

Let us revisit the Headphone Galore example and consider the following information. Headphone Galore has recently established an internet business-to-business purchase-order link with Sontek. Headphone Galore triggers a purchase order for earpieces by a single computer entry. Payments are made electronically for batches of deliveries rather than for each individual delivery. These changes make ordering costs negligible. Headphone Galore is negotiating for Sontek to deliver 100 packages of headphones 130 times each year (five times every two weeks) instead of delivering 1000 packages 13 times each year as calculated in Exhibit 21.7. Sontek is willing to make these frequent deliveries, but it will tack on a small additional amount of €0.02 to the price per package. Headphone Galore's required return on investment remains 15%. Assume that relevant annual carrying costs of insurance, materials handling, breakage and so on remain at €3.10 per package per year.

Suppose that Headphone Galore incurs no stockout costs under its current purchasing policy because demand and purchase-order lead times over each four-week period are certain. Headphone Galore's major concern is that lower stock levels from implementing JIT purchasing will lead to more stockouts because demand variations and delays in supplying tapes are more likely to occur in the short intervals between supplies under JIT purchasing. Sontek assures Headphone Galore that its new manufacturing processes enable it to respond rapidly to changing demand patterns. Consequently, stockouts may not be a serious problem. Headphone Galore expects to incur stockout costs on 50 packages each year under a JIT purchasing policy. In the event of a stockout, Headphone Galore will have to rush-order packages at a cost of €4 per package. Should Headphone Galore implement JIT purchasing?

Exhibit 21.11 compares (1) the incremental costs Headphone Galore incurs when it purchases headphones from Sontek under its current purchasing policy, with (2) the incremental costs Headphone Galore would incur if Sontek supplied headphones under a JIT policy. The difference in the two incremental costs is the relevant savings of JIT purchasing. In other methods of comparing the two purchasing policies, the analysis would include only the relevant costs – those costs that differ between the two alternatives. Exhibit 21.11 shows a net cost savings of €1879.85 per year from shifting to a JIT purchasing policy.

Supplier evaluation and relevant costs of quality and timely deliveries

As we saw earlier, costs of quality and timely deliveries are particularly crucial in JIT purchasing environments. Defective materials and late deliveries often bring the whole plant to a halt, resulting in forgone contribution margin on lost sales. Companies that implement JIT purchasing choose their suppliers carefully and pay special attention to developing long-run supplier partnerships. Some suppliers are very cooperative with a business's attempts to adopt JIT purchasing. For example, Convent, which is one of the market leaders in Germany for savoury snack products, makes more frequent deliveries to retail outlets than does many of its competitors. The company's corporate strategy emphasises service to retailers and consistency, freshness and quality of the delivered product. Through a highly customised service, Convent offers its customers the possibility to maximise return on shelf-space – a major service strength.

When evaluating suppliers, companies have to pay special attention to quality costs of goods or materials (for example, incoming materials inspection costs, returns, scrap costs and rework costs); costs of late deliveries (expediting costs, idle time on machines and forgone contribution margin on lost sales); and costs of early deliveries (carrying costs).

Exhibit 21.11 Annual relevant costs of current purchasing policy and JIT purchasing policy for Headphone Galore

Relevant item	Incremental costs under current purchasing relevant item	Incremental costs under JIT purchasing policy
Purchasing costs		
€14 per unit × 13 000 units per year	€182 000.00	
€14.02 per unit × 13 000 units per year	€182 260.00	
Required return on investment		
15% per year × €14 cost per unit × 500* units of average stock per year	1 050.00	
15% per year × €14.02 cost per unit × 50† units of average stock per year		105.15
Outlay carrying costs (insurance, materials handling, breakage, and so on)		
€3.10 per unit per year × 500* units of average stock per year	1 550.00	
€3.10 per unit per year × 50† units of average stock per year		155.00
Stockout costs		
No stockouts	0	
€4 per unit × 50 units per year		200.00
Total annual relevant costs	€184 600.00	€182 720.15
Annual difference in favour of JIT purchasing	€1 879.85	

* Order quantity ÷ 2 = 1000 ÷ 2 = 500.
† Order quantity ÷ 2 = 100 ÷ 2 = 50.

What are the relevant costs when choosing suppliers? Consider again our Headphone Galore example. The Denton Corporation also supplies headphones. It offers to supply all of Headphone Galore's headphone needs at a price of €13.60 per package (less than Sontek's price of €14.02) under the same JIT delivery terms that Sontek offers. Denton proposes an internet purchase-order link identical to Sontek's that would make Headphone Galore's ordering costs negligible. Headphone Galore's relevant outlay carrying costs of insurance, materials handling, breakage and so on, per package per year, is €3.10 if it purchases headphones from Sontek and €3.00 if it purchases from Denton. Should Headphone Galore buy from Denton? Not before considering the relevant costs of quality and also the relevant costs of failing to deliver on time.

Headphone Galore has used Sontek in the past and knows that Sontek fully deserves its reputation for delivering quality merchandise on time. Headphone Galore does not, for example, find it necessary to inspect the headphone packages that Sontek supplies. Denton, however, does not enjoy so sterling a reputation for quality. Headphone Galore anticipates the following negative aspects of using Denton:

- Headphone Galore would incur additional inspection costs of €0.05 per package.
- Average stockouts of 360 packages each year would occur, largely resulting from late deliveries. Denton cannot rush-order tape packages to Headphone Galore on short notice. Headphone Galore anticipates lost contribution margin per unit of €8 from stockouts.

- Customers would probably return 2% of all packages sold owing to poor quality of the tapes. Headphone Galore estimates its additional costs to handle each returned package are €25.

Exhibit 21.12 presents the relevant costs of purchasing from Sontek and from Denton. Even though Denton is offering a lower price per package, the total relevant costs of purchasing goods from Sontek are lower by €4361.85 per year. Selling high-quality merchandise also has non-financial and qualitative benefits. For example, offering Sontek's high-quality headphones enhances Headphone Galore's reputation and increases customer goodwill, which may lead to higher future profitability.

Exhibit 21.12 Annual relevant costs of purchasing from Sontek and Denton

Relevant item	Incremental costs of purchasing from Sontek	Incremental costs of purchasing from Denton
Purchasing costs		
€14.02 per unit × 13 000 units per year	€182 260.00	
€13.60 per unit × 13 000 units per year		€176 800.00
Inspection costs		
No inspection necessary	0	
€0.05 per unit × 13 000 units		650.00
Required return on investment		
15% per year × €14.02 × 50* units of average stock per year	105.15	
15% per year × €13.60 × 50* units of average stock per year		102.00
Outlay carrying costs (insurance, materials handling, breakage, and so on)		
€3.10 per unit per year × 50* units of average stock per year	155.00	
€3.00 per unit per year × 50* units of average stock per year		150.00
Stockout costs		
€4 per unit × 50 units per year	200.00	
€8 per unit multi 360 units per year		2 880.00
Customer returns costs		
No customer returns	0	
€25 per unit returned × 2% × 13 000 units returned		6 500.00
Total annual relevant costs	€182 720.15	€187 082.00
Annual difference in favour of Sontek	€4 361.85	

* Order quantity ÷ 2 = 100 ÷ 2 = 50.

Stock costs and their management in manufacturing organisations

Managers in companies with manufacturing facilities face the challenging task of producing high-quality products at competitive cost levels. Numerous systems have been developed to help

managers plan and implement production and stock activities. Earlier, we described the two most basic types of system:

- *A just-in-time (JIT) production system,* a 'demand-pull' system under which products are manufactured only to satisfy a specific customer order.
- *A materials requirements planning (MRP) system,* a 'push-through' system that manufactures finished goods for stock on the basis of demand forecasts.

Companies implementing JIT production systems manage stocks by eliminating them. When stocks are present, the management accountant plays several important roles. First, the management accountant must maintain accurate and timely information pertaining to materials, work-in-progress and finished goods stocks. A second role of the management accountant consists of providing estimates of the costs of setting up each production run at a plant, the costs of downtime and the costs of holding stock. Costs of setting up the machine are analogous to ordering costs in the EOQ model. When the costs of setting up machines or sections of the production line are high (for example, as with a blast furnace in an integrated steel mill), processing larger batches of materials and incurring larger stock-carrying costs is the optimal approach because it reduces the number of times the machine must be set up. When set-up costs are small, processing smaller batches is optimal because it reduces carrying costs. Similarly, when the costs of downtime are high, there can be sizeable benefits from maintaining continuous production.

JIT production, quality and relevant costs

Early advocates of JIT production emphasised the benefits of lower carrying costs of stock. *An important benefit of lower stocks, however, is the heightened emphasis on eliminating the root causes of rework, scrap and waste and on reducing the manufacturing lead time of their products.* In computing the relevant benefits and relevant costs of reducing stocks in JIT production systems, the cost analyst must consider all benefits.

Consider the Hudson Corporation, a manufacturer of brass fittings. Hudson is considering implementing a JIT production system. Suppose that to implement JIT production, Hudson must incur €100 000 in annual tooling costs to reduce set-up times. Suppose further that JIT will reduce average stock by €500 000. Also, relevant costs of insurance, space, materials handling and set-up will decline by €30 000 per year. The company's required rate of return on stock investments is 10% per year. Should Hudson implement JIT? On the basis of the numbers provided, we would be tempted to say no. Why? Because annual relevant cost savings in carrying costs amount to €80 000 [(10% of €500 000) + €30 000], which is less than the additional annual tooling costs of €100 000.

Our analysis, however, has not considered other benefits of lower stocks in JIT production. For example, Hudson estimates that implementing JIT will reduce rework on 500 units each year, resulting in savings of €50 per unit. Also, better quality and faster delivery will allow Hudson to charge €2 more per unit on the 20 000 units that it sells each year. The annual relevant quality and delivery benefits from JIT and lower stock levels equal €65 000 (rework savings, €50 × 500 + additional contribution margin, €2 × 20 000). Total annual relevant benefits and cost savings equal €145 000 (80 000 + €65 000) which exceeds annual JIT implementation costs of €100 000. Therefore, Hudson should implement a JIT production system.

Performance measures and control in JIT production

To manage and reduce stocks, the management accountant must also design performance measures to evaluate and control JIT production. Examples of information the management accountant may use include:

- personal observation by production line workers and team leaders

- financial performance measures (such as stock turnover ratios) and variances based on standard materials costs and conversion costs
- non-financial performance measures of time, stock and quality, such as manufacturing lead time, units produced per hour and days stock on hand
- $\frac{\text{Total set-up time for machines}}{\text{Total manufacturing time}}$
- $\frac{\text{Number of units requiring rework or scrap}}{\text{Total number of units started and completed}}$

Personal observation and non-financial performance measures are the dominant methods of control. Why? Because they are the most timely, intuitive and easy-to-comprehend measures of plant performance. Rapid, meaningful feedback is critical because the lack of buffer stocks in a demand-pull system creates added urgency to detect and solve problems quickly.

Theory of constraints

We consider now problems which arise when products are made from multiple parts and processed on different machines. With multiple parts and multiple machines, dependencies arise among operations; some operations cannot be started until parts from a previous operation are available. Some operations are bottlenecks; others are not.

The **theory of constraints (TOC)** describes methods to maximise operating profit when faced with some bottleneck and some non-bottleneck operations. It defines three measurements:

1. **Throughput contribution**, equal to sales revenue minus direct materials costs.
2. Investments (stock), equal to the sum of materials costs of direct materials stock, work-in-progress stock and finished goods stock; R&D costs; and costs of equipment and buildings.
3. Operating costs, equal to all operating costs (other than direct materials) incurred to earn throughput contribution. Operating costs include salaries and wages, rent, utilities and depreciation.

The objective of TOC is to increase throughput contribution while decreasing investments and operating costs. *The theory of constraints considers short-run time horizons and assumes other current operating costs to be fixed costs.* The key steps in managing bottleneck resources are as follows:

- Step 1. Recognise that the bottleneck resource determines throughput contribution of the plant as a whole.
- Step 2. Search and find the bottleneck resource by identifying resources with large quantities of stock waiting to be worked on.
- Step 3. Keep the bottleneck operation busy and subordinate all non-bottleneck resources to the bottleneck resource. That is, the needs of the bottleneck resource determine the production schedule of non-bottleneck resources.

  Step 3 represents a key notion: to maximise overall contribution margin, the plant must maximise contribution margin (in this case, throughput contribution) of the constrained or bottleneck resource. For this reason, step 3 suggests that the bottleneck machine always be kept running, not waiting for jobs. To achieve this, companies often maintain a small buffer stock of jobs waiting for the bottleneck machine. The bottleneck machine sets the pace for all non-bottleneck machines. That is, the output at the non-bottleneck operations are tied or linked to the needs of the bottleneck machine. For example, workers at non-bottleneck machines are not motivated to improve their productivity if the additional output cannot be processed by the bottleneck machine. Producing more non-bottleneck output only creates excess stock; it does not increase throughput contribution.

- Step 4. Take actions to increase bottleneck efficiency and capacity – the objective is to increase throughput contribution minus the incremental costs of taking such actions. The management accountant plays a key role in step 4 by calculating throughput contribution, identifying relevant and irrelevant costs and doing a cost–benefit analysis of alternative actions to increase bottleneck efficiency and capacity.

We illustrate step 4 using the example of Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs AG. Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs manufactures car doors in two operations: stamping and pressing. Additional information is as follows:

	Stamping	Pressing
Capacity per hour	20 units	15 units
Annual capacity (6000 hours of capacity available in each of stamping and pressing)	120 000 units	90 000 units
Annual production	90 000 units	90 000 units
Fixed operating costs (excluding direct materials)	€720 000	€1 080 000
Fixed operating costs per unit produced (€720 000 ÷ 90 000; €1 080 000 ÷ 90 000)	€8 per unit	€12 per unit

Each door sells for €100 and has direct materials costs of €40. Variable costs in other functions of the value chain – R&D, design of products and processes, marketing, distribution and customer service – are negligible. Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs' output is constrained by the capacity of 90 000 units at the pressing operation. What can Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs do to relieve the bottleneck constraint at the pressing operation?

1. *Eliminate idle time* (time when the pressing machine is neither being set-up to process products nor actually processing products) at the bottleneck operation. Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs is considering permanently positioning two workers at the pressing operation. Their sole responsibility would be to unload finished units as soon as one batch of units is processed and to set up the machine to process the next batch. Suppose the annual cost of this action is €48 000 and the effect of this action is to increase bottleneck output by 1000 units per year. Should Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs incur the additional costs? Yes, because Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs' relevant throughput contribution increases by €60 000 [1000 units × (selling price, €100 – direct materials costs, €40)], which exceeds the additional cost of €48 000. All other costs are irrelevant.
2. *Process only those parts or products that increase sales and throughput contribution,* not parts or products that remain in finished goods or spare parts stock. Manufacturing products that sit in stock does not increase throughput contribution.
3. *Shift products that do not have to be made on the bottleneck machine to non-bottleneck machines or to outside facilities.* Suppose Kontrol, AG, an outside contractor, offers to press 1500 doors at €15 per door from direct materials that Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs supplies. Kontrol's quoted price is greater than Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs' own operating costs in the Pressing Department of €12 per door. Should Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs accept the offer? Yes, because pressing is the bottleneck operation. Getting additional doors pressed from outside increases throughput contribution by €90 000 [€100 – €40) × 1500 doors], while relevant costs increase by €22 500 (€15 × 1500). The fact that Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs' unit cost is less than Kontrol's quoted price is irrelevant.

   Suppose Ahrens AG, another outside contractor, offers to stamp 2000 doors from direct materials that Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs supplies at €6 per door. Ahrens' price is lower than Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs' operating cost of €8 per door in the Stamping Department. Should Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs accept the offer? Since other operating costs are fixed

costs, Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs will not save any costs by subcontracting the stamping operations. Total costs will be greater by €12 000 (€6 × 2000) under the subcontracting alternative. Stamping more doors will not increase throughput contribution, which is constrained by pressing capacity. Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs should not accept Ahrens' offer.

4 *Reduce set-up time and processing time at bottleneck operations* (for example, by simplifying the design or reducing the number of parts in the product). Suppose Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs can reduce set-up time at the pressing operation by incurring additional costs of €55 000 a year. Suppose further that reducing set-up time enables Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs to press 2500 more doors a year. Should Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs incur the costs to reduce set-up time? Yes, because throughput contribution increases by €150 000 [(€100 − €40) × 2500], which exceeds the additional costs incurred of €55 000. Will Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs find it worthwhile to incur costs to reduce machining time at the stamping operation? No. Other operating costs will increase, but throughput contribution will remain unaffected. Throughput contribution increases only by increasing bottleneck output; increasing non-bottleneck output has no effect.

5 *Improve the quality of parts or products manufactured at the bottleneck operation*. Poor quality is often more costly at a bottleneck operation than it is at a non-bottleneck operation. The cost of poor quality at a non-bottleneck operation is the cost of materials wasted. If Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs produces 1000 defective doors at the stamping operation, the cost of poor quality is €40 000 (direct materials cost per unit, €40 × 1000 doors). No throughput contribution is forgone because stamping has excess capacity. Despite the defective production, stamping can produce and transfer 90 000 doors to the pressing operation. At a bottleneck operation, the cost of poor quality is the cost of materials wasted plus the opportunity cost of lost throughput contribution. Bottleneck capacity not wasted in producing defective units could be used to generate additional sales and throughput contribution. If Hussermann-Plattenvertriebs produces 1000 defective units at the pressing operation, the cost of poor quality is €100 000: direct materials cost of €40 000 (direct materials cost per unit, €40 × 1000 units) plus forgone throughput contribution of €60 000 [(€100 − €40) × 1000 doors].

The high costs of poor quality at the bottleneck operation mean that bottleneck time should not be wasted processing units that are defective. That is, inspection should be done before processing parts at the bottleneck to ensure that only good-quality units are transferred to the bottleneck operation. Also, quality-improvement programmes should focus on ensuring that bottlenecks produce minimal defects.

The theory of constraints emphasises the management of bottlenecks as the key to improving the performance of the system as a whole. It focuses on the short-run maximisation of throughput contribution – revenues minus materials costs. It is less useful for the long-run management of costs because it does not model the behaviour of costs or identify individual activities and cost drivers. By contrast, activity-based costing (ABC) systems take a longer-term perspective by attempting to eliminate non-value-added activities and to reduce the costs of performing value-added activities. The theory of constraints is in this respect complementary to ABC systems (Holmes, 1995).

Balanced scorecards and time-based measures

We want to assess the impact of tracking changes in time-based measures, evaluate and learn whether these changes affect financial performance, and modify decisions and plans to achieve corporate goals. We use the structure of the balanced scorecard perspectives – financial, customer, internal business processes, and learning and growth – which we discussed in Chapter 20 to

summarise how financial and non-financial measures of time relate to one another, reduce delays, and increase the output of bottleneck operations.

Financial measures:
Revenue gains or price increases from fewer delays
Carrying cost of inventories
Customer measures:
Customer-response time (the time it takes to fulfil a customer order)
On-time performance (delivering a product or service by the scheduled time)
Internal-business-process measures:
Average manufacturing time for key products
Manufacturing cycle efficiency for key processes
Defective units produced at bottleneck operations
Average reduction in set-up time and processing time at bottleneck operations
Learning-and-growth measures:
Employee satisfaction
Number of employees trained to manage bottlenecks

To see the cause-and-effect linkages across these balanced scorecard perspectives, consider the example of Brexit Gems, a designer and manufacturer of equipment for the jewellery industry. A key financial measure is to achieve a higher profit margin on a specific product line. In the customer-measure category, the company sets a goal of a 2-day turnaround time on all orders for the product. To achieve this goal, an internal business-process measure requires a bottleneck machine to be operated 22 hours per day, 6 days a week. Finally, in the learning-and-growth measures category, the company trains new employees to carry out non-bottleneck operations to free experienced employees to operate the bottleneck machine. Brexit Gems's emphasis on time-related measures in its balanced scorecard has allowed the company to substantially increase manufacturing throughput and decrease customer-response times, leading to higher revenues and increased profits. Managers use both financial and non-financial measures to manage the performance of their firms along the time dimension. Non-financial measures help managers evaluate how well they have done on goals such as improving manufacturing cycle times and customer-response times. Revenue and cost measures help managers evaluate the financial effects of increases or decreases in non-financial measures, such as manufacturing cycle time and customer-response times.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Just-in-time production systems take a 'demand-pull' approach in which each component on a production line is produced immediately as needed by the next step in the production line to directly satisfy customer orders.

2 The five major features of a JIT production system are (a) organising production in manufacturing cells, (b) employing and training multiskilled workers, (c) emphasising total quality management, (d) reducing manufacturing lead time and set-up time, and (e) building strong supplier relationships.

3 Journal entries in a backflush-costing system are not made sequentially to match the flow of a product in a plant. Rather, some or all journal entries relating to the cycle from purchase of direct materials to the sale of finished goods are delayed.

4 The economic order quantity (EOQ) decision model calculates the optimal quantity of stock to order. The larger the order quantity, the higher the annual carrying costs and the lower the annual ordering costs. The EOQ model includes those transactions routinely recorded in the accounting system and opportunity costs not routinely recorded.

5 The reorder point is the quantity level of stock that triggers a new order. It equals the sales per unit of time multiplied by the purchase-order lead time. Safety stock is the buffer stock held as a cushion against unexpected unavailability of stock from suppliers.

6 Just-in-time (JIT) purchasing is the purchase of goods or materials such that delivery immediately precedes demand or use. EOQ models support smaller and more frequent purchase orders (as in JIT purchasing) as relevant carrying costs increase and relevant ordering costs per order decrease.

7 A relevant cost–benefit analysis of JIT purchasing includes relevant costs of purchasing, carrying stock, ordering and stockout, quality-related costs of inspection and customer returns and lost contribution margins due to late deliveries. The relevant benefits and relevant costs of JIT production include relevant costs of set-up and carrying stock, better quality and faster delivery.

8 The three main measurements in the theory of constraints are *throughput contribution* (equal to sales minus direct materials costs); *investments or stock* (equal to the sum of materials costs of direct materials stock, work-in-progress stock and finished goods stock, R&D costs and costs of equipment and buildings); and *operating costs* (equal to all operating costs other than direct materials costs incurred to earn throughput contribution).

9 The four steps in managing bottlenecks are (a) to recognise that the bottleneck operation determines throughput contribution, (b) to search for and find the bottleneck, (c) to keep the bottleneck busy and subordinate all non-bottleneck operations to the bottleneck operation and (d) to increase bottleneck efficiency and capacity.

10 The balanced scorecard can be used to track changes in time-based measures, evaluate and learn whether these changes affect financial performance, and modify decisions.

References and further reading

Bhimani, A. and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (Oxford: CIMA).

Hansen, A. and Mouritsen, J. (2007) 'Management accounting and changing operations management', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens, *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall), pp. 3–26.

Holmes, J.S. (1995) 'ABC vs TOC: it's a matter of time', *Management Accounting*, January, pp. 37–40.

CHAPTER 21

Assessment material

Review questions

21.1 Distinguish a demand-pull from a push-through system.

21.2 List five major features of JIT production systems.

21.3 Describe how JIT systems affect product costing.

21.4 Companies adopting backflush costing often meet three conditions. Describe these three conditions.

21.5 Outline how three different versions of backflush costing can differ.

21.6 What assumptions are made when using the simplest version of the economic order quantity (EOQ) decision model?

21.7 Give examples of costs included in annual carrying costs of stock when using the EOQ decision model.

21.8 Give two reasons why waiting lines and delays occur.

21.9 'Companies should always make and sell all products whose selling prices exceed variable costs.' Do you agree? Explain.

21.10 Describe the three main measures used in the theory of constraints.

Exercises

Basic level

***21.11 Backflush costing and JIT production** (20 minutes)

Papadopoulou SA manufactures electrical meters. For August, there were no opening stocks of direct (raw) materials and no opening and closing work in progress. Papadopoulou uses a JIT production system and backflush costing with two trigger points for making entries in the accounting system:

a Purchase of direct materials debited to Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control

b Completion of good finished units of product debited to Finished Goods Control at standard costs.

Papadopoulou's August standard costs per unit are direct materials, €25; conversion costs, €20. The following data apply to August manufacturing:

Direct (raw) materials purchased	€550 000
Conversion costs incurred	€440 000
Number of finished units manufactured	21 000
Number of finished units sold	20 000

Required

1 Prepare summary journal entries for August (without disposing of under- or overallocated conversion costs). Assume no direct materials variances.

2 Post the entries in requirement 1 to the following T-accounts if applicable: Stock Control, Conversion Costs Control, Conversion Costs Allocated and Cost of Goods Sold.

21.12 Backflush, second trigger is sale (20 minutes)

Assume the same facts as in Exercise 21.11. Assume that the second trigger point for Papadopoulou is the sale – rather than the production – of finished units. Also, the Stock Control account is confined solely to direct materials, whether these materials are in a storeroom, in work in progress or in finished goods. No conversion costs are 'inventoried'. They are allocated at standard cost to the units sold. Any under- or overallocated conversion costs are written off monthly to Cost of Goods Sold.

Required

1 Prepare summary journal entries for August, including the disposition of under- or overallocated conversion costs. Assume no direct materials variances.

2 Post the entries in requirement 1 to the following T-accounts if applicable: Stock Control, Conversion Costs Control, Conversion Costs Allocated and Cost of Goods Sold.

21.13 Backflush, one trigger point (20 minutes)

Assume the same facts as in Exercise 21.11. Now assume that there is only one trigger point, the completion of good finished units of product, which are debited to Finished Goods Control at standard costs. Any under- or overallocated conversion costs are written off monthly to cost of goods sold.

Required

1 Prepare summary journal entries for August, including the disposition of under- or overallocated conversion costs. Assume no direct materials variances.

2 Post the entries in requirement 1 to the following T-accounts if applicable: Stock Control, Conversion Costs Control, Conversion Costs Allocated and Cost of Goods Sold.

21.14 EOQ for a retailer (15 minutes)

Kari-Klær AS buys and sells fabrics to a wide range of industrial and consumer users. One of the products it carries is denim cloth, used in the manufacture of jeans and carrying bags. The supplier for the denim cloth pays all incoming freight. No incoming inspection of the denim is necessary because the supplier has a track record of delivering high-quality merchandise. The purchasing officer of Kari-Klær has collected the following information:

Annual demand for denim cloth	20 000 metres
Ordering costs per purchase order	€160
Carrying costs per year	20% of purchase cost
Safety stock requirements	None
Cost of denim cloth	€8 per metre

The purchasing lead time is two weeks. Kari-Klær is open 250 days a year (50 weeks for 5 days a week).

Required

1 Calculate the EOQ for denim cloth.
2 Calculate the number of orders that will be placed each year.
3 Calculate the reorder point for denim cloth.

21.15 EOQ for manufacturer (20 minutes)

Keep-Kool makes air conditioners. It purchases 12 000 units of a particular type of compressor part, CU29, each year at a cost of £50 per unit. Keep-Kool requires a 12% annual return on investment. In addition, relevant carrying costs (for insurance, materials handling, breakage and so on) are £2 per unit per year. Relevant costs per purchase order are £120.

Required

1 Calculate Keep-Kool's EOQ for CU29.
2 Calculate Keep-Kool's total ordering and carrying costs using EOQ.
3 Assume that demand is uniform throughout the year and is known with certainty. The purchasing lead time is half a month. Calculate Keep-Kool's reorder point for CU29.

21.16 Choosing suppliers for JIT purchasing (30 minutes)

Arjun Manraj runs a print shop. Manraj requires 100 000 boxes of printing paper each year. He wants his suppliers to deliver the boxes on a JIT basis in order quantities of 400 boxes. Papyrus Ltd currently supplies the paper to Manraj. Papyrus charges £100 per box and has a superb reputation for quality and timely delivery. Manraj reports the following revenue and cost information for a typical print job:

Sales	£100 000
Costs of printing paper (£100 per box × 400 boxes)	40 000
Other direct materials (ink, etc.)	2 000
Variable printing costs (other than materials)	3 000
Fixed printing costs	25 000
Variable marketing and distribution overhead	1 000
Fixed marketing and distribution overhead	12 000

Suffolk Leaves Ltd has approached Manraj with a proposal to supply all 100 000 boxes to Manraj at a price of £95 a box. The savings in purchase costs are substantial and Manraj is tempted to accept Suffolk Leaves's offer, but before doing so, Manraj decides to check on Suffolk Leaves's reputation for quality and timely delivery. The information Manraj gathers is not all positive. Manraj estimates that late deliveries from Suffolk Leaves would lead to his incurring overtime and subcontracting costs of £30 000 per job on ten jobs during the coming year. Manraj also recognises that Suffolk Leaves's paper quality is not uniformly high and ink sometimes smudges after printing. Manraj expects that smudging would occur on five jobs during the year. Manraj would then have to buy paper in the open market at £110 per box and rerun the job. Manraj does not expect both delivery problems and quality problems to occur on the same jobs. Manraj requires a rate of return of 15% per year on investments in stock.

Required

1 Calculate changes costs if he purchases paper from (a) Papyrus and (b) Suffolk Leaves. Which supplier should Manraj choose only on the basis of the financial numbers given in the problem?
2 What other factors should Manraj consider before choosing a supplier?

21.17 Stock management, ethics (CMA, adapted) (20 minutes)

Range-Tout SARL builds and distributes industrial storage racks using a just-in-time system and maintaining minimal stocks. Range-Tout's earnings increased sharply in 2021 and earnings-based bonuses were paid to the management staff for the first time in several years. Nathalie Carotte,

Range-Tout's president, wants earnings to continue growing, even to the point that the 2022 bonuses would be double those of 2021.

Albert Capus, Range-Tout's vice-president of finance, met with Boris Carême of Génie du Bois SA, a primary vendor of Range-Tout's manufacturing supplies and equipment. Capus asked Carême to invoice all of Range-Tout's 2022 purchases (€2 million in equipment and €3 million in supplies) as equipment. The reason Capus gave for his request was that Range-Tout's president had imposed stringent budget constraints on operating costs but not on capital expenditures. Carême agreed to do as Capus asked. Range-Tout expenses all supplies purchases immediately. It depreciates equipment on a straight-line basis over 10 years, assuming a zero disposal price.

While analysing the second-quarter financial statements, Jules Ballès, Range-Tout's financial controller, noticed that only equipment and no supplies had been purchased from Génie du Bois. Ballès, who reported to Capus, immediately brought this matter to Capus's attention. Capus told Ballès of President Carotte's high expectations and of the arrangement made with Boris Carême of Génie du Bois. Ballès requested that he be allowed to correct the accounts and urged that the arrangement with Génie du Bois be discontinued. Capus refused and told Ballès not to become involved in the Génie du Bois arrangement.

After thinking about the matter for a while, Ballès arranged to meet with Nathalie Carotte and he disclosed the arrangement Capus had made with Génie du Bois.

Required

1 Calculate the effect on Range-Tout's 2022 operating profit of showing supplies purchased in 2022 as equipment purchases. Do you agree with Jules Ballès, Range-Tout's financial controller, that the supplies purchased from Génie du Bois SA were accounted for improperly? Explain your answer.

2 Refer to the discussion of professional ethics in the appendix to Chapter 1. Explain why the use of the alternative accounting method to manipulate reported earnings is unethical.

3 Without prejudice to your answers to requirements 1 and 2, assume that Albert Capus's arrangement with Génie du Bois SA is not ethical in a professional sense. Discuss whether Ballès's actions were appropriate.

21.18 Theory of constraints, throughput contribution, relevant costs (15 minutes)

Salamanca SA manufactures filing cabinets in two operations: machining and finishing. Additional information is as follows.

	Machining	Finishing
Annual capacity	100 000 units	80 000 units
Annual production	80 000 units	80 000 units
Fixed operating costs (excluding direct materials)	€640 000	€400 000
Fixed operating costs per unit produced (€640 000 ÷ 80 000; €400 000 ÷ 80 000)	€8 per unit	€5 per unit

Each cabinet sells for €72 and has direct materials costs of €32 incurred at the start of the machining operation. Salamanca has no other variable costs. Salamanca can sell whatever output it produces. The following requirements refer only to the preceding data; there is no connection between the situations.

Required

1 Salamanca is considering using some modern jigs and tools in the finishing operation that would increase annual finishing output by 1000 units. The annual cost of these jigs and tools is €30 000. Should Salamanca acquire these tools?

2 The production manager of the Machining Department has submitted a proposal to do faster set-ups that would increase the annual capacity of the Machining Department by 10 000 units and cost €5000 per year. Should Salamanca implement the change?

21.19 Theory of constraints, throughput contribution, relevant costs (15 minutes)

Refer to the information in Exercise 21.18 in answering the following requirements; there is no connection between the situations.

Required

1 An outside contractor offers to do the finishing operation for 12 000 units at €10 per unit, double the €5 per unit that it costs Salamanca to do the finishing in-house. Should Salamanca accept the subcontractor's offer?

2 The Hunt Corporation offers to machine 4000 units at €4 per unit, half the €8 per unit that it costs Salamanca to do the machining in-house. Should Salamanca accept the subcontractor's offer?

*21.20 Theory of constraints, throughput contribution, quality (15 minutes)

Refer to the information in Exercise 21.18 in answering the following requirements; there is no connection between the situations.

Required

1 Salamanca produces 2000 defective units at the machining operation. What is the cost to Salamanca of the defective items produced? Explain your answer briefly.

2 Salamanca produces 2000 defective units at the finishing operation. What is the cost to Salamanca of the defective items produced? Explain your answer briefly.

Intermediate level

21.21 Backflush journal entries and JIT production (15–20 minutes)

Krügsmann AG has a plant that manufactures transistor radios. The production time is only a few minutes per unit. The company uses a just-in-time production system and a backflush-costing system with two trigger points for journal entries:

- Purchase of direct (raw) materials
- Completion of good finished units of product.

There are no opening stocks. The following data pertain to April manufacturing:

Direct (raw) materials purchased	€8 800 000
Direct (raw) materials used	8 500 000
Conversion costs incurred	4 220 000
Allocation of conversion costs	4 000 000
Costs transferred to finished goods	12 500 000
Cost of goods sold	11 900 000

Required

1 Prepare summary journal entries for April (without disposing of under- or overallocated conversion costs). Assume no direct materials variances.

2 Post the entries in requirement 1 to the following T-accounts if applicable: Stock Control, Conversion Costs Control, Conversion Costs Allocated and Cost of Goods Sold.

3 Under an ideal JIT production system, how would the amounts in your journal entries differ from those in requirement 1?

21.22 JIT purchasing, choosing suppliers (20–25 minutes)

Grano BV and Henco BV manufacture fairly similar remote-controlled toy cars. Sido BV, a retailer of children's toys, expects to buy and sell 4000 of these cars each year. Both Grano and Henco can supply all of Sido's needs and Sido prefers to use only one supplier for these cars. An electronic link will make ordering costs negligible for either supplier. Sido wants 80 cars delivered 50 times each year. Sido obtains the following additional information.

	Grano	Henco
Purchase price of the car	€50	€49
Relevant incremental carrying costs of insurance, materials handling, breakage, etc., per car per year	€11	€10
Expected number of stockouts per year resulting from late deliveries	20 cars	150 cars
Stockout costs per car	€25	€26
Expected number of cars sold that will be returned owing to quality and other problems	40 cars	140 cars
Additional costs to Sido of handling each returned car	€21	€21
Inspection costs per delivery	€20	€28

Sido requires a rate of return of 15% per year on investments in stock.

Required

1 Which supplier should Sido choose? Show all calculations.

2 What other factors should Sido consider before choosing a supplier?

21.23 JIT production, relevant benefits, relevant costs (20 minutes)

Turun Telelaitos Oy manufactures cordless telephones. Turun Telelaitos is planning to implement a JIT production system, which requires annual tooling costs of €150 000. Turun Telelaitos estimates that the following annual benefits would arise from JIT production.

a Average stock will decline by €700 000, from €900 000 to €200 000.

b Insurance, space, materials handling and set-up costs, which currently total €200 000, would decline by 30%.

c The emphasis on quality inherent in JIT systems would reduce rework costs by 20%. Turun Telelaitos currently incurs €350 000 on rework.

d Better quality would enable Turun Telelaitos to raise the prices of its products by €3 per unit. Turun Telelaitos sells 30 000 units each year.

Turun Telelaitos's required rate of return on stock investment is 12% per year.

Required

1 Calculate the net benefit or cost to Turun Telelaitos from implementing a JIT production system.

2 What other non-financial and qualitative factors should Turun Telelaitos consider before deciding on whether it should implement a JIT system?

21.24 Just-in-time systems, ethics (30 minutes)

Anna de Noailles, the plant manager at Electro-Sons, calls Pauline Eluard, the plant controller, into her office. She had just finished reviewing Eluard's report on the financial benefits from implementing JIT. The report described the following annual benefits and costs.

	First year after implementation	Subsequent years
Annual expected benefits from:		
Lower investment in stocks	€290 000	€350 000
Reductions in set-up costs	110 000	150 000
Reduction in costs of waste, spoilage and rework	200 000	250 000
Operating profit from higher sales as a result of responding faster to customers	180 000	300 000
Annual expected costs of implementing JIT	950 000	750 000

'We have been working on getting organised for JIT for almost a year now. Some of the financial benefits you have calculated seem optimistic to me. I don't think we are quite there yet, but if you continue to use the financial numbers you have, we would be forced to implement JIT sooner than we should. Please look over the numbers and see what you can do. I think some of the numbers are rather soft anyway. I also understand that plant profitability might take a hit in the year JIT is first implemented. I retire next year and I don't want to go out with a losing record.' Eluard is quite certain that her numbers are correct. She is also aware that Noailles would lose most of her performance bonuses if plant earnings decrease next year. It does not seem fair to her that Noailles should be penalised in the short term for what is in the long-run interest of the company.

Required

1. On the basis of Eluard's report, calculate the effect of JIT implementation on plant profitability in the first year after implementation and in subsequent years. On the basis of Eluard's report, should Electro-Sons implement JIT?
2. Is Noailles correct in characterising some of the financial benefits as 'soft'? Which items do you think she is referring to? If the benefits you identify as 'soft' are not realised, should Electro-Sons implement JIT?
3. Is Noailles being unfairly penalised if she implements JIT? What should Noailles do? What should Eluard do?

21.25 Effect of different order quantities on ordering costs and carrying costs, EOQ (30 minutes)

Rève Andalou retails a broad line of Spanish merchandise at its Mont-St-Michel store. It sells 26 000 Juanita linen bedroom packages (two sheets and two pillow cases) each year. Rève Andalou pays Juanita, SA, €104 per package. Its ordering costs per purchase order are €72. The carrying costs per package are €10.40 per year.

Simone Voirbeau, manager of the Mont-St-Michel store, seeks your advice on how ordering costs and carrying costs vary with different order quantities. Juanita, SA, guarantees the €104 purchase cost per package for the 26 000 units budgeted to be purchased in the coming year.

Required

1. Calculate the annual ordering costs, the annual carrying costs and their sum for purchase-order quantities of 300, 500, 600, 700 and 900, using the formulae described in this chapter. What is the economic order quantity? Comment on your results.
2. Assume that Juanita SA introduces a computerised ordering network for its customers. Simone Voirbeau estimates that Rève Andalou's ordering costs will be reduced to €40 per purchase order. How will this reduction in ordering costs affect the EOQ for Rève Andalou on their linen bedroom packages?

21.26 JIT production, operating efficiency (30 minutes)

Mannklein AG is a major manufacturer of metal-cutting machines. It has plants in Frankfurt and Stuttgart. The managers of these two plants have different manufacturing philosophies.

Liisa Kurunmäki, the recently appointed manager of the Frankfurt plant, is a convert to JIT production and had fully implemented JIT by January 2022.

Thomas Ahrens, manager of the Stuttgart plant, has adopted a wait-and-see approach to JIT. He commented to Kurunmäki : 'In my time, I have forgotten more manufacturing acronyms than you have read about in your five-year career. In two years' time, JIT will join the manufacturing buzzword scrapheap.' Ahrens continues with his 'well-honed' traditional approach to manufacturing at the Stuttgart plant.

Summary operating data for the two plants in 2022 are as follows:

	January–March	April–June	July–September	October–December
Manufacturing lead time (days)				
Frankfurt	9.2	8.7	7.4	6.2
Stuttgart	8.3	8.2	8.4	8.1
Total set-up time for machines / Total production time				
Frankfurt	52.1%	49.6%	43.8%	39.2%
Stuttgart	47.6	48.1	46.7	47.5
Number of units requiring rework / Total number of units started and completed				
Frankfurt	64.7%	59.6%	52.1%	35.6%
Stuttgart	53.8	56.2	51.6	52.7

Required

1 What are the key features of JIT production?

2 Compare the operating performance of the Frankfurt and Stuttgart plants in 2022. Comment on any differences you observe.

3 Kurunmäki is concerned about the level of detail on the job-cost records for the cutting machines manufactured at the Frankfurt plant during 2022. What reasons might lead Kurunmäki to simplify the job-cost records?

*21.27 Backflushing (35–40 minutes)

The following conversation occurred between Nicos Stavrou, plant manager at Sarantis Engineering, and Thanasis Bakogiorgos, plant controller. Sarantis manufactures automotive component parts such as gears and crankshafts for automobile manufacturers. Stavrou has been very enthusiastic about implementing JIT and about simplifying and streamlining the production and other business processes.

Stavrou: Thanasis, I would like to substantially simplify our accounting in the new JIT environment. Can't we just record one accounting entry at the time we ship products to our customers? I don't want our staff to be spending time tracking stock from one stage to the next, when we have as little stock as we do.

Bakogiorgos: Nicos, I think you are right about simplifying the accounting, but we still have a fair amount of raw material and finished goods stock that varies from period to period depending on the demand for specific products. Doing away with all stock accounting may be a problem.

Stavrou: Well, you know my desire to simplify, simplify, simplify. I know that there are some costs of oversimplifying, but I believe that, in the long run, simplification pays big dividends. Why don't you and your staff study the issues involved and I will put it on the agenda for our next senior plant management meeting?

Required

1 What backflush-costing method would you recommend that Bakogiorgos adopt? Remember Stavrou's desire to simplify the accounting as much as possible. Develop support for your recommendation.

2 Think about the three examples of backflush costing described in this chapter. These examples differ with respect to the number and types of trigger point used. Suppose your goal of implementing backflush costing is to simplify the accounting, but only if it closely matches the sequential tracking approach. Which backflush-costing method would you propose if:

   a Sarantis had no raw materials or work-in-progress stocks but did have finished goods stock?
   b Sarantis had no work-in-progress or finished goods stocks but did have raw material stock?
   c Sarantis had no raw material, work-in-progress or finished goods stocks?

3 Backflush costing has its critics. In an article in the magazine *Management Accounting*, entitled 'Beware the new accounting myths', R. Calvasina, E. Calvasina and G. Calvasina state:

   The periodic (backflush) system has never been reflective of the reporting needs of a manufacturing system. In the highly standardised operating environments of the present JIT era, the appropriate system to be used is a perpetual accounting system based on an up-to-date, realistic set of standard costs. For management accountants to backflush on an actual cost basis is to return to the days of the outdoor privy.

Comment on this statement.

21.28 Stock issues (From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005) (25 minutes)

Jane plc purchases its requirements for component RB at a price of £80 per unit. Its annual usage of component RB is 8760 units. The annual holding cost of one unit of component RB is 5% of its purchase price and the cost of placing an order is £12.50.

Required

1 Calculate the economic order quantity (to the nearest unit) for component RB.

2 Assuming that usage of component RB is constant throughout the year (365 days) and that the lead time from placing an order to its receipt is 21 days, calculate the stock level (in units) at which an order should be placed.

3 a Explain the terms 'stockout' and 'buffer stock'.
   b Briefly describe the circumstances in which Jane plc should consider having a buffer stock of component RB.

***21.29 Theory of constraints, throughput contribution, relevant costs** (20 minutes)

Autronic AG manufactures electronic testing equipment. Autronic also installs the equipment at the customer's site and ensures that it functions smoothly. Additional information on the Manufacturing and Installation Departments is as follows (capacities are expressed in terms of the number of units of equipment):

	Equipment manufactured	Equipment installed
Annual capacity	400 units per year	300 units per year
Equipment manufactured and installed	300 units per year	300 units per year

Autronic manufactures only 300 units per year because the Installation Department has only enough capacity to install 300 units. The equipment sells for €40 000 per unit (installed) and has direct materials costs of €15 000. All costs other than direct materials costs are fixed. The following requirements refer only to the preceding data; there is no connection between the situations.

Required

1. Autronic's engineers have found a way to reduce equipment manufacturing time. The new method would cost an additional €50 per unit and would allow Autronic to manufacture 20 additional units a year. Should Autronic implement the new method?
2. Autronic's designers have proposed a change in the direct materials that would increase direct materials costs by €2000 per unit. This change would enable Autronic to install 320 units of equipment each year. If Autronic makes the change, it will implement the new design on all equipment sold. Should Autronic use the new design?
3. A new installation technique has been developed that will enable Autronic's engineers to install 10 additional units of equipment a year. The new method will increase installation costs by €50 000 each year. Should Autronic implement the new technique?
4. Autronic is considering how to motivate workers to improve their productivity (output per hour). One proposal is to evaluate and compensate workers in the Manufacturing and Installation Departments on the basis of their productivities. Do you think the new proposal is a good idea? Explain briefly.

21.30 Theory of constraints, throughput contribution, quality, relevant costs (30–40 minutes)

Lappalainen Oy manufactures pharmaceutical products in two departments: Mixing and Tablet Making. Additional information on the two departments follows. Each tablet contains 0.5 gram of direct materials.

	Mixing	Tablet Making
Capacity per hour	150 grams	200 tablets
Monthly capacity (2000 hours available in each of Mixing and Tablet Making)	300 000 grams	400 000 tablets
Monthly production	200 000 grams	390 000 tablets
Fixed operating costs (excluding direct materials)	€16 000	€39 000
Fixed operating costs per tablet (€16 000 ÷ 200 000; €39 000 ÷ 390 000)	€0.08 per gram	€0.10 per tablet

The Mixing Department makes 200 000 grams of direct materials mixture (enough to make 400 000 tablets) because the Tablet-Making Department has only enough capacity to process 400 000 tablets. All direct materials costs are incurred in the Mixing Department. Lappalainen incurs €156 000 in direct materials costs. The Tablet-Making Department manufactures only 390 000 tablets from the 200 000 grams of mixture processed; 2.5% of the direct materials mixture is lost in the tablet-making process. Each tablet sells for €1. All costs other than direct materials costs are fixed costs. The following requirements refer only to the preceding data; there is no connection between the situations.

Required

1. An outside contractor makes the following offer: if Lappalainen will supply the contractor with 10 000 grams of mixture, the contractor will manufacture 19500 tablets for Lappalainen (allowing for the normal 2.5% loss during the tablet-making process) at €0.12 per tablet. Should Lappalainen accept the contractor's offer?

2 Another firm offers to prepare 20 000 grams of mixture per month from direct materials Lappalainen supplies. The company will charge €0.07 per gram of mixture. Should Lappalainen accept the company's offer?

3 Lappalainen's engineers have devised a method that would improve quality in the tabletmaking operation. They estimate that the 10 000 tablets currently being lost would be saved. The modification would cost €7000 a month. Should Lappalainen implement the new method?

4 Suppose that Lappalainen also loses 10 000 grams of mixture in its mixing operation. These losses can be reduced to zero if the company is willing to spend €9000 per month on quality improvement methods. Should Lappalainen adopt the quality-improvement method?

5 What are the benefits of improving quality at the mixing operation compared with the benefits of improving quality at the tablet-making operation?

21.31 Sloan Moving Ltd transports household goods from one city to another within the UK. It measures quality of service in terms of (1) time required to transport goods, (2) on-time delivery (within 2 days of agreed-upon delivery date), and (3) number of lost or damaged items. Sloan is considering investing in a new scheduling-and tracking system costing £160 000 per year, which should help it to improve performance for items (2) and (3). The following information describes Sloan's current performance and the expected performance if the new system is implemented:

	Current	Expected
On-time delivery performance	85%	95%
Variable cost per carton lost or damaged	£60	£60
Number of cartons lost or damaged per year	3000	1000

Sloan expects each percentage point increase in on-time performance to increase revenue by £20 000 per year. Sloan's contribution margin percentage is 45%.

Required

1 Should Sloan acquire the new system? Show your calculations.

2 Sloan is very confident about the cost savings from fewer lost or damaged cartons as a result of introducing the new system but unsure about the increase in revenues. Calculate the minimum amount of increase in revenues needed to make it worthwhile for Sloan to invest in the new system.

Advanced level

***21.32 EOQ, cost of prediction error** (30–45 minutes)

Ronald van Hooijdonk is the owner of a truck repair shop. He uses an EOQ model for each of his truck parts. He initially predicts the annual demand for heavy-duty tyres to be 2000. Each tyre has a purchase price of €50. The incremental ordering costs per purchase order are €40. The incremental carrying costs per year are €4 per unit plus 10% of the supplier's purchase price.

Required

1 Calculate the EOQ for heavy-duty tyres, along with the sum of annual relevant ordering costs and carrying costs.

2 Suppose van Hooijdonk is correct in all his predictions except the purchase price. (He ignored a new law that abolished tariff duties on imported heavy-duty tyres, which led to lower prices from foreign competitors.) If he had predicted events correctly, he would have foreseen that the purchase price would drop to €30 at the beginning of the year and then remain unchanged throughout the year. What is the cost of the prediction error?

CHAPTER 22

Emerging issues: digitalisation and sustainability

A pervasive theme of this book is that accounting usage within organisations is affected by many interacting factors including managerial behaviour, technological changes, competitive forces and wider stakeholder concerns with enterprise reporting issues. Just as we find that firms tend to calculate and use different costs for different purposes, so different organisations need to design their management accounting systems in different ways. In the first four parts of the book, we covered approaches to management accounting which tie in with enterprises' operational processes and we saw in Chapters 20 and 21 that particular product group and business unit strategies can be aligned with specific management accounting approaches. We turn now to two key emerging issues affecting the management accounting function. Many managers today have become aware that the digital transformation of enterprises and sustainability issues impact the accounting information needs of decision makers. We discuss here these two themes and how they are influencing management accounting information and work.

Learning objectives

After studying this chapter, you should be able to:

- Understand why digitalisation is changing data and affecting management accounting
- Consider ways in which digital technologies such as artificial intelligence, machine learning, blockchain and the Internet of Things require some firms to operate differently from traditional industrial enterprises
- Explain what leads digitally advanced firms to have different accounting information needs
- Be familiar with the digitalised enterprise control loop
- Understand sustainability issues and basic principles of environmental management accounting
- Understand that management accountants should always consider the enterprise context before engaging in change and must prioritise expertise and communication skillsets.

Digitalisation is changing data

Most organisations have invested in internet technologies and resources to extend their consumer reach and enhance their operational processes. These technologies are quickly reshaping existing markets, creating new economic spaces and altering the face of consumerism and business practices. Further, it has become clear that the rising use of user-driven online services and novel digital technologies has a significant impact on the management of organisational activities and corporate pursuits. Consequently, management accounting practitioners are forced to rethink how their work can adapt to the ongoing changes affecting enterprises. Most firms recognise that strategic, technological and cost management issues are commingled and cannot be thought of in simple linear terms where strategy determines the technology to be used which in turn, tells us the right form of accounting to produce. Similarly, a technique like activity-based costing allows us to think more clearly about organisational processes that drive costs in industrial companies but new digital technologies have changed many financial relationships we have traditionally taken for granted. As an example, in some firms, costs to service consumers are not entirely related to how revenue are generated. This has altered price-setting strategies as well as how costs are to be managed. Quality costing is also being rethought in some organisations, where the relationships between voluntary and non-voluntary quality costs have become more complex with consumers playing a greater role in designing products before consuming those products. So the environment in which management accountants operate are becoming more complex and demanding altered approaches to their work.

Advances in digital technologies and data analysis combined with the plummeting cost of information production and retrieval and the falling cost of hardware are making it easier for data about consumer actions and desires to be considered. Long ago, firms in competitive markets determined the products they would produce and sell and customers would influence market prices by shopping around. But today, customers can impact both prices and play a role in the actual design of products. Many digital businesses enable consumers to be 'price makers' and 'product makers'. Social websites such as Zomato, Tik Tok, YouTube and Wikipedia allow consumers to create the products they consume. Some firms encourage the co-innovation of physical products, where consumers and producers come together as 'prosumers' (Phade, 2018). In these contexts, management accountants must carefully engage with other organisational functions to seek new ways of adding value, insight and business intelligence.

Digital technologies and innovations will continue to deeply impact the world of management accounting in large part due to the growth of data (Bhimani and Willcocks, 2014). More than 90% of the data in the world was generated only over the last two years. The proliferation of mobile devices, applications and operating systems continues to alter how we work, what we work on, where we work and what we work with. As noted in Chapter 1, some major technologies producing data include mobile technologies, social media, cloud computing and the Internet of Things (IoT).

So why is data so important? It's because data impacts action and lives. Data that is collected and processed effectively can help organisations. The right choices can assist a firm to reduce costs and enhance revenues. As we have seen in earlier chapters, data helps the performance of individuals and processes to be tracked. Very significantly, data assists enterprises in identifying effective strategies. These are naturally all tasks associated with the work of management accountants. But of specific significance is that data forms are changing and therefore so must the expertise of management accountants.

Take for instance the data produced by IoTs. The physical world now embeds information collection capacity via such sensors where everything is becoming connected to everything else and ultimately everyone. IoTs can be thought of as the billions of physical devices around the world that are now connected to the Internet, all collecting and sharing data. Connecting things by adding ID tags that are part of IoT sensors proffers digital intelligence to devices enabling them to communicate real-time data without involving humans. As an AICPA/CGMA report (2020) notes,

IoT allows: '. . . objects to communicate or to relay data for remote monitoring. This data can be monetised by providing advisory or maintenance services. It can also be used to trigger automatic spare-part orders or to adjust machines to improve efficiency or prevent problems. In effect, this allows machines to get work done without human intervention.' IoT also moves the world toward the merging of the digital and the physical. This presents the accountant with opportunities to integrate different sources and forms of data into their practices.

Most of this data that organisations collect, store, create and manage today is unstructured, and the deployment of this data, which was near impossible in the recent past, now provides companies with new forms of business intelligence, more informed decision making and greater speed of service. The rise of 'big data' is altering the premise on which accounting information provision is based. New possibilities are emerging continuously for organisations to alter the speed of their operations, the flexibility of their decision making, their strategic positioning and how they use accounting information to achieve their objectives. And there are many ways in which data processing alters the dynamics of information costs. As such, the cloud has enabled enterprises to store, access and share resources at lower costs and with much greater ease, economy and flexibility. These are all factors the accountant must be familiar with.

It is of note that what firms and consumers do that trigger economic transactions has always shaped what executives want from accounting information systems. But now it is not just economic transactions which managers want to know about. There is a shift taking place in information design structures with enterprises now placing value on data that had previously not been thought of as having decision-making relevance. It is the case that for instance, a customer making online searches and collecting product information, leaves a trail of information disclosures about choice and actions prior to the purchase being made (or not being made). This 'data exhaust', if effectively captured and analysed, can help organisations to understand how customers search, how they reach a purchase point (or change their mind about making a purchase) and what path dependencies exist in purchase decisions. Bing as a search engine, learns from every search process carried out by users and generates greater search value as the magnitude of prior searches grows. Rakuten gathers information from online customer behaviour irrespective of whether a purchase is made. EBay monitors buyer and seller activities even if no bidding transactions are carried out. Such information gathered in massive amounts has portentive value. The data can be converted into insights that are *predictive*. For instance, the marketing strategy adopted can be customised around the actions exhibited by potential customers at an aggregate level. Data that are non-economic and not financially recorded as transactions and that arise from data exhaust, offer the many possibilities for extending management accounting systems output and assist decision makers in ways not harnessed in the past. As such, management accountants can directly play into making an enterprise more competitive by virtue of the data it is able to process and derive insights from.

In addition to assessing and delineating insights and trends from the analysis of exhaust data, the use of artificial intelligence (AI) technologies is altering the value of data further. In particular, machine learning (ML), with a machine's ability to continuously improve its own performance without human intervention, is adding to what can be gleaned from information processing. Information flows within and across machines enables action that bypasses the need for human input. Consumers ordinarily search for information before making choices. But AI systems enable the right information to find the right consumer. Consequently, vast amounts of data portend patterns in people's search behaviours and offer possibilities for delivering more relevant information specific to the needs of those who can act on it. As more information is delivered to those who need it, more actions result from the information which in turn produce more data of further relevance. Individuals' use of digital devices enable AI technologies to become increasingly more refined, producing greater consumer benefits from a more customised experience.

As explained above, a new paradigm of business has thus emerged where the information takes itself to the consumer before the consumer searches for it. The effects of AI are being extended into manufacturing, retailing, transportation, finance, health care, law, advertising, insurance, entertainment, education, and virtually every other industry transforming their core processes

and business models. Some experts believe that 'over the next decade, AI won't replace managers, but managers who use AI will replace those who don't' (Brynjolfsson and McAfee, 2017).

In what other ways will the work of management accountants alter? We discussed Porter's framework for thinking about strategy in Chapter 20. In relation to the digitalisation of business models, Porter considers that many companies which have invested heavily in internet-based business processes have ignored strategy at their peril. He believes that such companies have undermined the structure of their industries, hastened competitive convergence and reduced the likelihood that they or anyone else will gain a competitive advantage. However, Porter's arguments which have been useful to many industrial economy firms may not always find direct application in digitally transformed enterprises. The internet and digital technologies which underlie new business models have brought new challenges to linking corporate strategy to management controls. Digitally advanced companies need to think about pricing issues, cost-volume-profit parameters, quality and throughput factors and cost management concerns in a new light.

As digital technologies see advances, analytical methods as inputs to decision making will find refinement and drive new roles for cost management and financial control. More widely sourced data is already altering corporate strategy and operational action bringing them closer together. Developing the ability to apply data analysis techniques in response to the digital transformation of organisations has become an essential part of management accounting.

Digital technologies are changing accounting

It has been predicted that accountants and auditors face a 94% risk of job loss or change due to automation, data intelligence and technological advances (Brook, 2018). In fact, 29% of all automation in business is currently taking place within accountancy (Quiros, 2021). Traditionally, accounting has assisted managers with decisions that help achieve targeted financial returns and effective cost management. Executives ask, through the eyes of accounting information, certain key questions such as:

- Is the business creating value?
- Is it creating as much value as it set out to?
- Is it using the fewest resources to generate the most value possible?

Accounting's role in this respect is unlikely to alter for most companies for some time. Even enterprises that make extensive use of digital technologies have to address the above questions. However, at present, the ongoing pace of technological change is triggering important disruptions in business models and some accounting information requirements are, as a consequence, altering. In this chapter, when we refer to **digitally advanced companies**, we mean those which adopt a range of digital technologies, including cloud, online channels, big data/analytics, Internet of Things, P2P models, blockchain structures, artificial intelligence and machine learning and diffuse them across their organisational structure to support mission critical applications and processes (Bhimani, 2021). This is because the financial circuitry of digitally advanced companies differs from that of conventional industrial era enterprises and necessitates additional new accounting and control requirements to ensure that decisions and enterprise control needs are met.

What is the impact of digitalisation on accounting work? The landscape of accountancy is rapidly shifting. Generally, it is widely held that some human element will always be essential to management accounting even as AI takes hold of more tasks undertaken by the finance function in enterprises. Computers take less and less time to unravel patterns from large volumes of data processed but actioning many decisions requires skills that machines do not yet exhibit. Some refer to these as soft skills including communication, emotional empathy, teamwork and leadership

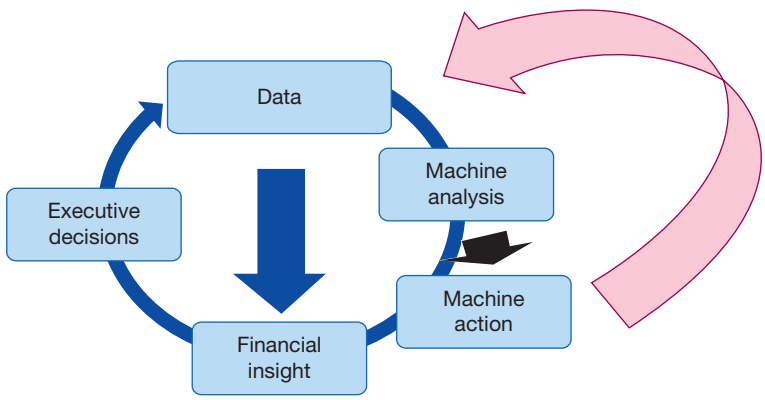
dimensions. The World Economic Forum's *Jobs of the Future 2020* report suggests the rising importance of skills such as critical thinking, active learning, resilience, stress tolerance and flexibility. Three effects in play as explained above are:

1 Data is both *structured and unstructured* so moving from just a focus on past economic transactions toward *predictive* analytics is essential.
2 More decisions are made by *machines*.
3 Information systems and products are increasingly *integrated*.

The impact of these changes is affecting accounting work. Ordinarily the accountant is focused on converting raw historical economic data into financial information thought to be useful to decision makers. But unstructured real time data also holds decision-making power and can no longer be ignored by accountants. Moreover, as machines engage in more decision making, there is a lesser need for financial information to be converted from data into information readable by humans. This is because specific formatting is not required by machines which process raw data sets into ready actionable decisions. Moreover, as both humans and machines make decisions that create more data, machines learn faster from the generated data compared to humans and their capacity to make decisions evolves faster (see Exhibit 22.1). The work of accountants is thus set to change with differing data sets and skillsets becoming more valuable than others (Bhimani, 2021).

The application of management accounting techniques we have considered in earlier chapters in the book still applies but some alterations will be essential for most organisations. Firms that make heavy use of digital technologies require specific financial and non-financial metrics to help them manage the business and to monitor activities and they usually need also to communicate information to their lenders and investors which differs from traditional financial information provision. Investors will want to see economic and operational targets being met, especially by early digitalised market players to obtain some level of assurance that the enterprise is performing well across a range of variables. In digitally advanced companies, financial and non-financial information of the right type drive value creation. But what factors differentiate these firms leading them to find more traditional accounting information and practices insufficient or appropriate? We discuss three below and then explain the form of accounting that is more appropriate for such enterprises.

Exhibit 22.1 Who makes executive decisions?



Experimentation

At the heart of technological change lies disruption which is driven by experimentation. Where a firm utilises advanced automation technologies that are not used by anyone else in the market, the firm will face no competition and, because of this, it will have to create its own future in real time to explore ways in which its viability and growth can be ensured. This necessitates continuous experimentation. Once a disruptive company starts to operate successfully and grows in a previously non-existent market, competitors will want to enter that market. And once this happens, such a firm and its new competitors will all have to react quickly to competitive challenges while remaining proactive and innovative. Experimentation with the product, the market, the selling platform, the user experience, and so on, becomes a must for digitally advanced firms in the absence or presence of competition. Ongoing needs for specific financial and non-financial information provide assurance to the extent possible that these enterprises offer value and remain effective, on track and innovative.

Digitally advanced firms are not like traditional organisations where resources are evaluated in terms of what is needed to serve a market segment for a product which has a known value. No such certainty exists in fast-evolving technology environments, where there is constant evolution of the product-market fit. A firm may need to test out a new website feature, it may want to explore building relationships with influencers, it may search out altered product angles, it may put on trial a differential pricing scheme, it may try out a novel mobile-responsive template, it may implement an altered organic tactic to increase online traffic, and so on. Such experimentation can have only minor business impacts or may trigger a grand new strategic redirection. From a management accounting information perspective, a digitally advanced firm will need to try out continuously alterations to stay alive and grow and will have to work out specific ways of tracking its activities so it can identify what actions to take and when to take them. The key is that altered accounting information becomes a requirement to assist the enterprise to manoeuvre in a particular manner via close tracking and monitoring of its ongoing experimental activities.

Unleashing spare resources

A digitally advanced company may be founded on a business premise whereby if a customer can create value then the firm gets a proportion of the value created. Consider business platforms such as Airbnb and Uber where the intent is to enable users in need of a service or product to come together with suppliers who have unused capacity so that all parties see a benefit. Digitally advanced firms modelled on the idea of sharing existing resources specifically target new sources of value creation that rest on utilising existing supplies. It is likely there will be existing conventional suppliers of the products but the digitally advanced company will have to consider how spare capacity can be added into the market which will intensify competition and attract consumers at new price points that are usually lower. In the transportation industry for instance, conventional suppliers, such as taxis, trains, and other pre-existing services exist where investments of new resources have had to be made to bring to action their business plan. A digitally advanced enterprise entering this space will unleash pre-existing supply sources attracting spare capacity into the market that had been unavailable to public users. All that is required for this is a digital platform that is supported by the right technology and enterprise infrastructure. The increased supply of services that is made available will force traditional providers to share revenues emanating from what customers have been willing to spend with the new firm.

Naturally, competitive forces ensure that where supply of a good increases, this will drive prices down across the whole industry. More supply with lower prices tends to attract not just existing customers, but also new ones into the market given the lower price points. So the digitally advanced firm will alter not just market pricing and the nature of the product, but will also widen the base of customers. As a consequence, some of the profits that existed under the conventional set up will now go to the new suppliers with spare capacity and some will go to the consumers who access lower prices for servicing their needs. Also, additional profits will arise from the

expanded customer base – much of which will benefit the new firm because of its lower prices. Understanding the financial mechanics of the new business model and the nature of the market changes that result requires accounting information that captures the essence of the economic shifts, whereby unused capacity is put to work via digitised platforms. The financial basis of the new model differs fundamentally from traditional service providers who had to invest into asset structures (vehicles for transportation) rather than bringing new service providers to the market. In such 'sharing economy' contexts, relying on conventional accounting information that is not reflective of the business premise would prove narrow and inadequate to assist in effective decision making.

Networks are not linear

Many traditional industrial firms are viable because they produce large quantities of the product or service with value created by virtue of the economies of scale that are captured. Such firms can sell products at low prices by focusing on the supply side. So, for instance, they buy in bulk which pushes down their material costs and they also invest in faster and more flexible technologies which increases efficiency and throughput. As costs go down and efficiency rises, such firms grow in profit and size. But, many digitally advanced firms are especially reliant on creating demand rather than using supply strategies in a market with many buyers. They use digitised technological innovations to create and expand networks (Bhimani, 2022). The growth of networks can become self-reinforcing as users get value out of more connections. So as connections grow, users sponsor more connections because a larger user base in the network increases demand for the product. This then fuels further network expansion and subsequent demand. Consider for instance, the value of Facebook to a user, which comes from the large user base. Every time an additional user signs up, the existing members benefit. Accounting indicators in such firms need to be able to track the value growth of their product offering where users lend more and more value to the product as the network grows. Additionally, some networks can connect with other networks and this accelerates the pace of value creation (Instagram can be connected to Twitter and LinkedIn). If business transactions grow because networks interconnect and, as a result, value is created then accounting systems need to be able to reflect this. And very importantly, where networks can expand in many directions they defy linear pathways. Traditional accounting information systems which rest on a supply focus and which only capture linear paths of value creation are inadequate for network-based platforms.

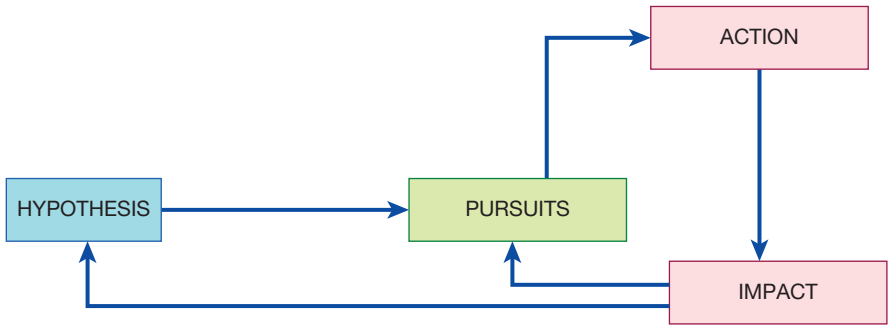
The digitalised enterprise control loop

All organisations will have managers who identify targets to pursue and put those plans into action. Once a point is reached, where the impact of these actions can be assessed, variances and deviations from expectations can be investigated. Such an analysis provides new insights and learning and new plans can be drawn to guide future action. A formal process to do this usually includes the following steps:

- planning activities
- acting on targets set
- monitoring outcomes
- changing and refining new action plans
- keeping stakeholders and in particular investors informed.

These steps apply to all enterprises. However, a digitally advanced firm needs to have a mechanism for analysing new information from the external business world and from its own operations. It must know what could and should change the business model as it evolves. Digitally advanced

Exhibit 22.2 The digitally advanced enterprise control loop



firms, as explained, need to keep tweaking their activities as new information is received and they must alter their activities incrementally, or even change their entire business model when accounting feedback suggests a need for the strategic trajectory to alter. Unlike conventional industrial firms, digitally advanced firms operate in a void, in that they do not typically have access to extensive historical trends of financial operations or precedents or benchmarks. So, such enterprises must seek information from the market and external sources and continuously assess the implications of and for their own activities. The **digitalised enterprise control loop** is an approach that lets developed or emerging digitally advanced firms visualise their financial and non-financial information needs and allows continuous alteration to broad strategic direction as well as operational activities (see Exhibit 22.2).

Exhibit 22.2 shows three essential steps for the financial control of a digitally advanced firm. It indicates that the enterprise needs to consider its pursuits or objectives based on some broad business strategy and hypothesis about the ability of the digital business model to service certain customer needs. Once the specific operational pursuits that are aligned with the broad hypothesis are established, the firm must then take action to service and impact its intended market, given the operational parameters set by the pursuits. Here, financial and non-financial information is required to assess and communicate performance impact and achievements. In digitally advanced firms, an ongoing need exists for an assessment of the pursuits' impact. It may be that the pursuits need minor recalibration and fine-tuning to allow further operational experimentation, or there may in fact be sufficient impact information indicative of having to alter the model's strategic hypothesis entirely (Bhimani, 2022). This approach offers a path of analysis for financial and non-financial monitoring with a continuous information loop to point to whether minor experimentation within the core business premise should be pursued or whether a total reorientation in an entirely different direction in the light of the real time control information obtained is warranted.

Management accounting and sustainability

Today's managers need to consider sustainability issues in their decisions which requires support from accounting. The intent is to raise awareness of the firm's desired and undesired environmental, social and economic impacts. A wide variety of terms encapsulate the many concerns that are emerging. One term used is corporate **sustainability management accounting** which points to the organisation of the collection, analysis and communication of environmental, social and economic information for internal use by an enterprise's managers (Schalteggers et al., 2022). The focus of sustainability attention should span not just the business organisation but also contribute

to sustainability transformations of markets at a broader level and addressing the grand sustainability problems of societies. Clearly, the role of management accountants in the provision of useful information that can feed into these wider corporate responsibilities is expanding. These developments are increasing and changing the sustainability information needs of managers and what can be expected of management accountants.

The need for organisations to develop a more public 'social conscience' especially for the environment is not new. Environmental accounting and management concerns have been the subject of corporate action and have had the attention of wider stakeholders for over three decades. In the 1990s, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) advanced Principles of Corporate Governance to support economic efficiency, sustainable growth and financial stability. The underlying principles encompass Transparency, Accountability, Responsibility, Independence and Fairness (see 'G20/OECD Principles of Corporate Governance' at www.oecd.org). Transparency implies improving disclosure about corporate performance information including a company's ability to engage in the voluntary disclosure of environmental issues. Making cost impacts visible, however, is no easy task.

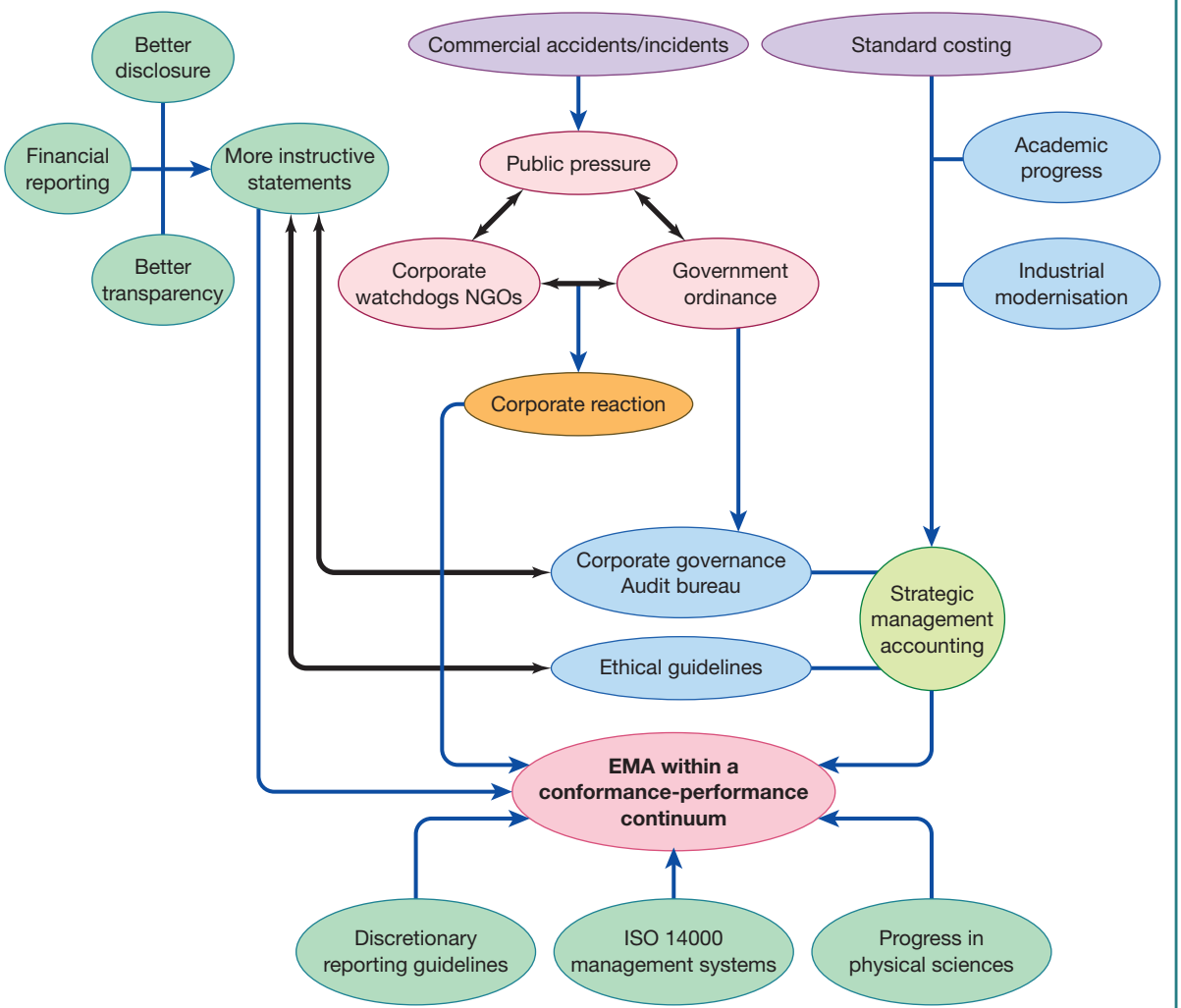
We have argued in Chapter 1 and throughout this book that management accounting systems seek to assist managers to evaluate potential organisational actions they may take. Techniques and strategies in management accounting must therefore keep pace with changes facing managers in terms of the type of information they require. This includes the important issue of costing the environment from an organisational perspective. **Environmental management accounting (EMA)** is another term that is gaining importance in this respect. EMA aims to support managers by informing them about environmental impacts of an organisation beyond its boundaries and about environmental issues that influence the organisation. EMA can help identifying environmental problems caused, environmental improvements made and how they relate to the financial performance of enterprises (Burrit et al., 2021).

EMA enables environmental costs to be identified, measured and allocated appropriately to a process or to products and make it easier for managers to control and put into effect cost savings. For example, the cost to process and clean-up toxic waste associated with products can be allocated directly to those products. The application of environmental management accounting can lead to profit increases via information on production costs which can be controlled. Not accounting for the costs of environmental damage can be extremely high. We discussed ISO 9000 in Chapter 20 in relation to quality certification which reduces costs for enterprises. Companies are also using quality management and measurement practices to find cost-effective ways to reduce the environmental and economic costs of air pollution, waste water, oil spills, and hazardous waste disposal. ISO 14000, also developed by the International Organization for Standardization, is a set of standards designed to encourage organisations to develop (1) environmental management systems to reduce environmental costs and (2) environmental auditing and performance-evaluation systems to review and monitor their progress towards their environmental goals.

EMA delves into a wide variety of areas and requires, for any firm, different functions and departments to interact. Accountants have to engage with other experts and work in teams to address the challenges of EMA. For example, a management accountant might seek the input from environmental engineers, natural science-based experts such as meteorologists, logistics and transportation specialists, information technology. Such cross-disciplinary engagement is essential for the successful mobilisation of EMA (Burrit et al., 2021). Change is rapid in some companies and much slower in others. In a survey of 1234 CFOs from across Europe, by Deloitte (2022) reports that: 'Sixty-three per cent of the companies which do have a carbon emissions reduction plan aim to achieve their goal by 2030. A small minority of companies (6%) have achieved their target already. About 11% are giving themselves almost two decades, till 2040, to meet their target, and a few (3%) have set a time frame of 2050 or later. Seventeen per cent of firms have not yet set a specific time frame for their carbon reduction'. In the face of such variety across industries and companies, it is clear that the management accountant has to interface with other managers across different roles in a manner that promotes learning about environmental factors as well as cost issues and business strategic concerns.

Exhibit 22.3 presents the broad social, economic and political forces that interact and which lend EMA a strategic, decision-making and accounting outlook that goes beyond the scope achieved by more traditional accounting approaches to considering environmental issues. It shows how non-governmental organisations, the public and governments, spurred by industrial accidents and incidents, interact to force corporate reaction and awareness. Developments in management accounting provide industry with sophisticated tools to respond appropriately. Coupled with these is the rising demand for better financial reporting and disclosure of environmental liabilities and costs, and for information on how these are linked with internal decision processes, see Soonawalla (2006). Also influencing both management accounts and financial reporting, and the corporate world in general, are enhanced corporate governance mechanisms and ethical guidelines. In addition, the emergence of voluntary corporate social responsibility reporting guidelines and management systems, such as the ISO series, permits management to go beyond compliance with government regulations and accounting rules.

Exhibit 22.3 A framework for understanding the social, economic, political and scientific forces influencing EMA



Source: Adapted from Soonawalla, K. (2006) 'Environmental management accounting', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 381–6.

Finally, advances in the sciences have driven the evolution of eco-efficient production processes, better measurement mechanisms and the use of renewable energy sources. All these together create a setting for EMA to evolve a distinct identity and to function as a compliance, performance and enhancement frame of operation. A key input into EMA is strategic management accounting information (discussed in Chapters 20 and 21), as illustrated in Exhibit 22.3.

Companies are increasingly recognising that they must continually earn the right to operate in the communities and countries in which they do business. Failure to perform adequately not just on environmental, but also on social outcomes puts at risk a company's ability to deliver future value to shareholders. Citizens and governments are becoming much more active in pushing companies to live up to and to report on what they see as their environmental and social obligations. Many managers are promoting sustainability – the development and implementation of strategies to achieve:

- long-term financial performance
- social performance, such as minimising employee injuries, improving product safety, and eliminating corruption
- environmental performance, such as reducing greenhouse gas emissions and non-recycled waste.

The AICPA/CIMA report (Melancon, 2022) on integrated reporting identifies six 'capitals' as being relevant:

- *Financial capital* – the pool of funds obtained through financing or generated through operations or investments
- *Manufactured capital* – manufactured physical objects used in the production of goods or the provision of services – buildings, equipment, infrastructure
- *Intellectual capital* – knowledge-based intangibles, including intellectual property, such as patents, copyrights, software and licences
- *Human capital* – the competencies, capabilities, experiences and motivation of people, along with their ability to lead, manage and innovate to implement the organisation strategy
- *Social and relationship capital* – the institutional and social relationships, including shared norms, common values and behaviours – intangibles associated with brand and reputation, and an organisation's social licence to operate
- *Natural capital* – all renewable and non-renewable resources that support the prosperity of the organisation, including air, water, land, minerals, forests, along with eco-system and biodiversity health.

The capitals are viewed as part of a framework that underpins the concept of value creation, preservation, or erosion.

Many enterprises want their managers to attain environmental and social objectives beyond what is legally required, while achieving good financial performance – often called the *triple bottom line* – as part of a company's social responsibility. Still others believe that there is no conflict between achieving social and environmental goals and long-run financial performance. What still stands for most organisational stakeholders is what was advanced by the World Commission on Environment and Development (WCED) set up by the UN, 40 years ago. The Brundtland Report (1987) defines this as follows: 'Sustainable development is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs' (IISD, 2022). Management accountants must adhere to this long-standing premise.

Many managers recognise that good environmental and social performance helps to attract and inspire outstanding employees, improve employee safety and health, increase productivity, and lower operating costs. Environmental and social performance also enhances a company's reputation with socially conscious customers and investors and boosts its image with governments and citizens, all contributing to long-run financial performance. Experienced financial analysts can publish favourable reports about companies with strong environmental and social performance because of their greater transparency and engagement with multiple stakeholders.

A distinguishing organisational characteristic of companies that emphasise environmental and social performance is their long-term orientation. The balanced scorecard discussed in Chapter 20 can incorporate elements of environmental and also social performance of a company. Managers interested in measuring environmental and social performance can include these factors into their balanced scorecards to set priorities for initiatives, guide decisions and actions, and fuel discussions around strategies and business models to improve performance. Suppose Chipset Ltd. which we considered in Chapter 20, decides to emphasise environmental and social goals in its balanced scorecard. What measures might it add to the balanced scorecard presented in Exhibit 20.1? Exhibit 22.4 presents these additional environment and social measures. In practice, Chipset, like all companies that emphasise environmental and social goals, integrates sustainability goals and measures presented in Exhibit 22.4 with business goals and measures presented in Exhibit 20.1

Exhibit 22.4 Environmental and social balanced scorecard measures for Chipset Ltd for the year 2023

Strategic Objectives	Measures	Initiatives	Target Performance	Actual Performance
Financial Perspective				
Reduce waste	Cost savings from reducing energy use and waste	Quality improvement programs	£400 000	£415 000
Reduce cost of time lost from work injuries and illness	Cost savings from fewer work injuries and illness	Train workers in safety methods and hygiene	£50 000	£55 000
Customer Perspective				
Enhance reputation for sustainability with customers	Percentage of customers giving top two ratings for environmental and social performance	Communicate environmental and social goals and performance	90%	92%
Internal-Business-Process Perspective				
Reduce greenhouse gas emissions	Greenhouse gas emissions per million dollars of sales	Increase energy efficiency and reduce carbon footprint by planting trees	27 grams/£1 million of sales	25.6 grams/£1 million of sales
Reduce operational waste not recycled	Hazardous and non-hazardous waste not recycled per million dollars of sales	Increase recycling programs and redesign products	130 grams/£1 million of sales	126 grams/£1 million of sales
Reduce work-related injuries and illnesses	Days of lost time per worker per year due to injury or illness	Redesign processes to improve worker safety and hygiene	0.20 days per worker per year	0.18 days per worker per year
Learning-and-Growth Perspective				
Inspiring employees through environmental and social goals	Percentage of employees giving top two ratings for environmental and social performance	Training employees about environmental and social benefits	87%	90%
Diversity of employees	Percentage of women and minorities in managerial positions	Develop human resource practices to support mentoring and coaching for women and minorities	40%	42%

into a single combined scorecard. Chipset gains the following benefits from measuring environmental and social performance:

1 *Creating shared value.* A major benefit of measuring environmental and social performance is the opportunity it provides to create shared value – recognising that the competitiveness of Chipset and its social activities are mutually dependent. Under this view, achieving environmental and social objectives is seen as providing strategic advantage to the business. For example, reducing greenhouse gas emissions motivates Chipset to redesign its product and processes to reduce energy consumption. Measuring non-recycled hazardous and non-hazardous waste prompts Chipset to work with its suppliers to redesign and reduce packaging and toxic substances in its materials and components. Measuring worker-related injuries and illnesses motivates Chipset to redesign processes to lessen the number of such incidents. In each of these initiatives, Chipset achieves environmental and social goals as well as gaining competitive advantage by reducing costs and pushing itself to innovate and build a social and environmental value proposition into its business strategy.

2 *Identifying cause-and-effect relationships to evaluate benefits.* Together with developing the kinds of skills in processes and information systems described in Exhibit 20.1, Chipset's top management creates a culture that encourages hiring employees from a wide variety of backgrounds, particularly women and minorities. This furthers the company's social goals, but also gives it access to top talent from a broad cross-section of society. In addition, the company trains and mentors employees to create shared value. This training improves internal-business processes to decrease greenhouse gases, hazardous and non-hazardous waste, and work-related injuries. These actions, in turn, improve customer measures such as Chipset's reputation for sustainability with customers and customer satisfaction. The financial benefits are the cost savings from shared value such as lower energy consumption and waste. If Chipset can measure growth in revenue or operating income from customers attracted to Chipset's environmental and social actions with reasonable accuracy, the company might add that measure in its financial perspective. The scorecard shows that Chipset has achieved all its environmental and social goals, indicating that its environmental and social actions are translating into financial gains. These results would encourage Chipset to continue its environmental and social efforts.

3 *Reducing risks.* A final benefit of measuring environmental and social performance is to help manage downside risk by acting as a good corporate citizen. This means being responsive to different stakeholders and reducing any adverse environmental or social effects of business activities. For example, reducing greenhouse gases might ward off fines or more stringent carbon emission caps under the EU Emissions Trading System and decrease the risk of court action and negative media attention and stakeholder activism that can damage Chipset's reputation.

Companies use a variety of measures for environmental and social performance in addition to those described in the Chipset example:

1 *Financial perspective.* Carbon taxes or fees (in countries that levy a carbon tax for emissions), cost of preventing and remediating environmental damage (training, clean-up, legal costs, and costs of consumer boycotts); cost of recycled materials to total cost of materials.

2 *Customer perspective.* Brand image (percentage of survey respondents who rate the company high on trust).

3 *Internal-business perspective.* Energy consumption (joules per £1000 of sales), water use (millions of cubic metres); waste water discharge (thousands of cubic metres); individual quantities of different greenhouse gases, for example, carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, or sulphur dioxide (grams per £1 million in sales); number of environmental incidents (such as unexpected discharge of air, water, or solid waste); codes of conduct violations (percentage of total employees); contributions to community-based non-profit organisations; number of joint ventures and partnerships between the company and community organisations.

4 *Learning-and-growth perspective.* Implementation of ISO 14000 environmental management standards (subjective score); employees trained and certified in codes of conduct (percentage of total employees); employees trained in United Nations global compact, for example, human rights, fair wage, no child labour, corruption and bribery prevention (percentage of total employees).

Context and communication remain key

Managing costs always involves many enterprise functions and activities. Effective cost management cannot be purely cost focused. It must entail an assessment of many factors including operational functions, marketing concerns, design constraints, human resource issues and other facets of organisational activities. If an organisation wants to manage its costs, it must make cost information accessible to managers who can understand this information irrespective of their functional training. This is because it takes more than cost information to manage costs. What is essential for any firm that contemplates altering its management accounting information is that the change should increase managerial insight, learning and adaptation. This implies that management accounting information must prioritise 'management' and not 'accounting'!

Concepts in action — Corporates that prioritise sustainability

Adobe is an IT company which achieved record annual revenues of $15.79 billion and net income of $4.822 billion in fiscal year 2021. This represented a 23% year-over-year sales growth. Adobe has been regarded by Newsweek as the greenest company. It follows eco-friendly operations and innovations. Adobe has achieved LEED certifications for most of its workstations. Leadership in Energy and Environmental (LEED) is the most widely used green building rating system in the world. LEED certified buildings save money, improve efficiency, lower carbon emissions and create healthier places for people. They are a critical part of addressing climate change and meeting Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) goals. Investors are increasingly applying ESG non-financial factors as part of their analysis process to identify material risks and growth opportunities. Adobe has set a 100% renewable energy goal. Its 'strategic data center' considers environmental issues within its own platforms as well as those of its partners. Its business conduct code states its sustainability guiding principles as:

- Creating healthy, collaborative and innovative work environments
- Reducing operational costs and increasing productivity through thoughtful resource conservation and waste reduction
- Driving profit responsibly
- Fostering a culture of involvement in sustainability through employee education and engagement, and
- Enabling our customers to become more sustainable through the use of our products.

Schneider Electric is a French energy and digital solutions company. In 2021 its revenues were €28.9 billion producing an income of € 2.13 billion. The company has advocated sustainability for more than two decades and states that 'Sustainability is at the core of our purpose, culture and business as we accelerate our contributions to a sustainable and inclusive world.' The company believes it will reach net zero biodiversity loss in its operations in 2030 to preserve natural ecosystems and resources. The company incorporates a broad spectrum of energy-related goals into its sustainability strategy, among them the inclusion of climate action in its pledge to achieve a carbon-neutral footprint ahead of the 2050 net-zero target; replacing single-use plastic packaging with recycled cardboard; and bridging the gap between meta and women in its hiring process.

Ørsted is one of the leading multinational energy corporations based in Denmark. It sees itself as the world's most sustainable energy company providing global green energy solutions, including offshore and onshore wind, solar,

and storage. In 2021, its revenues were €77.7 billion yielding operating profits of €24.3 billion. Ørsted continues to develop its wind power capabilities both onshore and offshore as it comes to terms with its obligations to provide businesses with innovative renewable energy solutions and build lasting client relationships, saving them time, money and reducing their overall climate impact.

These leading companies in relation to suitability aims track measures such as the following:

- Financial metrics like cost/benefit analysis, internal rate of return (IRR), and return on investment (ROI).
- Environmental indicators which can include reduction of electricity usage, change in fuel consumption for company vehicles, carbon emissions reductions, gallons of water saved, and increased waste diversion.
- Social dimensions that focus on employees and occupants, health & wellbeing, diversity & inclusion, supply chain management, among others.
- Governance variables that arise from policies on a wide range of issues such as company values and business resilience plans.

Sources: Newsweek (2014) 'Newsweek ranks Adobe world's greenest IT company', 6 June (https://news.adobe.com/news/news-details/2014/Newsweek-Ranks-Adobe-Worlds-Greenest-IT-Company/default.aspx); 'What is LEED certification' (https://support.usgbc.org/hc/en-us/articles/4404406912403-What-is-LEED-certification-); The Impact Investor (2022) 'New PBAF standard to help investors assess biodiversity impact', 22 March (https://impact-investor.com/new-standard-to-help-investors-assess-their-impact-on-biodiversity/); Birch, K. (2022) 'Top 10 sustainable companies in Europe', *Business Chief*, 26 January (https://businesschief.eu/sustainability/top-10-sustainable-companies-in-europe). Adobe (2019) 'Adobe sustainability policy' (://www.adobe.com/uk/corporate-responsibility/sustainability/corporate-policy.html); Schneider Electric (2021) 'Accelerating sustainability for all' (https://www.se.com/uk/en/about-us/sustainability/); Goby (2021) 'Five environmental sustainability metrics worth tracking' (https://www.gobyinc.com/five-environmental-sustainability-metrics-worth-tracking/).

Alternative definitions of investment

Additionally, enterprises requiring innovative costing solutions need to be aware that management and control techniques cannot be generic off-the-peg approaches. A management accounting system should reflect the local context in which it is to operate, and the specific challenges being faced. It is the management accountant's responsibility to ensure this occurs. General accounting metrics and generic non-financial measures rarely fully grasp salient aspects and details of organisational processes. Most implementations of management accounting systems in practice show that their effects differ depending on the situation. In other words, there is a high degree of specificity in the outcomes. So simply transplanting what may be an effective and successful management accounting approach in one enterprise into another will rarely produce the intended effects. This applies both to traditional management accounting techniques and to the newer approaches described in this book. So, it is a requisite for the management accountant to ponder the possible organisation-specific outcomes that will emerge from a management accounting system change.

Aside from contextualising accounting practices, communication and expertise are crucial for the advancing management accounting solutions. Based on extensive evidence, it is clear that both technical and softer skills are essential for finance executives in the face of the growth of advanced technologies, including particularly AI and machine learning. Skills such as communication, leadership, critical thinking, and collaboration, aside from technical knowledge, data analytics and domain expertise are as critical as ever. Many management accountants will find the need to up their competencies relating to business analytics as well as their statistical, mathematical and programming skills so as to effectively use AI and machine learning tools. In some few cases, certain financial executives will need to further their understanding of the following: statistics including linear and non-linear methods and spline techniques, data mining, probability as well as mathematics including linear algebra and optimisation; simple algorithms and their assumptions including non-parametric algorithms; resampling methods such as bootstrapping and cross-validation techniques; an AI/machine learning software package; a language such as Python or R; databases such as SQL and MySQL; and importantly, develop the ability to differentiate between

causal and predictive analysis to provide more valuable business information to managers. They may also need to have some understanding of the capabilities of software, data visualisation, data warehouse management, basics of coding and related analysis skills

As machines take over repetitive mundane work and as many activities become hybrid human-robot tasks, both technical and social skills are becoming essential for management accountants to invest in. The technical skills are important as accountants need to deal directly with machines or interface with people that do. But social skills are also of growing relevance particularly as accountants become more involved in providing and interpreting information relating to business activities as opposed to focusing on financial statements. Social skills that are increasingly relevant include conflict solving, tolerance of uncertainty, innovation focus and leadership skills. As always, it is likely that differing contexts will make different demands on skill sets. What is evident is that the work of accountants is changing, and their expertise must adapt. In a world of IOT, AI and big data, the capacity to make real time data-based decisions is crucial (Bhimani, 2021). But also, many avant-garde accountants are seeing themselves as business translators who can drive innovation and digitalisation initiatives by bridging technical expertise with business needs. Those that adapt will retain and gain relevance.

Summary

The following points are linked to the chapter's learning objectives.

1 Digital innovations are transforming all organisations and affecting their management accounting processes.
2 Digital technologies such as artificial intelligence, machine learning, blockchain and the Internet of Things require some firms to operate differently from traditional industrial enterprises. Big data analysis is one key outcome affecting management accounting.
3 Digitally advanced firms have different accounting information needs.
4 The digital enterprise control loop alters the way such firms plan and control their activities and guides the form of management accounting information necessary.
5 Sustainability and environment management accounting practices help firms achieve their social, environmental and sustainability activities.
6 Management accountants should privilege the local context and the application of technical and soft skillsets.

References and further reading

AICPA/CGMA (2020) 'Business partnering in the digital age' (https://www.cgma.org/resources/a-e.html).

Agrawal, A., Gans, J. and Goldfarb, A. (2018) *Prediction Machines: The Simple Economics of Artificial Intelligence* (Boston, MA: HBR Press)

Bescos, P.L. and Mendoza, C. (1995) 'ABC in France' *Management Accounting*, 76, pp. 33–41

Bhimani, A. (2006) 'Management accounting and digitisation', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 69–91.

Bhimani, A. (2015) 'Exploring big data's strategic consequences', *Journal of Information Technology*, 30 (1).

Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How digitalization is changing finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA).

Bhimani, A. (2022) *Financial Management for Technology Start-ups* (London: Kogan Page).

Bhimani, A and Bromwich, M. (2010) *Management Accounting: Retrospect and Prospect* (London: CIMA/Elsevier).

Bhimani, A. and Willcocks, L. (2014) 'Digitisation, ''Big Data'', and the transformation of accounting', *Accounting and Business Research*, 44(4), pp. 469–90.

Brook, M. (2018) 'Will robots take your job? This site can predict that for you', *The Cusp,* 22 February (http://thecusp.com.au/will-robots-take-my-job/19842).

Brynjolfsson, E. and McAfee, A. (2017) 'The business of artificial intelligence', *Harvard Business Review,* 18 July (https://hbr.org/cover-story/2017/07/the-business-of-artificial-intelligence).

Bughin, J. and Catlin, T. (2017) 'What successful digital transformations have in common', *Harvard Business Review,* 19 December (https://hbr.org/2017/12/what-successful-digital-transformations-have-in-common).

Burrit, R., Schaltegger and Christ, K. (2021) 'Putting the focus on environmental management accounting', International Federation of Accountants (https://www.ifac.org/knowledge-gateway/contributing-global-economy/discussion/putting-focus-environmental-management-accounting)

CIMA (2000) *Management Accounting Official Terminology* (London: CIMA).

Davenport, T.H. (2014) *Big Data at Work: Dispelling the Myths, Uncovering the Opportunities* (Boston, MA: HBS Press).

Deloitte (2022) 'Cut carbon, cut costs', Deloitte Insights (https://www2.deloitte.com/uk/en/insights/topics/strategy/cfos-reducing-carbon-emissions-saves-costs.html)

IISD (2022) 'Sustainable development' (https://www.iisd.org/mission-and-goals/sustainable-development)

Marr, B. (2018) 'How much data do we create every day?' Forbes, 21 May (www.forbes.com/sites/bernardmarr/2018/05/21/how-much-data-do-we-create-every-day-the-mind-blowing-stats-everyone-should-read/2/#34ad0d2e616c).

McKendrick, J. (2017) 'The 5 traits of digitally advanced companies', Forbes (www.forbes.com/sites/joemckendrick/2017/07/14/the-5-traits-of-digitally-advanced-companies/#2fefa85025ee).

Melancon, B. (2022) 'Promote resiliency and sustainability with the 6 capitals', CIMA (https://www.cimaglobal.com/Members/Insights/2020-CIMA-Insights/Promote-resiliency-and-sustainability-with-the-6-capitals/)

OECD (2017) 'Global forum on responsible business conduct summary report' (https://mneguidelines.oecd.org/global-forum/GFRBC-2017-Summary-Report.pdf).

Phade, S. (2018) 'What's a prosumer and are you one?' (www.futuresplatform.com/blog/whats-prosumer-and-are-you-one).

Porter, M. (2001) 'Strategy and the Internet', *Harvard Business Review,* March, pp. 63–98.

Quiros, G. (15 December 2021) 'How accounting automation will change the industry in 2022', PracticeWeb, 15 December (https://www.practiceweb.co.uk/knowledge/how-accounting-automation-will-change-the-industry-in-2022/).

Rikhardsson, P. and Yigitbasioglu, O. (2018) 'Business intelligence and analytics in management accounting research: Status and future focus', *International Journal of Accounting Information Systems,* 29, pp. 37–58.

Roberts, H. (2006) 'Making management accounting intelligible', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 308–28.

Schaltegger, S, Christ, K. Wenzig, J. and Burritt, R. (2022) 'Corporate sustainability management accounting and multi-level links for sustainability – A systematic review', *International Journal of Management Reviews*. https://doi.org/10.1111/ijmr.12288.

Soonawalla, K. (2006) 'Environmental management accounting', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 381–406.

World Economic Forum (2020) 'The future of jobs report', 20 October (https://www.weforum.org/reports/the-future-of-jobs-report-2020)

CHAPTER 22

Assessment material

Review questions

22.1 What impact is digitisation having on firms?

22.2 How is data affected by digitisation?

22.3 What are some key technologies producing data?

22.4 What differentiates a digitally advanced firm from a traditional industrial one?

22.5 What is the digitally advanced enterprise control loop?

22.6 Describe dimensions of the strategic scorecard?

22.7 What does the strategic scorecard force board members to do?

22.8 What are the OECD's corporate governance principles?

22.9 What does environmental management accounting capture?

22.10 What must management accounting system designers be careful to do?

Exercises

Basic level

***22.11 Balanced scorecard, environmental, and social performance** (30 minutes)

Gardini Chocolates makes custom-labelled, high-quality, specialty candy bars for special events and advertising purposes. The company employs several chocolatiers who were trained in Germany. The company offers many varieties of chocolate, including milk, semi-sweet, white, and dark chocolate. It also offers a variety of ingredients, such as coffee, berries, and fresh mint. The real appeal for the company's product, however, is its custom labelling. Customers can order labels for special occasions (for example, wedding invitation labels) or business purposes (for example, business card labels). The company's balanced scorecard for 2022 follows. For brevity, the initiatives taken under each objective are omitted.

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective			
Increase shareholder value	Operating-income changes from price recovery	$1 000 000	$1 500 000
	Operating-income changes from growth	$200 000	$250 000

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
	Cost savings due to reduced packaging size	$40 000	$50 000
Customer perspective			
Increase market share	Market share of overall candy bar market	8%	7.8%
Increase the number of new product offerings	Number of new product offerings	5	7
Increase customer acquisitions due to sustainability efforts	Percentage of new customers surveyed who required recycled paper options	35%	40%
Internal-business-process perspective			
Reduce time to customer	Average design time	3 days	3 days
Increase quality	Internal quality rating (10-point scale)	7 points	8 points
Increase use of recycled materials	Recycled materials used as a percentage of total materials used	30%	32%
Learning-and-growth perspective			
Increase number of professional chocolatiers	Number of chocolatiers	5	6
Increase number of women and minorities in the workforce	Percentage of women and minorities in the workforce	40%	38%

Required:

1 Was Gardini successful in implementing its strategy in 2022? Explain your answer.

2 Would you have included some measure of customer satisfaction in the customer perspective? Are these objectives critical to Gardini for implementing its strategy? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

3 Explain why Gardini did not achieve its target market share in the candy bar market but still exceeded its financial targets. Is 'market share of overall candy bar market' a good measure of market share for Gardini? Explain briefly.

4 Do you agree with Gardini's decision not to include measures of changes in operating income from productivity improvements under the financial perspective of the balanced scorecard? Explain briefly.

5 Why did Gardini include balanced scorecard standards relating to environmental and social performance? Is the company meeting its performance objectives in these areas?

Intermediate level

22.12 **Balanced scorecard, social performance** (30 minutes)

Comtex Company provides cable and internet services in the Greater Boston area. There are many competitors that provide similar services. Comtex believes that the key to financial success is to offer a quality service at the lowest cost. Comtex currently spends a significant amount of hours on installation and post-installation support. This is one area that the company has targeted for cost reduction. Comtex's balanced scorecard for 2022 follows.

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective			
Increase shareholder value	Operating-income changes from productivity	$2 400 400	$800 000
	Operating-income changes from growth	$520 000	$250 000
	Increase in revenue from new customer acquisition	$50 000	$24 000
Customer perspective			
Increase customer satisfaction	Positive customer survey responses	70%	65%
Increase customer acquisition	New customers acquired through company sponsored community events	475	350
Internal-business-process perspective			
Develop innovative services	Research and development costs as a percentage of revenue	5%	6%
Increase installation efficiency	Installation time per customer	5 hours	4.5 hours
Increase community involvement	Number of new programs with community organisations	12	15
Decrease workplace injuries	Number of employees injured in the workplace	<3	7
Learning-and-growth perspective			
Increase employee competence	Number of annual training-hours per employee	10	11
Increase leadership skills	Number of leadership workshops offered	2	1
Increase employee safety awareness	Percent of employees who have completed safety certification training	100%	95%

Required

1. Was Comtex successful in implementing its strategy in 2022? Explain.
2. Do you agree with Comtex's decision to include measures of developing innovative services (research and development costs) in the internal-business-process perspective of the balanced scorecard? Explain briefly.
3. Is there a cause-and-effect linkage between the measures in the internal-business-process perspective and the customer perspective? That is, would you add other measures to the internal-business-process perspective or the customer perspective? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

4 Why do you think Comtex included balanced scorecard measures relating to employee safety and community engagement? How well is the company doing on these measures?

Advanced level

22.13 Balanced scorecard, environmental, and social performance (30 minutes)

WrightAir is a no-frills airline that services the Midwest. Its mission is to be the only short-haul, low-fare, high-frequency, point-to-point carrier in the Midwest. However, there are several large commercial carriers offering air transportation, and Wright Air knows that it cannot compete with them based on the services those carriers provide. WrightAir has chosen to reduce costs by not offering many inflight services, such as food and entertainment options. Instead, the company is dedicated to providing the highest quality transportation at the lowest fare. Wright Air's balanced scorecard measures (and actual results) for 2022 follow:

Objectives	Measures	Target performance	Actual performance
Financial perspective			
Increase shareholder value	Operating-income changes from productivity	$7 200 000	$8 400 000
	Operating-income changes from price recovery	$2 700 000	$3 600 000
	Operating-income changes from growth	$3 000 000	$3 960 000
	Cost savings due to reduction in jet fuel consumption	$900 000	$1 080 000
Customer perspective			
Increase the number of on-time arrivals	FAA on-time arrival ranking	1st in industry	2nd in industry
Improve brand image	Percentage of customer survey respondents with greater than 90% approval rating on company's sustainability efforts	100%	96%
Internal-business-process perspective			
Reduce turnaround time	On-ground time	<25 minutes	30 minutes
Reduce CO_2 emissions	Number of engineering changes that decreased CO_2 emissions	10	9
Learning-and-growth perspective			
Align ground crews	% of ground crew stockholders	70%	68%
Acquire new energy management tool and technology	Achieve ISO 50001 certification in energy management	Acquire certification by Dec. 31	Acquire certification by Dec. 31

Required:

1 What is WrightAir's strategy? Was WrightAir successful in implementing its strategy in 2022? Explain your answer.

2 For WrightAir, draw a map describing the cause-and-effect relationships among the strategic objectives described in the balanced scorecard. Identify what you believe are any (a) strong ties, (b) focal points, (c) trigger points, and (d) distinctive objectives. Comment on your structural analysis of the strategy map.

3 Based on the strategy identified in requirement 1 above, what role does the price-recovery component play in explaining the success of WrightAir?

4 Would you have included customer-service measures in the customer perspective? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

5 Would you have included some measure of employee satisfaction and employee training in the learning-and-growth perspective? Would you consider this objective critical to WrightAir for implementing its strategy? Why or why not? Explain briefly.

6 Why do you think Wright Air has introduced environmental measures in its balanced scorecard? Is the company meeting its performance objectives in this area?

22.14 **Downsizing** (CMA, adapted) (60 minutes)

Mayfair Limited currently subsidises cafeteria services for its 200 employees. Mayfair is in the process of reviewing the cafeteria services as cost-cutting measures are needed throughout the organisation to keep the prices of its products competitive. Two alternatives are being evaluated: downsize the cafeteria staff and offer a reduced menu, or contract with an outside supplier.

The current cafeteria operation has four employees with a combined base annual salary of €110 000 plus additional employee benefits at 25% of salary. The cafeteria operates 250 days each year, and the costs for utilities and equipment maintenance average €30 000 annually. The daily sales include 100 starters at €4.00 each, 80 sandwiches or salads at an average price of €3.00 each, plus an additional €200 for beverages and desserts. The cost of all cafeteria supplies is 60% of revenues.

The plan for downsizing the current operation envisions retaining two of the current employees whose combined base annual salaries total €65 000. A starter menu would no longer be offered, and prices of the remaining items would be increased slightly. Under this arrangement, Mayfair expects daily sales of 150 sandwiches or salads at a higher average price of €3.60. The additional revenue for beverages and desserts is expected to increase to €230 each day. Because of the elimination of the starter, the cost of all cafeteria supplies is expected to decline to 50% of revenues. All other conditions of operation would remain the same. Mayfair is willing to continue to subsidise this reduced operation but will not spend more than 20% of the current subsidy.

A proposal has been received from Wilco Foods, an outside supplier who is willing to supply cafeteria services. Wilco has proposed to pay Mayfair €1000 per month for use of the cafeteria and utilities. Mayfair would be expected to cover equipment repair costs. In addition, Wilco would pay Mayfair 4% all revenues received above the breakeven point. This payment would be made at the end of the year. All other costs incurred by Wilco to supply the cafeteria services are variable and equal 75% of revenues. Wilco plans to charge €5.00 for a starter course, and the average price for the sandwich or salad would be €4.00. All other daily sales are expected to average €300. Wilco expects daily sales of 66 starters and 94 sandwiches or salads.

Required

1 Determine whether the plan for downsizing the current cafeteria operation would be acceptable to Mayfair Limited. Show your calculations.

2 Is the Wilco Foods proposal more advantageous to Mayfair Limited than the downsizing plan? Show your calculations.

22.15 From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Intermediate Level, Management Accounting – Performance Management, November 2003 (45 minutes)

E plc provides a computer upgrading, servicing and repair facility to a variety of business and personal computer users.

The management team has managed the business to date by using a standard costing and budgetary control system. However, the team has recently been discussing the possible use of alternative performance measurement systems, such as the 'balanced scorecard'.

Another issue which concerns the management of E plc is the quality of the service provided for clients. The operations manager has suggested that the company should introduce total quality management (TQM) but the management team is unsure how to do this and of the likely costs and benefits of its introduction.

Required

1 Explain the concept of the balanced scorecard and how it may be used by E plc to improve performance measurement.

2 **a** Briefly explain total quality management in the context of E plc.

b Discuss the likely costs and benefits that would arise if E plc introduced a TQM policy.

PART V

Case study problems

Case 501

High-Tech Limited

Jenice Prather-Kinsey, University of Missouri-Columbia

This case demonstrates the importance of strategy and cost allocation in the IT manufacturing environment. The case requires the development of a relevant balanced scorecard for the business together with the construction of an appropriate ABC model.

Background

High-Tech (H-T) is a computer manufacturer founded in Yorkshire, England, in 1901. H-T originated as a commercial scale, cheese and meat slicing, punch card, tabulating and time recording conglomerate. The company began with 1300 employees and with sales in England, Scotland and Wales. The company had a difficult time managing its diversified products in numerous locations. H-T undertook several strategies to overcome its faltering operations. First, H-T increased sales by implementing healthy sales incentives, grooming its salesmen in dark suits, promoting company pride and loyalty in its employees and beefing up customer services. Second, H-T focused on selling tabulating machines, and expanded sales to the USA, Asia, Australia and South America.

These strategies helped H-T overcome its sinking operations. While other companies were folding during the Great Depression, H-T continued to grow and began providing employee benefits such as life insurance and paid vacations. Just-in-time inventory control would not have been useful to H-T during the Depression. Because H-T had large inventories on hand, it was able to undertake large government contracts during the 1930s. H-T had become so large in the computer industry that it was constantly being sued, but unsuccessfully, for monopoly violations. During World War II, H-T continued to grow through government contracts. H-T used some of its profits to finance orphans and widows of war casualties. This goodwill act helped to foster employee loyalty and demonstrated good community citizenship?

Technological development escalated beginning in the 1950s. H-T first developed a 5-ton 50-foot by 8-foot calculator. This calculator was replaced with vacuum tubes and later with a mainframe transistor that was faster and smaller than the vacuum tube. By 1957, H-T had a spinning disk storage system that could assess and process accounting data on as many as 50 disks and introduced the FORTRAN computer language. H-T was so large that it supplied 90% of Europe's computers, had £80 billion in sales and 270 000 employees. Between 1970 and 1980, H-T became the leading manufacturer of mainframe computers, hardware, software and services.

By the 1980s, H-T was manufacturing floppy disks, bank automatic teller machines, and PCs for small businesses, schools and home use.

H-T now has manufacturing plants located in Yorkshire, England, and Essonnes, France. In Yorkshire, H-T manufactures low-end servers and personal computer systems while in Essonnes it manufactures logic and memory chips. H-T is now vertically integrated and produces, services and sells products exclusively in the computer industry. More recently, H-T has experienced a downturn in earnings resulting from a very competitive computer industry.

Systems information

H-T's corporate strategy is to get multi-year cooperative agreements with SAP adopters to increase H-T's share of the computer hardware market. H-T uses a normal costing system where manufacturing overhead is applied and estimated annually and quarterly and all other costs are recorded at actual using a stand-alone weighted-average accounting information and inventory system. Stand-alone implies that the cost accounting system is not integrated with financial accounting, finance or logistics ledgers. They hope to install SAP, an electronic resource planning system, but that has not happened yet. Because cost accounting is stand-alone, at the end of each quarter considerable accounting effort is spent integrating cost data with financial accounting and logistics data. Each production location (Yorkshire and Essonnes) is managed separately and within each location there is decentralisation of functions. The cost accountants focus solely on budgeting, recording and analysing costs (Exhibits 501.1 and 501.2).

Exhibit 501.1 High-Tech Corporation: Income statement at 31 December (£ millions except per-share amounts)

	2011	2010
Revenues:		
Hardware sales	36 500	35 700
Services revenues	15 000	12 000
Software sales	13 000	13 000
Maintenance revenues	7 000	7 000
Rentals and financing income	1 600	1 500
Total revenues	73 100	69 200
Cost of sales:		
Hardware sales	24 000	22 000
Services expenses	12 000	10 000
Software expenses	4 000	4 400
Maintenance expenses	3 600	3 600
Rentals and financing expenses	1 600	1 500
Total cost of sales	45 200	41 500
Gross profit	27 900	27 700
Selling expense	15 000	15 200
R & D expense	4 000	4 000
Operating Income	8 900	8 500
Other income	9 000	8 000
Other expenses	710	720
Earnings before income taxes	17 190	15 780
Income tax expense	3 100	3 600
Net income	14 090	12 180
Dividends paid	22	60
Net income to common stockholders	14 068	12 120

Exhibit 501.2 High-Tech Corporation: Balance sheet at 31 December (£ millions except per-share amounts)

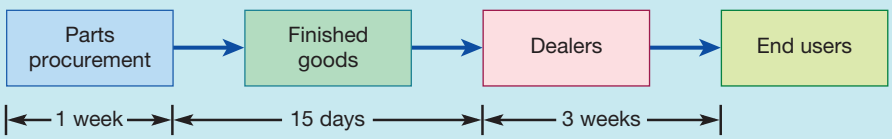
	2011	2010		2011	2010
Current assets:			**Current liabilities:**		
Cash and cash equivalents	7 680	7 260	Taxes payable	3 000	2 600
Marketable securities	500	450	Short-term payables	13 000	11 500
Notes and accounts receivable	16 500	16 400	Accounts payable	5 000	4 500
Sales lease receivables	5 700	6 000	Compensation and benefits	3 000	3 000
Other receivables	900	1 000	Deferred income	3 700	3 500
Inventories	6 000	6 000	Other liabilities	6 600	6 500
Prepaid expenses	3 500	3 200	Total current liabilities	34 300	31 600
Total current assets	40 780	40 310			
			Long-term liabilities	10 000	10 000
Property, plant and equipment	41 200	44 000	Other debt	14 000	14 300
Less: Accumulated depreciation	−25 000	−27 000	Deferred income taxes payable	1 600	1 800
Net property, plant and equipment	16 200	17 000	Total liabilities	59 900	57 700
Software – net	2 000	2 500	Stockholders' equity		
Investments and miscellaneous acct	22 500	20 600	Preferred stock	353	353
			Common stock	8 500	8 400
Total assets	81 480	80 410	Retained earnings	10 327	10 657
			Translation adjustment	2 400	3 300
			Total stockholders' equity	21 580	22 710
			Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	81 480	80 410

Yorkshire, England

The product development cycle for low-end servers and personal computer systems is three months. This means that faster and cheaper computers are developed at least three to four times a year. The computer industry experiences a 2–3% decline in raw material costs and selling prices each quarter. Therefore, product costs are changing constantly. While head count is high at Yorkshire, this cost is stable and represents only about 5% of product cost. Seventy per cent of product cost is materials and 25% is manufacturing overhead. Traditionally, for manufacturing overhead in production, direct labour £s have been the allocation base.

Yorkshire tries to trace most of its costs directly to the product. Labour and materials are traced directly to the product through bar codes. Each material input component is bar-coded and traced directly to the unit to which it is attached. As materials move through assembly, assemblers indicate which unit of output they are assembling through bar codes. For each product produced, a diskette includes the serial number assigned to the finished server, the assembler ID number and the identification number of parts used to make the server.

Since the market fixes the price of labour and materials, H-T hopes to increase profit margins by reducing manufacturing overhead costs. H-T believes that it can reduce costs by reducing throughput time. Throughput is defined as follows:



H-T's strongest competitors reduce throughput time by eliminating the dealer. Their competitors sell directly to the final or end customer. However, the dealers provide a level of immediate service to end customers at the end customer's location that is not provided by its competitors. Competitors' customers have to call an 0800 (freephone) number and sometimes wait 30 minutes on the phone before a technician can answer their question. Many customers who have software installation problems must see a computer specialist at their own cost, or for other problems they may have to return their equipment to the vendor and wait 2–3 weeks before the computer is replaced or repaired. Therefore, H-T must weigh the benefits of selling through dealers to its end customers against reducing throughput time by eliminating dealers.

Lead time from dealer order to receipt of goods by the dealer is usually 3–4 weeks. Dealers generally hold five-week inventory levels to avoid stockout costs and to compensate for goods that may be damaged during shipment. If not sold immediately, dealers have unsold obsolete inventory on hand. In the past, H-T has provided rebates to dealers for obsolete inventory. This way, dealers can offer obsolete inventory at discounted prices to their customers. H-T is concerned that this policy sends the wrong message to dealers. That is, if dealers do not move their inventory fast, the dealer does not lose because H-T will discount the merchandise. Therefore, dealers are not motivated to buy from H-T in small quantities or to sell their inventories quickly. H-T wants dealers to more accurately estimate their sales so that they do not end up with large quantities of obsolete inventory on hand. H-T's competitors not only reduce dealer costs by not having dealers, but also reduce costs related to storing outdated inventory at the dealer's location.

H-T records procurement parts costs when invoiced. So if it invoices a purchase in March, it uses February costs because March costs are not known at the time of invoicing. At the end of March, when H-T knows the actual cost of March purchases, it records the under- or overapplied materials/parts cost as the difference between actual and recorded parts cost.

Variances are investigated at the top end of the organisation, outside of the cost accounting department. Some variance is tolerated/expected due to the rapidly decreasing parts cost in the computer industry. Similarly, when dealers are billed for computers purchased, they are billed at the previous month's price and the invoice price is adjusted the following month to reflect the actual selling price. That is, H-T does not know the cost of producing the computers and therefore the selling price of the computers until a month later when their vendors invoice raw materials. This is when H-T knows the actual cost of parts procurement. Sizing or the comparison of ledger to physical inventory is done annually.

Shipment of almost all of H-T's products (servers, PCs and mainframes) is out of Yorkshire. In addition to the production area, Yorkshire has 450 000 square feet of warehousing space. Inventory is in the warehouse for an average of 10–15 days before shipping. H-T uses activity-based costing (ABC) to allocate annual warehousing and shipping costs to each product as follows (in £ millions):

Activities	Indirect head count (£)	Square foot floor space (£)	Hours scanning outbound freight (£)	Hours information systems (£)
Receiving (from mfg)	50			15.5
Shipping parts to shipping lane	120			12.0
Storage		700.5		10.5
Transportation-out	185		30	10.0

Annual allocation of expenses to products is then conducted as follows:

	Desktop	Server	Monitor	Laptops	Options
Receiving					
Head count	1000	500	600	1200	400
Info. systems (hours)	600	120	100	800	60
Shipping parts to lane					
Head count	800	100	100	800	20
Info. systems (hours)	80	10	60	80	15
Storage					
Floor space	1000	2000	600	800	400
Info. systems (hours)	100	100	100	100	100
Trans-out					
Head count	70	120	50	80	20
Info. systems (hours)	20	15	10	20	5
Scanning hours	10	5	5	10	2

For some parts, transportation-out is the highest cost (servers). For example, servers have high transportation-out costs because they are heavy. For other products, order filling is the highest cost (desktops). For example, desktops absorb high order-filling costs because desktops are composed of multiple individual parts. The desktops may have 10–15 pieces to a box so it takes more time to fill a desktop order than a server order, which is composed of one or two parts.

Essonnes, France

In Essonnes, France, H-T manufactures logic and memory chips from a silicon wafer. The silicon wafers are sliced from a silicon cylinder. The silicon cylinders are £400 each. Each working day H-T manufactures approximately 1200 wafers.

In Essonnes, production takes place 24 hours a day, 7 days a week and 52 weeks a year. The only days off are 1 May because the French law of 1936 requires it and 25 December. However, accounting executives' working hours are generally 8.30 a.m. to 6.00 p.m., five days a week.

H-T purchases silicon cylinders for £400 each. Approximately 125 wafers can be sliced from each cylinder. During slicing, there is a loss of 20% of the silicon cylinder. It has quality assurance contracts with its vendors to assure the quality and on-time delivery of its production parts (silicon cylinders). After an order is received, H-T slices the silicon cylinders into wafers.

From each wafer H-T can usually get a total of 100 logic chips and 400 memory chips of which 5% of the good output is loss. The loss is detected at the end of production. To minimise costs, H-T is currently focusing on increasing the yield from each cylinder and wafer.

After end-of-line, the chips go to production control where they are distributed to their internal customers at a transfer price of 10% above total production cost. H-T spends considerable effort in developing and implementing its budget. H-T prepares five-year strategic plans from which flow yearly budgets and quarterly budgets. The annual budgets begin with actual data that is negotiated with production managers to produce annual and quarterly budgets. Budgeting involves a cross-functional team to ensure optimal corporate goal congruence (as opposed to unit-focused goals that may be suboptimal to the corporation as a whole). Senior management has weekly technical meetings with production regarding yield, lead time, and quality of shipped output. Each quarter (three months), H-T compares actual with monthly budgets. Usage of the service department centres during 2011 follows.

2011 JOINT PROCESSING COST CENTRE
H-T's actual usage for the year

Suppliers	Information systems (computer-hours)	Utilities (square km)	Maintenance (labour-hours)	Quality assurance (no. people on prod. line)
Users of joint processing service departments				
Utilities	500		70 000	100
Maintenance	1200	1000	60 000	100
Memory chip	500	2000	12 000	500
Logic chip	500	1000	60 000	800

The budgeted charge-out rate for information systems is £10 000 per hour, for utilities is £20 000 per square kilometre, for maintenance is £80 per labour-hour and for quality assurance is £52 000 per person. Information systems include the salaries of personnel, accounting and budgeting costs and costs associated with the mainframe central processing unit. Utilities include building repairs, electricity, water, fuel, property taxes and building depreciation. Maintenance involves servicing the machinery used in production and computers and mainframe systems used throughout H-T.

Quality assurance represents those personnel who measure quality and who conduct surveys on supplier, employee and customer satisfaction. Full absorption costing is used to determine product costs. (For the French definition of full absorption costing, see Bescos and Mendoza (1995).)

H-T wants to assign costs so that managers maximise the quality of output and reduce the percentage of spoiled chips from each cylinder and wafer (yield). Currently H-T uses a traditional normal costing system and allocates all processing costs to the good chips only. H-T also wants a cost system that accurately allocates overhead costs to chips.

To monitor quality, H-T continuously queries its suppliers, employees and customers. Employee satisfaction is important because it believes the more satisfied the employee, the more likely the employee will seek to achieve quality output efficiently. In France, the employees are very concerned about job stability as a result of the downsizing that has taken place. H-T has reduced the number of buildings occupied by 60%, the number of employees by 40% and has increased production 100% over the past five years as a result of increased technology in its production facilities. Thus, employees are working harder to achieve corporate goals in a competitive environment. Customer surveys include questions about on-time delivery. H-T strives to have a 98–99% on-time delivery rate.

Source: Adapted from Prather-Kinsey, J. (2001) 'High-Tech Limited', *Cases from Management Accounting Practice*, Volume 16 (Montvale, New Jersey: Institute of Management Accounting Practice).

Questions

Implementing and monitoring strategy

H-T is in the process of designing a balanced scorecard for the company overall and a tableau de bord for its plant in Yorkshire. Management's overall corporate goal is to get **multi-year cooperative agreements with SAP adopters to increase H-T's share of the computer hardware market.**

1 Develop a value chain for H-T Corporation and for its operations in Yorkshire. Your value-chain models should be illustrated similar to your textbook. Explain functions in the value chain with examples. For instance, define in your own words, research and development costs (R&D) and indicate what projects might be undertaken in R&D. Just because you have the R&D element in the corporate value chain does not imply that you have an R&D element

in the Yorkshire value chain. Therefore, the corporate value chain may look different from or similar to Yorkshire's value chain. You must explain why the chains are similar or dissimilar between the corporate office and the Yorkshire plant site.

2 A balanced scorecard is usually used to depict corporate strategy. A tableau de bord is a reflection of the balanced scorecard but represents a division's responsibility in achieving corporate strategy. For example, a balanced scorecard includes a 5% increase in operating profits as one of its goals. However, a cost centre will usually focus on the cost element of operating profit. Therefore the cost centre's tableau de bord will have cost goals rather than revenue or profit goals. Develop a balanced scorecard for H-T Corporation similar to that of Kaplan and Norton, but be creative in developing your illustration. You must provide objective measures for each of the four perspectives of the balanced scorecard. Explain how your balanced scorecard monitors how well the corporation is meeting its objective(s).

3 Develop a tableau de bord for H-T's operations in Yorkshire. The tableau de bord should be consistent with the corporate balanced scorecard goals. You should contrast the difference of Kaplan's balanced scorecard as you illustrated in question 2 above with the tableau de bord for Yorkshire.

4 Prior to the summary of your paper, you should recommend whether H-T should use the balanced scorecard only or the tableau de bord for Yorkshire as well as the balanced scorecard for corporate headquarters.

Are standard and activity-based costing appropriate for H-T?

H-T is contemplating using activity-based costing (ABC). Answer the following questions about the Yorkshire location.

5 Would you recommend that H-T consider using activity-based-costing throughout the Yorkshire plant site? (H-T is currently using ABC in the warehousing area only.)

6 What costing system is H-T using in the production area: actual, normal or standard? What costing system would you recommend that H-T use and why?

7 Develop a model for H-T to use if it considers adopting ABC at the Yorkshire plant's production department. Your model should include identification of activities and cost drivers for which standards should be developed. To defend the cost drivers used, relate them to the tableau de bord and corporate strategy targets that you developed in the assignment 'Implementing and Monitoring Strategy'.

Allocating costs in a multicultural company

Answer the following questions about the Essonnes plant site.

8 Recommend a method that H-T should use in allocating its joint production costs. Explain how this method would be useful in monitoring company strategy.

9 Use your recommended joint cost allocation method to allocate joint production costs. Provide an illustration of the computations used to allocate joint production costs.

10 What method did you use to allocate service department costs to the production departments? Explain why you recommend your selected service department cost allocation method.

11 How much will H-T charge its internal customers (transfer price) for:

- **a** Memory chips
- **b** Logic chips?

12 H-T is hesitant about implementing standard costing because the manufacturing system is very complicated and because many products share the same manufacturing machines and/or assembly production lines. Assuming that H-T uses normal costing and is considering ABC and standard costing, explain personnel issues.

Case 502

Tanner Pharmaceuticals and the price of a new drug

Andrew Inkpen

This case explores issues of pharmaceutical drug prices in the light of competitive strategy.

Jack Stevens savoured his morning newspaper ritual before starting work as CEO of Dominion Health. In September 2024, this ritual had become less enjoyable. Stevens was the lead independent board member for Tanner Pharmaceuticals Inc. (Tanner), a major US pharmaceutical company. Tanner's most profitable product was a vaccine for the nulux virus with the brand name Zorstat. Tanner was the first company to launch a successful nulux vaccine. Unfortunately, accolades for Tanner were turning into brickbats. Tuesday's *New York Times* had the headline, 'Painted as Zorstat villain, Tanner's chief says she's no such thing'. *The Wall Street Journal wrote,* 'Tanner faces scrutiny over Zorstat price increases: criticisms mount after drugmaker raises cost of Nulux vaccine by 550% since 2020'. On Wednesday, the *New York Times* had an op-ed feature titled 'Stop immoral price gouging for life-saving Zorstat'. At a press conference that included questions about Zorstat, the White House press secretary said, 'Pharmaceutical companies often do real damage to their reputation by being greedy and jacking up prices in a way that victimizes vulnerable people'. On Thursday, Democratic presidential nominee Kanye West called the price increase 'outrageous'; Tanner's stock ended the day down by 6.2%.

In two days, Stevens would attend the annual meeting of Tanner independent directors. The Zorstat pricing controversy was on the agenda. Stevens would have to take and defend a position on Tanner's drug-pricing strategy. Inevitably, there would be a heated discussion on Zorstat and whether management was effectively driving shareholder value with drug-pricing decisions.

The pharmaceutical industry

The main goal of the pharmaceutical industry is to provide drugs that prevent infections, maintain health, and cure diseases. This industry directly affects the global population, so a number of international regulatory bodies monitor things like drug safety, patents, quality, and pricing. The industry includes several distinct sectors: patented drugs, generic (off patent) drugs, over-the-counter (OTC) products, and active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs), which are the chemicals used to manufacture drugs.

Pharmaceutical companies focused on R&D and patented drugs, such as Pfizer and Novartis, were consistently among the most profitable companies in the world. The cost of bringing a new drug to market was estimated at $2.6 billion.[1] New drug inventions were protected by patents.

The upstream activities in the pharmaceutical industry value chain were similar to those of other industries in the manufacturing sector. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry had only two drug distribution channels: prescriptions from doctors, and OTC. The US Food and Drug Administration regulated both channels. Because pharmaceutical drugs directly affect millions of people's health, strict regulations and oversight existed to ensure safety and quality at each step in the value chain.

Total global pharmaceutical sales were expected to grow in line with overall health care spending and global economic growth. The main factors driving health care demand included ageing populations, the rise of chronic disease, and the increase in innovative and expensive treatments for disease such as cancer and Hepatitis C.

Source: Thunderbird School of Global Management case No. TB0477 by Andrew Inkpen.

Drug prices

The prices of patented drugs varied from country to country and depended on various factors, such as the regulatory environment, the drug distribution systems, the degree to which buyers are public or private, and the nature of health care and insurance systems. The United States and Norway, a country with a much higher GDP per capita than the United States, found that US prices were higher than Norwegian prices for 93% of 40 top-branded drugs available in both countries.[2]

In many countries, including Norway, a government health care system negotiated drug prices and in some cases opted not to buy certain drugs if there were questions about their efficacy. In the United States, governments were not involved in drug-pricing decisions. The pharmaceutical companies defended their US pricing practices as necessary to recover the costs of drug development and testing. Companies argued that if the United States had pricing controls similar to those in Europe and Canada, R&D spending would be cut and fewer new drugs would be developed.

Tanner Pharmaceuticals Inc

Tanner was founded in 1961 in Morristown New Jersey as a pharmaceutical products distributor. In 1956 the company began manufacturing OTC health products such as cough syrup. In 1966 Tanner received approval from the FDA to manufacture its first medicine, Penicillin G. The company broadened its product line to include other generic antibiotics as well as analgesics, antihistamines, diuretics, and tranquilisers. These products were sold to other pharmaceutical companies as private label products. In 1984 the company introduced its first branded generic product. Between 1993 and 1999, the company reduced its private labelling business and increased the number of branded products. In 2004 the company's revenue was more than $1.3 billion and its stock was added to the S&P500. In 2008 the company acquired Signet Laboratories, a company focused on vaccines. The Signet deal was Tanner's entry into pharmaceutical R&D and proprietary drugs.

Tanner's mission statement was as follows:

- To provide a continuum of quality healthcare services within our resource capabilities.
- To serve as a leader in a collaborative effort with the community to provide health education, support services and care for all of our citizens.

In 2017 Tanner was involved in a complex transaction involving the acquisition of the generics business of UK-based Tysol, the creation of a holding company in the Netherlands, and a large transfer of Tanner stock to a Dutch foundation called a *stichting*. The transaction, known in the United States as an inversion, shifted Tanner's tax domicile to the Netherlands and lowered US corporate income taxes. Exhibit 502.1 shows summary financial information for Tanner.

Zorstat price

In 2015 the nulux virus began spreading to many other countries, including the United States. In 2020 Tanner received FDA approval for a new nulux vaccine, which was branded as Zorstat. The company launched the product simultaneously in the United States and many other countries.

The controversy over the Zorstat price erupted in 2024 after a review by a drug-pricing analytics firm. The firm reported that in the past two years Tanner had doubled the price of a single vaccine dose from $50 to $100, and that since the drug was introduced, the price had risen 550%. Prices outside the United States were much lower. In Brazil a single dose could be purchased from a doctor for less than $20. In some countries in Africa, the price was even lower. Exhibit 502.2 shows some excerpts from media articles about pharmaceutical prices.

Tanner CEO Susan Steward, who was paid $21.6 million in 2023, defended the US price increases in an interview. She blamed high patient costs on insurers and drug-benefit managers who make money by negotiating bigger discounts off increasing list prices. She also said, 'You

Exhibit 502.1 Tanner financial data

Income Statement	2023	2022	2021	2020	2019
Total revenue	$9 429.3	$7 719.6	$6 909.1	$6 796.1	$6 129.8
Cost of sales	4 213.2	3 191.6	2 868.8	2 887.8	2 566.4
Gross profit	5 216.1	4 528.0	4 040.3	3 908.3	3 563.4
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	671.9	581.8	507.8	401.3	294.7
Selling, general and administrative	2 180.7	1 625.7	1 408.5	1 392.4	1 214.6
Litigation settlements, net	(97.4)	47.9	(14.6)	(3.1)	48.6
Other operating (income) expense	–	(80.0)	3.1	8.3	–
Income from operations	2 460.9	2 352.6	2 135.5	2 109.4	2 005.5
Interest expense	339.4	333.2	313.3	308.7	335.9
Other expense (income) expense	206.1	44.9	74.9	(3.5)	15.0
Income before income taxes and non-controlling interest	1 915.4	1 974.5	1 747.3	1 804.2	1 654.6
Income tax provision	67.7	41.4	120.8	161.2	115.8
Net income attributable to the non-controlling interest	(0.1)	(3.7)	(2.8)	(2.1)	(2.0)
Net income attributable to Tanner ordinary shareholders	$1 847.6	$1 929.4	$1 623.7	$1 640.9	$1 536.8
Selected balance sheet data					
Total assets	$22 267.7	$15 820.5	$15 086.6	$11 847.8	$11 530.5
Working capital	2 350.5	1 137.2	1 258.6	1 485.4	804.5
Short-term debt	1.3	330.7	439.8	299.0	128.1
Long-term debt including current portion of long-term debt	7 294.3	8 104.1	7 543.8	5 395.6	5 130.9
Total equity	9 765.8	3 276.0	2 959.9	3 355.8	3 504.8

can do good and do well, and I think we strike that balance around the globe. I am running a business. I am a for-profit business. I am not hiding from that.'

Steward indicated that Tanner would expand the number of uninsured patients getting free Zorstat shots. Stewart also said Tanner would consider a generic version of Zorstat with a lower list price, an unusual move since Tanner was the only company that could sell the product.

The directors' meeting

Although it was management's responsibility to make pricing decisions, Stevens decided the independent board members needed to provide guidance for top management. It looked likely that Congress would be holding hearings on drug prices. CEO Stewart could get called up to Capitol Hill next month to explain Zorstat's price.

Lowering Zorstat's US price could help the company's corporate reputation but would lower Tanner's profitability and lead to cutbacks in several promising research areas. Another factor for Stevens and the independent board members to consider was the executive compensation plan. Tanner had put a special incentive plan in place more than two years ago that rewarded executives if they hit profit targets. The compensation award was potentially worth as much as $82 million overall to the company's top five executives. Several large shareholders had criticised the plan when it was made public. Reducing the price of Zorstat could mean sharply lower compensation for executives. As a member of the Tanner Compensation Committee, Stevens had approved the incentive plan but was now concerned that perhaps it was driving decisions on drug prices that were jeopardising Tanner's corporate reputation and long-term performance.

Exhibit 502.2 Excerpts from media articles and op-eds about pharmaceutical prices

New York Times[1]

The rapid increase in the price of Zorstat has shocked consumers and lawmakers. Yet it is just one more outrageous instance of pharmaceutical companies raising prices for lifesaving medicines with no justification.

High-level scrutiny from Congress and others could conceivably shame Tanner into lowering prices. But if Congress were concerned about escalating drug prices, it would undertake a much broader look at the industry and possible 18% increase in general inflation.

Los Angeles Times[2]

The drug companies are ripping us off, pill by pill, shot by shot. Instead of working to earn reasonable returns by relieving our suffering and saving lives, they now focus on profits above all. Their main targets are insurance companies.

The pharmaceutical industry has learned to expect such windfall profits because it knows insurance companies can't say no to unique, patented drugs that have no competitors. The drug companies defend their pricing practices by stoking fears that curbing exorbitant profits will kill the golden goose of drug development.

CNBC[3]

For several decades, lows and regulations were created to allow intermediaries – the insurers and distributors – to profit from price increases. But now we need to strike a balance where we not only develop rewards for sound financial management, but also ensure there is little reward for price increases in the absence of a change in unit volume sales or increased product benefit.

We need to reward long-term investment in pipeline and innovation and those who reduce their costs without cannibalising innovation, and bring value to patients, doctors, and our economy.

We need to show patients, shareholders, and other stakeholders that we will take action. And we need to challenge other who participate in delivering health care – including generic companies, payers, PBMs, and health-care systems – to do the same.

---

[1] www.nytimes.com/2016/08/25/opinion/another-drug-pricing-ripoff.html

[2] www.latimes.com/opinion/op-ed/la-oe-stone-solvadi-drug-pricing-20160705-snap-story.html

[3] www.cnbc.com/2016/09/16/heres-how-we-break-the-cycle-of-outrageous-drug-price-increases-commentary.html

Stevens knew that Tanner was not the first US pharmaceutical company subject to criticism over its pricing practices and would not be the last. Health care costs were a regular source of debate in the United States, especially during presidential campaigns. Outside the United States, Tanner was being hailed as a savior for its success with the nulux vaccine, and its pricing practices generated little controversy.

Notes

1 Tufts Center for the Study of Drug Development (2014) 'Cost to develop and win marketing approval for a new drug is $2.6 Billion', Press Release (18 November).

2 J. Whalen (2015) 'Why the U.S. pays more than other countries for drugs', *Wall Street Journal* (1 December).

Question

Do you agree with Tanner's pricing strategy?

Case 503

Osram

John Shank and Lawrence Carr

This case highlights the trade-off faced by organisations between traditionally used consumables, and newer, more efficient ones that have a higher initial cost. The case requires the analysis of the potential savings made by more efficient consumables.

Larry Carter was feeling very optimistic about the new product he wanted to introduce in the European market, the 'Dulux' Compact Fluorescent Lamp. He had lined up two potential test market sites, pending a final pricing decision. Larry's problem now was to determine how to price the Dulux bulbs to provide good value to both end-use customers and Osram's distributors while also earning as good a profit as possible. His compensation as president of Osram Europe (OEU) was largely based on the profitability of the business.

Osram EU's parent company, Osram GmbH, is a German-based lighting firm with €1.5 billion in annual sales. It is part of the German electrical giant Siemens AG (€70 billion in sales). Osram competes in a €12 billion worldwide lightbulb market with a very strong position in North and South America. In 1989, Osram started a new subsidiary, Osram Europe (OEU), to try to compete in the very attractive European market. The European market represents 50% of world lighting demand, but it is dominated by three major competitors: GE, Sylvania and Philips. OEU grew very rapidly (25% per year) during its first 10 years, pursuing a niche strategy. OEU, however, was only participating on the fringe of the market. The three dominant players focused primarily on large segments in both the consumer and commercial lightbulb markets. Sales for OEU peaked in 1994 and seemed stuck at €60 million in 2001. This was only 4% of the total European commercial market for 2001, but it was 50% of the speciality segments in which OEU concentrated. Carter felt it was unlikely he could do better than a 50% market share, so his only realistic hope for further high growth, which Siemens expected of him, was to tackle new segments.

A new product opportunity

In 2001, during a factory visit in Germany, the OEU management team was introduced to a patented, innovative light source called Compact Fluorescent Lamps (CFL). Similar in size to an incandescent bulb, CFL bulbs emit the same 'colour' of light (colour temperature 2800 Kelvin). The big differences with CFL are that they last about ten times as long and consume only about one-fifth of the energy. For example, an 18 W CFL bulb provides the light of a 100 W incandescent bulb while consuming only 18% of the energy and lasting 10 000 hours, versus about 1000 hours. Of course, this kind of performance comes at a price. The normal incandescent 100 W bulb costs about 18 cents to manufacture and sells retail for about €1.20. The CFL 18 W bulb costs well over €2.00 to manufacture. The retail selling price is yet to be determined. Typically, bulb prices did not vary with wattage. The ten-times life and 80% energy savings factors were thought to more than justify a substantially higher price that would more than compensate for the significantly higher manufacturing cost. 'Customer value' for an 18 W CFL bulb, replacing 10 000 hours of use with a 100 W incandescent bulb (at €0.14 per kWh) is €78.00, as shown below:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Annual cost for the incandescent bulb} &= €1.20 + \text{Power cost}\,(1000\,\text{hr} \times 100\,\text{W}) \\ &= 100\,\text{kWh} \times €.14 = €14.00) \\ &= €15.20\end{aligned}$$

Source: Adapted from Shank, J. and Carr, L. (2002) 'Osram', IMA *Cases from Management Accounting Practice,* Volume 17 (Montvale, NJ: Institute of Management Accounting Practice).

$$\text{10-year present value (10\%) of €15.20 per year} = €93.40$$

For the 18 W CFL bulb, 10 years of energy cost has a present value (PV) of €15.40 as shown below:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{1000 hours per year} \times \text{18 W} &= \text{18 kWh} \times €.14\\ &= €2.50 \text{ per year}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{10-year PV (10\%) of €2.50 per year} = €15.40$$

$$\text{Customer value of the CFL bulb} = €93.40 - €15.40 = €78.00$$

In theory, a consumer should be willing to pay up to €78.00 for the alternative CFL bulb. OEU management was confident that the CFL product had high potential in the European market. They were pleased to have a proprietary technology to compete against the big three in larger segments. The technological superiority would give them immediate credibility with end-users and distributors. Philips Europe owned the European distribution rights to CFL bulbs manufactured in the USA through joint venture agreements with Siemens. OEU could pay Philips a royalty on imported CFL bulbs, or manufacture bulbs in the EU to avoid the royalty. Siemens would license the manufacturing patent to OEU for a nominal fee. Carter was reluctant to commit to EU manufacturing until he was sure of the demand. He wanted to do some test marketing, using bulbs imported from the USA, to introduce the new product.

Market segmentation

The European lighting market can be divided into two basic segments: commercial and consumer. The latter is the channel for retail sales for home use. The product is ultimately purchased from supermarkets, drugstores, hardware stores, lighting stores or mass merchandisers. Mass merchandisers buy bulbs direct from manufacturers. Other outlets use wholesale distributors.

The commercial segment provides lighting for hotels, factories, hospitals, offices, schools, theatres, scientific laboratories, street and sign lighting, and retail lighting fixture salesrooms. Eighty per cent of commercial bulbs are bought through wholesale distributors. Because GE, Sylvania and Philips are so well established with the major distribution companies, Carter thought his best bet for introducing CFL was to target segments that do not use distributors. Because OEU is far too small to deal with the mass merchandisers or the government, Carter decided to explore two particular niches within the commercial segment: (1) energy-saving converters, which are not currently large buyers of lightbulbs; and (2) lighting maintenance companies which supply and maintain bulbs for businesses such as hotels, offices or casinos.

The energy savings converters (ESCO) market

Babson Energy Savers (BES) is a successful ESCO located in London. Its business is energy-saving remodelling projects, such as heating and air-conditioning systems, low-voltage versus high-voltage power conversions, and automatic switching controls. A small part of its current business involves saving building owners energy costs through conversion to fluorescent fixtures. For example, a fluorescent lamp, which consumes about 32 W of power, provides the equivalent of 150 W of incandescent light.

The major drawbacks to fluorescent light are the high cost of the bulb, the harsh light and glare, and the bulky fixtures which are awkward to install and service, and are very unattractive. CFL bulbs could create a new business opportunity for firms such as BES. CFL's small size and simple ballasting allow a much wider range of fixture design options than with fluorescent, as well as the huge energy savings and long-life advantages.

Once the idea was explained to them, the BES engineers shared OEU management's enthusiasm for the compact fluorescent lamp. BES felt that, with proper pricing of the CFL lamp, the cost savings would be very attractive for many of its customers.

In order to test the new product in this segment, OEU convinced BES to propose using CFL lighting as part of an overall energy savings project for one of London's old classic hotels, the Opaque Gardens. OEU would provide financing to the hotel for the cost of retrofitting existing fixtures (12% annual rate and payments over 15 years) through Siemens' captive finance subsidiary. OEU would guarantee the hotel annual savings in power cost at least double the annual payment on the retrofitting loan.

The hotel lighting configuration is as follows:

- *Rooms:* 10 floors with 25 rooms per floor. Each room averages 200 occupied days per year. There are 9 lights in each room (4 table or vanity, 3 overhead and 2 wall) at 100 W each (cost €1.20 each). Average usage per room rental is a total of 7 hours.
- *Halls:* 10 floors with 24 overhead lights per floor (one 50 W bulb each). Average usage of 24 hours per day.
- Bulb life for the hotel, using incandescent bulbs was 800 hours for room lamps and 1400 hours for hall lights. Turning bulbs on and off shortens the useful life.

The cost of electricity in London is high, averaging €.14 per kilowatt-hour (kWh). In other parts of Europe, power costs can be half that rate.

The hotel was currently buying about 1900 bulbs per year:

2250 room bulbs (1250×9) at 5-year life per bulb $(200 \times 7 = 1400 \div 9 = 155$ vs 800)
$= 450$ bulbs per year
240 hall bulbs at 6 changes per year $(8760 \text{ hours} \div 1400) = 1440$ bulbs per year
$450 \div 1440 = 1890 \approx 1900$ bulbs

Bulbs are changed by the hotel maintenance staff as they burn out. BES cost to retrofit the hotel light fixtures is as follows:

A typical incandescent or fluorescent overhead fixture costs €7 for material (reflector, ballast, igniters and housing modifications) and one half-hour of electrical technician labour at €18 per hour to retrofit for CFL use. To retrofit a table or vanity fixture costs €2.50 for material and one quarter-hour of labour. Wall fixtures cost €3 for material and 40 minutes to retrofit.

BES electrical technicians would do the conversion job. Lighting fixtures typically have a life of 15 years.

The lighting maintenance contractors (LMC) market

The second niche market that looked attractive to OEU for CFL bulbs was lighting maintenance contractors (LMCs). This segment bought €144 million in incandescent and fluorescent bulbs in 2001 and was supplied directly by the big three. The ESCO segment was buying only about €36 million in fluorescent bulbs in 2001. Even if OEU could double the ESCO market by switching it to CFL bulbs, the potential was only half that of LMCs.

Farnham Lighting Service (FLS) is based in Farnham, Surrey. FLS contracts with building managers to change the many thousands of lightbulbs that illuminate casino interiors, exterior signs and car parks. A typical job could have 12 000 to 18 000 bulbs. For the Mayfair casino in London, the marquee billboard alone has 33 000 bulbs.

FLS charges the casino a set monthly fee based on the number of light sources. The fee includes labour, equipment usage and the cost of the lightbulbs themselves. Access to the lightbulb can be very difficult, requiring lifts and other power equipment for changes. This is a key factor in determining the monthly fee. Normally, longer-life light sources (fluorescent) are chosen for the least accessible locations. Research showed that burned-out lighting is very unattractive, keeping customers away from the casinos. The standard practice for lighting service companies is to totally relamp a section, known as 'group relamping', at 80% of the bulbs' expected life. This virtually eliminates burned-out lights.

In order to test the new product in this segment, OEU convinced FLS to propose a conversion to CFL bulbs for one large customer, the Victoria Casino. The casino has 15 000 incandescent fixtures (50 W and 100 W) with an expected life of 800 or 1400 hours, similar to a hotel, and 2000 25 W fluorescent fixtures with a rated life of 8000 hours. The casino stays open 24 hours a day. FLS does not relamp the hotel room bulbs, which are changed as they burn out by the regular maintenance staff. It relamps the hall and casino incandescent bulbs 8 times per year (8760 hours ÷ 1400 × 0.8) and the fluorescent fixtures approximately 1.4 times per year (8760 ÷ 8000 × 0.8).With an average labour rate of €20 per hour, an average of 5 minutes to change each bulb, and equipment rental at about €300 per day, the CFL story is very appealing to Farnham.

The CFL bulb offers lower power cost to the casino (18 W bulbs vs 100 W, and 9 W vs 25 or 50 W). CFL bulbs offer lower changeover cost to the service company due to longer bulb lives. The casino would also enjoy less downtime for its 24-hour gambling operation. Sometimes bulbs could be changed without closing down the gambling, but not always. Downtime means lost revenue from the gamblers who move to a different casino.

Once they move, players usually do not return immediately the bulb change is complete. The Victoria Casino, which grosses €250 million a year, once estimated that lost time from lightbulb changes costs about €100 000 each year in lost revenue at, probably, 75% gross margin.

The changeover requires the purchase of more expensive bulbs and a one-time retrofitting of all fixtures to accommodate CFL-compatible sockets. The lighting configuration for the Victoria Casino is as follows:

- A 1000-room hotel, with 9 bulbs (100 W) per room and 1000 hall lights (50 W). This is a total of 10 000 incandescent bulbs.
- The casino, with 5000 100 W incandescent bulbs and 2000 25 W fluorescent bulbs.
- The casino and the hotel halls were lighted 24 hours a day. The hotel rooms average 200 occupied nights per year with 7 hours of bulb usage, combined, per stay.

The one-time retrofitting cost for light fixtures would be:

3000 wall fixtures @ €30 each

5000 overhead fixtures @ €35 each

Power cost is €.12 per kWh in Victoria

FLS uses an eight-person crew at the Victoria Casino. The crew averages 7 working hours on each 8-hour shift. The crew is scheduled to spend about 76 days a year on site. The monthly fee is €20 500 (€246 000 per year), which breaks down as follows:

Bulbs: 48 000 incandescent bulbs at €1.00 each	=	€48 000
2800 fluorescent bulbs at €6.00	=	€16 800
Labour: 50 800 bulb changes at 5 minutes (average) per bulb	=	4234 hours
Paid hours = 76 days × 8 hr × 8 persons = 4864 hours × €20 per hour	=	€97 280
Equipment rental (at €300 per crew-day) = €300 × 76	=	€22 800
Subtotal	=	€184 880
Mark-up to cover overhead and profit	=	€61 120
Total	=	€246 000

The CFL bulbs exhibit much smaller variation in bulb life compared with incandescent, whether bulbs are frequently turned on and off or left burning. FLS could go to 'group relamping' at 90% of the 10 000-hour-rated CFL life with very little chance of burned-out bulbs.

Source: Adapted from Shank, J. and Carr, L. (2002) 'Osram', IMA *Cases from Management Accounting Practice*, Volume 17 (Montvale, NJ: Institute of Management Accounting Practice).

Questions

1 **a** For the ESCO test market job, what is the present value of CFL bulbs to the hotel over the 15 years life of the fixtures? (This figure will be equivalent to energy savings and labour saving on bulb replacements, less the cost to retrofit all the fixtures, plus current expenditures for bulb replacement.) This is the maximum price the hotel should be willing to pay BES for the conversion job.

b What price should OEU charge BES for the CFL bulbs for the Opaque Gardens Hotel job?

c What price should OEU charge the hotel for replacement bulbs?

2 **a** For the LMC test market, what is the value to FLS in the first year from the Victoria Casino contract if FLS switched to CFL bulbs? (This figure will be equivalent to the labour and equipment rental savings from longer bulb life.) This is the maximum amount, which FLS might pay to OEU for the 8000 new CFL bulbs (5000 18 W bulbs and 3000 9 W bulbs). Of course, FLS would also know that the casino was achieving large savings which might be shared with FLS and OEU.

b What is the average annual saving to the Victoria Casino, over the 15-year life of the retrofitted fixtures, of switching to CFL bulbs? (This figure will be equivalent to energy savings, less the retrofit charge, plus the value of reduced casino downtime.) Assume the retrofit contractor earns a 40% gross margin and Siemens' captive finance subsidiary will finance the retrofit with a 15-year instalment loan at 12% interest. This is the maximum amount, which the casino might be willing to pay to FLS for using CFL bulbs. Of course, the casino would also know that FLS was saving on changeover costs.

c What price should OEU charge FLS for the 8000 replacement bulbs each year?

3 Which of these two markets should OEU pursue? Both?

APPENDIX A
Solutions to selected exercises

CHAPTER 1

Exercise 1.11

This problem can form the basis of an introductory discussion of the entire field of management accounting.

1 The focus of management accounting is on assisting internal users in their pursuit of better decisions, whereas the focus of financial accounting is on helping external users seeking to make better decisions. Management accounting attempts to assist in making most decisions, including pricing, product choices, investments in equipment, making or buying goods and services, and manager rewards.

2 Generally accepted accounting principles affect both management accounting and financial accounting. However, an organisation's management accounting system is not governed by generally accepted accounting principles. For example, if an organisation wants to account for assets on the basis of replacement costs for internal purposes, no outside agency can prohibit such accounting.

Exercise 1.12

Report statement	Purpose
a	Formulating overall strategies . . .
b	Meeting external regulatory . . .
c	Performance measurement of . . . people
d	Cost planning and cost control
e	Product/customer emphasis decisions

Exercise 1.22

1 Companies with 'codes of conduct' frequently have a 'supplier clause' that prohibits their employees from accepting 'material' (in some cases, any) gifts from suppliers. The motivations include:

- *Integrity/conflict of interest*. Suppose von Stolzing recommends that a Pogner 1-2-3 product subsequently be purchased by Beckmesser. This recommendation could be because he felt he owed them an obligation as his trip to the Marbella conference was fully paid for by Pogner.
- *The appearance of a conflict of interest*. Even if the Pogner 1-2-3 product is the superior one at that time, other suppliers will probably have a different opinion. They may believe that the way to sell products to Beckmesser is via 'fully-paid junkets to resorts'. Those not wanting to do business this way may downplay future business activities with Beckmesser even though Beckmesser may gain much from such activities.

Some executives view the meeting as 'suspect' from the start given the Costa del Sol location and its 'rest and recreation' tone.

2 The pros of attending the user meeting are as follows:

- Able to learn more about the software products of Pogner.
- Able to interact with other possible purchasers and get their opinions.

- Able to influence the future product development plans of Pogner in a way that will benefit Beckmesser. An example is Pogner subsequently developing software modules tailored to food product companies.
- Saves Beckmesser money. Visiting suppliers and their customers typically costs money whereas Pogner is paying for the Marbella conference.

The cons of attending are:

- The ethical issues raised in requirement 1.
- Negative morale effects on other Beckmesser employees who do not get to attend the Marbella conference. These employees may reduce their trust and respect for von Stolzing's judgement, arguing he has been on a 'supplier-paid vacation'.

The conditions on attending that Beckmesser might impose are:

- A sizeable part of time in Marbella has to be devoted to business rather than recreation.
- The decision on which Beckmesser executive attends is *not* made by the person who attends (this reduces the appearance of a conflict of interest).
- The person attending (von Stolzing) does not have the final say on a purchase decision (this reduces the appearance of a conflict of interest).
- Beckmesser executives go only when a new major purchase is being contemplated (to avoid the conference becoming a regular 'vacation').

A Conference Board publication *Corporate Ethics* asked executives about a comparable situation:

- 76% said Beckmesser and von Stolzing face an ethical consideration in deciding whether to attend.
- 71% said von Stolzing should not attend as the payment of expenses is a 'gift' within the meaning of a credible corporate ethics policy.

3 Concerning the pros of having a written code, the Conference Board outlines the following reasons why companies adopt codes of ethics:

- Signals commitment of senior management to ethics.
- Promotes public trust in the credibility of the company and its employees.
- Signals the managerial professionalism of its employees.
- Provides guidance to employees as to how difficult problems are to be handled. If adhered to, employees will avoid many actions that are, or appear to be, unethical.
- Drafting of the policy (and its redrafting in the light of ambiguities) can assist management in anticipating and preparing for ethical issues not yet encountered.

The cons of having a written code are:

- Can give the appearance that all issues have been covered. Issues not covered may appear to be 'acceptable' even when they are not.
- Can constrain the entrepreneurial activities of employees. Forces people always to 'behave by the book'.
- The cost of developing such a code can be 'high' if it consumes a lot of employee time.

CHAPTER 2

Exercise 2.12

1

	Fixed costs	Variable costs
Schedule 1	€8000	–
Schedule 2	€2000	€20 per person
Schedule 3	–	€50 per person

2

	50 people	200 people	500 people
Schedule 1			
Total costs	€8 000	€8 000	€8 000
Unit costs	160	40	16
Schedule 2			
Total costs	€3 000*	€6 000†	€12 000‡
Unit costs	60	30	24
Schedule 3			
Total costs	€2 500	€10 000	€25 000
Unit costs	50	50	50

* (€20 × 50) + €2000.
† (€20 × 200) + €2000.
‡ (€20 × 500) + €2000.

Schedule 1 has €8000 fixed costs; as the attendance increases, the unit cost decreases. Schedule 2 has both a fixed cost component (€2000) and a variable cost component (€20); the spreading of the €2000 amount over more units as attendance increases causes the unit cost to decrease. Schedule 3 has only a variable cost component; there is no change in unit cost as attendance increases.

Exercise 2.23

1

Target closing stock of finished goods, 31 Dec. 2023	12 000 units	
Forecasted sales for 2023	122 000 units	
Total finished goods required in 2023	134 000 units	
Opening finished goods, 1 Jan. 2023	9 000 units	
Finished goods production required in 2023	125 000 units	

2

Revenues (122 000 units sold × €4.80)		€585 600
Cost of units sold:		
Opening stock of finished goods, 1 Jan. 2023	€20 970	
Cost of goods manufactured	281 250	
Cost of goods available for sale	302 220	
Closing stock of finished goods, 31 Dec. 2023	27 000	275 220
Gross margin		310 380
Operating costs:		
Marketing, distribution and customer-service costs	204 700	
Administrative costs	50 000	254 700
Operating profit		€55 680

Supporting computations

	Manufacturing costs for 125 000 units		
	Variable	Fixed	Total
Direct materials costs	€175 000	–	€175 000
Direct manufacturing labour costs	37 500	–	37 500
Plant energy costs	6 250	–	6 250
Indirect manufacturing labour costs	12 500	16 000	28 500
Other indirect manufacturing costs	10 000	24 000	34 000
Cost of goods manufactured	€241 250	€40 000	€281 250

- Direct materials costs = 250 000 kg × €0.70 per kg = €175 000.
- The average unit manufacturing costs in xxx1 are €281 250 ÷ 125 000 units = €2.25.
- Finished goods, 31 Dec. 2022 = 12 000 × €2.25 = €27 000.

Variable marketing, distrib. and customer-service costs, 122 000 × €1.35	€164 700
Fixed marketing, distrib. and customer-service costs	40 000
Fixed administrative costs	50 000
	€254 700

Exercise 2.24

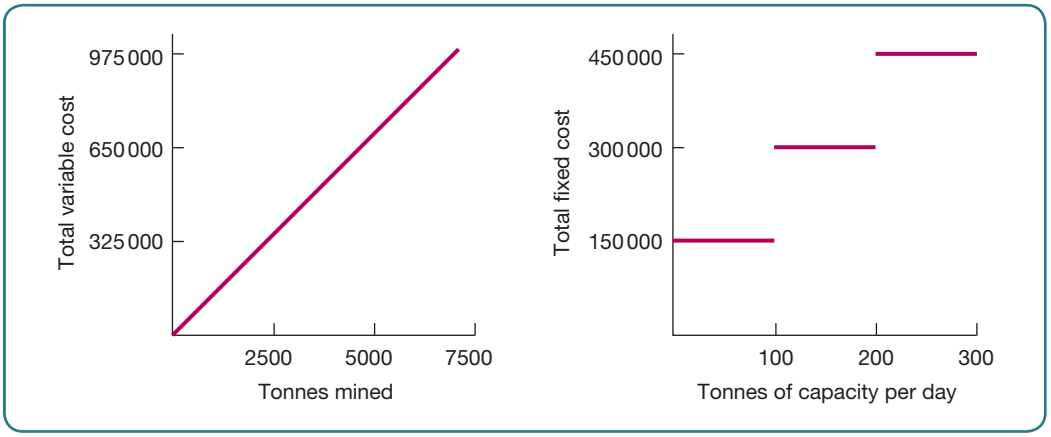
1 Variable cost per tonne of beach sand mined:

Subcontractor	€80
Government tax	50
Total	€130

Fixed costs per month:

0–100 tonnes of capacity per day = €150 000
101–200 tonnes of capacity per day = €300 000
201–300 tonnes of capacity per day = €450 000

2



The concept of relevant range is potentially relevant for both graphs. However, the question does not place restrictions on the unit variable costs. The relevant ranges for the total fixed costs are from 0 to 100 tonnes; from 101 to 200 tonnes; from 201 to 300 tonnes, and so on. Within these ranges, the fixed costs do not change in total.

3

Tonnes mined per day (1)	Tonnes mined per month (2) = (1) × 25	Fixed unit cost per tonne (3) = FC ÷ (2)	Variable unit cost per tonne (4)	Total unit cost per tonne (5) = (3) + (4)
a 180	4500	€300 000 ÷ 4500 = €66.67	€130	€196.67
b 220	5500	€450 000 ÷ 5500 = €81.82	€130	€211.82

The unit cost for 220 tonnes mined per day is €211.82, while for 180 tonnes it is only €196.67. This difference is caused by the fixed cost increment from 101 to 200 tonnes being spread over an increment of 80 tonnes, while the fixed cost increment from 201 to 300 tonnes is spread only over an increment of 20 tonnes.

CHAPTER 3

Exercise 3.11

1

		Budgeted fixed indirect costs	Budgeted hours	Budgeted fixed indirect costs rate per hour	Budgeted variable indirect cost rate per hour	Budgeted total indirect cost rate per hour
a	Jan.–March	€50 000	20 000	2.50	10	12.50
	April–June	50 000	10 000	5.00	10	15.00
	July–Sept.	50 000	4 000	12.50	10	22.50
	Oct.–Dec.	50 000	6 000	8 .33	10	18.33
b	Jan.–Dec.	€200 000	40 000	5.00	10	15.00

2 a All four jobs use 10 hours of professional labour time. The only difference in job costing is the indirect cost rate. The quarterly-based indirect job cost rates are:

Roquelin:	$(10 \times €12.50) = €125.00$
Leduc:	$(6 \times €12.50) + (4 \times €15.00) = €135.00$
Dudet:	$(4 \times €15.00) + (6 \times €22.50) = €195.00$
Leclerc:	$(5 \times €12.50) + (2 \times €22.50) + (3 \times €18.33) = €162.50$

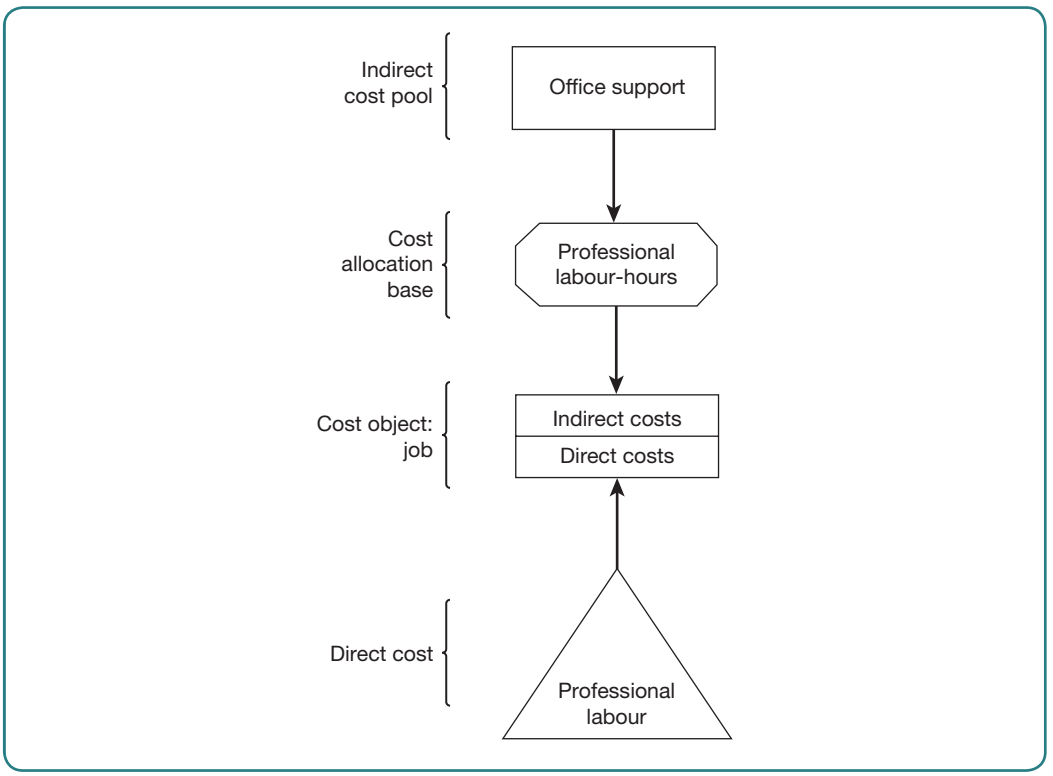
	Roquelin	Leduc	Dudet	Leclerc
Revenues, €65 × 10	€650	650	650	650.00
Direct costs, €30 × 10	300	300	300	300.00
Indirect costs	125	135	195	162.50
Total costs	425	435	495	462.50
Operating profit	€225	215	155	187.50

b Using annual-based indirect job cost rates, all four customers will have the same operating profit:

Revenues, €65 × 10	€650
Direct costs, €30 × 10	300
Indirect costs, €15 × 10	150
Total costs	450
Operating profit	€200

3 All four jobs use 10 hours of professional labour time. Using the quarterly-based indirect cost rates, there are four different operating profit as the work done on them is completed in different quarters. In contrast, using the annual indirect cost rate all four customers have the same operating profit. All these different operating profit figures for jobs with the same number of professional labour-hours are due to the allocation of fixed indirect costs.

An overview of the Tax-Assistance job-costing system is:



Exercise 3.17

1 a Budgeted indirected-cost rate $= \dfrac{\text{Budgeted indirected cost}}{\text{Budgeted direct labour-hours}} = \dfrac{\text{SKr 8 000 000}}{\text{1 600 000 hours}}$

$=$ SKR 50 per direct labour-hour

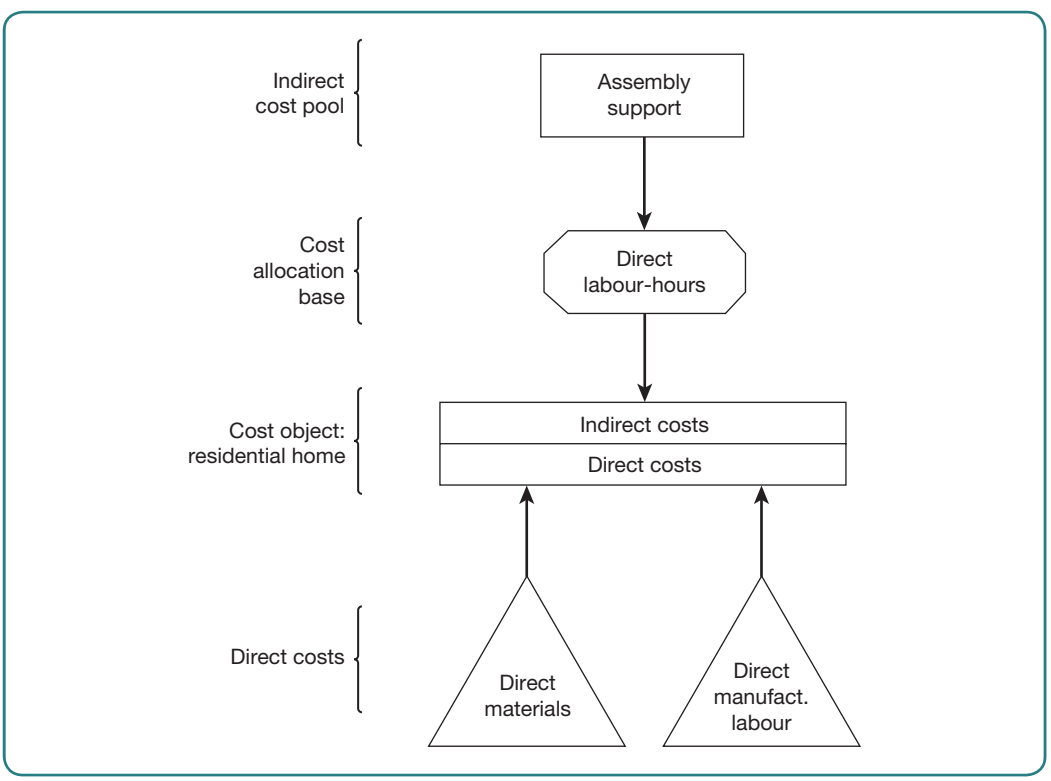
b Actual indirect-cost rate $= \dfrac{\text{Actual indirect costs}}{\text{Actual direct labour-hour}} = \dfrac{\text{SKr 6 888 000}}{\text{164 000 hours}}$

$=$ SKr 42 per direct labour-hour

2

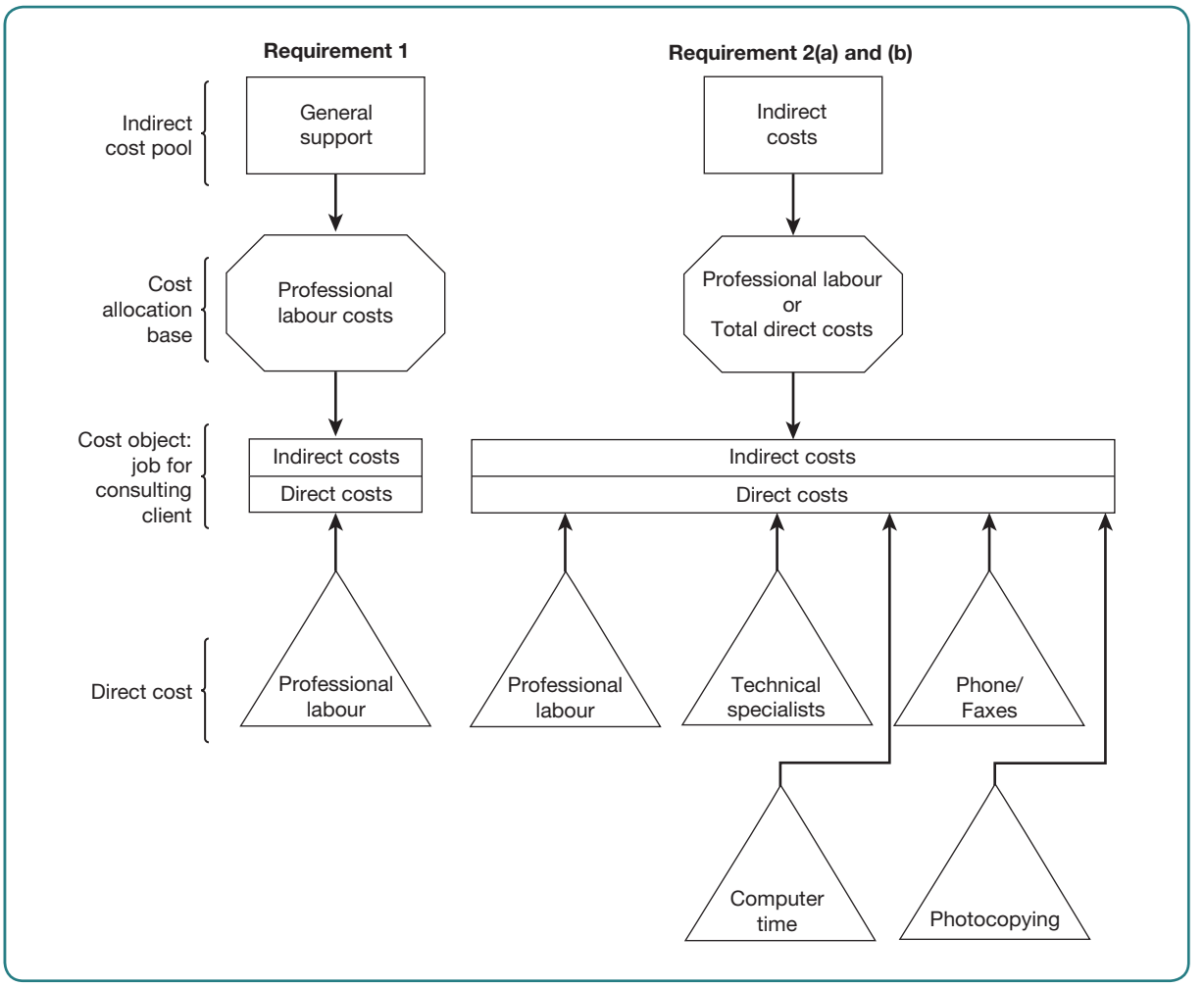
	Mora model	Solna model
a Normal costing		
Direct costs		
Direct materials	SKr 106 450	SKr 127 604
Direct labour	36 276	41 410
	142 726	169 014
Indirect costs		
Assembly support (SKr 50 × 900; 1010)	45 000	50 500
	45 000	50 500
Total costs	SKr 187 726	SKr 219 514
b Actual costing		
Direct costs		
Direct materials	SKr 106 450	SKr 127 604
Direct labour	36 276	41 410
	142 726	169 014
Indirect costs		
Assembly support (SKr 42 × 900; 1010)	37 800	42 420
	37 800	42 420
Total costs	SKr 180 526	SKr 211 434

3 Normal costing enables Idergard to report a job cost as soon as the job is completed, assuming that both the direct materials and direct labour costs are known at the time of use/work. Once the 900 direct labour-hours are known for the Mora model (June 2022), Idergard can calculate the SKr 187 726 cost figure using normal costing. In contrast, Idergard has to wait until the December 2022 year-end to calculate the SKr 180 526 cost figure using actual costing.



Exercise 3.20

1 Actual indirect cost rate = 190% of professional labour-euros.



2 **a** Actual indirect cost rate = 135% of professional labour-euros
b Actual indirect cost rate = 87.1% of total direct costs

3

		Client 304	Client 308
a	Direct costs	€200 000	€200 000
	Indirect costs, 190% × €200 000	380 000	380 000
	Total costs	€580 000	€580 000
b	Direct costs	€260 000	€340 000
	Indirect costs, 135% × €200 000	270 000	270 000
	Total costs	€530 000	€610 000
c	Direct costs	€260 000	€340 000
	Indirect costs, 87.1% × direct costs	226 460	296 140
	Total costs	€486 460	€636 140

4

		Client 304	Client 308
a	Total costs	€580 000	€580 000
	Billings, 120% × total costs	696 000	696 000
b	Total costs	€530 000	€610 000
	Billings, 120% × total costs	636 000	732 000
c	Total costs	€486 460	€636 140
	Billings, 120% × total costs	583 750	763 370

5 Three guidelines for costing system refinement are:

(i) *Direct cost tracing.* Costing systems (b) and (c) increase the percentage of total costs that are directly traced to the cost object. Other things being equal, (b) or (c) is preferred to (a).

(ii) *Indirect cost pools.* Costing systems (b) and (c) have the same single indirect cost pool and hence this guideline does not assist in choosing between them.

(iii) *Cost allocation bases.* Analysis could be made of whether professional labour costs or total direct costs is the cost driver of the costs in the indirect cost pool. Note that this analysis may lead to more than one indirect cost pool being selected. That is, costing systems (b) and (c) may be further refined.

CHAPTER 4

Exercise 4.12

1

Work in Progress – Assembly	720 000	
Creditors		720 000

To record €720 000 of direct materials purchased and used in production during February

2

Work in Progress – Assembly	760 000	
Various accounts		760 000

To record €760 000 of conversion costs for February; examples include energy, manufacturing supplies, all manufacturing labour, and plant depreciation

3

Work in Progress – Testing	1 368 000	
Work in Progress – Assembly		1 368 000

To record 9000 units completed and transferred from Assembly to Testing during February at

$$€152 \times 9000 \text{ units} = €1\,368\,000$$

Postings to the Work in Progress – Assembly account follows.

Work in Progress – Assembly Department

Opening stock, 1 February	0	3 Transferred out to	
1 Direct materials	720 000	Work in Progress – Testing	1 368 000
2 Conversion costs	760 000		
Closing stock, 28 February	112 000		

Exercise 4.14

1 The reported monthly cost per equivalent unit of either direct materials or conversion costs is lower when the plant manager overestimates the percentage of completion of closing work in progress; the overestimate increases the denominator and thus decreases the cost per equivalent whole unit. By reporting a lower cost per equivalent unit, the plant manager increases the likelihood of being in the top three ranked plants for the benchmarking comparisons.

A plant manager can manipulate the monthly estimate of percentage of completion by understating the number of steps yet to be undertaken before a suit becomes a finished good.

2 There are several options available:

- **a** Khrishna shows the letters to the line executive to whom the plant managers report directly (say, the corporate manager of manufacturing). This approach is appropriate if the letters allege it is the plant managers who are manipulating the percentage of completion estimates.
- **b** Khrishna herself shows the letters to the plant managers. This approach runs the danger of the plant managers ignoring or reacting negatively to someone to whom they do not report in a line mode questioning their behaviour. Much will depend here on how Khrishna raises the issue. Unsigned letters need not have much credibility unless they contain specific details.
- **c** Khrishna discusses the letters with the appropriate plant accountants without including the plant manager in the discussion. While the plant accountant has responsibility for preparing the accounting reports from the plant, the plant accountant in most cases reports directly to the plant manager. If this reporting relationship exists, Khrishna may create a conflict of interest situation for the plant accountant. Only if the plant accountant reports directly to the corporate accountant and has a 'dotted-line' reporting responsibility to the plant manager should Khrishna show the letters to the plant accountant without simultaneously showing them to the plant manager.

3 The plant accountant's ethical responsibilities to Khrishna and to Manchester Suits should be the same. These include:

- *Competence*. The plant accountant is expected to have the competence to make equivalent unit computations. This competence does not always extend to making estimates of the percentage of completion of a product. In Manchester Suits' case, however, the products are probably easy to understand and observe. Hence, a plant accountant could obtain reasonably reliable evidence on percentage of completion at a specific plant.
- *Objectivity*. The plant accountant should not allow the possibility of the division being written up favourably in the company newsletter to influence the way equivalent unit costs are calculated.

4 Khrishna could seek evidence on possible manipulations as follows:

- Instruct plant accountants to report detailed breakdowns on the stages of production and then conduct end-of-month audits to verify the actual stages completed for closing work in progress.
- Examine trends over time in closing work in progress. Divisions that report low amounts of closing work in progress relative to total production are not likely to be able to affect greatly equivalent cost amounts by manipulating percentage of completion estimates. Divisions that show sizeable quantities of total production in closing work in progress are more likely to be able to manipulate equivalent cost computations by manipulating percentage of completion estimates.

Exercise 4.16

1 Solution Exhibit 4.16A calculates equivalent units of (a) opening work in progress and (b) work done in the current period for each cost element. To calculate equivalent units of opening work in progress, divide the value of opening work in progress by the cost per equivalent unit of opening work in progress. Similarly, to calculate equivalent units of work done in the current period divide total costs added in the current period by the cost per equivalent unit of work done in the current period.

Solution Exhibit 4.16A

Step 3: Compute equivalent units under the weighted-average method, thermo-assembly process of Le Roi du Plastique for June.

	Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
a *Equivalent unit costs of opening work in progress*			
Opening work in progress (given)	€90 000	–	€45 000
Divide by cost per equivalent unit of opening work in progress	÷€6	–	÷€5
Equivalent units of opening work in progress	15 000	–	9 000
b *Equivalent unit costs of work done in current period only*			
Costs added in current period (given)	€58 500	€57 000	€57 200
Divide by cost per equivalent unit of work done in current period	÷€6.50	÷€3	÷€5.20
Equivalent units of work done in current period only	9 000	19 000	11 000

Solution Exhibit 4.16B

Steps 1 and 2: Summarise output in physical units and compute equivalent units, thermo-assembly process of Le Roi du Plastique for June.

		(Step 2) Equivalent units		
Flow of production	(Step 1) Physical units	Transferred-in costs	Direct materials	Conversion costs
Completed and transferred out during current period	19 000	19 000	19 000	19 000
Add closing work in progress, (5000 × 100%; 5000 × 0%; 5000 × 20%)	5 000	5 000	0	1 000
Total accounted for	24 000	24 000	19 000	20 000
Deduct opening work in progress (15 000 × 100%; 15 000 × 0%; 15 000 × 60%)	15 000	15 000	0	9 000
Transferred in during current period	9 000			
Work done in current period only		9 000	19 000	11 000

2 and 3 See Solution Exhibit 4.16B.

Using information about physical units given in the exercise:

$$\begin{array}{lcccccc} \text{Physical units completed and transferred out} & = & \text{Physical units in opening work in progress} & + & \text{Physical units transferred-in during period} & - & \text{Physical units in closing work in progress} \\ & = & 15\,000 & + & 9000 & - & 5000 \\ & = & 19\,000 & & & & \end{array}$$

Equivalent units of opening work in progress and equivalent units of work done in current period (rows 4 and 5 of Solution Exhibit 4.16B) have been calculated in Solution Exhibit 4.16A. Equivalent units of units completed and transferred out for each cost element equal the 19 000 physical units completed and transferred out. Equivalent units of closing work in progress for each cost element are then given by:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Equivalent units} \\ \text{in closing work} \\ \text{in progress} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Equivalent units} \\ \text{in opening} \\ \text{work in progress} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{Equivalent units} \\ \text{of work done in} \\ \text{current period} \end{array} - \begin{array}{c} \text{Equivalent units} \\ \text{completed and} \\ \text{transferred out} \\ \text{during current} \\ \text{period} \end{array}$$

Equivalent units of transferred-in cost in closing work in progress	=	15 000 + 9000 − 19 000	=	5000 units
Equivalent units of direct materials in closing work in progress	=	0 + 19 000 − 19 000	=	0 units
Equivalent units of conversion costs in closing work in progress	=	9000 + 11 000 − 19 000	=	1000 units

3 a Percentage of completion of opening work-in-progress stock:

Transferred-in costs:	15 000 equivalent units ÷ 15 000 physical units	=	100%
Direct materials:	0 equivalent units ÷ 15 000 physical units	=	0%
Conversion costs:	9000 equivalent units ÷ 15 000 physical units	=	60%

b Percentage of completion of closing work-in-progress stock:

Transferred-in costs:	5000 equivalent units ÷ 5000 physical units	=	100%
Direct materials:	0 equivalent units ÷ 5000 physical units	=	0%
Conversion costs:	1000 equivalent units ÷ 5000 physical units	=	20%

CHAPTER 5

Exercise 5.11

1 Total manufacturing overhead cost pool = €3 600 000 + €2 800 000 = €6 400 000.

Total direct manufacturing labour-hours:

500 cc:	10 000 × 2	=	20 000
1000 cc:	20 000 × 4	=	80 000
			100 000 hours

Manufacturing overhead cost per direct manufacturing labour-hour	=	€64

Manufacturing overhead costs allocated per unit to each brand:

500 cc:	2 × €64	=	€128
1000 cc:	4 × €64	=	€256

2 Machining cost pool = €3 600 000.

Machining hours:

500 cc:	10 000 × 8	=	80 000
1000 cc:	20 000 × 8	=	160 000
			240 000 hours

Machining cost per machining hour	=	€15

Each unit would be charged:

500 cc:	8 × €15	=	€120
1000 cc:	8 × €15	=	€120

General plant overhead cost pool	=	€2 800 000
Direct manufacturing labour-hours (from requirement 1)	=	100 000 hours
General plant overhead costs per direct manufacturing labour-hour	=	€28

Each unit would be charged:

500 cc:	2 × €28	=	€56
1000 cc:	4 × €28	=	€112

The total manufacturing overhead costs allocated per unit of each brand is:

500 cc:	Machining cost pool	8 × €15 =	€120
	General plant overhead cost pool	2 × €28 =	56
			€176
1000 cc:	Machining cost pool	8 × €15 =	€120
	General plant overhead cost pool	4 × €28 =	112
			€232

3 Use of two separate cost pools can provide more refined estimates of unit costs. Different cause-and-effect relationships may exist for the machining costs and the general plant overhead costs, which can be captured by the use of two different allocation bases.

The use of separate cost pools can also aid cost management at Azu-Cena as different cost improvement targets may be appropriate for each manufacturing overhead cost area.

Exercise 5.14

1 The total costs in the single-cost pool are fixed (€1 000 000) and variable (€2 000 000) = €3 000 000. Alxenor could use one of two allocation bases (budgeted usage or actual usage) given the information provided.

- Allocation to Iraklion based on budgeted usage: (60/200) × €3 000 000 = €900 000.
- Allocation to Iraklion based on actual usage: (120/240) × €3 000 000 = €1 500 000.

2 Using the dual-rate method (with separate fixed and variable cost pools), several combinations of the budgeted and actual usage allocation bases are possible:

Fixed cost pool. Total costs of €1 000 000:

- Allocation to Iraklion based on budgeted usage: (60/200) × €1 000 000 = €300 000.
- Allocation to Iraklion based on actual usage: (120/240) × €1 000 000 = €500 000.

Variable cost pool. Total costs of €2 000 000:

- Allocation to Iraklion based on budgeted usage: (60/200) × €2 000 000 = €600 000.
- Allocation to Iraklion based on actual usage: (120/240) × €2 000 000 = €1 000 000.

The combinations possible are:

Combination	Fixed-cost pool	Variable cost pool	Allocation function
I	Budgeted usage	Budgeted usage	= €300 000 + €600 000 = €900 000
II	Budgeted usage	Actual usage	= €300 000 + €1 000 000 = €1 300 000
III	Actual usage	Budgeted usage	= €500 000 + €600 000 = €1 100 000
IV	Actual usage	Actual usage	= €500 000 + €1 000 000 = €1 500 000

Combinations I and IV give the same cost allocations as in requirement 1. Combination II is a frequently used dual-rate method. The fixed costs are allocated using budgeted usage on the rationale that it better captures the cost of providing capacity. The variable costs are allocated using actual usage on a cause-and-effect rationale. Combination III is rarely encountered in practice.

Exercise 5.22

1 The average full cost per unit of the 2000 units of Product Line B produced in 2022 is €27 850 per unit.

Details of the €55.7 million full cost for Product Line B, compared with those for Product Line A, are (in €millions):

	Product Line A	Product Line B
Direct costs		
Research and development	€10.0	€5.0
Design	2.0	3.0
Manufacturing/production	15.0	13.0
Marketing	6.0	5.0
Distribution	2.0	3.0
Customer service	5.0	3.0
Total direct costs	40.0	32.0
Indirect costs		
Research and development, 6000/8000; 2000/8000 × €20.0	€15.0	€5.0
Design, 8/12; 4/12 × €6.0	4.0	2.0
Manufacturing/production, 70 000/120 000; 50 000/120 000 × €24.0	14.0	10.0
Marketing, 25/70; 45/70 × €7.0	2.5	4.5
Distribution, 600/2000; 1400/2000 × €2.0	0.6	1.4
Customer service, 1000/5000; 4000/5000 × €1.0	0.2	0.8
Total indirect costs	36.3	23.7
Full product costs	€76.3	€55.7

2 The summary data are (in €millions):

	Product Line A	Product Line B
Upstream	€31.0	€15.0
Manufacturing	29.0	23.0
Downstream	16.3	17.7
	€76.3	€55.7
Upstream		
Direct		
Research and development	€10.0	€5.0
Design	2.0	3.0
	12.0	8.0
Indirect		
Research and development	15.0	5.0
Design	4.0	2.0
	19.0	7.0
Total upstream costs	€31.0	€15.0
Manufacturing		
Direct	€15.0	€13.0
Indirect	14.0	10.0
Total manufacturing cost	€29.0	€23.0
Downstream		
Direct		
Marketing	€6.0	€5.0
Distribution	2.0	3.0
Customer service	5.0	3.0
	13.0	11.0
Indirect		
Marketing	2.5	4.5
Distribution	0.6	1.4
Customer service	0.2	0.8
	3.3	6.7
Total downstream costs	€16.3	€17.7

3 The inventoriable costs are (in €millions):

	Product Line B
Direct costs	
Design	€3.0
Manufacturing	13.0
Total	16.0
Indirect costs	
Design	2.0
Manufacturing	10.0
Total	12.0
Total inventoriable costs	€28.0

The average inventoriable cost per unit of Product Line B is €14 000 per unit.

4 The reimbursable costs for Product Line A are (in €millions):

	Product Line A
Direct costs	
Research and development	€10.0
Design	2.0
Manufacturing/production	15.0
Distribution	2.0
Customer service	5.0
Total direct costs	34.0
Indirect costs	
Research and development	15.0
Design	4.0
Manufacturing/production	14.0
Distribution	0.6
Customer service	0.2
Total indirect costs	33.8
Full reimbursable cost	€67.8

5 No. The answers to requirements 1 to 4 illustrate how a single accounting system (database) can provide relevant data for a diverse set of decisions. The data in this single system can be 'sliced and diced' in many ways without requiring multiple systems to be independently set up.

CHAPTER 6

Exercise 6.13

1 a Sales value at split-off point method

	Kilograms of product	Wholesale selling price per kg	Sales value at split-off	Weighting: sales value at split-off	Joint costs allocated	Allocation costs per kg
Breasts	100	€1.10	€110	0.675	€67.50	€0.6750
Wings	20	0.40	8	0.049	4.90	0.2450
Thighs	40	0.70	28	0.172	17.20	0.4300
Bones	80	0.20	16	0.098	9.80	0.1225
Feathers	10	0.10	1	0.006	0.60	0.0600
	250		€163	1.000	€100.00	

Costs of destroyed product

Breasts:	€0.6750 × 20	= €13.50
Wings:	€0.2450 × 10	= 2.45
		€15.95

b Physical measures method

	Kilograms of product	Weighting: physical measures	Joint costs allocated	Allocation costs per kg
Breasts	100	0.400	€40.00	€0.400
Wings	20	0.080	8.00	0.400
Thighs	40	0.160	16.00	0.400
Bones	80	0.320	32.00	0.400
Feathers	10	0.040	4.00	0.400
	250	1.000	€100.00	

Costs of destroyed product

Breasts:	€0.40 × 20 =	€8
Wings:	€0.40 × 10 =	4
		€12

Note: Although not required, it is useful to highlight the individual product profitability figures:

		Sales value at split-off method		Physical measures method	
Product	Sales value	Joint costs allocated	Gross income	Joint costs allocated	Gross income
Breasts	€110	€67.50	€42.50	€40.00	€70.00
Wings	8	4.90	3.10	8.00	0.00
Thighs	28	17.20	10.80	16.00	12.00
Bones	16	9.80	6.20	32.00	(16.00)
Feathers	1	0.60	0.40	4.00	(3.00)

2 The sales value at split-off method captures the benefits-received criterion of cost allocation. The costs of processing a chicken are allocated to products in proportion to the ability to contribute revenue. Galinha-Esquina's decision to process chicken is heavily influenced by the revenues from breasts and thighs. The bones provide relatively few benefits to Galinha-Esquina despite their high physical volume.

The physical measures method shows profits on breasts and thighs and losses on bones and feathers. Given that Galinha-Esquina has to process jointly all the chicken products, it does not make sense intuitively to single out individual products that are being processed simultaneously as making losses while the overall operations make a profit.

Exercise 6.14

1

	By-product accounting method			
	A	B	C	D
When by-products are recognised in the general ledger	At production	At production	At sale	At sale
Where by-product revenues appear in the profit statement	Reduction of cost	Revenue item	Reduction of cost	Revenue item
Revenues:				
Main product: Pelléas, 8000 × €20.00	€160 000	€160 000	€160 000	€160 000
By-product: Mélisande, 1400 × €2.00	–	2 800	–	2 800
	160 000	162 800	160 000	162 800

	By-product accounting method			
	A	B	C	D
Cost of goods sold:				
Total manufacturing costs	120 000	120 000	120 000	120 000
Deduct by-product revenue, 1400 × €2.00	2 800	–	2 800	–
Net manufacturing costs	117 200	120 000	117 200	120 000
Deduct main product stock, 2000/10 000 × net manufacturing costs	23 440	24 000	23 440	24 000
Deduct by-product stock, 600 × €2.00	1 200	1 200	–	–
Cost of goods sold	92 560	94 800	93 760	96 000
Gross margin	€67 440	€68 000	€66 240	€66 800
Gross margin percentage	42.15%	41.77%	41.40%	41.03%

2

	A	B	C	D
Inventoriable costs (30 September):				
Main product – Pelléas	€23 440	€24 000	€23 440	€24 000
By-product – Mélisande	1 200	1 200	0	0

Under methods C and D there is no inventoriable cost shown for the by-product (Mélisande), as by-products are not recognised in the general ledger until sales are made.

3 Method A or B results in a better matching of costs with revenues than does either Method C or D. Method B results in more disclosure about individual product revenues than does Method A. Method A 'buries' information about by-product revenues as a reduction of cost.

Exercise 6.19

A diagram of the situation is shown in Solution Exhibit 6.19.

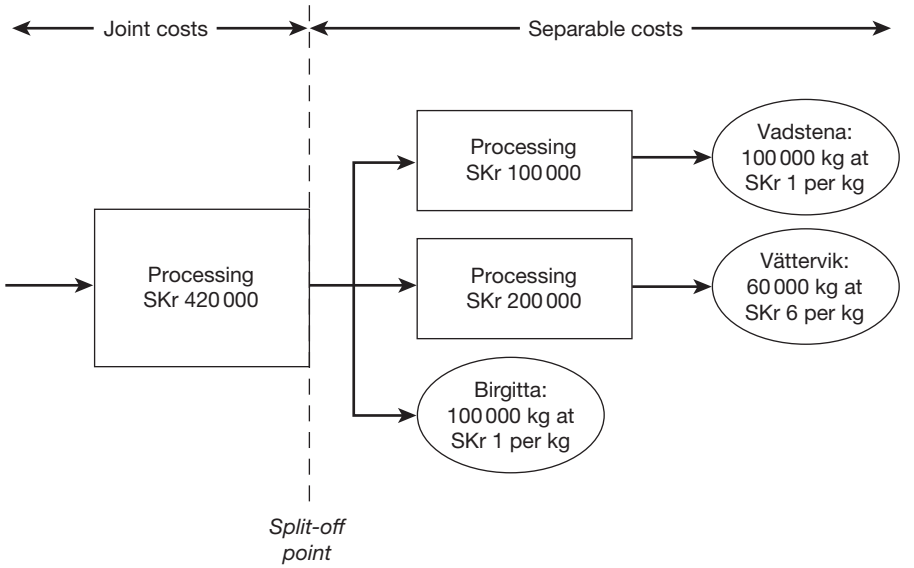
1

	Quantity (kg)	Sales price per kg	Final sales value	Separable processing costs	Estimated net realisable value at split-off	Weighting
Vadstena	20 000	SKr 20	SKr 400 000	SKr 100 000	SKr 300 000	30/56
Vättervik	60 000	6	360 000	200 000	160 000	16/56
Birgitta	100 000	1	100 000	0	100 000	10/56
Totals			SKr 860 000	SKr 300 000	SKr 560 000	

Allocation of Skr 420 000 joint costs:

Vadstena	30/56 × SKr 420 000 =	SKr 225 000
Vättervik	16/56 × SKr 420 000 =	120 000
Birgitta	10/56 × SKr 420 000 =	75 000
		SKr 420 000

Solution Exhibit 6.19



	Joint costs allocated	Separable processing costs	Total costs	Units	Unit cost
Vadstena	SKr 225 000	SKr 100 000	SKr 325 000	20 000	SKr 16.25
Vättervik	120 000	200 000	320 000	60 000	5.33
Birgitta	75 000	0	75 000	100 000	0.75
Totals	SKr 420 000	SKr 300 000	SKr 720 000	180 000	

The closing stock is:

Vadstena	1000 × SKr 16.25 =	SKr 16 250
Vättervik	1000 × SKr 5.33 =	5 330
Birgitta	1000 × SKr 0.75 =	750
		SKr 22 330

2

	Unit sales price	Unit cost	Gross margin	Gross-margin percentage
Vadstena	SKr 20	SKr 16.25	SKr 3.75	18.75%
Vättervik	6	5.33	0.67	11.17
Birgitta	1	0.75	0.25	25.00

3 Further processing of Vättervik yields incremental profit of SKr 40 000:

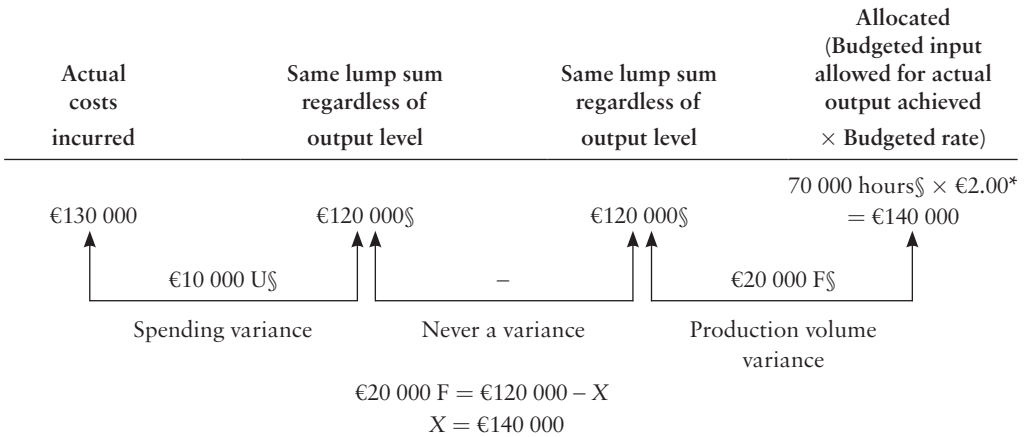
Incremental revenue of further processing Vättervik (SKr 6 − SKr 2) × 60 000	SKr 240 000
Incremental processing costs	200 000
Incremental operating profit from further processing	SKr 40 000

Langholmen-Sverige should process Vättervik further. Note that joint costs are irrelevant to this decision; they remain the same, whichever alternative (sell at split-off or process further) is selected.

CHAPTER 7

Exercise 7.12

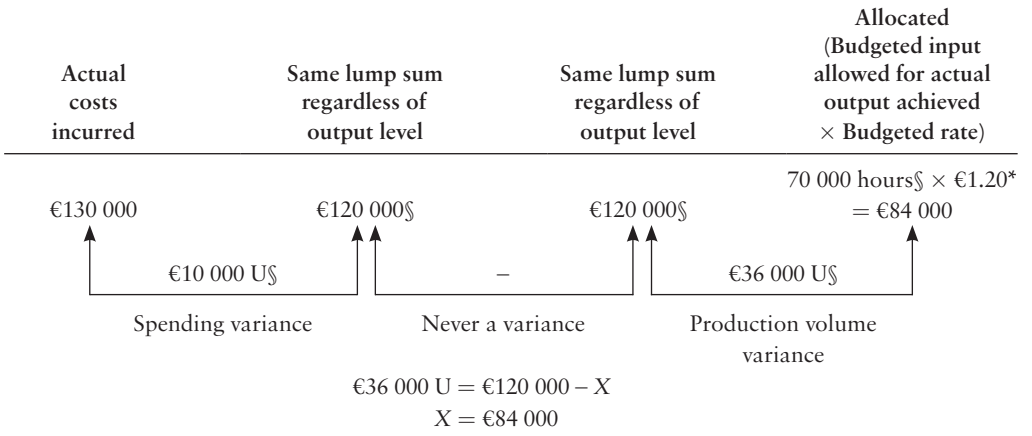
1 Normal utilisation (givens denoted by §):



€20 000 F = €120 000 – *X*
X = €140 000

* Budgeted fixed manufacturing overhead rate per unit = €2 per machine-hour, denominator level = 60 000 machine-hours.

2 Practical capacity (givens denoted by §):



€36 000 U = €120 000 – *X*
X = €84 000

* Budgeted manufacturing overhead rate per unit = €1.20 per machine-hour, denominator level = 100 000 machine-hours.

3 To maximise operating profit, the executive vice-president would favour using normal utilisation rather than practical capacity. Why? Because normal utilisation is a smaller base than practical capacity, resulting in any year-end stock having a higher unit cost. Thus, less fixed manufacturing overhead would become an expense if normal utilisation were used as the denominator level.

Exercise 7.19

1 Ericsson AB: Income statements for the year (in SEK 000).

Variable costing		
Revenues (25 000 × SEK 40)		SEK 1000
Variable costs		
Opening stock (1000 × SEK 24)	SEK 24	
Variable cost of goods manufactured (29 000 × SEK 24)	696	
Cost of goods available for sale	720	
Closing stock (5000 × SEK 24)	120	
Variable manufacturing cost of goods sold	600	
Variable marketing and administrative costs (25 000 × SEK 1.20)	30	
Variable costs		630
Contribution margin		370
Fixed costs		
Fixed manufacturing overhead costs	120	
Fixed marketing and administrative costs	190	
Fixed costs		310
Operating profit		SEK 60
Absorption costing		
Revenues (25 000 × SEK 40)		SEK 1000
Cost of goods sold		
Opening stock (1000 × SEK 28)	SEK 28	
Variable manufacturing costs (29 000 × SEK 24)	696	
Fixed manufacturing costs (given)	120	
Cost of goods available for sale	844	
Closing stock (5000 × SEK 28)	140	
Cost of goods sold		704
Gross margin		296
Marketing and administrative costs		
Variable marketing and administrative costs (25 000 × SEK 1.20)	30	
Fixed marketing and administrative costs	190	
Marketing and administrative costs		220
Operating profit		SEK 76

2
$$\begin{aligned}\text{SEK } 76\,000 - \text{SEK } 60\,000 &= (5000 \times \text{SEK } 4) - (1000 \times \text{SEK } 4)\\ &= \text{SEK } 20\,000 - \text{SEK } 4000\\ &= \text{SEK } 16\,000\end{aligned}$$

The operating profit figures differ because the amount of fixed manufacturing costs in the closing stock differs from that in the opening stock.

3 *Advantages*

- The fixed costs are reported as period costs (and not allocated to stock), thus increasing the likelihood of better control of these costs.
- Operating profit is directly influenced by changes in unit sales (and not influenced by build-up of stock).
- The impact of fixed costs on operating profit is emphasised.
- The income statements are in the same form as is used for cost–volume–profit analysis.
- Product line, territory, etc., contribution margins are emphasised and more readily ascertainable.

Disadvantages

- Total costs may be overlooked when considering operating problems.
- Distinction between fixed and variable costs is arbitrary for many costs.
- Emphasis on variable costs may cause some managers to ignore fixed costs.
- A new variable-costing system may be too costly to install unless top managers think that operating decisions will be improved collectively.

Exercise 7.23

1 a Variable costing income statements (in €000):

		2022	2023	Together
Revenues		€300	€300	€600
Variable cost of sales		70	70	140
Contribution margin		230	230	460
Fixed manufacturing costs	€140			
Fixed marketing and administrative costs	40	180	180	360
Operating profit		€50	€50	€100

b Absorption statements (in €000):

	Alternative 1			Alternative 2		
	2022	2023	Together	2022	2023	Together
Revenues	€300	€300	€600	€300	€300	€600
Opening stock	–	140	–	–	210	–
Manufacturing costs	280	–	280	420	–	420
Available for sales	280	140	280	420	210	420
Closing stock	140	–	–	210	–	–
Cost of goods sold	140	140	280	210	210	420
Underallocated overhead	–	140	140	–	140	–
Overallocated overhead	–	–	–	(140)	–	–
Marketing and administrative costs	40	40	80	40	40	80
Total costs	180	320	500	110	390	500
Operating profit (loss)	€120	€(20)	€100	€190	€(90)	€100

Alternative 1. Rate for fixed manufacturing overhead allocation based on 20 000 units:

$$\frac{€140\,000}{20000} = €7.00 \text{ per tonne}$$

Alternative 2. Rate for fixed manufacturing overhead allocation based on 10 000 units:

$$\frac{€140\,000}{10000} = €14.00 \text{ per tonne}$$

2 Audumla Oy has a positive operating profit because some of its costs were variable. They could be avoided when the plant shut down for the second year. Variable costs can be 'stored' as measures of assets, while fixed costs cannot. When Audumla paid €70 000 for direct materials, direct manufacturing labour and variable manufacturing overhead to produce 10 000 additional tonnes of fertiliser during the first year for sale in the second year, it saved that amount of cost in the second year.

3

		Absorption costing	
	Variable costing	20 000 unit base*	10 000 unit base
Stock, end of 2022	€70 000	€140 000	€210 000
Stock, end of 2023	0	0	0

* Fixed manufacturing overhead rate is €7.00 when denominator level is 20 000 units and is €14.00 when denominator level is 10 000 units.

4 Reported operating profit is affected by both production *and* sales under absorption costing. Hence, most managers would prefer absorption costing because their performance in any given reporting period, at least in the short run, is influenced by how much production is scheduled near the end of a reporting period.

CHAPTER 8

Exercise 8.11

a

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TCM} &= Q\,(\text{USP} - \text{UVC}) \\ &= 70\,000\,(£30 - £20) \\ &= £700\,000 \\ \text{TFC} &= \text{TCM} - \text{OP/L} \\ &= £700\,000 - (£15\,000) = £715\,000 \end{aligned}$$

b

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TCM} &= Q\,(\text{USP} - \text{UVC}) \\ £900\,000 &= 180\,000\,(£25 - \text{UVC}) \\ \text{UVC} &= £20 \\ \text{OP/L} &= \text{TCM} - \text{TFC} \\ &= £900\,000 - £800\,000 = £100\,000 \end{aligned}$$

c

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TCM} &= Q\,(\text{USP} - \text{UVC}) \\ £300\,000 &= 150\,000\,(\text{USP} - £10) \\ \text{USP} &= £12 \\ \text{OP/L} &= \text{TCM} - \text{TFC} \\ &= £300\,000 - £220\,000 = £80\,000 \end{aligned}$$

d

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= \text{TCM} \div (\text{USP} - \text{UVC}) \\ &= £120\,000 \div (£20 - £14) \\ &= 20\,000 \\ \text{TFC} &= \text{TCM} - \text{OP/L} \\ &= £120\,000 - £12\,000 = £108\,000 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 8.22

1 Variable cost percentage is SFr 3.20/SFr 8.00 = 40%. Let R = Revenues needed to obtain target net profit, then:

$$\begin{aligned} R - 0.40R - \text{SFr}\,450\,000 &= \text{SFr}\,150\,000 \\ 0.60R &= \text{SFr}\,450\,000 + \text{SFr}\,150\,000 \\ R &= \text{SFr}\,600\,000 \div 0.60 \\ &= \text{SFr}\,1\,000\,000 \end{aligned}$$

Proof:		
	Revenues	SFr 1 000 000
	Variable costs (at 40%)	400 000
	Contribution margin	600 000
	Fixed costs	450 000
	Operating profit	150 000
	Income taxes (at 30%)	45 000
	Net profit	SFr 105 000

2 **a** Sales necessary to earn net profit of SFr 105 000:

$$\frac{\text{SFr } 100000}{\text{SFr } 8} = 125\ 000 \text{ sales necessary}$$

b Sales necessary to break even:
Contribution margin = SFr 8.00 − SFr 3.20 = SFr 4.80

$$\frac{\text{SFr } 450\ 000}{\text{SFr } 4\ .80} = 93\,750 \text{ sales necessary}$$

3 Using the short-cut approach described in the chapter:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Change in net profit} &= (150\ 000 - 125\ 000) \times \text{SFr } 4.80 \times (1 - 0.30)\\ &= \text{SFr } 120\ 000 \times 0.7 = \text{SFr } 84\ 000\\ \text{New net profit} &= \text{SFr } 84\ 000 + \text{SFr } 105\ 000 = \text{SFr } 189\ 000\end{aligned}$$

Proof:		
	Revenues, 150 000 × SFr 8.00	SFr 1 200 000
	Variable costs at 40%	480 000
	Contribution margin	720 000
	Fixed costs	450 000
	Operating profit	270 000
	Income tax at 30%	81 000
	Net profit	SFr 189 000

Exercise 8.26

1

Let Q = Number of units of deluxe product to break even.
$3Q$ = Number of units of standard product to break even.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Revenues} - \text{Variable costs} - \text{Fixed costs} &= \text{Zero operating profit.}\\ €20(3Q) + €30Q - €14(3Q) - €18Q - €1\ 200\ 000 &= 0\\ €60Q + €30Q - €42Q - €18Q &= €1\ 200\ 000\\ €30Q &= €1\ 200\ 000\\ Q &= 40\ 000 \text{ units of deluxe}\\ 3Q &= 120\ 000 \text{ units of standard}\end{aligned}$$

The breakeven point is 120 000 standard units plus 40 000 deluxe carriers, a total of 160 000 units.

2 Unit contribution margins are: standard: €20 − €14 = €6; deluxe: €30 − €18 = €12.

a If only standard carriers were sold, the breakeven point would be:

$$€1\ 200\ 000/€6 = 200\ 000 \text{ units}$$

b If only deluxe carriers were sold, the breakeven point would be:

$$€1\ 200\ 000/€12 = 100\ 000 \text{ units}$$

3 Operating profit = 180 000(€6) + 20 000(€12) − €1 200 000
= €1 080 000 + €240 000 − €1 200 000
= €120 000

Let Q = Number of units of deluxe product to break even.
$9Q$ = Number of units of standard product to break even.

$$\begin{aligned} €20(9Q) + €30Q - €14(9Q) - €18Q - €1\,200\,000 &= 0 \\ €180Q + €30Q - €126Q - €18Q &= €1\,200\,000 \\ €66Q &= €1\,200\,000 \\ Q &= 18\,182 \text{ units of deluxe (rounded)} \\ 9Q &= 163\,638 \text{ units of standard} \end{aligned}$$

The breakeven point is 163 638 standard = 18 182 deluxe, a total of 181 820 units.

The lesson of this problem is that changes in sales mix change breakeven points and operating profits. In this example, the budgeted and actual total sales in number of units were identical, but the proportion of the product having the higher contribution margin declined. Operating profit suffered, falling from €300 000 to €120 000. Moreover, the breakeven point rose from 160 000 to 181 820 units.

CHAPTER 9

Exercise 9.11

1 Slope coefficient = €0.30 per machine-hour.

Constant = Total cost − (Slope coefficient × Quantity of cost driver)
= €3900 − (€0.30 × €7000) = €1800
= €3000 − (€0.30 × 4000) = €1800

The cost function based on the two observations is:

Maintenance costs = €1800 + €0.30 × machine-hours

2 The cost function in requirement 1 is an estimate of how costs behave within the relevant range, not at cost levels outside the relevant range. If there are no months with zero machine-hours represented in the maintenance account, data in that account cannot be used to estimate the fixed costs at the zero machine-hours level. Rather, the constant component of the cost function provides the best available starting point for a straight line that approximates how a cost behaves within the relevant range.

Exercise 9.20

1 It is economically plausible that the correct form of the model of overhead costs includes both number of academic programmes and number of enrolled students as cost drivers. The findings indicate that each of the independent variables affects overhead costs. (Each regression has a significant r^2 and t-value on the independent variable.) Raphaël could choose to divide overhead costs into two cost pools, (i) those overhead costs that are more closely related to the number of academic programmes and (ii) those overhead costs more closely related to the number of enrolled students, and rerun the simple regression analysis on each overhead cost pool. Alternatively, she could run a multiple regression analysis with total overhead costs as the dependent variable and the number of academic programmes and number of enrolled students as the two independent variables.

2 Raphaël should use the multiple regression model over the two simple regression models. The multiple regression model appears economically plausible and the regression model performs very well when estimating overhead costs. It has an excellent goodness-of-fit and significant t-values on both independent variables, and it meets all the specification assumptions for ordinary least-squares regression (see Solution Exhibit 9.20).

Solution Exhibit 9.20 Evaluation of cost function for overhead costs estimated with multiple regression for ESMSE

Criterion	Number of academic programmes and number of enrolled students as independent variables
1 Economic plausibility	A positive relationship between overhead costs and number of academic programmes and number of enrolled students is economically plausible at ESMSE
2 Goodness-of-fit	$r^2 = 0.81$ Excellent goodness-of-fit
3 Significance of independent variable(s)	*t*-values of 3.46 on number of academic programmes and 2.03 on number of enrolled students are both significant
4 Specification analysis of estimation assumptions	The assumptions of linearity, constant variance, and normality of residuals hold, but inferences drawn from only 12 observations are not reliable; the Durbin–Watson statistic = 1.84 indicates that independence of residuals holds

There is some correlation between the two independent variables, but multicollinearity does not appear to be a problem here. The significance of both independent variables (despite some correlation between them) suggests that each variable is a driver of overhead cost. Of course, as the chapter describes, even if the independent variables exhibited multicollinearity, Raphaël should still prefer to use the multiple regression model over the simple regression models. Omitting any one of the variables will cause the estimated coefficient of the independent variable included in the model to be biased away from its true value.

3 Possible uses for the multiple regression results include:

- *Planning and budgeting at ESMSE*. The regression analysis indicates the variables (number of academic programmes and number of enrolled students) that help predict changes in overhead costs.
- *Cost control and performance evaluation*. Raphaël could compare actual performance with budgeted or expected numbers and seek ways to improve the efficiency of the ESMSE operations, and evaluate the performance of managers responsible for controlling overhead costs.
- *Cost management*. If cost pressures increase, the ESMSE could save costs by closing down academic programmes that have few students enrolled.

Exercise 9.21

1 Solution Exhibit 9.21 plots the relationship between machine-hours and power costs.

2 (i)

	Machine-hours (*X*)	Power costs (*Y*)
Highest observation of independent variable	400	SEK 500
Lowest observation of independent variable	100	300
	300	SEK 200

$$\text{Slope coefficient} = \text{SEK } 0.667 \text{ per machine-hour}$$

$$\text{Constant} = \text{SEK } 500 - (\text{SEK } 0.667 \times 400) = \text{SEK } 233.20$$

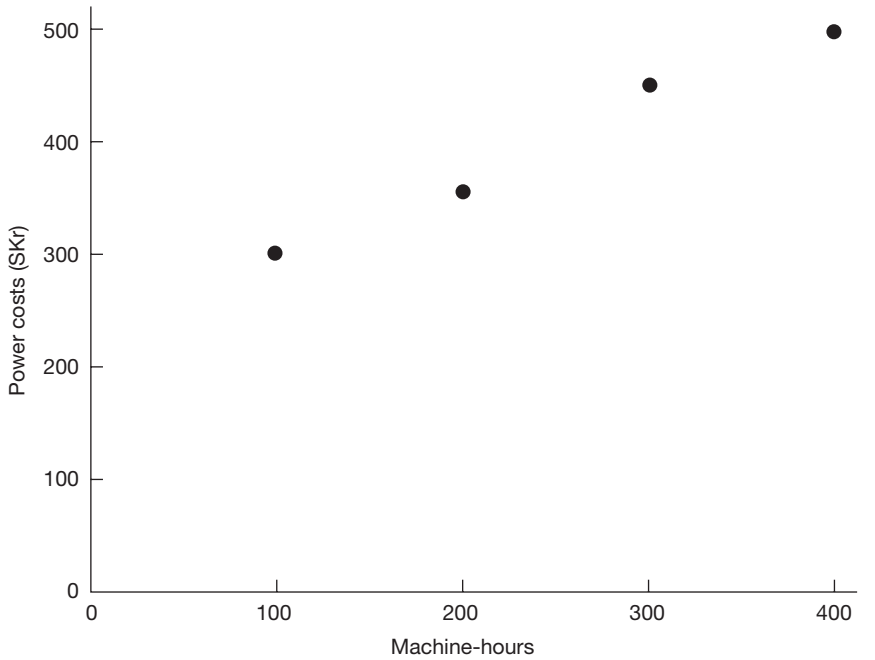
$$= \text{SEK } 300 - (\text{SEK } 0.667 \times 100) = \text{SEK } 233.30$$

(difference in values is due to rounding errors)

Cost function estimated with high–low approach is:

$$y = \text{SEK } 233.20 + \text{SEK } 0.667X$$

Solution Exhibit 9.21 Plot of machine-hours versus power cost



(ii) One way of calculating a and b under the regression approach is to use the equations given in the chapter appendix.

Period (1)	Machine-hours (X) (2)	Power costs (Y) (3)	X^2 (4)	XY (5)
1	200	350	40 000	70 000
2	300	450	90 000	135 000
3	100	300	10 000	30 000
4	400	500	160 000	200 000
Total	1 000	1 600	300 000	435 000

$$\sum Y = na + b(\sum X)$$
$$\sum XY = a(\sum X) + b(\sum X)^2$$

That is,

$$\begin{aligned}
1600 &= 4a + 1000b && R_1\\
435\,000 &= 1000a + 300\,000b && R_2\\
400\,000 &= 1000a + 250\,000b && R_3 = 250(R_1)\\
35\,000 &= 50\,000b && R_4 = R_2 - R_3\\
b &= \text{SEK } 0.70\\
1600 &= 4a + 1000\,(0.70)\\
900 &= 4a\\
a &= \text{SEK } 225
\end{aligned}$$

Cost function estimated with the regression approach is:

$$y = \text{SEK } 225 + \text{SEK } 0.70 \times \text{machine-hours}$$

Substituting we get:

$$a = \text{SEK } 225$$

Another approach is to use a computer software package. Results are:

Variable	Coefficient	Standard error	*t*-value
Constant	SEK 225	SEK 19.36	11.62
Independent variable: machine-hours	SEK 0.70	SEK 0.07	10.00

$r^2 = 0.98$; Durbin–Watson statistic $= 2.20$

In this simple illustration, the high–low estimate using only two observations closely approximates the least-squares regression approach that minimises the sum of squares of the vertical deviations from the observations to the estimated regression line. The regression equation indicates that variable power costs are SEK 0.70 per machine-hour against the high–low estimate of SEK 0.667. The fixed component of power costs within the relevant range equals SEK 225, while the high–low method estimates this component as SEK 233.20. The high–low method gives good results in this case because all the data points fall very close to the regression line.

$A = \text{SEK } 0.70$.

3 $\bar{Y} = \sum Y \div 4 = \text{SEK } 1600 \div 4 = \text{SEK } 400$

$$\begin{aligned}\sum(Y - \bar{Y})^2 &= (350 - 400)^2 + (450 - 400)^2 + (300 - 400)^2 + (500 - 400)^2 \\ &= 2500 + 2500 + 10\,000 + 10\,000 = 25\,000\end{aligned}$$

Period	Y	$y = \text{SEK } 225 + \text{SEK } 0.70X$	$Y - y$	$(Y - y)^2$
1	350	365	−15	225
2	450	435	+15	225
3	300	295	+5	25
4	500	505	−5	25
Total	1600			500

$r^2 = 0.98$.

An r^2 of 0.98 indicates excellent goodness-of-fit. Only 2% of the variation in power costs is not explained by machine-hours. Since the relation between machine-hours and power costs is also economically plausible, Bildt-Östersund can be very confident of using the regression results to set its flexible budget for power costs. Machine-hours is a cost driver of power costs.

CHAPTER 10

Exercise 10.14

1

Average one-way fare per passenger		€500
Commission at 8% of €500		40
Net cash to Air Calabria per ticket		€460
Average number of passengers per flight		200
Revenues per flight (€460 × 200)		€92 000
Food & beverage cost per flight (€20 × 200)		4 000
Total contribution from passengers		88 000
Fuel costs per flight		14 000
Contribution per flight		74 000
Fixed costs allocated to each flight:		
Lease costs	€53 000	
Baggage handling	7 000	
Flight crew	4 000	64 000
Operating profit per flight		€10 000

2 If fare is €480.00
Commission at 8% of €480 38.40
Net cash per ticket 441.60
Food and beverage cost per ticket 20.00
Contribution per passenger €421.60
Total contribution margin from passengers
(€421.60 × 212) €89 379.20

All other costs are irrelevant

On the basis of quantitative factors alone, Air Calabria should decrease its fare to €480 because reducing the fare gives Air Calabria a higher contribution margin from passengers (€89 379.20 versus €88 000).

3 In evaluating whether Air Calabria should charter its plane to Cima-Rosa, we compare the charter alternative to the solution in requirement (2) because requirement (2) is preferred to requirement (1).

Under requirement (2), Air Calabria gets €89 379.20
Deduct fuel costs 14 000.00
Total contribution per flight €75 379.20

Air Calabria gets €75 000 per flight from chartering the plane to Cima-Rosa. On the basis of quantitative financial factors Air Calabria is better off not chartering the plane and instead lowering its own fares.

Students who compare the €75 000 that Air Calabria earns from chartering its plane to the contribution from passengers in requirement (1) (€74 000) will conclude that Air Calabria should charter the plane to Cima-Rosa. Strictly speaking, though, the correct answer must compare the charter fee of €75 000 to the €75 379.20 passenger contribution in requirement (2) since lowering the fare is certainly an alternative available to Air Calabria.

Other qualitative factors that Air Calabria should consider in coming to a decision are:

a The lower risk from chartering its plane relative to the uncertainties regarding the number of passengers it might get on its scheduled flights.
b Chartering to Cima-Rosa means that Air Calabria would not have a regular schedule of flights each week. This arrangement could cause inconvenience to some of its passengers.
c The stability of the relationship between Air Calabria and Cima-Rosa. If this is not a long-term arrangement, Air Calabria may lose current market share and not benefit from sustained charter revenues.

Exercise 10.18

1 Time spent on manufacturing bottles $= \dfrac{750\ 000 \text{ bottles}}{100 \text{ bottles per hour}} = 7500 \text{ hours}$

So $10\ 000 - 7500 = 2500$ hours available for toys.

The moulded plastic toy requires $\dfrac{100\ 000 \text{ units}}{40} = 2500$ hours, so Fri-Flask has enough capacity to accept the toys order. Additional income from accepting the order is:

Revenue DKK 3.00 × 100 000	DKK300 000
Variable costs 2.40 × 100 000	240 000
Contribution margin	60 000
Fixed costs	20 000
Additional income	DKK 40 000

So Fri-Flask should accept the order since it has enough excess capacity to make the 100 000 toys.

2 Time spent on manufacturing bottles $= \frac{850\ 000}{100} = 8500$ hours

So 10 000 − 8500 = 1500 hours available for toys.

From requirement (1) moulded plastic toy requires 2500 hours and generates DKK40 000 in operating income.

So if the toy order is accepted, 1000 hours (2500 hours required – 1500 hours available) of bottle making will be forgone, equal to 100 000 bottles (100 bottles/hr × 1000 hrs).

Operating income from accepting	DKK40 000
Forgone contribution margin (100 000 bottles × DKK0.30)	30 000
Increase in operating income	DKK10 000

So Fri-Flask should accept the special order.

3 Without considering the fixed costs of the toy mould, the contribution per machine-hour of the constrained resource for bottles and the special toy are as follows:

	Bottles	**Toys**
Contribution margin per unit	DKK0.30	DKK0.60
Multiplied by units made in 1 machine-hour	100	40
Contribution margin per machine-hour	DKK30	DKK24

This suggests that Fri-Flask should make as many bottles as it can rather than the special toys because bottles generate a higher contribution margin per machine-hour.

So if Fri-Flask used the 1500 hours available to it for making toys after using the 8500 hours to make bottles, it would be able to make 1500 × 40 = 60 000 toys and earn operating income of:

Contribution margin 60 000 × DKK0.60	DKK36 000
Fixed mould costs	20 000
Increase in operating income	DKK16 000

The contribution margin earned covers the fixed costs of the mould, so Fri-Flask should make 850 000 bottles and 60 000 toys.

4 Time spent on manufacturing bottles $= \frac{900\ 000}{100} = 9000$ hours

So 10 000 − 9000 = 1000 hours available for toys.

So if the toy order is accepted, then 1500 hours (2500 hours required – 1000 hours available) of bottle capacity will be forgone = 150 000 bottles

Contribution from accepting toy offer	DKK40 000
Forgone profits on bottles 150 000 × DKK0.30	(45 000)
Increase (decrease) in operating income	DKK(5 000)

So *reject* the special order.

5 As in requirement (3), Fri-Flask should first use the 9000 hours to make bottles and then consider using the 1000 hours available to it for making toys. It would be able to make 1000 hours × 40 = 40 000 toys and earn operating income of:

Contribution margin 40 000 × DKK0.60	DKK24 000
Fixed mould costs	20 000
Increase in operating income	DKK 4 000

Fri-Flask should make 900 000 bottles and 40 000 toys.

6 As in requirements (3) and (5), Fri-Flask should first use 9500 hours to make bottles and then consider using the 500 hours available to it for making toys. It would be able to make 500 hours × 40 = 20 000 toys and earn operating income of:

Contribution margin 20 000 × DKK0.60	DKK12 000
Fixed mould costs	20 000
Increase (decrease) in operating income	DKK (8 000)

So Fri-Flask should refuse to make any of the plastic toys. If it tried to make the toy product more profitable by making more toys, it would have to give up the plastic bottles. This trade-off is not worthwhile because Fri-Flask makes DKK24 per hour from the toys and would lose DKK30 per hour from the plastic bottles.

7 The subcontracting option is a good option because it nets Fri-Flask DKK0.20 per toy (DKK3.00 – DKK2.80) without using up any of its limited capacity.

So long as Fri-Flask is manufacturing in-house, it would prefer to first make bottles (contribution of DKK30 per hour) and then make toys (contribution of DKK24 per hour).

As in requirement (5), Fri-Flask would make 900 000 bottles and be left with 1000 hours available for toy making. It has two options at this stage (1) use 1000 hours of available in-house capacity to make 40 000 toys and subcontract 60 000 toys outside or (2) subcontract all 100 000 toys from outside.

	40 000 toys in-house 60 000 toys subcontracted	**100 000 toys subcontracted**
Revenues (irrelevant)	DKK300 000	DKK300 000
Costs		
Variable manufacturing costs (40 000 × DKK2.40)	96 000	
Incremental fixed costs of mould	20 000	
Subcontract costs (DKK2.80 × 60 000; DKK2.80 × 100 000)	168 000	
	280 000	
Total costs	284 000	280 000
Operating income	DKK 16 000	DKK 20 000

So Fri-Flask should use 9000 hours of its capacity to make 900 000 bottles, leave 1000 hours capacity idle and subcontract out all the 100 000 toys.

A short-cut to solving this problem is to calculate when it is worthwhile for Fri-Flask to manufacture toys in-house rather than subcontracting them. Suppose number of toys manufactured is *X*, the cut-off point is obtained by solving:

$$\underset{\substack{\text{fixed}\\\text{manufacturing}\\\text{costs}}}{\text{DKK20 000}} + \underset{\substack{\text{variable}\\\text{manufacturing}\\\text{costs per unit}}}{\text{DKK2.40X}} = \underset{\substack{\text{subcontracting}\\\text{costs}}}{\text{DKK2.80X}}$$

$$X = \frac{\text{DKK20 000}}{\text{DKK0.40}} = 50\,000 \text{ toys}$$

This means that if the internal manufacturing capacity is for less than 50 000 toys, it is cheaper to subcontract, whereas if the internal manufacturing capacity is for more than 50 000 toys, it is better to manufacture in-house.

In our example, the internal manufacturing capacity is for 40 000 toys, so it is better to subcontract out entirely.

CHAPTER 11

Exercise 11.11

1

Direct costs		
Direct materials	€150 000	€150 000
Indirect costs		
Product support	983 000	983 000
Total costs		€1 133 000

Cost per kilogram of chips = €1.133

2

	(a) Retail chips	(b) Institutional chips
Direct costs		
Direct materials	€135 000	€15 000
Packaging	180 000	8 000
Indirect costs	315 000	23 000
Cleaning		
€0.120 × 900 000	108 000	
€0.120 × 100 000		12 000
Cutting		
€0.24 × 900 000	216 000	
€0.15 × 100 000		15 000
Packaging		
€0.48 × 900 000	432 000	
€0.12 × 100 000		12 000
	756 000	39 000
Total costs	€1 071 000	€62 000
Kilograms produced	900 000	100 000
Cost per kilogram	€1.19	€0.62

Note: The total costs of €1 133 000 (€1 071 000 + €62 000) are the same as those in requirement 1.

3 There is much evidence of product-cost cross-subsidisation.

	Retail	Institutional
Current system	€1.133	€1.133
ABC system	€1.190	€0.620

Assuming the ABC numbers are more accurate, retail is undercosted by approximately 5% (€1.133 ÷ €1.19 = 0.95) while institutional is overcosted by 83% (€1.133 ÷ €0.620 = 1.83).

The current system assumes that each product uses all the activity areas in a homogeneous way. This is not the case. Institutional sales use far fewer resources in the cutting area and the packaging area. The percentage of total costs for each cost category is:

	Retail	Institutional	Total
Direct costs			
Direct materials	90.0%	10.0%	100.0%
Packaging	95.7	4.3	100.0
Indirect costs			
Cleaning	90.0	10.0	100.0
Cutting	93.5	6.5	100.0
Packaging	97.3	2.7	100.0
Units produced	90.0%	10.0%	100.0%

McCarthy Potatoes can use the revised cost information for a variety of purposes:

- *Pricing/product emphasis decisions.* The sizeable drop in the reported cost of institutional potatoes makes it possible that McCarthy Potatoes was overpricing potato products in this market. It lost the bid for a large institutional contract with a bid 30% above the winning bid. With its revised product cost dropping from €1.133 to €0.620, McCarthy Potatoes could have bid much lower and still made a profit. An increased emphasis on the institutional market appears warranted.
- *Product design decisions.* ABC provides a roadmap as to how to reduce the costs of individual products. The relative components of costs are:

	Retail	Institutional
Direct costs		
Direct materials	12.6%	24.2%
Packaging	16.8	12.9
Indirect costs		
Cleaning	10.1	19.3
Cutting	20.2	24.2
Packaging	40.3	19.3
Total costs	100.0%	100.0%

Packaging-related costs constitute 57.1% (16.8% + 40.3%) of total costs of the retail product line. Design efforts that reduce packaging costs can have a big impact on reducing total unit costs for retail.

- *Process improvements.* Each activity area is now highlighted as a separate cost. The three indirect cost areas are over 60% of total costs for each product, indicating the upside from improvements in the efficiency of processes in these activity areas.

Exercise 11.12

1

(a) Cleaning activity area	
1 000 000 kg × €0.120	€120 000
(b) Cutting	
900 000 × €0.24	€216 000
100 000 × €0.15	15 000
	€231 000
(c) Packaging	
900 000 × €0.480	€432 000
100 000 × €0.120	12 000
	€444 000

2

Cost pool	Costs in pool	Number of driver units	Costs per driver unit
(a) Cleaning	€120 000	1 200 000 raw kilograms	€0.10
(b) Cutting	€231 000	3 850 hours*	€60.00
(c) Packaging	€444 000	37 000 hours†	€12.00

* (900 000 ÷ 250) + (100 000 ÷ 400) = 3600 + 250 = 3850.
† (900 000 ÷ 25) + (100 000 ÷ 100) = 36 000 + 1000 = 37 000.

3 McCarthy Potatoes can use information about cost driver rates in several ways:

- Target the high cost rate areas for process improvement. For example, cutting has a €60 per hour rate. McCarthy Potatoes could seek ways to reduce this by either redesigning processes or employing lower-cost equipment.
- Benchmarking to signal areas capable of improvement. If McCarthy Potatoes has other potato processing plants around the globe, it could compare cost driver rates for the same activity at different plants. It could then seek to transfer knowledge from the most efficient plants to the less efficient plants.

- Use cost driver rates as performance targets when evaluating operating managers. For example, the manager in charge of potato cleaning could be given a target rate of €0.09 per raw kilogram of potatoes cleaned.
- Developing a flexible budget for McCarthy Potatoes. The effect of different product mixes and different output levels can be estimated using the cost driver rates.

Exercise 11.18

1

	Job order 410		Job order 411	
Direct manufacturing costs				
Direct materials	SFr 9 700		SFr 59 900	
Direct manufacturing labour, SFr 30 × 25; 375	750	SFr 10 450	11 250	SFr 71 150
Indirect manufacturing costs, SFr 115 × 25; 375		2 875		43 125
Total manufacturing costs		SFr 13 325		SFr 114 275
Number of units		÷10		÷200
Unit manufacturing cost per job		SFr 1 332.50		SFr 571.375

2

	Job order 410		Job order 411	
Direct manufacturing costs:				
Direct materials	SFr 9 700		SFr 59 900	
Direct manufacturing labour, SFr 30 × 25; 375	750	SFr 10 450	11 250	SFr 71 150
Indirect manufacturing costs:				
Materials handling, SFr 0.40 × 500; 2000	200		800	
Lathe work, SFr 0.20 × 20 000; 60 000	4 000		12 000	
Milling, SFr 20.00 × 150; 1050	3 000		21 000	
Grinding, SFr 0.80 × 500; 2000	400		1 600	
Testing, SFr 15.00 × 10; 200	150	7 750	3 000	38 400
Total manufacturing costs		SFr 18 200		SFr 109 550
Number of units per job		÷10		÷200
Unit manufacturing cost per job		SFr 1 820		SFr 547.75

3

	Job order 410	Job order 411
Number of units in job	10	200
Unit cost per job with prior costing system	SFr 1332.50	SFr 571.375
Unit cost per job with activity-based costing	SFr 1820.00	SFr 547.75

Job order 410 has an increase in reported cost of 36.6% [(SFr 1820 − SFr 1332.50) ÷ SFr 1332.50] while Job order 411 has a decrease in reported cost of 4.1% [(SFr 547.75 − SFr 571.375) ÷ SFr 571.375].

A common finding when activity-based costing is implemented is that low-volume products have increases in their reported costs while high-volume products have decreases in their reported cost. This result is also found in requirements 1 and 2 of this problem.

The product cost figures calculated in requirements 1 and 2 differ because:

- the job orders differ in the way they use each of the five activity areas; and
- the activity areas differ in their indirect cost allocation bases (specifically, each area does not use the direct labour-hours indirect cost allocation base).

The following table documents how the two job orders differ in the way they use each of the five activity areas included in indirect manufacturing costs:

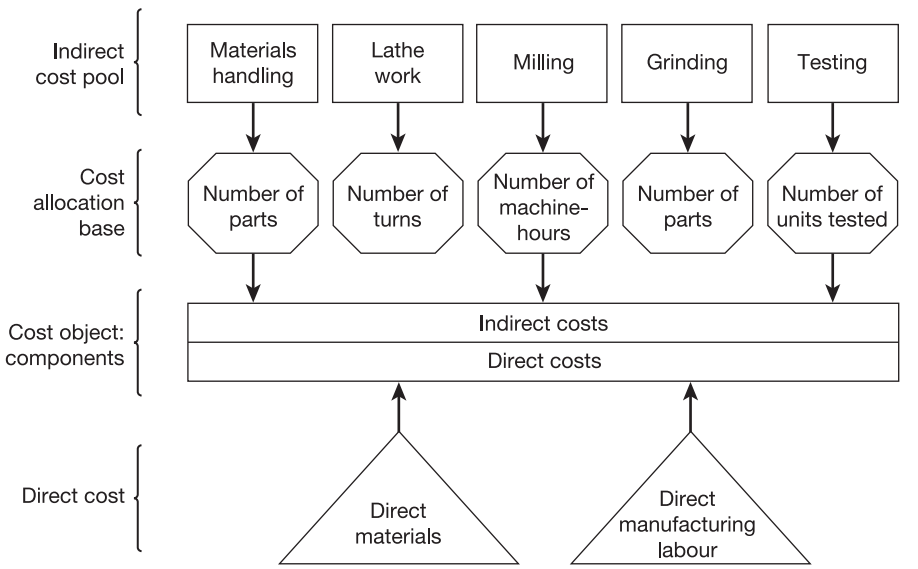
	Usage based on analysis of activity area cost drivers		Usage assumed with direct labour-hours as application base	
Activity area	Job order 410	Job order 411	Job order 410	Job order 411
Materials handling	20.0%	80.0%	6.25%	93.75%
Lathe work	25.0	75.0	6.25	93.75
Milling	12.5	87.5	6.25	93.75
Grinding	20.0	80.0	6.25	93.75
Testing	4.8	95.2	6.25	93.75

Areas where the differences in product cost figures might be important to Aircomposystèmes include:

- *Product pricing and product emphasis.* The activity-based accounting approach indicates that Job 410 is being undercosted while Job 411 is being overcosted. Aircomposystèmes may erroneously push Job 410 and de-emphasise Job 411. Moreover, by its actions, Aircomposystèmes may encourage a competitor to enter the market for Job order 411 and take market share away from itself.
- *Product design.* Product designers at Aircomposystèmes will probably find the numbers in the activity-based costing approach more believable and credible than those in the existing system. In a machine-paced manufacturing environment, it is unlikely that direct labour-hours would be the major cost driver. Activity-based costing provides more credible signals to product designers about the ways the costs of a product can be reduced – for example, use fewer parts, require fewer turns on the lathe, and reduce the number of machine-hours in the milling area.

An overview of the product costing system is given by Solution Exhibit 11.18.

Solution Exhibit 11.18 Overview of Aircomposystèmes' product costing system



CHAPTER 12

Exercise 12.13

1 Hospedeiras de Portugal Lda's full cost per hour of supplying contract labour is:

Variable costs	€12
Fixed costs (€240 000 ÷ 80 000 hours)	3
Full cost per hour	€15

Price per hour at full cost plus 20% = €15 × 1.20 = €18 per hour.

2 Contribution margins for different prices and demand realisations are as follows:

Price per hour (1)	Variable cost per hour (2)	Contribution margin per hour (3) = (1) − (2)	Demand in hours (4)	Total contribution (5) = (3) × (4)
€16	€12	€4	120 000	€480 000
17	12	5	100 000	500 000
18	12	6	80 000	480 000
19	12	7	70 000	490 000
20	12	8	60 000	480 000

Fixed costs will remain the same regardless of the demand realisations. Fixed costs are therefore irrelevant since they do not differ among the alternatives. The table above indicates that Hospedeiras de Portugal can maximise contribution margin and hence operating profit by charging a price of €17 per hour.

3 The cost-plus approach to pricing in requirement 1 does not explicitly consider the effect of prices on demand. The approach in requirement 2 models the interaction between price and demand and determines the optimal level of profitability using concepts of relevant costs. The two different approaches lead to two different prices in requirements 1 and 2. As the chapter describes, pricing decisions should consider both demand or market considerations and supply or cost factors. The approach in requirement 2 is the more balanced approach. In most cases, of course, managers use the cost-plus method of requirement 1 as only a starting point. They then modify the cost-plus price on the basis of market considerations – anticipated customer reaction to alternative price levels and the prices charged by competitors for similar products.

Exercise 12.14

1

Sales (1000 crates at DKK 100 per crate)		DKK 100 000
Variable costs:		
Manufacturing	DKK 40 000	
Marketing	14 000	
Total variable costs		54 000
Contribution margin		46 000
Fixed costs		
Manufacturing	DKK 20 000	
Marketing	16 000	
Total fixed costs		36 000
Operating profit		DKK 10 000

Normal mark-up percentage: DKK 46 000 ÷ DKK 54 000 = 85.19% of total variable costs.

2 Only the manufacturing-cost category is relevant to considering this special order; no additional marketing costs will be incurred. The relevant manufacturing costs for the 200-crate special order are:

Variable manufacturing cost per unit	
DKK 40 × 200 crates	DKK 8 000
Special packaging	2 000
	DKK 10 000

Any price above DKK 50 per crate (DKK 10 000 ÷ 200) will make a positive contribution to operating profit.

The reasoning based on a comparison of DKK 55 per crate-price with the DKK 60 per-crate absorption cost ignores monthly cost–volume–profit relationships. The DKK 60 per-crate absorption cost includes a DKK 20 per-crate cost component that is irrelevant to the special order. The relevant range for the fixed manufacturing costs is from 500 to 1500 crates per month; the special order will increase production from 1000 to 1200 crates per month. Furthermore, the special order requires no incremental marketing costs.

3 If the new customer is likely to remain in business, Østerbro should consider whether a strictly short-run focus is appropriate. For example, what is the likelihood of demand from other customers increasing over time? If Østerbro accepts the 200-crate special offer for more than one month, it may preclude accepting other customers at prices exceeding DKK 55 per crate. Moreover, the existing customers may learn about Østerbro's willingness to set a price based on variable cost plus a small contribution margin. The longer the timeframe over which Østerbro keeps selling 200 crates of canned peaches at DKK 55 a crate, the more likely that the existing customers will approach Østerbro for their own special price reductions.

Exercise 12.17

1 A life-cycle profit statement traces revenue and costs of each individual software package from its initial research and development to its final customer servicing and support in the marketplace. The two main differences from a calendar-based profit statement are:

- Costs incurred in different calendar periods are included in the same statement.
- Costs and revenue of each package are reported separately rather than aggregated into company-wide categories.

The benefits of using a product life-cycle report are:

- The full set of revenues and costs associated with each product becomes visible.
- Differences among products in the percentage of total costs committed at early stages in the life cycle are highlighted.
- Interrelationships among business function cost categories are highlighted. What is the effect, for example, of cutting back on R&D and product-design cost categories on customer-service costs in subsequent years?

2

	EE-46		ME-83		IE-17	
Revenue (€000)		€2500		€1500		€1600
Costs (€000)						
R&D	€700		€450		€240	
Design	200		120		96	
Production	300		210		208	
Marketing	500		270		448	
Distribution	75		60		96	
Customer service	375	2150	150	1260	608	1696
Operating profit (€000)		€350		€240		€(96)

As emphasised in this chapter, the time value of money is not taken into account when summing life-cycle revenue or life-cycle costs.

Rankings of the three packages on profitability (and relative profitability) are:

Operating profit			
1 EE-46:	€350 000	1 ME-83:	16.0%
2 ME-83:	€240 000	2 EE-46:	14.0%
3 IE-17:	(€96 000)	3 IE-17:	(6.0%)

The EE-46 and ME-83 packages should be emphasised, and the IE-17 package should be de-emphasised. It is interesting that IE-17 had the lowest R&D costs but was the least profitable.

3 The cost structures of the three software packages are:

	EE-46	ME-83	IE-17
R&D	32.5%	35.7%	14.1%
Design	9.3	9.5	5.7
Production	14.0	16.7	12.3
Marketing	23.3	21.4	26.4
Distribution	3.5	4.8	5.7
Customer service	17.4	11.9	35.8
	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

The major differences are:

- EE-46 and ME-83 have over 40% of their costs in the R&D/product-design categories compared with less than 20% (19.8%) for IE-17.
- IE-17 has 35.8% of its costs in the customer-service category compared with 17.4% for EE-46 and 11.9% for ME-83.

There are several explanations for these differences:

- EE-46 and ME-83 differ sizably from IE-17 in their R&D/product-design intensity. For example, EE-46 and ME-83 may require considerably more interaction with users, and more experimentation with software algorithms than does IE-17.
- The software division should have invested more in the R&D/product-design categories for IE-17. The high percentage for customer service could reflect the correcting of problems that should have been corrected prior to manufacture. Life-cycle reports highlight possible causal relationships among cost categories.

CHAPTER 13

Exercise 13.14

a The optimum approach for this question is to inflate cash flows at their different inflation rates and to discount at the money discount rate. The lowest common multiple is $2 \times 3 = 6$ years. Hence the cash will be presented in these terms.

Two-year cycle: (cash flows are inflated according to their individual inflation rates):

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Original cost	24 500		27 011		29 780		
Maintenance		550	968	666	1171	805	1417
Resale values			–17 199		–18 962		–20 905
Total	24 500	550	10 780	666	11 989	805	–19 488
Present values	24 500	478	8151	438	6856	400	–8425
Net present value of costs	32 398						

Three-year cycle: (cash flows are inflated according to their individual inflation rates):

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Original cost	24 500			28 362			
Maintenance		550	968	1996	732	1288	2657
Resale values				–12 968			–15 012
Total	24 500	550	968	17 390	732	1288	–12 355
Present values	24 500	478	732	11 434	418	640	–5341
Net present value of costs	32 861						

The two-year cycle is ideal.

b Some of the difficulties with NPV are listed below:

- NPV assumes that firms pursue an objective of maximising the wealth of their shareholders. This is questionable given the wider range of stakeholders whose interests might conflict with those of the shareholders.
- NPV is potentially a difficult method to apply in the context of having to estimate what is the correct discount rate to use. This is particularly so when questions arise as to the incorporation of risk premiums in the discount rate since an evaluation of the riskiness of the business, or of the project in particular, will have to be made and which may be difficult to discern.
- NPV assumes that cash surpluses can be reinvested at the discount rate. This is subject to other projects being available which produce at least a zero NPV at the chosen discount rate.
- NPV can most easily cope with cash flows arising at period ends and is not a technique that is used easily when complicated, mid-period cash flows are present.
- The conclusion from NPV analysis is the present value of the surplus cash generated from a project. If reported profits are important to businesses then it is possible that there may be a conflict between undertaking a positive NPV project and potentially adverse consequences on reported profits. This will particularly be the case for projects with long horizons, large initial investment and very delayed cash inflows.
- Managerial incentive schemes may not be consistent with NPV, particularly when long time horizons are involved. Thus managers may be rewarded on the basis of accounting profits in the short term and may be incentivised to act in accordance with these objectives and thus ignore positive NPV projects.

Exercise 13.22

1 a Workings £000

Year 0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Money sales		399.600	583.200	642.453	700.652	697.931
Money costs		318.000	393.260	452.586	492.366	535.290
Tax profit		81.600	189.940	189.867	208.286	162.641
Tax		24.480	56.982	56.960	62.486	48.792
Tax offset		24.480	56.982	56.960	62.486	48.792
Capital value		500	375	281.25	210.9375	158.2031
Allowance		125	93.75	70.3125	52.73438	108.2031
C/f		375	281.25	210.9375	158.2031	
Tax		37.5	28.125	21.09375	15.82031	32.46094
Offset		37.5	28.125	21.09375	15.82031	32.46094

Cash flows							
Investment	−500	50					
Sales-costs	81.600	189.940	189.867	208.286	162.641		
Tax	–24.480	–56.982	–56.960	–62.486	–48.792		
Tax allow	37.5	28.125	21.09375	15.82031	32.46094		
Net cash flow	–500	81.6	202.96	161.01	172.4194	165.9752	–16.3312
Discount factor	1.00	0.893	0.797	0.712	0.636	0.567	0.507
Present Value	–500	72.87	161.76	114.64	109.66	94.11	–8.28

Net present value = £44 760

Sales revenue	399.600	583.200	642.453	700.652	697.931
Operating costs	318.000	393.260	452.586	492.366	535.290
Depreciation	90.00	90.00	90.00	90.00	90.00
Profit	(8.40)	99.94	99.867	118.286	72.641

Total profit = £382 334.
Average profit = £382 334/5 = £76 467
Average investment = (500 000 + 50 000)/2 = £275 000
Accounting Rate of Return = £76 467/£275 000 = 0.278
Accounting Rate of Return = 28%

b **To: Board of Directors**
From: Management Accountant
Date: July 2009
Subject: Investment projects

From a financial perspective based on the information given and that the projects are mutually exclusive the company should invest in project 2. Investment decisions should be based on net present values as this methodology is consistent with maximising company wealth. However, the company will also need to consider non-financial factors that could affect the decision.

Examples include:

- consistency with the company's strategy
- impact on other areas of the business
- technical compatibility and obsolescence.

Accounting rate of return is a simple method of investment appraisal but has many disadvantages. In particular, it is based on accounting profit rather than cash flow. Accounting profit is subjective and dependent on the choice of accounting methods used. Accounting rate of return also ignores the time value of money.

The net present value method is preferable as it ensures that shareholders' wealth is maximised and recognises that cash received in the future is less valuable than cash received today. Net present value does suffer from a number of disadvantages as follows:

- the speed of the repayment of the original investment is not highlighted
- non-financial managers may have difficulty in understanding the concept
- determination of the correct discount rate can be difficult.

2 Annual repayment = £250 000/(10 year 8% annuity factor)
= £250 000/6.71
= £37 258

There are just five years remaining therefore the company will be about to make a payment and then will have four more annual payments to make. The value of these five payments is:

£37 258 + (37 258* 3.312) = £160 656

Source: CIMA 2010 Chartered Management Accounting Qualification – Answers for Specimen Examination Paper P1. Published November 2009.

CHAPTER 14

Exercise 14.12

Budgeted sales in units	100 000
Add target closing finished goods stock	11 000
Total requirements	111 000
Deduct opening finished goods stock	7 000
Units to be produced	104 000

Exercise 14.20

Tire-Lire, SNC
Statement of budgeted cash receipts and disbursements for the months of December 2022 and January 2023

	December 2022	January 2023
Cash balance, opening	€10 000	€2 025
Add receipts:		
Collections of receivables (schedule 1)	235 900	285 800
(a) Total cash available for needs	245 900	287 825
Deduct disbursements:		
For merchandise purchases (schedule 2)	183 875	141 750
For variable costs (schedule 3)	50 000	25 000
For fixed costs (schedule 3)	10 000	10 000
(b) Total disbursements	243 875	176 750
Cash balance, end of month (a – b)	€2 025	€111 075

Enough cash should be available for repayment of the note on 31 January 2023.

Schedule 1: Collections of receivables

December: 14 400[a] + 50 000[b] + 171 500[c] = €235 900
January: 20 000[d] + 60 000[e] + 205 800[f] = €285 800

[a] 0.08 × €180 000 [b] 0.20 × €250 000 [c] 0.70 × €250 000 × 0.98
[d] 0.08 × €250 000 [e] 0.20 × €300 000 [f] 0.70 × €300 000 × 0.98

Schedule 2: Payments for merchandise

	December		January	
Target closing stock (in units)	875	[a]	800	[c]
Add units sold (Sales ÷ €100)	3 000		1 500	
Total requirements	3 875		2 300	
Deduct opening stock (in units)	1 250	[b]	875	
Purchases (in units)	2 625		1 425	
Purchases in euros (units ÷ €70)	€183 750		€99 750	

[a] 500 units + 0.25(150 000 ÷ 100) [b] 87 500 ÷ 70
[c] 500 units + 0.25(120 000 ÷ 100)

	December	January
Cash disbursements:		
For previous month's purchases at 50%	€92 000	€91 875
For current month's purchases at 50%	91 875	49 875
	€183 875	€141 750

Schedule 3: Marketing, distribution and customer service costs

Total annual fixed costs, €150 000, minus €30 000 depreciation	=	€120 000
Monthly fixed cost requiring cash outlay	=	€10 000
Variable cost ratio to sales $= \frac{1}{6}$		
December variable costs: $\frac{1}{6} =$ €300 000 sales	=	€50 000
January variable costs: $\frac{1}{6} \times$ €150 000 sales	=	€25 000

Exercise 14.22

1

Activity area	Soft drinks	Fresh produce	Packaged food	Total
Ordering				
DKK 90 × 14; 24; 14	DKK 1 260	DKK 2 160	DKK 1 260	DKK 4 680
Delivery				
DKK 82 × 12; 62; 19	984	5 084	1 558	7 626
Shelf-stacking				
DKK 21 × 16; 172; 94	336	3 612	1 974	5 922
Customer support				
DKK 0.18 × 4600; 34 200; 10 750	828	6 156	1 935	8 919
	DKK 3 408	DKK 17 012	DKK 6 727	DKK 27 147

2 An ABB approach recognises how different products require different mixes of support activities. The relative percentage of how each product area uses the cost driver at each activity area is:

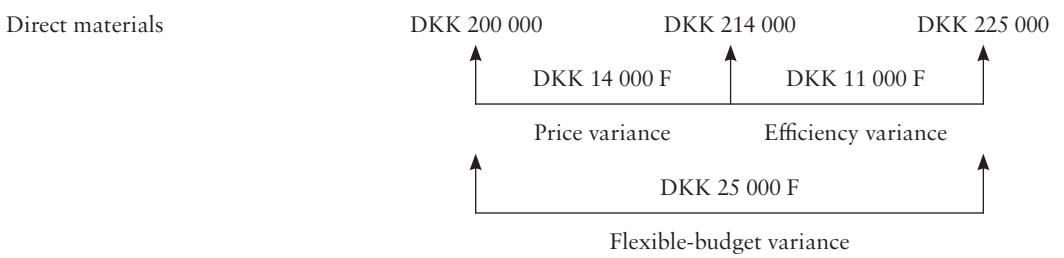
Activity area	Soft drinks	Fresh produce	Packaged food	Total
Ordering	26.9	46.2	26.9	100.0%
Delivery	12.9	66.7	20.4	100.0
Shelf-stacking	5.7	61.0	33.3	100.0
Customer support	9.3	69.0	21.7	100.0

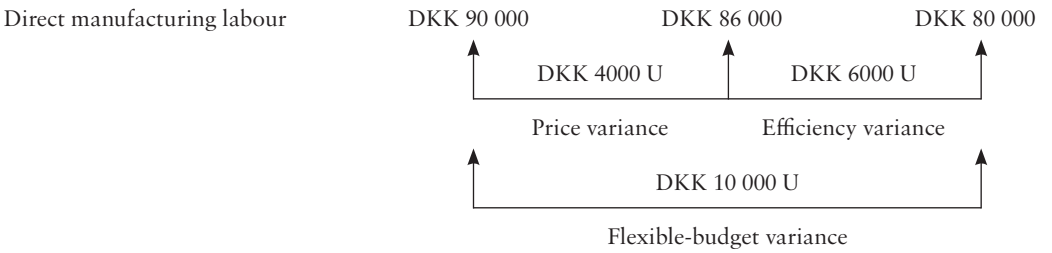
By recognising these differences, Nyborg Supermarkets managers are better able to budget for different unit sales levels and different mixes of individual product line items sold. Using a single cost driver (such as cost of goods sold, COGS) assumes homogeneity across product lines which does not occur at Nyborg Supermarkets.

Other benefits cited by managers include: (1) better identification of resource needs, (2) clearer linking of costs with staff responsibilities, and (3) identification of budgetary slack.

CHAPTER 15

Exercise 15.12





Exercise 15.20

1 Flexible budget data for Hoofdorp Music Box Fabricators for October.

	Budgeted amount per unit	Alternative levels of output		
		4000 units	5000 units	6000 units
Revenues	€77.00*	€308 000	€385 000	€462 000
Variable costs				
Direct materials	22.00†	88 000	110 000	132 000
Direct manufacturing labour	15.00‡	60 000	75 000	90 000
Variable manufacturing overhead	2.00§	8 000	10 000	12 000
Variable marketing cost	5.50§	22 000	27 500	33 000
Total variable costs	44.50	178 000	222 500	267 000
Contribution margin	€32.50	130 000	162 500	195 000
Fixed costs				
Manufacturing		51 700#	51 700	51 700
Marketing and administrative		82 600‖	82 600	82 600
Total fixed costs		134 300	134 300	134 300
Total costs		312 300	356 800	401 300
Operating profit (loss)		€(4 300)	€28 200	€60 700

* €70 + 10%(€70) = €77.
† €90 000 ÷ 4500 = €20; €20 + 10%(€20) = €22.
‡ €67 500 ÷ 4500 = €15.
§ Given.
# €50 700 + (€12 000 ÷ 12) = €50 700 + €1000 = €51 700.
‖ €81 350 + (€15 000 ÷ 12) = €81 350 + €1250 = €82 600.

2 A flexible budget enables Hoofdorp to calculate a richer set of variances than does a static budget. Hoofdorp will be able to calculate a flexible-budget variance and a sales-volume variance. These additional variances provide more insight into *why* actual results differ from budgeted amounts.

Exercise 15.24

1 Budgeted selling price (revenue per loan application):

$$\frac{1}{2}\% \times \text{budgeted average loan amount} = \frac{1}{2}\% \times €200\,000 = €1000$$

Budgeted variable costs per output unit are:

Professional labour (6 × €40)	€240
Loan filing fees	100
Credit checks	120
Courier mailings	50
Total budgeted variable costs	€510

Budgeted fixed costs = €31 000 per month.

The static budget for the 90 loan applicant level (and the flexible budget for the 120 loan application level in requirement 2) are:

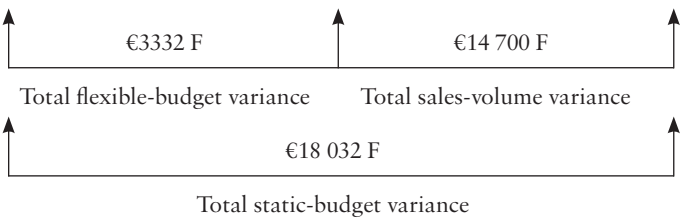
	Requirement 1: 90 loan applications	Requirement 2: 120 loan applications
Budgeted revenue (90, 120 × €1000)	€90 000	€120 000
Budgeted variable costs (90, 120 × €510)	45 900	61 200
Contribution margin	44 100	58 800
Fixed costs	31 000	31 000
Operating profit	€13 100	€27 800

2 The actual results are:

Revenue (120 × 0.5% × €224 000)		€134 400
Variable costs:		
Professional labour (120 × 7.2 ×€42)	€36 288	
Loan filing fees (120 × €100)	12 000	
Credit checks (120 × €125)	15 000	
Courier mailings (120 × €54)	6 480	69 768
Contribution margin		64 632
Fixed costs		33 500
Operating profit		€31 132

These actual results can be analysed in a Level 2 variance analysis.

	Actual results (1)	Flexible-budget variances (2) = (1) − (3)	Flexible budget (3)	Sales-volume variance (4) = (3) − (5)	Static budget (5)
Units sold	120	0	120	30 F	90
Revenue	€134 400	€14 400 F	€120 000	€30 000 F	€90 000
Variable costs	69 768	8 568 U	61 200	15 300 U	45 900
Contribution margin	64 632	5 832 F	58 800	14 700 F	44 100
Fixed costs	33 500	2 500 U	31 000	0	31 000
Operating profit	€31 132	€3 332 F	€27 800	€14 700 F	€13 100

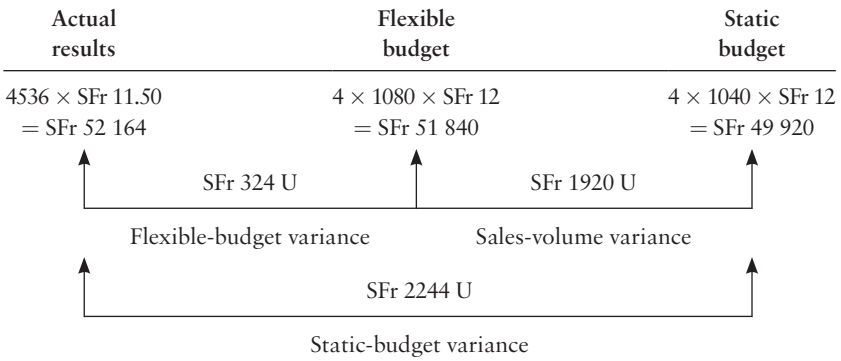


Note that the €18 032 favourable static-budget variance is largely the result of an increase in loan applications from a budgeted 90 to an actual 120. In addition, the average size of a loan increased from a budgeted €200 000 to €224 000 which explains the flexible-budget variance of €14 400 F for revenues (0.5% × €24 000 × 120 = €14 400). One possible explanation is a rapid decrease in interest rates leading to an increase in demand for loan refinancing.

CHAPTER 16

Exercise 16.11

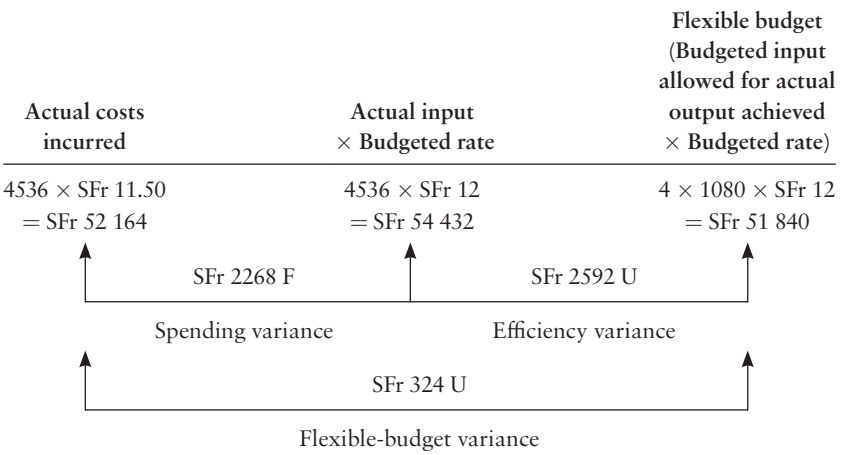
1



2 Lavertezzo manufactured an extra 40 suits than the 1040 budgeted. This accounts for the unfavourable sales-volume variance of SFr 1920 for variable manufacturing overhead.

The actual variable manufacturing overhead of SFr 52 164 exceeds the flexible budget amount of SFr 51 840 for 1080 suits by SFr 324 – hence the flexible budget variance is SFr 324 U.

Although not required by the exercise, the spending and efficiency variances provide further insight into the flexible-budget variance of SFr 324 U for variable manufacturing overhead:



Lavertezzo had a favourable spending variance of SFr 2268 (the actual variable overhead rate was SFr 11.50 per direct manufacturing labour-hour versus SFr 12 budgeted). It had an unfavourable efficiency variance of SFr 2592 U (each suit average 4.2 labour-hours versus 4.00 budgeted).

CHAPTER 17

Exercise 17.11

1 and 2 Actual total quantity of all inputs used and actual input mix percentages for each input are as follows:

Chemical	Actual quantity	Actual mix percentage
Echol	24 080	24 080 ÷ 86 000 = 0.28
Protex	15 480	15 480 ÷ 86 000 = 0.18
Benz	36 120	36 120 ÷ 86 000 = 0.42
CT-40	10 320	10 320 ÷ 86 000 = 0.12
Total	86 000	1.00

Budgeted total quantity of all inputs allowed and budgeted input mix percentages for each input are as follows:

Chemical	Budgeted quantity	Budgeted mix percentage
Echol	25 200	25 200 ÷ 84 000 = 0.30
Protex	16 800	16 800 ÷ 84 000 = 0.20
Benz	33 600	33 600 ÷ 84 000 = 0.40
CT-40	8 400	8 400 ÷ 84 000 = 0.10
Total	84 000	1.00

Solution Exhibit 17.11 presents the total direct materials efficiency, yield and mix variances for August.

Solution Exhibit 17.11 — Columnar presentation of direct materials efficiency, yield and mix variances for Paix-Trolls SARL for August 2022

	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Actual input mix) × Budgeted prices (1)	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted total quantity of all inputs allowed for actual output achieved × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (3)
Echol	86 000 × 0.28 × 0.20 = 4 816	86 000 × 0.30 × 0.20 = 5 160	84 000 × 0.30 × 0.20 = 5 040
Protex	86 000 × 0.18 × 0.45 = 6 966	86 000 × 0.20 × 0.45 = 7 740	84 000 × 0.20 × 0.45 = 7 560
Benz	86 000 × 0.42 × 0.15 = 5 418	86 000 × 0.40 × 0.15 = 5 160	84 000 × 0.40 × 0.15 = 5 040
CT-40	86 000 × 0.12 × 0.30 = 3 096	86 000 × 0.10 × 0.30 = 2 580	84 000 × 0.10 × 0.30 = 2 520
	20 296	20 640	20 160

€344 F* — Total mix variance

€480 U* — Total yield variance

€136 U — Total efficiency variance

* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

Total direct materials efficiency variance can also be calculated as:

$$\text{Direct materials efficiency variance for each input} = \left\{\text{Actual input} - \text{Budgeted inputs allowed for actual output achieved}\right\} \times \text{Budgeted prices}$$

Echol	= (24 080 − 25 200) × €0.20	=	€224 F
Protex	= (15 480 − 16 800) × €0.45	=	594 F
Benz	= (36 120 − 33 600) × €0.15	=	378 U
CT-40	= (10 320 − 8400) × €0.30	=	576 U
Total direct materials efficiency variance		=	€136 U

The total direct materials yield variance can also be calculated as the sum of the direct materials yield variances for each input:

Echol	= (86 000 − 84 000) × 0.30 × €0.20	= 2000 × 0.30 × €0.20	= €120 U
Protex	= (86 000 − 84 000) × 0.20 × €0.45	= 2000 × 0.20 × €0.45	= 180 U
Benz	= (86 000 − 84 000) × 0.40 × €0.15	= 2000 × 0.40 × €0.15	= 120 U
CT-40	= (86 000 − 84 000) × 0.10 × €0.30	= 2000 × 0.10 × €0.30	= 60 U
Total direct materials yield variance			€480 U

The total direct materials mix variance can also be calculated as the sum of the direct materials mix variances for each input:

$$\text{Actual indirect-cost rate} = \frac{\text{Actual indirect costs}}{\text{Actual direct labour-hour}} = \frac{\text{SKr 6 888 000}}{\text{164 000 hours}}$$

Echol	= (0.28 − 0.30) × 86 000 × €0.20	= −0.02 × 86 000 × €0.20	= €344 F
Protex	= (0.18 − 0.20) × 86 000 × €0.45	= −0.02 × 86 000 × €0.45	= 774 F
Benz	= (0.42 − 0.40) × 86 000 × €0.15	= 0.02 × 86 000 × €0.15	= 258 U
CT-40	= (0.12 − 0.10) × 86 000 × €0.30	= 0.02 × 86 000 × €0.30	= 516 U
Total direct materials mix variance			€344 F

3 Paix-Trolls used a larger total quantity of direct materials inputs than budgeted, and so showed an unfavourable yield variance. The mix variance was favourable because the actual mix contained more of the cheapest input, Benz, and less of the costliest input, Protex, than the budgeted mix. The favourable mix variance offset some, but not all, of the unfavourable yield variance – the overall efficiency variance was unfavourable. Paix-Trolls will only find it profitable to shift to the cheaper mix if the yield from this cheaper mix can be improved. Paix-Trolls must also consider the effect on output quality of using the cheaper mix, and the potential consequences for future revenues.

Exercise 17.16

1 Solution Exhibit 17.16A presents the total price variance (€3100 F), the total efficiency variance (€2560 U) and the total flexible-budget variance (€540 F).

Total direct materials price variance can also be calculated as:

Barley	= (€0.28 – €0.30) × 62 000	=	€1240 F
Wheat	= (€0.26 – €0.26) × 155 000	=	0
Rye	= (€0.20 – €0.22) × 93 000	=	1860 F
Total direct materials price variance			€3100 F

Total direct materials efficiency variance can also be calculated as:

Barley	= (62 000 – 45 000) × €0.30	=	€5100 U
Wheat	= (155 000 – 180 000) × €0.26	=	6500 F
Rye	= (93 000 – 75 000) × €0.22	=	3960 U
Total direct materials efficiency variance			€2560 U

Solution Exhibit 17.16A

Columnar presentation of direct materials price and efficiency variances for Granoline SA November 2022

	Actual costs incurred (Actual inputs × Actual prices) (1)	Actual input × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved × Budgeted prices) (3)
Barley	62 000 × 0.28 = 17 360	62 000 × 0.30 = 18 600	45 000 × 0.30 = 13 500
Wheat	155 000 × 0.26 = 40 300	155 000 × 0.26 = 40 300	180 000 × 0.26 = 46 800
Rye	93 000 × 0.20 = 18 600	93 000 × 0.22 = 20 460	75 000 × 0.22 = 16 500
	76 260	79 360	76 800
		€3100 F*	€2560 U*
		Total price variance	Total efficiency variance
		€540 F	
		Total flexible-budget variance	

* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

2 Solution Exhibit 17.16B presents the total direct materials yield and mix variances for Granoline SA for November 2022

Solution Exhibit 17.16B

Columnar presentation of direct materials, yield and mix variances for Granoline SA for November 2022

	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Actual input mix) × Budgeted prices (1)	(Actual total quantity of all inputs used × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (2)	Flexible budget (Budgeted total quantity of all inputs allowed for actual output achieved × Budgeted input mix) × Budgeted prices (3)
Barley	310 000 × 0.20 × 0.30 = 18 600	310 000 × 0.15 × 0.30 = 13 950	300 000 × 0.15 × 0.30 = 13 500
Wheat	310 000 × 0.50 × 0.26 = 40 300	310 000 × 0.60 × 0.26 = 48 360	300 000 × 0.60 × 0.26 = 46 800
Rye	310 000 × 0.30 × 0.22 = 20 460	310 000 × 0.25 × 0.22 = 17 050	300 000 × 0.25 × 0.22 = 16 500
	79 360	79 360	76 800
		0	€2560 U*
		Total mix variance	Total yield variance
		€2560 U	
		Total efficiency variance	

* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

The total direct materials yield variance can also be calculated as the sum of the direct materials yield variances for each input:

Barley	= (310 000 − 300 000) × 0.15 × €0.30	= 10 000 × 0.15 × €0.30	=	450 U
Wheat	= (310 000 − 300 000) × 0.60 × €0.26	= 10 000 × 0.60 × €0.26	=	1560 U
Rye	= (310 000 − 300 000) × 0.25 × €0.22	= 10 000 × 0.25 × €0.22	=	550 U
Total direct materials yield variance				€2560 U

The total direct materials mix variance can also be calculated as the sum of the direct materials mix variances for each input:

Barley	= (0.20 − 0.15) × 310 000 × €0.30	= 0.05 × 310 000 × €0.30	=	€4650 U
Wheat	= (0.50 − 0.60) × 310 000 × €0.26	= −0.10 × 310 000 × €0.26	=	8060 F
Rye	= (0.30 − 0.25) × 310 000 × €0.22	= 0.05 × 310 000 × €0.22	=	3410 U
Total direct materials mix variance				€0 U

3 Granoline paid less for barley and rye and so had a favourable direct materials price variance of €3100. It also had an unfavourable efficiency variance of €2560. Granoline would need to evaluate whether these were unrelated events or whether the lower price resulted from the purchase of cereals of poorer quality that affected efficiency. The net effect in this case from a cost standpoint was favourable – the savings in price being greater than the loss in efficiency. Of course, if the porridge is of poorer quality, Granoline must also evaluate the potential effects on current and future revenues that have not been considered in the variances described in requirements 1 and 2.

The unfavourable efficiency variance is attributable entirely to an unfavourable yield. The actual mix does deviate from the budgeted mix, but at the budgeted prices, the greater quantity of barley and rye cereals used in the actual mix exactly offsets the fewer wheat cereals used. Again, management should evaluate the reasons for the unfavourable yield variance. Is it due to poor quality barley and rye cereals (recall from requirement 1 that these cereals were acquired at a price lower than the standard price)? Is it due to the change in mix (recall that the mix used is different from the budgeted mix, even though the mix variance is €0)? Isolating the reasons can lead management to take the necessary corrective actions.

Exercise 17.21

1 and 2 Solution Exhibit 17.21 presents the sales-volume, sales-quantity and sales-mix variances for the Choc and Chic wine glasses and in total for Rusti-Verres SNC in June 2011. The steps to fill in the numbers in Solution Exhibit 17.21 follow:

- *Step 1*

Consider the static budget column (column 3):

Static budget total contribution margin	SFr 5600
Budgeted units of all glasses to be sold	2000
Budgeted contribution margin per unit of Choc	SFr 2
Budgeted contribution margin per unit of Chic	SFr 6

Suppose that the budgeted sales mix percentage of Choc is y. Then the budgeted sales mix percentage of Chic is $(1 - y)$. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
(2000 \times y \times \text{SFr } 2) + (2000 \times (1 - y) \times \text{SFr } 6) &= \text{SFr } 5600 \\
4000y + 12\,000 - 12\,000y &= 5600 \\
8000y &= 6400 \\
y &= 0.8 \text{ or } 80\% \\
1 - y = 1 - 0.8 &= 0.2 \text{ or } 20\%
\end{aligned}$$

Rusti-Verres' budgeted sales mix is 80% of Choc and 20% of Chic. We can then fill in all the numbers in column 3.

- *Step 2*

Consider next column 2 of Solution Exhibit 17.21.

The total of column 2 in Panel C is SFr 4200 (the static budget total contribution margin of SFr 5600 – the total sales-quantity variance of SFr 1400 U which was given in the problem).

We need to find the actual units sold of all glasses, which we denote by q. From column 2, we know that:

$$\begin{aligned}(q \times 0.8 \times \text{SFr } 2) + (q \times 0.2 \times \text{SFr } 6) &= \text{SFr } 4200\\ \text{SFr } 1.6q \times \text{SFr } 1.2q &= \text{SFr } 4200\\ \text{SFr } 2.8q &= \text{SFr } 4200\\ q &= 1500 \text{ units}\end{aligned}$$

Hence, the total quantity of all glasses sold is 1500 units. This calculation allows us to fill in all the numbers in column 2.

Solution Exhibit 17.21 Columnar presentation of sales-volume, salesquantity and sales-mix variances for Rusti-Verres SNC

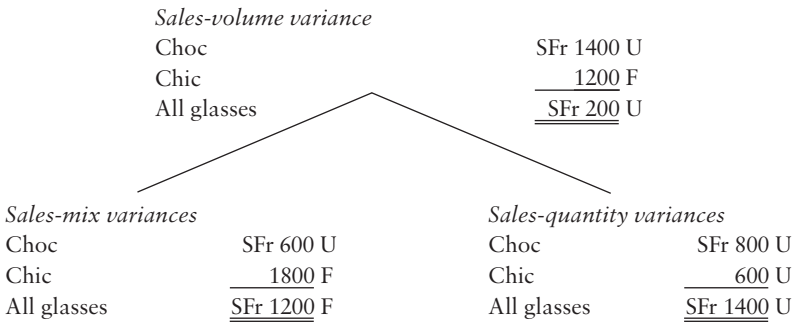
	Flexible budget (Actual units sold of all glasses × Actual sales mix) × Budgeted unit contribution margin (1)	**(Actual units sold of all glasses × Budgeted sales mix) × Budgeted unit contribution margin (2)**	**Static budget (Budgeted units sold of all glasses × Budgeted sales mix) × Budgeted unit contribution margin (3)**
Panel A: Choc	(1500 × 0.6) × SFr 2 = 900 × SFr 2 = SFr 1800	(1500 × 0.8) × SFr 2 = 1200 × SFr 2 = SFr 2400	(2000 × 0.8) × SFr 2 = 1600 × SFr 2 = SFr 3200
		SFr 600 U*	SFr 800 U
		Sales-mix variance	Sales-quantity variance
		SFr 1400 U	
		Sales-volume variance	
Panel B: Chic	(1500 × 0.4) × SFr 6 = 600 × SFr 6 = SFr 3600	(1500 × 0.2) × SFr 6 = 300 × SFr 6 = SFr 1800	(2000 × 0.2) × SFr 6 = 400 × SFr 6 = SFr 2400
		SFr 1800 F	SFr 600 U
		Sales-mix variance	Sales-quantity variance
		SFr 1200 F	
		Sales-volume variance	
Panel C: All glasses	SFr 5400	SFr 4200	SFr 5600
		SFr 1200F	SFr 1400 U
		Total sales-mix variance	Total sales-quantity variance
		SFr 200 U	
		Total sales-volume variance	

* F = favourable effect on operating profit; U = unfavourable effect on operating profit.

- *Step 3*

  Consider next column 1 of Solution Exhibit 17.21. We know the actual units sold of all glasses (1500 units), the actual sales-mix percentage (given in the problem information as Choc 60% and Chic 40%), and the budgeted unit contribution margin of each product (Choc SFr 2, Chic SFr 6). We can therefore determine all the numbers in column 1.

  Solution Exhibit 17.21 displays the following sales-quantity, sales-mix and sales-volume variances:



2 Rusti-Verres SNC shows an unfavourable sales-quantity variance because it sold fewer wine glasses in total than was budgeted. This unfavourable sales-quantity variance is partially offset by a favourable sales-mix variance because the actual mix of wine glasses sold has shifted in favour of the higher contribution margin Chic wine glasses. The problem illustrates how failure to achieve the budgeted market penetration can have negative effects on operating profit.

CHAPTER 18

Exercise 18.15

1 Transfer prices for X23 and Y99 follow:

	X23	Y99
Variable costs per unit	€11.00	€8.00
Allocated fixed costs per unit	14.00	7.00
Full costs per unit	25.00	15.00
10% of full costs per unit	2.50	1.50
Transfer price per unit	€27.50	€16.50

2 For X23 to have a transfer price of €23.65 per unit, its full cost would have to be €23.65 ÷ 1.10 = €21.50, because the transfer price per unit is determined by adding 10% to the full costs per unit.

Check	
Full costs per unit of X23	€21.50
Add 10% of full costs per unit	2.15
Transfer price per unit	€23.65

Fixed costs per unit that Eberhard would have to allocate to X23 can be calculated as follows:

Full costs per unit of X23	€21.50
Deduct variable costs per unit	11.00
Fixed costs per unit to be allocated	€10.50

3 Allocating overhead costs to products using methods that are in direct violation of corporate guidelines is unethical. In assessing the situation, professional standards of ethics, where they exist, should be consulted. For instance, competence, integrity and objectivity may be relevant.

Competence

Clear reports using relevant and reliable information should be prepared. Reports prepared on the basis of incorrectly allocating fixed costs would violate the management accountant's responsibility to competence. It is unethical for Wilhelm to suggest that Eberhard should change the cost numbers that were prepared for costing product X23 and for Wilhelm to change the numbers in order to reduce the cost and hence the transfer price for X23.

Integrity

The management accountant has a responsibility to avoid actual or apparent conflicts of interest and to advise all appropriate parties of any potential conflict. Lowering the fixed costs allocated to X23 will increase the costs allocated to Y99. If they changed the method of fixed-cost allocation, Wilhelm and Eberhard would appear to favour the Hanover Division (that uses X23) over the Bremen Division (that uses Y99). This action could be viewed as violating the responsibility for integrity. It is desirable for the management accountant to communicate favourable as well as unfavourable information. In this regard both Wilhelm's and Eberhard's behaviour (if Eberhard agrees to reduce the overhead costs allocated to X23) could be viewed as unethical.

Objectivity

Information should be fairly and objectively communicated and all relevant information should be disclosed. From a management accountant's standpoint, allocating fewer costs to a product in violation of company policy clearly violates both these precepts. For the various reasons cited above, we should take the position that the behaviour described by Wilhelm and Eberhard (if he goes along with Wilhelm's wishes) is unethical.

Eberhard should indicate to Wilhelm that the overhead costs allocated to X23 are indeed appropriate, given the long-term nature of the relationship between Leipzig and Hanover, and also as required by company policy. If Wilhelm still insists on making the changes and reducing the costs of making X23, Eberhard should raise the matter with Wilhelm's superior. If, after taking all these steps, there is continued pressure to misallocate costs, Eberhard should consider resigning from the company, and not engage in unethical behaviour.

Some students may raise the issue of whether full-cost transfer pricing is appropriate in this context. The problem does not provide enough details for a complete discussion of this issue. Management may well conclude that full-cost-based transfer prices should not be used. But that is a management decision. The management accountant should not unilaterally use methods of allocating fixed costs that are in direct violation of company policy.

Exercise 18.19

This problem explores the 'general transfer-pricing guideline' discussed in the chapter.

1 No, transfers should not be made to Division B if there is no excess capacity in Division A.

An incremental (outlay) cost approach shows a positive contribution for the company as a whole.

Selling price of final product		€300
Incremental costs in Division A	€120	
Incremental costs in Division B	150	270
Contribution (loss)		€30

However, if there is no excess capacity in Division A, any transfer will result in diverting product from the market for the intermediate product. Sales in this market result in a greater contribution for the company as a whole. Division B should not assemble the bicycle since the incremental revenue Liberaki can earn, €100 per unit (€300 from selling the final product – €200 from selling the intermediate product) is less than the incremental costs of €150 to assemble the bicycle in Division B.

Selling price of intermediate product	€200
Incremental (outlay) costs in Division A	120
Contribution (loss)	€80

The general guideline described in the chapter is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Minimum transfer price} &= \text{Additional incremental costs per unit incurred up to the point of transfer} + \text{Opportunity costs per unit to the supplying division}\\ &= €120 + (€200 - €120)\\ &= €200, \text{ which is the market price}\end{aligned}$$

Market price is the transfer price that leads to the correct decision; that is, do not transfer to Division B unless there are extenuating circumstances for continuing to market the final product. Therefore, B must either drop the product or reduce the incremental costs of assembly from €150 per bicycle to less than €100.

2 If (i) A has excess capacity, (ii) there is intermediate external demand for only 800 units at €200, and (iii) the €200 price is to be maintained, then the opportunity costs per unit to the supplying division are €0. The general guideline indicates a minimum transfer price of: €120 + €0 = €120, which is the incremental or outlay costs for the first 200 units. B would buy 200 units from A at a transfer price of €120 because B can earn a contribution of €30 per unit [€300 − (€120 + €150)]. In fact, B would be willing to buy units from A at any price up to €150 per unit because any transfers at a price of up to €150 will still yield B a positive contribution margin.

Note, however, that if B wants more than 200 units, the minimum transfer price will be €200 as calculated in requirement 1 because A will incur an opportunity cost in the form of lost contribution of €80 (market price, €200 – outlay costs of €120) for every unit above 200 units that are transferred to B.

The following schedule summarises the transfer prices for units transferred from A to B.

Units	Transfer price
0–200	€120–€150
200–1000	€200

For an exploration of this situation when imperfect markets exist, see Exercise 18.22.

3 Division B would show zero contribution, but the company as a whole would generate a contribution of €30 per unit on the 200 units transferred. Any price between €120 and €150 would induce the transfer that would be desirable for the company as a whole. A motivational problem may arise regarding how to split the €30 contribution between Divisions A and B. Unless the price is below €150, B would have little incentive to buy.

Note: The transfer price that may appear optimal in an economic analysis may, in fact, be totally unacceptable from the viewpoints of (1) preserving autonomy of the managers and (2) evaluating the performance of the divisions as economic units. For instance, consider the simplest case discussed above, where there is idle capacity and the €200 intermediate price is to be maintained. To direct that A should sell to B at A's variable cost of €120 may be desirable from the viewpoint of B and the company as a whole. However, the autonomy (independence) of the manager of A is eroded. Division A will earn nothing, although it could argue that it is contributing to the earning of profit on the final product.

If the manager of A wants a portion of the total company contribution of €30 per unit, the question is: How is an appropriate amount determined? This is a difficult question in practice. The price can be negotiated upwards to somewhere between €120 and €150 so that some 'equitable' split is achieved. A dual transfer pricing scheme has also been suggested whereby the supplier gets credit for the full intermediate market price and the buyer is charged only with variable or incremental costs. In any event, when there is heavy interdependence between divisions, such as in this case, some system of subsidies may be needed to deal with the three problems of goal congruence, management effort and subunit autonomy. Of course, where heavy subsidies are needed, a question can be raised as to whether the existing degree of decentralisation is optimal.

Exercise 18.22

An alternative presentation, which contains the same numerical answers, can be found at the end of this solution.

1 Potential contribution from external intermediate sale:

1000 × (€195 − €120)	€75 000
Contribution through keeping price at €200:	
800 × €80.	64 000
Forgone contribution by transferring 200 units	€11 000

Opportunity cost per unit to the supplying division:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{By transferring internally} &= 11\,000/200 = €55\\ \text{Transfer price} &= €120 + €55 = €175\end{aligned}$$

An alternative approach to obtaining the same answer is to recognise that the incremental or outlay cost is the same for all 1000 units in question. Therefore, the total revenue desired by A would be the same for selling outside or inside.

Let X equal the transfer price at which Division A is indifferent between selling all units outside versus transferring 200 units inside:

$$1000\ (€195) = 800\ (€200) + 200X$$
$$X = €175$$

The €175 price will lead to the correct decision. Division B will not buy from Division A because its total costs of €175 + €150 will exceed its prospective selling price of €300. Division A will then sell 1000 units at €195 to the outside; Division A and the company will have a contribution margin of €75 000. Otherwise, if 800 units were sold at €200 and 200 units were transferred to Division B, the company would have a contribution of €64 000 plus €6000 (200 units of final product × €30), or €70 000.

A comparison might be drawn regarding the calculation of the appropriate transfer prices between the preceding exercise and this:

$$\text{Minimum transfer price} = \begin{array}{c}\text{Additional incremental costs}\\ \text{per unit incurred up to the}\\ \text{point of transfeer}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Opportunity costs}\\ \text{per unit to division A}\end{array}$$

Perfect markets

$$\begin{aligned}\textit{Minimum transfer price} &= €120 + (\text{Selling price} - \text{Outlay costs per unit})\\ &= €120 + (€200 - €120) = €200\end{aligned}$$

Imperfect markets

$$\textit{Minimum transfer price} = €120 + \frac{\text{Marginal revenues} - \text{Outlay costs}}{\text{Number of units transferred}}$$

The marginal revenues of Division A from selling 200 units outside rather than transferring to Division B are = (€195 × 1000) − (€200 × 800) = €195 000 − €160 000 = €35 000. The incremental (outlay) costs incurred by Division A to produce 200 units = €120 = 200 × €24 000. Therefore

$$\text{Minimum transfer price} = €120 + [(35\,000 - 24\,000)/200] = €175$$

Therefore, selling price (€195) and marginal revenues per unit (€175 = €35 000 ÷ 200) are not the same.

Some students will erroneously say that the 'new' market price of €195 is the appropriate transfer price. They will claim that the general guideline says that the transfer price should be €120 + (€195 − €120) = €195, the market price. This conclusion assumes a perfect market. But here there are imperfections in the intermediate market. That is, the market price is *not* a good approximation of alternative revenue. If a division's sales are heavy enough to reduce market prices, marginal revenue will be less than market price.

It is true that *either* €195 *or* €175 will lead to the correct decision by B in this case. But suppose that B's variable costs were €120 instead of €150. Then B would buy at a transfer price of €175, but not at a price of €195, because then B would earn a negative contribution of €15 per unit [€300 − (€195 + €120)]. Note that if B's variable costs were €120, transfers would be desirable:

Division A contribution,	
800 × (200 − 120) + 200 (175 − 120) =	€75 000
Division B contribution,	
200 × [€300 − (€175 + €120)] =	1 000
Total contribution	€76 000

Or the same facts can be analysed for the company as a whole:

Sales of intermediate product, 800 × (€200 − €120) =	€64 000
Sales of final products, 200 + [300 − (€120 + €120)] =	12 000
Total contribution	€76 000

If the transfer price were €195, B would not accept the transfer and would not earn any contribution. As shown above, Division A and the company as a whole will earn a total contribution of €75 000 instead of €76 000.

2 a Division A can sell 900 units at €195 to the outside market and 100 units to Division B, or 800 at €200 to the outside market and 200 units to Division B. Note that, under both alternatives, 100 units can be transferred to Division B at no opportunity cost to A.

Using the general guideline, the minimum transfer price of *the first 100 units* [901 to 1000] is TP1 = €120 + 0 = €120. If Division B needs 100 additional units, the opportunity cost to A is not zero, because Division A will then have to sell only 800 units to the outside market for a contribution of 800 × (€200 − €120) = €64 000 instead of 900 units for a contribution of 900 (€195 − €120) = €67 500. Each unit sold to B in addition to the first 100 units has an opportunity cost to A of (€67 500 − €64 000) ÷ 100 = €35.

Using the general guideline, the minimum transfer price of *the next 100 units* [801 to 900] is TP2 = €120 + €35 = €155.

Alternatively, the calculation could be as follows:

Increase in contribution from 100 more units, 100 × €75	€7500
Loss in contribution on 800 units, 800 × (€80 − €75)	4000
Net 'marginal revenue'	€3500
Net 'marginal revenue' per unit, €3500 ÷ 100	€35

(Minimum) transfer price applicable to first 100 units offered by A, €120 + €0	€120 per unit
(Minimum) transfer price applicable to next 100 units offered by A, €120 + (€3500 ÷ 100)	€155 per unit
(Minimum) transfer price applicable to next 800 units	€195 per unit

b The manager of Division B will not want to purchase more than 100 units because the units at €155 would decrease his contribution (€155 + €150 > €300). Because the manager of B does not buy more than 100 units, the manager of A will have 900 units available for sale to the outside market. The manager of A will strive to maximise the contribution by selling them all at €195.

This solution maximises the company's contribution:

900 × (€195 − €120)	€67 500
100 × (€300 − €270)	3 000
	€70 500

This compares favourably with:

800 × (€200 − €120)	€64 000
200 × (€300 − €270)	6 000
	€70 000

Alternative presentation from company viewpoint (by James Patell)

1

Sell 1000 outside at €195	
Price	€195
Variable costs	120
Contribution	€75 × 1000 = €75 000
Sell 800 outside at €200, transfer 200	
Transfer price	€200
Variable costs	120
Contribution	€80 × 800 = €64 000

Total contribution given up if transfer occurs = €75 000 − €64 000 = €11 000. (The contribution of €30 per unit by B is not given up if transfer occurs, so it is not relevant here.)

On a per-unit basis, the relevant costs are the incremental costs to point of transfer + opportunity costs to Division A of transfer = transfer price, i.e. 120 + 11 000/200 = €175.

By formula, the costs are the incremental costs to point of transfer + lost opportunity to sell 200 at €195 for contribution of €75 − gain when first 800 sell at €200 instead of €195, i.e. €120 + €75 − €20 = €175.

2 a At most, Division A can sell only 900 units and can produce 1000. Therefore, at least 100 units should be transferred, at a transfer price no less than €120. The question is whether or not a second 100 units should be transferred.

Sell 900 outside at €195	
Transfer price	€195
Variable cost	120
Contribution	€75 × 900 = €67 500
Sell 800 outside at €200, transfer 100	
Transfer price	€200
Variable cost	120
Contribution	€80 × 800 = €64 000

Total contribution forgone if transfer of 100 units occurs = €67 500 − €64 000 = €3500 (or €35 per unit).

On a per-unit basis, the relevant costs are the incremental costs to point of transfer + opportunity costs to Division A of transfer = transfer price, i.e. €120 + €35 = €155.

b By formula, the costs are the incremental costs to point of transfer + lost opportunity to sell 100 at €195, for contribution of €75 − gain when first 800 sell at €200 instead of €195, i.e. €120 + €75 − €40 = €155.

Transfer price schedule (minimum acceptable transfer price)

Units	Transfer price
0–100	€120
101–200	€155
201–1000	€195

CHAPTER 19

Exercise 19.13

1

	Lorry Rental Division	Transportation Division
Total assets	€650 000	€950 000
Less: current liabilities	120 000	200 000
Investment	€530 000	€750 000
Required return (12% × investment)	63 600	90 000
Operating profit before tax	75 000	160 000
Residual income (profit – return)	€11 400	€70 000

2 After-tax cost of debt financing = (1 − 0.4) × 10% = 6%
After-tax cost of equity financing = 15%
Weighted average cost of capital = 9.6%
Required return for EVA®:

	Lorry Rental Division	Transportation Division
Investment	€530 000	€750 000
9.6% × investment	50 880	72 000
Operating profit after tax = 0.6 × operating profit before tax	45 000	96 000
EVA® (profit after tax – required return)	(€5 880)	€24 000

3 Both the residual profit and the EVA® calculations indicate that the Transportation Division is performing better than the Lorry Rental Division. The Transportation Division has a higher residual profit (€70 000 versus €11 400) and a higher EVA® (€24 000 versus negative €5880). The negative EVA® for the Lorry Rental Division indicates that on an after-tax basis the division is *destroying* value – the after-tax economic return from the Lorry Rental Division's assets is less than the required return. If EVA® continues to be negative, Intervilles may have to consider shutting down the Lorry Rental Division.

Exercise 19.15

1 The separate components highlight several features of return on investment not revealed by a single calculation:

- The importance of investment turnover as a key to profit is stressed.
- The importance of revenues is explicitly recognised.
- The important components are expressed as ratios or percentages instead of monetary figures. This form of expression often enhances comparability of different divisions, businesses and time periods.
- The breakdown stresses the possibility of trading-off investment turnover for income as a percentage of revenues so as to increase the average ROI at a given level of output.

2 (Filled-in blanks are in bold face.)

	Companies in same industry		
	A	B	C
Revenue	€1 000 000	€500 000	**€10 000 000**
Profit	€100 000	€50 000	**€50 000**
Investment	€500 000	**€5 000 000**	€5 000 000
Profit as % of revenue	**10%**	**10%**	0.5%
Investment turnover	**2.0**	**0.1**	2.0
Return on investment	**20%**	1%	**1%**

Income and investment alone shed little light on comparative performances because of disparities in size between Company A and the other two companies. Thus, it is impossible to say whether B's low return on investment in comparison with A's is attributable to its larger investment or to its lower profit. Furthermore the fact that Companies B and C have identical profit and investment may suggest that the same conditions underlie the low ROI, but this conclusion is erroneous. B has higher margins but a lower investment turnover. C has very small margins (1/20 of B's) but turns over investment 20 times faster.

The following analysis of the situation could be made:

Introducing revenues to measure level of operations helps to disclose specific areas for more intensive investigation. Company B does as well as Company A in terms of profit margin, for both companies earn 10% on revenues. But Company B has a much lower turnover of investment than does Company A. Whereas a euro of investment in Company A supports 2 euros in revenues each period, a euro investment in Company B supports only 10 cents in revenues each period. This suggests that the analyst should look carefully at Company B's investment. Is the company keeping a level of stocks larger than necessary for its revenue level? Are debts being collected promptly? Or did Company A acquire its fixed assets at a price level that was much lower than that at which Company B purchased its plant?

On the other hand, C's investment turnover is as high as A's, but C's profit as a percentage of revenue is much lower. Why? Are its operations inefficient, are its material costs too high, or does its location entail high transportation costs?

Analysis of ROI raises questions such as the foregoing. When answers are obtained, basic reasons for differences between rates of return may be discovered. For example, in Company B's case, it is apparent that the emphasis will have to be on increasing turnover by reducing investment or increasing revenues. Clearly, B cannot appreciably increase its ROI simply by increasing its profit as a percentage of revenue. In contrast, Company C's management should concentrate on increasing the percentage of profit on revenue.

Exercise 19.19

1 *Computer Power*

2017	1.111	0.250	0.278
2022	0.941	0.125	0.118

Plum Computer

2017	1.250	0.100	0.125
2022	1.458	0.171	0.250

Computer Power's ROI has declined sizably over the year, largely because of a decline in operating profit to revenues. Plum Computer's ROI has doubled over the year, in large part due to an increase in operating profit to revenues.

2

	Computer Power		Plum Computer	
Business function	**2017**	**2022**	**2017**	**2022**
R&D	12.0%	6.0%	10.0%	15.0%
Design	5.0	3.0	2.0	4.0
Production	34.0	40.0	46.0	34.0
Marketing	25.0	33.0	20.0	23.0
Distribution	9.0	8.0	10.0	8.0
Customer service	15.0	10.0	12.0	16.0
Total costs	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%

Business functions with increases/decreases in the percentage of total costs over the year are:

	Computer Power	Plum Computer
Increases	Production Marketing	R&D Design Marketing Customer service
Decreases	R&D Design Distribution Customer service	Production Distribution

Computer Power has decreased expenditures in several key business functions that are critical to its long-term survival, notably research and development and design. These costs are discretionary and can be reduced in the short run without any short-run effect on customers, but such action is likely to create serious problems in the long run.

3 Based on the information provided, Kamel is the better candidate for president of User Friendly Computer. Both Computer Power and Plum Computer are in the same industry. Kamel has headed Plum Computer at a time when it has considerably outperformed Computer Power:

- The ROI of Plum Computer has increased over the year while that of Computer Power has decreased.
- The computer magazine has increased the ranking of Plum Computer's main product, while it has decreased the ranking of Computer Power's main product.
- Plum Computer has received high marks for new products (the lifeblood of a computer company), while Computer Power new-product introductions have been described as 'mediocre'.

CHAPTER 20

Exercise 20.11

1 La Quinta's 2023 strategy is a cost leadership strategy. La Quinta plans to grow by producing high-quality boxes at a low cost delivered to customers in a timely manner. La Quinta's boxes are not differentiated and there are many other manufacturers who produce similar boxes. To succeed, La Quinta must achieve lower costs relative to competitors through productivity and efficiency improvements.

2 Measures that we would expect to see on a La Quinta's balanced scorecard are:

Financial perspective

- operating income from productivity gain
- operating income from growth
- cost reductions in key areas.

These measures evaluate whether La Quinta has successfully reduced costs and generated growth through cost leadership:

Customer perspective

- market share
- new customers
- customer satisfaction index
- customer retention
- time taken to fulfil customer orders.

The logic is that improvements in these customer measures are leading indicators of superior financial performance:

Internal business process perspective

- yield
- productivity
- order delivery time
- on-time delivery.

Improvements in these measures are expected to lead to more satisfied customers and in turn to superior financial performance:

- Learning and growth perspective
- percentage of employees trained in process and quality management
- employee satisfaction
- number of major process improvements.

Improvements in these measures have a cause-and-effect relationship with improvements in internal business processes, which in turn lead to improved customer satisfaction and financial performance.

Exercise 20.13

1 Snyder's strategy is cost leadership. Snyder's consulting services for implementing sales management software are not distinct from those of its competitors. The market for these services is very competitive. To succeed, Snyder must deliver quality service at low cost. Improving productivity while maintaining quality is key.

2 Balanced scorecard measures follow:

Financial perspective

- increase operating income from productivity gains and growth
- revenues per employee
- cost reductions in key areas, for example, software implementation and overhead costs.

These measures indicate whether Snyder has been able to reduce costs and achieve operating income increases through cost leadership:

Customer perspective

- market share
- new customers
- customer responsiveness
- customer satisfaction.

Improvements in these customer measures are regarded as leading indicators of superior financial performance:

- Internal business process perspective
- time to complete customer jobs
- time lost due to errors
- quality of job. (Is system running smoothly after job is completed?)

Improvements in these measures are expected to lead to more satisfied customers, lower costs and superior financial performance:

Learning and growth perspective

- time required to analyse and design implementation steps
- time taken to perform key steps implementing the software
- skill levels of employees
- hours of employee training
- employee satisfaction and motivation.

Improvements in these measures have a cause-and-effect relationship with improvements in internal business processes, leading to improved customer satisfaction and financial performance.

Exercise 20.14

1 Caltex's strategy is to focus on 'service-oriented customers' who are willing to pay a higher price for services. Even though its product is largely a commodity product, petrol, Caltex wants to differentiate itself through the service it provides at its retailing stations.

Does the scorecard represent Caltex's strategy? By and large it does. The focus of the scorecard is on measures of process improvement, quality, market share, and financial success from product differentiation. There are some deficiencies that the subsequent assignment exercises raise but, abstracting from these concerns for the moment, the scorecard does focus on implementing a product differentiation strategy.

Having concluded that the scorecard has been reasonably well designed, how has Caltex performed relative to its strategy in 2022? It appears from the scorecard that Caltex was successful in implementing its strategy in 2022. It achieved all targets in the financial, internal business, and learning and growth perspectives. The only target it missed was the market share target in the customer perspective. At this stage, students may raise some questions about whether this is a good scorecard measure. Requirement 3 gets at this issue in more detail. The bottom line is that measuring 'market share in the overall petrol market' rather than in the 'service-oriented customer' market segment is not a good scorecard measure, so not achieving this target may not be as big an issue as it may at first seem.

2 Yes, Caltex should include some measure of employee satisfaction and employee training in the learning and growth perspective. Caltex's differentiation strategy and ability to charge a premium price is based on customer service. The key to good, fast and friendly customer service is well-trained and satisfied employees. Untrained and dissatisfied employees will have poor interactions with customers and cause the strategy to fail. Hence, training and employee satisfaction are important to Caltex for implementing its strategy. These measures are leading indicators of whether Caltex will be able to successfully implement its strategy and, hence, should be measured on the balanced scorecard.

3 Caltex's strategy is to focus on the 60% of petrol consumers who are service-oriented, not on the 40% price-shopper segment. To evaluate if it has been successful in implementing its strategy, Caltex needs to measure its market share in its targeted market segment, 'service-oriented customers', not its market share in the overall market. Given Caltex's strategy, it should not be concerned if its market share in the price-shopper segment declines. In fact, charging premium prices will probably cause its market share in this segment to decline. Caltex should replace 'market share in overall petrol market' with 'market share in the service-oriented customer segment' in its balanced scorecard customer measure. Caltex may also want to consider putting a customer satisfaction measure on the scorecard. This measure should capture an overall evaluation of customer reactions to the facility, the convenience store, employee interactions and quick turnround. The customer satisfaction measure would serve as a leading indicator of market share in the service-oriented customer segment.

4 Although there is a cause-and-effect link between internal business process measures and customer measures on the current scorecard, Caltex should add more measures to tighten this linkage. In particular, the current scorecard measures focus exclusively on refinery operations and not on petrol station operations. Caltex should add measures of petrol station performance such as cleanliness of the facility, turnround time at the pumps, the shopping experience at the convenience store, and the service provided by employees. Many companies do random audits of their facilities to evaluate how well their branches and retail outlets are performing. These measures would serve as leading indicators of customer satisfaction and market share in Caltex's targeted segments.

5 Caltex is correct in not measuring changes in operating profit from productivity improvements on its scorecard under the financial perspective. Caltex's strategy is to grow by charging premium prices for customer service. The scorecard measures focus on Caltex's success in implementing this strategy. Productivity gains *per se* are not critical to Caltex's strategy and, hence, should not be measured on the scorecard.

Exercise 20.23

1 The $\pm 2\sigma$ rule will trigger a decision to investigate when the round-trip fuel usage is outside the control limit:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} \pm 2 = \sigma\ 1000 \pm 2\sigma &= 1000 \pm (2 \times 100)\\ &= 800 \text{ to } 1200 \text{ litre-units}\end{aligned}$$

Any fuel usage less than 80 litre-units or greater than 1200 litre-units will trigger a decision to investigate.

The only plane to be outside the specified $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ fuel usage control limit is the Eclair des Alpilles on flights 5 (1220 litre-units), 7 (1260 litre-units) and 10 (1230 litre-units).

2 The Eclair des Cévennes has no observation outside the $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ control limits. However, there was an increase in fuel use in each of the last eight round-trip flights. The probability of eight consecutive increases from an in-control process is very low.

The Eclair des Vosges appears in control regarding fuel usage.

The Eclair des Alpilles has three observations outside the $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ control limits. Moreover, the mean on the last six flights is 1200 compared with a mean of 1040 for the first four flights.

3 The advantage of using euro fuel costs as the unit of analysis in an SQC chart is that it focuses on a variable of overriding concern to top managers: operating costs.

However, the disadvantages of using euro fuel costs are:

- Split responsibilities. Operations managers may not control the purchase of fuel, and may want to exclude from their performance measures any variation stemming from factors outside their control.
- Offsetting factors may mask important underlying trends when the quantity used and the price paid are combined in a single observation. For example, decreasing litre usage may be offset by increasing fuel costs. Both of these individual patterns are important in budgeting for an airline.
- The distribution of fuel usage in litres may be different from the distribution of fuel prices per litre. More reliable estimates of the μ and σ parameters might be obtained by focusing separately on the individual usage and price distributions.

Note: The above disadvantages are most marked if actual fuel prices are used. The use of standard fuel prices can reduce many of these disadvantages.

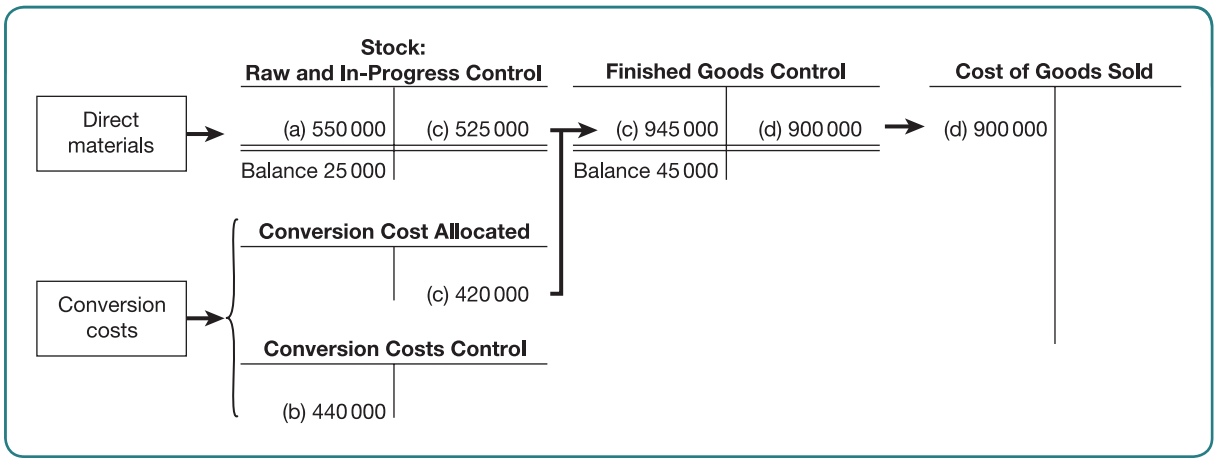
CHAPTER 21

Exercise 21.11

1 Journal entries for August are as follows:

Entry (a)	Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control	550 000	
	Creditors' Control		550 000
	(raw materials and components purchased)		
Entry (b)	Conversion Costs Control	440 000	
	Various accounts (such as Creditors Control and Wages Payable)		440 000
	(conversion costs incurred)		
Entry (c)	Finished Goods Control	945 000	
	Stock: Raw and In-Progress Control		525 000
	Conversion Costs Allocated		420 000
	(standard costs of 21 000 units of finished goods produced at €45 per unit; direct materials, €25 per unit; conversion costs, €20 per unit)		
Entry (d)	Cost of Goods Sold	900 000	
	Finished Goods Control		900 000
	(standard costs of 20 000 units of finished goods sold at €45 per unit)		

2



Exercise 21.20

1 Cost of defective unit at machining operation which is not a bottleneck operation is the loss in direct materials (variable costs) of €32 per unit. Producing 2000 units of defectives does not result in loss of throughput contribution. Despite the defective production, machining can produce and transfer 80 000 units to finishing. Therefore cost of 2000 defective units at the machining operation is €32 × 2000 = €64 000.

2 A defective unit produced at the bottleneck finishing operation costs Salamanca materials costs plus the opportunity cost of lost throughput contribution. Bottleneck capacity not wasted in producing defective units could be used to generate additional sales and throughput contribution. Cost of 2000 defective units at the finishing operation is as follows:

Loss of direct materials: €32 × 2000	€64 000
Forgone throughput contribution: (€72 − €32) × 2000	80 000
Total cost of 2000 defective units	€144 000

Alternatively, the cost of 2000 defective units at the finishing operation can be calculated as the lost revenue of €72 × 2000 = €144 000. That is, the direct materials costs of €32 × 2000 = €64 000 and all fixed operating costs in the machining and finishing operations are irrelevant since these costs would be incurred anyway whether a defective or good unit is produced. The cost of producing a defective unit is the revenue lost of €144 000.

Exercise 21.27

1 Sarantis has successfully implemented JIT in its production operations and hence minimised work-in-progress stock. It still has a fair amount of raw material and finished goods stock. It is therefore recommended that Sarantis adopt a backflush costing system with two trigger points as follows:

- direct materials purchases charged to stock: Raw and In-Progress Control
- finished goods recorded as Finished Goods Control.

The backflush approach described closely approximates the costs calculated using sequential tracking. There is no work in progress so there is no need for a Work-in-Progress stock account.

Further, by maintaining a Raw and In-Progress Stock Control and Finished Goods Control account, Sarantis can keep track of and control the stocks of direct materials and finished goods in its plant.

2 a A backflush costing system with a single trigger point: Finished Goods Control. This would approximate the sequential tracking approach since the question assumes Sarantis has no raw materials or work-in-progress stocks. There is therefore no need for these stock accounts.

b A backflush costing system with two trigger points: (1) when purchases are made (debited to Stock Control) and (2) when finished goods are sold, would approximate sequential tracking, since the question assumes Sarantis has no work-in-progress or finished goods stocks.

c A backflush costing system with a single trigger point when finished goods are sold would approximate sequential tracking since the question assumes Sarantis has no raw material, work-in-progress or finished goods stock.

The principle here is that backflushing of costs should be triggered at the finished goods stock stage if Sarantis plans to hold finished goods inventory. If Sarantis plans to hold no finished goods stock, backflushing can be postponed until the finished goods are sold. In other words, the trigger points for backflushing relate to the points where stock is being accumulated. As a result, backflushing matches the sequential tracking approach and also maintains a record for the monitoring and control of the stock.

3 Some comments on the quotation follow:

- The backflush system is a standard costing system, not an actual costing system.
- If standard costing is used, an up-to-date realistic set of standard costs is always desirable – as long as the set meets the cost–benefit test as related to the task of updating.
- The operating environments of 'the present JIT era' have induced many companies towards more simplicity (backflush) and abandoning the typical standard costing system (sequential tracking).
- Backflush is probably closer to being a periodic system than a perpetual system. However, a periodic system may be cost-effective, particularly where physical stocks are relatively low or stable.
- The textbook points out that, to be attractive, backflush costing should generate the same financial measurements as sequential tracking – and at a lower accounting cost.
- The choice of a product costing system is highly contextual. Its characteristics should be heavily affected by its costs, the preferences of operating managers and the underlying operating processes. Sweeping generalisations about any cost accounting system or technique are unjustified.

Exercise 21.29

1 It will cost Autronic €50 per unit to reduce manufacturing time. But manufacturing is not a bottleneck operation, installation is. Therefore manufacturing more equipment will not increase sales and throughput contribution. Autronic AG should not implement the new manufacturing method.

2 Additional relevant costs of new direct materials = €2000 × 320 units = €640 000. Increase in throughput contribution = €25 000 × 20 units = €500 000. The additional incremental costs exceed the benefits from higher throughput contribution by €140 000, so Autronic AG should not implement the new design.

Alternatively, compare throughput contribution under each alternative. Current throughput contribution is €25 000 × 300 = €7 500 000. With the modification, throughput contribution is €23 000 × 320 = €7 360 000. The current throughput contribution is greater than the throughput contribution resulting from the proposed change in direct materials. Hence, Autronic should not implement the new design.

3 Increase in throughput contribution, €25 000 × 10 units = €250 000. Increase in relevant costs = €50 000. The additional throughput contribution exceeds incremental costs by €200 000 so Autronic should implement the new installation technique.

4 Motivating installation workers to increase productivity is worthwhile because installation is a bottleneck operation and any increase in productivity at the bottleneck will increase throughput contribution. On the other hand, motivating workers in the Manufacturing Department to increase productivity is not worthwhile. Manufacturing is not a bottleneck operation, so any increase in output will only result in extra stock of equipment. Autronic AG should only encourage manufacturing to produce as much equipment as the Installation Department needs, not to produce as much as it can. In these circumstances, it would not be a good idea to evaluate and compensate manufacturing workers on the basis of their productivity.

Exercise 21.32

1 $\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{(2DP/C)}$

$D = 2000$; $P = €40$; $C = €4 + (10\% \times €50) = €9$

$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{(2 \times 2000 \times 40/9)} = 133.333 \text{ tyres} \simeq 133 \text{ tyres}$

$\text{TRC} = DP/Q + QC/2$ where Q can be any quantity, including the EOQ

$= (2000 \times 40/133.3) + (133.3 \times 9/2) + €600 + €600 = €1200$

If students used an EOQ of 133 tyres (order quantities rounded to the nearest whole number),

$$\text{TRC} = €601.5 + €598.5 = €1200$$

The sum of annual relevant ordering and carrying costs equals €1200.

2 The prediction error affects C, which is now:

$$C = €4 + (10\% \times €30) = €7$$

$$D = 2000 \quad P = €40 \quad C = €7$$

$$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{(2 \times 2000 \times 40/7)} = 151.186 \text{ tyres} \simeq 151 \text{ tyres}$$

The cost of the prediction error can be calculated using a three-step procedure.

- *Step 1*. Calculate the monetary outcome from the best action that could have been taken, given the actual amount of the cost input:

$$\text{TRC} = DP/Q + QC/2 = €529.15 + €529.15 = €1058.30$$

- *Step 2*. Calculate the monetary outcome from the best action based on the incorrect amount of the predicted cost input:

$$\text{TRC} = DP/Q + QC/2 = €600 + €466.67 = €1066.67$$

- *Step 3*. Calculate the difference between the monetary outcomes from steps 1 and 2:

	Monetary outcome
Step 1	€1058.30
Step 2	1066.67
Difference	€(8.37)

The cost of the prediction error is €8.37

Note: The €20 prediction error for the purchase price of the heavy-duty tyres is irrelevant in computing purchase costs under the two alternatives because the same purchase costs will be incurred whatever the order size.

Some students may prefer to round off the EOQs to 133 tyres and 151 tyres, respectively. The calculations under each step in this case are:

- *Step 1*. TRC = €529.80 + €528.50 = €1058.30
- *Step 2*. TRC = €601.50 + €465.50 = €1067.00
- *Step 3*. Difference = €1058.30 − €1067.00 = €8.70

CHAPTER 22

Exercise 22.11

1 Gardini's strategy is to focus on 'service-oriented customers' who are willing to pay a higher price for services. Even though candy bars are largely a commodity product, Gardini wants to differentiate itself through the service it provides with its custom labeling and high-quality product.

Does the scorecard represent Gardini's strategy? By and large it does. The focus of the scorecard is on measures of process improvement, quality, market share, and financial success from product differentiation and charging higher prices for customer service. There are some deficiencies that the subsequent assignment questions raise, but abstracting from these concerns for the moment, the scorecard does focus on implementing a product differentiation strategy.

Based on the scorecard being reasonably well designed, how has Gardini performed relative to its strategy in 2022? It appears from the scorecard that Gardini was successful in implementing its strategy in 2022. It achieved all targets in the financial, internal business, and learning and growth perspectives (other than women and minorities in the workplace). The only target it missed was the market share target in the customer perspective. At this stage, students may raise some questions about whether this is a good scorecard measure. Requirement 3 gets at this issue in more detail. The bottom line is that measuring 'market share in the overall candy market' rather than in the 'specialty candy' market segment is not a good scorecard measure, so not achieving this target may not be as big a miss as it may seem at first.

2 Yes, Gardini should include some measure of customer satisfaction in the customer perspective. Gardini's differentiation strategy and ability to charge a premium price is based on meeting and/or exceeding customer expectations, especially in the custom design of the labels. Unsatisfied customers will not be loyal or will be unlikely to recommend the company's product. Hence, customer satisfaction is very important to Gardini for implementing its strategy. These measures are leading indicators of whether Gardini will be able to increase its market share in the specialty candy market and should be measured on the balanced scorecard.

3 To evaluate if it has been successful in implementing its strategy, Gardini needs to measure its market share in its targeted market segment, not its market share in the overall market. Given Gardini's strategy, it should not be concerned if its market share in the candy bar segment declines. In fact, charging premium prices will probably cause its market share in this segment to decline. Gardini should replace 'market share in overall candy bar market' with 'market share in the specialty food/candy segment' in its balanced scorecard customer measure. If Gardini is successfully implementing its strategy, its market share in the specialty candy segment should increase.

4 Gardini is correct in not measuring changes in operating income from productivity improvements on its scorecard under the financial perspective. Gardini's strategy is to grow by charging premium prices for customer service. The scorecard measures focus on Gardini's success in implementing this strategy. Productivity gains per se are not critical to Gardini's strategy and, therefore, should not be measured on the scorecard.

5 Gardini included social and environmental performance measures in its balanced scorecard because it believes strong environmental and social performance gives it a competitive advantage by (1) attracting and inspiring outstanding employees, (2) enhancing its reputation with socially conscious customers, investors and analysts, and (3) boosting its image with governments and citizens, all of which contribute to long-run financial performance. Gardini also believes that focusing on environmental and social performance in addition to financial performance helps it to innovate in technologies, processes, products, and business models to reduce the trade-offs between financial and sustainability goals and build transformational leadership and change capabilities to implement these 'triple bottom line' strategies.

Following the concept of shared value, Gardini includes social and environmental measures (together with business goals and measures) in its balanced scorecard to evaluate how well it is doing toward achieving its social and environmental goals. The balanced scorecard indicates that Gardini's social and environmental initiatives are having an effect. Gardini's increased use of recycled materials as a percentage of total materials used has resulted in attracting customers for whom using recycled materials matters, creating long-term financial benefit. Similarly increasing the number of women and minorities employed will allow Gardini to target a larger number of talented individuals. Reducing the size of packaging both increases income and reduces waste, achieving both financial and sustainability objectives.

Not all companies believe in implementing sustainability goals, but those that do find the balanced scorecard to be a useful tool to simultaneously implement both financial and sustainability goals.

GLOSSARY

absorption costing Stock costing method in which all variable manufacturing costs and all fixed manufacturing costs are included as inventoriable costs.

account analysis method Approach to cost estimation that classifies cost accounts in the ledger as variable, fixed or mixed with respect to the cost driver. Typically, qualitative rather than quantitative analysis is used in making these classification decisions.

accounting rate of return (ARR) Accounting measure of income divided by an accounting measure of investment. Also called return on investment (ROI).

activity An event, task or unit of work with a specified purpose.

activity-based accounting Examination of activities across the entire chain of value-adding organisational processes underlying causes (drivers) of cost and profit.

activity-based budgeting Approach to budgeting that focuses on the costs of activities necessary to produce and sell products and services.

activity-based costing (ABC) Approach to costing that focuses on activities as the fundamental cost objects. It uses the cost of these activities as the basis for assigning costs to other cost objects such as products, services or customers.

activity-based management (ABM) Management system which uses activity-based costing information to improve profits and enhance value to customers.

actual costing A costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by using the actual direct cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the direct cost input(s) and allocates indirect costs based on the actual indirect cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the cost allocation base.

actual costs Costs incurred (historical costs), as distinguished from budgeted or forecast costs.

appraisal costs Costs incurred in detecting which of the individual units of products do not conform to specifications.

artificial costs See complete reciprocated cost.

artificial intelligence (AI) The simulation of human intelligence processes by machines. It can increase the effectiveness of human decision making and enhance the advice financial professionals give to other business executives.

attention directing Management accountant's function that involves making visible both opportunities and problems on which managers need to focus.

autonomy The degree of freedom to make decisions.

average cost See unit cost.

backflush accounting A cost accounting system which focuses on the output of the organisation and then works backwards to allocate costs between cost of goods sold and stock.

backflush costing Costing system that delays recording changes in the status of a product being produced until good finished units appear; it then uses budgeted or standard costs to work backwards to flush out manufacturing costs for the units produced. Also called delayed costing, endpoint costing or post-deduct costing.

balanced scorecard A measurement and management system that views a business unit's performance from four perspectives: financial, customer, internal business process, and learning and growth.

batch-level costs The costs of resources sacrificed on activities that are related to a group of units of products or services rather than to each individual unit of product or service.

belief systems Levers of control that articulate the mission, purpose, norms of behaviours and core values of a company; intended to inspire managers and other employees to do their best.

benchmark Point of reference from which comparisons may be made.

benchmarking The continuous process of measuring products, services or activities against the best levels of performance.

big data Datasets for which traditional processing techniques (for capturing, storing, querying or analysing) are inadequate due to the quantity or complexity of the data. Such data sources are increasingly available because of the presence of inexpensive sensors, including those found on mobile devices, cameras, drones, satellites, and personal fitness devices.

blockchain An accounting technology that can be described as a 'distributed ledger' which records transactions continuously such that the transacting parties leave a permanent verifiable record. It provides full visibility on past transactions which cannot be altered by any participant.

book value The original cost minus accumulated depreciation of an asset.

bottleneck An operation where the work required approaches or exceeds the available capacity.

boundary systems Levers of control that describe standards of behaviour and codes of conduct expected of all employees, especially actions that are off-limits.

breakeven point Quantity of output where total revenues and total costs are equal; that is where the operating profit is zero.

budget The quantitative expression of a plan of action and an aid to the coordination and implementation of the plan.

budgetary slack See padding.

budgeted costing See extended normal costing.

bundled product A package of two or more products or services, sold for a single price, where the individual components of the bundle may be sold as separate items, each with its stand-alone price.

business function costs The sum of all the costs in a particular business function.

business governance The performance dimension of an enterprise.

by-product Product from a joint process that has a low sales value compared with the sales value of the main or joint product(s).

capital budgeting The process of making long-term planning decisions for investments.

capitalised costs Costs that are first recorded as an asset (capitalised) when they are incurred.

carrying costs Costs that arise when a business holds stocks of goods for sale.

cash budget Schedule of expected cash receipts and disbursements.

cash cycle See self-liquidating cycle.

cause-and-effect diagram Diagram that identifies the potential causes of failures or defects. Four major categories of potential causes of failure are identified human factors, methods and design factors, machine-related factors and materials and components factors. Also called a fishbone diagram.

Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA) The principal professional management accounting body in the UK, founded in 1919 as the Institute of Cost and Works Accountants. Today, in terms of membership, it is the third largest professional accounting body in the UK.

chief accounting officer The financial executive primarily responsible for both management accounting and financial accounting.

choice criterion Objective that can be quantified in a decision model.

coefficient of determination (r^2) Measures the percentage of variation in a dependent variable explained by one or more independent variables.

collusive pricing Companies in an industry conspire in their pricing and output decisions to achieve a price above the competitive price.

combined variance analysis Approach to overhead variance analysis that combines variable-cost and fixed-cost variances.

common cost The cost of operating a facility, operation, activity area or like cost object that is shared by two or more users.

complete reciprocated cost The actual cost incurred by the service department plus a part of the costs of the other support departments that provide services to it; it is always larger than the actual cost. Also called artificial cost of the service department.

composite product unit A hypothetical unit of product with weights related to the individual products of the company.

computer-aided design (CAD) Computer-based technology allowing interactive design and testing of a manufacturing component on a visual display terminal.

computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) Computer-based technology to permit the programming and control of production equipment in the manufacturing task.

computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) The use of computers and other advanced manufacturing techniques to monitor and perform manufacturing tasks.

conference method Approach to cost estimation that develops cost estimates on the basis of analysis and opinions gathered from various departments of an organisation (purchasing, process engineering, manufacturing, employee relations, and so on).

constant The component of total costs that, within the relevant range, does not vary with changes in the level of the cost driver. Also called intercept.

constant gross-margin percentage NRV method Joint cost allocation method that allocates joint costs in such a way that the overall gross-margin percentage is identical for all the individual products.

constraint A mathematical inequality or equality that must be satisfied by the variables in a mathematical model.

continuous improvement budgeted cost Budgeted cost that is successively reduced over succeeding time periods.

contribution income statement Income statement that groups line items by cost behaviour pattern to highlight the contribution margin.

contribution margin Revenues minus all costs of the output (a product or service) that vary with respect to the number of output units.

contribution margin percentage Total contribution margin divided by revenues.

control Covers both the action that implements the planning decision and the performance evaluation of the personnel and operations.

control chart Graph of a series of successive observations of a particular step, procedure or operation taken at regular intervals of time. Each observation is plotted relative to specified ranges that represent the expected distribution.

controllability The degree of influence that a specific manager has over costs, revenues or other items in question.

controllable cost Any cost that is primarily subject to the influence of a given manager of a given responsibility centre for a given time span.

conversion costs All manufacturing costs other than direct materials costs.

corporate governance The conformance dimension of an enterprise.

cost Resource sacrificed or forgone to achieve a specific objective.

cost accounting Measures and reports financial and other information related to the organisation's acquisition or consumption of resources. It provides information for both management accounting and financial accounting.

cost accumulation The collection of cost data in some organised way through an accounting system.

cost allocation The assigning of indirect costs to the chosen cost object.

cost-allocation base A factor that is the common denominator for systematically linking an indirect cost or group of indirect costs to a cost object.

cost assignment General term that encompasses both tracing accumulated costs to a cost object and allocating accumulated costs to a cost object.

cost–benefit approach Primary criterion for choosing among alternative accounting systems, which is how each system achieves organisational goals in relation to the cost of those systems.

cost centre A responsibility centre in which a manager is accountable for costs only.

cost driver Any factor that affects total costs. That is, a change in the cost driver will cause a change in the level of the total cost of a related cost object.

cost estimation The measurement of past cost relationships.

cost hierarchy Categorisation of costs into different cost pools on the basis of different classes of cost drivers or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect (or benefits received) relationships.

cost incurrence Occurs when a resource is sacrificed or used up.

cost leadership An organisation's ability to achieve lower costs relative to competitors through productivity and efficiency improvements, elimination of waste and tight cost control.

cost management Actions by managers undertaken to satisfy customers while continuously reducing and controlling costs.

cost object Anything for which a separate measurement of costs is desired.

cost-plus contract Contract in which reimbursement is based on actual allowable cost plus a fixed fee.

cost pool A grouping of individual cost items.

cost predictions Forecasts of future costs.

cost smoothing A costing approach that uses broad averages to uniformly assign (spread or smooth out) the cost of resources to cost objects (such as products, services or customers) when the individual products, services or customers in fact use those resources in a non-uniform way.

cost tables Databases of all costs involved in production incorporating cost-based knowledge of sub-components.

cost tracing The assigning of direct costs to the chosen cost object.

cost–volume–profit (CVP) analysis Examines the behaviour of total revenues, total costs and operating profit as changes occur in the output level, selling price, variable costs or fixed costs; a single revenue driver and a single cost driver are used in this analysis.

costs of quality (COQ) Costs incurred to prevent or rectify the production of a low-quality product.

cumulative average-time learning model Learning curve model in which the cumulative average time per unit declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced is doubled.

current cost Asset measure based on the cost of purchasing an asset today identical to the one currently held. It is the cost of purchasing the services provided by that asset if an identical asset cannot currently be purchased.

customer cost hierarchy Categorisation of costs related to customers into different cost pools on the basis of different classes of cost drivers or different degrees of difficulty in determining cause-and-effect (or benefits received) relationships.

customer life-cycle costs Focuses on the total costs to a customer of acquiring and using a product or service until it is replaced.

customer profitability analysis Examines how individual customers, or groupings of customers, differ in their profitability.

customer relationship management (CRM) CRM initiatives use technology to coordinate all customer-facing activities and the design and production activities necessary to get products to customers.

customer-response time Amount of time from when a customer places an order for a product or requests a service to when the product or service is delivered to the customer.

customer revenues Inflows of assets from customers received in exchange for products or services being provided to those customers.

customer service The support activities provided to customers.

decentralisation The freedom for managers at lower levels (subunits) of the organisation to make decisions.

decision model Formal model for making a choice under uncertainty, frequently involving quantitative analysis.

decision table Summary of the contemplated actions, events, outcomes and probabilities of events in a decision.

delayed costing See backflush costing.

denominator level Quantity of the allocation base usedto allocate fixed overhead costs to a cost object. Also called a production denominator level or a production denominator volume.

denominator-level variance See production-volume variance.

dependent variable The cost variable to be predicted in a cost estimation or prediction model.

design of products, services or processes The detailed planning and engineering of products, services or processes.

designed-in costs See locked-in costs.

diagnostic control systems Levers of control that monitor critical performance variables that help managers track progress toward achieving a company's strategic goals. Managers are held accountable for meeting these goals.

differential approach Approach to decision making and capital budgeting that analyses only those future cash outflows and inflows that differ among alternatives.

differential cost Difference in total cost between two alternatives. Also called net relevant cost.

digitalisation The process whereby use of digital technologies changes the business model and provides new revenue and value-producing possibilities.

digitally advanced company A company which adopts a range of digital technologies, including cloud, online channels, big data/analytics, Internet of Things, P2P models, blockchain structures, artificial intelligence and machine learning and diffuses them across their organisational structure to support applications and processes

digitally advanced enterprise control loop An approach that lets developed or emerging digitally advanced firms visualise their financial and non-financial information needs and allows continuous alteration to broad strategic direction as well as operational activities.

direct allocation method Method of support cost allocation that ignores any service rendered by one support department to another; it allocates each support department's total costs directly to the operating departments. Also called direct method.

direct costing See variable costing.

direct costs of a cost object Costs that are related to the particular cost object and that can be traced to it in an economically feasible way.

direct manufacturing labour costs Compensation of all manufacturing labour that is considered to be specifically identified with the cost object (say, units finished or in process) and that can be traced to the cost object in an economically feasible way.

direct material costs The acquisition costs of all materials that eventually become part of the cost object (say, units finished or in progress) and that can be traced to that cost object in an economically feasible way.

direct materials stock Direct materials in stock and awaiting use in the manufacturing process.

direct method See direct allocation method.

discount rate See required rate of return.

discounted cash flow (DCF) Capital budgeting method that measures the cash inflows and outflows of a project as if they occurred at a single point in time so that they can be compared in an appropriate way.

discretionary costs Arise from periodic (usually yearly) decisions regarding the maximum outlay to be incurred. They are not tied to a clear cause-and-effect relationship between inputs and outputs.

distribution The mechanism by which products or services are delivered to the customer.

downsizing An integrated approach to configuring processes, products and people in order to match costs to the activities that need to be performed for operating effectively and efficiently.

dual pricing Approach to transfer pricing using two separate transfer-pricing methods to price each interdivision transaction.

dual-rate cost-allocation method Allocation method that first classifies costs in one cost pool into two sub-pools (typically into a variable-cost sub-pool and a fixed-cost sub-pool). Each sub-pool has a different allocation rate or a different allocation base.

e-business The use of digital and Internet technologies incorporating e-commerce in the full range of business functions across the entire value chain.

e-commerce The exchange and tracking of information, goods and services using digital media.

economic order quantity (EOQ) Decision model that calculates the optimal quantity of stock to order. Simplest model incorporates only ordering costs and carrying costs.

economic value added (EVA®) After-tax operating profit minus the (after-tax) weighted average cost of capital multiplied by total assets minus current liabilities.

effectiveness The degree to which a predetermined objective or target is met.

efficiency The relative amount of inputs used to achieve a given level of output.

efficiency variance The difference between the actual quantity of input used (such as metres of materials) and the budgeted quantity of input that should have been used, multiplied by the budgeted price. Also called input-efficiency variance or usage variance.

effort Exertion towards a goal.

endpoint costing See backflush costing.

engineered costs Costs that result specifically from a clear cause-and-effect relationship between costs and outputs.

enterprise governance The entire accountability framework of an organisation.

environmental management accounting (EMA) Enables environmental costs to be identified, measured and allocated appropriately to a process or to products and makes it easier for managers to control and put into effect cost savings.

equivalent units Measure of the output in terms of the physical quantities of each of the inputs (factors of production) that have been consumed when producing the units. It is the physical quantities of inputs necessary to produce output of one fully complete unit.

estimated net realisable value (NRV) method Joint cost allocation method that allocates joint costs on the basis of the relative estimated net realisable value (expected final sales value in the ordinary course of business minus the expected separable costs of production and marketing of the total production of the period).

event A possible occurrence in a decision model.

excess capacity See unused capacity.

expected monetary value See expected value.

expected value Weighted average of the outcomes of a decision with the probability of each outcome serving as the weight. Also called expected monetary value.

experience curve Function that shows how full product costs per unit (including manufacturing, distribution, marketing and so on) decline as units of output increase.

extended normal costing A costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by using the budgeted direct-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the direct-cost input and allocates indirect costs based on the budgeted indirect-cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the cost-allocation base. Also called budgeted costing.

external failure costs Costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected after it is shipped to customers.

facility-sustaining costs The costs of resources sacrificed on activities that cannot be traced to specific products or services but support the organisation as a whole.

factory overhead costs See indirect manufacturing costs.

favourable variance Variance that increases operating profit relative to the budgeted amount. Denoted F.

finance director The senior officer empowered with overseeing the financial operations of an organisation. Also called chief financial officer (CFO).

financial accounting Focuses on external reporting that is guided by generally accepted accounting principles.

financial budget That part of the master budget that comprises the capital budget, cash budget, budgeted balance sheet and budgeted statement of cash flows.

financial planning models Mathematical representations of the relationships among all operating activities, financial activities and financial statements.

finished goods stock Goods fully completed but not yet sold.

first-in, first-out (FIFO) process-costing method Method of process costing that assigns the cost of the earliest equivalent units available (starting with the equivalent units in opening work-in-progress stock) to units completed and transferred out, and the cost of the most recent quivalent units worked on during the period to closing work-in-progress stock.

fishbone diagram See cause-and-effect diagram.

fixed cost Cost that does not change in total despite changes in a cost driver.

flexible budget A budget that is developed using budgeted revenues or cost amounts; when variances are computed, the budgeted amounts are adjusted (flexed) to recognise the actual level of output and the actual quantities of the revenue and cost drivers.

flexible-budget variance Difference between the actual result and the flexible budget amount for the actual output achieved.

flexible manufacturing system (FMS) An integrated production system that is computer controlled to produce a family of parts in a flexible manner.

full product costs The sum of all the costs in all the business functions – R&D, design, production, marketing, distribution and customer service.

functional analysis An activity aimed at linking product functions and perceived value to customers with the cost of designing functions.

goal congruence Exists when individuals and groups work towards the organisational goals that top management desires.

gross margin Revenues minus cost of goods sold.

gross margin percentage Gross margin divided by revenues.

high–low method Method used to estimate a cost function that entails using only the highest and lowest observed values of the cost driver within the relevant range.

homogeneous cost pool Cost pool in which all the activities whose costs are included in the pool have the same or a similar cause-and-effect relationship or benefits-received relationship between the cost allocator and the costs of the activity.

hurdle rate See required rate of return.

hybrid-costing system Blends of characteristics from both job-costing systems and process-costing systems.

imputed costs Costs recognised in particular situations that are not regularly recognised by accrual accounting procedures.

incongruent decision making See suboptimal decision making.

incremental cost-allocation method Cost-allocation method requiring that one user be viewed as the primary party and the second user be viewed as the incremental party.

incremental costs Additional costs to obtain an additional quantity over and above existing or planned quantities of a cost object. Also called outlay costs or out-of-pocket costs.

incremental unit-time learning model Learning curve model in which the incremental unit time (the time needed to produce the last unit) declines by a constant percentage each time the cumulative quantity of units produced is doubled.

independent variable The level of activity to predict the dependent variable in a cost estimation model.

indirect costs of a cost object Costs that are related to the particular cost object but cannot be traced to it in an economically feasible way.

indirect manufacturing costs All manufacturing costs considered to be part of the cost object (say, units finished or in progress) but that cannot be individually traced to that cost object in an economically feasible way. Also called manufacturing overhead costs and factory overhead costs.

industrial engineering method Approach to cost estimation that first analyses the relationship between inputs and outputs in physical terms. Also called work measurement method.

inflation The decline in the general purchasing power of the monetary unit.

infrastructure costs Costs that arise from having property, plant, equipment and a functioning organisation.

input-efficiency variance See efficiency variance.

input-price variance See price variance.

insourcing Process of producing goods or providing services within the firm rather than purchasing those same goods or services from outside vendors.

institute of Management Accountants (IMA) The largest association of management accountants in the USA.

interactive control systems Formal information systems that managers use to focus an organisation's attention and learning on key strategic issues.

intercept See constant.

intermediate product Product transferred from one subunit to another subunit of the organisation. This product may be processed further and sold to an external customer.

internal failure costs Costs incurred when a non-conforming product is detected before it is shipped to customers.

internal rate of return (IRR) Discount rate at which the present value of expected cash inflows from a project equals the present value of expected cash outflows of the project. The IRR is the discount rate that makes net present value (NPV) equal to zero. Also called the time-adjusted rate of return.

internet The physical network that links computers across the globe. It consists of the infrastructure of network servers and communication links between them, which are used to uphold and transport information. The Internet enables the transfer of messages and transactions between connected computers world-wide.

Internet of Things The interconnection via the internet of computing devices embedded in everyday objects, enabling them to send and receive data.

inventoriable costs See stock-related costs.

investment Resources or assets used to generate income.

investment centre A responsibility centre in which a manager is accountable for investments, revenues and costs.

investment programmes See investment projects.

investment projects Investments and outcomes from those investments (which generally cover a number of years). Also called investment programmes.

job cost record Source document that records and accumulates all the costs assigned to a specific job. Also called job cost sheet.

job cost sheet See job cost record.

job-costing system Costing system in which the cost of a product or service is obtained by assigning costs to a distinct unit, batch or lot of a product or service.

joint cost Cost of a single process that yields multiple products simultaneously.

joint products Products from a joint process that have relatively high sales value and are not separately identifiable as individual products until the split-off point.

just-in-time (JIT) production Production system in which each component on a production line is produced immediately as needed by the next step in the production line.

just-in-time (JIT) purchasing The purchase of goods or materials such that delivery immediately precedes demand or use.

kaizen budgeting Budgetary approach that explicitly incorporates continuous improvement during the budget period into the resultant budget numbers.

key success factors Factors that directly affect customer satisfaction such as cost, quality, time and innovative products and services.

labour-paced operations Worker dexterity and productivity determine the speed of production.

labour time record Record used to charge departments and job cost records for labour time used on a specific job.

learning curve Function that shows how labour-hours per unit decline as units of production increase.

life-cycle budgeting Budget that incorporates the revenues and costs attributable to each product from its initial R&D to its final customer servicing and support in the marketplace.

life-cycle costing System that tracks and accumulates the actual costs attributable to each product from start to finish.

line management Managers directly responsible for attaining the objectives of the organisation.

linear cost function Cost function in which the graph of total costs versus a single cost driver forms a straight line within the relevant range.

locked-in costs Costs that have not yet been incurred but that will be incurred in the future on the basis of decisions that have already been made. Also called designed-in costs.

machine-paced operations Machines conduct most (or all) phases of production, such as movement of materials to the production line, assembly and other activities on the production line and shipment of finished goods to the delivery dock areas.

main product When a single process yielding two or more products yields only one product with a relatively high sales value, that product is termed a main product.

make-or-buy decisions Decisions about whether a producer of goods or services will produce goods or services within the firm or purchase them from outside vendors.

management accounting The application of accounting and financial management principles to create, protect, preserve and increase value so as to deliver that value to stakeholders of for-profit and not-for-profit enterprises, both public and private (see Chapter 1 for an expanded definition).

management by exception The practice of concentrating on areas that are not operating as expected and placing less attention on areas operating as expected.

management control system Means of gathering and using information to aid and coordinate the process of making planning and control decisions throughout the organisation and to guide employee behaviour.

manufacturing cells Grouping of all the different types of equipment used to manufacture a given product.

manufacturing lead time Time from when an order is ready to start on the production line (ready to be set up) to when it becomes a finished good.

manufacturing overhead allocated All manufacturing costs that are assigned to a product (or service) using a cost allocation base because they cannot be traced to a product (or service) in an economically feasible way.

manufacturing overhead costs See indirect manufacturing costs.

manufacturing-sector companies Companies that provide to their customers tangible products that have been converted to a different form from that of the products purchased from suppliers.

margin of safety Excess of budgeted revenues over the breakeven revenues.

market-share variance The difference between (a) the budgeted amount at budgeted mix based on the actual market size in units and the actual market share and (b) the budgeted amount at budgeted mix based on actual market size in units and the budgeted market share.

market-size variance The difference between (a) the budgeted amount based on the actual market size in units and the budgeted market share and (b) the static-budget amount based on the budgeted market size in units and the budgeted market share.

marketing The manner by which individuals or groups (a) learn about and value the attributes of products or services and (b) purchase those products or services.

master budget Budget that summarises the financial projections of all the organisation's individual budgets. It describes the financial plans for all value-chain functions.

master-budget utilisation The denominator-level concept based on the anticipated level of capacity utilisation for the coming budget period.

materials requirement planning (MRP) A system that maximises the efficiency of the timing of raw material orders through to the manufacture and assembly of the final product.

materials requisition record Record used to charge departments and job cost records for the cost of the materials used on a specific job.

merchandising-sector companies Companies that provide to their customers tangible products they have previously purchased in the same basic form from suppliers.

mixed cost A cost that has both fixed and variable elements. Also called a semivariable cost.

moral hazard Describes contexts in which an employee prefers to exert less effort (or report distorted information) than the effort (or information) desired by the owner because the employee's effort (or information) cannot be accurately monitored and enforced.

motivation The desire to attain a selected goal (the goal-congruence aspect) combined with the resulting drive or pursuit towards that goal (the effort aspect).

multicollinearity Exists when two or more independent variables in a regression model are highly correlated with each other.

multiple regression Regression model that uses more than one independent variable to estimate the dependent variable.

net present value (NPV) method Discounted cash flow method that calculates the expected net monetary gain or loss from a project by discounting all expected future cash inflows and outflows to the present point in time, using the required rate of return.

net profit Operating profit plus non-operating revenues (such as interest revenues) minus non-operating costs (such as interest costs) minus income taxes.

net relevant cost See differential cost.

new economy A period in which there is discontinuity in the normal progression of economic events resulting from a fundamental change in the structure of the economy. Currently, this change stems from the convergence of telecommunications and digital technologies.

nominal rate of return Rate of return required to cover investment risk and the anticipated decline due to inflation, in the general purchasing power of the cash that the investment generates.

non-linear cost function Cost function in which the graph of total costs versus a single cost driver does not form a straight line within the relevant range.

non-value-added cost A cost that, if eliminated, would not reduce the value customers obtain from using the product or service.

normal costing A costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by using the actual direct cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the direct cost input and allocates indirect costs based on the budgeted indirect cost rate(s) times the actual quantity of the cost-allocation base.

normal spoilage Spoilage that arises under efficient operating conditions; it is an inherent result of the particular production process.

normal utilisation The denominator-level concept based on the level of capacity utilisation that satisfies average customer demand over a period (say, two or three years) that includes seasonal, cyclical or other trend factors.

numerical control machine (NC machine) A manufacturing tool that can be programmed within predefined performance criteria to perform required production activities. It can be computer controlled (Computer NC, CNC) or centrally controlled (Direct NC, DNC).

objective function Expresses the objective to be maximised (for example, operating profit) or minimised (for example, operating costs) in a decision model, for example a linear programming model.

operating budget The budgeted income statement and its supporting schedules.

operating costs All costs associated with generating revenues, other than cost of goods sold.

operating cycle See self-liquidating cycle.

operating department A department that adds value to a product or service that is observable by a customer. Also called a production department in manufacturing organisations.

operating leverage The effects that fixed costs have on changes in operating income as changes occur in units sold and hence in contribution margin.

operating profit Total revenues from operations minus total costs from operations (excluding income taxes).

operation A standardised method or technique that is performed repetitively regardless of the distinguishing features of the finished good.

operation costing Hybrid costing system applied to batches of similar products. Each batch of products is often a variation of a single design and proceeds through a sequence of selected (though not necessarily the same) activities or operations. Within each operation all product units use identical amounts of the operation's resources.

opportunity cost The contribution to income that is forgone (rejected) by not using a limited resource in its best alternative use.

opportunity cost of capital See required rate of return.

ordering costs Costs of preparing and issuing a purchase order.

organisational structure The arrangement of activities and possibly lines of responsibility within the entity.

out-of-pocket costs See incremental costs.

outcomes Predicted consequences of the various possible combinations of actions and events in a decision model.

outlay costs See incremental costs.

output-level overhead variance See production-volume variance.

output-unit-level costs The costs of resources sacrificed on activities performed on each individual unit of product or service.

outsourcing Process of purchasing goods and services from outside vendors rather than producing the same goods or providing the same services within the firm.

overabsorbed indirect costs See overallocated indirect costs.

overallocated indirect costs Allocated amount of indirect costs in an accounting period is greater than the actual (incurred) amount in that period. Also called overapplied indirect costs and overabsorbed indirect costs.

overapplied indirect costs See overallocated indirect costs.

padding The practice of underestimating budgeted revenues (or overestimating budgeted costs) in order to make budgeted targets more easily achievable. Also called budgetary slack.

Pareto diagram Diagram that indicates how frequently each type of failure (defect) occurs.

payback method Capital budgeting method that measures the time it will take to recoup, in the form of net cash inflows, the net initial investment in a project.

perfectly competitive market Exists when there is a homogeneous product with equivalent buying and selling prices and no individual buyers or sellers can affect those prices by their own actions.

period costs Costs not classed as inventoriable and therefore expensed during the accounting period.

physical measure method Joint cost allocation method that allocates joint costs on the basis of their relative proportions at the split-off point, using a common physical measure such as weight or volume of the total production of each product.

planning Choosing goals, predicting results under various ways of achieving those goals and then deciding how to attain the desired goals.

post-deduct costing See backflush costing.

practical capacity The denominator-level concept that reduces theoretical capacity for unavoidable operating interruptions such as scheduled maintenance time, shutdowns for holidays and other days, and so on.

predatory pricing Company deliberately prices below its costs in an effort to drive out competitors and restrict supply and then raises prices rather than enlarge demand or meet competition.

present value An asset measure based on discounted cash flow estimates.

prevention costs Costs incurred in precluding the production of products that do not conform to specifications.

previous department costs See transferred-in costs.

price discounting The reduction of selling prices below listed levels in order to encourage an increase in purchases by customers.

price variance The difference between actual price and budgeted price multiplied by the actual quantity of input in question. Also called input-price variance or rate variance (especially when those variances are for direct-labour categories).

prime costs All direct manufacturing costs.

pro forma statements Budgeted financial statements of an organisation.

probability Likelihood or chance of occurrence of an event.

probability distribution Describes the likelihood (or probability) of each of the mutually exclusive and collectively exhaustive sets of events.

problem solving Management accountant's function that involves comparative analysis to identify the best alternatives in relation to the organisation's goals.

process-costing system Costing system in which the cost of a product or service is obtained by using broad averages to assign costs to masses of similar units.

product Any output sold to a customer that has a positive sales value (or an output used internally that enables an organisation to avoid incurring costs).

product cost Sum of the costs assigned to a product for a specific purpose.

product-cost cross-subsidisation Costing outcome where at least one miscosted product is resulting in the miscosting of other products in the organisation.

product differentiation An organisation's ability to offer products or services that are perceived by its customers to be superior and unique relative to those of its competitors.

product life cycle Spans the time from initial R&D to the time at which support to customers is withdrawn.

product line A grouping of similar products.

product overcosting A product consumes a relatively low level of resources but is reported to have a relatively high total cost.

product-sustaining costs The costs of resources sacrificed on activities undertaken to support specific products or services.

product undercosting A product consumes a relatively high level of resources but is reported to have a relatively low total cost.

production The coordination and assembly of resources to produce a product or deliver a service.

production denominator level See denominator level.

production denominator volume See denominator level.

production department See operating department.

production-volume variance Difference between budgeted fixed overhead and the fixed overhead allocated. Fixed overhead is allocated based on the budgeted fixed overhead rate times the budgeted quantity of the fixed-overhead allocation base for the actual output units achieved. Also called denominator-level variance and output-level overhead variance.

productivity Measures the relationship between actual inputs used (both physical inputs and costs) and actual outputs achieved; the lower the inputs for a given set of outputs or the higher the outputs for a given set of inputs, the higher the level of productivity.

profit centre A responsibility centre in which a manager is accountable for revenues and costs.

proration The spreading of underallocated or overallocated overhead among closing stocks and cost of goods sold.

purchase-order lead time Amount of time between the placement of an order and its delivery.

purchasing costs Cost of goods acquired from suppliers, including freight and transportation costs.

PV graph Shows the impact on operating profit of changes in the output level.

qualitative factors Outcomes that cannot be measured in numerical terms.

quality costs See costs of quality (COQ).

quantitative factors Outcomes that are measured in numerical terms.

rate variance See price variance.

real rate of return The rate of return required to cover only investment risk.

reciprocal allocation method Method of support-cost allocation that explicitly includes the mutual services rendered among all support departments.

reengineering The fundamental rethinking and redesign of business processes to achieve improvements in critical measures of performance such as cost, quality, service, speed and customer satisfaction.

refined costing system Costing system that results in a better measure of the non-uniformity in the use of resources by jobs, products and customers.

regression analysis Statistical model that measures the average amount of change in the dependent variable that is associated with a unit change in one or more independent variables.

relevant costs Expected future costs that differ among alternative courses of action.

relevant range Range of the cost driver in which a specific relationship between cost and driver is valid.

relevant revenues Expected future revenues that differ among alternative courses of action.

reorder point The quantity level of the stock on hand that triggers a new order.

required rate of return (RRR) The minimum acceptable rate of return on an investment; the return that the organisation could expect to receive elsewhere for an investment of comparable risk. Also called discount rate, hurdle rate and opportunity cost of capital.

research and development (R&D) The generation of and experimentation with, ideas related to new products, services or processes.

residual income Income minus a required monetary return on the investment.

residual term The difference between the actual and predicted amount of a dependent variable (such as a cost) in a regression model. Also called the disturbance term or error term.

responsibility accounting System that measures the plans (by budgets) and actions (by actual results) of each responsibility centre.

responsibility centre A part, segment or subunit of an organisation whose manager is accountable for a specified set of activities.

return on investment (ROI) See accounting rate of return.

revenue centre A responsibility centre in which a manager is accountable for revenues only.

revenue costs Costs that are recorded as expenses of the accounting period when they are incurred.

revenue driver Any factor that affects revenues.

revenue mix The relative contribution of quantities of products or services that constitutes total revenues. See sales mix.

revenues Inflows of assets received in exchange for products or services provided to customers.

reworked units Unacceptable units of production that are subsequently reworked and sold as acceptable finished goods.

rolling budget Budget or plan that is always available for a specified future period by adding a month, quarter or year in the future as the month, quarter or year just ended is dropped.

safety stock Stock held at all times regardless of stock ordered using EOQ. It is a buffer against unexpected increases in demand or lead time and unexpected unavailability of stock from suppliers.

sales mix See revenue mix.

sales-mix variance The difference between the budgeted amount for the actual sales mix and the budgeted amount if the budgeted sales mix had been unchanged.

sales-quantity variance The difference between the budgeted amount based on actual quantities sold of all products and the budgeted-mix and the amount in the static budget (which is based on the budgeted quantities to be sold of all products and the budgeted mix).

sales value at split-off method Joint cost allocation method that allocates joint costs on the basis of the relative sales value at the split-off point of the total production in the accounting period of each product.

sales-volume variance Difference between the flexible-budget amount and the static-budget amount; unit selling prices, unit variable costs and fixed costs are held constant.

scorekeeping Management accountant's function that involves accumulating data and reporting reliable results to all levels of management.

scrap Product that has a minimal (frequently zero) sales value.

segment Identifiable part or subunit of an organisation.

self-liquidating cycle The movement of cash to stocks to receivables and back to cash. Also called cash cycle or operating cycle.

selling-price variance Flexible-budget variance that pertains to revenues; arises solely from differences between the actual selling price and the budgeted selling price.

semivariable cost See mixed cost.

sensitivity analysis A what-if technique that examines how a result will change if the original predicted data are not achieved or if an underlying assumption changes.

separable costs Costs incurred beyond the split-off point that are assignable to one or more individual products.

sequential allocation method See step-down allocation method.

sequential tracking Product-costing method in which the accounting system entries occur in the same order as actual purchases and production. Also called synchronous tracking.

service department See support department.

service-sector companies Companies that provide services or intangible products to their customers – for example legal advice or an audit.

service-sustaining costs The costs of resources sacrificed on activities undertaken to support specific services.

set-up Process of preparing a machine or manufacturing cell for production.

simple regression Regression model that uses only one independent variable to estimate the dependent variable.

single-rate cost-allocation method Allocation method that pools all costs in one cost pool and allocates them to cost objects using the same rate per unit of the single allocation base.

slope coefficient Coefficient term in a cost estimation model indicates how much total costs change for each unit change in the cost driver within the relevant range.

source documents The original records that support journal entries in an accounting system.

specification analysis Testing of the assumptions of regression analysis.

split-off point Juncture in the process when one or more products in a joint-cost setting become separately identifiable.

spoilage Unacceptable units of production that are discarded or sold for net disposal proceeds.

staff management Managers who provide advice and assistance to line management.

stand-alone cost-allocation method Cost allocation method that allocates the common cost on the basis of each user's percentage of the total of the individual stand-alone costs.

standard Carefully predetermined amount; it is usually expressed on a per-unit basis.

standard cost Carefully predetermined cost. Standard costs can relate to units of inputs or units of outputs.

standard costing Costing method that traces direct costs to a cost object by multiplying the standard price(s) or rate(s) times the standard inputs allowed for actual outputs achieved and allocates indirect costs on the basis of the standard indirect rate(s) times the standard inputs allowed for the actual outputs achieved.

standard error of the estimated coefficient Regression statistic that indicates how much the estimated value is likely to be affected by random factors.

standard input Carefully predetermined quantity of inputs (such as kilograms of materials or hours of labour time) required for one unit of output.

static budget Budget that is based on one level of output; when variances are computed at the end of the period, no adjustment is made to the budgeted amounts.

step allocation method See step-down allocation method.

step cost function A cost function in which the cost is constant over various ranges of the cost driver, but the cost increases by discrete amounts (that is, in steps) as the cost driver moves from one range to the next.

step-down allocation method Method of support cost allocation that allows for partial recognition of services rendered by support departments to other support departments. Also called step or sequential allocation method.

stock management The planning, organising and control activities focused on the flow of materials into, through and from the organisation.

stock-related costs Specific type of capitalised costs. Those capitalised costs associated with the purchase of goods for resale (in the costs of merchandise stock) or costs associated with the acquisition and conversion of materials and all other manufacturing inputs into goods for sale (in the case of manufacturing stocks). Also called inventoriable costs.

stockout A stockout arises when a supplier runs out of a particular item for which there is customer demand.

stockout costs Costs that result when a company runs out of a particular item for which there is customer demand. The company must act to meet that demand or suffer the costs of not meeting it.

straight-line depreciation (SL) Depreciation method in which an equal amount of depreciation is taken each year.

strategic analysis Considers how an organisation attempts to best combine its own capabilities with the opportunities in the marketplace in seeking to accomplish its overall objectives.

strategic investment appraisal (SIA) Linking corporate strategy to costs and benefits associated with AMT adoption by combining both formal and informal evaluation procedures.

strategic management accounting A form of management accounting in which emphasis is placed on information which relates to factors external to the firm, as well as non-financial information and internally generated information.

strategic scorecard A method of assisting company boards in the oversight of the strategic process, dealing with strategic choice and change, and giving a view of strategic progress.

strategy A course of action, including the specification of resources required to achieve a specific objective (see Chapter 22 for an expanded definition).

suboptimal decision making Decisions in which the benefit to one subunit is more than offset by the costs or loss of benefits to the organisation as a whole. Also called incongruent decision making.

sunk costs Past costs that are unavoidable because they cannot be changed no matter what action is taken.

supply chain Describes the flow of goods, services and information 'from cradle to grave', irrespective of whether those activities occur in the same organisation or other organisations.

support department A department that provides the services that maintain other internal departments (operating departments and other support departments) in the organisation. Also called a service department.

sustainability The development and implementation of strategies to achieve long-term financial, social, and environmental goals.

synchronous tracking See sequential tracking.

tableau de bord Multicriterial model of control that uses financial as well as non-financial means to identify and measure objectives, key variables and indicators.

target cost per unit Estimated long-run cost per unit of a product (or service) that when sold at the target price enables the company to achieve the targeted income per unit. Target cost per unit is derived by subtracting the target operating profit per unit from the target price.

target operating profit per unit Operating profit that a company wants to earn on each unit of a product (or service) sold.

target price Estimated price for a product (or service) that potential customers will be willing to pay.

target rate of return on investment The target operating profit that an organisation must earn divided by invested capital.

theoretical capacity The denominator-level concept that is based on the constant production of output at maximum efficiency.

theory of constraints (TOC) Describes methods to maximise operating profit when faced with some bottleneck and some non-bottleneck operations.

throughput contribution Revenues minus all variable direct materials costs.

throughput costing Stock costing method that treats all costs except those related to variable direct materials as costs of the accounting period in which they are incurred; only variable direct materials costs are inventoriable.

time-adjusted rate of return See internal rate of return (IRR).

time-driven activity based costing (TDABC) systems ABC systems that use available time to calculate the cost of a resource and to allocate costs to cost objects.

time driver Any factor where a change in the factor causes a change in the speed with which an activity is undertaken.

total direct manufacturing labour mix variance The difference between (a) the budgeted cost for the actual direct manufacturing labour input mix and (b) the budgeted cost if the budgeted direct labour input mix had been unchanged, for the actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour used.

total direct manufacturing labour yield variance The difference between (a) the budgeted cost of direct manufacturing labour based on actual total quantity of all direct manufacturing labour used and (b) the flexible budget cost of direct manufacturing labour based on the

budgeted total quantity of direct manufacturing labour inputs for the actual output achieved, given that the budgeted labour input mix is unchanged.

total direct materials mix variance The difference between (a) the budgeted cost for the actual direct materials input mix and (b) the budgeted cost if the budgeted direct materials input mix had been unchanged, for the actual total quantity of all direct material inputs used.

total direct materials yield variance The difference between (a) the budgeted cost of direct materials based on actual total quantity of all direct materials inputs used and (b) the flexible-budget cost of direct materials based on the budgeted total quantity of direct materials inputs for the actual output achieved, given that the budgeted materials input mix is unchanged.

transactions Physical and electronic documentation of any production activity.

transfer price Price that one subunit (segment,department, division, etc.) of an organisation charges for a product or service supplied to another subunit of the same organisation.

transferred-in costs Costs incurred in a previous department that are carried forward as part of the product's cost as it moves to a subsequent department for processing. Also called previous department costs.

uncertainty The possibility that an actual amount will deviate from an expected amount.

underabsorbed indirect costs See underallocated indirect costs.

underallocated indirect costs Allocated amount of indirect costs in an accounting period is less than the actual (incurred) amount in that period. Also called underapplied indirect (overhead) costs or underabsorbed indirect costs.

underapplied indirect costs See underallocated indirect costs.

unfavourable variance Variance that decreases operating profit relative to the budgeted amount. Denoted U.

unit cost Computed by dividing some total cost (the numerator) by some number of units (the denominator). Also called average cost.

unused capacity The difference between the productive capacity available and the productive capacity required to meet consumer demand in the current period. Also called excess capacity.

usage variance See efficiency variance.

value-added activities Activities that customers perceive as adding value to the products or services they purchase.

value-added cost A cost that, if eliminated, would reduce the value customers obtain from using the product or service.

value chain The sequence of business functions in which utility (usefulness) is added to the products or services of an organisation.

value engineering Systematic evaluation of all aspects of the value-chain business functions, with the objective of reducing costs while satisfying customer needs.

variable cost Cost that changes in total in proportion to changes in a cost driver.

variable-cost percentage Total variable costs (with respect to units of output) divided by revenues.

variable costing Stock costing method in which all variable manufacturing costs are included as inventoriable costs. All fixed manufacturing costs are excluded from inventoriable costs; they are costs of the period in which they are incurred. Also called direct costing.

variable-overhead efficiency variance The difference between the actual and budgeted quantity of the variable-overhead cost-allocation base allowed, for the actual output units achieved, times the budgeted variable overhead cost allocation rate.

variable-overhead spending variance The difference between the actual amount of variable overhead incurred and the budgeted amount allowed for the actual quantity of the variable-overhead allocation base used, for the actual output units achieved.

variance Difference between an actual result and a budgeted amount when that budgeted amount is a financial variable reported by the accounting system.

weighted-average process-costing method Method of process costing that assigns the average equivalent unit cost of all work done to date (regardless of when it was done) to equivalent units completed and transferred out and to equivalent units in closing stock.

work cell Grouping of individuals or machines to perform a manufacturing task.

work in process See work-in-progress stock.

work in progress See work-in-progress stock.

work-in-progress stock Goods partially worked on but not yet fully completed. Also called work in process.

working-capital cycle The movement from cash to stocks to receivables and back to cash.

work-measurement method See industrial engineering method.

zero-based budgeting (ZBB) A budgeting approach in which all expenses are to be justified rather than assumed to be modelled based on the previous period. What is required for the upcoming period has to be thought through irrespective of whether each element of cost was higher or lower than in the past.

INDEX

Entries in **bold** refer to terms defined in the Glossary

ABB 323
absorption costing 46, 184–7, **807**
  breakeven point 200–2
  comparison of variable costing and 188–94, 195
  criticisms of 195
  denominator-level concepts 184, 196–9
  external reporting 185, 194
  income statements 185–7, 189
  master-budget utilisation 197–9
  normal utilisation 197, 198–9
  operating profit 189–93, 199
  performance measures 194–5
  practical capacity 197, 198–9
  theoretical capacity 197, 198–9
account analysis method **807**
accounting rate of return (ARR) 402–3, 588, **807**
accounting systems 8–12
  design of 13–17
  feedback 11
  functions 12
  planning and control 9–11
  purposes of 8–9
activity 324, **807**
activity-based accounting 318, **807**
activity-based budgeting 438–9, **807**
activity-based costing (ABC) 146, 304, 318–41, 355–7, 372–4, **807**
  backflush costing 673–4
  comparing alternative systems 333–4
  cost drivers 260–1, 304
  cost hierarchies 261, 326–8, 372, 475, 477, 510
  and department-costing systems 336–7
  digitalisation 703
  flexible budgeting 475–7, 510–14
  implementing 328–32, 337–8
  JIT systems 673–4
  organisational context 339–41
  overcosting 319
  process costing 105
  refining 323–4
  time-driven (TDABC) 326, 334
  undercosting 319
  variance analysis 476–7, 510–14
activity-based management (ABM) 334–6, 340, 341, 623, **807**
actual costing 62–4, 65, 106, **807**
  stock-costing methods 193–4
actual costs 34, 525, **807**
Aderra 663
Adidas 110, 115
adjusted allocation rate approach 77–8, 80, 478, 504
Adobe 715
after-sales service 628, 630
Air France 633
Airbnb 707
Airbus 387
airlines 17, 222, 232, 291, 357, 367, 387, 533
Akzo Nobel 604
Alcatel-Lucent 602
Alcoa 426
Aldi 624, 625
Amazon 6, 7, 13–14, 196, 229, 294
Analog Devices 267, 268
anchoring 136
Anheuser-Busch InBev SA/NV 90
Antwerp Port Authority 323
Apple 6, 7, 294, 318, 352, 370, 572, 585
appraisal costs 637–8, **807**
artificial costs 141, **807**
artificial intelligence (AI) 3, 7–8, 12, 19, 704–5, 716–17, **807**
  Automated Replenishment systems 76
  IBM Watson 666
  Rolls-Royce 17
  usage trends 459
Association of Chartered Certificate Accountants (ACCA) 22
Aston Martin 61
AT&T 661
attention directing 12, 479, 506, 560, **807**
audit
  engagement: job costing 62
  environmental 710
  post-investment 403
  trails 673
Australia 4, 572
Autodesk 666
Automated Replenishment (AR) systems 76
automation 145
  outsourcing 300–1
autonomy 562, 569, **807**
Autonomy (firm) 603
average cost 40–3, **807**
backflush accounting **807**
backflush costing 666–74, **807**
  accounting for variances 671–2
  criticisms of 673
  journal entries 669–70
  special considerations 672–4
balanced scorecard 586, 623, 626, **807**
  aligning to strategy 628–30
  costs of quality 635–40
  country-specific use 633–5
  environmental and social goals 713–14
  features of 630–2
  four perspectives of 627–8
  management control 557
  pitfalls 631–2
  time-based measures and 688–9
Banca di America e di Italia 627
Bang & Olufsen 6
Bank of Montreal 626
Bank of Scotland 318
Bankinter 260
banks 252, 260, 323, 338–9, 636
  logistic regression 261
  see also individual banks
Barcelona City Council 323
Barclays Bank 13, 558, 631, 632–3
barcoding technology 36, 68, 75, 675
batch-level costs 327, 475–6, 477, **807**
Bayer 90
BBC 294, 318
BBR plc (case study) 615–19
Beijing Engineering 297
belief systems 603, 604, **807**
benchmarking 17, 623, **807**
  performance evaluation 600–1
  variance analysis and 478–80
benchmarks 460, 478, 600–1, **807**
Bermuda 572
Best Buy 663
biases 389, 390
  cognitive 136
big data 3, 7, 8, 12, 17–18, 77, 704, 717, **807**
  and analytics 19–20
  cost analysis, machine learning and 261
  joint products and by-products 162–3
  pricing 666
  stock management: machine learning and 666
Bing 704
blockchain 19, **807**

BMW 301, 389, 635
book value 305, 306, **807**
  return on investment: gross or net 596–7
Boots 59
Borealis 428
bottlenecks 686–8, **808**
boundary systems 603–4, **808**
BP 90, 440, 604, 626
brands 624, 625
breakeven point 200–2, 222–8, **808**
  income taxes 227–8
bribery 602
Bristol Myers Squibb (BMS) 593
British Airways 294
British American Tobacco 627
British Petroleum *see* BP
British Telecom *see* BT
broadcasting 196, 539
Brundtland Report (1987) 712
BSkyB 426
BT 424, 442, 627, 635, 636
budgetary slack 432, **808**
budgeted costing **808**
budgets/budgeting 9, **808**
  activity-based 438–9
  cash 443–8
  coordination and communication 425–6
  cycle 423
  features of 423–4
  financial planning models 437
  flexible budgets *see separate entry*
  framework for judging performance 425
  internet-based 438
  kaizen 438
  learning curve 267–8
  manual 432
  master 423–4, 429–36, 443–8
  motivation 426–8
  operating 429
    steps in preparing 432–6
  responsibility accounting and 440–1
  responsibility and controllability 441–2
  roles of 424–8
  rolling 428
  sensitivity analysis 437
  strategy and plans 424–5
  time coverage 428
  zero-based 426
building industry 66
bundled product **808**
Burton Group 590
business function costs 367, 368, 370, **808**
business governance **808**
by-products 158, 162–3, 168, 171–4, **808**
  big data 162–3

Canada 572
capacity constraints
  opportunity costs, outsourcing and 297–302
  product-mix decisions under 301–2
capital budgeting 387, **808**
  accounting rate of return method 402–3
  discounted cash flow 392–400
  inflation 405–6
  internal rate of return 392, 394–6, 403
  management control 558
  managing the project 403
  net present value method 392, 393–4, 396, 406
  payback method 400–2
  post-investment audit 403
  real options approach 397
  relevant cash flows 398–400
  sensitivity analysis 397
  stages of 388–91
  taxation 404
Capital One 13
capitalised costs 45, **808**
Cargill 163
Carillion 294
Carrefour 6, 352, 424
carrying costs 299–302, 674, 675, 679–80, 681, 682, 683, 685, **808**
cars *see* motor vehicles
case studies
  BBR plc 615–19
  Electronic Boards plc 216–18
  European Savings Bank 212–14
  High-Tech Ltd 725–31
  Instrumental Ltd 551–3
  Northlake, ethical dilemma 214–16
  Osram Ltd 736–40
  Permaclean Products plc 417–19
  Tanner Pharmaceuticals and price of new drug 732–6
  Zeros plc 549–51
cash budgets 443–8, **808**
cash cycle 445, **808**
Caterpillar 260
cause-and-effect diagrams 641–2, **808**
certification 636
Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA) 3, 22, 623, **808**
chief accounting officer **808**
Chile 572
China 4, 300, 334, 471, 472
Chipotle 474–5
choice criterion 235, 236, **808**
Cisco 18
Citroën 624
cloud computing 7, 12, 20, 666, 703, 704
coal 158
Coca-Cola 13, 15, 90, 294, 318, 590, 624
codes of business conduct 603
coefficient of determination (r^2) 271, **808**
cognitive biases 136
Coke Group 560
collusive pricing **808**
combined variance analysis 501, **808**
common costs 143–4, **808**
compensation 598–9, 600, 601, 604
  balanced scorecard 632
  CEO 593, 600
  forecasts 136
competitive advantage 6, 9, 559, 623, 624, 704, 705, 714
competitors 324, 623–4, 636
  pricing 352, 353
complete reciprocated costs 140–1, **808**
composite product units 535–6, **808**
computer-aided design (CAD) 439, 666, **808**
computer-aided manufacturing (CAM) **808**
computer-integrated manufacturing (CIM) 6, 323, 664, **808**
conference method 251, 252, 258, 260, 261, **808**
conflict of interest 22
constant 248, **808**
constant gross-margin percentage NRV method 166–8, **808**
constraint 308–9, **808**
continuous improvement 16–17, 438
  variances 473
continuous improvement budgeted cost 473, **808**
contribution income statement 185, 224, 292, 293, **808**
contribution margin 233–4, **808**
contribution margin method for breakeven point 223–4, 225
contribution margin per unit of constraining factor 233, 301
contribution margin percentage 234, **809**
control 9–11, 502–3, 506, 509, **809**
  strategy and levers of 603–4
control charts 640–1, **809**
controllability 441–2, **809**
controllable costs 441, **809**
Convent 11, 682
conversion costs 46, 91, **809**
Co-operative Bank 260
corporate governance **809**
corporate social responsibility 602, 604, 711–12
corruption 602–3, 712
cost 34, **809**
cost accounting 5, **809**
  financial accounting, management accounting and 3–6
cost accumulation 34–5, **809**
cost allocation 35, 36, 60, 128–47, **809**
  activity-based costing 324
  broken product-costing system 146
  budgeted vs actual rates 135
  budgeted vs actual usage 135–6
  changes in costing systems 144
  common costs 143–4
  cost drivers 145–6
  cost hierarchies 146
  costing systems and 130–1
  direct allocation method 137–9, 141–3

cost allocation (*Continued*)
from one department to another 133–6
inappropriate base 145
incremental cost-allocation method 143–4
indirect-cost pools and 131–3
joint costs *see* joint-cost allocations
purposes of 129–30
reciprocal allocation method 137, 140–3
single-rate and dual-rate methods 133–5
stand-alone cost-allocation method 143
step allocation method 137, 139–40, 141–3
of support departments 137–43
cost-allocation bases 60, 324, 492, 495, **809**
cost assignment 34–5, **809**
cost behaviour patterns 247–77
activity-based costing *see separate entry*
assumptions and examples of cost functions 248–9
big data and machine learning 261
cause-and-effect criterion in choosing cost drivers 251
cost estimation approaches 251–3
economic plausibility 251, 259
evaluating cost drivers 258–9, 274–5
general issues 248–51
goodness of fit 258, 259, 271
non-linear 248, 251, 262–3
learning curves and 263–8
regression analysis 253, 257–8, 260, 261, 269–77
slope of regression line 259
steps in estimating cost function 253–8
high–low method 255–7
regression analysis 253, 257–8
variable costs and fixed costs 37–40, 250, 367
cost–benefit approach 6, 687, **809**
cost–benefit–context approach 12–13
cost centres 440, 442, 561, **809**
cost drivers 36–7, **809**
activity-based costing 260–1, 304
allocation bases and 145–6
cost behaviour patterns *see separate entry*
CVP analysis 221–2
cost estimation 250, **809**
cost hierarchies **809**
ABC 261, 326–8, 372, 475, 477, 510
cost-allocation bases and 144–146
customers 372, 374
multiple regression and 275–7
cost incurrence 360–2, **809**
cost leadership 6, 624–5, 630, 633, **809**
cost management 5–6, 37, 259, 370, **809**
cost objects 34–5, 60, **809**
cost planning and CVP analysis 230–2
cost-plus contract **809**
cost-plus pricing 357, 358, 364–7
cost pools 60, **809**
indirect 131–3, 145–6, 324
cost predictions 250, **809**
cost reduction 33–34, 41, 105, 302, 335, 353, 361, 373–4, 703
automation 300–1
cross-functional team 361–2
cost smoothing 319, **809**
cost tables **809**
cost tracing 35, 36, 60, **809**
cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis **809**
assumptions 222
breakeven point 222–8
contribution and gross margins 233–4
cost planning and 230–2
decision models 235–8
income taxes 227–8
not-for-profit organisations 233
revenue and cost drivers 221–2
revenue mix and profit 232–3
sensitivity analysis 228–9
time horizon 232
uncertainty 229, 235–8
variable costing 202
costing and pricing 352–3
cost-plus pricing 364–7
life-cycle product budgeting and costing 367–71
for the long run 355–8
one-off special order 353–5
target cost per unit, achieving 362–4
target costing for target pricing 358–62
costs 15
benefits, context and 12–13
classification of 48–9
common 143–4
controllable 441
cost behaviour patterns *see separate entry*
direct and indirect 35–6
discretionary 506
engineered 505–6
financial statements, business sectors and recognition of 43–7
in general 34–5
goods for sale 674–5, 679–81
manufacturing 44–7
outsourcing, politics and 294
product 48, 95–6
total and unit 40–3
costs of quality (COQ) 635–40, 644–6, 703, **809**
JIT systems 674, 682–4
COVID-19 pandemic 33, 357, 471, 472, 560, 586, 625
Credit Suisse Group 423–4
Cross 624
cross-functional teams 361–2
cross-sectional data 254
Crysel 635
culture 13, 339
Cummins Engines 661
cumulative average-time learning model 264, 265, 267, **809**
current cost 295, **809**
performance measure 594–6, 597
customer cost hierarchy 372, 374, **809**
customer focus 13–14
customer level of control 557
customer life-cycle costs **809**
customer perspective on balanced scorecard 627, 629, 630, 714
customer profitability analysis 168, 371, 623, **809**
assessing customer value 376
customer costs 372–4
customer revenues 371–2
profiles 374–6
customer profitability and relevant costs 302–5
adding customer 304–5
dropping customer 303–4
customer relationship management (CRM) 14, **810**
customer-response time **810**
customer revenues 371–2, **810**
customer satisfaction, non-financial measures of 638–40
customer service 14, 370, **810**
customers
bargaining power 6, 623–4
pricing and 352, 353

DAF Trucks 661
Daimler 602, 603
Daimler-Chrysler 359
Danone 425
Daraz 490
data analytics 77
data changes and digitalisation 703–5
data exhaust 704
data protection 370–1, 603
decentralisation 558–60, 561, 562, **810**
benefits of 559
costs of 559–60
dual pricing 569
decision making: relevant information
capacity constraints
opportunity costs, outsourcing and 297–302
product-mix decisions under 233, 301–2
customer profitability and relevant costs 302–5
equipment replacement 305–7
five-step sequence 288–9
good decisions and good outcomes 238
information and decision process 288–9
irrelevance of past costs 305–7
joint costs 169–71
learning curve 267
linear programming 302, 307–11
one-off special orders 291–2, 353–5
outsourcing and idle facilities 293–7

relevance concept 289–91
relevance illustration 291–3
sell or process further 169–71
uncertainty and decision models 235–8
decision models 235–8, **810**
decision tables 237–8, **810**
delayed costing 667, **810**
Dell 7, 389, 624
Deloitte 294
Denmark 4
denominator level 497, **810**
denominator-level variance 500, **810**
dependent variable 254, **810**
depreciation 404, 445, 506
design decisions 336, 361
design of products, services or processes 14, **810**
designed-in costs 360–2, 370, **810**
DHL 18, 261
Diageo 440
diagnostic control systems 603, **810**
differential approach **810**
differential cost 290, **810**
digital technologies and accounting 705–6
experimentation 707
networks 708
spare resources 707–8
digitalisation 18–21, 358, **810**
data changes 703–5
digital transformation 7–8
digitalised enterprise control loop 708–9, **810**
digitally advanced companies 705, **810**
direct allocation method 137–9, 141–3, **810**
direct-cost tracing 324, 328, 664
direct costing 186, **810**
direct costs of a cost object 35–6, 60, **810**
relationships of types of costs 39–40
direct manufacturing labour costs 37, 44, 45, 47, 75, 144, 145, **810**
cost functions 250–1
decreases in 323
process costing 91
product design 363
direct materials costs 44–5, **810**
direct materials stock 44, **810**
direct method 137–9, 141–3, **810**
discount rate 392, **810**
discounted cash flow (DCF) 392–400, 558, **810**
discretionary costs 506, **810**
distress prices 565–6
distribution 14, **810**
Dow Chemical 626
downsizing 23, 560, 626, **810**
drones 666
DSM 604
dual pricing 569, **810**
dual-rate cost-allocation method 133–5, **810**
DuPont method of profitability analysis 588–9
Durbin–Watson statistic 274

e-business **810**
e-commerce **811**
see also digital technologies and accounting; digitalisation; Internet
EasyJet 6
eBay 7, 704
economic order quantity (EOQ) 675–6, 681, **811**
JIT purchasing and 681
economic value added (EVA®) 587, 590–1, 592, 593, 597, **811**
economies of scale 262, 708
effectiveness 472, **811**
efficiency 472, **811**
efficiency variances 465–7, 468–9, 476–7, 495–6, 498, 501, **811**
effort 558, 562, 569, **811**
electrified vehicles (EVs) 41
Electrolux 428
Electronic Boards plc (case study) 216–18
electronic data interchange (EDI) 75, 675
employees 628, 642–3, 712, 714
activity-based costing 340
automation 300
multiskilled in JIT systems 661, 662, 664
remuneration 136, 598–9, 600, 601, 604, 632
time records 63, 75
endpoint costing 667, **811**
engineered costs 505–6, **811**
Enron 603
enterprise governance **811**
enterprise resources planning (ERP) systems 665–6
environment 297
greenhouse-gas-reduction projects 391–2
performance measures 602, 603
product life-cycle reports 370
see also sustainability
environmental management accounting (EMA) 710–12, **811**
equation method for breakeven point 223, 225, 227–8
equipment replacement 305–7
equivalent units 94–5, **811**
Ericsson 318
Ernst & Young 294
ESPN 196
estimated net realisable value (NRV) method 160, 165–6, 167–8, **811**
ethics 711
challenges 22–3
guidelines 22
performance measures 602–4
European Savings Bank (case study) 212–14
European Union
'cap and trade' system 370
data protection 370–1
Emissions Trading System 714
taxation 572
events 235–6, **811**
excess capacity 134, 297–8, 299, 352, 566, 569, 688, 707–8, **811**
see also unused capacity
expected monetary value 236, **811**
expected value 236, **811**
experience curve 263, **811**
extended normal costing **811**
external failure costs 637–8, 644, 645, **811**
Exxon Mobil 34

Facebook/Meta 7, 294, 572, 708
facility-sustaining costs 328, **811**
factory overhead costs 45, **811**
fashion clothing 358, 367, 377
favourable variance 460, **811**
feedback 11, 105, 436
budgets and responsibility accounting 441
performance measures 597–8
Ferrari 61
Fiat 359
finance director **811**
financial accounting 4–5, 48, **811**
absorption costing 185, 194
cost allocation 129
management accounting, cost accounting and 3–6
variable costing 194
financial budgets 429, **811**
financial capital 712
financial perspective on balanced scorecard 627, 629, 630, 714
financial planning models 437, **811**
fines 371, 602–3, 604, 645, 714
finished-goods stock 44, **811**
first-in, first-out (FIFO) process-costing method 97, 101–4, **811**
transferred-in costs and 113–15
weighted-average method compared 104–5
fishbone diagrams 641–2, **811**
fixed costs 37–40, 41, 42, 221, **811**
full-cost pricing 367
target cost 359
time horizon 38, 232, 250
UK survey 253
fixed-overhead costs
budgeted fixed-overhead rates 497
different purposes of cost analysis 502–3
journal entries 503, 504
marketing 507–9
planning 491, 492, 502–3, 509
variances 498, 509
production-volume 498–500, 501, 509
flexible-budget variances 463, 464–5, 476–7, 493–7, 498, 534, **811**

flexible budgets **811**
activity-based costing and 475–7, 510–14
fixed-overhead cost variances 498, 509
flexible-budget variances 463, 464–5, 476–7, 493–7, 498, 534
journal entries using standard costs 477–8
management uses of variances 472–5
price variances and efficiency variances for inputs 465–71, 476–7
production-volume variance 498–500, 501, 509
sales-volume variances 463–4, 493, 498, 534–5
static budgets and 460, 493–5
steps in developing 462–3
stocks, impact of 471–2
variable-overhead cost variances 493–7
variable-overhead efficiency variance 495–6, 501, 509
variable-overhead spending variance 496–7, 509
flexible manufacturing system (FMS) **811**
Ford 7, 297, 370
Foxconn 294
France 4, 334
ABC systems 340
tableau de bord 623, 626, 633–5
Fujifilm 604
Fujitsu 635, 666
full-cost bases in transfer pricing 566–7
full product costs 263, 356, 367, 561, 567, **811**
functional analysis **812**

General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) 603
General Electric (GE) 559, 586, 636, 736, 737
General Motors 359, 370
Germany 130, 334, 602, 604
fines 602
taxation 571
Gillette 478–9
GlaxoSmithKline 572
goal congruence 558, 560, 562, 568, 569, **812**
performance measures 587, 590, 601
Google 572
government contracts 48, 129, 252, 294
graph method
for breakeven point 224–5
for linear programming 310
Greece 572
greenhouse-gas-reduction projects 391–2
gross margin 185–6, 233–4, **812**
gross margin percentage 234, **812**
growth–share matrix 623
Gucci 20
Guinness 592

H&M 358, 377
Halifax 631
Hallmark UK 294
Hewlett-Packard 7, 267, 268, 359, 370, 423, 627, 664, 665
high–low method 255–7, **812**
High-Tech Ltd (case study) 725–31
Hilti 442
Hoffman La Roche 318
homogeneous cost pools 133, **812**
Honda Motors 294, 388, 389, 390, 661
hospitals 222, 294, 323, 390–1, 479, 480
hotels 222
HP *see* Hewlett-Packard
HSBC 339, 604
human capital 712
hurdle rate 392, **812**
hybrid-costing systems 110, 115–16, **812**
operation costing 117–20

IBM 294
IBM (France) 633
IBM Watson 666
ice-cream 525
IKEA 14, 603
imputed costs 589, **812**
incongruent decision making 559–60, **812**
incremental cost-allocation method 143–4, **812**
incremental costs 170–1, 292, 569–70, 679–80, 682, 683, **812**
incremental unit-time learning model 264–6, **812**
independent variable 254, 271–2, **812**
India 334, 572
car market 364–5
indirect-cost pools 131–3, 145–6, 324
indirect costs 46
of a cost object 35–6, 60, 355, **812**
increase in 323–4
relationships of types of costs 39–40
indirect manufacturing costs 44, 45, 46, **812**
individual-activity level of control 557
individual-facility level of control 557
Indonesia 300, 572
industrial engineering method 251, 252, 258, 260, **812**
inflation 405–6, **812**
information 442, 539
capital budgeting 389
on competitors 352
costs 560
for decision making *see* decision making: relevant information
responsibility accounting 442
Infosys 294
infrastructure costs 506, **812**
ING 604
innovation 16, 628, 630
carbon tax 370
co- 703
input-efficiency variances 465, **812**
input-price variances 465, **812**
insourcing 293–7, **812**
Institute of Chartered Accountants of England and Wales (ICAEW) 22
Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland (ICAS) 22
Institute of Management Accountants (IMA) **812**
Instrumental Ltd (case study) 551–3
Intel 7
intellectual capital 712
interactive control systems 604, **812**
intercept 248, **812**
Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) 602
intermediate products 561, **812**
internal-business process perspective on balanced scorecard 628, 629, 630, 714
internal failure costs 637–8, 644, 645, **812**
internal rate of return (IRR) 392, 394–6, 403, **812**
International Accounting Standards Board (IASB) 4
International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) 4
International Organization for Standardisation 636, 710
internet 365, 703, **812**
based budgeting 438
ordering costs 681
of Things (IOT) 7, 17–18, 20, 66, 703–4, 717, **812**
inventoriable costs 45, 46, 48, 679–81, **812**
fixed overhead costs 503
variable overhead costs 502, 504
variable vs absorption costing 184–6, 193–4
investment 587, 593, **812**
alternative definitions 716–17
investment centres 440, 571, **812**
investment programmes 387, **812**
investment projects 387, **812**
Ireland 404, 572
ISO 9000 636, 710
ISO 14000 710, 715

Japan 130
JD Sports 585–6
Jersey 404
job cost records 68, 69, **812**
job cost sheets 68, 69, **812**
job-costing systems 59–81, **813**
adjusted allocation rate approach 77, 80
audit engagement 62
big data and analytics 77
building block concept 60

general approach 62–3
manufacturing 66–76, 320–3
budgeted indirect costs 76–7
end-of-period adjustments 76–7
general ledger and subsidiary ledgers 70–1
source documents 68
transactions 72–6
process-costing systems and 60–2, 91, 115, 116, 117
proration approach 78–80
service organisations 62–4, 65
actual costing 62–4, 65
normal costing 64–6
source documents 63, 68
job rotation 267, 560
Johnson & Johnson 391–2, 602
joint-cost allocations 157–74
approaches to 160–8
by-products 158, 162–3, 168, 171–4
constant gross-margin percentage NRV method 166–8
estimated net realisable value method 160, 165–6, 167–8
irrelevance 169–71
no allocation 168–9
outputs and products 158–9
physical measure method 160, 163–4, 167–8
reasons for allocating 159
sales value at split-off method 160, 161–2, 167–8
sell or process further 169–71
joint costs 158, **813**
joint products 158, **813**
big data 162–3
journal entries
job costing 72, 73, 74, 75, 79–80
overhead costs and variances 503–4
process costing 96–7, 100, 104, 109, 113, 114–15, 119
standard costs 477–8
just-in-time (JIT) production 300, 623, 661, 685, **813**
backflush costing 666–74
enterprise resources planning systems 665–6
features of 661–5
financial benefits of 664, 665
performance measures 685–6
product-costing benefits of 664
just-in-time (JIT) purchasing 664, 681–4, **813**

kaizen budgeting 438, **813**
kanban system 661
Kanthal 323
Kellogg Company 6
Kempinski Hotels 424
key success factors 15–16, **813**
Kodak 604
KPMG 294
Kraft Heinz 426
Krones 592

labour-paced operations 144, **813**
labour time records 68, 69, **813**
Lafarge 633
Land Rover 11
lean production 472
learning, organisational 473
learning and growth perspective on balanced scorecard 628, 629, 630, 715
learning curves 263, **813**
non-linear cost functions and 263–8
Leboncoin 490
LEGO 302
life-cycle budgeting 368, **813**
developing life-cycle reports 369–71
pricing decisions and 368–9
life-cycle costing 368, 389, **813**
line management 93, 133, 260, 389, **813**
linear cost function 248, **813**
linear programming (LP) 302, 307–11
LinkedIn 294, 708
live concert recordings 663
Lloyds Banking Group 8
locked-in costs 360–2, 370, **813**
logistic regression 261
Lombard Odier & Cie 11
Lucas 590

machine learning (ML) 3, 12, 459, 704, 716
cost analysis, big data and 261
stock management: big data and 666
machine-paced operations 144, **813**
main products 158, **813**
make-or-buy decisions 293–302, **813**
management accounting 3–4, 557, **813**
environmental (EMA) 710–12
financial accounting, cost accounting and 3–6
strategic 623, 625, 712
strategic decisions and 6–8
sustainability 709–15
management by exception 9–10, 459, 491, **813**
management control system 11, 557, **813**
decentralisation 558–60, 561, 562
evaluating 557–8
performance measures *see separate entry*
responsibility centres 561
strategy and levers of control 603–4
managers and organisational units, distinction between performance measures 598–601
manufactured capital 712
manufacturing cells 661–2, 663–4, **813**
manufacturing costs, classification of 44–7
manufacturing lead time 661, 663–4, 685, **813**
manufacturing organisations and stock costs 684–6
manufacturing overhead allocated 74, **813**
manufacturing overhead costs 45, 46, **813**
manufacturing-sector companies 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 253, **813**
contribution and gross margins 234
margin of safety 229, **813**
market/customer level of control 557
market entrants, potential 623–4
Market Insights (MI) 479, 480
market-share variance 536–9, **813**
market-size variance 536–9, **813**
marketing 7–8, 14, **813**
decentralisation 560
overhead costs 507–9
predictive customised strategies 704
master budget 423–4, 429–36, 443–8, **813**
master-budget utilisation 197–9, **814**
materiality 35–6, 672
materials requirements planning (MRP) 685, **814**
materials requisition records 68, 69, **814**
Mayne Nickless 592
Mayo Clinic 334
Mbarara University Hospital 11
McKinsey & Co 423
mental accounting, theory of 136
Mercedes 645
merchandising-sector companies 43, 44, 45, **814**
contribution and gross margins 234
Meta *see* Facebook/Meta
Metro Bank 252
Microsoft 7, 294, 423, 666
mining 159, 168, 355, 361
Mitsui 592
mixed costs 248–9, **814**
moral hazard 599, **814**
motivation 558, 559, 601, 603, 628, **814**
budgets 426–8
cost allocation 129, 130
intrinsic 604
motor vehicles 3, 4, 7, 37–8, 460
big data joint products and by-products 162–3
capital budgeting 388, 389, 390
electrified 41
environment 297, 370
fines 602–3
hybrid costing 115
Indian car market 364–5
JIT systems 661
learning-curve effects 268
output measure 222
pricing 352, 364–5
product differentiation 624–5
product-mix decisions 301
quality 645
target costing 359
and life-cycle budgeting 370
total quality management 635

multicollinearity 277, **814**
multiple regression 257, 261, 275–7, **814**
multiskilled workers in JIT systems 661, 662, 664
music, live concert recordings 663

nation-specificity, balanced scorecard 633–5
natural capital 712
natural language processing 261
NatWest bank 323
Nestlé 590
net present value (NPV) method 392, 393–4, 396, 406, **814**
net profit 221, **814**
net relevant cost **814**
Netflix 3, 196
Netherlands 602, 604
network-based platforms 708
new economy **814**
  see also digital technologies and accounting; digitalisation
Nike 20, 294, 300–1, 318, 389
Nissan Motor Company 268, 370, 423, 460
nominal rate of return 405, **814**
non-fungible tokens (NFTs) 20
non-linear cost function 262, **814**
non-value-added costs 360, 363, 491, **814**
Nordea 428
normal costing 64–6, **814**
  stock-costing methods 193–4
normal spoilage **814**
normal utilisation 197, 198–9, **814**
Norsk Hydro 440
Northlake, ethical dilemma (case study) 214–16
Norway: sovereign wealth fund 585
not-for-profit organisations, and CVP analysis 233
Novartis 440, 505
Novo Nordisk 603
Nugs.net 663
numerical control machine (NC machine) **814**

objective function 308, **814**
OECD (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development) 572, 710
oil and gas 90, 355, 357, 370, 440
  joint costs 164
  offshore 159
one-off special orders 291–2, 353–5
Opel 37–8
operating budgets 429, **814**
  steps in preparing 432–6
operating costs 45, 712, **814**
operating cycle 445, **814**
operating departments 137, **814**
operating leverage 231, **814**
operating profit 221, **814**
  absorption costing 189–93, 199
  target 225
  variable costing 189–93
operation 117, **814**
operation costing 117–20, **814**
opportunity cost of capital 392, 679, 680, **814**
opportunity costs 675, **814**
  outsourcing, capacity constraints and 297–302
  quality 638, 644
  time value of money 389
  transfer pricing 569–70
Oracle 666
ordering costs 674, 681, 682, 683, **815**
organisational context, activity-based costing 339–41
organisational learning, variance analysis 473
organisational structure 440, **815**
organisational units and managers, distinction between performance measures 598–601
Ørsted 16, 715–16
Osram Ltd 16
  case study 736–40
out-of-pocket costs **815**
outcomes 236, **815**
outlay costs 569–70, 679, **815**
output-level overhead variance 500, **815**
output-unit-level costs 327, **815**
outsourcing 293, **815**
  automation vs 300–1
  idle facilities and 293–7
  opportunity costs, capacity constraints and 297–302
  politics, costs and 294
overabsorbed indirect costs 76, **815**
overallocated indirect costs 76, **815**
overapplied indirect costs 76, **815**
overcosting 319
overhead costs 45, 46, 47, 505
  different purposes of analysis of 501–3
  fixed- *see separate entry*
  journal entries for overhead costs and variances 503–4
  just-in-time (JIT) systems 664, 673
  variable- *see separate entry*

P.F. Chang's 438
Pace 426
padding 432, **815**
Panasonic 359, 603
Pareto diagrams 641, **815**
payback method 400–2, **815**
Pechiney 633
Pepsi-Cola 15
perfectly competitive market 565, 569–70, 571, **815**
performance measures 585–605
  absorption costing 194–5
  alternative definitions of investment 593
  asset measurement 594–8
  current cost 594–6, 597
  economic value added (EVA®) 587, 590–1, 592, 593, 597
  environment 602, 603
  ethics 602–4
  financial 195, 474, 506–7, 586, 599–600, 601, 626, 631, 686, 689
  gross or net book value 596–7
  historical cost 591, 594, 597
  at individual activity level 601
  JIT production 685–6
  learning curve 268
  managers 598–601
  multiple tasks 601
  non-financial 195, 474, 506–7, 586–7, 599–600, 601, 626, 631, 632, 686, 689
  organisational units 598–601
  other levers of control 603–4
  residual income 587, 589–90, 592, 593, 598–9
  return on investment 587, 588–9, 590, 592, 593, 594–8
  return on sales 587, 592
  targets 597
  timing of feedback 597–8
  trade-off: incentives vs risk 598–9
  variances 472–3
  see also balanced scorecard; tableau de bord
period costs 45–6, **815**
Permaclean Products plc (case study) 417–19
Philippines 300
Philips 318, 560, 736, 737
physical measure method 160, 163–4, 167–8, **815**
piece-rate system 601
Pirelli 590, 592
Pizza Hut 442
planning 9–11, 506, **815**
  fixed-overhead costs 491, 492, 502–3, 509
  variable-overhead costs 491, 502, 509
politics, costs and outsourcing 204
Porsche 3, 41, 352, 424, 624–5
Porter's five forces 623–4
post-deduct costing 667, **815**
post-investment audit 403
poultry companies 158, 168
practical capacity 197, 198–9, **815**
Prada 20
predatory pricing **815**
predictive customised marketing strategies 704
present value **815**

prevention costs 637–8, 645, 646, **815**
previous department costs 109–15, **815**
price discounting 371–2, 375, 533, **815**
price discrimination 367
price variances 465, 466–8, 469, 476, **815**
prices/pricing
  activity-based costing 335, 339
  big data 666
  cost leadership 624–5
  cost-plus 357, 358, 364–7
  costing and pricing
    for the long run 355–8
    for the short run 353–5
  costs and time horizon 353
  decentralisation 560
  dynamic 352
  influences on 352–3
  learning curve 267–8
  life-cycle budgeting and 367–71
  market-based 357–8
  one-off special order 353–5
  peak load 367
  process-costing systems 105
  product costs 48, 352–3, 355–7
  product differentiation 624–5
  target costing for target 358–62, 364–5
  transfer pricing *see separate entry*
Primark 45
prime costs 46, **815**
principal–agent issue 599
privatisation 294
pro forma statements 423, **815**
probability 236, **815**
probability distribution 236–7, **815**
problem solving 12, 560, **815**
process-costing systems 90–120, **815**
  activity-based costing 105
  first-in, first-out method 101–5, 113–15
  hybrid costing 110, 115–16
    operation costing 117–20
  job-costing systems and 60–2, 91, 115, 116, 117
  journal entries 96–7, 100, 104, 109, 113, 114–15, 119
  no opening but closing WIP stock 93–7
  no opening or closing WIP stock 92–3
  opening and closing WIP stock 97–105
  standard costing method 105–9
  transferred-in costs 109–15
  weighted-average method 98–100, 104–5, 111–13
process improvement decisions 335
product 158, **815**
  equivalent 623–4
product-cost cross-subsidisation 319, **815**
product costs 48, **815**
  pricing 95–6
product differentiation 624–5, 630, 633, **815**
product diversity 323
product life cycle 16, 367, 623, **815**
product line **815**
product-mix decisions 353
  activity-based costing 335
  process-costing systems 105
  under capacity constraints 301–2
product overcosting 319, **815**
product safety 712
product-sustaining costs 327, **815**
product undercosting 319, **816**
production 14, **816**
  lean 472
production denominator level 497, **816**
production denominator volume 497, **816**
production department 137, **816**
production-volume variance 498–500, 501, 509, **816**
productivity 712, **816**
profiling customers 352
  profitability 374–6
profit centres 440, 442, 571, **816**
profit shifting *see* transfer pricing
proration 77, 78–80, 478, 504, **816**
  transfer pricing 567–8
prosumers 703
Puma 625
purchase-order lead time 675, **816**
purchasing costs 674, 675, 682, **816**
PV graph 226, **816**
PwC 294

Quaker Oats 592
qualitative factors 291, **816**
quality 15, 685
  analysing problems with 640–2
  conformance 636
  costs of 635–40, 644–6, 674, 682–4, 703
  definitions 636
  of design 636
  improvement 626–7, 636, 642–6
  learning curve 267–8
  life-cycle reports 370
  non-financial measures 638–40, 642, 646
  reputation 645
quality costs 635–40, 644–6, 703, **816**
  JIT systems 674, 682–4
quantitative analysis of cost relationships 251, 261
quantitative factors 290–1, **816**
quantity discounts 262
Quicksilver 426

Rakuten 704
rate variances 465, **816**
rationality 136
real rate of return 405, **816**
reciprocal allocation method 137, 140–3, **816**
recycling 370
Reebok 603
reengineering 626–7, **816**
refined costing system 323–4, **816**
regression analysis 253, 257–8, 260, 261, 269–77, **816**
relative performance evaluation 600–1
relevance
  budgets 428
  cash flows in DCF analysis 398–400
  concept of 289–91
  customer profitability and relevant costs 302–5
    adding customer 304–5
    dropping customer 303–4
  illustration of 291–3
  irrelevance of past costs 305–7
  potential problems 292–3
relevant costs 289–90, 302–5, **816**
relevant range 39, 250–1, **816**
relevant revenues 289–90, **816**
remuneration 598–9, 600, 601, 604
  balanced scorecard 632
  CEO 593, 600
  forecasts 136
Renault 115, 359, 635, 661
renewable energy 267
reorder point 677, **816**
replacement of equipment 305–7
required rate of return (RRR) 392, **816**
research and development (R&D) 14, 130, 369, 370, 506, **816**
residual income (RI) 587, 589–90, 592, 593, 598–9, **816**
residual term 258, **816**
responsibility accounting **816**
  budgeting and 440–1
  controllability 441–2
responsibility centres 440, 442, 561, **816**
restaurants 474–5
retail organisations, stock management 674–9
return on investment (ROI) 587, 588–9, 590, 592, 593, **816**
  asset measurement 594–8
  capital investment decisions 402–3
  current cost 594–5, 597
  gross or net book value 596–7
  managers and organisational units 598
  targets 597
return on sales (ROS) 587, 592
revenue centres 440, 571, **816**
revenue costs 45, **816**
revenue drivers 221–2, **816**
revenue mix 232–3, **816**
revenues 221, **816**
reverse engineering 352
reworked units 363, **816**
robotics 19
Rolex 624
rolling budgets 428, **816**
Rolls-Royce 8, 17–19, 61–2

Royal Bank of Canada 260
RTFKT Studios 20
Russia 34, 294, 334

safety stock 678–9, **816**
Sage 666
Saint-Gobain 633
sales mix 232–3, **817**
sales-mix variance 535–6, **817**
sales-quantity variance 535, **817**
sales value at split-off method 160, 161–2, 167–8, **817**
sales-volume variance 463–4, 493, 498, 534–5, **817**
Samsung 602, 624, 635
Sandoz 505
Sanofi 593
SAP 666
Sapo 490
Satyam 603
Scandinavia 602, 604, 633
Schneider Electric 715
scorekeeping 12, **817**
scrap 158, **817**
segment **817**
self-liquidating cycle 445, **817**
selling-price variances 464–5, **817**
semivariable costs 248–9, **817**
sensitivity analysis **817**
  budgets 437
  CVP analysis 228–9
  discounted cash flow 397
  linear programming 311
separable costs 158, **817**
sequential allocation method 137, 139–40, 141–3, **817**
sequential tracking 667, 671, **817**
service departments 137, **817**
service-sector companies 43–4, 45, **817**
  contribution margin 234
service-sustaining costs 327, **817**
Set.fm 663
set-up 661, 663–4, 685, **817**
shareholder value 7
shareholders' equity as definition of investment 593
sharing economy 708
Sharp 359
shrinkage costs 675
Siemens 11, 318, 359, 557, 590, 602, 626, 627, 661, 663, 736, 737, 738
simple regression 257, **817**
single-rate cost-allocation method 133–5, **817**
slope coefficient 248, **817**
social and relationship capital 712
social networking 708
social responsibility 602, 604, 711–12
SONEM 90
Sony 14
source documents 63, 68, 69, **817**
South Africa 4
Spain 4, 572
specification analysis 272–4, **817**
split-off point 158, **817**
spoilage 471, 637, 663, 664, 674, 681, **817**
Spotify 294
Staedtler 624
staff management **817**
stand-alone cost-allocation method 143, **817**
standard 459, **817**
standard costing 492, 505, 507, **817**
  process costing 105–9
  stock-costing methods 193–4
standard costs 466, 477–8, 525, **817**
standard error of the estimated coefficient 271, **817**
standard input 466, **817**
Starbucks 471–2
static budgets 460–2, 493–5, 498, 534, **817**
statistical process control (SPC) 640
statistical quality control (SQC) 640
steel-rolling mill 105
step allocation method 137, 139–40, 141–3, **817**
step cost function 262–3, **817**
step-down allocation method 137, 139–40, 141–3, **817**
stock-costing methods 183–202
  absorption costing 184–202
  capsule comparison of 193–4
  comparison of methods 188–94, 195
  denominator-level concepts 184, 196–9
  income statements 185–7, 189
  operating profit and 189–93, 199
  variable costing 184–94
stock management 674, **818**
  big data and machine learning 666
  challenges in estimating costs 679–81
  economic order quantity 675–6, 681
  manufacturing organisations 684–6
  prediction errors 680–1
  reorder point 677
  retail organisations 674–9
  safety stock 678–9
stock-related costs 45, 46, 48, 129, 130, **818**
  cost of prediction error 680–1
  estimating 679–80
  fixed overhead costs 503
  variable overhead costs 502, 504
  variable vs absorption costing 184–6, 193–4
stockout costs 674, 675, 678–9, 680, 682, 684, **818**
stockouts 674, **818**
straight-line depreciation (SL) 404, **818**
strategic analysis **818**
strategic investment appraisal (SIA) **818**
strategic management accounting (SMA) 623, 625, 712, **818**
strategic scorecard **818**
strategy 6–8, 388, 424, 623–5, **818**
  balanced scorecard aligned to 628–30
  digitisation of business models 704, 705
  evaluating success of 632–5
  Porter's five forces 623–4
suboptimal decision making 559–60, **818**
Sumitomo Electric Industries 17
sunk costs 306, **818**
supermarkets 229
suppliers 365, 636
  bargaining power 7, 623–4
  electronic data interchange 75, 675
  JIT systems 661, 664, 682–4
supply chain 15, **818**
support departments 137, **818**
sustainability 10–11, 16, 358, 370, 712, 714, **818**
  capital budget 390, 391–2
  context and communication 715
  corporates that prioritise 715–16
  performance measures 602
Sustainability Accounting Standards Board (SASB) 370
sustainability management accounting 709–15
Swedish Match 592
Switzerland 602, 604
SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) 623
Sylvania 736, 737
synchronous tracking 667, **818**

tableau de bord 623, 626, 633–5, **818**
Taiwan 300
Tanner Pharmaceuticals and price of new drug (case study) 732–6
target cost per unit 358–9, **818**
target costing 358–64, 370, 525, 623
target operating profit per unit 358, 359, **818**
target price 358–65, 377, **818**
target rate of return on investment 365–7, **818**
Tata 364–5, 603
taxation
  breakeven point 228
  capital budgeting 404
  carbon tax 370
  centralisation 560
  cost-volume-profit (CVP) analysis 227–8
  depreciation 404
  sales tax 45, 228, 570
  stock valuation 104
  transfer pricing 570–2
team working 267
  cross-functional 361–2
Telecom Italia Group 590
television 196, 539

Tesco 352
Tesla 7, 297
theoretical capacity 197, 198–9, **818**
theory of constraints (TOC) 686–8, **818**
3D-printing 110, 323, 666
throughput contribution 686, **818**
throughput costing **818**
Thyssenkrupp 220
TikTok 703
time 15–16, 353
  controllability and 441
  cost classification and 38, 232, 250
  coverage of budgets 428
  records 63, 75
  value of money 388–9, 392, 401, 403
time-adjusted rate of return 394, **818**
time-based measures and balanced scorecard 688–9
time-driven activity-based costing (TDABC) systems 326, 334, **818**
time drivers **818**
time-series data 254
timing
  of feedback 597–8
  of tax payments 404
tin 158
TNT 604
Toshiba 603
total assets available 593
total assets employed 593
total costs 40–3
  relevant-cost analysis 293
total direct manufacturing labour mix variance 531, 532, **818**
total direct manufacturing labour yield variance 531–2, **818–19**
total direct materials mix variance 527, 528–9, **819**
total direct materials yield variance 527–8, **819**
total-organisation level of control 557
total quality management (TQM) 15, 623, 635–6, 661, 663
Toyota 6, 15, 162–3, 294, 359, 645, 671
Trans-Europe Transport Company (TETC) 39
transactions **819**
transfer pricing 561–72, **819**
  cost-based 561, 563–5, 566–8, 570
  general guideline 569–70
  illustration of 562–5
  key criteria 562
  market-based 561, 563–6, 568, 570, 571
  negotiated 561–2, 563–5, 569, 570
  taxation 570–2
transferred-in costs 109–15, **819**
  FIFO method and 113–15
  points to remember 115
  weighted-average method and 111–13
transparency 17, 710, 712
trial-and-error approach 309–10
triple bottom line 712
Turkey 572
Twitter 7, 261, 708

Uber 602, 707
UBS 603
Ukraine 34, 294
uncertainty 229, 427–8, 506, **819**
  capital budgeting 389–90
  decision models 235–8
underabsorbed indirect costs 76, **819**
underallocated indirect costs 76, 77, **819**
underapplied indirect costs 76, **819**
undercosting 319
unfavourable variance 460, **819**
Unilever 11, 14, 33, 426, 442, 558, 600, 604
unit costs 40–3, **819**
  relevant-cost analysis 293
United Kingdom 130, 253, 293–4, 334, 459
  capital allowances 404
  City of London Police 260
  Financial Reporting Council 4
  taxation 571
United States
  activity-based costing 340
  environment 602–3
  fines 602–3
  health-care spending 334
  Patent and Trademark Office 260
  performance measurement 634
  Postal Service 260
  taxation 572
UnitedHealth 162
universities 94
unused capacity 707–8, **819**
  see also excess capacity
usage variances 465, **819**

Valient Pharmaceuticals 603
value-added activities 36, 360, **819**
value-added costs 360, 363, 491, **819**
value chain 14–15, 473, **819**
value creation 13–17
value engineering 359–60, 361, 362, 363, 370, **819**
variable-cost percentage 234, **819**
variable costing 46, 184–94, **819**
  breakeven point 200–2
  comparison of absorption costing and 188–94, 195
  external reporting 185, 194
  income statements 185–7, 189
  operating profit 189–93
variable costs 37–40, 42, 221, **819**
  full-cost pricing 367
  target cost 359
  time horizon 38, 232, 250
  UK survey 253
variable-overhead costs
  budgeted variable-overhead rates 492
  different purposes of cost analysis 502
  journal entries 503, 504
  marketing 507–9
  planning 491, 502, 509
  variances 493–7, 501, 509
variable-overhead efficiency variance 495–6, 501, 509, **819**
variable-overhead spending variance 496–7, 509, **819**
variances 10, 135, 442, 459, 460, 505, 525, 532–3, **819**
  absorption costing 189
  accounting for 671–2
  activity-based costing 476–7, 510–14
  backflush costing 671–2
  benchmarking 478–80
  benefits of 441
  direct-cost 471–2
  direct manufacturing labour yield and mix 530–2
  direct materials efficiency and price 525–7
  efficiency 465–7, 468–9, 476–7, 495–6, 498, 501
  fixed-overhead cost 498, 509
  flexible-budget 463, 464–5, 476–7, 493–7, 498, 534
  integrated analysis of overhead cost 500–1
  investigation of 474
  journal entries 477–8, 503, 504
  management uses of 472–5
  market-share 536–9
  market-size 536–9
  performance measures 586
  price 465, 466–8, 469, 476
  process-costing systems 107–9
  production-volume 498–500, 501, 509
  random 474
  sales-mix 535–6
  sales-quantity 535
  sales-volume 463–4, 493, 498, 534–5
  static-budget 461–2, 498, 534
  total direct materials mix 527, 528–9
  total direct materials yield 527–8
  variable costing 189
  variable-overhead cost 493–7
  variable-overhead efficiency 495–6, 501, 509
  variable-overhead spending 496–7, 509
Vietnam 300
Virgin Holidays 7–8
Volkswagen 602–3, 604
Volvo 318, 359, 370

Walmart 666
Waterstones 6
weather predictions 666

weighted-average cost of capital (WACC) 590, 591
weighted-average process-costing method 97, 98–100, **819**
  FIFO compared 104–5
  transferred-in costs and 111–13
WhatsApp 294
Whole Foods 229
Wikipedia 703
work cell **819**
work in process **819**
work-in-process stock 44, **819**
work in progress **819**
work-in-progress stock 44, **819**
work-measurement method 251, 252, 258, 260, **819**
working-capital cycle 445, **819**
working capital plus long-term assets as definition of investment 593
World Bank 390
World Commission on Environment and Development (WCED) 712
World Economic Forum 706
WPP 426
Xiaomi 90

Yahoo! 294
Yokogowa Hewlett-Packard 268
YouTube 7, 703

Zara 377
zero-based budgeting (ZBB) 426, **819**
Zeros plc (case study) 549–51
Zomato 703

PUBLISHER'S ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Text Credits:

2 CPA Canada: What CPAs do, CPA Canada 2022 Retrieved from https://www.cpacanada.ca/en/the-cpa-profession/cpas-and-what-we-do/what-cpas-do; **4 The Financial Reporting Council Limited:** About the FRC, Financial Reporting Council (FRC), https://www.frc.org.uk/about-the-frc, Reprinted with permission; **8 Daily Digitalfix:** Quoted by Saul Lopes Digitalfix (2018) 'How AI is helping brands improve the customer experience', Daily Digitalfix, 7 June (https://dailydigitalfix.com/ai-helping-brands-improve-customer-experience/); **8 Omni Academy:** Rajput, S. (2020) 'Big Data and AI – banking industry use cases in Karachi Pakistan'. https://www.omni-academy.com/big-data-and-ai-banking-industry-use-cases/; **13 Pearson Education:** Harrison, G. and McKinnon, J. (2007) 'National culture and management control', in T. Hopper, D. Northcott and R. Scapens (eds) *Issues in Management Accounting* (Harlow: FT Prentice Hall); **18 CNET Media, Inc:** Samuels, M. (15.5.2018) 'Successful IoT deployment: The Rolls-Royce approach' (www.zdnet.com/article/successful-iot-deployment-the-rolls-royce-approach/); **18 InfiSIM Ltd:** 'How to reduce business costs with the Internet of Things (IoT)' (www.infisim.com/reduce-business-costs-internet-things-iot/); **18 Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited:** 'The Internet of Things: Moving from cost savings to revenue generation' (www2.deloitte.com/us/en/pages/finance/articles/cfo-insights-internet-of-things-cost-savings-revenue-generation.html); **18 Bernard Marr:** Adapted from www.bernardmarr.com/default.asp; **18 CNET Media, Inc:** Samuels, M. (15.5.2018) 'Successful IoT deployment: The Rolls-Royce approach' (www.zdnet.com/article/successful-iot-deployment-the-rolls-royce-approach/); **20 The Conversation:** Bourkis, A. (1 June 2022). 'NFTs: how top brands like Nike and Prada are using them – and what could go wrong', https://theconversation.com/nfts-how-top-brands-like-nike-and-prada-are-using-them-and-what-could-go-wrong-182446; **22 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** Summary of CIMA's Code of Ethics, Association of International Certified Professional Accountants, https://www.cimaglobal.com/Professionalism/Ethics/CIMAs-code-at-a-glance/ Reprinted with permissions; **25 Peter Drucker:** Quoted by Peter Drucker; **34 Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited:** Deloitte (2021) '2020 Enterprise transformation and cost reduction survey Save-to-Thrive during the COVID-19 pandemic https://www2.deloitte.com/cn/en/pages/strategy-operations/monitor-deloitte/articles/global-cost-management-survey.html); **41 Crain Communications, Inc:** Hetzner, C. (2017) 'Porsche CFO outlines how company will thrive in EV era', (http://europe.autonews.com/article/20171101/ANE/171029772/porsche-cfo-outlines-how-company-will-thrive-in-ev-era) (27/1/2018); **41 Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG:** Porsche achieves sustainable growth in 2020 financial year,19/03/2021 retrieved from https://newsroom.porsche.com/en/2021/company/porsche-annual-press-conference-financial-year-2020-annual-and-sustainability-report-23936.html; **84 Z. Iqbal:** Z. Iqbal, adapted; **61 Telegraph:** Torsten Müller-Ötvös, CEO of Rolls-Royce quoted in Harvey, M. (2017) 'As is the custom: the ultimate in bespoke car making', The Telegraph, 20 October, www.telegraph.co.uk/luxury/motoring/custom-ultimate-bespoke-car-making/; **61 Forbes Media LLC:** Banks, N. (27 May 2021).' The Story Behind Rolls-Royce's New $28 Million Hand-Built Boat Tail. (https://www.forbes.com/sites/nargessbanks/2021/05/27/this-is-the-design-story-behind-rolls-royces-custom-built-boat-tail/?sh=17aab4933098); **77 Harvard Business Review:** Andrew McAfee and Erik Brynjolfsson, 'Big Data: The management revolution', Harvard Business Review, October 2012 (https://hbr.org/2012/10/big-data-the-management-revolution); **77 Harvard Business Review:** Randy Bean, 'How companies say they're using big data,' Harvard

Business Review online, April 28, 2017 (https://hbr.org/2017/04/how-companies-say-theyre-using-big-data); **77 Datafloq.com:** 'How to make job costing more accurate with big data', Datafloq.com, June 14, 2016 (https://datafloq.com/read/how-to-make-job-costing-more-accurate-big-data/2119); **77 Virtu Group:** 'New Partnership to Launch Big Data Scope & Costing Tool to Australian Agencies', Virtu Group press release, Sydney, Australia, January 20, 2017 (https://www.thevirtugroup.com/2017/01/20/tangram-partnership/); **90-91 Moxa Europe GmbH:** Moxa-Europe (2022). 'Smart edge turnkey solution for optimizing brewing processes' (https://moxa-europe.com/lp/case-study-ait-sonem/); **110 Forbes:** Andria Cheng, 'How Adidas plans to bring 3D printing to the masses', Forbes.com, May 22, 2018 (https://www.forbes.com/sites/andriacheng/2018/05/22/with-adidas-3d-printing-may-finally-see-its-mass-retail-potential/); **110 Dow Jones & Company:** Isabel Flower, 'Is mass customization the future of footwear'? *The Wall Street Journal,* October 24, 2017 (https://www.wsj.com/articles/is-mass-customization-the-future-of-footwear-1508850000); **110 Condé Nast:** Anna Wiener, 'Inside Adidas' robot-powered, on-demand sneaker factory', *Wired,* November 29, 2017 (https://www.wired.com/story/inside-speedfactory-adidas-robot-powered-sneaker-factory/); **110 Markets and Markets Research Private Ltd.:** No author, *3D Printing Market* (Chicago, IL: Markets and Markets, 2017); **123 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004, Reprinted with permissions; **128 Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited:** Deloitte (2022) 'Why do so many organisations struggle with cost allocation?' https://www2.deloitte.com/ch/en/pages/financial-advisory/articles/why-organisations-struggle-cost-allocation.html; **136 McKinsey & Company:** Lovallo, D. and Sibony, O. (2014) 'Is your budget process stuck on last year's numbers?', McKinsey and Co. (www.mckinsey.com/insights/corporate_finance); **177 W. Crum:** W. Crum, adapted; **162-163 Harvard Business School Press:** Alan Lewis and Dan McKone, *Edge Strategy: A New Mindset for Profitable Growth* (Boston, MA: Harvard Business School Press, 2016); **177-178, 181-182, 282-283, 451, 452-453, 521-522, 541-542, 577, 609-610, 610-611, 613-614, 693-694, 723-724 Institute of Management Accountants, Inc:** CMA, adapted; **179 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2007 Reprinted with permissions; **181 American Institute of Certified Public Accountants:** CPA, adapted; **196 The Motley Fool:** Jeremy Bowman, 'Don't expect ESPN to cut the cord anytime soon', *The Motley Fool,* January 24, 2016 (https://www.fool.com/investing/general/2016/01/24/dont-expect-espn-to-cut-the-cord-anytime-soon.aspx); **196 The New York Times Company:** Kevin Draper, 'ESPN is laying off 150 more employees', *The New York Times,* November 29, 2017 (https://www.nytimes.com/2017/11/29/sports/espn-layoffs.html); **196 Variety Media, LLC.:** Todd Spangle, 'ESPN+ launches with a ton of live sports – and limited ads', Variety, April 12, 2018 (https://variety.com/2018/digital/news/espn-plus-subscription-sports-streaming-limitedads-1202751319/); **196 Forbes Media LLC:** Trefis Team, 'With subscriber declines continuing, how much is ESPN worth'? Forbes.com, March 15, 2018 (https://www.forbes.com/sites/greatspeculations/2018/03/15/with-subscriber-declines-continuing-how-much-is-espn-worth/); **196 Dow Jones & Company, Inc:** Shalini Ramachandran, 'Adding to ESPN's struggles: Politics', *The Wall Street Journal,* May 25, 2018 (https://www.wsj.com/articles/how-a-weakened-espn-became-consumed-bypolitics-1527176425); **196 Variety Media, LLC.:** Cynthia Littleton, 'ESPN loses 2 million subscribers in Fiscal 2018', *Variety,* November 21, 2018 (https://variety.com/2018/biz/news/espn-disney-channel-subscriber-losses-2018-1203035003/; **212-213 American Accounting Association:** Christiansen, A. and Eining, M.M. (1994) 'Software piracy — who does it impact?', *Issues in Accounting Education,* 9(1), Spring 1994. Reproduced with permission from the American Accounting Association; **214-216 Centre for Accounting Ethics:** Grant, R. (1993) 'The ethical dilemma at Northlake', *CMA Magazine,* March. Reproduced with permission from the Centre for Accounting Ethics; **216-218 Falconer Mitchell:** Innes, J. and Mitchell, F. (1988) 'Electronic Boards plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission; **204-205 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1,June 2006 Reprinted with permissions; **205-206 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005 Reprinted with permissions;

206 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants: ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004 Reprinted with permissions; **207 CIMA:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level 1 Paper, November 2006 Reprinted with permissions; **220 The Financial Times Ltd:** Miller, J (10 February 2022). 'Germany's shrinking conglomerates enjoy profits surge after streamlining', *Financial Times* (https://www.ft.com/content/be06fa73-87ae-4f5d-8351-29f2d0d378b6) Reprinted with permissions; **229 The Washington Post:** Abha Bhattarai (2017) 'Whole Foods has tried to lower prices before. Can Amazon make it work?' *The Washington Post*, 25 August; **229 MarketWatch, Inc:** Tonya Garcia (2018) 'Amazon Prime members are adopting Whole Foods benefits faster than previous perks', MarketWatch.com, 31 July; **229 The Philadelphia Inquirer, LLC:** Christian Hetrick (2018) 'A year after Amazon takeover, Whole Foods still hasn't shed its whole paycheck status', *The Philadelphia Inquirer,* 20 August; **229 Thomson Reuters:** Lisa Baertlein and Jeffrey Dastin (2018) 'Amazon cuts Whole Foods prices for Prime members in new grocery showdown', *Reuters,* 16 May; **244-245 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA, Paper P2, November 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **245 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, May 2006 Reprinted with permissions; **246 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Management, section B, March 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **251 Taylor & Francis Group:** Rees, D. (2000) *Essential Statistics* (London: Chapman and Hall); **260 Harvard Business School:** Kaplan, R.S. and Datar, S.M. (1995) 'The Co-operative Bank', *Harvard Business School Cases,* No. 9-195-196, 23 March (revised 22 April 1997); **267 GreenBiz Group Inc.:** Alan AtKisson, 'The "big push": Transforming the world's energy systems', *North Star* (blog), *GreenBiz,* January 23, 2018 (https://www.greenbiz.com/article/big-push-transforming-worlds-energy-systems); **267 The National Academies Press:** National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine, *The Power of Change: Innovation for Development and Deployment of Increasingly Clean Electric Power Technologies,* Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 2016; **267 International Renewable Energy Agency,:** International Renewable Energy Agency, Renewable Power Generation Costs in 2017, Abu Dhabi: International Renewable Energy Agency, 2018; **285-286 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA, Paper P2, May 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **294 The Financial Times Ltd:** Parker, G. and Tetlow, G. (2017) 'Fall of Carillion should herald end of outsourcing, says Corbyn', *Financial Times* (17 January 2018); **294 The Financial Times Ltd:** Plimmer, G. (2018) and 'How outsourcing fell out of fashion in the UK', *Financial Times* (9 February 2018) (www.ft.com/content/983c4598-0d88-11e8-839d-41ca06376bf2); **294 Arab News:** *Arab News,* 'Indian tech giant Infosys closes down operations in Russia over UK FinMin accusations' (https://arab.news/zhre7); **294 The Institute for Government:** Sass, T. and Davies, N. (2020) 'Outsourcing and privatisation', Institute for Government (https://www.instituteforgovernment.org.uk/explainers/outsourcing-and-privatisation); **294 The Financial Times Ltd:** Parker, G. and Tetlow, G. (2017) 'Fall of Carillion should herald end of outsourcing, says Corbyn', *Financial Times* (17 January 2018); **300-301 Outsource Accelerator:** Gallimore, D. (2021) OA, 14 October (https://www.outsourceaccelerator.com/articles/nikes-approach-to-outsourcing/); **300-301 Selfx India Private Limited:** Fashinza (2022) 'Who manufactures Nikes?' (https://fashinza.com/textile/fashion-industry/who-manufactures-nikes/); **300-301 Giovanni Pino:** Pino, G. (22 June 2020). Sourci, 'Nike Products Are Manufactured in Over 41 Countries; **302 Guardian News and Media Limited:** Neate, R. (2018) 'LEGO reports first sales fall in 13 years, saying "there is no quick fix"', *The Guardian,* 6 March; **302 The LEGO Group:** Lego (2021) 'Group announces plans to build new factory in Vietnam to support long-term growth' Lego; **302 CNBC LLC:** Jobs cuts at Lego Group are a 'one-off, big move', says Chairman Alexandra Gibbs; **302 Guardian News and Media Limited:** Neate, R. (2018) 'LEGO reports first sales fall in 13 years, saying "there is no quick fix"', *Guardian*; **316 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004 Reprinted with permissions; **338 AICPA:** Adapted from Bhimani, A. (2021) *Accounting Disrupted: How Digitalization Is Changing Finance* (New Jersey: Wiley/AICPA); **334 Harvard Business Publishing:** Derek A. Haas, Richard A. Helmers, March Rucci, Meredith Brady and Robert S. Kaplan (2015) 'The Mayo Clinic model for running a value-improvement program',

HBR.org (22 October 2015); **334 NBCUniversal News Group:** Dan Mangan (2015) '$1 of every $5 spent in US will be on health care', CNBC, (28 July 2015); **334 Harvard Business Publishing:** Robert S. Kaplan and Michael E. Porter (2011) 'How to solve the cost crisis in health care', *Harvard Business Review,* September 2011; **334 Harvard Business Publishing:** Robert S. Kaplan and Steven R. Anderson (2007) 'The innovation of time-driven activity-based costing', *Journal of Cost Management,* 21(2) (March–April): 5–15; **334 Statista:** 'Health expenditure as a % of GDP in select countries' https://www.statista.com/statistics/268826/health-expenditure-as-gdp-percentage-in-oecd-countries/; **338-339 HSBC Group:** HSBC Online Bonus Saver, www.hsbc.co.uk/1/2/savings-accounts/online-bonus-saver/apply-online-savings; **338-339 The Financial Brand:** Accenture (2018) 'The Financial Brand' (https://thefinancialbrand.com/69957/personalization-dynamic-pricing-ai-banking-analytics/); **338-339 Morning Consult:** Principato, C. (2021) 'Here's why customers switch their primary bank', *Morning Consult*, 13 July (https://morningconsult.com/2021/07/13/heres-why-customers-switch-their-primary-bank/).; **346 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006 Reprinted with permissions; **348-349 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants, Pilot Paper 2.4, Financial Management and Control Reprinted with permissions; **349 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Performance Management, section B, June 2015 Reprinted with permissions; **349-350 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Performance Management, June 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **358 University of Michigan:** Andrew Hoffman et al. (2014) 'H&M's global supply chain management sustainability: factories and fast fashion', University of Michigan Erb Institute No. 1-429-373 (Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan); **358 H&M Group:** 'Sales development in 2015', H&M AB press release (Stockholm, Sweden, 15 December 2015; **358 H&M Group:** H&M AB, 'From idea to store' https://hmgroup.com/investors/five-year-summary/; **358 Clara Lu:** Clara Lu (2014), 'Behind H&M's fashion forward retail inventory control', TradeGecko blog, 12 August; **358 Dotdash Meredith:** Investopedia (2021) (https://www.investopedia.com/articles/investing/041216/hm-secret-its-success.asp); **358 Thomson Reuters:** ' H&M flags higher prices after profit falls short of expectations (31 March 2022); **364-365 The New York Times Company:** Giridharadas, A. (2008) 'Four wheels for the masses: the $2,500 car', *New York Times,* 9 January; **364-365 Bloomberg L.P.:** Kripalani, M. (2008) 'Inside the Tata Nano factory', *Business Week,* 9 May; **364-365 G/O Media Inc:** Torchinsky, J. (2018) 'The Tata Nano is way better than the world's cheapest car has any right to be'; **364-365 Bennett, Coleman & Co. Ltd:** *The Economic Times* (2022) 'The "moment of truth": Ratan Tata takes his white, bespoke electric 72C Nano for a drive'; **364-365 BBC:** BBC News (2022) 'Ratan Tata: Tycoon's ride in India's cheapest car wins internet', 19 May; **368 McKinsey & Company:** Baker, W., Marn, M. and Zawada, C. (2010) 'Do you have a long-term pricing strategy?', *McKinsey Quarterly,* pp. 47–52; **377 Inditex:** Intedex SA, 2017 Annual Report (Arteixo, Spain: Intedex SA, 2018); **377 Harvard Business School Publishing:** Girotra, K. and Netessine, S. (2012) 'Business model innovation is the gift that keeps on giving', *Harvard Business Review,* 5 December; **377 The Financial Times Ltd:** Buck, T. (2014) 'Fashion: A better business model', *Financial Times,* 18 June; **377 Dow Jones & Company, Inc:** Colon, J. (2016) 'A model for fast fashion', *The Wall Street Journal,* 7 December; **377 The New York Times Company:** Hansen, S. (2012) 'How Zara grew into the world's largest fashion retailer', *The New York Times Magazine,* 9 November; **382 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005 Reprinted with Permissions; **409 A. Spero:** A. Spero, adapted; **387 Saudi Research & Publishing Company:** Arab News (2022) 'Airbus to manufacture the world's first zero-emission aircraft by 2035', 10 May (https://arab.news/b5uyt); **387 Thomson Reuters:** Lampert, A. (2022) 'Airbus, Quebec reach $1.2 bln investment deal for A220 jet program', *Reuters,* 4 February; **391-392 World Resources Institute:** Perera, A., Putt Del Pino, S. and Oliveria, B. (2013) 'Aligning profit and environmental sustainability: stories from industry', World Resources Institute working paper, February 2013; **391-392 SustainCase:** Sustain Case, 'How Johnson & Johnson promotes environmental and social

responsibility throughout its supply chain'; **391-392 Johnson & Johnson Services, Inc:** Mazur, N. F. (2022) '6 super sustainable Johnson & Johnson sites around the world'; **391-392 Business Sector Media LLC:** Asad, A (2021) 'Johnson & Johnson Achieves 100% Renewable Electricity Across European Operations'; **391 Johnson & Johnson Services, Inc:** 6 Super Sustainable Johnson & Johnson Sites Around the World, by Nicole Frehsee Mazur, March 13, 2018; **409-410 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From the Association of Chartered Certified Accountants, Pilot Paper 2.4, Financial Management and Control, Reprinted with permission; **411-412 National Association of Accountants:** Adapted from NAA Research Report No. 35, pp. 83–5; **413-414 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA 2010 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Specimen Examination Paper Reprinted with permission; **414-415 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From Association of Chartered Certified Accountants Financial Management, section B, June 2015. Reprinted with permission; **415-416 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Operations, section C, November 2014. Reprinted with permission; **417-419 Professor David Otley:** Adapted from Otley, D. (1988) 'Permaclean Products plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission; **453 R. Villers:** Adapted from a description by R. Villers; **423** McKinsey: McKinsey, J.O. (1923) Budgetary Control (Ronald Press); **425 Ivo de Brouwer:** Quoted by Ivo de Brouwer; **426 McKinsey & Company:** Fitzpatrick, M. and Hawke, K. (2015) 'The return of zero based budgeting' *McKinsey Quarterly* August; **426 The Financial Times Ltd:** Guthrie, J. (21/2/2018) 'How and when zero-based budgeting boosts corporate productivity' *Financial Times*; **427 Haymarket Business Publications Ltd:** Hopwood, A. (1974) *Accounting and Human Behaviour* (London: Haymarket); **438 Workday, Inc:** 'Cooking up a modern FP&A environment for a global dining empire', Adaptive Insights customer case study, June 2017; **438 Dow Jones & Company, Inc:** Shumsky, T. (2017) Corporate finance cuts back on Excel', *The Wall Street Journal,* 24 November; **442 The Financial Times Ltd:** Pilita Clark, Bonuses are outdated in the age of knowledge work, *Financial Times,* 15 May 2022; **454-5455 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, May 2001 Reprinted with permission; **456 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Operations, section B, November 2014 Reprinted with permission; **456 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Management, section A, March 2014 Reprinted with permission; **471-472 The Motley Fool:** Kline, D. (2018) 'Starbucks puts its high-End Strategy to the test'; **471-472 Statista:** From Statista, www.statista.com/statistics/219502/starbucks-net-income/; **471-472 Starbucks Corporation:** Financial Data, Starbucks, https://investor.starbucks.com/financial-data/annual-reports/default.aspx; **471-472 BBC:** Sherman, N. (April 28, 2020) 'Cars out, snacks in as virus impacts US profits', BBC News; **471-472 Starbucks Corporation:** 'Starbucks pioneers innovations bridging physical and digital experiences', 17 January 2022; **471 Starbucks Corporation:** Annual Report Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(D) of The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 for the Fiscal Year Ended October 2, 2016; **474-475 Dow Jones & Company, Inc:** Nassauer, S. (2015) 'Inside Chipotle's kitchen: what's really handmade', *The Wall Street Journal*, 24 February; **474-475 Donnelley Financial Solutions:** Annual report, Chipotle Mexican Grill, Inc., https://seekingalpha.com/filings/pdf/12529300.pd; **474-475 Chipotle Mexican Grill, Inc:** Annual Report & Proxy Statement © 2017 Chipotle Mexican Grill Inc; **489 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** CIMA Performance Operations, section C, November 2014 Reprinted with permission; **505 Novartis AG:** Novartis AG (2015) Form 20-F (Basel, Switzerland: Novartis AG); **505 Association for Accessible Medicines:** IMS Institute for Healthcare Informatics/ Generic Pharmaceutical Association, Generic Drug Savings in the United States, November 2015; **505 Tobias Hestler:** Conversations with, and documents prepared by, Tobias Hestler and Chris Lewis of Sandoz 2016; **505 Questex LLC:** Kansteiner, F. (1 February 2022). 'Novartis' Sandoz reportedly the target of $25B buyout bid from Carlyle and Blackstone'; **505 Thomson Reuters:** Burger, L. (26 October, 2021) 'Novartis may divest generic unit Sandoz as price pressures mount'; **506 William Lever:** Quoted by William Lever; **506 H. Itami:** This exhibit is a modification of one

suggested by H. Itami; **507 The Financial Times Ltd:** Gapper, J. (9 May 2018) Memo from Amazon: tell a good story (https://www.ft.com/content/386e57b2-52a9-11e8-b3ee-41e0209208ec) Reprinted with permission; **518 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005 Reprinted with permission; **518-520 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2004 Reprinted with permission; **520 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006 Reprinted with permission; **522-523 American Institute of Certified Public Accountants:** Adapted CPA Reprinted with permission; **543 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2006 Reprinted with permission; **543-544 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006 Reprinted with permission; **544 Association of International Certified Professional Accountants:** Adapted from SMA, Reprinted with permission; **546-547 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Performance Management, section B, December 2014 Reprinted with permission; **547-548 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Management, section A, November 2014 Reprinted with permission; **549-551 Professor Falconer Mitchell:** Mitchell, F. (1988) 'Zeros plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission; **551-553 Vijay Govindarajan and John Shank:** Adapted from a case written by Govindarajan, V. and Shank, J. (1989) 'Profit variance analysis: a strategic focus', *Issues in Accounting Education,* Fall, pp. 396–410. Reproduced with permission from the American Accounting Association.; **558 Unilever:** Unilever (2022) 'Unilever simplifies organisation' https://www.unilever.com/news/press-and-media/press-releases/2022/unilever-simplifies-organisation/; **572 The Irish Times DAC:** Taylor, C. (2021) 'Google used "double-Irish" to shift $75.4bn in profits out of Ireland', *The Irish Times,* 17 April; **572 National Tax Association:** De Mooj, R. and Liu, L (2018) 'At a cost: the real effects of transfer pricing regulations'; **576 Wilhelm von Kalkstein:** Quoted by Wilhelm von Kalkstein; **579 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper, November 2006 Reprinted with permission; **579-580 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Management Accounting Pillar Managerial Level Paper Reprinted with permission; **581 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Intermediate Level, Management Accounting – Decision Making, November 2003 Reprinted with permission; **581 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Operations, section B, November 2014 Reprinted with permission; **582-583 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Management, Section B, November 2014 Reprinted with permission; **583-584 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants Performance Management, Section B, March 2014 Reprinted with permission; **585 Forbes Media LLC:** Eccles, R. (2022) 'Active ownership vs. active returns: The Norway sovereign wealth fund dilemma', *Forbes,* 29 January; **592 Business International Corporation:** Business International (1989, 1992); **592 John Wiley & Sons, Inc:** Stewart, G.B., III (1994) 'EVA®: fact and fantasy', *Journal of Applied Corporate Finance* (Summer); **593 Questex LLC:** Liu, A. (2022a) 'Bristol Myers CEO Giovanni Caforio takes pay cut as "human capital" metric drags down bonus', 1 April; **593 Questex LLC:** Liu, A. (2022b) 'Sanofi CEO Paul Hudson's 2021 pay dips no thanks to lagging vaccine sales in US, China', 30 March; **600 Harvard Business Publishing:** Kenny, G (2015) 'The false promise of the single metric', *Harvard Business Review,* 26 August; **600 Harvard Business Publishing:** Ignatius, A. (2012) 'Captain Planet', *Harvard Business Review,* June; **600 Guardian News and Media Limited:** Ruddick, G. (2016) 'Unilever CEO Paul Polman – the optimistic pessimist', *The Guardian,* 25 January; **600 Forbes Media LLC:** Boynton A. and Barchan, M. (2015) 'Unilever's Paul Polman: CEOs can't be "slaves" to shareholders', Forbes, 20 July; **600 Forbes Media LLC:** Alan Jope Appointed as Successor', London, United Kingdom/Rotterdam, Netherlands, 29 November; **600 Unilever:** Unilever PLC press release (2018) 'Unilever CEO Announcement: Paul Polman to Retire;

601 Hayagreeva Rao: Quoted by Hayagreeva Rao; **603 Mercedes-Benz:** Mercedes-Benz Group (2022) 'Our integrity code' https://group.mercedes-benz.com/documents/company/compliance/daimler-integritycode.pdf.; **604 HSBC Group:** HSBC (2020) 'HSBC Ethical and Environmental Code of Conduct for Suppliers of Goods and Services' Version 10, 1 August; **615-619 Philip Allan:** Emmanuel, C.R. (1988) 'BBR plc', in D. Otley, D. Brown and C. Wilkinson (eds) *Case Studies in Management Accounting* (Hemel Hempstead, UK: Philip Allan Publishers). Reproduced with permission; **623 Harvard Business Publishing:** *Harvard Business Review,* 'The big lie of strategic planning' by Roger L. Martin from the Magazine (January–February 2014); **625 Fortune Media IP Limited:** 'The cat that came back', *Fortune* (European edition), 2 March, pp. 60–4; **625 PUMA SE:** Adapted from puma.com; **625 GlobalData plc:** Smith, K. (2014) 'In the money: forever faster strategy to drive Puma turnaround' (www.just-style.com), 21 February; **625 PUMA SE:** Puma Group Management Report 2013; **632 Emerald Publishing Limited:** Mitchell, F. and Nørreklit, H. (2014) 'Guest Editorial: Contemporary issues on the balanced scorecard', *Journal of Accounting and Organizational Change,* 10(4), pp. 426–429; **632 Elsevier:** Hoque, Z. (2014) '20 years of studies on the balanced scorecard: trends, accomplishments, gaps and opportunities for future research', *British Accounting Review,* 46(1), pp. 33–59; **632-633 REUTERS:** Horowitz, J. (2012) 'New Barclays' chief ties executive compensation to societal goals', *Reuters,* 24 September; **632-633 Campaign:** Brownsell, A. (2014) 'Barclays reveals "5Cs" values scorecard in drive for brand transformation', *Marketing,* 2 November; **632-633 The Financial Times Ltd:** Shubber, K. (2018) 'Barclays to pay $2bn to settle US mortgage mis-selling probe', *Financial Times,* 29 March; **632-633 Barclays:** Barclays PLC (2018) 'Barclays' balanced scorecard'; **632 Barclays:** Barclays PLC, 2017 Annual Report (London: Barclays PLC, 2018); **634 Elsevier Ltd:** Nørreklit, H. (2003) 'The balanced scorecard: what is the score? A rhetorical analysis of the balanced scorecard', *Accounting Organizations and Society,* 28, pp. 591–619; **645 Time Inc:** Alex Taylor III, senior editor, July 12, 2010, 'How Toyota lost its way' – Full version; **645 J.D. Power:** J.D. Power, Manufacturers of Not So "Smart" Vehicles, Struggle to Master Technology, J.D. Power Finds Peugeot Ranks Highest Overall in UK Vehicle Dependability; Only One Premium Brand among Top 10, 09 May 2019; **645 Wolters Kluwer N.V.:** Wolters Kluwer, Toyota faces $2 billion compensation bill for defective cars; **651 R. Kaplan:** Adapted from R. Kaplan, Used with permissions; **657-658 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Performance Management, Section B, December 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **658-659 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Management, section A, September 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **659 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From CIMA Performance Management, section A, May 2014 Reprinted with permissions; **663 Dow Jones & Company, Inc:** 'On the concert circuit, rock is king' (2018) *The Wall Street Journal,* 4 October; **663 Rolling Stone, LLC:** Knopper, S. (2012) 'Nine ways musicians actually make money today', *Rolling Stone,* 28 August; **663 Billboard Media, LLC:** Stilwell, R. and Cox, M. (2017) 'Phone recordings of concerts are more than just annoying, they're potentially illegal: guest post', *Billboard,* 17 March; **663 Billboard Media, LLC:** Hu, C. (2017) 'VNUE acquires live music distribution platform Set.fm from PledgeMusic', *Billboard,* 17 October; **663 The Music Universe:** Iahn, B. (2018) 'Rob Thomas offering instant live recordings via VNUE', The Music Universe.com, 3 January; **663 Aderra:** Aderra, http://aderra.net/; **666 Emerj Artificial Intelligence Research:** Walker, J. (2018) 'Inventory management with machine learning – 3 use cases in industry'; **666 IQPC WORLDWIDE:** Mixon, E. (11 February 2021) 'Walmart's new weapon in its fight against Amazon: Artificial Intelligence'; **666 Doug McMillon:** Quoted by Doug McMillon; **699 Association of Chartered Certified Accountants:** From ACCA Financial Information for Management, Part 1, June 2005 Reprinted with permissions; **704 Association of International Certified Professional Accountants:** AICPA/CGMA (2020) 'Business partnering in the digital age'; **705 Harvard Business Publishing:** Brynjolfsson, E. and McAfee, A. (2017) 'The business of artificial intelligence'; **711 Oxford University Press:** Adapted from Soonawalla, K. (2006) 'Environmental management accounting', in A. Bhimani (ed.) *Contemporary Issues in Management Accounting* (Oxford: Oxford University Press), pp. 381–6; **710 Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu Limited:** Deloitte (2022). Cut carbon, cut costs. Deloitte Insights; **712 Association of International Certified Professional Accountants:** The Six Capitals, https://

insights.cgma.org/story/sasb_ir/page/3/2 Used with permissions; **712 IISD International Institute for Sustainable Development:** Brundtland Report (1987) Report of the World Commission on Environment and Development: Our Common Future; **715-716 Newsweek Inc:** Newsweek (2014) 'Newsweek ranks Adobe world's greenest IT company', 6 June; **715-716 U.S. Green Building Council:** 'What is LEED certification' (https://support.usgbc.org/hc/en-us/articles/4404406912403-What-is-LEED-certification-); **715-716 FD Media Group:** The Impact Investor (2022) 'New PBAF standard to help investors assess biodiversity impact', 22 March; **715-716 Business Chef:** Birch, K. (2022) 'Top 10 sustainable companies in Europe', *Business Chief,* 26 January; **715-716 Adobe:** Adobe (2019) 'Adobe sustainability policy'; **715-716 Schneider Electric:** Schneider Electric (2021) 'Accelerating sustainability for all'; **715-716 Conservice ESG:** Goby (2021) 'Five environmental sustainability metrics worth tracking'; **724 Chartered Institute of Management Accountants:** From the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants, Intermediate Level, Management Accounting – Performance Management, November 2003 Reprinted with permissions; **725-731 Institute of Management Accountants, Inc:** Adapted from Prather-Kinsey, J. (2001) 'High-Tech Limited', *Cases from Management Accounting Practice,* Volume 16 (Montvale, New Jersey: Institute of Management Accounting Practice); **732-736 Thunderbird School of Global Management:** Thunderbird School of Global Management case No. TB0477 by Andrew Inkpen; **733 Tanner:** Adapted from Tanner's mission statement; **733-734 Susan Steward:** Quoted by Susan Steward; **735 The New York Times Company:** Another Drug Pricing Ripoff, www.nytimes.com/2016/08/25/opinion/another-drug-pricing-ripoff.html; **735 Los Angeles Times:** Op-Ed: We're all paying a high price for drug company profiteering, www.latimes.com/opinion/op-ed/la-oe-stone-solvadi-drug-pricing-20160705-snap-story.html; **735 CNBC LLC:** Here's how we break the cycle of outrageous drug-price increases, www.cnbc.com/2016/09/16/heres-how-we-break-the-cycle-of-outrageous-drug-price-increasescommentary.html; **736-740 Institute of Management Accountants, Inc:** Adapted from Shank, J. and Carr, L. (2002) 'Osram', *IMA Cases from Management Accounting Practice,* Volume 17 (Montvale, NJ: Institute of Management Accounting Practice).

Image Credits:

18 Getty Images: Corbis/HBSS/Getty Images; **77 Shutterstock:** LaineN/Shutterstock; **110 Alamy Images:** Westend61 GmbH/Vasily Pindyurin/Alamy Stock Photo; **162 Shutterstock:** NiP STUDIO/Shutterstock; **168 Shutterstock:** Kharkhan Oleg/Shutterstock; **229 Shutterstock:** Photocritical/Shutterstock; **267 Shutterstock:** Elena Elisseeva/Shutterstock; **338 Shutterstock:** Alexandre17/Shutterstock; **377 Shutterstock:** BCFC/Shutterstock; **438 Shutterstock:** The Image Party/Shutterstock; **471 Shutterstock:** Pe3k/Shutterstock; **474 Alamy Images:** Kristoffer Tripplaar/Alamy Stock Photo; **593 Alamy Images:** Peter Marshall/Alamy Stock Photo; **632 Getty Images:** Bloomberg/Getty Images; **625 Shutterstock:** Sergei Prokhorov/Shutterstock; **645 Shutterstock:** Ritu Manoj Jethani/Shutterstock.

This bestseller text offers clear, simple to understand and comprehensive coverage of management and cost accounting for students and professionals.

Management and Cost Accounting brings together techniques, concepts and practices in a highly readable way. Keeping its international focus, the text includes a wealth of case studies featuring companies from around the world, and offers up-to-date coverage of the most contemporary aspects affecting management accounting today, such as a greater emphasis on sustainability, as well as AI, automation and other technologies. Applications are explained using illustrations from real companies, plus the text includes professional accountancy examination questions to help you practice.

Packed with illustrations, examples and real-life applications, this book will help you learn about the aspects of management accounting that are essential in your study and your future performance in the workplace.

Key Features

- **Up-to-date coverage of the impact of digitalisation and application of new technologies,** including blockchain systems, artificial intelligence, robotics and the Internet of Things.
- **Sustainability practices** are now given more space with new examples covering topics such as renewable energy and the significance of organisations' initiatives to improve sustainability and lessen environmental impact.
- A wealth of resources, including **professional accountancy practice exercises**, and end-of-chapter questions, provide opportunities to learn and develop exam ability.
- **A range of new real-life applications in the Concepts in Action boxes** show how managers use accounting techniques in the business world.
- **Harvard Business School and other cutting-edge case studies** illustrate how management accounting is deployed in enterprises across locations and situations.

Alnoor Bhimani is Professor of Management Accounting and Director of the South Asia Centre at the London School of Economics and Political Science.

Charles T. Horngren was the Edmund W. Littlefield Professor of Accounting at Stanford University.

Srikant M. Datar is the Dean of Harvard Business School.

Madhav V. Rajan is the Dean of the Booth School of Business at the University of Chicago.

Also available with MyLab Accounting

MyLab® is the teaching and learning platform that combines trusted author content with digital assessments, help tools to use at point-of-need, and a flexible platform. MyLab Accounting for this book includes over 800 questions for your assignments.

Pearson, the world's *learning* company.

Front cover image: Johner Images / Alamy Stock Photo
Cover designed by Michelle Morgan, At The Pop Ltd.

Pearson

www.pearson.com/uk

ISBN 978-1-292-43602-9

9 781292 436029